



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

# COMPLETELY PARSED CÆSAR

GALLIC WAR. BOOK I.

---

*WITH INTERLINEAR AND MARGINAL TRANSLATIONS*

University of Virginia Library



X000536951

LIBRARY OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA



PRESENTED BY  
Charlotte Thomas







**Dictionaries: The Classic Series.** Half morocco, \$2.00 each.

Especially planned and carefully produced to meet the requirements of students and teachers in colleges, and high schools. Up to the times in point of contents, authoritative while modern as regards scholarship, instantly accessible in respect to arrangement, of best quality as to typography and paper, and in a binding at once elegant and durable. Size 8x5½ inches.

French-English and English-French Dictionary, 1122 pages.

German-English and Eng.-Ger. Dictionary, 1112 pages.

Italian-English and English-Italian Dict., 1187 pages.

Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary, 941 pages.

Greek-English and English-Greek Dict., 1056 pages.

English-Greek Dictionary. Price \$1.00.

**Dictionaries: The Handy Series.** "Scholarship modern and accurate; and really beautiful print." *Pocket edition.*

Spanish-English and English-Spanish, 474 pages, \$1.00.

Italian-English and English-Italian, 428 pages, \$1.00.

New-Testament Lexicon. *Entirely new.* \$1.00.

Up-to-date in every respect—typographically, and lexicographically. *Contains a fine presentation of the Synonyms of the Greek Testament, with hints on discriminating usage.*

**Liddell & Scott's Abridged Greek Lexicon, \$1.20.**

**White's Latin-English Dictionary, \$1.20.**

**White's English-Latin Dictionary, \$1.20.**

**White's Latin-English and Eng.-Lat. Dict., \$2.25.**

**Completely Parsed Caesar, Book I.** Each page bears *inter-linear* translation, literal translation, parsing, grammatical references. *All at a glance without turning a leaf.* \$1.50.

**Caesar's Idioms.** Complete, with English equivalents. 25 cts.

**Cicero's Idioms.** As found in "Cicero's Orations." 25 cts.

**Shortest Road to Caesar.** Successful elem. Latin method. 75 cts.

**Hossfeld Methods:** Spanish, Italian, German, French, \$1.00 each. Keys for each, 35 cts. Letter Writer for each, \$1.00 each.

**German Texts, with Footnotes and Vocabulary:**—Wilhelm Tell, Neffe als Onkel, Minna v. Barnhelm. Nathan der Weise, Emilia Galotti, Hermann und Dorothe. *Six volumes, 50 cts. each.*

**Brooks' Historia Sacra, with 1st Latin Lessons.** Revised, with Vocabulary. Price 50 cts. This justly popular volume, besides the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ, the Notes, and the Vocabulary, contains 100 pages of elementary Latin Lessons, making it practicable for the teacher, without recourse to any other book, to carry the pupil quickly and in easy steps over the ground preparatory to a profitable reading of the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ.

**Brooks' First Lessons in Greek, with Lexicon.** Revised Edition. Covering sufficient ground to enable the student to read the New Testament in the Greek. Price 50 cts.

**Brooks' New Virgil's Æneid, with Lexicon.** Revised Edition. Notes, Metrical Index, Map, Questions for Examinations. \$1.50.

**Brooks' New Ovid's Metamorphoses, with Lexicon.** Expurgated and adapted for mixed classes. With Notes, and Questions for Examinations. Price reduced to \$1.50.

**Hinds & Noble's Hebrew Grammar, \$1.00.**

## **Completely Parsed Classics**

---

IN DUE SEASON ON SIMILAR PLAN

**Virgil's Aeneid, Bk. I** (also completely scanned throughout).

**Cicero's 1st Oration against Catiline.**

**Xenophon's Anabasis, Book I.**

**Homer's Iliad, Book I.**

Completely Parsed Classics

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

## BOOK I.

*Being the Latin Text in the Original Order;  
with a Literal Interlinear Translation; and with an Elegant  
Translation in the Margin;*

AND

FOOTNOTES IN WHICH EVERY WORD IS COMPLETELY PARSED, THE CON-  
STRUCTIONS AND CONTEXT EXPLAINED, WITH REFERENCES TO  
THE REVISED GRAMMARS OF ALLEN & GREENOUGH,  
BINGHAM, GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS

BY

REV. JAMES B. FINCH, M.A., D.D.

---

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY HINDS & NOBLE

---

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-6-12-13-14 COOPER INSTITUTE, NEW YORK CITY

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

PA  
6237  
AUG 5  
1915  
COPY

## WE ARE ACTING

As the Agents of numerous Educational Institutions, large and small, throughout the country, for the purchase and forwarding of all Text-books used therein. Our exceptional facilities enable us to attend to this line of business with the utmost promptness, and we save our customers the delay and uncertainty of correspondence and dealings with numerous publishers, express companies, etc.

We can present no better testimony as to the success of our efforts in this direction, than the cordial approval of our old patrons, who are constantly sending us new customers.

*We have purchased the stock and goodwill of the New York School Book Clearing House, which firm retires from business.*

HINDS- & NOBLE,

*45-13-14 Cooper Institute, N. Y. City.*

TYPOGRAPHY OF  
LANGUAGES PRINTING COMPANY  
114 FIFTH AVENUE  
NEW YORK

## PREFACE.

---

WITH this book *anyone* can learn not only *about* the Latin language, but can learn *the language itself*.

I have designed it as an aid to three classes of learners, and it is my confident belief that *they* will find it in practice to be of really invaluable service — first, *teachers*, both those rusty in Latin who nevertheless find themselves called upon to teach Caesar without much time for preparation; and also those who are “up” in Caesar but still may benefit greatly, at the first, by having at their elbow a model for teaching and drilling which, like this, sets forth to the most minute detail each step in the parsing and the translation of every word in the text — then *clergymen* whose opportunities may not have permitted the acquisition of the Latin, but who yet desire to possess themselves rapidly of so much of this language as a minister really needs for etymological and philological and literary purposes, as well as for the simple satisfaction of emerging from a state of ignorance regarding a language so familiar to the educated — then *students*, both those who are not so situated as to have an instructor, but are still ambitious enough to study Latin without a teacher, and also students who, though members of a class, yet need the help of a complete model for translation and analysis, to be used, of course, under wise guidance. Again it is not wholly unlikely that the perfectly competent teacher of Latin will prize this book — not because of any need for assistance, but because of the advantage of comparing one’s own ways

and opinions with the methods and views of another competent teacher, particularly if that other's ideas are not always in accord with one's own.

The following suggestions are made to aid any learner who may wish to use this book as A BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK: Take any one of the Latin grammars referred to in the preface; learn from it to distinguish and to decline the five Latin declensions of nouns; the first, the second, and the third declension of adjectives; learn also how to distinguish the four conjugations of the verbs, and how to inflect the verbs; read attentively Latin Syntax, especially the coarse print portion of it. With this equipment, turn to any nude text of the First Book of Caesar's Gallic War — Harper's for instance, or the Tutorial, or any other. Read a line, or sentence or paragraph, noting carefully the cases and numbers of the nouns and adjectives, and the persons and numbers of the verbs. If without knowledge of the *meaning* of the words, turn to the interlined translation in this volume, using it *now* as a vocabulary; and then turning from this back to the nude text, *translate* the line, sentence, or paragraph — always in the Latin order of the words. Compare your version with the interlinear translation. After this transpose your line, sentence or paragraph into the English order of the words, making as good English as possible, and then, not till then, compare your perfected whole with the English *translation in the margin*. Finally, look up the grammatical references as given in the footnotes, and examine the synonyms carefully and thus develop a critical scholarship. Not only will rapid progress be made in the facility to translate Latin, but a certain degree of culture will be attained as the outcome of the process.

As to the Latin text, this FIRST BOOK OF CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR is substantially that of Kraner; yet Kraner's Grecisms and other peculiarities in orthography, especially in that of proper



names, have not been adopted; in these respects, the common lection is retained.

The text is accompanied by a rigidly literal interlinear translation according to the Latin order of the words, and a passably literal translation in the English order of the words in the margin. These translations are entirely new, having been made by me from the Latin text word by word, line by line, paragraph by paragraph.

The footnotes are both explanatory and critical. Every word of the text is parsed; and when the construction seems to require it, references are made to the Latin grammars of Allen and Greenough's Revised Edition, Bingham revised by McCabe, Gildersleeve revised by Lodge, and Harkness's Standard Edition. Caesar's *formal* indirect speeches throughout this FIRST BOOK OF THE GALLIC WAR have been put, at stated intervals in the notes, into the *direct* form by way of illustration and contrast; and for the same reason his *informal* indirect discourses may generally be found there, put into the direct form.

Latin synonyms have been noted and sharply discriminated wherever they occur; and thus hints as to critical word study are given on almost every page. Grammatical references, and occasionally the synonyms, are repeated, especially in the first part of the book, in order that principles grammatical and philological may be kept continually before the reader's eye.

As to pronunciation, the Roman method may be used from the start if desired, as the long vowels are marked (thus *ā*) and all vowels not so marked are to be considered short vowels. If some other than the Roman pronunciation is preferred, Allen and Greenough's grammar explains the English method as well as the Roman; Harkness's, both these methods, and also the Continental; Bingham's and Gildersleeve's confining themselves to the Roman.

JAMES B. FINCH.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.	<i>impers.</i>	= impersonal.
<i>abs.</i> or <i>absol.</i>	= absolute.	<i>ind.</i>	= indicative.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.	<i>indecl.</i>	= indeclinable.
<i>act.</i>	= active.	<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.	<i>infin.</i>	= infinitive.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.	<i>interrog.</i>	= interrogative.
<i>A. &amp; G.</i>	= Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, Revised Edition.	<i>intrans.</i>	= intransitive.
<i>B.</i>	= Bingham's Latin Grammar, Rev. by McCabe.	<i>l.</i>	= line.
<i>cf. (cōfer)</i>	= compare.	<i>ll.</i>	= lines.
<i>comp.</i>	= compound.	<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.	<i>n.</i> or <i>neut.</i>	= neuter.
<i>dat.</i>	= dative.	<i>neg.</i>	= negative.
<i>decl.</i>	= declension.	<i>nom.</i>	= nominative.
<i>dem.</i>	= demonstrative.	<i>num.</i>	= numeral.
<i>dep.</i>	= deponent.	<i>obj.</i>	= object.
<i>disc.</i>	= discourse.	<i>p.</i>	= page.
<i>distrib.</i>	= distributive.	<i>pp.</i>	= pages.
=	= <i>equals, equivalent to, or denotes.</i>	<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>e.g. (exempli grātiā)</i>	= for example.	<i>pass.</i>	= passive.
<i>etc. (et caetera)</i>	= and so forth.	<i>perf.</i>	= perfect.
<i>f.</i> or <i>fem.</i>	= feminine.	<i>pers.</i>	= personal.
<i>ff.</i>	= following.	<i>poss.</i>	= possessive.
<i>fr.</i>	= from.	<i>pred.</i>	= predicate.
<i>fut.</i>	= future.	<i>prep.</i>	= preposition.
<i>G.</i>	= Gildersleeve's Latin Gram., Revised Ed.	<i>pres.</i>	= present.
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun.
<i>H.</i>	= Harkness's Latin Grammar, Rev. Stand. Edit.	<i>rel.</i>	= relative.
<i>i.e. (id est)</i>	= that is.	<i>sc. (scilicet)</i>	= that is to say; sometimes = supply.
<i>imperf.</i>	= imperfect.	<i>sing.</i>	= singular.
		<i>subj.</i>	= subject.
		<i>subst.</i>	= substantive.
		<i>superl.</i>	= superlative.
		<i>trans.</i>	= transitive.
		<i>viz. (videlicet)</i>	= namely.
		<i>1, 2, 3, 4</i>	
		with verbs	= 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th conjugation.

1	I.	Gallia	est	omnis	divisa	in	partēs	I. Gaul, as a whole, is divided into three parts: the Belgae inhabit one of these; the Aquitani another; and those who in their own language are called
		Gaul	is	all	divided	into	parts	
2	trēs,	quārum	ūnam	incolunt	Belgae,			
	three,	of which	one	inhabit	the Belgae,			
3	aliām	Aquitānī,	tertiām	quī	ipsōrum			
	the other	the Aquitani,	the third (those) who	of themselves				

LINE 1. *Gallia*, -ae, nom. sing. f., subj. of *est divisa* (*divisa est*); the generic term for the three divisions — Belgica, Celtica and Aquitania — conceived as a totality. The Greek equivalent is *Γαλαρία*. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the irr. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, no supine; compare A.S. *is*, GER. *ist*, GK. *ἐστί*; *est* in the text may be taken as the copula, or as a part of the compound *divisa est*, perf. pass., 3d pers. sing. of *dividō*, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3. Thus the Greek paraphrast regarded it, and translated *est divisa* by *διεφθῆται*. — *omnis*, -e, an adj. of two endings, an *i*-stem; agrees with *Gallia*, but seems to have here the force of an adv., and = *as a whole*. Consult A. & G. 191; B. 128, REM. 10; G. 325, 6; H. 443. — *divisa*, see *est*, above. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.: with acc. after verbs of motion = *into*; with abl. after verbs of rest = *in*, or *on*, or *among*. — *partēs*, acc. plur. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; acc. after *in*. See *In*, A. & G. 153, 1, 2; B. 120, 1, 2, 3; G. 418, 1, 2; H. 435, 1.

LINE 2. *trēs*, acc. plur. of numeral adj. *trēs*, *tria*, an *i*-stem, declined regularly like the plur. of *levis*; agrees with *partēs*. Of the cardinals up to *centum*, only *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declinable. — *quārum*, gen. plur. f. of *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron. in use both as subst. and adj.; in the text it refers to *partēs* as antecedent; it might also be taken as modifying *partium*, to be supplied; it is a partitive gen. after *ūnam*. A. & G. 216, a, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — *ūnam*, acc. sing. f.; supply *partem*, which is the direct obj. of *incolunt*. Note that *ūnus*, -a, -um is one of the adjectives that have the gen. in -ius, and dat. in -ī. For list of these, see A. & G. 83; B. 56, 3, 4; G. 76, 1, 2; H. 151. — *incolunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *incolō*, -ere, -uī, -cultum, 3. — *Belgae*, -ārum, nom. plur. m., subj. of *incolunt*. Note the gender from the signification rather than the declension. The Belgae were a mixed race, partly Germanic and partly Celtic in origin; they inhabited northern Gaul, or the region bounded by the Marne, the Seine, the Rhine and the ocean.

LINE 3. *aliām*, supply *partem*; acc. sing. f. of adj. *alius*, -ia, -ud; lit. = *other*, *another*, but in the text = *alteram*, i.e. the second (*partem* if supplied would be direct obj. of *incolunt*). For decl., see A. & G. 83; B. 56 and REM. 1; G. 76 and 4; H. 151. — *Aquitānī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Aquitānus*, -a, -um, used substantively; as subj. of *incolunt* understood. They were the inhabitants of southwestern Gaul. — *tertiām*, supply *partem*; acc. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *tertius*, -a, -um (*partem* if supplied would be direct obj. of *incolunt*). — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; subj. of *appellantur*; its antecedent is *eī* understood, which latter is subj. of *incolunt*, to be supplied. The antecedent of a rel. pron. is often omitted if indefinite, or if naturally implied from the context. — *ipsōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. -ius, dat. -ī; lit. of *themselves*; more emphatic than *sud*, and sometimes used in connection with the latter. A. & G. 197, e; B. 85, REM. 2, and 128, REM. 8; G. 311, 321, 2; H. 398, 3, and 452. With ellipses supplied, the text would read here: *quārum partium ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliām partem Aquitānī incolunt, tertiam partem eī incolunt quī*, etc.

ed Celtae, in ours Galli, inhabit the third. All these peopledifferfrom oneanotherinlan- guage, customs and laws. The Ga- rumna river sep- arates the Galli from the Aquita- ni; the Matrona and the Sequana	linguā in the language	Celtae, Celts,	nostrā in ours	Galli Gauls	appellantur. 4 are called.
	Hī These	omnēs all	linguā, in language,	īnstitūtis, in customs,	lēgibus in laws
	sē themselves	differunt. differ.	Gallōs The Gauls	ab from	Aquitānīs 6 the Aquitani
	Garumna the Garonne	flūmen, river,	ā from	Belgīs the Belgae	Matrona et 7 the Marne and

LINE 4. *linguā*, sing., abl. of manner of *lingua*, -ae, f. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *Celtae*, -ārum, nom. plur. m., the people of central Gaul; GK. Κέλται; *appellantur Celtae* = *are called Celts*. See *appellantur*, just below. — *nostrā*, abl. sing. of poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; supply *linguā*. — *Galli*, nom. plur. m. of adj. *Gallus*, -a, -um, used as a subst. See *appellantur*, just below. — *ap(ad)pellantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. pass. of *appello*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1. Observe that in this clause ending with the passive verb, *Celtae* and *Galli* are predicate-nominatives; the subject-nom. is *quī*. A. & G. 176, a; B. 130, 3; G. 206; H. 362, 2, 2).

LINE 5. *Hī*, nom. plur. m. of dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc* = *those just mentioned*; expressed for emphasis; used here substantively. A. & G. 195, 1; B. 84, 1; G. 305, 5; H. 450, 1. — *omnēs*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an adj. of two endings; an *i*-stem as shown by the gen. plur. *omnium*; *omnēs* modifies *hī*. As *omnēs* includes the whole, it takes a case in agreement, and does not admit of the partitive construction. Hence, as in the text, *hī omnēs*, and not *hōrum omnēs*. A. & G. 216, e; B. 134, REM. 4; G. 370, 2; H. 397, NOTE. — *linguā*, sing., abl. of specification of *lingua*, -ae, f. A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *īnstitūtis*, plur., abl. of specification of *īnstitūtum*, -i, n. — *lēgibus*, plur., abl. of specification of *lēx*, *lēgis*, f. Observe that in a series of words either no conjunction is used, or it is repeated between the words. The enclitic -que, however, may be appended to the last word of a series. A. & G. 208, 3, and 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6. — *inter*, prep. with acc.; lit. = *between*.

LINE 6. *sē*, acc. plur. of *suī*, reflexive pron. of the 3d pers., obj. of *inter*. Observe that the phrase *inter sē* indicates a reciprocal relation, and see A. & G. 196, f; B. 78, REM. 4; G. 221; H. 448, NOTE. — *differunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *differō*, -ferre, *distulī*, *dilatātum* (dis + ferre) = lit. *to bear apart*; hence, *to differ*. — *Gallōs*, acc. plur., direct obj. of *dīvidit*. For decl., see *Galli*, l. 4, above. — *ab*, compare *ā*, l. 7, below; *ā* is used before consonants only; *ab*, before vowels or consonants; prep. with the abl. A. & G. 152, b; B. 120, 2; G. 417; H. 434. — *Aquitānīs*, plur., abl. after *ab*. For decl., etc., see *Aquitānī*, l. 3, above.

LINE 7. *Garumna*, nom. sing., appositive; *Garumna*, -ae, m.; rivers, winds and months are masculine; this river forms the boundary between Aquitania and Celtica. — *flūmen*, -inis, nom. sing. n. (*fluere*, to flow; hence lit. *flūmen* = *the flowing*); subj. of *dīvidit*, to be supplied from the following clause of this, in fact, compound sentence. — *ā*, see *ab*, l. 6, above. — *Belgīs*, plur., abl. after prep. *ā*. For decl., etc., see l. 2, above. — *Matrona*, -ae, nom. sing. m., appositive = *the Marne*; *flumen* to be supplied. — *et*, cop. conj., joins words of equal importance.

* Sēquana	dividit.	Hōrum	omnium	fortissimī	rivers separate them from the Belgae. The bravest of all these people are the Belgae, because they are very remote from the civilization and refinement of our province, and the traders do not
the Seine	divides.	Of these	all	the bravest	
* sunt	Belgae,	proptereā	quod	ā	
are	the Belgae,	on this account	because	from	
* cultū	atque	hūmānitāte	prōvinciae		
the civilization	and	refinement	of the province		
* longissimē	absunt,	minimēque	ad	eōs	
very far	are they distant,	least and,	to	them	

LINE 8. *Sēquana*, -ae, nom. sing. m. = *the Seine*; in apposition with *flūmen* understood, which latter is the subj. of *dīvidit*. — *dīvidit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. For principal parts, see l. 1, above. The verb agrees with its subj. *flūmen* understood. The clauses fully constructed are: *Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen dīvidit, et Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidunt*. The sing. verb, however, may be explained by A. & G. 205, *b*; B. 126, REM. 2; G. 285, EXC. 1, end; H. 463, II. 3; the two rivers being conceived as forming a single boundary. — *Hōrum*, gen. plur. m. of dem. pron. *hīc, haec, hōc*; partitive gen. after *fortissimī*; *hōrum* is here used substantively, and is modified by *omnium*. A. & G. 216, *a, 2*; B. 134, and for *omnium*, REM. 4; G. 372; H. 397, 3. — *omnium*, gen. plur. m. of *omnis, -e*. For decl., etc., see note on *hī omnes*, l. 5, above. Note carefully that *omnium* here is not a partitive gen., but simply an attributive of *hōrum*. — *fortissimī*, adj. plur. m., superl. degree of *fortis, -ior, -issimus, -a, -um*; predicat.-adj. with *sunt*.

LINE 9. *sunt*, 3d pers. plur. of *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*; *sunt* is here the copula; the subj. is *Belgae*. — *Belgae*, for decl., see l. 2, above. — *proptereā* (*propter + ea*), adv.; lit. *on account of*. *proptereā* here is simply the herald, so to speak, of the *quod*-clause following, and, in such use, it may, usually, be omitted in the translation. — *quod*, conj., but originally an adv. of specification; acc. n. of *quī, quae, quod*. — *ā*, see note on *ab*, l. 6, above.

LINE 10. *cultū*, abl. of *cultūs, -ūs, m.*; abl. after prep. *ā*. A. & G. 152, *b*; B. 120, 2; G. 417; H. 434. (Derived from *colere*, lit. *to cultivate*, orig. *pertaining to the culture of the fields*; compare stem *kol* as seen in *βουκολέω*.) — *atque* (*ad + que*), abridged = *ac*; it adds sometimes a more important notion = *and also*; *atque* is used before vowels and consonants, especially before vowels; *ac* is used before consonants only, in classic Latin. — *hūmānitāte*, abl. of *hūmānitās, -ātis, m.*, connected by *atque* to *cultū*, and governed by *ā*. Note that *hūmānitās* is derived from adj. *hūmānus*, and this from *homō*; hence = lit. *humanly, humanity*. To explain *cultū atque hūmānitāte* as an hendiadys (*ὅν διὰ δύοῖν*), see A. & G. 385, I; B. 310, 2, (*b*); G. 698; H. 636, III. 2. As thus explained, the words = *a refined mode of life*. — *prōvinciae*, gen. of *prōvincia, -ae, f.*; as a gen. it limits the two immediately preceding substantives. Here *provinciae* = the Roman Province in the south-east part of *Gallia omnis*.

LINE 11. *longissimē*, adv., modifies *absunt*, superl. degree; positive *longē* or *longiter*; comparative *longius*. As to the formation of adverbs from adjectives, see A. & G. 148, *a, b, c, d*; B. 117, 5, 6; G. 91, 2, *b, c, d, e*; H. 304. As to the signification, see A. & G. 93, *b*; B. 68, REM. 4; G. 302, 303; H. 444, 1. — *absunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of *absum, abesse, ab(ā)fuī, ab(ā)futūrus, -a, -um*; irr. intrans. verb; its subj. is the pron. *eī* understood, referring to *Belgae*, l. 9, above. — *minimēque*

very often visit them and import such things as tend to enervate the mind; and besides, they are next to the Ger- mans who dwell across the Rhine,	mercatōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae the merchants often go to and fro and those things which ad effeminandōs animōs pertinent, important, to enervate minds tend, do they bring in, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum nearest and, are they to the Germans, who across the Rhine
--	---

(*minimē* + *que*). The enclitic is always appended to some word, and it joins a word or sentence closely to another. The adv. *minimē* is compared thus: positive *parum* or *parvū* (rare), comparative *minus*, superl. *minimē*. This superl. = lit. *least*; often it = *not at all*. See A. & G. 92, end, 209, *e*; B. 119, REM. 2; G. 93; H. 552, 3. *minimē* modifies *saepe*, and the two words taken together = *very rarely*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc., lit. = *toward*, with verbs of motion = *to*. — *edōs*, acc. plur. m. of dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, here used substantively as a personal pron. of the 3d person. A. & G. 98, *a*, 102, *d*, middle; B. 83, 1; G. 102; H. 451; *edōs* is the acc. after *ad*. A. & G. 258; B. 141, REM. 1; G. 345, REM. 2, end; H. 380, 1, and 384, 3, *i*.

LINE 12. *mercātōrēs*, nom. plur. of *mercātor, -ōris*, m., subj. of *commeant*. — *saepe*, adv., comparative *saeptius* (compare GER. *öfter*), superl. *saeptissimē*. See observation on *minimē*, l. 11, above. *saepe* modifies *commeant*. — *commeant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *commēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1 (con + *meāre* = *to go together with a view to return*; hence = *to go to and fro*). The subj. of *commeant* is the pron. *ei* understood, referring to *Belgae*, l. 9, above. — *atque*, see note on this particle, l. 10, above. — *ea*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; direct obj. of *important*. — *quae*, nom. plur. n. of the pron. *qui, quae, quod*; refers to *ea*; is subj. of *pertinent*.

LINE 13. *ad*, see note on *ad*, l. 11, above; it is followed here by the acc. of the gerundive construction. — *effeminandōs*, limits *animōs* and is acc. plur. gerundive of the verb *effeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1 (ex + *fēmina*) = *to change one's nature, to make a woman out of it*. — *animōs* is acc. plur. of *animus, -ī*, m., after *ad*. The better translation of this so-called gerundive construction is to translate it as if it were a gerund with a direct object. See A. & G. 296, 300; B. 184; G. 430, 432; H. 543. The gerundive is merely the fut. pass. participle. — *pertinent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *pertineō, -ēre, -uī*, no supine, 2, intrans. (per + *tenēre*); it agrees with the subj. *quae*. — *important*, 3d pers. plur. of *importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; its subj. is *mercātōrēs*, i.e. *important* is connected by *atque* with *commeant*, and has the same subj. as the latter. *importare* is compounded of in + *portāre*. *n* becomes *m* before *p* by assimilation. A. & G. 11, *f*, 3, NOTE; B. 122; G. 9, 4, middle; H. 33, 3.

LINE 14. *proximique* (*proximī* + *que*). As to the enclitic, see note on *-que*, l. 11, above. *proximī* is nom. plur. m. of *proximus, -a, -um*, superl. of the comparative *propior*, no positive, though the comparative is formed from the stem of the adv. *prope*. There are some every-day adjectives that lack the positive. See A. & G. 91, *a*; B. 74, 1; G. 87, 8; H. 166. *proximī* is predicate-adj. after *sunt*. — *sunt*, for principal parts, see l. 9, above; its subj. is *Belgae*, to be supplied. — *Germānīs*, dat. plur. m. of *Germānī, -ōrum*, the eastern neighbors of the Gauls. Occasionally the sing. *Germānus, -ī*, m., occurs. The word is probably of Celtic origin. Some derive it from *Wehr-Mann*, war-man. *Germānīs* is dat. after *proximī*, a word of nearness. See A. & G. 234, *a*; B. 144, REM. 4; G. 359; H. 391, 1. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of *quī, quae, quod*, refers to *Germānīs*, and is the subject-nom. of *incolunt*. For grammatical

- 15 incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. with whom they  
 dwell, whom with, continually war they wage. are incessantly  
 waging war: for  
 16 Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs which reason the  
 Which for, cause the Helvetii also the remaining Helvetii also ex-  
 17 Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidianīs cels, because the Gauls in valor, be-  
 Gauls in valor surpass, because almost in daily cause they fight  
 with the Germans

usage of the rel. pron., see note on *quādrum*, l. 2, above. — *trāns*, prep. with the acc. — *Rhēnum*, acc. of *Rhēnus*, -i, and follows the prep. *trāns*. This prep. is used after verbs of motion and verbs of rest. See *Trāns*, A. & G. 153, a, b; B. 120, 1; G. 416, 26; H. 433. The Rhine is a general boundary between Gaul and Germany.

LINE 15. *incolunt*, 3d pers. plur. of *incolō*, -ere, -uī, -cultum, 3; its subject-nom. is *quī*. — *quibuscum* (quibus + cum) = *with whom*. *quibus* is the abl. plur. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Germānīs*, and is governed by the prep. *cum* that is appended to it. The prep. *cum*, as an enclitic, is appended to all forms of the abl. of *quī*. See A. & G. 104, c; B. 87, 4, REM. 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 187, 2. — *continenter*, adv. (*continēns* from *con* + *tenēre* = *to hang together*, hence =) *connect- edly, continuously*. — *bellum*, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; direct obj. of *gerunt*. The original form was *duellum* (*duo*), denoting a conflict in which two parties were striving for the mastery. Compare English *duel*. — *gerunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of *gerō*, -ere, *gessī*, *gestūm*, 3; its subj. is the pron. *eī*, referring to *Belgae*, l. 9, above.

LINE 16. *Quā dē causā*. In this phrase *quā* is used adjectively, and agrees with the noun *causā*; it refers both to what is stated in the last clause of the preceding sentence and to what follows. The phrase as such is the herald of the following *quod*-clause. When a relative thus begins a sentence, it is best translated by a demonstrative with the conjunction *and* or *but*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610, REM. 1; H. 453. — *dē*. A monosyllabic prep. is often thus placed between a noun and its modifier. See A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 569, II. 1. — *causā*, abl. of *causa*, -ae, f.; it is in the abl. after the prep. *dē*. Observe its idiomatic use in the phrase, and consult A. & G. 153 under *dē*, c; B. 120, 2; G. 408, NOTE 4, and 417, 5; H. 434, and 434 under *dē*, end. *dē*, lit. in the phrase = *from*; but the best English for this phrase, standing at the head of the sentence, is: *and for this reason*. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, subj. of *praecedunt*. The Helvetii were a Celtic people whose territory was bounded by Mount Jura, Lake Geneva, the Rhone and the Rhine. — *quoque*, adv.; some regard it as a conj.; its position is after one or more words. See A. & G. 345, b; B. 123, REM. 5; G. 479; H. 569, III. — *reliquōs*, acc. plur. m. of adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; it limits *Gallōs*.

LINE 17. *Gallōs*, acc. plur. of *Galli*, -ōrum, m.; see l. 4, above; it is the direct obj. of *praecedunt*. — *virtūte*, abl. of *virtus*, -ūtis, f.; abl. of specification. See note on *linguā*, l. 5, above. *virtus* is derived from *vir*; hence = *manliness*. — *praecedunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *praecedō*, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, 3; here transitive, but sometimes intransitive (*prae* + *caedere* = lit. *to go before*). — *quod*, conj., but see note on *quod*, l. 9, above. — *ferē*, adv., modifies *cotidianīs* (derived from *ferō*, and denotes that which is brought near a thing; hence = *within a little, almost*). — *cotidianīs*, abl. plur. n. of *cotidianus*, -a, -um; another orthography is *quotidianus*, from *quotidiū* (*quot* + *diēs*); *cotidianīs* modifies *proeliis*.



in almost daily battles, while they are keeping them from their own borders, or themselves are waging war in their confines. One part	proeliis battles	cum with	Germānīs the Germans	contendunt, they contend,	cum <sup>18</sup> when
	aut	suīs	finibus	eōs prohibent,	aut <sup>19</sup>
	either (from)	their own	territory	them they keep off,	or
	ipsī	in	eōrum	finibus bellum gerunt. <sup>20</sup>	
	themselves	in	their	territory war they wage.	

LINE 18. *proeliis*, abl. plur. of *proelium*, -ī; abl. of manner. For grammatical references, see *linguā*, l. 4, above. (*prae* + *ire* = to go forward in a hostile manner.) Synonyms: *proelium* is the occasional action or skirmish between two forces; it sometimes, however, denotes a general contest. But *pugna* is the usual word to designate, in a general sense, any sort of contest, from fisticuffs to a pitched battle. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. This word in its present position is to be carefully discriminated from *cum*, a conjunction meaning *when*, or *as*, or *since*. The discrimination can only be made by sharply noting the construction. *cum* meaning *with*, and *cum* meaning *when* or *since* are in form precisely alike; but as *cum*, in the text, is in a clause which has its own connective *quod*, the inference, quick as thought, is that the *cum* of the text is a preposition. — *Germānīs*, abl. plur. of manner of *Germānī*, -ōrum. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 392, REM. 1; H. 419, III. Note that *Germānīs* is not from the adj., used as a noun, *germānus*, -a, -um, but from *Germānī*, GK. Γερμανοί, the Germans, a people occupying the territory between the Rhine, the Danube and the Vistula, the modern Weichsel. — *contendunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *contendere*, -ere, *contendi*, *contentum*, 3; its subject-nom. is *ei*, i.e. *Helvētīi*. (*con* + *tendere* = (a) to stretch eagerly, (b) to go hastily, (c) to strive, i.e. with weapons, (d) to fight.) — *cum*, conj.; in narration denoting *time when*, it takes the imperf. and pluperf. subj.; in the other tenses, the ind. A. & G. 325; B. 220; G. 580; H. 521, I. *cum* here is a conjunction, because it introduces a clause (consisting of a verb, a direct object and a remote object) which requires a connective.

LINE 19. *aut* . . . *aut*, correlative conjunctions = *either* . . . *or*. These particles, thus used, generally denote that the difference is exclusive; if the difference is neither important nor exclusive, *vel* . . . *vel* are used. — *suīs*, abl. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *finibus*; it refers to the Helvētīi, the subject of the principal clause. Consult A. & G. 196; B. 80, REM. 2 and 3; G. 309; H. 449. — *finibus*, abl. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; abl. after *prohibent*, a verb of separation. A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, NOTE 3; H. 414. — *eōs*, acc. plur. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to the Germans, and is the direct obj. of *prohibent*. — *prohibent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *prohibere*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2 (*pro* + *habere*, lit. to hold before or off).

LINE 20. *ipsī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*; nom. plur. of *ipse*, -a, -um, subj. of *gerunt*; it is here an emphatic pron. of the 3d pers. Consult A. & G. 195, g; B. 85, REM. 1; G. 311, 2; H. 452. As to the declension of this pron., see grammatical references to *ipsōrum*, l. 3, above. — *in*, here takes the abl. plur. *finibus*. See A. & G. 153, on prep. *In*, 2; B. 120, 2; G. 418, b; H. 435, 1, end. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a pers. pron. of the 3d person. Note that, in this use, it corresponds to *their*, the possessive case, plur. of the pron. *he*. As to the position of *eōrum* between the prep. and its case, see A. & G. 344, g; B. 43, 2; G. 678, 4; H. 569, II. 3. — *finibus*, abl. plur. after *in*; for decl., see l. 19, above. — *bellum*, acc. of *bellum*, -i, n.; direct obj. of *gerunt*. See note on this word, l. 15, above. — *gerunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *gero*; its subj. is *ipsī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*. For principal parts of *gero*, see l. 15, above.

21	Eōrum	ūna	pars,	quam	Gallōs	obtinēre	of this country,
	Of these	one	part,	which	the Gauls	to occupy,	which we have
22	dictum	est,	initium	capit	ā	flūmine	said the Gauls occupy,
	it was said,		the beginning	takes	from	the river	begins at the Rhone river;
23	Rhodaṇō;	continētur	Garumnā	flūmine,	Oceanō,		it is bounded by the Garonne river, the ocean
	Rhone;	it is bounded	by the Garonne	river,	by the ocean,		and the territory of the Belgae;
24	finibus	Belgārum;	attingit	etiam	ab		on the side of the Sequani and the Helvetii it
	by the territory	of the Belgae;	it touches	also	on the side		also reaches to the Rhine river;
25	Sēquanīs	et	Helvētiīs	flūmen	Rhēnum;	vergit	
	of the Sequani	and	Helvetii	the river	Rhine;	it slopes	

LINE 21. **Eōrum**, see note, l. 20, above; partitive gen. after *pars*. Consult A. & G. 216, a, 1; B. 134; G. 368; H. 396, IV. Observe that the people are put by metonymy for the country. — **ūna**, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *pars*. For decl., see note, l. 2, above. — **pars**, *partis*, f., subject-nom. of *capit*, l. 22, below. — **quam**, rel. pron., acc. sing. f. of *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *pars*, and is the direct obj. of *obtinēre*. — **Gallōs**, for the decl. of the word, and a description of the Galli, see note, l. 4, above; *Gallōs* is subject-acc. of *obtinēre*. — **obtinēre**, pres. inf. act. of *obtinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -lentum, 2 (ob + *tenēre*, lit. to hold to something).

LINE 22. **dictum** est, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictum*, 3; it is here used impersonally; or, strictly, the object-clause *quam Gallōs obtinēre* is the subject. Consult A. & G. 330, a, 2; B. 180, REM. 1; G. 535; H. 538. Supply *ā mē* as the abl. of the agent. For what Caesar said in regard to the matter, see the first few lines, at the beginning of the chapter. — **initium**, acc. sing. of *initium*, -ī, n. (in + *ire*); direct obj. of *capit*. — **capit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *capīō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captum*, 3; its subj. is *pars*, above. — **ā**, see note on *ab*, l. 6, above. — **flūmine**, n., abl. after the prep. *ā*. For decl., see l. 7, above.

LINE 23. **Rhodaṇō**, abl. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; in apposition with *flūmine*. See A. & G. 183, 184; B. 36, 127; G. 321; H. 359, NOTE 2. — **continētur**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of *continēō*, -ēre, -uī, -lentum, 2 (con + *tenēre*, lit. to hold together; hence, passive, to be held together, to be bounded); its subj. is *pars*, to be supplied. — **Garumnā**, abl. of *Garumna*, -ae, m., an appositive. This river formed the boundary between Aquitania and Celtica. *Garumnā* = the modern Garonne. — **flūmine**, see l. 7, above; abl. of means. — **Oceanō**, abl. of *Oceanus*, -ī, m.; in the same grammatical construction as *flūmine*.

LINE 24. **finibus**, see l. 19, above; abl. of means. Note the omission of the conjunctions — *asyndeton* — and compare remarks and grammatical references on *linguā*, *institūtūs*, *lēgibus*, l. 5, above. — **Belgārum**, gen. plur. of *Belgae*; for decl., and an account of this people, see note on *Belgae*, l. 2, above; *Belgārum* limits *finibus*, as poss. gen. A. & G. 214, 1; B. 131, REM. 1; G. 362; H. 396, I. — **attingit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *attingō*, -ere, *atigī*, *tactum*, 3 (ad + *tangere*); its subj. is *pars* or *Gallia*. — **etiam**, usually taken as a conjunction (et + *iam*); it serves to add a notion = and also. But sometimes it has an adverbial force and = even. — **ab**, here = on the side of. See note on *ab*, l. 6, above.

LINE 25. **Sēquanīs**, abl. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; a Gallic clan occupying the territory between the river Arar and Mount Jura; abl. after the prep. *ab*. —

it slopes toward the north. The territory of the Belgae begins at the farthest boundaries of Celtic Gaul; it extends to the lower part of the Rhine river; it faces north-east. Aquitania

ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae  
toward the north. The Belgae from the farthest of Gaul  
finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem  
boundaries arise; they extend to the lower  
partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem  
part of the river Rhine; they look to the north  
et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā  
and the rising sun. Aquitania from the Garonne

et, see note on *et*, l. 7, above. — *Helvētiis*, abl. plur. connected by *et* with *Sēquanis*, and in the same grammatical construction. See note on *Helvētiis*, l. 16, above. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n., direct obj. of *attingit*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. of *Rhēnus*, -ī, m., an appositive. The river Rhine is, in general, a boundary between Gaul and Germany. — *vergit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *vergō*, -ere; perf. *versī* according to some critics; its subject is either *pars* or *Gallia*, to be supplied. *vergit* = *verges*, or *slopes*, i.e. the rivers generally flow in a northerly direction from the point of view of the Cevennes mountains.

LINE 26. *ad*, prep. with the acc. = *toward*. See note on *ad*, l. 11, above. — *septentrionēs*, acc. plur. of *septentriō*, -ōnis, m.; acc. after the prep. *ad* (*septem* + *triō*, the seven plow-oxen) = the stars in the Great Bear constellation, i.e. = *the north*. The word is found in the lexicons in the plur., but often occurs in the sing. See l. 28, below. Frequently the parts of the compound are separated by *imēs*. — *Belgae*, see note, l. 2, above. — *ab*, see note, l. 6, above. — *extrēmīs*, adj. abl. plur. of *exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*). The positive is rare, and generally is used in the plur. as a substantive, as e.g. *exterī* = *foreigners*. The adj. *extrēmīs* limits *finibus*. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; it, also, limits *finibus*. The Gaul here referred to is Celtic Gaul. Note the position of the gen. between the adj. and the noun it modifies; the usual order when a noun limited by a gen. has an adj. with it.

LINE 27. *finibus*, abl. plur. after the prep. *ab*. See note, l. 20, above. — *oriuntur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. tense of the deponent *orior*, *oriri*, *ortus*, 4. — *pertinent*, 3d pers. plur. of *pertineō*, -ēre, -ui, 2; see note on *pertinent*, l. 13, above; its subj. is *Belgae* understood. — *ad*, see note on *ad*, l. 11, above. — *inferiorem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative *inferior*. The adj. is thus compared: *inferus*, *inferior*, *infimus* (-imus); *inferiorem* modifies *partem*.

LINE 28. *partem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pars*, *partis*, f.; it follows the prep. *ad*. — *flūminis*, gen. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; it limits *partem*. — *Rhēnī*, gen. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.; see note on *Rhēnum*, l. 14, above; *Rhēnī* is in apposition with *flūminis*. — *spectant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *spectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subj. is *Belgae*, to be supplied. — *in*, prep., here with the acc. With *spectant* the prep. = *toward*; i.e. the territories of the Belgae from their southern boundary, or from the Province, look or lie toward the north and the rising sun, i.e. the east. — *septentrionem*, acc. sing. of *septentriō*, -ōnis, m.; the acc. follows *in*. See note on *septentrionēs*, l. 26, above.

LINE 29. *et*, see note on *et*, l. 7, above. — *orientem*, acc. sing. m. of the pres. participle *oriens* of the deponent verb *orior*, *oriri*, *ortus*, 4; the participle here limits *sōlem*. Observe that deponent verbs have the participles of both

30	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>ad</i>	<i>Pŷrēnaeōs</i>	<i>montēs</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>partem</i>	extends from the
	river	to	the Pyrenean	mountains	and	that	part	Garonne river
31	<i>Ōceanī,</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>ad</i>	<i>Hispaniam,</i>	<i>pertinet;</i>		to the Pyrenean
	of the ocean	which	is	near	Spain	extends;		mountains, and
32	<i>spectat</i>	<i>inter</i>	<i>occāsum</i>	<i>sōlis</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>septentrionēs.</i>		that part of the
	it looks	between	the setting	of the sun	and	the north.		ocean which is
								near Spain; it
								faces north-west.

voices. Consult A. & G. 135, a; B. 109, 2; G. 128; H. 231, 1. Observe further that the Belgian rivers, generally, flow north-east. See maps, and note the direction of *Sabis flūmen*, and other streams. — *sōlem*, acc. sing. of *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.; connected by *et* with *septentrionem*, and governed by *in*. With *sōl* compare the GK. ἥλιος, m., and GER. *Sonne*, f., and the English *sun*, m.; and observe that the ancient classic languages, and most of the modern languages in imitation of these languages, conceive of the sun as masculine from the notion of the greatness or power displayed; whereas the German conception must have arisen from the notion of the sun as a mother-source of being and life. — *Aquitānia*, -ae, f., subject-nom. of *pertinet*, l. 31, below. *Aquitania* = that part of *Gallia omnis* that lies between the *Garumna flumen* and the Pyrenees. — *ā*, see note on *ab*, l. 6, above; the prep. here governs *flūmine*. — *Garumnā*, abl. of *Garumna*, -ae, f.; see note on *Garumna*, l. 7, above. *Garumnā* is here an appositive.

LINE 30. *flūmine*, abl. after *ā*. For decl., see note on *flūmen*, l. 7, above; for case references, see those on *ab Aquitānīs*, l. 6, above. — *ad*, takes the acc. *montēs* after it. See note on *ad*, l. 11, above. — *Pŷrēnaeōs*, adj. acc. plur. of *Pŷrēnaeus*, -a, -um; it modifies *montēs*. — *montēs*, acc. plur. of *mōns*, *montis*, m.; acc. after *ad*; twenty-six prepositions take the acc. Observe that the first vowel in the stem of this word — *monti* — is short; that it is only to be conceived as long in the nom. and voc. cases. Consult A. & G. 18, f; G. 12, REM. 1, and 3, REM.; H. 16, I. 2. — *et*, conj., see l. 7, above. — *eam*, dem. adj. pron., acc. sing. f. of *is*, *ea*, *id*; it limits *partem*. — *partem*, acc. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; and is connected by *et* with *montēs*, and, like *montēs*, is governed by *ad*.

LINE 31. *Ōceanī*, gen. sing. of *Ōceanus*, -ī, m.; it limits *partem*. — *quae*, rel. pron., nom. sing. f. of *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *partem* as its antecedent, and is subj. of *est*. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; its subj. is *quae*. — *ad*, prep. with acc. — *Hispaniam*, acc. of *Hispania*, -ae, f.; in the text it is the acc. after the prep. *ad* which here = *near*, i.e. the Bay of Biscay. The phrase here is adjectival and predicative. For meaning of *ad* in such construction, see A. & G. 258, c, 2, NOTE 1; B. 173, 1; G. 337, 4; H. 380, I. — *pertinet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *pertineō*, -ēre, -uī, 2 (l. 13, above); its subject-nom. is *Aquitānia*, l. 29, above.

LINE 32. *spectat*, see *spectant*, l. 28, above; the subj. is *Aquitānia* understood. — *inter*, prep. with the acc. — *occāsum*, acc. of *occāsus*, -ūs, m. (ob + cadere, *to fall down*; hence lit. the noun = *a falling down*); *occāsum* is in the acc. after the prep. *inter*. A. & G. 152, a; B. 120, 1; G. 416, 13; H. 433. — *sōlis*, gen. of *sōl*, m., limiting the noun *occāsum*. See *sōlem*, l. 29, above. — *et*, see note on *et*, l. 7, above. — *septentrionēs*, acc. plur. of *septentriō*, -ōnis, m., connected by *et* with *occāsum*, and governed by *inter*. See note on *septentrionēs*, l. 26, above. The reader will note that the point of observation is the *Cevenna Mōns*, the north-western boundary of the Roman Province. From this mountain-range the rivers rise, and flow in a north-westerly direction.

II. Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix was by far the noblest-born and the richest man. He, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, influ-

II. Apud Helvētios longē nōbilissimus fuit<sup>1</sup>  
 Among the Helvetii by far the noblest was  
 et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et<sup>2</sup>  
 and the richest Orgetorix. He, Marcus Messala and  
 M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditatē<sup>3</sup>  
 Marcus Piso being the consuls, of the sovereignty by a desire

LINE 1. **Apud**, prep. with the acc. instead of the partitive gen. after the adj. *nōbilissimus*. See A. & G. 153; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2; H. 397, NOTE 3. — **Helvētios**, see note on *Helvētii*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **longē**, adv., positive degree, comparative *longius*, superl. *longissimē*. As to formation of adverbs from adjectives, see l. 11, Chap. I. *longē* modifies and strengthens the superl. *nōbilissimus*. Consult A. & G. 93, *b*, middle; B. 68, REM. 4; G. 303; H. 170, 2, (2). — **nōbilissimus** is the superl. degree of *nōbilis*, -ior, -issimus (derived from *nōscere*, to know; hence *nōbilis* = *known*, *noted*); predicate-adj. after *fuit*. — **fuit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of irr. verb *sum*. For parts, see l. 1, Chap. I; its subj. is *Orgetorix*.

LINE 2. **et**, cop. conj., joins words of equal importance. — **ditissimus**, adj., superl. degree; positive *dives*; comparative *divitior*, or *ditiōr*; connected by *et* with *nōbilissimus*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **Orgetorix**, -torigis, m., an Helvetian chief. *Orgetorix* is subject-nom. of *fuit*. Observe its emphatic position, and consult A. & G. p. 389, REM.; B. 22. 6; G. 673, (a); H. 561, II. The unemphatic order of the words is: *Orgetorix fuit vir apud Helvētios longē nōbilissimus et ditissimus*. — **Is**, expressed for emphasis and rhetorical effect; it is subject-nom. of *fēcit*, below. — **M.**, an abbreviation for the praenomen *Marcus*. Here, of course, the form is *Marcō*, abl. — **Messālā**, abl. sing. of *Messāla*, -ae, m. The full name was Marcus Valerius Messāla: Marcus, the praenomen, Valerius, the nomen, and Messāla, the cognomen. Messāla was consul 61 B.C. The grammatical construction is the abl. absolute with *cōsulibus*, which see, l. 3, below. — **et** connects *Marcō Messālā* with *Marcō Pisōne*.

LINE 3. **M. Pisōne** is in the same grammatical construction as *M. Messālā*, i.e. both the names are in the abl. absolute with *cōsulibus*. The full name of *Pisō*, -ōnis, m., was Marcus Papius Pisō Calpurniānus. Calpurniānus denotes the gens. — **cōsulibus**, abl. plur. of *cōsul*, -is, m. The construction is abl. absolute with *M. Messālā et M. Pisō*, denoting time. Consult A. & G. 255, *a*; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4. In this construction, the noun and participle, or adj. or other noun form an essentially predicative proposition. If *ēns* were in use, as the present participle of *sum*, the form of the sentence would be: *M. Messālā et M. Pisōne entibus cōsulibus* = lit. *M. Messāla and M. Pisō BEING the consuls. cōsulibus* is in the plural because referring to two nouns. See A. & G. 185, *b*; B. 67. 3, REM. 1; G. 285; H. 362, 3, and 364, end. Observe (1) that predicate-nouns are sometimes used without a verb, or without even a participle. Observe (2) that the consuls were the two presidents of the Roman state, elected annually by the Roman people; and (3) that their names are given to indicate the date of an event. Orgetorix's conspiracy, accordingly, occurred in 61 B.C.; or, which is the same thing, in A.U.C. 693; for 754 — 693 = 61. On reckoning time, see A. & G. p. 425; G. p. 492. — **rēgnī**, objective gen. sing. of *rēgnum*, -ī, n. (*rēx*, king); it limits *cupiditatē*. — **cupiditatē**, abl. sing. of *cupiditās*, -ātis, f.; abl. of cause. A. & G. 245, and *b*; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 2; H. 416, NOTE 1.

4	inductus	coniūratiōnem	nōbilitātis	fēcit	et	enced by an excessive zeal for royal power, formed a conspiracy of the nobles, and persuaded the citizens to migrate from their territory with all their
	being led,	a conspiracy	of the nobility	made	and	
5	cīvitātī	persuāsīt,	ut dē	finibus suis	cum	
	the state	persuaded,	that from boundaries their,	with		
6	omnibus	cōpiis	exīrent:	perfacile	esse,	
	all	resources	they should go out:	very easy	to be,	

LINE 4. **inductus**, perf. pass. participle of *indūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3; it limits the subj. *is*, l. 2, above. — **coniūratiōnem**, acc. sing. of *coniūratiō*, -ōnis, f. (con + iūrāre = to swear together). — **nōbilitātis**, gen. sing. of *nōbilitās*, -ātis, f. (*nōbilis*, from *nōscere*, see l. 1, above). Here the abstract is used for the concrete: *nōbilitātis* = *nōbilitium*, i.e. he formed a conspiracy of the nobles. — **fēcit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; its subj. is *is*, l. 2, above.

LINE 5. **cīvitātī**, dat. sing. of *cīvītās*, -ātis. Here too the abstract is for the concrete; *cīvītātī* = *cīvibus*. For the dat. case after *persuāsīt*, see A. & G. 227, and NOTE 1; B. 142; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II. — **persuāsīt**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *persuādēō*, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 (per + suādēre = lit. to advise thoroughly; the *per* is merely intensive). *persuāsīt* is connected by *et* with *fēcit*, and has the same subject. — **ut**, conj. = that in a subjunctive-clause; but a *purpose*-clause is, ordinarily, best rendered into English by the infinitive. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. — **finibus**, abl. plur. of *fīnis*, -is, m.; abl. after prep. *dē*. — **suis**, abl. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suius*, -a, -um; it agrees with *finibus*; it refers to *cī* understood, i.e. *Helvētī* = the omitted subject of the subordinate clause — *ut . . . exīrent*. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. *omnibus*.

LINE 6. **omnibus**, abl. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, see note on *omnis*, l. 1, Chap. I; *omnibus* limits *cōpiis*. — **cōpiis**, abl. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f. (con + ops; compare *inops*); in the sing. it = *plenty*; in the plur. = *resources*, *troops*. *cōpiis* is an abl. of accompaniment with *cum*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392, REM. 1; H. 419, I, and III. 1, 1). In military phrases *cum* is generally omitted if the noun has a modifier, but not always. — **exīrent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *exēō*, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -itum, irr.; it agrees with *Helvētī* understood; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, and NOTE 1; H. 498, I. Observe (1) that the noun-clause, *ut . . . exīrent*, is the direct obj. of *persuāsīt*; (2) that *exīrent* (*ex* + *īre*) here takes after it *dē* with the abl., but also admits of the abl. with *ab* or *ex*, and even the abl. alone, Caesar himself being the voucher. — **perfacile**, acc. n. of the adj. *perfacilis*, -e (per, intensive = *very* + *facilis*); predicate after *esse*. Observe here the change from direct into indirect discourse. In the direct form, the main clause would be: *perfacile est, cum virtūte omnibus praestemus, totius Galliae imperiō potiri*. But note carefully that when the thought takes the indirect form, or is put in the *oratiō obliqua*, the infinitive clause *perfacile esse* depends on *persuāsīt*, or on *dixit* (= verb of saying) implied in *persuāsīt*, and that, therefore, *praestemus* in direct discourse is changed in the indirect discourse into the imperfect subjunctive by the law of sequence of tenses. Consult A. & G. 336, and 336. B; B. 245. 1, (a), (b); G. 508, 2, and 654; H. 522, 525. — **esse**, for principal parts, see under *est*, l. 1, Chap. I.

*Note*. — Indirect discourse is reporting what one has himself thought, or what another has thought, in a species of noun-clause; e.g. *dicit montem ab hostibus tenērī*.

effects. He said that it was very easy, since they surpassed all the Gauls in valor, to win the sover- eignty of entire Gaul. He per- suaded them to this migration the more easily, because the Hel- vetii are hemmed	cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, tōtius 7 since in valor all (the Gauls) they excelled, of entire Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc 8 Gaul the supreme power to win. That by this facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique 9 the more easily them he persuaded, because on every side loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā 10 of the place by nature, the Helvetii are hemmed in: one
--	--

LINE 7. *cum*, conj. — causal — and hence followed by the subjunctive. A. & G. 326; B. 198, (c); G. 579, II. (b); H. 517. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtus*, -tūtis, f.; abl. of specification. A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *omnibus*, dat. plur. m.; it limits *Gallīs* understood. *Gallīs*, if expressed, would be dat. after the *prae* in the compound *praestarent*. — *praestarent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *praestō*, -stāre, -stīti, -stitum and -stātum, 1 (prae + stāre = lit. to stand before, i.e. to be superior to). — *tōtius*, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um. *tōtius* modifies *Galliae*. For list of words having the gen. in -ius and dat. in -i, see grammatical references to *ūnum*, l. 2, Chap. I. Synonyms: *tōtus* = an original whole that may be resolved into parts; whereas *omnis* = a whole formed of original parts.

LINE 8. *Galliae*, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; see note, l. 1, Chap. I. *Galliae* limits *imperiō*. — *imperiō*, abl. sing. of *imperium*, -i, n.; abl. after *potiri*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I. Observe that *potiri* is followed sometimes by the gen., and sometimes (rarely) by the acc. With the abl., as in the text with *imperiō*, it means to get possession of the sovereignty; with the gen. the meaning would be: to gain the mastery of. Consult A. & G. 223, a; B. 167, 1, REM.; G. 407, NOTE 2, (d); H. 410, V. 3. — *potiri*, pres. inf. of deponent *potior*, -iri, -itus, 4. This inf. with its modifiers is the subject-acc. of *esse*. A. & G. 329; B. 86; G. 422; H. 538. Note that while this inf. is the subject-acc. of *esse*, if the discourse had been direct, the same inf. would have been the subject-nom. of *est*. — *Id*, a colorless pron. referring to the thought contained in the clause *ut . . . exirent*; *id* is the direct obj. of *persuāsit*. A. & G. 227, f; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 344; H. 384, II. — *hōc*, abl., measure of difference after *facilius*. *hōc* is the herald of the following *quod*-clause. Consult A. & G. 102, f, and 250, NOTE; B. 84, REM. 3, and 164; G. 403; H. 423. The older grammars regard *hōc* in such construction as an abl. of cause.

LINE 9. *facilius*, adv., comparative degree of *facile*, superl. *facillimē*. For the formation of adverbs from adjectives, see A. & G. 148; B. 117, 6; G. 91, (c); H. 306. — *eīs*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d person. *eīs* is dat. after *persuāsit*. A. & G. 227, and NOTE 1; B. 142; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II. — *persuāsit*, for parts, see l. 5, above. — *quod*, conj. (really an acc. of effect of rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*), but in use here as a conj. and = *because*, introducing a statement or a fact. The *quod*-clause is an adverbial modifier of *persuāsit*. — *undique*, adv. (*unde* + *que* = *wheresoever*) = as used here, *on all sides*.

LINE 10. *loci*, gen. sing. of *locus*, -i, m. in the sing., but m. or n. in the plur., but with difference of meaning: *loci* in the plur. = *single places*; *loca* = *connected places* — *regions*; *loci* in the text is gen. sing., and limits *nātūrā*. — *nātūrā*, abl. sing. of *nātūra*, -ae, f.; *nātūrā* is the abl. of cause (derived from *nāscor*, *nātus*, 3).



11	ex	parte	flūmine	Rhēnō	lātissimō	atque	in, on all sides, by the nature of their country: on one side, by the Rhine river very broad and very deep, which separ- ates the Hel- vetian territory from the Ger- mans; on the sec- ond side, by the very lofty Jura
	on,	side	by the river	Rhine	very broad	and also	
12	altissimō,	quī	agrum	Helvētium	ā	Germānis	
	very deep,	which	the territory	Helvetian	from the	Germans	
13	dīvidit,	alterā	ex	parte	monte	Iūrā	
	separates;	the second	on,	side	by Mount	Jura	
14	altissimō,	quī	est	inter	Sēquanōs	et	
	very high,	which	is	between	the Sequani	and	

Note that in nouns of the first declension the ultima of the abl. is always long; in the nom. and voc. it is short. — **Helvētīi**, nom. plur. m., subj. of *continentur*. See note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **continentur**, 3d pers. plur. of *contineō*, -ēre, -uī, -entum, 2 (con + tenēre). Note that here this verb in the pass. voice denotes that the people are held together, i.e. are hemmed in; while in l. 23, Chap. I, the same verb indicates that the territory is held together, i.e. is bounded. — **ūnā**, abl. sing. of *unus*, -a, -um; for decl., see *ūnām*, l. 2, Chap. I; *ūnā* limits *parte*.

LINE 11. **ex**, prep. with the abl.; it has the form *ē* which is only used before consonants, whereas *ex* is used before either vowels or consonants. A monosyllabic prep. is often thus placed between a noun and its modifier. A. & G. 345, a, 2; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 569, II. 1. — **parte**, abl. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; it is in the abl. after the prep. *ex*. (*ūnā ex parte*: compare *quā dē causā*, l. 16, Chap. I.) — **flūmine**, abl. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; abl. of means. — **Rhēnō**, abl. of *Rhenus*, -i, m.; in apposition with *flūmine*. — **lātissimō**, abl. sing. of the adj. *lātissimus*, -a, -um; superl. degree of *lātus*, -ior, -issimus; superl. of eminence. See A. & G. 93, b; B. 68, REM. 4; G. 302; H. 444, 1. — **atque**, conj., see note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 12. **altissimō**, abl. sing. of the adj. *altissimus*, -a, -um; superl. degree of *altus*, -ior, -issimus. *altissimō* is connected by *atque* with *lātissimō*, and is in the same grammatical construction. Note that *altus* = high or low, according to the conception of the point of observation. — **quī**, rel. pron., nom. sing. m., refers to the appositive *Rhēnō* rather than to *flūmine*; *quī* is subject-nom. of *dīvidit*. — **agrum**, acc. sing. of *ager*, *agri*, m., direct obj. of *dīvidit*. *ager* denotes the open country — the fields; whereas *finis* in the sing. = a boundary, in the plur. = boundaries, i.e. territory with limits. — **Helvētium**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um; it limits *agrum*. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. See note on *ab*, l. 6, Chap. I. — **Germānis**, abl. plur. after prep. *ā*. See note on *Germānis*, l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 13. **dīvidit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dīvideō*, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — **alterā**, abl. sing. f. of *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*, gen. *alterius*, dat. *alterī*. The gen. *alterius* is usually accented on the antepenult. *alterā* modifies *parte*. Synonyms: *alter* = the one, the other of two; whereas *alius* = other, another, of an indefinite number. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. See note on *ex parte*, l. 11, above. — **monte**, abl. sing. of *mōns*, *montis*, m. *monte* is the abl. of means after *continentur*, l. 10, above. — **Iūrā**, abl. sing. of *Iūra*, -ae, m. *Iūrā* is in apposition with *monte*. The *Iūra* is a mountain-range, extending from the Rhine to the Rhone.

LINE 14. **altissimō**, see note on *altissimō*, l. 12, above. — **quī**, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron.; its antecedent is *monte*, and *quī* is the subject-nom. of *est*. See

mountain-range, which lies be- tween the Sequani and the Helvetii; on the third side, by Lake Geneva and the Rhone river, which separates our province from the Helvetii. From this state of things,	Helvētiōs,      tertiā      lacū      Lemannō      et 15 the Helvetii;   on the third (side) by Lake      Leman      and
	flūmine      Rhodanō,      quī      prōvinciam      nostram 16 the river      Rhone,      which      province      our,
	ab      Helvētiīs      dīvidit.      His      rēbus 17 from      the Helvetii      separates.      Because of these      things,
	fiēbat,      ut      et      minus      lātē      vagārentur 18 it came to pass      that      both      less      widely      they roamed

note on *est*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *inter*, prep. with the acc. *Sēquanōs*. — *Sēquanōs*, acc. pl. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; acc. after the prep. *inter*. The *Sēquanī* were a Gallic clan occupying the territory between the river Arar — the modern Saône — and Mount Jura.

LINE 15. *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvētiī*, -ōrum, m., connected by *et* with *Sēquanōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. See note on *Helvētiōs*, l. 1, above. — *tertiā*, abl. sing. f. of ordinal-adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; supply *ex parte*. *tertiā* agrees with *parte* thus supplied; and *parte* thus supplied is governed by the prep. *ex* understood. — *lacū*, abl. sing. of *lacus*, -ūs, m. *lacū* is an abl. of means after *continentur*, l. 10, above. — *Lemannō*, abl. sing. of *Lemannus*, -ī, m. *Lemannō* is an appositive. The Leman Lake here mentioned is the modern Lake Geneva situated between Switzerland and the recently acquired territories of France; its length in crescent-form is rather more than fifty miles; its greatest breadth eight miles.

LINE 16. *flūmine*, abl. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; connected by *et* with *lacū*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Rhodanō*, see note on *Rhodanō*, l. 23, Chap. I. — *quī*, rel. pron., refers to the appositive *Rhodanō* as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *dīvidit*. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the direct obj. of *dīvidit*. The reference is to the Roman Province in the south-east part of *Gallia omnis*. — *nostram*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; it limits *prōvinciam*.

LINE 17. *ab*, prep. with the abl. See note on *ab*, l. 6, Chap. I. — *Helvētiīs*, abl. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Helvētiīs* is in the abl. after the prep. *ab*. For description, see note on *Helvētiī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *dīvidit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dīvidō*, -ere, -visi, -visum, 3. — *his*, abl. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it modifies *rēbus*. — *rēbus* is the abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f. *rēbus* is abl. of cause. See A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416.

LINE 18. *fiēbat*, 3d pers. sing. of the imperf. ind. of *fiō*, *ferī*, *factus*, used as pass. of *faciō*. *fiēbat* is used impersonally, or, strictly, the following *ut* . . . *possent* is the subject. — *ut*, conj. = *that*. — *et* . . . *et* = strictly, *both* . . . *and*; it is often the better way to omit the first *ei* in the translation. — *minus*, adv., comparative degree of *parum*, superl. *minimē*. *minus* modifies *lātē*. — *lātē*, adv. (*lātus*, wide); it modifies *vagārentur*. — *vagārentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *vagor*, -ārī, -ātus, deponent; its subject-nom. is *ei*, i.e. *Helvētiī*. *vagārentur* is subjunctive of result after *ut*; i.e. the clause *ut* . . . *vagārentur* is a noun-clause, and subj. of *fiēbat*. Consult A. & G. 332, a, 2; B. 201, REM. 1, (e); G. 553, 3; H. 501, I.

19	et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre	it resulted that they wandered the less widely, and could the less easily bring war upon the neighboring clans; in which respect these men so fond of wag-
	and less easily upon the neighbors war to bring	
20	possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī	were they able; which on, ground men of warring
	were they able; which on, ground men of warring	
21	cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō	eager, with great grief were affected. For
	eager, with great grief were affected. For	

LINE 19. **minus**, adv.; it modifies *facile*. — **facile**, adv., comparative *facilius*, superl. *facillimē*. For formation of adverbs from adjectives, see A. & G. 148; B. 117, 6; G. 91, (c); H. 306. *facile* modifies *inferre*. — **finitimis**, dat. plur. m. of the adj. *finitimus*, -a, -um (derived from *fīnis*); in the plur. used as a subst. *finitimis* is dat. plur. after the *in* in the compound *inferre*. A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386, 1. — **bellum**, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; *bellum* is the acc. of the direct obj. of *inferre*. Observe that the dat. after this verb depends on the prepositional part of the compound, and the acc. upon the strictly verbal part — *ferre*. — **inferre**, pres. inf. act. of *īnferō*, *ferre*, -tuli, ill- or in-lātum. *inferre* is a complementary inf. depending on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, 2.

LINE 20. **possent** is 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); it is connected by *et* with *vagārentur*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — **quā**, at the beginning of a sentence = *et cā*. See A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610, REM. 1; H. 453. *quā* limits *parte*. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only; *ex* before vowels and consonants). — **parte**, abl. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; *parte* is in the abl. after *ex*. See note on *quā dē causā*, l. 16, Chap. I. *quā ex parte* = lit. *on which part or side*; more freely the phrase = *and in this respect*. The older reading here is: *quā dē causā*. The phrase *quā ex parte* is a *locutiō vexatīva*. The text and context show it is to be explained by what immediately follows, and = *in which respect* — being men fond of war — they had great vexation. — **hominēs**, nom. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f. *hominēs* is the subject-nom. of *afficiēbantur*; or, better perhaps, taken as an appositive to *eī*, the subject; i.e. *they as men*. Synonyms: *homō* is the generic term for *man*; *vir* is the special designation = *the man of courage, the hero*. — **bellandī**, gen. of the gerund *bellandum*, -dī, -dō, -dum, -dō. This neuter verbal noun occurs only in the gen., dat., acc. and abl. cases. This gerund is formed from the first stem of *bellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, thus: *bella* + *ndī*, -*ndō*, -*ndum*, -*ndō*. *bellandī* is objective gen. after the adj. *cupidī*. A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, I; G. 428; H. 542, I. The adjectives that take the gen. of the gerund denote desire, knowledge, recollection, and their contraries.

LINE 21. **cupidī**, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *cupidus*, -a, -um (*cupere*, to desire). *cupidī* is an attributive of *hominēs*, but = the relative predicative clause: *who were desirous*. — **māgnō**, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*. *māgnō* modifies *dolōre*. — **dolōre** is the abl. sing. of *dolor*, -ōris, m.; it is an abl. of manner. A. & G. 248; B. 168, REM. 1; G. 399; H. 419, III. — **afficiēbantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. pass. of *af(d)ficiō*, -ere, *fecī*, -*fectum*, 3 (ad + *facere*, lit. *to do to one something*, i.e. *to affect him in some way*). — **Prō**, prep. with the abl. = *for, in view of*.

ing war were affected with great discontent. Moreover, considering their large number of men and their reputation for prowess in war, they thought that they had too narrow limits which extended	multitūdine	autem	hominum	et	prō	glōriā	22
	<i>the large number,</i>	<i>moreover,</i>	<i>of men</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>for the glory</i>		
	belli	atque	fortitūdinis	angustōs	sē	23	
	<i>of war</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>of bravery</i>	<i>narrow</i>	<i>themselves</i>		
	fīnēs	habēre	arbitrābantur,	quī	in	24	
	<i>boundaries</i>	<i>to have</i>	<i>they thought,</i>	<i>which</i>	<i>in</i>		
	longitūdinem	mīlia	passuum	ducenta	et	25	
	<i>length</i>	<i>thousands</i>	<i>of paces</i>	<i>two hundred</i>	<i>and</i>		

LINE 22. **multitūdine**, abl. sing. of *multitūdō*, -inis, f. (*multus*); abl. after *prō*. — **autem**, a weak adversative conj., usually = *but*. Here, however, it = *moreover*. — **hominum**, gen. plur. of *homō*, -inīs, m.; it limits *multitūdine*. — **et**, cop. conj., here joins the phrases as if of equal importance. — **prō**, note how the notions are kept quite distinct by the repetition of the prep. — **glōriā**, abl. sing. of *gloria*, -ae, f.; abl. after *prō*.

LINE 23. **belli**, gen. poss. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; it limits *gloria*. The phrase *prō gloriā belli* = lit. *for war's glory*. — **atque**, adds a more important notion = *and also*. — **fortitūdinis**, gen. sing. of *fortitūdō*, -inis, f. Observe that *belli atque fortitūdinis* = *bellicae fortitūdinis* (hendiadys). See note on *hūmānitāte*, l. 10, Chap. I. — **angustōs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *angustus*, -a, -um; *angustōs* is an attributive of *fīnēs*. — **sē**, acc. plur. of pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; *sē* is here the subject-acc. of *habēre*.

LINE 24. **fīnēs**, acc. plur. of *fīnis*, -is, m. *fīnēs* is the direct obj. of *habēre*. — **habēre** is the pres. inf. act. of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2. — **arbitrābantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of deponent *arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; its subject-nom. is the pron. *eī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*. Note that the positive *angustos* in l. 23, above, with the preceding *prō* phrases expresses disproportion; i.e. indicates limits too narrow for their number. Vide Gildersleeve's Lat. Gram. § 289, REM. The direct form of the acc.-clause is: *angustōs nōs fīnēs habēmus*. — **quī**, rel. pron., nom. plur. m.; it refers to *fīnēs*, the obj. of *habēre*, as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *patēbant*, l. 27, below. Here the pron. seems to = *since*. Causal propositions indeed generally take the subjunctive, but a statement viewed as fact admits of the indicative with *quī*. Consult A. & G. NOTE immediately preceding 321, under the caption 5. *Causal Clauses*; B. 198, REM. 2; G. 626; H. 517, 2. — **in**, prep. with acc. and abl.; here with the acc. See grammatical references, l. 1, Chap. I, end.

LINE 25. **longitūdinem**, acc. sing. of *longitūdō*, -inis, f. (*longus*); acc. after *in*. — **mīlia**, acc. plur. of adj. *mille*, indeclinable in the sing., but in the plur. it is declinable, and used as a neuter noun. *mīlia* is here an acc. of extent of space. A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. Observe that the form *millia* is used in some editions instead of *mīlia*. — **passuum**, gen. plur. of *passus*, -ūs, m.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. A. & G. 216, a, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. *mīlia passuum* = lit. *thousands of paces*; i.e. about four hundred feet less than an English mile. The phrase may be elegantly rendered into English by our word *mile*, although it should be borne in mind that one Roman mile = ten-elevenths of an English mile. — **ducenta** (duo + centum), acc. plur. n. of *ducenti*, -ae, -a; it agrees with *mīlia*. — **et**, cop. conj., connects the two cardinals. In some texts, this numeral is expressed by CC.

26	quadrāgintā, forty	in in	lātītūdinem breadth	centum a hundred	et and	merely two hundred and forty miles in length, and one hundred and eighty in breadth.
27	octōgintā eighty	patēbant. extended.				
1	III. His By these things	rēbus led	adductī and	et by the counsel	auctōritāte III. Influenced	by these considerations, and persuaded by the counsel of Orgetorix, the Hel-
2	Orgetorigis of Orgetorix	permōtī moved	cōstituērunt they determined	ea, those things		

LINE 26. *quadrāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.; it is connected by *et* with *ducenta*, and limits *mīlia* also. *quadrāgintā* is sometimes expressed by XL. Observe that of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declined; but that from *quattuor* to *centum* the cardinals are indeclinable. — *in*, prep. with acc.; for grammatical references, see l. 1, Chap. I. — *lātītūdinem*, acc. sing. of *latitūdō*, -inis, f. (*lātus*, wide); acc. after prep. *in*. — *centum*, an indecl. num. adj.; sometimes represented by C.

LINE 27. *octōgintā*, an indecl. num. adj.; sometimes represented by LXXX. These adjectives limit *mīlia*, to be supplied. — *patēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *pateō*, -ēre, -uī, 2, intrans.; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*, l. 24, above.

*Note*. — Let the reader bear in mind that (a) this multitude was, according to Chap. XXIX, about 263,000 of those *quī arma ferre possent*; (b) that the boundaries of Helvetia extended in *longitūdinem* from the Jura range of mountains to Lake Constance; (c) that the boundaries extended in *latitūdinem* from Basle to the Lepontine Alps.

LINE 1. *Hīs*, abl. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*. *Hīs* is an attributive of *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f. *rēbus* is an abl. of cause. A. & G. 245, and 2. b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. So far as the form goes, *rēbus* might be in the dat. case, but we infer that it is in the abl. of cause, because we know that intrans. and pass. verbs, and pass. participles of emotion usually take the cause in the abl. case. — *adductī*, perf. pass. participle of *adducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 = *having been led*, or *being led*, or simply *led*. *adductī* agrees with *Helvētī*, the omitted subj. of *cōstituērunt*. — *et*, cop. conj., connects *adductī* and *permōtī*. — *auctōritāte*, abl. of subjective cause after *permōtī*.

LINE 2. *Orgetorigis*, gen. sing. of *Orgetorix*, -igis, m.; limits *auctōritāte*. *Orgetorix* was a Helvetian nobleman. Observe that the nom. case *Orgetorix* is formed by adding *s* to the stem *Orgetorig*; the final *g*, a palatal, uniting with *s* forms *x*. Compare *rēs*, stem *reg*, and consult A. & G. 44; B. 46, II, 1; G. 50 and 52; H. 30, and 59, 1, 3). — *permōtī*, nom. plur. m. of perf. pass. participle *permōtus*, -a, -um, of the verb *permōveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 (per, intensive = *very* + *movēre*). *permōtī* agrees with *Helvētī*, the omitted subj. of *cōstituērunt*. — *cōstituērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūm, 3. Observe that the pres. stem and the perf. stem of this verb are alike. — *ea*, acc. neuter plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; direct obj. of *comparāre*; *ea* agrees with the word for *things* to be supplied; or, in other words, the pron. is used substantively. See A. & G. 189, b; B. 60, REM.; G. 204, NOTE 2; H. 441, 1.

vetii determined to provide such things as were necessary for the expedition: to buy as large a number as possible of horses and carts; to sow as many fields as possible, in order that they might	quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, 3 which to going forth pertained, to prepare,
iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum 4 of beasts of burden and of carts as much as the greatest	
numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās 5 number to purchase, sowings as much as the greatest	
facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī 6 to make, that on the journey a plenty of corn	

LINE 3. **quae**, nom. plur. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but not in case. *quae* is subject-nom. of *pertinērent*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **proficiscendum**, acc. of the gerund of the verb *proficiscor*, -i, *profectus*, deponent, 3; the gerund is in the acc. after the prep. *ad*. Consult A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III. *ad proficiscendum* = lit. *to the going forth*. — **pertinērent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *pertineō*, -ēre, -ui (per + *tenēre* = lit. *to stretch through to a place*; hence *pertinēre* = *to reach, to extend, to pertain to anything*). *pertinērent* is in the subjunctive mode, because it expresses the thought of the *Helvētīi*, not Caesar's thought. Consult A. & G. 341, d; B. 235; G. 628; H. 528, 1. *quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent* = *which things (they said) pertained to their departure*. This is a good example of what is styled informal indirect discourse. — **comparāre**, pres. inf. complementary of *comparō*, 1. *comparāre* completes the meaning of *constituērunt* without a subject-acc. See A. & G. 271; B. 86, 2; G. 423, 1 and 2; H. 533.

LINE 4. **iūmentōrum**, gen. plur. of *iūmentum*, -i, n.; it limits *numerum*. (Contracted from *iūgmentum* = *iūgum* + *mentum*.) — **carrōrum**, gen. plur. of either *carrus*, -i, m., or of *carrum*, -i, n.; connected by *et* with *iūmentōrum*, and in the same grammatical construction. Note that this noun of two genders is called a heterogeneous noun. See A. & G. 78, 2; B. 50, 1; G. 67; II. 144. — **quam**, adv., modifies *māximum*; *quam* is really an acc. of specification of the rel. *quī, quae, quod* = *in what way, how*. Further, in the use of *quam* with the superl., it is a correlative to *tam*. The full expression is: *tam māgnum quam māximum numerum* = *so great as the greatest number*; i.e. as great as possible. — **māximum**, acc. sing. m. of adj. *māximus*, -a, -um. *māximum* is superl. degree of *māgnus*, comparative *māior*; it limits *numerum*.

LINE 5. **numerum** is acc. sing. of *numerus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *coēmere*. — **coēmere** is pres. inf. act. of *coēmō*, *coēmere*, -ēmī, -ēptum, 3 (con, intensive + *emere* = lit. *to buy up*). The diaeresis shows that the vowels do not coalesce as a diphthong. *coēmere* is also a complementary inf. depending on *constituērunt*. — **sēmentēs**, acc. plur. of *sēmentis*, -is, f. (*sēmen*, seed). Some editions have here *sēmentis*, another form of the acc. plur. of *i*-stems. *sēmentēs* is the direct obj. of *facere*. — **quam**, see *quam*, l. 4, above. — **māximās**, acc. plur.; agrees with *sēmentēs*; see *māximum*, l. 4, above.

LINE 6. **facere**, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, 3; complementary, and depends on *constituērunt*. — **ut**, conj. = *that*. — **in**, prep. with acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. — **itinere**, abl. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. after prep. *in*. The nom. *iter* is formed from the stem *itiner*, without *s*, by dropping *i* and *n* from

7	suppeteret,	cum	proximīs	cīvitātibus	pācem	have a plenty of corn during the journey; and to	
	<i>might be in store,</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>the nearest</i>	<i>states</i>	<i>peace</i>	establish peace	
8	et	amicitiā	cōfirmāre.	Ad	eās	rēs	and friendship to confirm. For these things with the nearest states. They
	<i>and friendship</i>		<i>to confirm.</i>	<i>For</i>	<i>these</i>	<i>things</i>	thought that a period of two years was suffi-
9	cōficiendās	biennium	sibi	satis	esse		
	<i>to be done</i>	<i>the space of two years</i>	<i>for them</i>	<i>enough</i>	<i>to be</i>		

the middle of the stem. — **cōpia**, -ae, f., subject-nom. of *suppeteret*. *cōpia*e in the plur. = *resources, troops*. — **frūmentī**, gen. sing. of *frūmentum*, -ī, n.; it limits *cōpia*. (Contracted from *frūgi* [stem of *frūx, frūgis*] + *mentum*.)

LINE 7. **suppeteret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *suppetō, -ere, -fivi (-ī)*, -itum, 3, n. (sub + *petere* = lit. *to go to one*; hence, *to be near*). *suppeteret* is a neuter verb; supply *eīs*, dat. of possessor. A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. The dat. of the possessor occurs after *abest, deest, deſit, fore* and *suppetit*; it is in the subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. A. & G. 317; B. 200, (b); G. 544; H. 497, II. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. — **proximis**, abl. plur. f., adj., superl. of the comparative *propior*; it agrees with *civitātibus*. The comparative degree is derived from stem *prope* = *near*, not used as adj. The positive degree is wanting. See A. & G. 91; B. 74, I; G. 87, 8; H. 166. This list of every-day adjectives should be memorized. — **civitātibus**, abl. plur. of *civitas, -atis, f.*; abl. of manner with prep. *cum*. A. & G. 248; B. 168, REM. 1; G. 399; H. 419, III. (*civitas* is derived from *civis* + the ending *tās*, forming an abstract noun = *citizenship*.) — **pācem**, acc. sing. of *pāx, pācis, f.*; direct obj. of *cōfirmāre*. *pāx* is from the root *pac*, as seen in *pacīscor, pactus, 3*; hence = *a thing agreed to*, and, as a result, *peace*.

LINE 8. **et**, conj.; observe how it joins here words of equal importance. — **amicitiā**, acc. sing. of *amicitia, -ae, f.*; direct obj. of *cōfirmāre*. (*amicus* = *that loves, from amāre*.) — **cōfirmāre**, also complementary inf. of *cōfirmō, 1*, and depends on *cōstituērunt*, l. 2, above. Observe the omission of the conjunction before the complementary infinitives *facere* and *cōfirmāre* (asyndeton). — **Ad**, prep. with the acc. — **eās**, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is the attributive of *rēs*; it refers to the particulars mentioned in the preceding sentence. — **rēs** is the acc. plur. of *rēs, rei, f.*, and follows the prep. *ad*.

LINE 9. **cōficiendās**, gerundive or fut. pass. participle of *cōficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, 3*; it agrees in gender, number and case with *rēs*. The construction as a whole denotes purpose. Consult A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 544, and NOTE 2. The phrase *ad eās rēs cōficiendās* = lit. *for those things to be accomplished*. This construction is often best rendered by a participle in -ing with a direct obj. The gerundive phrase thus = *for accomplishing these things*. Compare note on *effeminandōs*, l. 13, Chap. I. — **biennium**, acc. sing. of *biennium, -ī, n.*; subject-acc. of *esse*. (*bis* + *annus*.) — **sibi**, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*. *sibi* is dat. of reference. A. & G. 235; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 1, 2. This dat. is usually called dat. of advantage or disadvantage (*dat. com. aut incom.*). — **satis**, usually an adv.; here it is an adj. in predicate-acc. after *esse*. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum, esse, fui, fut. participle futurus*. Observe that the infinitive-clause is the direct obj. of *dūxērunt*. This is an example of implied indirect discourse. What they thought, expressed in direct form, is: *biennium nobis satis est*.



cient for them to accomplish these things, and, accordingly, they established by law their migration for the third year. Orgetorix was chosen to consummate these plans. He took upon himself an	dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem 10 <i>they thought; for the third year the departure</i>
	lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās 11 <i>by law they establish. For these things to be accomplished</i>
	Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem 12 <i>Orgetorix is chosen. He upon himself a legation</i>
	ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere 13 <i>to the states took. On that journey</i>

LINE 10. *dūxērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, ductum, 3. Its subj. is, of course, *Helvētiī* to be supplied. *dūcere* = lit. (a) to lead, in the widest sense; (b) to lead in regard to one's will, hence, to influence; (c) to lead one in regard to time, to protract, put off; and (d) to lead or control one's own thought, to reckon, to think. — *in*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here with the acc. in an idiomatic phrase = *for*. — *tertium*, acc. sing. m. of the ordinal-adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; it limits *annum*. — *annum*, acc. sing. of *annus*, -ī, m.; the object of the prep. *in*. The phrase *in tertium annum* = *for the third year*. See A. & G. 259, b; B. 120. 3; G. 418. 1; H. 435, I, 2. — *profectiōnem*, acc. of *profectiō*, -ōnis, f.; direct obj. of *cōfirmant*. (Derived from *profectus*, the participle of *proficīscor*, -ī, 3, deponent; hence lit. = *a going away*.)

LINE 11. *lēge*, abl. of *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.; abl. of means. *By law* here means by a resolution of an assembly of the people. — *cōfirmant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-nom. is *Helvētiī* understood. — *Ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, see the phrase explained lines 8 and 9, above.

LINE 12. *Orgetorix*, -origis, m.; subject-nom. of *dēligitur*. — *dēligitur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, 3 (*dē* + *legere* = lit. to choose from). Observe that *dēligitur* is an historical pres.; so also *cōfirmant*, l. 11, above; while the very next sentence has the perfect. This use of the historical pres. for the historical perf. is common enough in all languages; it conduces to vivacity, but is at the expense of stateliness and dignity of historical narration. *Caution*: Do not confound *dēligō*, 3 = *I choose*, with *dēligo*, 1 = *I find*. — *Is*, dem. pron. = lit. *this*, or *that*, but, often, as here used, as a personal pron. of the 3d person. *is* is a weaker demonstrative than *hic*, *ille* and *iste*; it frequently refers to an object just mentioned, as in the text it refers to Orgetorix; but *is* is emphatic when it stands at the head of a principal sentence. *Is* is the subject-nom. of *suscēpit*. For special directions, as to the use of this pron., see A. & G. 102, d; B. 87, B. 7; G. 308; H. 451. — *sibi*, dat. of the indirect obj. after the compound *suscēpit*. A. & G. 227, f, and 228; B. 143; G. 345, 347; H. 384, 386, 1. — *lēgatiōnem*, acc. sing. of *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, f.; direct obj. of *suscēpit*. *lēgatiō* is a verbal abstract noun formed from the verb-stem *lēga* (of *lēgere*, to despatch) + *tiō* = lit. *a despatching*.

LINE 13. *cīvitātēs*, acc. plur. after *ad*; for other particulars, see *cīvitātibus*, l. 7, above. — *suscēpit*, 3d pers. sing. of *suscipio*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 (sub + *capere* = lit. to take from beneath; hence = to undertake). *suscēpit* agrees with its subject-nom. *is*. — *In*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it agrees with *itinere*, but it refers to his embassy. Here *in eō itinere* = *in eā lēgatiōne*, but might be freely rendered as if the text were *in suō itinere*. The design of Orgetorix's tour to the Sēquanī, Aedui, etc., was to arouse

14	persuādet he persuades	Casticō, Casticus,	Catamantaloedis Catamantaloedes's	filiō, son,	embassy to the states. In the course of that
15	Sēquanō, a Sequanian,	cūius whose	pater father	rēgnum the sovereignty	among
16	Sēquanīs the Sequani	multōs many	annōs years	obtinerat had held	et and
17	ā by	senātū the senate	populī of the people	Rōmānī Roman,	amicus friend

the various clans to make some sort of united effort to secure the sovereignty of entire Gaul. The number of clans throughout Gaul was about sixty. — *itinere*, see *itinere*, l. 6, above.

LINE 14. *persuādet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *persuadeō*, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2 (per + suādere = lit. to advise thoroughly). Note that *persuādet* is an historical pres., and see remarks on *dēligitur*, l. 12, above. — *Casticō*, dat. of the proper noun *Casticus*, -ī, m.; dat. after the intrans. verb *persuādet*. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II. The student will observe that, in such constructions, many intrans. verbs in Latin have a transitive meaning in English, and are to be rendered into English as such; i.e. just as if they took the acc. of the direct obj. *Casticus* was an influential Sequanian. — *Catamantaloedis*, gen. sing. of *Catamantaloedēs*, -is, m.; it limits *filiō*. Often spelled *Catamantalēdēs*; he was a nobleman among the Sēquani. — *filiō*, dat. sing. of *filius*, -ī, m., an appositive.

LINE 15. *Sēquanō*, dat. sing. of the noun *Sēquanus*, -ī, m.; an appositive; both *filiō* and *Sēquanō* are in apposition with *Casticō*. Consult A. & G. 184; B. 127; G. 321; H. 363. The territory of the Sēquani was bounded by Mount Jura and the river Doubs. — *cūius*, gen. sing. m. of *quī, quae, quod*; it limits *pater*. *cūius pater* = lit. father of whom; the rel. refers to *Casticō*. — *pater*, nom. sing. of *pater*, *patris*, m.; *pater* is subject-nom. of *obtinerat*. The stem of *pater* is regarded by some as *patr*, as seen in the gen. *patris*. But compare GK. πατήρ, gen. πατέρος, syncopated form πατρός. Comparative grammar thus favors *pater* as the true stem. — *rēgnum*, acc. sing. of *rēgnum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *obtinerat*. *rēgnum* here denotes the dominion of which the old kings had been dispossessed. — *in*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here with the abl. = among.

LINE 16. *multōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; comparative *plūs*, superl. *plūrimus*. *multōs* here is attributive of *annōs*. — *annōs*, acc. plur. of *annus*, -ī, m.; acc. of time how long. A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379. — *obtinerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *obtineō*, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2; it agrees with its subject-nom. *pater*. — *et*, cop. conj., connects the verbs.

LINE 17. *ā*, prep. with the abl. *ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants. — *senātū*, abl. sing. of *senātus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of the agent with prep. *ā*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; *populī* limits *senātū*. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it modifies *populī*. Synonyms: *populus* = the people collectively, including the senate; whereas *plēbs* or *plēbēs* = the common people opposed to senators and knights. — *amicus*, -ī, m.; here predicate-nom. after *appellātus erat*. *amicus* is here the designation of a mere title, conferred by the Roman senate with the design of attaching the barbarians to Roman interests.

years, and who had been called friend by the sen- ate of the Roman people, to seize the sovereignty in his own state, which his father had held previ- ously. And he also prevailed on Dumnorix the Aeduan, brother	ap(d)pellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte 18 had been called; that the sovereignty in state suā occupāret, quod pater ante 19 his own, he might seize, which his father before habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī 20 had held; also and, Dumnorix an Aeduan, a brother Divitiaci, quī eō tempore principātum 21 of Divitiacus, who at that time the first position
---	--

LINE 18. *appellātus erat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. pass. of *appello*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; it is connected by the conj. *et* with *obtīnuerat*, and has the same subj.: *pater*. — *ut*, telic conj. here. — *rēgnum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *occupāret*. See note on *rēgnum*, l. 15, above. — *in*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. — *civitāte*, abl. sing. of *civitas*, -ātis, f.; abl. after prep. *in*.

LINE 19. *suā*, abl. sing. f. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it modifies *civitāte*. — *occupāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; its subject-nom. is *Casticus*, to be supplied; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. A. & G. 317, I; B. 200, (b); G. 552, 553; H. 497, II. The tense is imperf., because *persuadet* is the historical pres. which admits the secondary sequence. Consult A. & G. 287, c; B. 190, REM. I; G. 511; H. 495, II. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; its antecedent is *rēgnum*; it is the direct obj. of *habuerat*. — *pater*, *patris*, m.; subject-nom. of *habuerat*. — *ante*, adv., here = *previously*; it is oftener a prep. with the acc.

LINE 20. *habuerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2. — *itemque* = *item* + *que*. *item*, adv. (*is*). Synonyms: *etiam* (*et* + *iam*) serves to add a notion to a statement = *and also*; whereas *item* indicates that one statement is made *after the same manner* as another = *also*. *etiam* alone often = *item* + *que*. — *Dumnorigī*, dat. of *Dumnorix*, -igis, m.; dat. after *persuadet*, l. 24, below. See A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II. See also note on *Casticō*, l. 14, above. Dumnorix was a younger brother of Divitiacus, a devotee of the old aristocratic order of things among the Aedui. He was intensely hostile to the Roman party in his clan. — *Aeduō*, dat. sing. of *Aedui*, -ī, m.; here used as a noun from the adj. *Aedui*, -a, -um. *Aeduō* is in opposition with *Dumnorigī*. The Aedui were a Gallic clan living, at the time of Caesar's invasion of Gaul, in the territory between the Loire and the Saône. — *frātrī*, dat. sing. of *frāter*, *frātris*, m.; appositive of *Dumnorigī*.

LINE 21. *Divitiaci*, gen. sing. of *Divitiacus*, -ī, m.; it limits *frātrī*. — *quī*, rel. pron., nom. sing. m., refers to *Divitiaci*; it is subject-nom. of *obtīnēbat*. — *eō*, abl. n. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it limits *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. case of *tempus*, -oris, n.; abl. of *time when*. See A. & G. 256, I; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. The root of *tempus* is *tem*, as seen in the GK. *τέμνω*, to cut; hence = *a section or division*, in particular, of time. The time referred to is that of Orgetorix's journey. — *principātum*, acc. sing. of *principātus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *obtīnēbat*. *principātus* is derived from *princeps* (*primus* + *capere*); hence = *the foremost position or the most influential position* in the state.

22	in cīvitāte	obtinēbat	āc	māximē	plēbī	of Divitiacus, who at that time was holding a very influential position in his state, and was very acceptable to the common people, to make a like attempt, and he gave him his daughter in mar-
	in the state	was holding	and	especially	to the common people	
23	acceptus	erat,	ut	idem	cōnārētur,	
	acceptable	was,	that	the same	he might attempt,	
24	persuādet	eīque	filiam	suam	in	
	he persuades,	him and,	daughter	his	in (into)	
25	mātrimōnium	dat.	Perfacile	factū	esse	
	marriage	he gives.	Very easy	in the doing	to be (it is)	

LINE 22. in cīvitāte, see note on this phrase, l. 18, above. — *obtinēbat*, 3d pers. sing. of *obtinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -entum, 3 (ob + *tenēre* = lit. to hold by or against anything); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *āc*, see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *māximē*, adv., superl. degree of the comparative *māgis*; *multum* (*multō*) is sometimes used as an irr. positive. *māximē* qualifies the adj. *acceptus*. — *plēbī*, dat. sing. of *plēbs*, -is, f.; dat. after the adj. *acceptus*. A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391, I.

LINE 23. *acceptus*, a participial adj.; predicate after *erat*. This participle is from the verb *accipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (ad + *capere* = lit. to take to one's self; hence in participle = *acceptable*). Synonyms: *grātus* is the proper epithet to bestow upon one who is dear, beloved; it has reference to the feelings; whereas *acceptus* refers to the expression of the feelings; in other words, *acceptus* is related to *grātus* as effect to cause: he who is *grātus*, for that very reason is *acceptus*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; connected by *ac* with *obtinēbat*, and has the same subj. *quī*. — *ut*, telic conj. here. — *idem*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem* (from root *i*, whence *is*, and the demonstrative suffix -*dem*); cognate acc. after *cōnārētur*. A. & G. 238, b; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, I; H. 371, II. Observe that the cognate acc. is used with both trans. and intrans. verbs. — *cōnārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Note that *ut idem cōnārētur* is a noun-clause of purpose, the direct obj. of *persuādet*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, and REM. 2; G. 546; H. 498. *cōnārētur* is in the imperf. tense, because it depends on an historical pres., which admits of either the primary or secondary sequence, more commonly the latter.

LINE 24. *persuādet*, see note on this verb, l. 14, above; historical pres. — *eīque* = *eī* + *que*; *eī* is dat. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; dat. of the indirect obj. after *dat*. Observe how closely the clauses are connected by the enclitic -*que*. — *filiam*, acc. sing. of *filiā*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *dat*. Let the student remember that *dea* and *filiā*, though nouns of the first declension, yet have the dat. and abl. plur. in -*abus*, by exception. The exception is taken in order to avoid confusion with the dat. plur. of *deus* and *filius*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it refers to the subj. of *dat*, but agrees in gender and number with *filiam*. This is the usual construction; *filiam suī* would be inadmissible. — *in*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here used idiomatically with the acc. after *dat*, as if *dat* were a verb of motion: he gives *into* marriage; the English idiom is: he gives *in* marriage.

LINE 25. *mātrimōnium*, acc. sing. of *mātrimōnium*, -ī, n.; the obj. of the prep. *in* (from stem *mātri* + *mōnium* = *state of motherhood*). — *dat*, 3d pers. sing. of *dā*,

riage. He showed them how easy it would be to accomplish the venture, as he personally was about to seize the supreme power in his own state;	illis	probat	cōnāta	perficere,	propterea 26
	to them	he proves	attempts	to accomplish,	for this reason
	quod	ipse	suae	cīvītātis	imperium 27
	because	he himself	of his own	state	the military power
	obtentūrus	esset;	nōn	esse	dubium, 28
	about to acquire	was;	not	to be (it is)	doubtful,

*dare, dēdi, datum*, 1; but observe that by exception the *a* before *-re* in the pres. inf. act. is short; *dat*, like *persuadet*, in the preceding line, agrees with *Orgetorix* understood as subject-nom. — *Perfacile*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *perfacilis*, *-e*, predicate-acc. after *esse* (per + *facilis*). — *factū*, a latter supine of *faciō, -ere, feci, factum*, 3; in fact, it is a noun of the fourth decl., in the abl. case of specification. Consult A. & G. 253, a; B. 186 (B); G. 397, 436; H. 545, NOTE I. — *esse*, its subject-acc. is the inf. phrase *cōnāta perficere*.

LINE 26. *illis*, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix; dat. of the indirect obj. after *probat*. — *probat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *probō, -āre, -āvī, -ārum*, 1 (*probus*, good); an historical present-conative. Consult A. & G. 276, d; G. 227, 2; H. 467, 6. — *cōnāta*, acc. plur. of noun *cōnātum, -ī*, n.; it is the direct obj. of *perficere*. *cōnātā* is properly a participle, acc. n. plur. of *cōnditus, -a, -um* (from *cōnor*, 1), used substantively. — *perficere*, pres. inf. act. of *perficiō, -ere, feci, -fectum*, 3; it is here used with its direct obj. as the subject-acc. of *esse*. Consult A. & G. 270, 3, a; B. 86, 1; G. 422; H. 538. — *propterea*, adv., herald of the following *quod*-clause; see note on *propterea*, l. 9, Chap. I.

LINE 27. *quod*, a conj. = *because*; but see note on *quod*, l. 9, Chap. I. — *ipse*, nom. sing., dem. pron. = *he himself*; more emphatic than *is*, as subject-nom. in l. 12, above; *ipse* is subject-nom. of *obtentūrus esset*. Observe that *ipse* is the only dem. pron. that from its signification admits of the voc. case. — *suae*, gen. sing. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it is reflexive in meaning = *of his own*; it limits *cīvītātis*. — *cīvītātis*, gen. sing. of *cīvīlās, -ātis*, f.; it limits *imperium*. — *imperium*, acc. sing. of *imperium, -ī*, n.; direct obj. of *obtentūrus esset*. Synonyms: *imperium* = *supreme military power*; whereas *potestās* = *the civil power*. Caesar, however, seems to use *rēgnum, principātus* and *imperium*, with very little difference in meaning, in this chapter. If there is any difference, *rēgnum* = *sovereignty as one's hereditary right*, though now dispossessed of it; *principātus* = *the sovereignty which one exercises on account of his wealth or popularity*; and *imperium* = *the sovereignty that is the outcome of military power*.

LINE 28. *obtentūrus esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive, first periphrastic conjugation, formed of the fut. act. participle of *obtinēō, -ēre, -uī, -lentum*, 2, and *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum, esse, fui*. It is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *orātiō obliqua*; it is in the imperf. tense, because *probat* is an historical pres.; in other words, the tense-sequence is secondary. — *nōn*, adv., modifies adj. *dubium*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*, an intrans. verb; the grammatical subj. of *esse* is the following *quīn*-clause used as a noun in the acc. case. — *dubium*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *dubius, -a, -um*; predicate after *esse*. *Orātiō recta* of lines 25–28: *perfacile factū vōbīs est cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ego ipse meae cīvītātis imperium obtinēbō*.

29	quīn	tōtīus	Galliae	plūrimum	Helvētīi	and he said that
	that	of entire	Gaul	most	the Helvetii	there was no
30	possent;	sē	suīs	cōpiīs	suōque	doubt that the
	were able;	himself	with his	resources	with his and,	Helvetii were the
31	exercitū	illis	rēgna	conciliātūrum		most powerful of
	army	for them	the royal powers	to be about to secure,		all the Gauls, and
32	cōnfirmat.	Hāc	ōrātiōne	adductī	inter	he declared that
	he affirms.	By this	oration	led	among	he would win for
					themselves	them the royal
						power with his
						own resources
						and with his own

LINE 29. *quīn*, conj. (*quī* + *nē*, or *nōn*); after a negative *quīn* = *that*. — *tōtīus*, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *Galliae*. For list of the adjectives whose gen. end in -ius, dat. in -ī, see A. & G. 83; B. 56; G. 76, and REMS.; H. 151, 175. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; partitive gen. after *plūrimum*. Consult A. & G. 216, 4; B. 134; G. 372; H. 397, 3. — *plūrimum*, adj., cognate acc. of *plūrimus*, -a, -um, superl.; positive *multus*, comparative *plūs*. As to cognate acc. with adverbial force, see A. & G. 240; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, 338, 2; H. 371, II. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. of adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; subject-nom. of *possent*.

LINE 30. *possent*, 3d pers. plur. of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*; imperf. subjunctive after *quīn*, a clause of result. A. & G. 319, d; B. 201, REM. 3; G. 555, 2; H. 504, 3, 2). The *quīn*-clause of the text is equivalent to: *quīn omnium Gallorum Helvētīi potentissimi essent*. It will be noticed that the Helvetians here are classed with the Gauls. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; *sē* is subject-acc. of *conciliātūrum*, supply *esse*. — *suīs*, abl. sing. f. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it refers to Orgetorix, but agrees with *cōpiīs*. — *cōpiīs*, abl. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; in the sing. = *plenty*; in the plur. = *resources*, sometimes = *troops*. *cōpiīs* is an abl. of means. — *suōque* (*suō* + *que*); *suō* is abl. sing. m. of *suus*, -a, -um; it is the attributive of *exercitū*. *que*, note how closely the phrase *suō exercitū* is connected with *cōpiīs* by this enclitic.

LINE 31. *exercitū*, abl. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of means. Synonyms: *aciēs* = *an army in battle-array*; *āgmen* = *an army in motion or on the march (agere)*; but *exercitus* = *an exercised or disciplined army (exercere, to train)*. — *illis*, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix; dat. of reference or advantage. A. & G. 235; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 1, 2). Observe that *illis* in direct discourse is changed into *vōbīs*. — *rēgna*, acc. plur. of *rēgnum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *conciliātūrum* (*esse*); it is in the plur. as denoting the three powers. — *conciliātūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *conciliō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-acc. is the personal pron. *sē*, preceding line.

LINE 32. *cōnfirmat*, 3d pers. sing. of *cōnfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; historical pres.; its subject-nom. is a pron. of the 3d pers. referring to Orgetorix. The above speech which Caesar reports in lines 28-31, above, in the *ōrātiō rēcta* would have this form: *nōn est dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint; egō meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō*. — *Hāc*, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it modifies *ōrātiōne*. — *ōrātiōne* is the abl. sing. of *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.; abl. of cause. A. & G. 245, and 2. b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. — *adductī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle of *adducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3; it agrees with *eī* understood, referring to the trio, Orgetorix, Casticus and Dumnorix; the subject-nom. of *dant*, l. 33, below. — *inter sē*, a reciprocal phrase; see note on the phrase, l. 6, Chap. I.

army. Influenced by this speech, they gave to one another the pledge of an oath, and hoped that, when they had seized the sovereignty in their own states, they could, by means of three very influential and very powerful peoples, gain the mastery of entire Gaul.	fidem	et	iūs iurandum	dant	et, 33
	a pledge	and	an oath	they give	and,
	rēgnō		occupātō,	per	trēs 34
	the sovereignty		having been seized,	through	three
	potentissimōs	ac	firmissimōs	populōs	tōtius 35
	very powerful	and	very strong	peoples	of the whole
	Galliae	sēsē	potiri	posse 36	
	of Gaul	themselves	to gain the mastery,	to be able,	
	spērant.				37
	they hope.				

LINE 33. **fidem**, acc. sing. of *fidēs*, -ēī, f., stem *fidē*; direct obj. of *dant*. — **iūs iurandum** (*iūs* + *iurandum*), a compound noun in which both parts are declined; *iūs* is a neuter noun of the third decl., and *iurandum* is a neuter noun of the second decl. But in the plur., the gen., dat. and abl. are wanting. The two nouns connected by *et* = a pledge confirmed by an oath, hendiadys (ἐν διὰ δύοιν) — the use of two nouns connected by a conj. instead of a single noun with a modifier. Consult A. & G. 385; B. 310, 2, (6); G. 698; H. 636, III, 2. — **dant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *dō*, dare, *dēdi*, *datum*, 1. See note on *dat*, l. 25, above. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects *dant* with *spērant*, l. 37, below.

LINE 34. **rēgnō**, abl. sing. of *rēgnum*, -ī, n.; abl. absolute with *occupātō*, denoting time when. A. & G. 255; B. 172, 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 1 and 2. — **occupātō**, abl. sing. n. of perf. pass. participle of *occupō*, 1; abl. absolute with *rēgnō*. Supply *ab eis*, as abl. of the voluntary agent. — **per**, prep. with the acc. = through, by means of. — **trēs**, acc. plur. of num. adj. *trēs*, *tria*; an *i*-stem, and declined like the plur. of *levis*. The first three cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs*, are declined; from *quatuor* to *centum* the cardinals are indeclinable; *trēs* is an attributive of *populōs*.

LINE 35. **potentissimōs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *potentissimus*, -a, -um, superl. degree of *potēns*, comparative *potentior* (properly a participle of *possum*); the adj. qualifies *populōs*. — **ac**, stronger than *et*, see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — **firmissimōs**, acc. plur. m. of the superl. degree of *firmus*, comparative *firmior*; this adj. also qualifies *populōs*. — **populōs**, acc. plur. of *populus*, -ī, m.; acc. after *per* denoting the persons through whom Consult A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, NOTE 1. — **tōtius**, see note on *tōtius*, l. 29, above.

LINE 36. **Galliae**, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; gen. case after *potiri*. A. & G. 249, a; B. 167, 1, REM.; G. 407, NOTE 2, (d); H. 410, V, 3. *potiri* usually takes the abl. — **sēsē**, acc. plur., a reduplication of the reflexive pron. *sē*; *sēsē* is subject-acc. of *posse*. — **potiri**, pres. inf. of *potior*, -iri, -itus, 4, deponent; it completes the meaning of *posse*. — **posse**, in form a pres. inf. of *possum*, *posse*, *potui*, irr. (potis + sum); in use here, it = the fut. inf. After verbs of hoping, promising and undertaking, the fut. inf. usually occurs, but *possum* has no fut. inf., and hence there often occurs the pres. *posse* as equivalent to the periphrase *fore ut possint*. Consult A. & G. 288, f; B. 245, 4, (3); G. 248, REM., and 656, REM.; H. 537, 3, and NOTE 1.

LINE 37. **spērant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *spēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with *ei*, a pron. representing Orgetorix, Casticus and Dumnorix.

1	IV.	Ea	rēs	est	Helvētiīs	per	IV. This conspiracy was disclosed to the Helvetiī by an informer; and they compelled Orgetorix, according to their custom, to plead his case in chains. The punishment of being burned with
		<i>This</i>	<i>thing</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>to the Helvetiī</i>	<i>through</i>	
2	indiciūm	ēnūntiāta.	Mōribus	suīs			
	<i>information</i>	<i>made known.</i>	<i>According to customs</i>	<i>their,</i>			
3	Orgetorigem	ex	vinclīs	causam	dīcere		
	<i>Orgetorix</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>chains (his)</i>	<i>case</i>	<i>to plead</i>		
4	coēgērunt;	damnātum	poenam	sequī			
	<i>they compelled; (him)</i>	<i>condemned</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>to overtake</i>			

LINE 1. **Ea**, nom. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *rēs*. — **rēs**, nom. sing. of *rēs, rei*, f., subj. of *est ēnūntiāta* (*ēnūntiāta est*). Observe: that the phrase *ea rēs* is descriptive of the plot referred to in the preceding chapter; that *haec rēs* might have been used as indicating nearness of time or place; but that *ea rēs* denotes that conspiracy of three years ago, B.C. 61, *is* denoting *this* or *that*, according to the connection; and that *rēs* is a word of very elastic meaning. — **est**, 3d pers. sing. of *sum, esse, fui*, but here used as part of the compound perf. pass. tense *ēnūntiāta est*. Note the insertion of *Helvētiīs per indicium* between the parts, by which the entire group of words is made emphatic. — **Helvētiīs**, dat. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*, used as a noun; indirect obj. of *est ēnūntiāta*. For description, see note on *Helvētiī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **per**, prep. with the acc.

LINE 2. **indiciūm**, acc. sing. of *indiciūm, -i, n.*; the agent considered as means is denoted by *per* with the acc. See A. & G. 246, *b*; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. Observe that *indiciūm* = lit. *information*, but here the abstract is put for the concrete, and *indiciūm* = *an informer*. — **est ēnūntiāta** (*ēnūntiāta est*), 3d pers. sing. perf. pass. ind. of *ēnūntiā, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, i*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *rēs*; *ēnūntiāre* (*ē + nūntius*) = lit. *to speak out*, especially what ought to be kept secret. — **Mōribus**, abl. plur. of the noun *mōs, mōris, m.*; may be taken as an abl. of cause, A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416; or as an abl. of specification, A. & G. 253, NOTE; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — **suīs**, abl. plur. m. of poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it agrees with *mōribus*, but refers to the subj. of the proposition. A. & G. 196; B. 80, REM. 2; G. 309, I; H. 449.

LINE 3. **Orgetorigem**, acc. sing. of *Orgetorix, -igis, m.*; subject-acc. of *dīcere*. See note on *Orgetorix*, l. 2, Chap. II. — **ex**, prep. with the abl.; the form *ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels and consonants. — **vinclīs**, abl. plur. of *vinculūm, -i, n.*; abl. after prep. *ex*. See A. & G. 152, *b*; B. 120, 2; G. 417; H. 434. The common editions read *vinculīs* instead of the syncopated *vinclīs*. The phrase *ex vinclīs* = lit. *out of chains*, in the sense of *under arrest*. The critics tell us the phrase = *in chains*. Does it not rather mean that Orgetorix was compelled to defend himself, although he was not formally imprisoned? — **causam**, acc. sing. of *causa, -ae, f.*; direct obj. of *dīcere*. — **dīcere**, pres. inf. act. of *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, 3*; its subject-acc. is *Orgetorigem*. Note that the acc. infinitive-clause, as a whole, is the direct obj. of *coēgērunt*.

LINE 4. **coēgērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, cōctum, 3* (*con + agere* = lit. *to drive together*; hence *cōgere* = *to urge, to compel*). The subject-nom. is pron. *ei*, i.e. *Helvētiī* understood. — **damnātum**, perf. pass. participle of *damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, i*; it agrees with *eum*, to be supplied, which latter pron. is the



fire must needs overtake him if condemned. On the day appointed for pleading his case, Orgetorix assembled at the place of trial, from all quarters, all his vassals, about ten thousand people, and

oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē 5  
*it must needs be, that with fire he be burned. On the day*  
 cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix 6  
*appointed of (for) (his) case's pleading Orgetorix*  
 ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad 7  
*near the court all his household, about*  
 hominum milia decem, undique coēgit 8  
*of human beings thousands ten, from every side collected,*

direct obj. of *sequi*. The participle here denotes condition. See A. & G. 292; B. 204, REM. 6; G. 667; H. 549, 2. — *poenam*, acc. sing. of *poena*, -ae, f.; subject-acc. of *sequi*. Consult A. & G. 270, b, 272, a, I; B. 194, REM. 2, (e); G. 535; H. 538. Observe that the acc.-clause *damnatum (eum) poenam sequi* is the subj. of *oportēbat*. — *sequi*, pres. inf. of the deponent *sequor*, -i, secutus, 3; its subject-acc. is *poenam*.

LINE 5. *oportēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *oportet*, -ēre, -uit, impersonal (*opus*, need). Synonyms: *oportet* = *it behooves*, i.e. expresses duty in general; whereas *debere* denotes the obligation of a particular person; *dē* + *habere* = to have from a person, hence = *to owe him*. — *ut*, conj., ecclastic. — *ignī*, abl. sing. of *ignis*, -is, m. The more common form of the abl. is *igne*, though the regular form of an *i*-stem, in the abl. sing. is -ī. But see A. & G. 57, b; B. 46, IV, Class II, near the end; G. 57, 2; H. 62; *ignī* is an abl. of means. A. & G. 248, c, I; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *cremārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *cremo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-nom. is a personal pron: implied in the ending, and referring to the pron. *eum*, the omitted obj. of *sequi*. Note that the clause *ut . . . cremārētur* is a result-clause in apposition with, and explanatory of, *poenam*; and consult A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 3, NOTE; G. 557; H. 501, III. Synonyms: *cremare* = *to consume by fire*; whereas *urere* = *to burn*, simply, though sometimes = *to burn up*. — *Diē*, abl. sing. of *diēs*, -ēī, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur.; *diē* is abl. of *time at which*. A. & G. 256; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. *diēs* is f. usually when it denotes a set time; see A. & G. 73; B. 49, REM. 2; G. 64; H. 123.

LINE 6. *cōstitutā*, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle of *cōstituō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 3; used here as an adj. agreeing with *diē*. — *causae*, gen. sing. of *causa*, -ae, f.; objective gen. limiting *dictiōnis*; see A. & G. 217; B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III. — *dictiōnis*, gen. sing. of *dictiō*, -ōnis, f. (*dicere*); compare English *diction*; it limits *diē*. — *Orgetorix*, see note on this word, l. 2, Chap. II; *Orgetorix* is subject-nom. of *coēgit*, l. 8, below.

LINE 7. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *iūdicium*, acc. sing. of *iudicium*, -ī, n. (*iūs* + *dicere*, through *iudicāre*); *iudicium* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *omnem*, acc. sing. f. of adj. *omnis*, -e; it limits *familiam*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it modifies *familiam*, but refers to *Orgetorix*, the subj. of the proposition. A. & G. 196; B. 80, REM. 2; G. 309, I; H. 449. — *familiam*, acc. sing. of *familia*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *coēgit*. This word here = *serfs*. — *ad*, here an adv. denoting an approximation = *about*; compare GK. ὧς.

LINE 8. *hominum*, gen. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; partitive gen. after *milia*. A. & G. 216, 3; B. 134; G. 293; H. 397, 2. — *milia*, acc. plur. n. of indecl. adj. *mille* in the sing.; in the plur. it is a decl. noun; *milia* is an appositive, an explanatory modifier

9	et	omnēs	clientēs	obaerātōsque	suōs,	conducted to the
	and	all	retainers	debtors and,	his,	same place all his
10	quōrum	māgnum	numerus	habēbat,		clients and debtors,
	of whom	a great	number	he had,		of whom he
11	eōdem	condūxit;	per	eōs,	nē	had a large number;
	to the same place	he brought;	through	them,	that not	and through
12	causam	diceret,	sē	ēripuit.	Cum	their instrumentality
	(his) case	he might plead,	himself	he rescued.	When	he saved himself from the
						necessity of pleading his case.

of *familiam*. — *decem*, indecl. num. adj., cardinal; it modifies *mīlia*. — *undique*, (*unde* + *que*) = lit. *whencesoever*; and indef. adv. The enclitic *-que* gives to the word a tone of universality. — *coēgit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōgo*, -ere, *coēgi*, *coactum*, 3; its subject-nom. is *Orgetorix*.

LINE 9. *et*, cop. conj., connects *coēgit* with *condūxit*, l. 11, below. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; it limits *clientēs*. — *clientēs*, acc. plur. of *cliēns*, -entis, m. and f. (*cluēns* from *cluere*, to hear); hence = *one who hears*, *a protégé*, *cliēntēs* is the direct obj. of *condūxit*. — *obaerātōsque* (*obaerātōs* + *que*); *obaerātōs* is an acc. plur. m. of the adj. *obaerātus*, -a, -um, used substantively, connected with *cliēntēs* by the enclitic *-que*, and in the same grammatical construction. This word is derived from *oberārius* (*ob* + *aes*); and hence = *debtors*, those that must work out their debts. The vassals and retainers were intensely devoted to their chiefs. They shared with them prosperity and adversity. If the chiefs suffered violent deaths, the vassals shared a like fate; and if they would not meet death with them in battle, they often committed suicide. — *suōs*, acc. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *obaerātōs*, but refers to *Orgetorix*.

LINE 10. *quōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *obaerātōs* as its antecedent, but, as a gen., limits *numerus*. — *māgnum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus*; it modifies *numerus*. — *numerus*, acc. sing. of *numerus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *habēbat*. — *habēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to *Orgetorix*.

LINE 11. *eōdem*, an adv., strictly, an old dat. of *īdem*; sc. *locō*; as an adv. *eōdem* modifies *condūxit*. The place referred to, of course, is that denoted by *iudicium*, l. 7, above. — *condūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *condūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3; its subj. is *Orgetorix* understood. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; acc. of the agent as means after *per*. See A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. — *nē*, conj. adv. = *that not*, *telic*; if the construction were ecclatic, *ut nōn* would be used.

LINE 12. *causam*, acc. sing. of *causa*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *diceret*. — *diceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictum*, 3; subjunctive of purpose after *nē*. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200, (b); G. 545, 3, end; H. 497, II. Observe that the purpose-clause *nē causam diceret* depends on *sē ēripuit*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; direct obj. of *ēripuit*. — *ēripuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *ēripīō*, -ere, -uī, -reptum, 3 (*ē* + *rapere*, to snatch away). — *Cum*, conj. = *when*, or *while*, or *as*, or *since*; here it = *when*, and is used to describe the time of the main-clause: *Orgetorix mortuus est*.

When the state, incensed at such action, attempted to secure its own rights by arms, and the magistrates were collecting a large number of men from the country, Orgetorix died;

civitas	ob	eam	rem	incitata	armis	13
the state	on account of	this	thing	aroused,	by arms	
iūs	suum	exsequi	cōnārētur,	multitudinemque	14	
right	its own	to enforce	attempted,	a great number and,		
hominum	ex agris	magistrātūs	cōgerent,	15		
of men	from the fields	the magistrates	were collecting,			
Orgetorix	mortuus est;	neque	abest	16		
Orgetorix	died;	not and,	is wanting			

LINE 13. *civitas*, -atis, nom. sing. f.; used by metonymy for *civēs civitātis*; subj. of *cōnārētur*. — *ob*, prep. with the acc. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *rem*. — *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs, rei*, f.; obj. of the prep. *ob*. Observe that the objective cause is thus expressed by *ob*, or *per* with the acc. If the cause-subjective were to be indicated, the abl. of cause would be the construction. Consult A. & G. 245, *b*; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 3; H. 416, I, 2). The thing referred to is the conduct of Orgetorix. — *incitata*, perf. pass. participle of *inciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, I; it agrees with *civitas*. — *armis*, abl. plur. of *arma, -orum*, n.; abl. of means after *exsequi*. Synonyms: *arma* = *armis* used in close contest *tela* = those used in contests at a distance.

LINE 14. *iūs*, acc. sing. of *iūs, iūris*, n.; direct obj. of *exsequi*. — *suum*, acc. sing. n., poss. reflexive adj. pron.; it qualifies *iūs*, but refers to *civitas*, the grammatical subj. of the sentence. — *exsequi*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *exsequor, -i, -cūtus*, 3; complementary inf.; it completes the meaning of *cōnārētur*. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533. Observe the force of the prep. in the compound = to follow out to the end, i.e. with *iūs* = to enforce. — *cōnārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *cōnor, -āri, -ātus*, I; subjunctive after the conj. *cum*, relative time; i.e. the temporal clause defines the time of the principal action. A. & G. 323; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — *multitudinemque* (*multitudinem* + *que*); *multitudinem* is acc. sing. of *multitūdō, -inis*, f. (*multus*); acc. of the direct obj. after *cōgerent*.

LINE 15. *hominum*, gen. plur. of *homō, -inis*, m. and f.; it limits *multitudinem*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *agris*, abl. plur. of *ager, agrī*, m. Synonyms: *agri* = the fields, the open country; *rūs* = the country in opposition to the town. — *magistrātūs*, nom. plur. of *magistrātus, -ūs*, m., subj. of the verb *cōgerent*. *magistrātus* (*magister*, root *mag*, whence *māgnus*) in contradistinction from *imperia* is used of civil offices at Rome; *imperia*, of the authority of the officials in the provinces. But in Rome there were two species of civil offices — the *magistrātūs extraordinārii* and *ordinārii*. The former were the dictators and other extraordinary rulers; the latter consisted of the consuls, praetors and censors, and some other minor officers. There were also *magistrātūs patriciī* and *magistrātūs plēbiī*. — *cōgerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *cōgō, -ere, cōgē, cōcētum*, 3; connected by the enclitic conj. *-que* with *cōnārētur*, and still under the influence of *cum*.

LINE 16. *Orgetorix, -igis*, m., subject-nom. of *mortuus est*. — *mortuus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the deponent verb *morior, mori, mortuus*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Orgetorix*. — *neque* (*nē + que*) = lit. and not; but *neque . . . neque* = neither . . . nor. — *abest*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *absum, -esse, ab(ā)fuī, ab(ā)futūrus*; it agrees with the subject-nom. *suspiciō*.

17	suspiciō,	ut	Helvētīi	arbitrantur,	quīn	and there is no doubt, as the Helvetii think, that he committed suicide.
	the suspicion,	as	the Helvetii	think	that	
18	ipse	sibi	mortem	cōnscīverit.		
	he himself	to himself	death	decreed.		
1	V. Post	ēius	mortem	nihilō	minus	V. After Orgetorix's death, the Helvetii nevertheless attempted to do as they had purposed — to emigrate from their borders.
	After	his	death	in nothing	the less	
2	Helvētīi	id,	quod	cōstituerant,	facere	
	the Helvetii	that,	which	they had resolved on,	to do	
3	cōnantur,	ut	ē	fīnibus	suīs	exēant.
	they attempt	that from	limits	their own,	they may go forth.	

LINE 17. *suspiciō*, -ōnis, f., sometimes written *suspitiō*; it is subject-nom. of *q̄bēt*. Observe that *suspiciō* is derived from *sub* + *specere*, to look at secretly or askance; hence (*effectus prō causā*) = to mistrust. — *ut*, adv. = *as*. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a noun, and subject-nom. of *arbitrantur*. — *arbitrantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1 (*arbitr*, a witness); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*. — *quīn* (*qui* + *nē*) = lit. *who or which not*; but after negations and negative phrases = *that*.

LINE 18. *ipse*, intensive pron. expressed for emphasis, subject-nom. of *cōnscīverit*; or *ipse* may be taken as an appositive of the omitted subj. of the verb. — *sibi*, dat. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; dat. of the indirect obj. after *cōnscīverit*. — *mortem*, acc. sing. of *mors*, *mortis*, f.; the direct obj. of *cōnscīverit*. — *cōnscīverit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of *cōnscīcō*, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum, 3; subjunctive of result after *quīn*. Note carefully that the result-clause: *quīn sibi mortem cōnscīverit*, is in apposition with *suspiciō*. See A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 3; G. 555, 2; H. 501, III. Observe that the perf. subjunctive is used after a primary tense to denote any past action. Here it represents an historical perfect. The direct statement is: *sibi mortem cōnscīvit*.

LINE 1. *Post*, prep. with the acc. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively, i.e. as a personal pron.; in the gen. = Engl. poss. case *his*. — *mortem*, acc. sing. of *mors*, *mortis*, f.; the obj. of the prep. *post*. — *nihilō*, abl. of *nihilum*, -ī, n.; abl. of degree of difference after the comparative *minus*. See A. & G. 250; B. 164; G. 403; H. 423. The word is sometimes written with *minus* thus: *nihilōminus*. — *minus*, adv., comparative degree of *parum* (*parvō*, rare), superl. *minimē*; *minus* modifies *cōnantur*.

LINE 2. *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a noun; subject-nom. of *cōnantur*. For description, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; direct obj. of *facere*. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *id* as its antecedent, and is the direct obj. of *cōstituerant*. — *cōstituerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *cōstituo*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending -ēi, i.e. *Helvētīi*. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; complementary of *cōnantur*. See A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, 2.

LINE 3. *cōnantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *ē*, prep. with the

When at length they thought they were ready for the undertaking, they set fire to all their towns about twelve in number, to their villages about four hundred, and to the re- maining private	Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs 4 When already themselves for that thing prepared esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, 5 to be they thought, towns their own, all, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad 6 in number about twelve, villages about quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia 7 four hundred, the remaining private buildings
---	--

abl. (*ē* before consonants; *ex* before vowels and consonants). — **finibus**, abl. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; abl. after prep. *ē*. — **suīs**, abl. plur. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it modifies *finibus*, but refers to *Helvētīū* of the principal clause — indirect reflexive. — **exēant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the verb *exēō*, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -itum; subjunctive of result after *ut*; but note that this clause is explanatory of, and in apposition with, the dem. pron. *id*. See A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 3, NOTE; G. 557, and REM., end; H. 501, III, and NOTE.

LINE 4. **Ubi**, adv. (quī + ending bi) = (a) *in what place*; (b) of time = *whenever*. — **iam**, adv. = *now*, of any time present, past or future; whereas *nunc* = *now*, of the present. — **sē**, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; subject-acc. of *esse*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.; with verbs of motion = *to* or *toward*; with verbs of rest = *to*, *at*, *for*. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. of dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it modifies *rem*. — **rem**, acc. sing. of noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; it follows the prep. *ad*. The phrase *ad eam rem* = *for that thing*, i.e. the emigration. — **parātōs**, acc. plur. of the participial adj. *parātus*, -a, -um, from the verb *parō*, 1; predicate after *esse*.

LINE 5. **esse**, pres. inf. of the verb *sum*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. — **arbitrātī sunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the deponent verb *arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; its subject-nom. is *Helvētīū* understood. — **oppida**, acc. plur. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *incendunt*. — **sua**, acc. plur. n. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it qualifies *oppida*. — **omnia**, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *omnis*, -ē; it also qualifies *oppida*.

LINE 6. **numerō**, abl. of specification. See A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — **ad**, usually a prep., but here an adv. = *about*; it modifies *duodecim*. — **duodecim**, cardinal num. adj. (duo + decim). — **vicōs**, acc. plur. of *vicus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *incendunt*. — **ad**, here *too*, an adv.

LINE 7. **quadringentōs** (quattuor + centum), acc. plur. m. of the adj. *quadringentū*, -ae, -a, num. adj., modifies *vicōs*. Observe that the num. adjectives in the hundreds are declined like the plur. of *bonus*: *bonī*, -ae, -a. — **reliqua**, acc. plur. n. of adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; it modifies *aedificia*. Synonyms: *reliqui* = *the rest*, the remainder that completes the whole; whereas *ceteri* (*cacteri*) = *others* in opposition to those first mentioned; compare GK. οἱ ἄλλοι; and *alii* = *others* as merely differentiated from those mentioned. — **privāta**, acc. plur. n. of participial adj. *privātus*, -a, -um, from the verb *privō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. — **aedificia**, acc. plur. of the noun *aedificium*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *incendunt*. Note the omission of the conjunctions between the direct obj. phrases preceding *incendunt* — asyndeton. See note on *lēgibus*, l. 5, Chap. I; and especially A. & G. 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 636, I, 1. Synonyms: *aedificium* = the general word for a building of any kind; *domus* = the dwelling-house, the family home.

8	incendunt;	frumentum	omne,	praeterquam	edifices; and they
	they set fire to;	the grain	all,	further than	burned up all
9	quod	sēcum	portātūrī erant,	combūrent,	their grain ex-
	what	themselves with,	about to carry they were,	they burn up,	cept what they
					had purposed to
					carry along with
					them, in order
10	ut	domum	reditiōnis	spē	sublātā,
	that	home,	of return	the hope being taken away,	that, all hope of
					returning home
					being taken away,
					they might be
11	parātiōrēs	ad	omnia	perīcula	subeunda
	more prepared	for	all	dangers	to be endured
					to endure all per-

LINE 8. *incendunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *incendō*, -ere, -cendī, -censum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētiū*, to be supplied. Synonyms: *incendere* = to burn; *combūrere* = to burn up. — *frumentum*, acc. sing. of *frumentum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *combūrent*, l. 9, below. Note that *frumentum*, sing. = the grain, while *frumenta*, the plur. = the growing crop. — *omne*, acc. sing. n., an attributive of *frumentum*. — *praeterquam*, adv. (praeter + quam). Note that *quam*, which is sometimes separated from *praeter* by tmesis, merely adds intensiveness to the beyond-notion involved in *praeter* (prae + ter) = motion beyond somewhat.

LINE 9. *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *frumentum*, as its antecedent, and is the direct obj. of *portātūrī erant*. — *sēcum* (*sē* + cum), *sē*, abl. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suū, sibi, sē, sē*; it is in the abl. after the prep. *cum*, which is here enclitic. Consult A. & G. 99, e; B. 79, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 184, 6. — *portātūrī erant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the first periphrastic conjugation of *portō*, -āre, -āvī, -atum, 1. Consult A. & G. 129; B. 106, II; G. 247; H. 233; and observe that verbs in the act. periphrastic conjugation denote purpose. — *combūrent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *combūrō*, -ere, -ūssi, -ustum, 3 (con + būrō). Observe that *b* is rejected in -ūrō, but retained in *combūrō*; *combūrent* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētiū*, to be supplied.

LINE 10. *ut*, telic conj. — *domum*, acc. of *domus*, -ūs or -ī, f.; end of motion after the verbal noun *reditiōnis*, as if the latter were a gerund — *redeundi*. Consult A. & G. 258, b; B. 174; G. 337; H. 380, II, 2, 1). — *reditiōnis*, gen. sing. of the verbal noun *reditiō*, -ōnis, f. (red + īre) = lit. to go back; hence the noun = return; *reditiōnis* limits *spē*. — *spē*, abl. of *spēs*, *eī*, f., absolute with *sublātā*, denoting cause. A. & G. 255, 2; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — *sublātā*, abl. f. perf. pass. participle of *tollō*, -ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*, irr.; abl. absolute with *spē*.

LINE 11. *parātiōrēs*, nom. plur. m. of the participial adj., comparative degree, *parātior*, -ius; positive *parātus*, comparative -ior, superl. -issimus; *parātiōrēs* is predicate-adj. after *essent*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *omnia*, acc. plur. n. of adj. *omnis*, -e; it is an attributive of *perīcula*. — *perīcula*, acc. plur. of *perīculum*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *subeunda*, acc. plur. n. of the gerundive *subeundus*, -a, -um, of the verb *subedō*, -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -itum (sub + īre). Observe that *perīcula* is the acc. after *ad*, and that the gerundive agrees with the noun. The literal translation of the complete gerundive phrase is: with respect to all the perils to be undergone. Observe again that in the third and fourth conjugations the gerund and the gerundive frequently end in -undum and -undus, instead of -endum and -endus.

ils; they ordered each one to carry for himself from home meal supplies for three months. They prevailed on the Raurici, the Tulingi and the Latovicis their neighbors to adopt	essent; they might be;	trium three	mēnsum months'	molita ground-meal	cibāria supply
	sibi for himself	quemque each	domō from home	efferre to carry	iubent. 13 they order.
	Persuādent They persuade	Rauricis the Raurici	et and	Tulingis the Tulingi	et 14 and
	Latovicis the Latovici (their)	finitimis, neighbors,	utī that	eōdem the same,	ūsī 15 using,

LINE 12. *essent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 317, I; B. 200, (b); G. 544, I; H. 497, II. — *trium*, gen. plur. m. of the num. adj. *trēs, trium*; it is an attributive of *mēnsum*. Of the cardinals up to *centum*, only *ūnus, duo* and *trēs* are declined; *trēs* is an *ī*-stem, and is declined like the plur. of *levis*. — *mēnsum*, gen. plur. of *mēnsis, -is, m.*; gen. of measure. See A. & G. 215, b; B. 132; G. 365, 2; H. 396, V. Note that the regular gen. plur. of *mēnsis* is *mēnsium*, showing that this noun is properly an *ī*-stem; in fact, most editions read *mēnsium* in this text; *mēnsum*, however, occurs. But see A. & G. 59; B. 46, IV, gen. plur. class II, end; G. 57, 3, middle; H. 62, V, and especially foot-note 3. — *molita*, acc. plur. n. of participial adj. *molitus, -a, -um*; in form a perf. pass. participle of *molō, -ere, -ui, -itum*, 3; it modifies *cibāria*. — *cibāria*, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *cibārius, -a, -um*, used as a noun; it is the direct obj. of *efferre*.

LINE 13. *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; dat. of reference or advantage. A. & G. 235; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 1, 2). — *quemque*, acc. sing. of the indef. pron. *quisque, quaeque, quodque, quidque* or *quicque*; *quidque* and *quicque* are substantive forms; *quemque* is subject-acc. of *efferre*. — *domō*, abl. of *domus, -ūs*, or loc. *-ī, f.*; abl. of place from which. A. & G. 258, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — *efferre*, pres. inf. act. of *efferrō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum*. — *iubent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *iubeō, -ēre, iūssi, iūssum*, 2. Note that the regular construction after this verb is the acc. with the inf. The subject-nom. of *iubent* is a pron. implied in the ending referring to *Helvētii*.

LINE 14. *Persuādent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum*, 2 (per, intensive + *suādēre, to advise*); supply *cī*, as subject-nom. — *Rauricis*, dat. of the noun *Raurici, -ōrum, m.*; dat. after *persuādent*. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II; sometimes spelled *Rauraci*. These people were a Celtic tribe on the upper Rhine. — *Tulingis*, dat. plur. of *Tulingi, -ōrum, m.*, connected by *et* with *Rauricis*, and in the same grammatical construction. The *Tulingi* were a German tribe east of the *Raurici*.

LINE 15. *Latovicis*, dat. plur. of *Latovici, -ōrum, m.*; in the same grammatical construction as *Tulingis*. The *Latovici* dwelt north of the *Tulingi*; they were a German clan. Some texts read *Latobrigis*, instead of *Latovicis*. — *finitimis*, dat. plur. of the adj. *finitimus, -a, -um*, in the plur. used as a noun; it is in apposition with the three preceding nouns. — *utī*, the original form of the more common conj. and adv. *ut*. — *eōdem*, abl. n. of the dem. adj. pron. *idem, eadem, idem*; it modifies *cōnsiliō*. — *ūsī*, nom. plur. of the participle *ūsus, -a, -um*, of the deponent verb *utor, -i, ūsus, 3*; it agrees with *cī*, the omitted subj. of *proficiscantur*, l. 17, below. Note that, as a deponent participle, it is used in an act. sense.

16	cōnsiliō	oppidīs	suīs	vīcisque	exūstis,	their plan — to burn their towns and villages, and
	plan	towns	their own,	villages and,	being burned,	
17	ūna	cum	eīs	proficiscantur;	Bōiōsque,	to emigrate along with them; and the Boii, who had dwelt across the
	together	with	them	they may set out;	the Boii and,	
18	quī	trāns	Rhēnum	incoluerant	et	in
	who	across	the Rhine	had dwelt	and	into
19	agrum	Nōricum	trānsierant	Nōrēiamque		Norican country and had stormed
	the country	Norican	had crossed	Noreia and,		

LINE 16. *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; abl. after *ūsi* — participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs. A. & G. 289; B. 98, 1; G. 112, 5, 1; H. 548. For *ūsi* as followed by the abl., see A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421. — *oppidīs*, abl. plur. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *exūstis*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — *suīs*, abl. plur. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *oppidīs*. — *vīcisque* (*vīcis* + *que*). *vīcis*, abl. plur. of *vīcus*, -ī, m., connected by the enclitic -*que* with *oppidīs*, and it is in the same grammatical construction. — *exūstis*, perf. pass. participle, abl. plur. of *exūstus*, -a, -um, from *exūrō*, -ere, -ūssi, -ūstum, 3; abl. absolute with *oppidīs* and *vīcis*. Observe that this construction is made necessary, because there is no perf. act. participle of *ūrō*.

LINE 17. *ūna*, adv. modifying the prep. *cum*. Note that the adv. *ūna* is derived from the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um, and hence with *cum* = *together with*, a prepositional phrase = *closely with*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. *eīs*. — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *cum*. Instead of the three words *ūna cum eīs*, Caesar might have used simply *secum*, an indirect reflexive. — *proficiscantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *proficiscor*, -ī, *profectus*, 3; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, l. 15, above. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, (b), and REM. 2; G. 546, 1, and NOTE 1; H. 498, 1. Observe that *ut* . . . *proficiscantur* as a noun-clause is the direct obj. of *persuadent*, l. 14, above. — *Bōiōsque* (*Bōiōs* + enclitic *que*). *Bōiōs*, acc. plur. of *Bōii*, -ōrum, m., direct obj. of *adsciscunt*, l. 21, below. The Boii were a people of Celtic Gaul; a part of them migrated to Germany, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part federated in some sort with the Helvetii, and migrated with them.

LINE 18. *quī*, nom. plur. of rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Bōiōs* as its antecedent, and is subject-nom. of *incoluerant*. — *trāns*, prep. with acc. *Rhēnum*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.; an appositive of *flūmen* understood, which latter is the obj. of the prep. *trāns*. — *incoluerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of *incolō*, -ere, -uī, -cultum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. For use, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I, end.

LINE 19. *agrum*, acc. sing. of *ager*, *agri*, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *Nōricum*, acc. m. of the adj. *Nōricus*, -a -um; it modifies *agrum*. The adj. = *of or belonging to Noricum*, a region of Germany, which had the Danube on the north, the Alps on the south, upper Romania on the east and Rhetia on the west. — *trānsierant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *trānsēō*, -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -itum; syncopated form for *trānssiverant*. See A. & G. 128, I, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. *trānsierant* is connected by the conj. *et* with *incoluerant*, and agrees with the same subject-nom. *quī*. — *Nōrēiamque* (*Nōrēia* + *que*). *Nōrēiam* is acc. sing. of *Nōrēia*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *oppugnārant*. Noreia was a town of Noricum.



Noreia, they received to their number and united to themselves as allies.	oppugnārant,      receptōs      ad      sē      sociōs 20 <i>had stormed,    having been received to themselves, as allies</i>
	sibi      adsciscunt. 21 <i>to themselves    they unite.</i>

VI. There were but two routes, by which the Helvetii could leave home. One route	VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus 1 <i>There were in all routes two, by which</i>
	itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum 2 <i>routes from home to go forth they were able; one (route)</i>

LINE 20. **oppugnārant**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; connected by the conj. *que* with *transierant*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **receptōs**, acc. plur. of perf. pass. participle *receptus*, -a, -um of the verb *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; it agrees with the noun *Boiōs*, l. 17; but is best translated by a coordinate clause. Consult A. & G. 292, and REM.; B. 191; G. 664, REM. 1; H. 549. 5. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **sē**, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **sociōs**, predicate-acc. See A. & G. 239, 1, a; B. 151, (b); G. 340, (b); H. 373, 1.

LINE 21. **sibi**, dat. plur. of the indirect obj. — **adsciscunt**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *adsciscō*, -ere, -scīvī, -scitum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*, to be supplied. Observe the strictly literal translation of the last line: *they admit as allies to themselves the Boii having been received to themselves*.

LINE 1. **Erant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. indicative of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; its subject-nom. is *itinera*. *erant* here makes a complete predicate in itself; and hence as thus used is called a substantive-verb, and as such usually stands first in the sentence. Consult A. & G. 172, NOTE, end, and 344, c. — **omnīnō**, adv. (*omnis*) = *in all*, i.e. *alone*, *only*. — **itinera**, nom. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n., subject-nom. of *erant*. Synonyms: *via* (digammated from *i* in *ire* thus: *fi* + *a* = *via* or *wia*) = the ordinary travelled way; whereas *iter*, in a concrete sense = the way direct to a particular point, whether travelled or not. But both *iter* and *via* are used in an abstract sense, and = *journey*, *march*, without any particular difference in meaning. — **duo**, nom. plur. n. of the num. adj. *duo*, *duae*, *duo*. See note on *trēs*, l. 2, Chap. I. *duo* modifies *itinera*. — **quibus**, abl. plur. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *itinera* as its antecedent, but is here used adjectively, and agrees with *itineribus*. Observe the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, and consult A. & G. 200, a; B. 129, REM. 1, (b); G. 615; H. 445. 8.

LINE 2. **itineribus**, abl. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of the way by which. See A. & G. 258, g; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1). — **domō**, abl. sing. of the noun *domus*, -ūs, or loc. -ī, f.; abl. of the place from which. A. & G. 258, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — **exīre**, pres. inf. act. of *exeo*, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum; complementary inf., depends on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — **possent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis + sum); subjunctive, because it is a clause of characteristic. See A. & G. 320; B. 234, 1; G. 631; H. 503, I. — **ūnum**, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a -um; supply *iter*; the latter is an explanatory appositive of *itinera*; or *erat* may be supplied, of which *iter* would be subject-nom.

3	per	Sēquanōs,	angustum	et	difficile,	inter	was through the Sequani, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone, narrow and difficult, between
4	montem	Iūram	et	flūmen	Rhodanum,	vix	Mount Jura and the river Rhone, scarcely
5	quā	sīngulī	carri	dūcerentur;	mōns		where one by one waggons could be dragged; a mountain could with difficulty be drawn.
6	autem	altissimus	impendēbat,	ut	facile		Moreover, a high beetling mountain was near it, so that a very few men could easily impede the
7	perpaucī	prohibēre	possent;	alterum			a very few to hold (the pass) were able; a second (way was)

LINE 3. **per**, prep. with the acc. — **Sēquanōs**, acc. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; it follows the prep. *per*. As to this clan, see note on *Sēquanī*, l. 25, Chap. I. — **angustum**, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *angustus*, -a, -um (*angere*, to press together); *angustum* is an attributive of *iter* understood. — **difficile**, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *difficilis*, -e; connected by the conj. *et* with *angustum*, and in the same grammatical construction (*dis* + *facilis*); the *s* is assimilated; *dis* denotes privation; and hence *difficilis* = *not easy, difficult*. — **inter**, prep. with the acc.

LINE 4. **montem**, acc. sing. of *mōns*, *montis*, m.; acc. after the prep. *inter*. — **Iūram**, acc. sing. *Iūra*, -ae, m.; it is in apposition with *montem*. For description, see note on *Iūrā*, l. 13, end, Chap. II. — **flūmen**, acc. sing. n. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; connected by the conj. *et* with *montem*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **Rhodanum**, acc. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -i, m.; an appositive. — **vix**, adv.; it modifies *dūcerentur*. Observe how emphatic it becomes by being placed at the beginning of the clause.

LINE 5. **quā**, adv.; strictly, an abl. of the pron. *quī, quae, quod*, used adjectively, and agreeing with *parte* understood; and hence = *in which direction, where*. — **sīngulī**, nom. plur. of the distributive num. adj. -ī, -ae, -a; declined like the plur. of *bonus*. See A. & G. 95, a; B. 63, c; G. 97; H. 174, 2; it agrees with *carri*. — **carri**, nom. plur. of *carrus*, -ī, m.; it is the subject of *dūcerentur*. — **dūcerentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum*, 3; its subject is *carri*; subjunctive, because a clause of characteristic. For grammatical references, see note on *possent*, l. 2, above. — **mōns**, nom. sing., and subj. of *impendēbat*. Note that the vowel *o* is conceived to be *naturally* long only in the nom. and voc. sing.; in the other cases it is conceived to be short.

LINE 6. **autem**, conj., a weak adversative particle; here = *moreover*. — **altissimus**, superl. degree of the adj. *altus*, comparative *altior*; it is an attributive of *mōns*; the superl. of *eminence*. A. & G. 93, b; B. 68, REM. 4; G. 302; H. 444, 1. — **impendēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *impendēō, -ere* (no perf. or supine); in + *pendere* = *to hang on or over*. This verb is in use sometimes *trans.*, and sometimes *intrans.*; it is here to be taken as *intrans.* = *was overhanging*. — **ut**, ecclastic conj. = *so that*. — **facile**, adv., modifying *prohibere*; the neuter acc. of the adj. is often used as an adv. See A. & G. 148, d; B. 117, 6; G. 91, 1, (c); H. 304, I, 3, 1).

LINE 7. **perpaucī**, nom. plur. of the adj. *perpaucus*, -a, -um, used substantively; it is subject-nom. of *possent*. — **prohibere**, pres. inf. act. of *prohibeo, -ere, -ui, itum*, 2

passage. The other route was through our province; it was much easier and quicker, because the Rhone flows between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, who had lately been sub-

per	prōvinciam	nostram,	multō	facilius	8
through	province	our,	much	more easy	
atque	expeditius,	propterea	quod	inter	9
and	expeditious	on this account,	because	between	
finēs	Helvētiōrum	et	Allobrogum,	quī	10
the boundaries	of the Helvetii	and	the Allobroges,	who	
nūper	pācātī	erant,	Rhodanus	fluit,	isque
lately	pacified	were,	the Rhone	flows,	this and,
					11

(pro + habere = lit. to hold forth or from); complementary inf. See note on *exire*, l. 2, above. The pron. *id*, i.e. *iter*, may be here supplied as the direct obj. of *prohibere*; or, if preferred, *eōs exire* may be supplied, giving a little different turn to the meaning. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*; see *possent*, l. 2, above; here, however, *possent* is subjunctive of result. A. & G. 319, 1; B. 201; G. 552, 1; H. 500, II. — *alterum*, nom. sing. n. of adj. *alter*, -era, -erum = the one, the other of two; as a numeral it = *secundus*, -a, -um; supply here *iter*, of which *alterum* is a modifier. *iter* thus supplied may be put in apposition with *itinerā*, l. 1, above; or it may be taken as subject-nom. to *erat*, to be supplied. The route intended is the southern route.

LINE 8. *per*, prep. with the acc. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*. — *nostram*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; it modifies *prōvinciam*; it refers to the Roman province. See note on *prōvinciae*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *multō*, abl. n. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; abl. of degree of difference after the comparative *facilius*; it may, however, be taken as an adv. But consult A. & G. 250; B. 164; G. 403; H. 423. — *facilius*, nom. sing. n. of the comparative degree *facilior*, -ius; positive *facilis*, superl. *facillimus*; *facilius* modifies *iter*, already supplied, and with which *alterum*, in the preceding line, agrees.

LINE 9. *atque*, see note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I. — *expeditius*, nom. sing. n. of the participial adj. *expeditus*, comparative degree *expeditior*, superl. *expeditissimus*; *expeditius* is connected by the conj. *atque* with *facilius*, and is in the same grammatical construction. Observe (a) that the verb from which this participle comes is *expediō*, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -itum, 4; and (b) that it is derived from *ex* + *pēs* = lit. to get the foot out of the snare; hence *expediō* = to extricate. — *propterea quod*, see notes on these particles, l. 9, Chap. I. — *inter*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 10. *finēs*, acc. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *inter*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of *Helvēti*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *finēs*. For description, see note on *Helvēti*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *Allobrogum*, gen. plur. of *Allobrogēs*, -um, m., connected by the conj. *et* with *Helvētiōrum*, and in the same grammatical construction. The Allobroges occupied the country near the junction of the Saône and the Rhone. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it is the subject-nom. of *pācātī erant*.

LINE 11. *nūper*, adv. (for *noviper* from *novus*) = newly; it modifies *pācātī erant*. — *pācātī erant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. pass. of *pācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; the subject-nom. is the rel. pron. *quī*. The Allobroges were "pacified" by Caius Pomptinus 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle. — *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of

12	nōnnūllis	locīs	vadō	trānsītūr.	Extrēmum	dued; and this river can be ford- ed in some places.
	<i>in some</i>	<i>places</i>	<i>by a ford</i>	<i>is crossed.</i>	<i>The most distant</i>	
13	oppidum	Allobrogum	est	proximumque		Geneva was the furthestmost town of the Allobroges,
	<i>town</i>	<i>of the Allobroges</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>nearest and,</i>		and was very near to the territory of the Helvetii.
14	Helvētiōrum	finibus	Genāva.	Ex eō oppidō		From this town a bridge reached across to the Hel-
	<i>to the Helvetian boundaries,</i>	<i>Geneva.</i>	<i>From this</i>	<i>town</i>		
15	pōns	ad	Helvētiōs	pertinet.	Allobrogibus	
	<i>a bridge</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>the Helvetii</i>	<i>extends.</i>	<i>The Allobroges,</i>	

*fluit.* — *fluit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *fluō*, -ere, *flūxī*, *fluctum*, 3; it agrees with its subj. *Rhodanus*. — *isque* (is + que). *is*, a dem. pron., *is*, *ea*, *id*; it points to *Rhodanus* as its antecedent; is expressed for emphasis, and is the subject-nom. of *trānsītūr*. Observe that the enclitic -que connects the clauses very closely.

LINE 12. *nōnnūllis*, abl. plur. of the adj. *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *locīs*. Observe that the position of *nōn*, as either before or after *nūllus*, and some other words, changes the meaning: thus *nōnnūllī* = *some*; whereas *nūllus nōn* = *every*. Consult A. & G. 150, a and b; B. 117, 10; G. 449, 4; H. 553, I. — *locīs*, locative abl. of *locus*, -ī, m., plur. *locī*, m., or *loca*, n., gen. *locōrum*. For definition of meaning, see note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locīs* is locative abl. by A. & G. 258, f; B. 170, REM. 3; G. 385, NOTE 1; H. 425, II, 2. — *vadō*, abl. sing. of *vadum*, -ī, n.; abl. of the way by which, i.e. *means*. — *trānsītūr*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of *trānsēō*, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum; it agrees with its subject-nom. *is*. — *Extrēmum*, nom. sing. n. of the superl. degree of the adj. *exterus*, -rior, *extrēmus* or *extimus*; *extrēmum* modifies *oppidum*.

LINE 13. *oppidum*, -ī, n.; predicate-nom. after *est*. — *Allobrogum*, gen. plur. of *Allobrogēs*, -um, m.; it limits *oppidum*. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Genāva*. — *proximumque* (*proximum* + que). *proximum*, nom. sing. n. of the superl. degree of the adj. *proximus*, -a, -um, comparative *propior*; the positive is wanting; closely connected by the enclitic -que with the adj. *extrēmum*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 14. *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of *Helvētīū*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *finibus*. — *finibus*, dat. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; it is dat. after the adj. *proximum*. See A. & G. 234, a; B. 144, REM. 4; G. 359; H. 391, I. — *Genāva*, nom. sing. of *Genāva*, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *est*. *Genāva* was a town of the Allobroges; it is sometimes written *Geneva*, and also *Genua*; compare the GER. *Genf*, and the GK. *Γενω*, of the Greek paraphrase. The reader will note the emphasis indicated by the order of the words. The natural Latin order is: *Genāva est extrēmum Allobrogum oppidum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus*. — *Ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. adj. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *oppidō*. — *oppidō*, abl. sing. of the noun *oppidum*, -ī, n., after the prep. *ex*.

LINE 15. *pōns*, nom. sing. of *pōns*, *pontis*, m.; it is subject-nom. of *pertinet*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvētīū*, -ōrum, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *pertinet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *pertineō*, -ere, -nūī, -lentum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *pōns*. — *Allobrogibus*, dat. plur. of

vetii. The latter thought that they could either persuade the Allobroges, inasmuch as they did not as yet seem to be well-disposed toward the Roman people, or they could force them, to allow them to go through their

sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum 16  
*themselves either to be about to persuade, because not yet*

bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, 17  
*of good mind to the people Roman they seemed,*

existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs 18  
*they thought, or by force to be about to compel (them)*

ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. 18  
*that through their boundaries them to go they might permit.*

*Allobrogēs*, -um, m.; dat. after *persuāsūrōs* (*esse*). Consult A. & G. 227, and NOTE 1; B. 142; G. 346, and REM. 2; H. 385, II.

LINE 16. *sēsē*, acc. plur. of *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; reduplicated reflexive pron. for the simple *sē*, but more emphatic; subject-acc. of *persuāsūrōs* (*esse*). — *vel . . . vel* = *either . . . or*. Synonyms: *vel*, imperative of *volō*, gives a choice between the alternatives; whereas *aut* excludes the alternative. This distinction is not always observed. — *persuāsūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *persuādēō, -dēre, -suāsī, -suāsum*, 2 (per, intensive + *suādere* = *to advise thoroughly*); its subject-acc. is the pron. *sēsē*. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *nōndum*, adv. (*nōn* + *dum*); it modifies *viderentur*.

LINE 17. *bonō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *bonus, -a, -um*; comparative *melior*, superl. *optimus*; *bonō* is the attributive of *animō*. — *animō*, abl. of quality with the adj. *bonō*. See A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; H. 419, II. Observe that the abl. of quality is essentially a predicative construction. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. and = *to* or *toward*. — *populum*, acc. sing. of *populus, -i*, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *Rōmānum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *populum*. Synonyms: *populus* = *the people* in their civil capacity; *plēbs* = *the common people* in distinction from the patricians; and *vulgus* = *the crowd, the rabble*. — *vidērentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum*, 2; in the pass., *vidērī* = lit. *to be looked up to or regarded*; hence = *to seem, to appear*. *vidērentur* is in the subjunctive, because the statement is made on the authority of the Helvetii, not on that of Caesar. Consult A. & G. 341; B. 245, I, (b); G. 663, I; H. 516, II, and 528, 3.

LINE 18. *existimābant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; its subject-nom. is *Helvetiī* understood. Note (1) that the construction here is that of informal indirect discourse. What the Helvetii thought in direct form is: *Allobrogibus persuādēbimus, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum videtur*. Note (2) that a few years before the time of this narrative, the ambassadors of the Allobroges had been tampered with by Catiline's agents. Compare Cic., *oratiō III* in *Cat.*, Sec. II. — *vel*, see *vel*, I. 16, above. — *vī*, abl. of *vis, vīs*, f.; nom. plur. *virēs*; *vī* is an abl. of means. — *coāctūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *cōgō, -ere, cōgē, cōctum*; its subject-acc. is *sēsē*, to be supplied; supply also *eōs*, as direct obj. What the Helvetii said in direct form is: *vī (eōs) cōgēmus, ut per suōs finēs nōs ire patiantur*.

LINE 19. *ut*, telic conj. = lit. *that*, but often best rendered in connection with its verb in the subjunctive by the English *to*, with the verb-stem. — *per*, prep. with

20	Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis,	country. Now
	All things for the expedition having been prepared,	when all things
21	diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī	were ready for
	a day they name, on which day near the bank of the Rhone	the migration,
22	omnēs convenient; is diēs erat ante diem	they appointed a
	all should assemble; this day was before, day,	day on which all
		were to assemble
		at the margin of
		the river Rhone;
		and this day was

the acc. — *suūs*, acc. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *finēs*, but refers to the Allobroges. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *per*. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is subject-acc. of *ire*; it refers to the Helvetii. Observe that the pronouns are not used according to the rules. If Caesar had written leisurely he would probably have written here: *per eōrum finēs sē ire*. — *ire*, pres. inf. act. of *eō*, *ire*, *ivī* (*iī*), *itum*; its subject-acc. is *eōs*. — *paterentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *pātor*, *pātī*, *passus*, 3, deponent; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. A. & G. 331, and foot-note 2; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, I; H. 498, II.

LINE 20. *Omnibus*, abl. plur. f. of adj. *omnis*, -e; see note on *omnis*, l. 1, Chap. I; *omnibus* is an attributive of *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; abl. absolute with the participle *comparātis*, denoting time when. See A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 172, 192; G. 409, 410; II. 431, and 2. (3). — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; it is here used with the acc. to denote purpose, and may be rendered *for*. — *profectiōnem*, acc. sing. of *profectiō*, -ōnis, f.; it is in the acc. after the prep. *ad*. — *comparātis*, abl. plur. f. of *comparātus*, -a, -um, perf. pass. participle of the verb *comparō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; abl. absolute with the noun *rēbus*.

LINE 21. *diem*, acc. sing. of *diēs*, -ēī, f. here, denoting fixed time, as indicated by the following *quā diē*; but m. next line, as describing the time. Consult A. & G. 73; B. 49, REM. 2; G. 64; II. 123. *diem* is the direct obj. of *dicunt*. — *dicunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictum*, 3; its subject-nom. is *Helvētīi*, to be supplied. — *quā*, abl. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it is used here both relatively and adjectively: as a rel. it refers to *diem*; as an adj. it agrees with *diē*. See note on *itineribus*, l. 2, above. — *diē*, abl. sing. f., denoting time when. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; II. 429. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; here it = *near*; not *on*; the latter notion would be indicated by *in ripā*. — *ripam*, acc. sing. of *ripa*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *Rhodanī*, gen. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; it limits the noun *ripam*.

LINE 22. *omnēs*, nom. plur. m. and f. of *omnis*, -e; used here substantively as the subject-nom. of *convenient*, or may be taken as an adj. modifying *Helvētīi* understood. — *convenient*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of *conveniō*, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; subjunctive denoting purpose. Observe that the phrase *quā diē* = *ut eā diē*, and consult A. & G. 317, 2, and NOTE; B. 200, (b), 233, 1; G. 630; II. 497, I. — *is*, dem. pron.; it is an attributive of *diēs*, and is here a pure demonstrative. — *diēs*, subject-nom. of *erat*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *diēs*. — *ante*, prep. with the acc. — *diem*, acc. sing. of *diēs*, -ēī, m.; acc. after prep. *ante*. Observe that *ante* is both a prep. and an adv., like its opposite *post*. The archaic form of this particle is *anti*, whence *antiēu* and *antihac*; kindred with the GK. *ἀντί*.

the fifth before the April Kalends (March 28th), in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.	quintum <i>the fifth,</i> Aulō <i>Aulus</i>	Kalendās <i>Kalends</i> Gabīniō <i>Gabinus</i>	Aprīlēs, <i>April,</i> cōnsulibus. <i>being the consuls.</i>	Lūciō <i>Lucius</i>	Pisōne, <i>Piso, (and)</i>	23          24
--	--	---	---	------------------------	-------------------------------	--

VII. When the report was made to Caesar that the Helvetii were attempting to	VII. eōs <i>them (that they)</i>	Caesari <i>To Caesar</i>	cum <i>when</i>	id <i>this</i>	nūntiātum esset, <i>had been announced,</i>	1
			per <i>through</i>	prōvinciam <i>province</i>	nostram <i>our</i>	iter <i>a journey</i>

LINE 23. **quintum**, acc. sing. m. of the ordinal adj. *quintus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *diem*. But observe carefully (1) that the complex phrase *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs* is the predicate-nom. after *erat*. Observe (2) that the phrase *ante diem* by itself is used as an indecl. noun, and may take an acc. after it; that the grammatical form would be strictly: *diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*; or (3) that the phrase takes, sometimes, the prep. *in* or *ex* before it. On the Roman method of designating dates, the reader may consult A. & G. 259, e, and 376; B. 261. 5; G. pp. 491, 492; H. 642, 3. — **Kalendās**, acc. plur. of *Kalendae*, -arum, f.; anomalous acc. after the phrase *ante diem quintum*; see specifications (1) and (2), immediately preceding. — **Aprīlēs**, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *Aprīlis*, -e; it agrees with *Kalendās*. Observe that the Latin names of months are adjectives. — **Lūciō**, abl. sing. of the praenōmen *Lūcius*, -ī, m., praenōmen of *Pisō*. — **Pisōne**, abl. sing. of *Pisō*, -ōnis, m.; abl. absolute with *cōnsulibus*.

LINE 24. **Aulō**, abl. sing. of the praenōmen *Aulus*, -ī, m., praenōmen of *Gabīnius*. — **Gabīniō**, abl. of *Gabīnius*, -ī, m.; abl. absolute with *cōnsulibus*. *Gabīnius* was consul with *Pisō*, 58 B.C. For the construction here, see note on *M. Messāla et M. Pisōne*, l. 3, Chap. II. Observe (1) that the names of the consuls put in the abl. absolute with *cōnsulibus* — often without a conj. — denote the year in the narrative of Roman historic events. Observe (2) that the complex phrase *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs* is sometimes abbreviated thus: *a. d. V. Kal. Apr.* Observe (3) that this phrase = in our method of designating the time of the month, the 28th of March. The process of transmutation is thus represented: *V. Kal. Apr.* (33 — 5) = *March 28th*. See A. & G. 376, a, b, c, d; B. 261, 7, (b); G. p. 492; H. 644, II. — **cōnsulibus**, see l. 3, Chap. II.

LINE 1. **Caesari**, dat. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; indirect obj. of *nūntiātum esset*. A. & G. 224; B. 140; G. 344; H. 384, I. — **cum**, conj., temporal. — **id**, nom. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; used here as a n. personal pron. of the 3d pers., and = *it*; it is subject-nom. of *nūntiātum esset*. Note that *id* — i.e. the following statement — is the herald of the following infinitive-clause *eōs . . . cōndārī*, and is in apposition with it. That is to say, the infinitive-clause is the real subj. of *nūntiātum esset*. — **nūntiātum esset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *nūntiō* (sometimes written *nūnciō*), -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, 1; subjunctive after *cum*, temporal. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 220; G. 585; H. 521, and II, 2. Observe that the participle-part of this tense is neuter, because the subject-nom. is neuter.

LINE 2. **eōs**, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to the Helvetii, and is subject-acc. of *cōndārī*. — **per**, prep. with the acc. — **prōvinciam**, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the

3	facere	cōnārī,	mātūrat	ab	urbe	march through
	to make	to attempt (attempt),	he hastens	from	the city	our province, he
4	proficiscī	et,	quam	māximīs	potest	made haste to
	to set out	and	by as much as	the greatest,	he is able,	leave the city,
5	itineribus,	in	Galliam	ūteriōrem	contendit	— Rome, — and
	marches,	into	Gaul	farther	he presses on	with all possible
6	et	ad	Genāvam	pervenit.	Prōvinciae	speed he pressed
	and	at	Geneva	he arrives.	To the province	on into ulterior
						Gaul, and arrived
						at Geneva. He

prep. *per*. — *nostram*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -*tra*, -*trum*; it is an attributive of *prōvinciam*. The allusion is to the Roman province, south of *Celtica* and east of *Aquiltania*. — *iter*, acc. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *facere*.

LINE 3. *facere*, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, -*ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; complementary inf., and depends on *cōnārī*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; II. 533, 2. — *cōnārī*, pres. inf. of deponent verb *cōnor*, -*ārī*, -*ātus*, 1; its subject-acc. is the pron. *eōs*. — *mātūrat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *mātūrō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, 1; its subject-nom. is Caesar understood. *mātūrāre* is derived from the adj. *mātūrus* = *ripe*; hence lit. the verb = *to ripen*; then of events *mātūrāre* = those that ripen or come to pass speedily; hence tropically the verb = *hasten*. Observe that *mātūrat* is the historical pres. which admits of the primary or secondary sequence. Consult A. & G. 276, d, 287, e, NOTE; B. 190, REM. 1; G. 511, REM. 1; II. 495, II. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *urbe*, abl. sing. of *urbs*, *urbis*, f.; abl. after the prep. *ab*. Note that *ab*, not *ex*, is used, because Caesar was *near*, not *in* the city. Caesar was consul 59 B.C. He became pro-consul in 58, and the provinces of Cis- and Trans-Alpine Gaul and Illyricum were assigned him for five years. As pro-consul he held the military power — *imperium* — and was not permitted to enter the city.

LINE 4. *proficiscī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *proficiscor*, -*ī*, *profectus*, 3; complementary infinitive, depending on *mātūrat*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; II. 533, I. 1. — *quam*, adv., modifies *māximīs*. — *māximīs*, abl. plur. n. of *maximus*, -*a*, -*um*; superl. of *māgnus*, comparative *māior*; it modifies *itineribus*. — *potest*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *is*, referring to Caesar understood.

LINE 5. *itineribus*, abl. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of means. Note the ellipses, and supply as follows: *tam māgnīs quam māximīs mātūrāre potest itineribus*; i.e. *by so great as the greatest marches he can hasten*. Caesar is said to have travelled 100 miles a day, and to have reached the Rhone in a week, after leaving Rome. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -*ae*, f.; acc. after the prep. *in*. See note on *Gallia*, I. 1, Chap. I. — *ūteriōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *ūterior*, -*ius*, comparative degree, no positive; it modifies *Galliam*. The reference is to Gaul beyond the Alps; i.e. from Rome it was *trans*-Alpine in distinction from *cis*-Alpine Gaul. — *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *contendō*, -*ere*, -*tendī*, -*tentum*, 3; its subject-nom. is Caesar understood; *con* + *tendere* = *to stretch out*; hence, to hasten one's course eagerly in a certain direction — *to press on*. See note on *contendunt*, I. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 6. *ad*, prep. with the acc.; after verb of motion = *toward*. — *Genāvam*, acc. sing. of *Genāva*, -*ae*, f.; acc. after the prep. *ad*. — *pervenit*, 3d pers. sing.



made requisition upon the entire province for as large a number of soldiers as possible—there was but one legion in ulterior Gaul— and he ordered the bridge which was near Geneva	tōtī entire	quam as much as	māximum the greatest	potest he is able,	mīlitum 7 of soldiers
	numerum the number (to be levied)		imperat — erat he gives orders — there was	omnīnō 8 in all	
	in Galliā in Gaul	ūteriōre farther	legiō legion	ūna; — pontem 9 one; — the bridge	
	quī which	erat was	ad Genāvam near Geneva	iubet he orders	rescindī. 10 to be broken down.

pres. ind. act. of *pervenīō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; connected by the conj. *et* with *contendit*, and in the same grammatical construction. Observe that the finite verbs in this sentence, with the exception of *nūntiātum esset*, are historical presents. — *Prōvinciæ*, dat. of the indirect obj. after *imperat*.

LINE 7. *tōtī*, dat. sing. f. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*; *tōtī* is the attributive of *prōvinciæ*. The province referred to here is transalpine Gaul. — *quam māximum potest*, see notes on these words, l. 4, above, and note on the entire phrase, l. 4, Chap. III. *potest*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); its subject-nom. is *ea*, i.e. *provincia* understood. — *mīlitum*, gen. plur. of *mīles*, -itis, m.; it limits *numerum*.

LINE 8. *numerum*, acc. sing. of *numerus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *imperat*. Observe that some verbs have both the direct and indirect obj. Consult A. & G. 227, f; B. 141; G. 345; H. 384, II. Observe that this construction may be fully analyzed by supplying *cogendum*, the gerundive agreeing with *numerum*. — *imperat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *imperō*, 1; it agrees with a pron. as subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it is here a verb of complete predication, and agrees with its subject-nom. *legiō*. — *omnīnō*, adv. (*omnis*) = lit. *in all*; it modifies *erat*.

LINE 9. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *Galliā*, abl. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; abl. after prep. *in*. — *ūteriōre*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *ūterior*, -ius. See note on *ūteriōrem*, l. 5, above. — *legiō*, nom. sing. of *legiō*, -ōnis, f.; subject-nom. of *erat*. This was the tenth legion—Caesar's favorite. — *ūna*, nom. sing. f. of the num. adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūnī*; *ūna* is an attributive of *legiō*. For a description of the Roman legion, see the article *Legion* in any of the Encyclopedias. — *pontem*, acc. sing. of *pōns*, *pontis*, m.; subject-acc. of *rescindī*.

LINE 10. *quī*, nom. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *pontem* as its antecedent; and is the subject-nom. of *erat*. — *erat*, see *erat*, l. 7, above. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; here = *near* or *at*. — *Genāvam*, acc. sing. of *Genāva*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Some copies here read *Genuam*, and others read *Genēvam*. — *iubet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *iubeō*, -ēre, -iūssī, -iūssum, 2; it agrees with a pron., referring to Caesar, implied in the ending. — *rescindī*, pres. inf. pass. of *rescindō*, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, 3; its subject-acc. is *pontem*. This construction follows *iubet*. Observe that *verba sentiendī et dēclārandī* have the acc. and inf. after them.

11	Ubi	dē	ēius	adventū	Helvētīi	certiōrēs	to be destroyed. When the Helve- tīi were informed
	When	of	his	arrival	the Helvetii	more certain	
12	factī	sunt,	lēgātōs	ad	eum	mittunt	of his arrival, they sent to him
	were made,		legates	to	him	they send,	ambassadors of
13	nōbilissimōs		cīvitātis,		cūius	lēgātiōnis	of the highest rank
	the noblest		of the state,		of which	legation	in the state—and
14	Nammēius	et	Verudoctius		prīncipem	locum	of this embassy
	Nammeius	and	Verudoctius		the chief	place	Nammeius and Verudoctius were

LINE 11. **Ubi**, adv. (supposed to be from *quō + bi*, a locative form = *in what place*); transf., most frequently of time = *when*. Sometimes, colloquially, it is used as referring to things and persons, and = *with which, with whom*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it limits *adventū*; it refers to Caesar. — **adventū**, abl. sing. of *adventus*, -ūs, m. (*ad + venire*); abl. after the prep. *dē*. — **Helvētīi**, nom. plur. m. of *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, m.; subject-nom. of *factī sunt*; see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **certiōrēs**, nom. plur. m. of the adj. comparative degree *certior*, -ius; positive *certus* (originally a participle of *cernō*, 3); superl. *certissimus*; *certiōrēs* is predicate-adj. after *factī sunt*.

LINE 12. **factī sunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of *fiō, fieri, factus*, 3; used as a pass. of *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*. — **lēgātōs**, acc. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m.; an appositive of *virōs* understood, which is the direct obj. of *mittunt*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. after verb of motion. — **eum**, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the object of the prep. *ad*. — **mittunt**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *mittō, -ere, mīsi, mīssum*, 3; it agrees with the pron. *eī*, i.e. *Helvētīi* understood, as its subject-nom.

LINE 13. **nōbilissimōs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *nōbilissimus, -a -um*; superl. degree; positive *nōbilis*, comparative *nōbilior*. *nōbilissimōs* modifies *verōs* understood, which is the direct obj. of *mittunt*. For derivation, see note on *nōbilissimōs*, l. 2, Chap. II. — **cīvitātis**, gen. sing. of *cīvitās, -ātis*, f. (*cīvēs*); it limits *virōs* understood; *cīvitātis* might be taken as a partitive gen. after *nōbilissimōs*. See note on *hōrum*, l. 8, Chap. I. — **cūius**, gen. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*, used adjactively; it limits *lēgātiōnis*. — **lēgātiōnis**, gen. sing. of *lēgātio*, -ōnis, f.; it limits *locum*.

LINE 14. **Nammēius**, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *obtinēbant*. — **Verudoctius**, -ī, m.; connected by the conj. *et* with *Nammēius*, and in the same grammatical construction. These men were Helvetian nobles. Some copies have *Verucloctius* instead of *Verudoctius*. We suggest that *Verucloctius* is an orthography based on worn Latin type used in the printing of some early copy of MS. text. The Greek paraphrast has Βεροδοκλιον in the gen. absolute construction; the nom. is Βεροδοκλιος. Worn type might make *doc* look like *cloe*. — **prīncipem**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *prīnceps, -ipis*; it is an attributive of the noun *locum*. *prīnceps* is often used as a subst. As such, it often denotes the *first, the chief, the most noble*. Compare Cic.: *Eudoxus in astrologiā facile prīnceps*. — **locum**, acc. sing. of *locus, -ī*, m. in the sing., but m. or n. in the plur.; see note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II; *locum* is the direct obj. of *obtinēbant*.

holding the chief place — to say that they purposed without doing any damage to march through the province because they had no other route. They requested that it might be	obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse 15 were holding, who should say to themselves to be (it is)
	in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per 16 in mind without any harm a journey through
	prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud 17 the province to make, for this reason because another
	iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius 18 route they had none: to ask (they ask), that with his

LINE 15. **obtinēbant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *obtineō*, -ēre, -uī, -lentum, 2 (ob + tenēre) = lit. *to hold against*; hence = *to retain, to possess*. *obtinēbant* is plur., because it has two sing. subjects connected by *et*. Consult A. & G. 205; B. 126, REM. 1; G. 285; H. 463, II. — **quī**, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *Nannēsius et Veruodectius* as its antecedents, and is subject-nom. of *dicerent*; *quī* here = *ut ei*. — **dicerent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *dico*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3; it agrees with its subj. *quī*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is a rel.-clause denoting *purpose*. See A. & G. 317, and NOTE 2; B. 233, and 1; G. 545, 1, and 630; H. 497, 1; and note that *quī* in this construction = *ut ei*. — **sibi**, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, se, se*; dat. possessor after *esse*. Consult A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; it is here used impersonally; strictly, however, *iter facere* is its subject.

LINE 16. **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — **animō**, abl. sing. of *animus*, -i, m.; it is in the abl. after the prep. *in*. Synonyms: *anima* = *the soul*, the principle of animal life like the *γκ. ψυχή*; *mēns* denotes the *intellectual* or *thinking faculty*; whereas *animus* = *the soul* including all its faculties. — **sine**, prep. with the abl. — **ullō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *ūllus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūllius*, dat. *ūllī* (contracted from *ūnulus*, diminutive adj. of *ūnus*); *ūllō* is an attributive of *maleficiō*. — **maleficiō**, abl. sing. of *maleficium*, -i, n. (malum + facere); it is in the abl. after the prep. *sine*. — **iter**, acc. sing. of *iter, itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *facere*. — **per**, prep. with the acc.

LINE 17. **prōvinciam**, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*. — **facere**, pres. inf. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *fāctum*; *facere* with its modifiers is subject-acc. of *esse*. — **propterea quod**, see note on these words, l. 9, Chap. I. — **aliud**, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *alius*, -a, -ud, gen. *aliūs*, dat. *aliū*; *aliud* is an attributive of *iter*.

LINE 18. **iter**, acc. sing. of *iter, itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *habērent*. — **habērent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with the pron. *ei*, i.e. *Helvētii*, implied in its ending as subject-nom. It is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a dependent clause in the *oratiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, 1, (b); G. 650; H. 524. — **nūllum**, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *nūllus*, -a, -um (nē + ūllus); it is an attributive of *iter*. Observe its very emphatic position. — **rogāre**, pres. inf. act. of *rogō*, -āre, *arxi*, *ātum*, 1; supply *se*, i.e. *Helvētios*, as subject-acc. For the inf. in indirect discourse, see A. & G. 336; B. 245, 1; G. 650; H. 523, I. — **ut**, telic conj. — **ēius**, gen. sing. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to Caesar; it limits *voluntāte*.

19	voluntāte	id	sibi	facere	liceat.	allowed them to do so with his permission
	<i>permission</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>for themselves</i>	<i>to do</i>	<i>it might be lawful.</i>	
20	Caesar,	quod	memoriā	tenēbat,	L. Cassium	Caesar, as he remembered the fact that Lucius Cassius the consul
	<i>Caesar,</i>	<i>because</i>	<i>in memory</i>	<i>he held,</i>	<i>Lucius Cassius</i>	had been slain
21	cōsulem	occīsum	exercitumque	ēius	ab	and his army had been sent under
	<i>the consul</i>	<i>to have been slain,</i>	<i>army and,</i>	<i>of him</i>	<i>by the</i>	
22	Helvētiis	pulsum	et	sub	iugum	the yoke by the
	<i>Helvetii</i>	<i>to have been routed</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>under</i>	<i>the yoke</i>	

LINE 19. *voluntāte*, abl. sing. of *voluntās*, -tātis, f.; abl. of *in accordance with*. A. & G. 253, NOTE; B. 162, and REM. 3; G. 397; H. 416. Synonyms: *voluntās* (*velle*, to wish) = an act of the will whose impulse is *good-will*; whereas *sponte* = an act of the will whose impulse is *freedom* in opposition to fate or chance. — *id*, acc. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; direct obj. of *facere*; it refers to the idea of making a march through the Roman province. — *sibi*, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; it refers to the Helvetii; it is dat. after the impersonal verb *liceat*. Consult A. & G. 227, e; B. 142; G. 346; H. 384. Observe that strictly *id facere* is the subj. of *liceat*. — *liceat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *licet*, -ere, *licuit* or *lictum est*, 2; an impersonal verb; it is in the subjunctive, because it expresses with *ut* the purpose of *rogāre*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200; G. 546; H. 498. Note particularly that the entire clause *ut . . . liceat*, as such, is the direct obj. of *rogāre*. What the Helvetians said in lines 15-19, in direct form, was: *nōbīs est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habēmus nullum: rogāmus, ut tuā voluntāte hōc nōbīs facere liceat*.

LINE 20. *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *pulābat*, l. 23, below. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *memoriā*, abl. sing. of *memoria*, -ae, f. (*memor*); abl. of means. — *tenēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *teneō*, -ere, -uī, *tentum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. Observe that *memoriā tenēbat* = *he remembered*, and hence is followed by the inf. with the acc. — *L.*, an abbreviation for *Lūcium* here; acc. sing. of *Lūcius*, -ī, m., the prae-nomen. — *Cassium*, acc. sing. of *Cassius*, -ī, m., the nomen; subject-acc. of *occīsum* (*esse*). This was that Lucius Cassius whose cognomen was *Longinus*; he was consul 107 B.C.; was slain in battle by the Tigurini, in his province Gallia Narbonensis.

LINE 21. *cōsulem*, acc. sing. of *cōsul*, -ulis, m.; an appositive of *Cassium*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *occīsum* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *occidō*, -ere, -cīdī, -ctum, 3 (ob + caedere) = lit. *to strike down*. Not to be confounded with *occidō* (ob + cadere) = lit. *to fall down*. Note the difference in the quantity of the penults. — *exercitumque* (*exercitum* + *que*). *exercitum*, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; subject-acc. of *pulsum* (*esse*) and *missum* (*esse*). For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — *ēius*, gen. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; it is an attributive of *exercitum*; it refers to Cassius. — *ab*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 22. *Helvētiis*, abl. plur. of *Helvētī*, -ōrum, m.; abl. of the agent with *ab*. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *pulsum* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-acc. *exercitum*. — *et*, conj., connects *pulsum* (*esse*) with *missum* (*esse*). — *sub*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here

Helvetii, did not think that the request ought to be granted; nor did he think that men of hostile disposition, if the privilege of marching through the province were granted, would refrain from outrage and wrong-doing. And	missum,	concedendum	nōn	putābat; 23	
	to have been sent,	it to be conceded	did not	think;	
	neque	hominēs	inimicō	animō,	datā 24
	not and,	men	of hostile	mind	having been given
	facultāte	per	prōvinciam	itineris 25	
	the opportunity	through	the province	of a journey	
	faciundī,	temperātūrōs	ab	iniūriā 26	
	to be made,	to be about (themselves) to restrain	from	wrong	
	et	maleficiō	existimābat.	Tamen,	ut 27
	and	outrage,	he thought.	Yet	that

it takes the acc. after a verb of motion. — *iugum*, acc. sing. of *iugum*, -ī, n. (compare *iungere*, to join); acc. after the prep. *sub*.

LINE 23. *mīssum* (esse), perf. inf. pass. of *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *mīssum*, 3; connected by *et* with *pulsum*, and in the same grammatical construction. With the phrase *sub iugum* compare the English word *subjugate*. Observe, as explaining the language of the text, that a species of arch was formed by sticking two spears into the ground, and by placing another horizontally across them. Under this arch, in token of their defeat, conquered armies were compelled to go. — *concedendum* (esse), pres. inf. pass. of *concedō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3; used impersonally; second periphrastic conjugation. See A. & G. 113, d; B. 106, II, middle; G. 251; H. 234. — *nōn*, negative adv.; observe that it has here its normal place in a Latin sentence. — *putābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *putō*, -are, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, i.e. *Caesar*.

LINE 24. *neque* (*nē + que* = lit. *and not*), a conjunctive adv. here; as a conj., it connects the sentences; as an adv., it modifies *existimābat*, l. 27, below. — *hominēs*, acc. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; subject-acc. of *temperātūrōs* (esse). — *inimicō*, abl. of the adj. *inimicus*, -a, -um (in, *not + amicus*); it modifies *animō*. — *animō*, abl. of *animus*, -ī, m.; abl. of quality with the adj. *inimico*. Consult A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; II. 419, II. — *datā*, perf. pass. participle of *dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datum*, 1; abl. absolute with *facultāte*.

LINE 25. *facultāte*, abl. sing. of *facultās*, -ātis, f.; abl. absolute with *datā*, denoting condition. A. & G. 255, d, 4; B. 172; G. 409; H. 431, 2, (3). — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; acc. after the prep. *per*. — *itineris*, gen. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; it limits *facultāte*.

LINE 26. *faciundī*, gen. of the gerundive *faciendus*, -a, -um, of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; the gerundive is an attributive of *itineris*. Observe that *-undī* for *-endī* is the usual orthography of the gerund and gerundive in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, especially after *i*. — *temperātūrōs* (esse), fut. inf. act. of *temperō*, 1; it agrees with its subject-acc. *hominēs*. Note that the participial form of this compound is in the acc. plur., conforming thus in case with its subj. Note further that *esse* is oftener omitted than expressed in such compounds. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *iniūriā*, abl. of *iniūria*, -ae, f.; abl. after *ab*.

LINE 27. *maleficiō*, abl. of *maleficium*, -ī, n. (*malum + facere* = lit. *to do evil*); hence *maleficium* = a deed of evil. Observe that in general usage *maleficium* denotes

28	spatium	intercēdere	posset,	dum	mīlitēs,	yet that length of time might inter- vene, until the
	space of time	to intervene	might be,	until	the soldiers	soldiers whom he
29	quōs	imperāverat,			convenīrent,	had ordered to be levied might
	whom	he had ordered to be levied			might come together,	assemble, he re- plied to the am- bassadors that
30	lēgātīs	respondit,		diem	sē	plied to the am- bassadors that
	to the legates	he replied :		a day	himself	he would take
31	ad	dēliberandum	sūmptūrum ;		sī	if time for deliber-
	for	deliberating	to be (he is) about to take ;		if	

a deed of evil intent that deserves punishment ; while *iniūria* (in + iūs) = any act or deed contrary to right. *maleficiō* is connected by *et* with *iniūriā*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *existimābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *existimō*, 1 ; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. Synonyms : *existimāre* (ex + aestimāre) = to think or judge after examination ; *arbitrārī* = to think as an arbiter, i.e. to consider ; *pulāre* = to think as a reckoning process ; and *cōgitāre* (con + agitāre) = to pursue something in the mind. — *Tamen*, conjunctive adv., a particle that introduces a thought in contrast with some preceding concession expressed or implied. — *ut*, telic conj.

LINE 28. *spatium*, nom. sing. of *spatium*, -i, n. ; subj. of *posset*. *spatium* here = time. — *intercēdere*, pres. inf. act. of *intercēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, 3 ; complementary inf. A. & G. 271, and NOTE ; B. 181 ; G. 423 ; H. 533, I, 2 ; it depends on *posset*. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum) ; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. *posset* agrees with its subject-nom. *spatium*. — *dum*, conj., synonymous with *dōnec*, and = as long as, until. — *mīlitēs*, nom. plur. of *mīles*, -itis, m. ; subject-nom. of *convenīrent*.

LINE 29. *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod* ; it refers to *mīlitēs* ; it is the direct obj. of *imperāverat*. — *imperāverat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *imperō*, 1. Supply the *lacūna* in the construction thus : *quōs cōgendōs imperāverat* ; if the ellipsis be thus filled, *quōs* is the obj. of *imperāverat*, with which the gerundive will agree. Consult A. & G. 294, d ; B. 184, REM. 4, III, a ; G. 430 ; H. 544. — *convenīrent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *conveniō*, -īre, -veni, -ventum, 4 (con, together + venire) ; imperf. subjunctive after *dum* signifying futurity. Consult A. & G. 328 ; B. 229, (2) ; G. 572 ; H. 519, II, 2.

LINE 30. *lēgātīs*, dat. plur. of *lēgātus*, -i, m. ; indirect obj. after *respondit*. — *respondit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondēō*, -ēre, -spōndi, -spōnsum, 2 ; it agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *diem*, acc. sing. of *dies*, -ei, m. or f. in sing., always m. in the plur. ; *diem* is the direct obj. of *sūmptūrum* (*esse*). Observe that *diem* here denotes time in general. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* ; subject-acc. of *sūmptūrum* (*esse*).

LINE 31. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *dēliberandum*, acc. of the gerund of *dēliberō*, 1 (dē + libra) ; hence *dēliberāre* denotes that what is spoken is weighed ; *dēliberandum* is the acc. of the gerund after the prep. *ad*, denoting purpose. See A. & G. 300 ; B. 184, REM. 4, III ; G. 432 ; H. 542, III. — *sūmptūrum* (*esse*), fut. act. inf. of *sūmō*, -ere, *sūmpti*, *sūmptum*, 3 ; it agrees with its subject-acc. *sē*. — *sī*, conditional conj.

ation; if they wished anything, let them return on the thirteenth of April.	quid <i>anything</i>	vellent, <i>they wanted,</i>	ad <i>at</i>	Idūs <i>the Ides</i>	Aprīlēs 32 <i>of April</i>	33
	reverterentur. <i>let them return.</i>					

VIII. Meanwhile Caesar, with the aid of the legion that he had with him and the sol-	VIII.	Intereā <i>Meantime</i>	eā <i>with that</i>	legiōne <i>legion</i>	quam 1 <i>which</i>	
	sēcum <i>himself with,</i>	habēbat <i>he had</i>	mīlitibusque, <i>with the soldiers and,</i>	quī <i>who</i>	ex 2 <i>from</i>	

LINE 32. *quid*, acc. sing. n. of indef. adj.-pron. *quis, quae, quid*; direct obj. of *vellent*. Sometimes the conj. and pron. are combined, and written as one word: *siquis*, etc. But note that after *sī, nisi* and *num* the f. sing. and the n. plur. have *quae* or *qua*. On the indef. pronouns, consult A. & G. 104, 105, *d*; B. 89, 1; G. 315; H. 190. — *vellent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *volō, velle, volui*; subjunctive, because in the condition after *sī*; it is in the imperf. tense, because the verb of saying — *respondit* — is an historic perf. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; it here = *at* or *on*. The common text reads here: *ante diem Idūs*. — *Idūs*, acc. plur. of *Idūs, -uum*, f., plur.; the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that the Ides fell on the 15th of March, May, July and October, and on the 13th of the other months. According to the text, they were directed to return on the 13th of April. According to the common lection — *ante diem Idūs* — they were directed to return on the 12th of April. — *Aprīlēs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Aprilis, -le*; it agrees with the noun *Idūs*. Note that the month-designations in Latin are adjectives, and also that *Idūs Aprīlēs* are sometimes abbreviated *Id. Apr.*

LINE 33. *reverterentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *revertor, -i, versus*, 3; subjunctive, because the discourse is indirect. *reverterentur* is for the 2d pers. plur. imperative in *orātiō recta*. See A. & G. 339; B. 45, 2; G. 552; H. 523, III. The *orātiō recta* of lines 30–33 is: *diem ego ad deliberandum sumam; si quid vultis, ad Idūs Aprīlēs revertimini*.

LINE 1. *Intereā*, adv. (inter + ea) = lit. *between these things*, i.e. *meanwhile*. The long ultima in this and some other words similarly compounded is anomalous. — *eā*, abl. sing. f. of *is, ea, id*, dem. pron.; it is an attributive of *legiōne*. — *legiōne*, abl. sing. of *legiō, -ōnis*, f.; abl. of *means*; not *agent*, because not voluntary. The legion referred to is the tenth, see note on *legiō*, l. 9, Chap. VII. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*; it refers to *legiōne* as its antecedent; it is the direct obj. of *habēbat*.

LINE 2. *sēcum* (*sē + cum*); *sē* is the abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; it is the obj. of the enclitic prep. *cum*. For the prep. *cum* as enclitic with pronouns, see A. & G. 99, *e*; B. 79, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 184, 6. — *habēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō, -ēre, -ui, -itum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. as subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *mīlitibusque* (*militibus + que*). *mīlitibus*, abl. plur. of *mīles, -itis*, m.; connected by the enclitic conj. *que* with *legiōne*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*; it refers to *mīlitibus*, as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *convēnerant*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.

3	<i>prōvinciā</i>	<i>convēnerant,</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>lacū</i>	<i>Lemannō,</i>	diers that had been collected from the province, constructed a wall sixteen feet high, and a ditch nineteen miles in length, from Lake Geneva which flows into the river Rhone, to Mount Jura which separates the country of the Sequani from that
	<i>the province</i>	<i>had assembled,</i>		<i>from Lake</i>	<i>Leman,</i>	
4	<i>quī</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>Rhodanum</i>	<i>īnfluit,</i>	<i>ad</i>
	<i>which</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>the river</i>	<i>Rhone</i>	<i>flows,</i>	<i>to</i>
5	<i>montem</i>	<i>Iūram,</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>finēs</i>	<i>Sēquanōrum</i>	
	<i>Mount</i>	<i>Jura,</i>	<i>which</i>	<i>the borders</i>	<i>of the Sequani</i>	
6	<i>ab</i>	<i>Helvētiīs</i>	<i>dīvidit,</i>	<i>mīlia</i>	<i>passuum</i>	
	<i>from</i>	<i>the Helvetii</i>	<i>divides,</i>	<i>thousands</i>	<i>of paces</i>	
7	<i>decem novem</i>	<i>mūrum</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>altitūdinem</i>	<i>pedum</i>	
	<i>nineteen,</i>	<i>a wall</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>the height</i>	<i>of feet</i>	

LINE 3. *prōvinciā*, abl. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *convēnerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *convenīō*, -īre, -vērī, -ventum, 4 (con + venire) = *to come together*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. *ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants. — *lacū*, abl. sing. of *lacus*, -ūs, m.; it is in the abl. after the prep. *ā*. — *Lemannō*, abl. of *Lemannus*, -ī, m.; in apposition with *lacū*. See note on *Lemannō*, l. 15, Chap. II.

LINE 4. *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron.; it refers to *lacū*, as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *īnfluit*. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. See note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *Rhodanum*, acc. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; it is in apposition with *flūmen*. — *īnfluit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *īnfluō*, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, 3 (in + fluere); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. Observe that when the idea of motion is distinct, the noun with a prep. is used, instead of a dat. after verbs compounded with certain prepositions; in other words, the prep. which enters into the compound is repeated with its appropriate case, instead of the dat. construction. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 5. *montem*, acc. sing. of *mōns*, *montis*, m.; *montem* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *Iūram*, acc. sing. of *Iūra*, -ae, m.; an appositive. See note on *Iūrā*, l. 13, Chap. II. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *montem*, as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *dīvidit*. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; direct obj. of *dīvidit*. For synonyms, see *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *Sēquanōrum*, gen. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; as a gen. it limits *finēs*. For description of this clan, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I.

LINE 6. *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *Helvētiīs*, abl. plur. of *Helvētī*, -ōrum, m.; abl. after the prep. *ab*. See note on *Helvētī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *dīvidit*, 3d pers. sing. of *dīvidō*, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *mīlia*, acc. plur. of adj. *mille*; in the sing. indecl.; in the plur. used as a n. subst. and decl. throughout. *mīlia* is an acc. of extent of space. A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — *passuum*, gen. plur. of noun *passus*, -ūs, m.; gen. partitive after *mīlia*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2.

LINE 7. *decem*, num. adj. cardinal; an attributive of *mīlia*. — *novem*, num. adj. cardinal; also an attributive of *mīlia*. Observe the various forms in which the



of the Helvetii. After completing this work, he station- ed garrisons and intrenched redoubts at inter- vals, in order that, should the Helvetii attempt	sēdecim sixteen	fossamque moat and,	perdūcit. he extends.	Eō This	opere 8 work
	perfectō, being finished,	praesidia garrisons	dispōnit, he places apart,		castella 9 redoubts
	commūnit, he fortifies,	quō that	facilius, the more easily,	sī if	sē 10 himself

equivalent of *nineteen* in English may be expressed in Latin: by *XVIII*, by *novendecim*, by *undeviginti*, and by *decem novem*, as in our text. The distance here indicated = about 17½ English miles. — *mūrum*, acc. sing. of *mūrus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *perdūcit*. Synonyms: *mūrus* = any sort of wall; *moenia* = city walls, ramparts. — *in*, prep. with the acc. here; it sometimes takes the abl. See note on *in*, I. 1, Chap. I. *in* here = *to*; it is followed by *altitudinem*. — *altitudinem*, acc. sing. of *altitūdō*, -inis, f. (*altus*, high); it is in the acc. after *in*. — *pedum*, gen. plur. of *pēs*, *pedis*, m. (compare Gk. *ποῦς*, *ποδός*); quality gen. of measure with the adj. *sēdecim*. Consult A. & G. 215, b; B. 132; G. 365, 2; H. 395, V, and NOTE I. We might take *pedum* as a partitive gen. after *sēdecim*, *sēdecim* agreeing with *mūrum*, and the phrase *in altitudinem* as an adjective-phrase equivalent to *altum*. The lit. English of the whole of which would be: *a wall sixteen of feet in height*. The construction is to be preferred, however, that takes *in altitudinem* as denoting the limit reached after the verb *perdūcit*.

LINE 8. *sēdecim* (sex + decem); sometimes written *sexdecim*; it is an attributive of *pedum*. — *fossamque* (*fossam* + *que*). *fossam*, acc. sing. of *fossa*, -ae, f. (compare perf. participle f. of *fodere*). Note how closely *fossam* is connected by the enclitic with *mūrum*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *perdūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *perdūcō*, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (per + dūcere). The reader is not to understand that the wall and the ditch were continuous, but that a line of forts and moats were constructed where needed at the fordable places on the south-east bank of the Rhone between Lake Geneva and Pas de l'Ecluse. — *Eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *opere*. — *opere*, abl. sing. of *opus*, -eris, n.; abl. absolute with *perfectō*, denoting time when. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431.

LINE 9. *perfectō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *perfectus*, -a, -um, of the verb *perficiō*, -ere, *fēcī*, -fectum, 3; abl. absolute with *opere*. — *praesidia*, acc. plur. of *praesidium*, -i, n.; direct obj. of *dispōnit*. — *dispōnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dispōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3 (dis + pōnere) = lit. *to place apart*. — *castella*, acc. plur. of *castrum*, -i, n. (diminutive of *castrum*, compare English *castle*); direct obj. of *commūnit*.

LINE 10. *commūnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *communiō*, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itum, 4 (con, *intensive* + *mūnīre*) = lit. *to fortify strongly*. — *quō*, strictly an abl. of the rel. *quī*; but in use in clauses containing an adv. in the comparative degree, *quō* = *ut*, *in order that*; hence in this construction *quō* is a conj. — *facilius*, comparative degree of adv. *facile* or *faciliter*, superl. *facillimē*. *facilius* as an adv. modifies *prohibere*. As to the formation of this adv., see A. & G. 148, d; B. 117, 6; G. 91, I, (c); H. 304, I, 3, 1). — *sī* (original form *scī*, sibilated from Gk. *ei*), conditional conj. = *if*. — *sē*, abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; it refers to Caesar, and is in the abl. absolute with *invītō*. See A. & G. 255, a; B. 192, REM. I; G. 409; H. 431, 4.

11	invītō	trānsīre	cōnārentur,	the passage without his permission, he might the more easily oppose them. When the day which he had appointed for meeting the ambassadors came, and the ambassadors had returned to	
	being unwilling	to cross over	they should attempt,		
12	prohibēre	possit.	Ubi ea diēs		
	(them) to prohibit	he may be able.	When that day		
13	quam cōstitūerat	cum lēgātīs	vēnit, et		
	which he had agreed on	with the legates	came, and		
14	lēgātī ad eum	revertērunt, negat	sē		
	the legates to him	returned, he denies himself			

LINE 11. *invītō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *invītus*, -a, -um; abl. absolute with the pron. *sē*. The phrase *sē invītō* = lit. *he himself (being) unwilling*. — *trānsīre*, pres. inf. act. of *trānsēō*, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -itum, 4, but somewhat irr.; complementary inf. depending on *cōnārentur*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *cōnārentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; subjunctive, because the conditional clause is an *essential* part of the sentence. Consult A. & G. 342; B. 235, REM. 1; G. 629; H. 529, II. Observe the shifting of the point of view as indicated by the imperf. tense. And observe also that *cōnārentur* is subjunctive by attraction of mode, as if *sī cōnārentur* were = *quī cōnārentur*.

LINE 12. *prohibēre*, pres. inf. act. of *prohibeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2 (pro + habēre). *prohibere* = lit. *to hold from*; supply *eōs* as direct obj. — *possit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *pōtui* (potis + sum); subjunctive after the conj. *quōd*, denoting purpose. See A. & G. 317, b; B. 233, 1; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II, 2. Note carefully that the historic presents *dispōnit* and *commūnit* take, as we have seen in the preceding lines, the secondary sequence in the conditional clause, and the primary sequence in the purpose-clause; and consult A. & G. 287, c; B. 190, REM. 1; G. 511, REMS. 1 and 2; H. 495, II. — *Ubi*, conjunctive adv. here (*quī* + ending *bi*); see note on *ubi*, l. 4, Chap. V. — *ea*, nom. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *diēs*. — *diēs*, nom. sing. of *diēs*, -ēī, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur.; it here denotes a fixed time; hence it is in the f. For time referred to, see note on *diem*, l. 30, Chap. VII; *diēs* is subject-nom. of *vēnit*.

LINE 13. *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *diēs*, as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *cōstitūerat*. — *cōstitūerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *cōstituō*, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum, 3 (con + statuere); its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *cum*, prep. with the abl.; original form *com*; with the abl. it usually designates accompaniment, or the connection of one obj. with another. It is known here to be the prep., and not the conj. *cum*, not merely because it is followed by a noun in a case-form which may possibly be the abl., but because it occurs in a clause that has its own connective — *ubi*. — *lēgātīs*, abl. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m. (*lēgere*, to delegate); abl. after prep. *cum*. — *vēnit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *veniō*, -īre, *vēnī*, *ventum*, 4; it agrees with its subject-nom. *diēs*. (Observe that *vēnī* has long *ē* in the penult; if it were the pres. tense, the *e* would be short.)

LINE 14. *lēgātī*, nom. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m.; subj. of *revertērunt*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *revertērunt* (re + vertere = lit. *to turn back*), 3d pers. plur. of *revertō*, -ere, -vertī; it agrees with its subject-nom.

him, he told them that he could not, according to the usages and pre- cedents of the Roman people, give any one the right of way through the prov- ince; and he ex- plicitly declared that, if they at- tempted to use	mōre <i>by the custom</i>	et <i>and</i>	exemplō <i>example</i>	populī <i>of the people</i>	Rōmānī <i>Roman</i>	15	
	posse <i>to be able</i>	iter <i>a journey</i>	ūllī <i>to any one</i>	per <i>through</i>	prōvinciam <i>the province</i>	16	
	dare, <i>to give,</i>	et, <i>and,</i>	sī <i>if</i>	vim <i>violence</i>	facere <i>to make</i>	cōnentur, <i>they attempt,</i>	17
	prohibitūrum <i>to be about to stop</i>	ostendit. <i>(them) he shows.</i>		Helvētiī <i>The Helvetii</i>	eā <i>from this</i>	18	

*lēgāfī*; a deponent form, *revertor*, -ī, -versus, frequently occurs in the imperf. tenses. — *negat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *negō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (nē + āiō). *negat* = lit. *he denies, he says . . . not*. The English idiom of *negat sē posse* would be indicated by the Latin: *dicit sē nōn posse*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; *sē* is subject-acc. of *posse*.

LINE 15. *mōre*, abl. of *mōs*, *mōris*, m.; abl. of *accordance with*. A. & G. 253, and NOTE; B. 162; G. 397; H. 416. It will be observed that the first three references make this construction an abl. of specification; while Professor Harkness makes it an abl. of cause. The true principle appears to be *subjective cause*. — *exemplō*, abl. sing. of *exemplum*, -ī, n.; connected by *et* with *mōre*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; it limits *mōre et exemplō*. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *populī*. Synonyms: *populus* = *the people* in their civil capacity; *plēbs* = *the common people* in distinction from the patricians; whereas *vulgus* = *the crowd, the rabble*.

LINE 16. *posse*, pres. inf. of *possum*, *potuī* (potis + sum); its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. — *iter*, acc. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *dare*. — *ūllī*, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *ūllus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūllius*; used here substantively = *cuiquam*; indirect obj. of *dare*. Note that *ūllus* and *quisquam* are chiefly used in negative sentences. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; *prōvinciam* is the obj. of the prep. *per*.

LINE 17. *dare*, pres. inf. act. of *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*, 1; complementary inf.; it depends on *posse*. See A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, l. 2. — *et*, conj.; connects *negat* with *ostendit*. — *sī*, conditional conj. See note on *sī*, l. 10, above. — *vim*, acc. sing. of *vīs*, *vīs* (digammated from GK. *ts*); *vim* is the direct obj. of *facere*. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3; complementary inf., and depends on *cōnentur*. See note on *trānsire*, l. 11, above. — *cōnentur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, deponent, 1; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to the Helvetii. *cōnentur* is in the subjunctive mode, because the conditional clause is an integral part of the sentence. See note on *cōnārentur*, l. 11, above.

LINE 18. *prohibitūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*, to be supplied, referring to Caesar; supply also *eōs*, as direct obj. — *ostendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *ostendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, 3 (ob + tendere); *ostendere* = *to stretch out*; hence, *to expose to view, to show*. *ostendit*

19	spē	dēiectī,	nāvibus	iūctīs	ratibusque	force, he would resist them. The Helvetii, disappointed in this hope, tried, sometimes by day, oftener by night, to see whether they could force a passage; some, on a bridge formed by uniting boats and numerous
	hope	cast down,	boats	being joined together,	rafts and	
20	complūribus	factīs,	aliī	vadīs	Rhodanī,	
	very many	being made,	others	by the fords of the Rhone,		
21	quā	minima	altitūdō	flūminis	erat,	
	where	least	the depth	of the river	was,	
22	nōnnumquam	interdiū,	saepius	noctū,		
	sometimes	by day,	oftener	by night,		

agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — **Helvētīi**, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a substantive; it is subject-nom. of *dēstīlērunt*, l. 26, below. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 14-18 is: *egō, mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī, nōn possum iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnābimīnī, prohibēbō*. — **eā**, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of the noun *spē*. Note the long vowel *ā* in the ultima of the abl., and compare it with the short *a* in the nom. f., as seen in *ea*, l. 12, above.

LINE 19. **spē**, abl. sing. of *spēs*, *spēcī*, f.; abl. of separation after *dēiectī*. A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, I, 2, and NOTE 3; II. 414, I. — **dēiectī**, nom. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *dēiectus*, -a, -um, of the verb *dēiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (*dē* + *iacere*); hence *dēicere* = lit. to hurl down. *dēiectī* as a participle agrees with the noun *Helvētīi*. — **nāvibus**, abl. plur. of *nāvis*, -is, f.; abl. absolute with the participle *iūctīs*, denoting the means. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 410; II. 431. — **iūctīs**, abl. plur. f. of the perf. pass. participle *iūctus*, -a, -um of the verb *iūngō*, -ere, *iūnxī*, *iūctum*, 3; abl. absolute with the noun *nāvibus*. — **ratibusque** (*ratibus* + *que*). *ratibus*, abl. plur. of *ratis*, -is, f.; abl. absolute with *factīs*.

LINE 20. **complūribus**, abl. plur. f. of the adj. *complūrēs*, -a (com, intensive + plūs). *complūribus* is an attributive of *ratibus*. — **factīs**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *factus*, -a, -um, of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it is in the abl. absolute with the noun *ratibus*, denoting the means. The boats thus joined formed a species of bridge. — **aliī**, nom. plur. m. of the adjective-pron. *alius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and in apposition with *Helvētīi*. In translating, supply another *aliī* before *ratibus*, with which the *aliī* of the text is contrasted. — **vadīs**, abl. plur. of the noun *vadum*, -ī, n.; abl. of means. — **Rhodanī**, gen. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; it limits *vadīs*.

LINE 21. **quā**, adv. = *where*; may, however, be taken as a rel. adj. by supplying *viā*, which latter would be an abl. of the way by which. — **minima**, nom. sing. f. of the superl. adj. *minimus*, -a, -um; the adj. is thus compared: *parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*; predicate-adj. after *erat*. — **altitūdō**, -inis, f. (*altus*, high or low, according to the *ā* *quō* of the mental conception). *altitūdō* is subject-nom. of *erat*. — **flūminis**, gen. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; it limits *altitūdō*. — **erat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.

LINE 22. **nōnnumquam**, negative adv. (*nōn* + *num[n]quam*) = lit. *not never*, i.e. *sometimes*; as in English, two negatives in Latin are equivalent to a positive. Con-

rafts; others, at the fords of the Rhone where the depth of the river was least; but, on being repulsed by the strength of our fortifications and the onsets and the missiles of our soldiers, they desisted from the attempt.	sī <i>whether</i>	perrumpere <i>to break through</i>	possent, <i>they might be able,</i>	cōnātī, 23 <i>attempting,</i>
	operis <i>by the work's</i>	mūnitiōne <i>intrenchment</i>	et <i>and</i>	mīlitum <i>the soldiers'</i>
	et <i>and</i>	tēlis <i>weapons</i>	repulsī <i>being repulsed,</i>	hōc <i>from this</i>
	dēstitērunt. <i>desisted.</i>			cōnātū 25 <i>attempt</i>
				26

sult A. & G. 150, and *a*; B. 117. 10; G. 449, 4; H. 553, 1. — *interdiū*, adv. (inter + diū). Observe that *diū* is an old form of *diē*, used only in connection with *noctū*. — *saepius*, adv., comparative of *saepe*, superl. *saepissimē*. — *noctū*, adv.; strictly an old form of the abl. of *nox*. Note that the forms *nox*, *nocte* and *noctū* all occur as adverbs. In such use of the abl., compare GK. gen. *νυκτός*, denoting time within which.

LINE 23. *sī*, conj., usually means *if*, but here it = *whether*. — *perrumpere*, pres. inf. act. of *perrumpō*, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3 (per + rumpere); complementary inf., depending on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); it agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to *Helvētīi*; it is in the subjunctive, because an *indirect* question. Consult A. & G. 334, *f*; B. 242, 2; G. 460, *b*; H. 529, II, 1, NOTE 1. — *cōnātī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *cōnātus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; *cōnātī* as a participle agrees with *Helvētīi*, l. 18, above; but might be translated as if it were *cōnātī sunt*.

LINE 24. *operis*, gen. sing. of *opus*, *operis*, n.; it limits *mūnitiōne*. — *mūnitiōne*, abl. sing. of *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, f.; abl. of means. Observe that *operis mūnitiōne* = lit. *by the fortification of the work*, i.e. *by the fortified works* — the redoubts and the moat. — *et*, conj., connects *mūnitiōne* and *conkursū*. — *mīlitum*, gen. plur. of *mīles*, -itis, m.; it limits *conkursū*. — *conkursū*, abl. sing. of *conkursus*, -ūs, m. (con + cursus = a running together); *conkursū* is also an abl. of means.

LINE 25. *tēlis*, abl. plur. of noun *tēlum*, -ī, n.; abl. of means after *repulsī*. For synonyms, see note on *armīs*, l. 13, Chap. IV. — *repulsī*, nom. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *repulsus*, -a, -um of the verb *repellō*, -ere, *reppulī* or *repulī*, *repulsum*, 3. Note that in this long and somewhat involved sentence *dēiectī*, *cōnātī* and *repulsī* are all participles, and limit *Helvētīi*, at the beginning of the sentence. In the translation it will be the better way to render some of the participles as if they were principal verbs, supplying conjunctions where needed, in order to make good English. — *hōc*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; *hōc* limits *cōnātū*. — *cōnātū*, abl. of the noun *cōnātus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of separation. See grammatical references to *spē*, l. 19, above.

LINE 26. *dēstitērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *dēsistō*, -ere, -stīti, -stitum, 3 (dē + sistere, lit. *to stand off*). *dēstitērunt* agrees with *Helvētīi* as its subject-nom., l. 18, above.

1	IX.	Relinquēbātur	ūna	per	Sēquanōs	IX. The route through the Sequani alone remained, by which, without their permission, the Helvetii could not go, on account of the narrow pass. Since, by their own influence, they could not prevail on them,
		There was left	one,	through	the Sequani,	
2	via,	quā	Sēquanīs	invītis	propter	
	way	by which,	the Sequani	being unwilling,	on account of	
3	angustiās	īre	nōn poterant.	His	cum	
	the narrow pass	to go	not they were able.	Them,	since	
4	suā	sponte	persuādēre	nōn possent,		
	by their own	will	to persuade,	not they were able,		

LINE 1. *Relinquēbātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. pass. of *relinquō*, -ere, -liqui, -līctum, 3 (re + linquere); it agrees with its subject-nom. *via*. — *ūna*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; *ūna* is an attributive of *via*. For grammatical references as to the peculiarities of this adj., see note on *ūnam*, l. 2, Chap. I. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used substantively here, and is the obj. of the prep. *per*. Observe that the phrase *per Sēquanōs* is an adjectival modifier of *via*. As to this way, see lines 2 and 3, Chap. VI.

LINE 2. *via*, -ae, nom. sing. f., subj. of *relinquēbātur* (digammated from *ī* in *īre*). Synonyms: *via* = the ordinary travelled way, compare GK. *ōdós*; whereas *iter*, in a concrete sense = the way direct to a particular point, whether travelled or not. But both *via* and *iter* are sometimes used in an abstract sense without any particular difference in meaning, and = a journey, a march. — *quā*, abl. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it agrees with *via*, to be supplied; and *via* supplied is in the abl. of the way by which. See A. & G. 258, g; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). *viā* is, in fact, an abl. of means as well as place. — *Sēquanīs*, abl. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; abl. absolute with the adj. *invītis*, denoting condition. See A. & G. 255, a, and d. 4; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4. — *invītis*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *invītus*, -a, -um (derivation dubious); abl. absolute with the noun *Sēquanīs*. — *propter*, prep. with the acc. (prope + ter); sometimes an adv.

LINE 3. *angustiās*, acc. plur. of the noun *angustiae*, -ārum, f.; sometimes used in the sing., *angustia*, -ae, f. (*angustus* from *angere*, to press together). Observe that *propter* with the acc. here denotes the objective cause. See A. & G. 245, b; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 3; H. 416, I, 2). — *īre*, pres. inf. act. of *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (ī), *itum*, irr.; complementary inf. depending on *poterant*. Consult A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nōn* (nē + ūnum, apocopated); observe its normal Latin position, immediately before the word it modifies. — *poterant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Helvētīi*. — *His*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; dat. after *persuādēre*. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346; H. 385, II. — *cum*, conj., denoting here both time and cause; also written *quum*, *quom* and (rarely) *qum* (an old adverbial acc. n. of *quī*). It is known to be the conj. and not the prep., because it is seen to introduce a dependent clause which requires a connective. Observe that particular emphasis is put upon the pron. *hīs* by its position before *cum*; that, sometimes, several words precede the conj. when the subordinate precedes the main clause.

LINE 4. *suā*, abl. sing. f. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *sponte*. — *sponte*, abl. sing. of a supposed theme *spōns*, *spontis*, f.; used only in

they sent ambas- sadors to Dum- norix, the Aedu- an, that, through his mediation, they might obtain from the Se- quani their re- quest. Dumno- rix through his	lēgātōs deputies	ad to	Dumnorigem Dumnorix,	Aeduum the Aeduan,	mittunt, they send,	5
ut, that,	eō he	dēprecātōre, being the intercessor,	ā from	Sēquanīs the Sequani	6	
impetrārent. (privilege) they might obtain.		Dumnorix		grātiā through his popularity	7	

the gen. and abl.; *sponte* is in the abl. of means. The phrase *suā sponte* here = *by their influence*, a rare meaning of the phrase, but classical; usually it = *of their own accord*. Synonyms: *sponte* usually = an act of the will, whose impulse is choice, in opposition to fate or chance; whereas *voluntās* = an act of the will, whose impulse is a background of willingness, good-will (*velle*, to wish). — *persuādere*, pres. inf. act. of *persuādēō*, -ere, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2; complementary inf., depending on *possent*. See grammatical references to *ire*, l. 3, above. — *nōn*, adv. negative (contracted from *nē + oenum* or *ūnum*); there is an archaic form *nēnum*. Observe its normal position immediately before the word it modifies; it is very often made emphatic by being put in an abnormal position. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); subjunctive after *cum* causal. A. & G. 326; B. 198, c, and 223; G. 586; H. 517.

LINE 5. *lēgātōs*, acc. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī (*lēgere*, to despatch); direct obj. of *mittunt*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; the usual construction after a verb of motion. — *Dumnorigem*, acc. sing. of *Dumnorix*, -igis, m.; the obj. of the prep. *ad*. For historical description, see note on *Dumnorigē*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *Aeduum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *Aedui*, -a, -um; but here used as a noun in apposition with *Dumnorigem*. — *mittunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *mittō*, -ere, *mīsi*, *mīssum*, 3; historical pres.; its subject-nom. is the pron. *eī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*.

LINE 6. *ut*, telic conj., original form *utī*. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d person; it refers to *Dumnorigem*. — *dēprecātōre*, abl. of *dēprecātor*, -ōris, m. (*dē + precārī* = to pray against); abl. absolute with the pron. *eō*. Observe that here we have a noun and pron. in this construction; in l. 2, above, we have a noun and an adj.; in Chap. VI, end, we have two nouns in the abl. absolute construction. Observe, further, that the abl. absolute construction here denotes the means; i.e. *eō dēprecātōre* = lit. *he being the intercessor* = *by his intercession*. Observe again that nouns in -*tor* appended to the first verb-stem denote the agent or doer. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* used before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *Sēquanīs*, abl. plur. of *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.; abl. after the prep. *ā*, denoting the source. A. & G. 244, 1; B. 120, 2; G. 417, I; H. 413.

LINE 7. *impetrārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *impetrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending; i.e. *eī*, referring to *Helvētīi*. As this verb is transitive, supply *voluntātem* as direct obj. *impetrārent* is subjunctive, because it is in a purpose-clause after *ut*; the clause expresses the purpose of *mittunt*. — *Dumnorix*, -igis, m., subject-nom. of *poterat*; see note on *Dumnorigem*, l. 5, above. — *grātiā*, abl. sing. of *grātia*, -ae, f.; abl. of cause. A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416.

8	et	largitiōne	apud	Sēquanōs	plūrimum	grace and gifts had very great influence with the Sequani, and besides he was friendly to the Helvetii, because from that state he had taken in marriage Orge- torix's daughter; and too, influ- enced by an ex-
	and	liberality	among	the Sequani	very much	
9	poterat	et	Helvētiīs	erat	amīcus, quod	
	was able,	and	to the Helvetii	was	friendly, because	
10	ex	eā	cīvitātē	Orgetorigis	filiam	in
	from	that	state	Orgetorix's	daughter	into
11	mātrimōnium	dūxerat;		et	cupiditātē	
	marriage	he had led;		and	through lust	

LINE 8. *largitiōne*, abl. sing. of *largitiō*, -ōnis, f. (*largire*, to give bountifully); connected by *et* with *grātiā*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. = *at, by, among*. — *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; it is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. For description of this clan, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *plūrimum*, adverbial acc. n. of the superl. degree of adj. *plūrimus*, -a, -um; positive degree *multum*, comparative *plūs*; cognate acc. See A. & G. 238, b; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, 2; H. 371, II, (2).

LINE 9. *poterat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *possum, posse, potui* (potis + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Dumnorix*. Observe that *poterat* here is a verb of complete predication, and = *valēbat*. See note on *possent*, l. 4, above. — *et*, cop. conj., connects *poterat* with *erat*. — *Helvētiīs*, dat. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; dat. after the adj. *amīcus*. Consult A. & G. 234, a; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391, I. For description of the clan, see note on *Helvētiī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum, esse, fui, futurus*; connected by *et* with *poterat*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *amīcus*, nom. sing. m. of the adj. *amīcus*, -a -um; sometimes used as a noun; and may be here rendered as such; but it is here, strictly, an adj., and as such is followed by the dat. — *quod*, conj.

LINE 10. *ex*, prep. with the abl. (ē before consonants, *ex* before vowels and consonants). — *eā*, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *cīvitātē*. — *cīvitātē*, abl. sing. of *cīvitas*, -ātis, f. (*cīves*). By metonymy *ex eā cīvitātē* is put for *ex cīvibus cīvitātis*. Note that Caesar by the use of the prep. *ex* indicates that he took his wife from *within* the borders of that state; if he had used the prep. *ab*, he would indicate that he took his wife from the border-line of the state, not from *within* it. — *Orgetorigis*, gen. sing. of *Orgetorix*, -igis, m.; as a gen. it limits *filiam*. For description, see note on *Orgetorix*, l. 2, Chap. II. — *filiam*, acc. sing. of the noun *fīlia*, -ae; direct obj. of *dūxerat*. Observe that the dat. and abl. plur. of *fīlia* ends in -ābus; so also *dea*, a goddess. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = (after the verb of motion *dūxerat*) *in* or *into*; i.e. he led her to his house. The phrase *dūcere in mātrimōnium* is descriptive of the man's act. The woman is said to veil herself for her husband: *nūbere sē virō*.

LINE 11. *mātrimōnium* (*matri* + *mōnium* = *motherhood*), acc. sing. of *mātrimōnium*, -ī, n.; acc. after the prep. *in*. — *dūxerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *dūco*, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Dumnorix*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the sentences. — *cupiditātē*, abl.



cessive zeal for royal power, he was plotting a revolution in his own state, and wished to have as many states as possible at- tached to him for his kindness. Accordingly, he undertook the	rēgnī of sovereignty	adductus, being led,	novīs of new	rēbus things	studēbat 12 was desirous,
	et and	quam as much as	plūrimās the most	cīvitātēs states	suō 13 by his
	beneficiō favor	habēre to have put under obligation	obstrictās he wished.	volēbat. Therefore	Itaque 14
	rem the affair	suscipit he undertakes	et and	ā from	Sēquanīs 15 the Sequani

sing. of *cupiditās*, -tātis, f. (*cupidus*, desirous); abl. of *subjective cause* after *adductus*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE I.

LINE 12. *rēgnī*, gen. sing. of the noun *rēgnum*, -ī, n. (*rēx*); it limits *cupiditātē*. — *adductus*, perf. pass. participle of the verb *addūco*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (*addūcere* = lit. *to draw to*); *adductus*, as a participle, agrees with the subj. of the proposition in which it stands, i.e. with *Dumnorix* understood. — *novīs*, dat. plur. f. of the adj. *novus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, dat. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *reī*, f.; it is in the dat. after the verb *studēbat*. Consult A. & G. 227, and foot-note; B. 142; G. 346; H. 385, 1. — *studēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *studeō*, -ēre, -uī, 2 (rare perf. *studivī*, kindred with Gk. *σπουδάζειν*, to hasten).

LINE 13. *et*, cop. conj., connects *studēbat* and *volēbat*. — *quam*, adv., modifies *plūrimās*. Note that *quam* is here a correlative to *tam* understood. The complete expression is: *tam multās quam plūrimās cīvitātēs*. Compare note on *quam*, l. 4, Chap. III. — *plūrimās*, acc. plur. f. of the superl. adj. *plūrimus*, -a, -um; positive *multus*, comparative *plūs*. *plūrimās* modifies *cīvitātēs*. — *cīvitātēs*, acc. plur. of noun *cīvitas*, -ātis, f.; direct obj. of *habēre*. — *suō*, abl. sing. n. of the poss. reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *beneficiō*, but refers to *Dumnorix*.

LINE 14. *beneficiō*, abl. of the noun *beneficium*, -ī, n. (*bene* + *facere*); hence the noun = lit. *well-doing*; abl. of cause. — *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; complementary inf. depending on *volēbat*. A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *obstrictās*, perf. pass. participle, acc. plur. f. of the verb *obstringō*, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, 3; *obstrictās* agrees with the noun *cīvitātēs* in gender, number and case; but forms with *habēre* a sort of periphrase nearly = *obstrinxisse*; but the periphrase emphasizes the maintenance of the result. Consult A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, 1, NOTE. — *volēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the irr. verb *volō*, *velle*, *volui*; it agrees with *Dumnorix*, to be supplied. — *Itaque* (*ita* + *que*), conjunctive adv. Observe that when an enclitic is appended to the ultima of any dissyllabic or polysyllabic word, whether that ultima be naturally long or short, it takes the ictus. In the interest of uniform pronunciation, there should be no difference of pronunciation on account of the different meanings of a word; e.g. *itāque* (*and . . . so*) should not be discriminated in pronunciation from *itāque* (*therefore*). Enclitics invariably lean upon the ultima of the word to which they are appended.

LINE 15. *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *reī*, f.; the direct obj. of *suscipit*. The matter alluded to here is *the consent of the Sequani*. — *suscipit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind.

16	impetrat	ut	per	finēs	suōs	negotiation, and
	obtains	that	through	borders	their	obtained from
17	Helvētiōs	īre	patiantur,	obsidēsque	utī	the Sequani per-
	the Helvetii	to go	they allow,	hostages and,	that	mission for the
18	inter	sēsē	dent,	perficit:	Sēquanī,	Helvetii to go
	among	themselves	they give	he effects:	the Sequani,	through the coun-
19	nē	itinere	Helvētiōs	prohibeant;		try, and arranged
	that not	from the route	the Helvetii	they will keep;		that they should
						exchange hos-
						tages: the Se-
						quani, not to pre-
						vent the Helve-
						tii from making

act. of *suscipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (sub + capere); hence *suscipere* = to take up, i.e. from beneath. *suscipit* agrees with *Dumnorix* understood as its subject-nom. — et, cop. conj., connects *suscipit* with *impetrat*. — ā, prep. with the abl. — *Sēquanīs*, abl. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; abl. of the source after the prep. ā. For grammatical references, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 6, above; for description of this clan, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I.

LINE 16. *impetrat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *impetrō*, 1; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Dumnorix* understood; its direct obj. here is the following *ut*-clause. — *ut*, ecclatic conj. — *per*, prep. with the acc. *finēs*. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *per*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *suōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *finēs*, but refers to *Sēquanīs*.

LINE 17. *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, m.; subject-acc. of the verb *īre*. For description of this clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *īre*, pres. inf. act. of *eō*, *īre*, *īvi* (ī), *itum*; it, with its subject-acc. *Helvētiōs*, depends on *patiantur*. — *patiantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the deponent verb *patiōr*, -ī, *passus*, 3; subjunctive of result after *ut*, as an object-clause. See A. & G. 332; B. 201; G. 553; H. 501, II. — *obsidēsque* (*obsidēs* + *que*). *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f.; direct obj. of *dent*. *que*, enclitic conj., connects the clauses very closely. — *utī*, the original form of the adv. and conj. *ut*; ecclatic conj.

LINE 18. *inter*, prep. with the acc. — *sēsē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; reduplicated; the obj. of the prep. *inter*. The phrase *inter sēsē* denotes a reciprocal relation. See A. & G. 196, f; B. 78, REM. 4; G. 221; H. 448, NOTE. — *dent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of verb *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*, 1 (a short before -re in the pres. inf. act. in a verb of the first conjugation by exception); subjunctive of result after *utī*; an object-clause like *ut* . . . *patiantur*, lines 16 and 17, above. See the grammatical references on *patiantur*. Note that the subj. of *dent* is a pronoun, referring to both *Sēquanī* and *Helvētīi*. — *perficit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *perficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, 3; it agrees with *Dumnorix* understood. — *Sēquanī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and subject-nom. of *dant*, to be supplied. The complete lacuna here is: *obsidēs dant*.

LINE 19. *nē*, conjunctive adv. = *that not*; telic; if the construction were ecclatic, *ut non* would be used. — *itinere*, abl. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of separation of *prohibeant*. See A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, I, 2, and NOTE 3; H. 414, I. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, m.; direct obj. of *prohibeant*. For description of the clan, see l. 16, Chap. I. — *prohibeant*, 3d pers. plur. pres.

use of this route; the Helvetii, to pass through the country without damage or outrage.

Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā 20  
the Helvetii, that without harm and injury  
trānseant. 21  
they will cross.

X. Word was brought to Caesar by his scouts that the Helvetii were purposing to march through the country of the Sequani and the Aedui to the bor-

X. Caesarī renūntiātūr, Helvētiis esse 1  
To Caesar it is reported, to the Helvetii to be (it is)  
in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et 2  
in mind, through the territory of the Sequani and  
Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs 3  
of the Aedui a journey into the Santones' borders

subjunctive act. of *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Sēquani*; it is subjunctive, because negative purpose after *nē*. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200, and (b); G. 545, 3; H. 497, II.

LINE 20. *Helvētīi*, supply *obsides dant* from the preceding *obsidēs inter sēs dent*; *Helvētīi* is subject-nom. of *dant* understood. — *ut*, telic conj. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. *maleficiō*. — *maleficiō*, abl. sing. of the noun *maleficium*, -ī, n. (*malum* + *facere*); hence *maleficium* = lit. *evil-doing*; it is the obj. of the prep. *sine*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects words of equal importance. — *iniuriā*, abl. sing. of the noun *iniuria*, -ae, f. (in, *negative* + *iūs*); *iniuriā* is connected with *maleficiō* by the conj. *et*, and is in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 21. *trānseant*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the verb *trānseō*, -īre, -īvi (-īī), -itum, 4, irr. (*trāns* + *īre*) = lit. *to go across*; subjunctive of purpose after the conjunctive particle *ut*. Vide grammatical references to *prohibeant*, l. 19, above.

LINE 1. *Caesarī*, dat. sing. of the proper noun *Caesar*, -aris, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *renūntiātūr*. A. & G. 225, 3, c; B. 140; G. 344; H. 384, I. — *renūntiātūr*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of *renūntiō* (-ciō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; pass. parts: *renūntior*, -ārī, -ātus; *renūntiātūr* is here used impersonally and = lit. *it is reported*; or more exactly, its subject is the entire clause: *Helvētīi esse in animō, per agrum . . . iter . . . facere*. — *Helvētiis*, dat. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a noun; dat. of possessor after *esse*. See A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it, too, is here used impersonally; strictly, however, *per agrum . . . iter . . . facere* is its subject-acc.

LINE 2. *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. *animō*. — *animō*, abl. sing. of *animus*, -ī, m.; abl. after the prep. *in*. Synonyms: *anima* = the soul as the principle of animal life; *animus* = the human soul with all its faculties; while *mēns* = the soul as rational or reflective faculty. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *agrum*, acc. sing. of *ager*, *agrī*, m.; the obj. of the prep. *per*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *Sēquanōrum*, gen. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *agrum*. For description of this clan, see note on *Sēquani*, l. 25, Chap. I.

LINE 3. *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; connected by the conj. *et* with *Sēquanōrum*, and in the same grammatical construction. For description, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *iter*, acc. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *facere*. — *in*, prep. with acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. *finēs*.

4	facere,	quī	nōn	longē	ā	Tolōsātium	ders of the San-
	to make,	which	not	far	from	the Tolosates'	tones, which were
5	finibus	absunt,	quae	cīvītās	est	in	not very far from
	borders	are distant,	which	state	is	in	the frontier of the
6	prōvinciā.	Id	sī	fieret,	intellegēbat		Tolosates, a peo-
	the province.	That,	if,	should be done,	he saw		ple who were liv-
7	māgnō	cum	periculō	prōvinciae	futūrum,		ing in the prov-
	great	with,	peril	of the province (it)	about to be		ince. Should this
							be done, Caesar
							perceived that it
							would be attend-
							ed with great dan-

— **Santonum**, gen. plur. of *Santonēs*, -um, m.; gen. limiting *finēs*. Sometimes the forms *Santonī*, -ōrum are given. The country of the Santones lay between the Loire and the Garonne. — **finēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; the obj. of the prep. *in*. For the position of the obj. after a prep. if modified by a gen., etc., see A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3.

LINE 4. **facere**, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it with its modifiers is the subject-acc. of *esse*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. of the rel. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Santonum*, as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of *absunt*. — **nōn**, adv., qualifying adv. *longē*. — **longē** (*longus*), comparative *longius*, superl. *longissimē*; it modifies *absunt*. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — **Tolōsātium**, gen. plur. of the proper noun *Tolōsāles*, -ium, m.; it, as a gen., limits *finibus*. These were a people of *Tolōsa*, modern Toulouse, in the department Haute-Garonne of modern France.

LINE 5. **finibus**, abl. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; abl. after the prep. *ā*. — **absunt**, 3d pers. plur. of the intrans. verb *absum*, *abesse*, *ab(ā)fuī*, *ab(ā)futūrus* (*ab* + *sum*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — **quae**, rel. pron., nom. sing. f.; it logically refers to *Tolōsātium*; it grammatically agrees with *cīvītās* in gender, number and case; in other words, it is subject-nom. of *est*. — **cīvītās**, -ātis, f.; predicate-nom. after *est*. This species of attraction is a common Latin idiom. Consult A. & G. 199; B. 129, REM. 5; G. 616, 2; H. 445, 4. — **est**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quae*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl.

LINE 6. **prōvinciā**, abl. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. The Romans had a military colony at *Tolōsa*; but it is not strictly accurate to say that the tribe of the Tolosates were in the province. — **Id**, nom. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively, and subj. of the verb *fieret*. The *id* = the purpose of the Helvetii to settle among the Santones. — **sī**, conditional conj.; archaic form *seī*, sibilated from GK. *el*. — **fieret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *fiō*, *ferī*, *factus*, used as pass. of *faciō*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *id*; is in the subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis. — **intellegēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *intellego*, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 3 (*inter* + *lēgere*) = lit. to choose or select between; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar.

LINE 7. **māgnō**, abl. sing. n. of adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um, comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*; it is the attributive of *periculō*. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. — **periculō**, abl. of the noun *periculum*, -ī, n.; abl. after the prep. *cum*. Observe, as to the position of the prep., that a monosyllabic prep. is often thus placed. See A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 2. — **prōvinciae**, gen. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.;

ger to the prov- ince to have war- like men and en- emies of the Ro- man people as neighbors, in an open country and in a district espe- cially fruitful in grain. For these reasons he put Titus Labienus,	ut that	hominēs men	bellicōsōs, bellicose,	populī of the people	Rōmānī Roman	8
		inimīcōs, enemies,	locīs in places	patentibus lying open	māximēque most and,	9
		frūmentāriīs productive in grain	finitimōs as neighbors (it)	habēret. would have.		Ob 10
		eās these	causās reasons over	eī that	mūnitiōnī, fortification	quam which
					fēcerat, he had made,	11

gen. objective, limiting *periculō*. Consult A. & G. 217; B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III. — *futūrum* (esse), fut. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it is used here impersonally; but strictly its subject-acc. is the result-clause *ut . . . habēret*. Consult A. & G. 329, and NOTE; B. 201, and REM. 1, (c); G. 506; H. 501, I, 1.

LINE 8. *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *hominēs*, acc. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; direct obj. of *habēret*, l. 10, below. Synonyms: *homō* = man in the generic sense, including woman; whereas *vir* (digammated from the GK. pron. *ts* = *he*) denotes the male person, the man of valor, GK. *ἀνὴρ*. — *bellicōsōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *bellicōsus*, -a, -um (*bellicus*, bellum + *ōsus*). Note that words ending in -*ōsus* and -*ūsus* denote fullness. *bellicōsōs* is an attributive of *hominēs*. — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; gen. objective after *inimīcōs*. Consult A. & G. 234, d, 1; B. 144, REM. 3; G. 359, REM. 1; H. 391, II, 4. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *populī*.

LINE 9. *inimīcōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *inimīcus*, -a -um (in, not + *amicus*, friendly); used here as a subst. in apposition with, and an explanatory modifier, of *hominēs*. Observe that, as an adj., *inimīcus* takes the dat. — *locīs*, abl. plur. of *locus*, -ī, m. in the sing., but m. or n. in the plur.; i.e. either *locī* or *loca*. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locīs* is locative abl. Consult A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 170, REM. 3; G. 385, NOTE 1; H. 425, II, 2. — *patentibus*, abl. plur. of the pres. participle *patēns*, used as an adj., of the verb *pateō*, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2; as an adj. it modifies *locīs*. — *māximēque* (*māximē* + *que*). *māximē* is the superl. of the comparative *magis*; *multum* is sometimes used as the positive. *māximē* modifies the adj. *frūmentāriīs*. Observe that adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel are usually compared by prefixing the adverbs *magis*, more, and *māximē*, most. See A. & G. 89, d; B. 74, 4; G. 87, 6; H. 170.

LINE 10. *frūmentāriīs*, abl. plur. of the adj. *frūmentārius*, -a, -um (*frumentum*, grain); connected by the enclitic conj. -que with *patentibus*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *finitimōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *finitimus*, -a, -um (*finis*, border); used here as a subst., and is predicate-acc. after *habēret*. See A. & G. 239, I; B. 151, (b); G. 340, (b), and REM. 1; H. 373, I, and NOTE 1. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; its subject-nom. is *prōvincia*, to be supplied; subjunctive of result after *ut*, l. 8, above. — Ob, prep. with the acc.

LINE 11. *eās*, acc. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of the noun *causās*. — *causās*, acc. plur. of *causa*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *ob*. Observe

- 12 T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in | his lieutenant, in  
Titus Labienus, lieutenant, he placed; he himself into | command of the  
13 Ītaliā māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque | line of fortifica-  
Italy by great marches hastens, two and, | tions that he  
had constructed,  
while he him-

that the reference in the phrase *ob eās causās* is to the considerations specified in the preceding sentence; and that *ob* with the acc. is used instead of the abl. of cause, because the *object* exciting the feeling is thus expressed. See A. & G. 245, 2, *b*; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, 3; H. 416, I, 2). *Ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 6-10, above: *Id sī fiet* māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae erit ut . . . (prōvincia) habeat. Observe that as this conditional sentence depends on *intellegēbat*, a past tense, the periphrastic fut. is carried into the past. The fut. tense in the protasis becomes the imperf. subjunctive; and the pres. subjunctive in the result-clause is also changed to the imperf. subjunctive. Consult A. & G. 288, *f*; B. 196, (*b*); G. 248; II. 537, 3. — *ei*, dat. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *mūnitiōnī*. — *mūnitiōnī*, dat. sing. of *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, f. (*mūnīre*, to fortify); dat. after *prae* in *praefēcit*. See A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; II. 386. For description of this fortification, read again Chap. VIII. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *mūnitiōnī* as its antecedent, but it is the direct obj. of *fēcerat*. — *fēcerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī, factum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar.

LINE 12. T., an abbreviation for *Titum*, acc. sing. of *Titus*, -ī, m.; praenomen of *Labiēnum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Labiēnum*, acc. sing. of *Labiēnus*, -ī, m. (cōgnomen); direct obj. of *praefēcit*. Observe that trans. compounds have the direct obj. as well as the dat. depending on the prep. in the compound. See A. & G. 228, NOTE 1, end; B. 143, end; G. 347, immediately after the list of prepositions; H. 386, 1. Titus Attius Labienus was Caesar's most trusted legatus in the Gallic War. He subsequently, however, in the Civil War sided with Pompey, and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. Among Caesar's other legates in the Gallic War were Sabinus, C. Trēbōnius and Quintus Cicero. The reader will observe that *lēgātus* is a word of somewhat flexible meaning. At one time *lēgātus* = *a leader of an army-corps*; at another it = *an ambassador*. The context must give the clew to its meaning. — *lēgātum*, acc. sing. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m.; predicate-acc. See grammatical references to *finitimōs*, l. 10, above. — *praefēcit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *praeficiō*, -ere, *fēcī, factum*, 3; it agrees with Caesar understood as subject-nom. — *ipse*, intensive dem. pron. (is + *pse*) = *self*; it refers to Caesar, and is subject-nom. of *contendit*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion.

LINE 13. Ītaliā, acc. sing. of *Ītalia*, -ae, f., and is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Sometimes in Caesar's Commentaries *in Ītaliā* = *in Galliam Cisalpinam*, the plain of the Po, northern Italy. Cisalpine Gaul was one of the provinces given to Caesar by the senate and Roman people; the other provinces given him were Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. — *māgnīs*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*; *māgnīs* modifies *itineribus*. — *itineribus*, abl. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. The Roman army's ordinary day's march was fifteen miles; the extraordinary, twenty or twenty-five. — *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *contendo*, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*. For etymolog-

self hastened into Italy by forced marches, and there enrolled two legions; and led out of their winter-quarters the three legions that had been passing the winter near Aquileia, and marched quickly	ibi there,	legiōnēs legions	cōnscribit levies	et and	trēs, three,	quae 14 which
	circum around	Aquilēiam Aquileia		hiemābant, were wintering		ex 15 from
	hībernīs winter-quarters	ēdūcit, leads out,	et, and	quā where		proximum 16 nearest
	iter the route	in into	ūteriōrem ulterior	Galliam Gaul		per 17 through

ical and different meaning, see note on *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *duāsque* (*duās + que*). *duās*, acc. plur. f. of cardinal num. *duo*, -ae, -o; it is an attributive of *legiōnēs*. Note that of the cardinals up to *centum*, only *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declined.

LINE 14. *ibi*, adv., modifies *cōnscribit*. Observe that *ibi* is formed thus: *i + bi*; i.e. by adding the locative case-form *bi* to *i*, the root of *is*; hence *ibi* = *in that place, there*. — *legiōnēs*, acc. plur. of *legiō*, -ōnis, f.; direct obj. of *cōnscribit*. As to the Roman legion, consult the article under *Legion* in any of the encyclopedias. — *cōnscribit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *cōscribō*, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, 3; connected by the enclitic -que with *contendit*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *trēs*, num. adj. cardinal, acc. plur.; it modifies *legiōnēs* understood, which latter, as understood, is the direct obj. of *ēdūcit*. These three legions were the seventh, eighth and ninth. — *quae*, nom. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *legiōnēs* understood, and is subject-nom. of *hiemābant*.

LINE 15. *circum*, prep. and adv.; here a prep. with the acc. — *Aquilēiam*, acc. sing. of *Aquileia*, -ae, f.; the obj. of the prep. *circum*. Aquileia was a colony in Venetia, at the head of the Adriatic gulf, not far from the modern Trieste. — *hiemābant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *hiemō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*hiems*; compare G.K. *χειμα, χειμῶν*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quae*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels and consonants).

LINE 16. *hībernīs*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *hīvernus*, -a, -um; supply *castrīs*, of which *hībernīs* is an attributive. — *ēdūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *ēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3 (*ē + dūcere*); *ēdūcit* agrees with its subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *et*, cop. conj., connects the verbs *ēdūcit* and *contendit*, l. 19, below. Caesar led these legions up the Po valley by way of Turin and Mount Genève through to the Rhone. — *quā*, adv., strictly an abl. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; supply *viā*. Consult A. & G. 148, e; B. 117. 6, end; G. 91, 2, (e); H. 304, II, 2, and foot-note 10. — *proximum*, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *proximus*, -a, -um; comparative *propius*, no positive; *proximum* is predicate-adj. after *erat*; it = lit. *nearest*.

LINE 17. *iter*, nom. sing. n.; subj. of *erat*. For synonyms, see note on *itinerā*, l. 1, Chap. VI. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. — *ūteriōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative *ūterior*, -us; no positive; superl. *ūltimus*; *ūteriōrem* is an attributive of *Galliam*. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that *ūterior Gallia* = *Gallia Transalpina*, with Rome as the *ā quō terminus*. — *per*, prep. with the acc.

18	Alpēs	erat,	cum	hīs	quīnque	legiōnibus	with these five legions by the shortest route
	<i>the Alps</i>	<i>was,</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>these</i>	<i>five</i>	<i>legions</i>	through the Alps
19	īre	contendit.	Ibi	Ceutrōnēs	et	Grāioceli	into farther Gaul.
	<i>to go</i>	<i>hastens.</i>	<i>There</i>	<i>the Ceutrones</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>the Graioceli</i>	On this march the
20	et	Caturigēs,	locīs	superiōribus	occupātis,		Ceutrones, the
	<i>and</i>	<i>the Caturiges,</i>	<i>places</i>	<i>higher</i>	<i>having been seized,</i>		Graioceli and the
21	itinere	exercitum	prohibēre	cōnantur.			Caturiges seized
	<i>from the route</i>	<i>the army</i>	<i>to prohibit</i>	<i>attempt.</i>			the higher places
							and attempted
							to keep our

LINE 18. **Alpēs**, acc. plur. of *Alpēs*, -ium, f.; sometimes used in the sing. *Alpis*, -is; *Alpēs* is here the obj. of the prep. *per*. The derivation of *Alpēs*, GK. Ἀλπεις from the Latin adj. *albus*, white, because of the perpetual snow on their summits, is plausible. — **erat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *iter*. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. *hīs*. — **hīs**, abl. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it is an attributive of *legiōnibus*. Observe that *hīs* denotes that the legions have just been mentioned. Consult A. & G. 102, a and f; B. 84, 1; G. 305; H. 450, 1. — **quīnque**, num. adj. cardinal; it modifies *legiōnibus*. — **legiōnibus**, abl. plur. of the noun *legiō*, -ōnis, f.; abl. of accompaniment. See A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392; H. 419, 1.

LINE 19. **īre**, pres. inf. act. of *cō*, *īre*, *ivī* (*ivī*), *itum*; complementary inf. A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, 1, 1. — **contendit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *contendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. For composition and various meanings, see note on *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. — **Ibi**, adv. = *there*; it points to the region of modern Savoy and Provence, the home of the Alpine clans *Ceutrōnēs*, *Caturigēs* and *Grāioceli*. — **Ceutrōnēs**, -um, nom. plur. m., subj. of *cōnantur*. — **Grāioceli**, -ōrum, nom. plur. m., connected by *et* with *Ceutrōnēs*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 20. **Caturigēs**, -um, nom. plur. m., connected by *et* with *Grāioceli*, and disposed of in the same way. — **locīs**, abl. plur. of *locus*, -ī, m., plur. *locī*, m., or *loca*, n. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locīs* is in the abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *occupātis*. — **superiōribus**, abl. plur. of the comparative adj. *superior*, -us; superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. A positive *posterus* is used generally as a noun in the plur. meaning *posterity*. *superiōribus* modifies *locīs*. — **occupātis**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *occupātus*, -a, -um of the verb *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ob + *capere*, lit. = *to lay hold of*); hence *occupāre* = *to seize*, *to occupy* a thing. *occupātis* is in the abl. absolute with the noun *locīs*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431.

LINE 21. **itinere**, abl. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of separation after *prohibēre*. See A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, 2; H. 414, 1. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *prohibēre*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — **prohibēre**, pres. inf. act. of *prohibeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2 (pro + *habere*), lit. = *to hold off or from*; *prohibēre* is a complementary inf. depending on *cōnantur*. A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, 1, 1. — **cōnantur**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; it agrees with its subjects *Ceutrōnēs* and *Grāioceli* and *Caturigēs*.



army from the road. After routing these people in several skirmishes, Caesar reached the frontier of the Vocontii in the farther province on the seventh day from Ocelum, which is the furthestmost	Complūribus	hīs	proeliūs	pulsis,	ab	22
	<i>In very many,</i>	<i>these,</i>	<i>battles,</i>	<i>having been routed,</i>	<i>from</i>	
	Ocelō,	quod	est	citeriōris	prōvinciae	22
	<i>Ocelum,</i>	<i>which</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>of the citerior</i>	<i>province</i>	
	extrēmum,	in	finēs	Vocontiōrum		24
	<i>the farthest (town),</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>the borders</i>	<i>of the Vocontii</i>		
	ūteriōris	prōvinciae	diē	septimō		22
	<i>of the ulterior</i>	<i>province,</i>	<i>on day</i>	<i>the seventh</i>		

LINE 22. **Complūribus**, abl. plur. n. of *complūres*, *-plūra* (-ia) (con, intensive + plūs); it agrees with *proeliūs*. — **hīs**, abl. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used substantively as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *pulsis*. — **proeliūs**, abl. plur. of *proelium*, -i, n.; locative abl., really an abl. of means. But see A. & G. 254, a; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). Note the synchysis or confusion in the order of the words: *hīs*, which is connected with *pulsis* in the abl. absolute construction, being inserted between *proeliūs* and its attributive *complūribus*. — **pulsis**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *pulsus*, -a, -um of the verb *pellō*, -ere, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, 3; abl. absolute with the pron. *hīs*. — **ab**, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants).

LINE 23. **Ocelō**, abl. sing. of *Ocelum*, -i, n. *Ocelum* was an Alpine town in *Gallia citerior*, southwest of Turin. — **quod**, nom. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it relates to *Ocelō* as its antecedent, but is subject-nom. of *est*. — **est**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quod*. — **citeriōris**, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *citerior*, -us, comparative degree; superl. *citimus*. *citeriōris* is an attributive of *prōvinciae*. For the list of five every-day adjectives that want the positive, see A. & G. 91, a; B. 74, 1; G. 87, 8; H. 166. — **prōvinciae**, gen. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it limits *oppidum*, to be supplied.

LINE 24. **extrēmum**, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *extrēmus*, -a, -um; it modifies *oppidum* understood, which latter is the predicate-noun after *est*. *extrēmum* is the superl. degree of the positive *exterus*, comparative *exterior*, superl. *extrēmus* or *extimus*. Consult A. & G. 91, b; B. 72, 4; G. 87, 2 and 7; H. 163, 3. *Ocelum* was the extreme western town in *Gallia Cisalpina*, from Rome as the *terminus ā quō*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — **finēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, I. 12, Chap. II. — **Vocontiōrum**, gen. plur. of *Vocontii*, -ōrum, m.; it limits, as a gen., *finēs*. The Vocontii were a people of Gaul, living east of the Rhine river, and about a hundred miles from its mouth. Their principal town was Dea, now Die.

LINE 25. **ūteriōris**, gen. sing. f. of the comparative adj. *ūterior*, -us, superl. *ūltimus*; it wants the positive. But the comparative and superl. are from the adv. *ūltrā*, beyond. See grammatical references to *citeriōris*, I. 23, above; *ūteriōris* modifies *prōvinciae*. — **prōvinciae**, gen. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it, as a gen., limits *Vicintiōrum*. The ulterior province is the Roman province or *Gallia Transalpina*. — **diē**, abl. sing. m. of *diēs*, *diēi*; abl. of time when. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — **septimō**, abl. sing. of the ordinal num. adj. *septimus*, -a, -um; it agrees with the noun *diē*.

26	pervenit ; he arrives ;	inde thence	in into	Allobrogum the Allobroges'	finēs, territory,	town from Rome in the hither province. Thence he led his army into the country of the Allobroges, and from the Allobroges to the country of the Segusiavi. These are the first people beyond the province across the Rhone.
27	ab from	Allobrogibus the Allobroges	in into	Segusiāvōs the Segusiavi		
28	exercitum the army	dūcit. he leads.	Hī These	sunt are	extrā outside	
29	prōvinciam of the province,	trāns across	Rhodanum the Rhone,	prīmī. the first (people).		

LINE 26. *pervenit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *pervenīō*, -īre, -vērē, -ventum, 4 (per + venīre). *pervenīre* = lit. to come through. *pervenit* is an historical pres.; it agrees with *Caesar* understood as its subject-nom. — *inde* (derived from *is* + adverbial termination *de*); hence = lit. from that place. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. — *Allobrogum*, gen. plur. of the proper noun *Allobrogēs*, -um, m.; as a gen. it limits *finēs*. Observe that *Allobrogum* is embodied in the phrase, and consult A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. But note that the phrase in *Allobrogum finēs* is an adverbial modifier of *dūcit*, which with its direct obj. is to be supplied from the following line; in other words, with this *terminus ad quem* phrase supply *exercitum dūcit*. As to the Allobroges, see note on *Allobrogum*, I. 10, Chap. VI.

LINE 27. *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants, *abs* before pron. *ē* and the enclitic conj. -que). Observe the omission of the cop. conj. between the clauses (asyndeton); and consult A. & G. 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 636, I, 1. — *Allobrogibus*, abl. plur. of *Allobrogēs*, -um; abl. after the prep. *ab*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion, and = *into*. — *Segusiāvōs*, acc. plur. of *Segusiāvī*, -ōrum, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. The *Segusiāvī* were a clan whose territory lay west of the Rhone, and whose principal town was *Lugdūnum*, the modern Lyons.

LINE 28. *exercitum*, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *dūcit*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, I. 31, Chap. III. — *dūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*, to be supplied. — *Hī*, nom. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; used substantively; expressed for emphasis, and also to indicate that the reference is to the last mentioned people. Consult A. & G. 102, a and f; B. 84, 1; G. 305; H. 450, 1. *Hī* is the subject-nom. of *sunt*. — *sunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sūm*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Hī*. — *extrā*, prep. with the acc.; sometimes an adv. (contracted from *exterā*, abl. of the adj. *exter*).

LINE 29. *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of the noun *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *extrā*. — *trāns*, prep. with the acc. — *Rhodanum*, acc. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *trāns*. Caesar's purpose was to confront the Helvetii, who were advancing westward, and had already reached the territory of the Aedui. *trāns Rhodanum* = towards the west, as the Rhone at Lyons turns to the south. — *prīmī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *primus*, -a, -um; supply *populī*, as predicate-nom. after *sunt*, with which *prīmī* agrees.

XI. The Helvetii had already led their forces through the narrow pass and the country of the Sequani, and had arrived at the borders of the Aedui, and were ravaging their	XI. Helvētīi iam per angustias et 1 The Helvetii now through the narrow pass and finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant 2 the territory of the Sequani their forces had led et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant 3 and into the Aeduan territory had arrived eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, 4 of them and, the fields were laying waste. The Aedui,
--	---

LINE 1. *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a subst., and subj. of *trādūxerant*. For description of the clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *iam*, adv. = *now*, of any action pres., past or fut.; whereas *nunc* emphasizes the present time. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *angustias*, acc. plur. of noun *angustiae*, -arum, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*. The pass referred to is the Pas de l'Ecluse.

LINE 2. *finēs*, acc. plur. of noun *finis*, -is, m.; it is connected by the conj. *et* with *angustias*, and is in the same grammatical construction. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *Sēquanōrum*, gen. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *finēs*. For description, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. of the poss. and direct-reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *cōpiās*, but refers to the subj. *Helvētīi*. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur. of the noun *cōpia*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *trādūxerant*. Observe that *cōpia* in the sing. = *plenty*; in the plur., *resources* or *troops*. — *trādūxerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *trādūco*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3 (trans + dūcere); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*.

LINE 3. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.; after verbs of motion *in* with the acc. = *into*. See note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I. — *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; as a gen. it limits *finēs*. For its position, between the prep. and its obj., see A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *pervēnerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *pervenio*, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (per + venire); connected by the conj. *et* with *trādūxerant*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 4. *eōrumque* (*eōrum* + *que*). *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eōrum* refers to *Aeduōrum*, but limits *agrōs*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects very closely the clauses. — *agrōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m.; direct obj. of the deponent verb *populābantur*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *populābantur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *populor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1 (derived from *populus*), hence *populārī* = to spread out in a multitude over a place; and so, transf. = to ravage, etc. Observe that the act. form *populō*, -āre is sometimes used. *populābantur* is connected by the enclitic conj. *que* with *pervēnerant*, and also agrees with *Helvētīi*, as its subject-nom. The Helvetii were devastating the fields of the Aedui, because the latter were allies of Rome. — *Aeduī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; subj. of *mittunt*, l. 6, below. Compare GK. Ἐδουοί, and Ἀδουοί, and especially Ἐδουεῖς, of the paraphrast; and observe the aspirate, from which comes the form *Heduī*, occurring in some editions. For description of this clan, see note on *Aeduī*, l. 20, Chap. III. Note the emphatic position of *Aeduī*, as it precedes the conj. *cum*.

5	cum	sē	suaque	ab	eīs	dēfendere	fields. The Aedui, inasmuch as they could not defend themselves and their property, sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help, who said: they had, on every occasion, so served the interests of the
	since	themselves	their own and,	from	them	to defend	
6	nōn	possent,	lēgātōs	ad	Caesarem	mittunt	
	not were able,	delegates	to	Caesar	send		
7	rogātum	auxilium:	Ita	sē	omnī		
	to solicit	aid:	So	themselves	at every		
8	tempore	dē	populō	Rōmānō	meritōs esse,		
	time	from	the people	Roman	to have deserved,		

LINE 5. *cum*, conj., denoting here both time and cause. — *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*, the same case-forms occurring in both sing. and plur.; the number to be determined by the context; here *sē* is direct obj. of *dēfendere*. — *suaque* (*sua* + *que*). *sua*, acc. plur. n. of poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*, used substantively, or the English word *things* may be supplied. Consult A. & G. 189, b; B. 59, REM.; G. 204, NOTE 2; H. 441. *sua* is connected with the pron. *sē* by the enclitic conj. *-que*, and is also a direct obj. of *dēfendere*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ab* before vowels or consonants, *ā* before consonants only). — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ab*; it refers to the Helvetii. — *dēfendere*, pres. inf. act. of *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsūm*, 3 (*dē* + *fendere*, a prim. word, used only in compounds); hence *dēfendere* = *to ward off*. *dēfendere* is here a complementary inf., depending on *possent*. See A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2.

LINE 6. *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *oenum* or *ūnum*); observe its natural Latin position: immediately before the word it modifies. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum, posse, potuī* (*potis, able* + *sum*); its subject-nom. is *eī* understood, referring to the Aedui; subjunctive after *cum* denoting both time and cause. A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517. — *lēgātōs*, acc. plur. of *lēgātus, -ī*, m. (*lēgere*, to despatch); direct obj. of *mittunt*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc., used after a verb of motion. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar, -aris*, m.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *mittunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *mittere, misi, missum*, 3; it agrees with *Aedui*, l. 4, above.

LINE 7. *rogātum*, former supine of the verb *rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1, denoting purpose. Consult A. & G. 302; B. 186 (A); G. 435; H. 546. Observe that the supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion. — *auxilium*, acc. of *auxilium, -ī*, n.; direct obj. of the supine *rogātum*. Observe that supines in *-um* are followed by the same case as their verbs. — *Ita*, adv. (radical *i*, whence is + *ta*); correlate of the conj. *ut*, l. 9, below. — *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; subject-acc. of *meritōs esse*. Observe that *ita sē* introduces the indirect form of discourse here, which, as principal clause, depends on *dīcentēs*, to be supplied from *mittunt rogātum*. — *omnī*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *omnis, -e*; it is an attributive of *tempore*.

LINE 8. *tempore*, abl. sing. of *tempus, -oris*, n.; abl. of *time when*. Consult A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. For derivation, see note on *tempore*, l. 21, Chap. III. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *populō*, abl. sing. of the noun *populus, -ī*, m.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *Rōmānō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *populō*. — *meritōs esse*, perf. inf. of the deponent verb *mereor, merēri, meritus*, 2; it agrees with its subject-acc. *sē*, l. 7, above. Observe

Roman people, that their fields ought not to be laid waste, their children led in- to captivity, and their towns taken by storm almost within sight of our army. At the same time the Ambarri, in-	ut that	paene almost	in in	cōspectū sight	exercitūs of army	nostrī our,	9
	agrī fields	vāstārī, to be laid waste,	liberī children	eōrum of them	in into	servitūtem slavery	10
	abdūcī, to be led,	oppida towns	expūgnārī to be stormed	nōn not	dēbuerint. ought.		11
	Eōdem At the same	tempore time	Ambarri, the Ambarri,	necessārīi close friends	et and		12

that the participial form of this compound is in the acc. plur. m., agreeing thus with its subject-acc. in gender, number and case.

LINE 9. *ut*, ecbatic conj. here. — *paene*, adv., comparative wanting, superl. *paenissimē*; this adv. here seems to modify the phrase *in cōspectū*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *cōspectū*, abl. sing. of the noun *cōspectus*, -ūs, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: *cōspectus* = the sight of; *adspectus* = the act of seeing; in other words: *cōspectus* has a passive meaning, *adspectus*, an active. — *exercitūs*, gen. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; it limits *cōspectū*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — *nostrī*, gen. sing. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; it is an attributive of *exercitūs*. Caesar, as the reporter of the Aeduan ambassadors' words, should have written *tuī* or *vestrī*, i.e. your army, the Roman army. Possibly, however, as the Aedui were the allies of the Romans, they might call the Roman army *our* army.

LINE 10. *agrī*, nom. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m.; subj. of *dēbuerint*, l. 11, below. — *vāstārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; complementary, depending on *dēbuerint*, l. 11, below. — *liberī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *liber*, -era, -erum, used substantively; subject-nom. of *dēbuerint*, to be supplied. Observe that *liberī* = children, in contrast with *servī*, the domestics. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *liberī*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *servitūtem*, acc. sing. of the noun *servitūs*, -ūtis, f. (*servus*); it is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 11. *abdūcī*, pres. inf. pass. of *abdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3; complementary inf., depending on *dēbuerint* understood. — *oppida*, nom. plur. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; subj. of *dēbuerint* understood. — *expūgnārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *expūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; complementary inf., depending on *dēbuerint* understood. — *nōn*, adv. neg., modifying *dēbuerint*. Note that *nōn dēbuerint* are expressed only with the first dependent clause, and that they are to be supplied with the remaining dependent clauses. — *dēbuerint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2 (*dē* + *habēre*); hence *dēbere* = to have from a person, and so owe him something. *dēbuerint* is subjunctive of result after *ut*, referring to *ita*. A. & G. 319, 1, and REM.; B. 201, (b), and REM. 1, (a); G. 552; H. 500, II. As to tense-sequence, see A. & G. 287, c; B. 190, REM. 1; G. 513; H. 495, VI. *Orditiō recta* of lines 7-11: *Ita nōs . . . meriti sumus, . . . exercitūs Rōmānū agrī vāstārī, liberī nostrī . . . dēbuerint*.

LINE 12. *Eōdem*, abl. sing. n. of *idem*, *eadem*, *idem* (from root *i*, whence is + the suffix *dem*); iterative pron.; it modifies *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. of *tempus*, -oris, n.; abl. of time when or at which; see note on *tempore*, l. 8, above. — *Ambarri*, -ōrum, nom. plur. m. (compare GK. οἱ Ἀμάρριοι = according to some, ἀμφ' Ἀραπίου). These people were clients of the Aedui, and occupied the territory

13	cōnsanguineī	Aeduōrum,	Caesarem	certiōrem	intimate friends and relatives of the Aedui, in- formed Caesar that, since their fields had been devastated, they were with diffi- culty keeping the
	relations	of the Aedui,	Caesar	more certain	
14	faciunt,	sēsē	dēpopulātis	agrīs	
	make,	themselves,	having been laid waste (their) fields,		
15	nōn	facile	ab oppidīs	vim	hostium
	not	easily	from the towns	the force	of the enemy

between the Arar (Saône) and the Rhonè. Many editions read here *Aedui Ambarri* or *Haedui Ambarri*. See note on *Aedui*, l. 4, above. *Ambarri* is subject-nom. of *faciunt*, l. 14, below. — *necessārii*, nom. plur. of the adj. *necessārius*, -a, -um, used as a noun, in apposition with *Ambarri*. *necessārii* = those friends or clients to whom offices of kindness are necessarily due.

LINE 13. *cōnsanguineī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *cōnsanguineus*, -a, -um (con + sanguineus, sanguis); hence = lit. *blood-relations*; connected by the conj. *et* with *necessārii*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aedui*, -ōrum, m.; it limits, as a gen., *necessārii* et *cōnsanguineī*. As to the Aeduan clan, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; direct obj. of *faciunt*. — *certiōrem*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *certior*, -us, comparative degree of *certus*, a participle by metathesis for *crētus* from the verb *cernō*, -ere, *crētī*, *crētum*, 3; superl. *certissimus*. Observe that the adj. as predicate is in the same case as the direct obj. A complete analysis requires the copula *esse* between *Caesarem* and *certiōrem*. *certiōrem* is predicate-acc. Consult A. & G. 239, a, and NOTE 1; B. 151, (b); G. 340; H. 373, 1, and NOTE 2. Observe that the phrase *aliquem facere certiōrem* is followed by the acc. with the inf., or by a relative-clause. Sometimes, however, the phrase is used absolutely.

LINE 14. *faciunt*, 3d pers. plur. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Ambarri*, l. 12, above. — *sēsē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, reduplicated *sēsē*; it is subject-acc. of *prohibēre*. Observe that the tenses are the historic pres. If the participial phrase be taken as a preliminary, and not as a coördinate expression, the necessity of rendering the inf. *prohibēre*, as if it depended on *posse*, will not be felt. — *dēpopulātis*, perf. participle of the deponent verb *dēpopulor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1. Sometimes the perf. participle of a deponent verb has a pass. signification; abl. absolute with *agrīs*, denoting cause. Consult A. & G. 135, b; B. 109, 2; G. 220, NOTE 1; H. 231, 2. — *agrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m.; abl. absolute with the participle *dēpopulātis*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. Between the villages there were, usually, long stretches of forests and fields, which were some sort of defense. The Helvetii were laying these waste; hence it was difficult to keep the enemy from the towns.

LINE 15. *nōn*, adv. (*nōn* + *ūnum*); modifies the adv. *facile*. — *facile*, adv. (*facilis*). See A. & G. 148, d; B. 117, 6; G. 91, (c); H. 304, I, 3, 1; *facile* modifies *prohibēre*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *oppidīs*, abl. plur. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *vim*, acc. sing. of the noun *vīs*, *vīs*, f.; direct obj. of *prohibēre*. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; it limits *vim*. Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. a stranger; hence, because of distrust of strangers, an enemy; oftener *hostēs*, plur., than *hostis*; it generally denotes a public enemy; whereas *inimicus* = a private foe. *Oratio recta* of lines 14-16: *nōs dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēmus*.

violence of the enemy from their towns. The Allobroges, also, who had villages and possessions across the Rhone, fled to Caesar and informed him that they had nothing left except their country's soil.	prohibēre. to restrain.	Item Likewise	Allobrogēs, the Allobroges,	quī who	trāns 16 across
	Rhodanum the Rhone	vīcōs villages	possessionēsque possessions and,	habēbant, 17 had,	
	fugā in flight	sē themselves	ad to	Caesarem Caesar	recipiunt et 18 betake and
	dēmōnstrant, show,	sibi to themselves	praeter except	agrī of land	solum 19 the soil,

LINE 16. *prohibēre*, pres. inf. act. of *prohibeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; complementary inf. depending on *posse* understood; or *sēsē* . . . *prohibere* may be taken as an acc. and infinitive-clause depending immediately on *Caesarem certiorē faciant*. See observation on *prohibere*, l. 14, above. — *Item*, adv. (formed from the radical *i* as seen in pron. is + adverbial accusative-suffix *tem*; = in *that way*, also). For synonyms, see note on *itemque*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *Allobrogēs*, nom. plur. of *Allobrox*, -ogis, m.; but in Caesar in the plur. *Allobrogēs*, -gum, m.; subject-nom. of *recipiunt* and *dēmōnstrant*. The word *Allobrogēs* is said to mean *highlanders*. These people, who in Caesar's time were living in *Gallia Narbonēnsis*, on the east side of the Rhone and to the north of what is now Savoy, had been already subdued by Caius Pomptinus, the praetor, and their territory, of course, was considered Roman. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Allobrogēs*, but is subject-nom. of *habēbant*. — *trāns*, prep. with the acc.; used with verbs of motion.

LINE 17. *Rhodanum*, acc. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *trāns*. — *vīcōs*, acc. plur. of *vīcus*, -ī, m. (digammated from GK. *olkos*); direct obj. of *habēbant*. — *possessionēsque* (*possessionēs* + *que*). *possessionēs*, acc. plur. of *possessio*, -ōnis, f. (*possidere* = *to have and to hold*); connected by the enclitic conj. *-que* with *vīcōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *habēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *habeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Allobrogēs*.

LINE 18. *fugā*, abl. sing. of the noun *fuga*, -ae, f. (compare GK. *φύγη*); abl. of manner; compare *vidē* and *iniuriā*, and consult A. & G. 248, REM.; B. 168, REM. 2, (e); G. 399, NOTE 1; H. 419, III, NOTE 2. But *fugā* might be taken as an abl. of means. — *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; direct obj. of *recipiunt*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. denoting *to or towards*. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*, after a verb of motion. — *recipiunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *recipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (re + *capere*, *to take back*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Allobrogēs*.

LINE 19. *dēmōnstrant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *dēmōnstrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*dē*, out + *mōnstrāre*, *to point*); connected by the conj. *et* with *recipiunt*, and has the same grammatical construction. — *sibi*, dat. plur. of reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, the same forms in the plur.; dat. of possessor after *esse*. See A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — *praeter*, adv. and prep.; here prep. with the acc. — *agrī*, gen. sing. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m.; as a gen. it limits the noun *solum*. Note its position, and consult A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3. — *solum*, acc. sing. of *solum*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *praeter*. *solum* is to be carefully discriminated from *solum*, adv. Observe the difference in

20	nihil	esse	reliqui.	Quibus	rēbus	Influenced by
	nothing	to be (there is)	of remainder.	By which	things	these representations,
21	adductus	Caesar	nōn expectandum	sibi		Caesar did not think that he
	led	Caesar	not it ought to be awaited	by himself		ought to wait until the Helvetii,
22	statuit,	dum	omnibus	fortūnis	sociōrum	after destroying all the resources
	determined,	until	all	the fortunes	of the allies	of his allies,
23	cōnsūptis	in	Santonōs	Helvētii	pervenirent.	should reach the country of the
	being destroyed,	among the Santoni	the Helvetii	should arrive.		Santoni.

the length of the vowels in the penultimate syllables. The phrase *praeter agrī solum* = freely, *except the bare soil*.

LINE 20. *nihil*, acc. sing. of the indecl. noun *nihil*, which is only used in the nom. and acc. cases; *nihil* is subject-acc. of *esse*. Observe that the indecl. *nihil* = *nihilum*, -i, n., contracted from *nil* and *nilum* (*nē* + *hilum* = *not the least*); observe also that *nihil* is sometimes an adverbial acc. = an emphatic *nōn*. — *esse*, pres. inf. act. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; *esse* is a verb of complete predication here, and agrees with its subject-acc. *nihil*. — *reliqui*, gen. sing. n. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um, used as a noun, and in the partitive gen. construction after *nihil*; the phrase *nihil reliquū* = lit. *nothing of remainder*. For the partitive construction, consult A. & G. 216, 3, and REM.; B. 134; G. 369, REM. 2; H. 397, 1. *Orātiō rēcta*, lines 19 and 20: *nōbīs praeter agrī solum nihil est reliquū*. — *Quibus*, acc. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*, used here adjectively as an attributive of *rēbus*. At the beginning of a sentence the rel. is rendered in the best manner by a dem. with a connective. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of *rēs, rei*, f. (stem *rē*, but vowel shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.); abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *adductus*. See A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1.

LINE 21. *adductus*, nom. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle of the act. verb *adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, 3 (ad + *dūcere*); as a participle it agrees with the noun *Caesar*. — *Caesar*, nom. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subj. of *statuit*. — *nōn*, negative adv.; it modifies *expectandum* (*esse*). — *expectandum* (*esse*), pres. inf. of the 2d periphrastic conjugation of *expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (ex + *spectāre* = lit. *to look out for*); *expectandum* (*esse*) is here used impersonally. See A. & G. 330, c; B. 185; G. 427, NOTE 4; H. 234. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; it refers to *Caesar*, but is dat. of the agent after the gerundive. Consult A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 355; H. 388.

LINE 22. *statuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum*, 3 (derived from *status* and this from *stāre*); hence *statuere* = lit. *to cause to stand*. — *dum*, conj.; here = *until*. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis, -e*; it is an attributive of *fortūnis*. — *fortūnis*, abl. plur. of *fortūna, -ae*, f. (compare *fors*, chance, from *ferō*); abl. absolute with the participle *cōnsūptis*. — *sociōrum*, gen. plur. of *socius, -i*, m.; poss. gen. limiting *fortūnis*.

LINE 23. *cōnsūptis*, perf. pass. participle *cōnsūptus, -a, -um* of the verb *cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum*, 3 (con + *sūmere*); hence = lit. *to take together*. *cōnsūptus* is in the abl. absolute with *fortūnis*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *Santonōs*, acc. plur. of *Santonī, -ōrum*, m. (sometimes *Santonēs, -um*); *Santonōs* is the obj. of



XII. There is a river, Arar (Saône), which flows through the territories of the Aedui and the Sequani with such wonderful smoothness, that it cannot be determined by the eye in which di-

XII.	Flūmen	est	Arar,	quod	per	1
	A river	is	the Arar,	which	through	
	finēs	Aeduōrum	et	Sēquanōrum	in	2
	the boundaries	of the Aedui	and	the Sequani	into	
	Rhodanum	influit,	incrēdibilī	lēnitātē,	ita	3
	the Rhone	inflows,	of incredible	smoothness,	so	
	ut	oculīs,	in	utram	partem	4
	that	with the eyes,	in	what	direction	it flows,

the prep. *in*. For historic description, see note on *Santonum*, l. 3, Chap. X. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; subj. of *pervenirent*. — *pervenirent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *pervenio*, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4; subjunctive after *dum*, implying futurity. Consult A. & G. 328; B. 229, (2); G. 572; H. 519, II, 2.

LINE 1. *Flūmen*, predicate-nom. after *est* of *flūmen*, -inis, n. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; often a copula, as here. — *Arar*, nom. sing. of *Arar*, -aris, m.; subj. of *est*; acc., usually, in -im, and abl. in -i. See A. & G. 56, a, 1, and 57, a, 1; B. 33, REM. 2; G. 57, REM. 2; H. 62, III, 1. The river Arar is the modern Saône (English pron. Sōne). — *quod*, nom. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the predicate-nom. *flūmen*, and agrees with it in gender; in such construction, with nouns of different genders, the rel. may agree with either. For voucher, compare *flūmine Rhodanō*, *quī*, l. 16, Chap. II. — *per*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 2. *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aedui*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *finēs*. For further particulars, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *Sēquanōrum*, gen. plur. of *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.; connected by the conj. *et* with *Aeduōrum*, and in the same grammatical construction. For description of the clan, see note on *Sēquanis*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *in*, prep. with the acc. after *influit*, a verb of motion.

LINE 3. *Rhodanum*, acc. sing. of *Rhodanus*, -i, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Note the repetition of the prep. *in* with the acc. after *influit*, instead of the dat. construction, and see A. & G. 228, c; B. 143, REM. 1; G. 347, REM. 1; H. 386, 3. — *influit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *influo*, -ere, -fluxi, *fluxum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quod*. — *incrēdibilī*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *incrēdibilis*, -e (in, negative + *crēdibilis* = lit. *unworthy of belief*); *incrēdibilī* is an attributive of *lēnitātē*. — *lēnitātē*, abl. sing. of *lēnitās*, -ātis, f.; abl. of manner. Consult A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *ita*, adv., correlate of the conj. *ut*.

LINE 4. *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *oculīs*, abl. plur. of *oculus*, -i, m.; abl. of means. See A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. with a verb of motion. — *utram*, acc. sing. f. of the pron. *uter*, -tra, -trum, gen. *utrius* = lit. *which* (of two); *utram* is an attributive of *partem*. For declension, see A. & G. 83; B. 56; G. 76; H. 151, and 1. — *partem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pars*, *partis*, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. For grammatical references, see note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I. — *fluat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of *fluō*, -ere, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, 3; subjunctive, because it is an *indirect question*. Consult A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I.

5	iūdicārī	nōn possit.	Id	Helvētīi	ratibus	reaction it flows; at length it empties into the Rhone. The Helvetii were crossing this stream on rafts and canoes joined. When Caesar was informed by scouts that the Helvetii had already led
	to be judged	is not able.	This	the Helvetii	by rafts	
6	āc	lintribus	iūctīs	trānsībant.	Ubi	
	and	boats	joined together	were crossing.	When	
7	per	explōrātōrēs	Caesar	certior	factus est,	
	through	scouts	Caesar	more certain	was made,	
8	trēs	iam	partēs	cōpiārum	Helvētiōs	
	three	already	parts	of forces	the Helvetii	

LINE 5. *iūdicārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *iūdicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; pass. parts: *iūdicor*, -cārī, -cātus, 1; complementary inf., depending on *possit*. See A. & G. 271, and NOTE; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *ūnum*); observe its position: immediately before the word it modifies. — *possit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (*potis* + *sum*); subjunctive of result after *ut*, referring to the adv. *ita*. A. & G. 319, and REM.; B. 201, and REM. 1, (a); G. 552; H. 500, II. Observe that *possit* is used here impersonally; but, strictly, the indirect question in *utram partem fluat*, as a noun-clause, is the subj. of *possit*. — *Id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; it refers to *jūmen*, and is the direct obj. of *trānsībant*; or *id* may be taken as an attributive of *jūmen* understood, which latter would be the direct obj. Observe how emphatic *id* becomes by being placed at the beginning of the sentence. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētīus*, -a, -um, used substantively; and is the subject-nom. of *trānsībant*. For description of the clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *ratibus*, abl. plur. of *ratīs*, -is, f.; abl. absolute with the participle *iūctīs*, denoting means. A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431.

LINE 6. *āc*, cop. conj. here; see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *lintribus*, abl. plur. of *linter*, -iris, f.; connected by the conj. *āc* with *ratibus*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *iūctīs*, abl. plur. f. of the perf. pass. participle *iūctus*, -a, -um of the verb *iungō*, -ere, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*, 3; abl. absolute with *ratibus* *āc* *lintribus*. — *trānsībant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *trānsēō*, -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -itum (*trāns* + *īre*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*. Observe the force of the imperf. tense — continued action. — *Ubi*, locative adv. (*quō*, old dat. of *quī* + *bi*) = *where*, but more frequent transf., of time = *when*.

LINE 7. *per*, prep. with the acc. — *explōrātōrēs*, acc. plur. of *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.; acc. after *per*, denoting the agent as means. Consult A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. An *explōrātor* (*explōrāre*, to reconnoitre) = a scout, a cavalryman sent to get information concerning the enemy; whereas *speculātor* (*speculārī*, to spy) = etymologically at least, a spy. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of *factus est*. — *certior*, comparative adj. of positive *certus*, formed by metathesis from *cretus*, perf. pass. participle of *cernō*, -ere, *crēvī*, -crētum, 3; *certior* is predicate-adj. after the pass. *factus est*. See A. & G. 176, a; B. 128; G. 205, 206; H. 362, 2, 2), 438, 2. — *factus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus*, 3; used as pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3.

LINE 8. *trēs*, -ia, num. adj., acc. plur. f.; it is an attributive of *partēs*; compare note on *trēs*, l. 2, Chap. I. — *iam*, adv.; it modifies *trādūxisse*. Observe that *iam* = *now* in reference to the past, pres. or future; while *nunc* puts emphasis on the pres. — *partēs*, acc. plur. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; direct obj. of *trādūxisse*. —

three quarters of their forces across this stream, but that nearly one quarter of them remained on this side, he went forth out of his camp, during the third watch, with three legions, and over- took that divi-	id flūmen trādūxisse, across that river to have led,	quartam the fourth	ferē nearly	partem 9 part
	citrā on this side	flūmen the river	Ararim Arar	reliquam left
	esse, dē 10 to be, from			
	tertiā the third	vigiliā watch	cum with	legiōnibus legions
	tribus ē 11 three from			
	castrīs the camp	profectus setting out	ad to	eam that
	partem part	pervēnit, 12 he came,		

*cōpiārum*, gen. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; as a gen. it limits *partēs*. Note that *cōpia*, in sing. = *plenty*; in the plural, *resources*, *troops*. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvēti*, -ōrum, m.; subject-acc. of *trādūxisse*.

LINE 9. *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *flūmen*. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; acc. depending on the prep. *trāns* in composition. Consult A. & G. 239, 2, b; B. 152, REM. 2; G. 331, REM. 1; H. 376. — *trādūxisse*, perf. inf. act. of *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (*trāns*, across + *dūcere*, to lead); its subject-acc. is *Helvētiōs*. — *quartam*, acc. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *quartus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *partem*. — *ferē*, adv.; it modifies the ordinal adj. *quartam*. — *partem*, acc. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; subject-acc. of *esse*.

LINE 10. *citrā*, adv., and prep. with the acc. = *this side*, i.e. toward Italy. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; obj. of the prep. *citrā*. — *Ararim*, acc. sing. of noun *Arar*, -aris, m.; in apposition with *flūmen*. As to the accusative-ending -im, see A. & G. 56, a and b; B. 33, REM. 2 and 3; G. 57, REM. 1; H. 62, III, 1. — *reliquam*, acc. sing. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*. Observe that *reliquus* in the predicate after *esse* has the force of a participle; here *reliquam* = *relictam*. — *dē*, prep. with the abl.; *dē* followed by *tertiā vigiliā* = *in the course of*; see lexicon under *dē*. This phrase appears to have the same meaning as *tertiā vigiliā*, — time within which, — which Caesar himself uses in Chap. XXXIII, Book II.

LINE 11. *tertiā*, abl. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *vigiliā*. — *vigiliā*, abl. sing. of *vigilia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. The night by the Romans was divided into four watches; the third watch began at midnight. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. *legiōnibus*. — *legiōnibus*, abl. plur. of *legiō*, -ōnis, f. (*legere*, to choose); hence *legiō* = lit. *a chosen number*; *legiōnibus* is abl. of accompaniment with the prep. *cum*. For description of the Roman legion, see any good encyclopedia under *Legion*. — *tribus*, abl. sing. f. of the num. adj. *trēs*, *triū*. See note on *trēs*, l. 2, Chap. I. *tribus* is an attributive of *legiōnibus*. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before either vowels or consonants).

LINE 12. *castrīs*, abl. plur. of *castrum*, -ī, n.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ē*. Observe that *castrum*, sing. = *a fort*; in the plur. *castra* = *a camp*; i.e. the plur. denotes that several soldiers' huts or tents were located near each other. Among the Romans the camp was generally square; sometimes, in imitation of the Greeks, circular; it was surrounded by a ditch and rampart or wall; it had front, back, and side gates. — *profectus*, perf. participle of the deponent verb *proficiscor*, -ci, *sectus*, 3; it agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *Caesar*, l. 7, above, which pron. is subject-nom. of *pervēnit*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. after a verb of motion. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is the attributive of *partem*. — *partem*,

13 quae which	nōndum not yet	flūmen the river	trānsierat. had crossed.	Eōs Them	sion that had not yet crossed the river. Attacking these forces encumbered with baggage, and off their guard, he slaughtered a great part of them; the rest fled, and hid in the nearest
14 impeditōs impeded	et and	inopīnantēs unawares	aggressus he assailing	māgnam a great,	
15 eōrum of them,	partem part	concidit; cut to pieces;	reliquī the rest	sēsē themselves	
16 fugae to flight	mandārunť committed	atque and	in in	proximās the nearest	silvās woods

acc. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *pervēnit*, 3d pers. sing. of *pervenīō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, 4; it agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar.

LINE 13. *quae*, nom. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *partem* as its antecedent, but is the subject-nom. of *trānsierat*. — *nōndum*, adv. (*nōn* + *dum*); it modifies *trānsierat*. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *flūmen*, -inis, n.; direct obj. of *trānsierat*. — *trānsierat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act., for *trānsīverat*; observe that *v* is syncopated without contraction. The reader will note that the reference is to that part of the enemy's forces still on the east side of the Saône. — *Eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; acc. of the direct obj. after the deponent participle *aggressus*.

LINE 14. *impeditōs*, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *impeditus*, -a, -um of *impediō*, -īre, -īvī (-īvī), -ītum, 4 (*in* + *pēs*, the foot in it); hence *impediō* = to entangle the feet. — *inopīnantēs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *inopīnāns*, -antis; connected by the conj. *et* with *impeditōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. These modifiers of *eōs* indicate that Caesar attacked them while impeded by their packs, or by the river, and also while off their guard. — *aggressus*, perf. participle of the deponent verb *ag(d)grediōr*, *aggredi*, *aggressus* (*ad* + *gradi*); *aggressus*, as a participle, agrees with *is* or *ille*, the omitted subject-nom. of *concidit*. — *māgnam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um, positive *māior*, superl. *māximus*; *māgnam* is an attributive of *partem*.

LINE 15. *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *partem*. Observe the natural Latin order of the words, when the limited noun has an adj. with it: adj., gen., noun; observe also that some copies read here: *māgnam partem eōrum*. — *concidit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *concīdō*, -ere, *concīdī*, *concisum*, 3 (*con* + *caedere*, to cut); it agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. This verb should be carefully discriminated from *concīdō*, -ere, -cīdī, 3 (*con* + *cadere*, to fall). — *reliquī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um, used substantively; subj. of *mandārunť* and *abīdērunt*. Synonyms: *cēteri*, sometimes written *caeterī*, nom. pl. of the adj. *cēterus*, -a, -um (in Caesar only used in the plur.) = *others*, in opposition to those first mentioned; compare GK. *οἱ ἄλλοι*; but *alii* = *others* as merely differential from those mentioned; and *reliquī* = *the rest*, the remainder that completes the whole. — *sēsē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, reduplicated form; direct obj. of *mandārunť*.

LINE 16. *fugae*, dat. of the noun *fuga*, -ae, f.; indirect obj. — *mandārunť*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *mandō*, *i* (*manus* + *dare* = to commit to one's hands); for *mandāvērunt*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *reliquī*. As to syncopation and

woods. This canton was called Tigurinus; for the entire Helvetian state is divided into four cantons. This single canton having left home, in the recollection of our fathers, (to engage in pred-	abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; 17 <i>hid. This district was called Tigurinus;</i>
	nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor 18 <i>for every state Helvetian into four</i>
	pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum 19 <i>districts was divided. This district alone, when</i>
	domō exisset patrum nostrōrum 20 <i>from home it had gone forth in fathers' our</i>

contraction, see A. & G. 128, a; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — **atque** (ad + que), conj., usually adds a more important notion; see note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I. — **in**, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.; with this case it usually = *to or into*; but by a difference of idiom after *abdidere* it = in the English idiom simply *in* with the acc.; that is, the construction after *abdidere* is as if it were a verb of motion. — **proximās**, acc. plur. of the superl. degree *proximus*, -a, -um; comparative *propior*; positive wanting; *proximās* modifies *silvās*. — **silvās**, acc. plur. of *silva*, -ae (sibilated from GK. ὕλη); obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 17. **abdidērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *abdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum, 3 (ab + dare) = lit. *to give away*. *abdidērunt* is connected by the conj. *atque* with *mandārunt*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **Is**, nom. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *pāgus*. — **pāgus**, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *ap(d)ellābātur*. Observe (1) that *is pāgus* refers to the fourth part mentioned in l. 9, above; (2) that *pāgus* here = a division of the *cīvītās*. — **ap(d)ellābātur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. pass. of *appellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. — **Tigurinus**, -ī, m.; predicate-noun after the pass. verb. *Tigurinus* was, probably, the district round about the modern Zürich in Switzerland.

LINE 18. **nam**, conj., introduces an objective reason; *enim*, a subjective. — **omnis**, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; it is an attributive of *cīvītās*. — **cīvītās**, -ātis, f. (*cīvēs*), subject-nom. of *dīvīsa est*. — **Helvētia**, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um; it, too, is an attributive of *cīvītās*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — **quattuor**, indecl. num. adj.; here, of course, in the acc. plur., modifying *pāgōs*.

LINE 19. **pāgōs**, acc. plur. of *pāgus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **dīvīsa est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *dīvidō*, -ere, *dīvīsi*, *dīvīsum*, 3; or *dīvīsa* may be taken as a predicate-adj. after *est*. See note on *dīvīsa est*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **Hīc**, nom. sing. m. of the dem. pron.; it is an attributive of *pāgus*; *hīc* indicates that the obj. is near in space: the *hīc pāgus* explains the *is pāgus* of l. 17, above, conceived to be near; whereas the *is pāgus* designates the object *quartam partem*, l. 9, above, conceived to be remote. — **pāgus**, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *interfēcērat*, l. 21, below. — **ūnus**, num. adj., gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūnī*; an attributive of *pāgus*; it here = *alone*, *peculiar*. Observe that *pāgus* here is put by metonymy for the people of the canton. — **cum**, conj., temporal; known to be such, because it is seen, at a glance, to introduce a clause subordinate to the main proposition.

LINE 20. **domō**, abl. sing. of *domus*, -ūs, or -ī locative; abl. denoting whence the motion proceeds after *exisset*. Consult A. & G. 258, 2, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — **exisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of *exēō*, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum, for the syncopated and contracted form *exivisset*; as to the form, see A. & G. 128,

21	memoriā,	L. Cassium	cōnsulem	interfēcerat	atory war,) had
	memory,	Lucius Cassius,	the consul,	had slain	ambushed Lucius
22	et	ēius	exercitum	sub iugum	miserat.
	and his	army	under the yoke	had sent.	consul; he was
23	Ita	sive	cāsū	sive cōnsiliō	deōrum
	So, whether	by chance	or	by design	of the gods
24	immortālium,	quae pars	civitatīs	Helvētiaē	
	immortal,	what part	of the state	Helvetian	part of the Helve-

a, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235, 1; as to the subjunctive mode after *cum* temporal, see A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — **patrum**, gen. plur. of the noun *pater*, *patris*, m.; as a gen. it limits *memoriā*. — **nostrōrum**, gen. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, *-tra*, *-trum*; it is an attributive of *patrum*.

LINE 21. **memoriā**, abl. sing. of *memoria*, *-ae*, f.; abl. of time when. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — **L.**, an abbreviation for the acc. sing. of *Lūcius*, *-ī*, m., a Roman praenomen. — **Cassium**, acc. sing. of *Cassius*, *-ī*, m.; the nomen, the name of the *gēns*; *Cassium* is here an appositive. The allusion is to Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C.; he was slain by the Tigurini. — **cōnsulem**, acc. sing. of *cōsul*, *-ulis*, m.; direct obj. of *interfēcerat*. — **interfēcerat**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *interficiō*, *-ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, 3 (inter + *facere*) = lit. to put between, to make away with; hence to destroy. *interfēcerat* agrees with its subj. *pāgus*.

LINE 22. **et**, cop. conj.; connects *interfēcerat* with *miserat*. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to *Cassium*, but, as a gen., limits *exercitum*. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, *-ūs*, m.; direct obj. of *miserat*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — **sub**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. *sub* when followed by the acc. denotes *motion to*, when followed by the abl. it denotes *rest in*, a place. — **iugum**, acc. sing. of *iugum*, *-ī*, n.; it is the obj. of the prep. *sub*. — **miserat**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *mittō*, *-ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, 3; connected by *et* with *interfēcerat*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 23. **Ita**, adv. (radical *i*, whence is + *ta*). — **sive** (*sī* + *ve*), conj.; *sive* . . . *sive* = *whether* . . . or. — **cāsū**, abl. sing. of *cāsus*, *-ūs*, m. (*cadere*, to fall); abl. of cause. Consult A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416. — **cōnsiliō**, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, *-ī*, n.; connected by *sive* with *cāsū*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **deōrum**, gen. plur. of *deus*, *-ī*, m.; as a gen. it limits *cōnsiliō*. For declension of *deus*, which is irr. in the plur., see A. & G. 40, f; B. 24, REM. 3; G. 33, REM. 6; H. 51, 6.

LINE 24. **immortālium**, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *immortālis*, *-le* (in, negative + *mortalis*). — **quae**, nom. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, used here adjectively, agreeing with the noun *pars*, which is logically its antecedent. — **pars**, nom. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; subj. of *intulerat*. Observe carefully that the relative clause precedes the antecedent clause; that in such constructions the antecedent noun appears in the relative clause, a species of attraction, *quae pars* . . . *ea* = *ea pars* . . . *quae*. Consult A. & G. 200, b, NOTE, EXAMPLE 2; B. 129, REM. 1, (a); G. 620; H. 445, 9. — **civitatīs**, gen. sing. of *civitas*, *-ātis*, f. (*civēs*); as a gen. it limits *pars*. — **Helvētiaē**, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *Helvētius*, *-a*, *-um*; it is an attributive of *civitatīs*.

tian state, which had brought signal calamity on the Roman people, was the first to suffer punishment. In this affair, Caesar not only avenged the wrongs of the state, but even his own private	insignem a remarkable	calamitatem calamity	populō upon the people	Rōmānō 25 Roman
	intulerat, had brought,	ea that (part)	prīnceps the first,	persolvit. 26 suffered.
	Quā Which	in in,	rē affair	Caesar Caesar
	nōn not	sōlum 27 only		
	pūblicās, public,	sed but	etiam also	prīvātās private
				iniūriās 28 wrongs

LINE 25. *insignem*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *insignis*, -e (in + *signum*, compare GK. *ἐκόν*); hence *insignis* = lit. *inmarked*, distinguished by a mark. *insignem* modifies *calamitatem*. — *calamitatem*, acc. sing. of the noun *calamitas*, -atis, f.; direct obj. of *intulerat*. — *populō*, dat. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; indirect obj. of *intulerat*. The rigidly exact statement is: *calamitatem* is the direct obj. of *tulerat*, the latter part of the compound, and *populō* is the dat. after *in*, the former part of it. — *Rōmānō*, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; *Rōmānō* is an attributive of *populō*. For synonyms of *populus*, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI.

LINE 26. *intulerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *inferō*, -ferre, *intulī*, *il(n)lātum*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *pars*. — *ea*, nom. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ea* is an attributive of *pars*, to be supplied; which *pars* is subject-nom. of *persolvit*. — *prīnceps*, adj. (*primus* + *capere*, to take the first place); here the adj. = the adv. *prīnum*. For the adverbial use of the adj., see A. & G. 191; B. 117. 6; G. 325, REM. 6; H. 443. *prīnceps*, however, might be taken here as a subst. and an appositive, and = *as the first one*. — *poenās*, acc. plur. of *poena*, -ae, f. (GK. *ποινή*) = *just money, fine*. *poenās* is the direct obj. of *persolvit*. — *persolvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *persolvō*, -ere, -solvi, -solutum, 3 (per + *solvere*); hence *persolvere* = lit. *to discharge completely*. Among the ancients, punishment was a fine or penalty to be paid, and not suffering to be inflicted except as an incident of the difficulty of raising the wherewith to pay the fine.

LINE 27. *Quā*, abl. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; used here adjectively, agreeing with *rē*. As to the use and translation of the relative, at the beginning of a sentence, see A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. Note the position of the prep. *in*: between a modifier and a noun; modified monosyllabic prepositions are frequently thus placed. — *rē*, abl. sing. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *ultus est*. — *nōn*, adv., modifies the adv. *solum*. — *solum*, adv. (*solus*, only); it modifies the adj. *pūblicās*. Observe that in the adv. the penult is long; while in the noun *solum*, soil, the penult is short.

LINE 28. *pūblicās*, acc. plur. of the adj. *pūblicus*, -a, -um (contraction for *populicus* from *populus*). *pūblicās* modifies *iniūriās*. — *sed*, conj., adversative; stronger than *autem*. — *etiam*, adv. (et + iam). Observe that the phrases *nōn solum* . . . *sed etiam* are the equivalents of two copulatives; but when thus used, prominence is given to the second word or clause; that *nōn modo* or *nōn tantum* sometimes take the place of *nōn solum*; and *etiam* sometimes take the place of *sed etiam*, with no particular difference of meaning. — *prīvātās*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *prīvātus*, -a, -um (really a participial adj. of *prīvō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1); *prīvātās* is an attrib-

29	ultus est; <i>avenged;</i>	quod <i>because</i>	ēius <i>his</i>	socerī <i>father-in-law (was)</i>	wrongs; because the Tigurini, in the same battle	
30	L. Pīsōnis <i>Lucius Piso, (whose) grandfather</i>	avum, <i>Lucius Piso, the lieutenant,</i>	L. Pīsōnem <i>Lucius Piso, the lieutenant,</i>	lēgātum, <i>Lucius Piso, the lieutenant,</i>	in which they had slain Cas- sius, had also	
31	Tigurinī <i>the Tigurini</i>	eōdem <i>in the same</i>	proeliō <i>battle</i>	quō <i>as</i>	Cassium <i>Cassius</i>	slain his lieuten- ant Lucius Piso, grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father- in-law.
32	interfēcerant. <i>had slain.</i>					
1	XIII.	Hōc <i>This</i>	proeliō <i>battle</i>	factō, <i>being done,</i>	reliquās <i>the remaining</i>	XIII. When this battle was ended, Caesar

utive of *iniuriās*. — *iniuriās*, acc. plur. of *iniuria*, -ae, f. (*iniurius*, in + iūs); direct obj. of *ultus est*.

LINE 29. *ultus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the deponent *ulciscor*, -ī, *ultus*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is an attributive of *socerī*, but refers to *Caesar*. — *socerī*, gen. sing. of *socer*, *socerī*, m.; as a gen. it limits *avum*.

LINE 30. *L.*, an abbreviation of *Lūciū*, gen. sing. of *Lūcius*, -ī, m., the praenomen of *Pīsōnis*. — *Pīsōnis*, gen. sing. of *Pīsō*, -ōnis, m. *Pīsōnis* is in apposition with *socerī*. The allusion is to Lucius Calpurnius Piso, whose daughter Calpurnia Caesar married in 59 B.C. Calpurnia was the great-granddaughter of the defeated lieutenant. — *avum*, acc. sing. of *avus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *interfēcerant*. — *L.*, abbreviation for *Lūcium*, praenomen. — *Pīsōnem*, acc. sing. of *Pīsō*, -ōnis, m.; appositive of *avum*. — *lēgātum*, acc. sing. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m. (*lēgere*, to delegate); in apposition with *L. Pīsōnem*.

LINE 31. *Tigurinī*, nom. plur. of *Tigurinus*, -ī, m.; subj. of *interfēcerant*. See note on *Tigurinus*, l. 17, above. — *eōdem*, abl. sing. n. of dem. pron. *idem, eadem, idem*; it is an attributive of *proeliō*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. n. of *proelium*, -ī, n.; locative abl. viewed as means. A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). — *quō*, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *proeliō* as its antecedent, and agrees with *proeliō* understood, which latter is to be conceived to be in the locative abl. like the abl. *proeliō* expressed in the text. — *Cassium*, acc. sing. of *Cassius*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *interfēcerant*, to be supplied. For historical explanation, see note on *L. Cassium*, l. 21, above.

LINE 32. *interfēcerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *interficiō*, -ere, *feci*, *fectum*, 3 (inter + *facere*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Tigurinī*.

LINE 1. *Hōc*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hoc*; it is an attributive of *proeliō*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n. (*prō* + *ire*, i.e. *to go forth or advance* in a hostile manner); *proeliō* is abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *factō*, denoting *time when*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — *factō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *factus*, -a, -um of *fiō, fieri*, *factus*, used as the pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3; abl. absolute with the noun *proeliō*. — *reliquās*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; it modifies *cōpiās*.



had a bridge built over the Arar, and thus he led his army across, in order that he might overtake the rest of the Helvetian forces. The Helvetii were alarmed at his sudden approach, and when

*cōpiās* *Helvētiōrum* *ut cōnsequī* *posset*, 2  
forces of the Helvetii that to overtake he might be able,  
*pontem* *in Ararī faciendum cūrat* *atque* 3  
a bridge on the Arar to be made he cares for and  
*ita exercitum trādūcit*. *Helvētiī* *repentīnō* 4  
so the army he leads across. The Helvetii at the sudden  
*ēius* *adventū commōtī*, *cum* *id*, *quod* 5  
of him coming agitated, when that, which

Synonyms: *reliquī* = the rest, the remainder that completes the whole; whereas *ceterī* (*cæteri*) = the others in opposition to those first mentioned; compare GK. ἄλλοι; and *alii* = others as merely differentiated from those mentioned.

LINE 2. *cōpiās*, acc. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *cōnsequī*. Observe that *cōpia* in the sing. = plenty; in the plur., resources, troops. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of *Helvētiī*, -ōrum, m.; it limits *cōpiās*. — *ut*, telic conj.; it generally stands at the head of its clause; its normal position in this case is immediately before *reliquās*; observe how the group of words immediately preceding it are made emphatic by its abnormal position. — *cōnsequī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *cōnsequor*, -sequī, secūsus (con, intensive + sequī; compare the GK. ἑπεσθαι); *cōnsequī* is a complementary inf. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 317, 1; B. 200, (b); G. 545, 1; H. 497, II.

LINE 3. *pontem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pōns*, *pontis*, m.; acc. with the gerundive denoting purpose. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *Ararī*, abl. sing. of the noun *Arar*, -aris, m. (the Saône); it has the acc. -im or -em, abl. -ī or -e; *Ararī* is the obj. of the prep. *in*, which here = *on*. The bridge built on the Arar was, probably, a pontoon bridge. — *faciendum*, acc. of the gerundive *faciendus*, -a, -um of *fīō*, *fieri*, *factus*, 3; the gerundive with the obj. is used to denote purpose. See A. & G. 294, d; B. 184, REM. 4, III, (a); G. 430; H. 544, NOTE 2. — *cūrat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *cūrō*, -āre, -āvō, -ātum, 1; it agrees with its subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *atque*, conj.; it adds, usually, a more important notion; see note on this particle, I. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 4. *ita*, adv. (radical *i*, whence is + ta); hence = *in this manner*, *thus*. — *exercitum*, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *trādūcit*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, I. 31, Chap. III. — *trādūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (trāns + dūcere); it is connected by *atque* with *cūrat*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *Helvētiī*, nom. plur. of *Helvētiū*, -ōrum, m.; subj. of *mittunt*, I. 9, below. — *repentīnō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *repentīnus*, -a, -um; it modifies *adventū*.

LINE 5. *ēius*, gen. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *adventū*. — *adventū*, abl. sing. of the noun *adventus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of cause after *commōtī*. See A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. — *commōtī*, nom. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *commōtus*, -a, -um of the verb *commōvō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2; it agrees with *Helvētiī*. — *cum*, conj., temporal. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem.

6	ipsī	diēbus	vīgintī	aegerrimē	they saw that he had actualized in a single day what they had, with the greatest dif- ficulty, accom- plished in twenty days, namely, the crossing of the river, they sent ambassadors to him. Of this
	themselves	in days	twenty	with very great trouble	
7	cōnfēcerant,	ut	flūmen	trānsīrent,	illum
	had accomplished,	that	the river	they might cross,	him,
8	ūnō	diē	fēcisse	intellegerent,	lēgātōs ad
	in one	day	to have done,	they perceived,	delegates to
9	eum	mittunt;	cūius	lēgātiōnis	Divicō
	him	they send;	of which	delegation	Divico

pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers., and the direct obj. of *fēcisse*, l. 8, below. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *id* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *cōnfēcerant*. Observe that the reference, logically, is to the noun-clause *ut flūmen trānsīrent*, which is in apposition with *id*; that, when the reference is thus to a group of words, *id quod* or *quae res* is used instead of the simple *quod*. Consult A. & G. 200, c; B. 129, REM. 8; G. 614, REM. 2; H. 445, 7.

LINE 6. *ipsī*, nom. plur. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*; it refers to *Helvētīi*; is expressed for emphasis, and is the subject-nom. of *cōnfēcerant*. — *diēbus*, abl. plur. of *diēs, -ī*, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur.; abl. of time within which. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *vīgintī*, num. adj. cardinal, modifies *diēbus*. — *aegerrimē*, adv., superl. degree; positive degree *aegrē*. comparative *aegrus*. *aegrē* = *vix*, GK. μόλις. *aegerrimē* modifies *cōnfēcerant*.

LINE 7. *cōnfēcerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *cōnficiō, -ere, fēcī, -fectum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipsī*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *flūmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *flūmen, -inis*, n. (*fluere*, to flow); hence the noun = a flowing; direct obj. of *trānsīrent*. — *trānsīrent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *trānsēō, -ire, -īvi (-īi), -itum*; it agrees with a subject implied in the ending, referring to *Helvētīi*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subst.-clause of result, referring to the pron. *id*, and with which it is, grammatically, in apposition. Consult A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 1, (b); G. 553, 1, and 557; H. 501, II, 1, and III. — *illum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *ille, -la, -lud*, gen. *illius*, dat. *illī*. *illum* is the subject-acc. of *fēcisse*; it refers to Caesar; it is expressed to indicate the contrast between Caesar and the Helvetii; compare *ipsī*, preceding line.

LINE 8. *ūnō*, abl. sing. m. of the num. adj. *ūnus, -a, -um*, gen. *ūnūs*, dat. *ūnī*; it modifies *diē*. — *diē*, abl. sing. of *diēs, diēi*; abl. of time in which. See note and grammatical references on *diēbus*, l. 6, above. — *fēcisse*, perf. inf. act. of *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-acc. *illum*; and the acc. and inf. depend on *intellegerent*. — *intellegerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum*, 3 (inter + legere); hence *interlegere* = lit. to select between. Note that this verb is often written *intelligō*. *intellegerent* is in the subjunctive after *cum*, temporal, l. 5, above. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — *lēgātōs*, acc. plur. of *lēgātus, -ī*, m. (*lēgere*, to despatch); direct obj. of *mittunt*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 9. *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*; it refers to Caesar. Observe that the prep. with the acc. is used with verbs of motion. — *mittunt*, 3d pers. plur. pres.

embassy Divico, who had been the leader of the Hel- vetii in the war with Cassius, was the chief. He thus addressed Caesar: If the Roman people	prīnceps chief	fuit, was,	quī who	bellō in the war	Cassiānō with Cassius	dux 10 leader
	Helvētiōrum of the Helvetii	fuerat. had been.	Is He	ita thus	cum with	Caesare 11 Caesar
	ēgit: treated:	Sī If	pācem peace	populus the people	Rōmānus Roman	cum 12 with

ind. act. of *mittō*, -ere, *missi*, *missum*, 3; historical pres.; it agrees with the subject-nom. *Helvētiī*, expressed in l. 4, above. The reader will note that Caesar uses the historic present, here and elsewhere, frequently, while the sequence of the tenses in the subordinate clauses is secondary. — *cūius*, gen. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; as a rel., it refers to *lēgātōs*, but is here used adjectively, and agrees in gender, number and case with *lēgātiōnis*. The reader will recall that a rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence is, often, best rendered into English by a dem. pron. with the conj. *and* or *but*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *lēgātiōnis*, gen. sing. of the noun *lēgatiō*, -ōnis, f.; it limits *prīnceps*, which is here used as a predicate-noun after *fuit*. — *Divicō*, -ōnis, m., proper noun, subject-nom. of *fuit*. *Divicō* was an influential chief among the Helvetii.

LINE 10. *prīnceps*, -ipis, usually an adj.; here used substantively, and in the predicate. — *fuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the irr. intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it is here the perf. indef. and the copula. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Divicō* as its antecedent, and is subject-nom. of *fuerat*. — *bellō*, abl. sing. of the noun *bellum*, -i, n.; locative abl. Consult A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). As to the original form of *bellum*, consult note on this word, l. 15, Chap. I. — *Cassiānō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *Cassiānus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *bellō*. The adj. is derived from the proper noun *Cassius*, and = *of Cassius*, *Cassianian*. The allusion is to the battle in which Lucius Cassius was slain by the Tigurini. See note on *Cassium*, l. 20, Chap. VII. — *dux*, *ducis*, m. and f. (compare *dūcere*, to lead); predicate-noun after *fuerat*.

LINE 11. *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of *Helvētiī*, -ōrum, m.; poss. gen., limiting *dux*. — *fuerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *Is*, nom. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is here used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to *Divicō*; it is subject-nom. of *ēgit*; expressed for emphasis, but is the weakest of all the dem. pronouns. — *ita*, adv. (radical *i*, whence is + ending *ta*) = lit. *in this manner*; as an adv. *ita* modifies *ēgit*, but refers to what follows. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *Caesare*, abl. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *cum*.

LINE 12. *ēgit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *is*; i.e. *Divicō*. The reader will observe that the remainder of this chapter is in the *oratiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 1, 2, to 340; B. 244, 245, entire; G. 650-61; H. 520-30. — *Sī* (archaic form *sei*, sibilated from the Gk. *ei*), conditional particle, introducing the protasis of the sentence. — *pācem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pāx*, *pācis*, f. (compare *pācere*, to pacify); direct obj. of *faceret*. — *populus*, nom. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; subject-nom. of *faceret*. For synonyms, see note on *populus*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānus*, nom. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it is the attributive of *populus*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. *Helvētiīs*. Instead of *cum Helvētiīs*, *nōbiscum* might be used in the direct form.

13	Helvētiīs	faceret,	in	eam	partem	would make peace with the Helvetii, they would go in such direction, and remain in such a place as Caesar would appoint or wish; but if he persisted in pursuing them with war, let him re-
	the Helvetii	would make,	in	that	part	
14	itūrōs	atque ibi	futūrōs	Helvētiōs,		
	to be about to go	and there	to be about to be	the Helvetii,		
15	ubi	eōs	Caesar	cōstituisset	atque esse	
	where	them	Caesar	had determined,	and to be	
16	voluisset;	sīn	bellō	persequī	perseverāret,	
	had wished;	but if with	war	to follow up	he persevered,	

LINE 13. **Helvētiīs**, abl. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; abl. after the prep. *cum*. For historical information, see note on *Helvētiū*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **faceret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *populus Rōmānus*; it is in the subjunctive, because it represents the fut. ind. in the more vivid conditional form after *sī* in the *oratio recta*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, (b); G. 650; H. 524; it is in the imperf. tense, because the secondary sequence is required after the secondary *ēgit*, on which the entire speech, logically, depends. Mark now that the protasis, as the subordinate clause, is always in the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl., but with difference of signification; here it takes the acc. For meaning of *in* with the acc., see note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *partem*. — **partem**, acc. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 14. **itūrōs** (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (*ivē*), *itum*; its subject-acc. is *Helvētiōs*. Observe that *itūros* (*esse*) is for *ibunt* of direct discourse; and consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, 1, (a); G. 527; H. 523, I. — **atque** (ad + que), conj.; see note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I; it connects *itūrōs* (*esse*) and *futūrōs* (*esse*). — **ibi**, adv. (from the radical *i*, whence is + locative ending *bi*); hence = in that place, there. *ibi* modifies *futūrōs* (*esse*). — **futūrōs** (*esse*), fut. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*; connected by the conj. *atque* with *itūrōs* (*esse*), and in the same grammatical construction. *futūrōs* (*esse*) is for *erunt* of direct discourse. — **Helvētiōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and is subject-acc. of both *itūrōs* (*esse*) and *futūrōs* (*esse*).

LINE 15. **ubi** (*quō* + locative ending *bi*) = of place, *where*; of time, *when*; here as correlative of *ibi* it = *where*. As an adv. it modifies *cōstituisset*. — **eōs**, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the direct obj. of *cōstituisset*; it refers to the Helvetii. — **Caesar**, -aris, m., subject-nom. of *cōstituisset*. — **cōstituisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *cōstituiō*, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*, and is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a dependent clause in *oratio obliqua*. This pluperf. subjunctive is for the fut. perf. *cōstitueris* in the *oratio recta*. — **atque**, see note on this particle, l. 14, above. — **esse**, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, perf. ind. *fui*, fut. participle *futurus*; its subject-acc. is *eōs*, to be supplied; the infinitive-clause *eōs esse* is the direct obj. of *voluisset*.

LINE 16. **voluisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *volo*, *velle*, *volui*; connected by the conj. *atque* with *cōstituisset*, and in the subjunctive mode for the same reason. — **sīn** (*sī* + *nē*, apocopated) = *but if*. — **bellō**, abl. of *bellum*, -i, n.; abl.

member both the ancient disaster to the Roman people, and the former valor of the Helvetii. As to his having sud- denly attacked the people of a single canton, while those who had crossed the	reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi 17 he should remember both the old disaster of the people
	Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 18 Roman and the former valor of the Helvetii.
	Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum 19 As to the fact that he suddenly one canton
	adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen 20 had attacked, when those, who the river

of means. A. & G. 248, c, 1; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *persequi*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *persequor*, -sequi, -secutus, 3; complementary inf. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *perseveraret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *persevero*, -are, -avi, -atum, 1; imperf. subjunctive in condition in *oratio obliqua* for the fut., *perseverabis* in *oratio recta*. Observe the difference of idiom. Latin: if he should persist to follow; English: if he should persist in following.

LINE 17. *reminiscerētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *reminiscor*, -i (mens, mind), 3; hortatory subjunctive for the imperative *reminiscere*, of direct discourse. As to the hortatory subjunctive, consult A. & G. 266, c; B. 189, I, (b); G. 263, 2; H. 484, II. As to the subjunctive in indirect discourse, for the imperative in direct, consult A. & G. 339; B. 245, 2; G. 652; H. 523, III. — *et . . . et* = both . . . and. — *veteris*, gen. sing. n. of the adj. *vetus*, *veteris*; comparative *veterior*; superl. *veterrimus*. — *incommodi*, gen. sing. of the noun *incommodum*, -i, n. (in, negative + commodum); gen. after *reminiscerētur*, a verb of remembering. Consult A. & G. 219; B. 135, (b); G. 376; H. 406, II. The allusion is to the defeat of Cassius. — *populi*, gen. of *populus*, -i, m.; gen. objective; it limits *incommodi*. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI.

LINE 18. *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *populi*. — *pristinae*, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *pristinus*, -a, -um (from obsolete *pris*, whence *priscus* and *prior*); it modifies *virtūtis*. — *virtūtis*, gen. sing. of the noun *virtus*, -tūtis, f.; connected by the conj. *et* with *incommodi*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a noun; poss. gen.; it limits *virtūtis*.

LINE 19. *Quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; acc. of specification = *as to the fact that*. Observe that the clause *Quod . . . adortus esset* is an adverbial modifier of the principal clause in the sentence. — *imprōvisō*, adv.; really an abl. of the adj. *imprōvisus*, -a, -um, used as an adv.; it modifies *adortus esset*. — *ūnum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *pāgum*. — *pāgum*, acc. of *pāgus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of deponent *adortus esset*. *Oratio recta* of lines 12–18: *Si pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eos tū constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bellō persequi perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī, et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.*

LINE 20. *adortus esset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *adorior*, -oriri, -ortus, 4, deponent; subjunctive, because it is a verb in a subordinate clause in the *oratio obliqua*. The form in *oratio recta* is *adortus es*. For *quod* = *as to the fact that* with the subjunctive, see A. & G. 333, a, and 341, a, and REM.; B. 123, REM. 21, and 198, REM. 1; G. 525, 2 and 3; H. 516, II, and especially the NOTE. — *cum*, conj.,

21	trānsissent, suis	auxilium	ferre	nōn	river could not bring aid to their friends, let him
	had crossed, to their (friends)	aid	to bring	not	
22	possent, nē	ob eam rem	aut	suae	not on this ac- count attribute
	were able, not on account of that thing	either to his own,			too much to his
23	māgnō opere	virtūtī	tribueret	aut	ipsōs
	with great labor,	valor	should he ascribe, or	themselves	own valor, or de- spise them. For

temporal. — **eī**, nom. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively, and is the subject-nom. of *possent*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *eī* as its antecedent, but is the subject-nom. of *trānsissent*. — **flūmen**, acc. sing. of the noun *flūmen*, -inis, n.; direct obj. of *trānsissent*.

LINE 21. **trānsissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *trānsēō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -itum*; syncopated and contracted for *trānsivissent*. As to syncopation and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. **trānsissent** is subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. The proper form in the *ōrātiō recta* is the pluperf. ind. *trānsierant*, syncopated for *trānsiverant*; — **suis**, dat. plur. m. of the poss. adjective-pron. *suus, -a, -um*; in the m. plur. used substantively to designate *persons*; in the n. plur., to designate *things*. See A. & G. 190, a; B. 60, REM.; G. 204, NOTE 1, b; H. 441, I. **suis** is dat. of the indirect obj. after *ferre*. — **auxilium**, acc. sing. of *auxilium, -i*, n. (*augēre*, to increase); direct obj. of *ferre*. — **ferre**, pres. inf. of the verb *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*; *ferre* is a complementary inf., depending on *possent*. — **nōn**, adv. (*nē + ūnum*, apocopated); observe its position: immediately before the word it modifies.

LINE 22. **possent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum, posse, potuī* (potis + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *eī*; it is in the subjunctive, after *cum*, denoting both *time* and *cause*. — **nē**, negative adv., the particle used with the hortatory subjunctive. — **ob**, prep. with the acc. = lit. *to or toward*, compare GK. *ἐν*; transf., it indicates the cause = *for*. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *rem*. — **rem**, acc. sing. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f.; stem *rē*, which is shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.; *rem* is the obj. of the prep. *ob*. — **aut . . . aut = either . . . or**. These particles, thus used, denote that the difference is exclusive; but see note on them, l. 19, Chap. I. — **suae**, dat. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it refers to *Caesar*, the subj. of the proposition, but agrees, in gender, number and case, with *virtūtī*.

LINE 23. **māgnō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *māgnus, -a, -um*; comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*; *māgnō* modifies *opere*. — **opere**, abl. sing. of *opus, operis*, n.; with *māgnō* it is an abl. of manner = lit. *with great labor*; hence = adv. *greatly*; the words as one word are frequently written *māgnopere*. — **virtūtī**, dat. of the noun *virtūs, virtutis*, f.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *tribueret*; supply *quicquam* as direct obj. — **tribueret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum*, 3 (compare *tribus*, a division); it agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar*. Observe that the subjunctive here in the *ōrātiō obliqua* is the hortatory subjunctive for the 2d pers. sing. of the perf. subjunctive with *nē* in the direct form *nē tribueris*, which latter is for the imperative; and indeed *nōlī tribuere* might be used in the direct form, as an elegant equivalent for *nē tribueret* of the indirect form. Consult A. & G. 269, a, 1 and 2; B. 189, REM. 1; G. 270, 2; H. 489. — **aut**, see note on this particle, preceding line. — **ipsōs**, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī* (*is + pse*); *ipse* = *self*; it belongs to the emphatic word. *ipsōs* refers to the Helvetii, and is the direct obj. of *dēspiceret*.

the Helvetii had been so instruct- ed by their fa- thers and ances- tors, that they waged war rely- ing more on val- or than on arti- fice or stratagem. Wherefore, let him not cause	dēspiceret. should he despise.	Sē Themselves	ita so	ā from	patribus 24 the fathers
	māiōribusque ancestors and,	suīs their own	didicisse, to have learned,	ut that	magis 25 more
	virtūte by valor	contenderent they fought,	quam than	dolō on treachery	aut 26 or
	īnsidiīs ambuscades they relied.	nīterentur. Wherefore,	Quārē not	nē should he bring to pass	committeret 27

LINE 24. *dēspiceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dēspiciō*, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, 3 (dē + spicere); hence *dēspicere* = lit. to look down on one. The subjunctive hortatory is for the imperative, or its equivalent, in direct discourse. See note on *tribueret*, preceding line. — *Sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, same form in both numbers; subject-acc. of *didicisse*. *sē* is for *nōs* in the *ōrātiō rēcta*. — *ita*, adv. (radical *i*, whence is + *ta*) = in this way, i.e. thus. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *patribus*, abl. plur. of the noun *pater*, *patris*, m.; abl. of the source after the prep. *ā*.

LINE 25. *māiōribusque* (*māiōribus* + *que*). *māiōribus*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *māior*, -ius, used substantively; *māiōribus* may, or may not, be followed by *nātū*; it is connected by the enclitic -que with *patribus*, and is in the same grammatical construction. *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 19-24: Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei, quī flūmen trānsierant, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob hanc rem aut tuae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueris, aut nōs dēspēxeris. — *suīs*, abl. plur. of the poss. reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *patribus māiōribusque*. — *didicisse*, perf. inf. act. of *discō*, -ere, *didicī*, 3. This inf. is for *didicimus* in the *ōrātiō rēcta*. — *ut*, ecclatic conj. — *magis*, adv., comparative degree; positive *multum*; superl. *māximē*.

LINE 26. *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.; abl. of means. — *contenderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *contendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, 3; subjunctive, because in a result-clause after *ut*, referring to the adv. *ita*. See A. & G. 319; B. 201; G. 552; H. 500, II. — *quam*, conj., following *magis*; after comparatives or words of comparison *quam* = than. — *dolō*, abl. of the noun *dolus*, -i. *dolō* is an abl. of means. — *aut*, see note on this particle, l. 22, above.

LINE 27. *īnsidiīs*, abl. plur. of *īnsidiae*, -arum, f.; the sing. *īnsidia*, -ae, f., is rare. *īnsidiīs* is connected by the disjunctive conj. *aut* with *dolō*, and is in the abl. for the same reason. Observe that Latin *dolus* = GK. δόλος; compare GK. τέχνη and English *craft*; hence *dolus* = originally, *artifice*. But in later usage, either with or without the attributive *malus*, *dolus* = *guile*, *deception*; whereas *īnsidiae* = lit. an ambush; metaphorically = *stratagem*. For the peculiarity of the grammatical construction of *dolō* and *īnsidiīs* with *nīterentur*, see A. & G. 254, b; B. 167, 5; G. 401, REM. 6; H. 425, II, I, 1, and NOTE. But this abl. is, in fact, an abl. of means or instrument. — *nīterentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *nītor*, -ī, *nīsus* or *nīxus*, 3; it is connected by the conj. *quam* with *contenderent*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — *Quārē*, adv. (*quā* + *rē*) = lit. by which thing. — *nē*, see note on *nē* with *tribueret*, l. 22, above. — *committeret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act.; subjunctive for imperative in direct discourse. For explanations and grammatical references, see note on *tribueret*, l. 23, above.

28	ut	is	locus,	ubi	cōstitissent,	ex	calamitatē	this place where they stood to take its name or transmit a tradi- tion from the de- feat of the Ro- man people and the destruction of an army.
	that	that	place,	where	they had stood,	from	the loss	
29	populi	Rōmānī	et	interneciōne	exercitūs			
	of the people	Roman	and	the utter destruction	of an army			
30	nōmen	caperet,	aut	memoriam	prōderet.			
	(its) name	should take	or	the memory	hand down.			

LINE 28. *ut*, ecbatic conj. Observe that *committere ut* with the subjunctive following often form a periphrase for a simple verb. Consult A. & G. 332, *e*; B. 201, REM. 1, (*δ*); G. 533, I, 1; H. 501, II, 1, compare 498, II, NOTE 2. — *is*, nom. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; *is* is an attributive of *locus*. Observe that *is* is the weakest of all the Latin demonstratives, and that, accordingly, the Latin phrase *is locus* is scarcely more definite than the English *the place*. — *locus*, nom. sing. of the noun, *locus, -i*, m. in the sing.; m. or n. in the plur., but with difference of meaning. See note on *loci*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locus* is subject-nom. of *caperet* and *prōderet*, l. 30, below. — *ubi* (*quō + bi*) = of place, *where*; transf. of time = *when*. — *cōstitissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *cōsistō, -ere, -stiti*, 3 (*con + sistere*); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*; it is for the perf. ind. *cōstitimus* in the *ōrātiō rēcta*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *calamitatē*, abl. sing. of *calamitās, -ātis*, f. (derived, according to some, from *calamus*); originally it designated mutilation of crops; hence *calamitās* = loss, misfortune. *calamitatē* is in the abl. after the prep. *ex* denoting cause. A. & G. 245; B. 120, 2; G. 408, NOTE 3; H. 416, I, 1).

LINE 29. *populi*, gen. sing. of *populus, -i*, m.; it, as a gen., limits *calamitatē*. For synonyms, see note on *populus Rōmānus*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. of the adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *populi*. — *interneciōne*, abl. sing. of the noun *interneciō, -ōnis*, f. (inter, *intensive + necāre*); as *necāre* = to kill, *internecare* = to murder; hence *interneciō* = utter destruction. *interneciōne* is connected by *et* with *calamitatē*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *exercitūs*, gen. sing. of the noun *exercitus, -ūs*, m.; as a gen., *exercitūs* limits *interneciōne*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III.

LINE 30. *nōmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *nōmen, -inis*, n. (for *gnōmen* from stem *gnō*, GK. γνῶω, archaic Latin form *gnōscō*). *nōmen* is the direct obj. of *caperet*. — *caperet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *capio, -ere, cēpi, captum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *locus*; it is subjunctive of result after *ut*. — *aut*, see note on this particle, l. 22, above. — *memoriam*, acc. sing. of the noun *memoria, -ae*, f. (*memor*); it is the direct obj. of *prōderet*. — *prōderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *prōdō, -ere, -idi, -itum*, 3 (*prō + dare*); connected by the conj. *aut* with *caperet*, and in the same grammatical construction; i.e. agrees with *locus* as its subject-nom., and is the subjunctive of result after *ut*. *Ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 24-30: *Nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtutē contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nūdamur. Quārē nē commiseris (nōli committere), ut hīc locus, ubi cōstitimus, ex calamitatē populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prodāt.* Observe that *cōstitissent*, l. 28, above, of the text, stands for the perf. ind. *cōstitimus* in the *ōrātiō rēcta*. See *adortus esset*, l. 20, above = *adortus es*, in direct discourse.



XIV. To these ambassadors Caesar replied thus: He had the less hesitation in regard to his conduct, because he remembered the incidents which the Helvetian envoys had men-

XIV.	His	Caesar	ita	respondit: 1
	To these (envoys)	Caesar	thus	replied:
Eō	sibi minus	dubitātiōnis	dārī,	2
On this account	to himself	less	of doubt	to be given,
quod	eās	rēs	quās	lĕgātī
because	those	things	which	the envoys
				Helvētīi 3
				Helvetian
commemorāssent	memoriā	tenēret,	atque	4
had mentioned,	in memory	he held,	and	

LINE 1. **His**, dat. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; indirect obj. of the verb *respondit*; the allusion is to the ambassadors, of whom Divico was the leader and spokesman. — **Caesar**, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *respondit*. — **ita**, adv. (from radical *i*, whence is + *ta*) = lit. *in this manner*, i.e. *thus*. — **respondit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondēre*, -spondit, -sponsum, 2 (re + spondere) = originally, to promise something in return for something; hence transf. = *to answer*. *respondit* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. The reader will observe that from this point the self-reported speech of Caesar continues to *esse factūrum*, l. 34, below; that it is reported just as formally as it would have been if it were a speech of another, and not Caesar's.

LINE 2. **Eō**, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; abl. of degree of difference after *minus*. Consult A. & G. 250, and NOTE; B. 164, REM. 1; G. 403; H. 423. The older grammars explain this construction as an abl. of cause; it appears to be the herald here of the following *quod*-clause. — **sibi**, dat. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*, same form in both numbers; dat. of the indirect obj. after the pass. verb *dārī*. — **minus**, acc. sing. n. of the comparative adj. *minor, -us*; positive *parvus*, superl. *minimus*. *minus* is used substantively, and is the subject-acc. of the pass. inf. *dārī*. — **dubitātiōnis**, gen. sing. of *dubitātiō, -ōnis*, f.; partitive after *minus*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 372; H. 397, 3. — **dārī**, pres. inf. pass. of the act. *dō, dare, dedi, datum*, 3; pass. parts: *dor, dārī, datus*. Observe that, by exception to the rule, *a* is short before *-re* in the pres. inf. act. *dārī* agrees with its subject-acc. *minus*, used as a noun. Let the reader recall that in the *ōrātiō obliqua* the main clause of a declaratory sentence is put in the inf. with subject-acc. *dārī*, accordingly, is for *datur* in *ōrātiō recta*.

LINE 3. **quod**, conj. = *because*. *quod*, which is in fact an adverbial acc. sing. n. of *quī*, attained its causal meaning from the original signification of *in what respect, in that*. — **eās**, acc. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *rēs*. — **rēs**, acc. plur. of *rēs, rei*, f.; the direct obj. of *tenēret*. — **quās**, acc. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *rēs* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *commemorāssent*. — **lĕgātī**, nom. plur. of the noun *lĕgātus, -ī*, m. (*lĕgere*, to delegate); subject-nom. of *commemorāssent*. — **Helvētīi**, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*. *Helvētīi* is an attributive of *lĕgātī*.

LINE 4. **commemorāssent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1, for the uncontracted form *commemorāvissent*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *lĕgātī*. As to syncopation and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. *commemorāssent* is in the subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, 1, (b); G. 650; H. 524. — **memoriā**, abl. sing. of the noun *memoria, -ae*, f.; abl. of means, a

5	eō	gravius	ferre,	quō	tioned, and was
	by so much	the more heavily	to bear (them), by how much		the more indignant at them, the
6	minus	meritō	populī	Rōmānī	less they had occurred in accordance with the deserts of the Roman people. If
	the less	according to the merit	of the people	Roman	they had been
7	accidissent;	quī	sī	alicūius	iniūriae
	they had happened;	who	if	of any	wrong

species of locative. Consult A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — **tenēret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *teneō*, -ēre, -ut, *tentum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. as subj. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in the *quod* (a subordinate) clause in *orātiō obliqua*. — **atque** (ad + que), conj.; adds a more important notion, often = *and also*.

LINE 5. **eō**, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively, or the noun *thing* may be supplied with which *eō* may agree; abl. of degree of difference after the comparative *gravius*. Consult A. & G. 106, c; B. 164, REM. 1; G. 403; H. 423. — **gravius**, adv., comparative degree; positive *graviter* (from the adj. *gravis* thus: stem *gravi* + *ter*); superl. *gravissimē*. *gravius* as an adv. modifies *ferre*. — **ferre**, pres. inf. act. of irr. verb *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; the subject-acc. of *ferre* is the pron. *sē*, to be supplied, referring to *Caesar*. — **quō**, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; abl. of degree of difference after *minus*. Observe that *eō* and *quō*, in this line, are used as correlatives, and that the literal translation of *eō gravius ferre, quō minus* is: *by that he bears these things more heavily, by which the less, etc.*; rendered into English by the pronominal adv. *the . . . the*. Observe also that *rēs* is to be supplied from the preceding as the direct obj. of *ferre*.

LINE 6. **minus**, adv., comparative degree; see note on *minus*, l. 2, above. *minus* modifies *accidissent*. — **meritō**, abl. sing. of the noun *meritum*, -ī, n. (from *meritus*, participle of *merēre*, to merit). *meritō* is an abl. of *in accordance with*. See A. & G. 253, and NOTE; B. 162; G. 397; H. 416. But see also note on *more*, l. 15, Chap. VIII. — **populī**, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; it limits the noun *meritō*. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — **Rōmānī**, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *populī*. Note that the adj. always follows the noun in this phrase.

LINE 7. **accidissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive act. of *accidō*, -ere, -cidī, no supine, 3 (ad + *cadere*, to fall); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. *Orātiō recta* of lines 2-7: *Hōc mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eas rēs quas vōs, Helvētī lēgātī, commemorāvīstis memoriā teneō, atque hōc gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī acciderunt*. — **quī**, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; subject-nom. of *fuisse*. *quī* here = *populus Rōmānus*. As to the proper translation of a rel. pron. beginning a sentence, consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — **sī**, conditional conj.; archaic form *seī*, sibilated from the GK. particle *ei*. Observe that the normal position for a conj. is at the beginning of the clause, but it may sometimes follow a relative or emphatic word, or even words; see the position of *ut*, l. 2, Chap. XIII. — **alicūius**, gen. sing. f. of the indef. pron. *aliquis, aliqua* (-ae), *aliquid* or *-quod*; the forms *aliquī, -qua, -quod* are adjectives; *-quis, -quae, -quid* are substantives. *alicūius* is an attributive of *iniūriae*. — **iniūriae**, gen. sing. of *iniūria*, -ae, f. (in + *iūs*); objective gen. after *cōnsciūs*. Consult A. & G. 218, a; B. 135, a; G. 374; H. 399, 2.

conscious of any wrong against the Helvetii, it would not have been difficult to take precaution against them; but they had been misled in this respect, be- cause they were	sibi to themselves	cōnsciū conscious	fuisse had been,	nōn not	fuisse it was	8
	difficile difficult	cavēre; to be cautious;	sed but		eō on this account	9
	dēceptum, (they) were deceived,		quod because		neque neither (anything)	10
	commissum to have been done	ā by	sē themselves	intellegeret did they perceive	quārē why	11

LINE 8. *sibi*, dat. after *cōnsciū*. See A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391. Observe that the dat. is here expletive; it might have been omitted; but it is oftener expressed by classical writers in such constructions than omitted. — *cōnsciū*, nom. sing. m. of the adj. *cōnsciū*, -a, -um (con + scire) = lit. to know within; hence *cōnsciū* = known to one's self. *cōnsciū* is predicate-adj. after *fuisse*. — *fuisse*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*; subjunctive, because in the condition after *sī*, protasis. Consult A. & G. 304, a; B. 204, 2; G. 590, and NOTE 1; H. 507, III, and 511, I, remembering that the ind. in the conclusion in the *ōrātiō recta* becomes the inf. in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopated). *nōn* modifies *fuisse*. — *fuisse*, perf. inf. of the irr. intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui*; it is for *fuit* in direct discourse. *fuisse* is here used impersonally, or rather the inf. *cavēre* as a neuter noun is its subj., and *difficile* is predicate-adj. after *fuisse*.

LINE 9. *difficile*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *difficilis*, -e (dis + facilis). Observe the assimilation of *s* to *f* in the compound, and that the inseparable prep. has a privative force; hence *difficilis* = not easy to do or bear. — *cavēre*, pres. inf. of *caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum*, 2; it is subject-acc. of *fuisse*. Observe that if this were direct discourse, *cavēre* would be the subject-nom. of *fuit*. — *sed*, conj.; the strongest of the adversatives. — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively; *eō* is an abl. of cause. A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416; it is, so to speak, the herald of the following *quod*-clause.

LINE 10. *dēceptum* (esse), perf. inf. pass. of *dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum*, 3 (*dē* + *capere*); hence *dēcipere* = to snatch away the will-power, i.e. to deceive. Supply here *populum Rōmānum* as subject-acc. of *dēceptum* (esse). — *quod*, conj.; etymologically an adverbial acc. sing. n. of *quī*, meaning in what respect, in that; hence as a conj. = because. — *neque* (*nē* + *que* = and not, nor); but *neque . . . neque* = neither . . . nor.

LINE 11. *commissum* (esse), perf. inf. pass. of *committō, -ere, -misi, -missum*, 3; supply the indef. pron. *aliquid* as its subject-acc. — *ā*, prep., takes the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — *sē*, abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*, same form in both sing. and plur.; it refers to *populum Rōmānum*, the omitted subject-acc. of *dēceptum* (esse), but it is the obj. of the prep. *ā*. Note particularly that the pron. *sē* with the prep. *ā* is abl. of the agent, and consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *intellegeret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *intelligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum*, 3; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *quārē* (*quā* + *rē*) = lit. by which thing.

12	timēret,	neque	sine	causā	timendum	not aware of
	they should fear,	nor	without	cause (anything)	to be feared	having done any-
13	putāret.	Quod	sī	veteris	contumēliae	thing of which
	did they think.	But	if	the ancient	disgrace	to be afraid, and
14	oblīvīscī	vellet,	num	etiam	recentium	they did not think
	to forget	he wished,		also	of recent	they ought, with-
						out cause, to be
						afraid. But if he

LINE 12. *timēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *timeō*, -ēre, -uī, 2; subjunctive, because the question is indirect. As an indirect question it would be in the subjunctive mode in direct discourse. See A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. The subject-nom. of *timēret* is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *populum Rōmānum*, the supplied subject-acc. of *dēceptum* (*esse*). Synonyms: *timēre* = *to fear*, as the result of some external cause; *metuere* = *to fear*, because one reflects; the fear is a rational impulse, the outcome of reflection on the consequences of limitations and dangers; whereas *verērī* = *to fear*, as an emotion arising from apprehension of the venerable or apprehension of disgrace. — *neque*, see note on *neque*, l. 10, above. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. — *causā*, abl. sing. of the noun *causa*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *sine*. — *timendum* (*esse*), pres. inf. of the 2d periphrastic conjugation of *timeō* (see the beginning of the line for principal parts); supply *aliquid* as subject-acc. just as *aliquid* was supplied before *commissum* (*esse*); or regard the construction as impersonal, supplying *ā sē* as the abl. of the voluntary agent.

LINE 13. *putāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *putō*, -āre, -āvī, -atum, 1. The subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to the Roman people. *putāret* is connected by the conj. *neque* to *intellegeret*, and is in the subjunctive mode for the same reason. Synonyms: *opīnārē*, *putāre* and *rēvī* = *to think*, as a mere subjective process; whereas *arbitrārī*, *cēnsēre*, *iūdicārī* = *to think* objectively, as when an *arbitrator*, or *censor*, or *judge* gives an official opinion. — *Quod*, strictly an adverbial acc. of *quī*, *quae*, *quod* = *as to which*; if it be taken as a relative, its antecedent is the previous sentence; in transitions, however, it = *but* or *now*. Consult A. & G. 240, b; B. 123, REM. 22, and 155; G. 333, 1, and 610, REM. 2; H. 453, 6. — *veteris*, gen. f. of the adj. *vetus*, *veleris*; comparative *vetior*; superl. *veterrimus*. *veteris* is an attributive of *contumēliae*. — *contumēliae*, gen. sing. of *contumēlia*, -ae, f.; gen. after *oblīvīscī*, a verb of forgetting. Consult A. & G. 219; B. 135, (b); G. 376; H. 406, II.

LINE 14. *oblīvīscī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *oblīvīscor*, -ī, *oblītus*, 3; complementary inf. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. *Orditiō recta* of lines 7-13: *quī sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōsciū fuisset, non fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat.* — *vellet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, irr. verb; it agrees with *ipse*, i.e. *Caesar* as its subject-nom.; it is subjunctive, because in the condition after the conj. *sī*. Consult grammatical references to *fuisset*, l. 8, above. — *num*, adv., interrogative particle; questions introduced with *num* imply a negative answer. See A. & G. 210, e, end; B. 81, 3; G. 456; H. 351, NOTE 3. In direct questions, *num* is untranslatable; in indirect questions it = *whether*. Consult A. & G. 210, f, REM., end; B. 242, 1; G. 460, (a); H. 529, II, NOTE 3. — *etiam* (et + iam), conjunctive adv., serves to add a notion to that already expressed. — *recentium*, gen. plur. of the adj. *recēns*, *recentis*, abl. sing. regularly *recentū* (etymology dubious). *recentium* is an attributive of *iniūriarūm*.

wished to forget the old affront, could he also lay aside the remem- brance of recent wrongs? that, against his will, they had force- fully attempted to march through our province?	iniuriarum, wrongs,	quod eō because, he (being)	invitō unwilling,	iter 15 a journey
	per through	prōvinciam the province	per vim through violence	temptassent, 16 they had attempted,
	quod because	Aeduōs, the Aedui,	quod because	Ambarrōs, quod 17 the Ambarri, because
	Allobrogas the Allobroges	vēxassent, they had harassed,	memoriam the memory	dēpōnere 18 to lay aside

LINE 15. *iniuriarum*, gen. plur. of *inūria*, -ac, f.; it limits *memoriam*, l. 18, below. — *quod*, conj. = *that*; it introduces the *quod*-clause *quod . . . temptassent*, which, as an explanatory noun-clause, is in apposition with *iniuriarum*; so also the three immediately following *quod*-clauses. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to *Caesar*, and is in the abl. absolute construction with *invitō*. Observe that *eō* is m. here and in the abl. absolute, while *eō*, l. 5, above, is n., and is the abl. of degree of difference, and that *eō*, l. 9, above, is n., and an abl. of cause. — *invitō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *invītus*, -a, -um; abl. absolute with the pron. *eō*. — *iter*, acc. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *temptassent*. For synonyms, see note on *via*, l. 2, Chap. IX.

LINE 16. *per*, prep. with the acc. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. of the noun *prōvincia*, -ac, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*. — *per*, prep. like GK. *διὰ*, denotes, lit., motion *through* space; then transf. it indicates the means or instrument *through* which anything is done, or the *manner* of the action. — *vim*, acc. sing. of the noun *vis*, *vis*, f.; obj. of the prep. *per*, denoting here the manner. Consult A. & G. 153, under *per*, *c* and *d*; B. 166, REM. I, end; G. 399, NOTE I, end; H. 419, III, NOTE 3. — *temptassent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *temptō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to the Helvetii. *temptassent* is syncopated and contracted for *temptāvissent*. For the law thereof, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. Note carefully that a *quod*-clause is a clause expressing fact in direct discourse, and has the ind. mode; that the *quod*-clause here has the subjunctive, because the discourse is indirect. Consult A. & G. 333; B. 198 and 235, (b); G. 524, and 525, 3; H. 516, II. Note again that in some of the lexicons *temptō* is written *tentō* (freq. of *tendō*, compare GK. *τείνω* = *grasp at repeatedly*); hence *temptāre* or *tentāre* = *to grasp, feel, touch, test*.

LINE 17. *quod*, conj. like *quod*, l. 15, above; it introduces the clause *quod Aeduōs vēxassent*, which also is explanatory of *iniuriarum*. — *Aeduōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and is the direct obj. of *vēxassent*, to be supplied from a following clause. — *quod*, observe again that each of these noun-clauses is explanatory of, and in apposition with *iniuriarum*, l. 15, above. — *Ambarrōs*, acc. plur. of *Ambarri*, -ōrum, m.; direct obj. of *vēxassent*, to be supplied. These people are supposed to have been clients of the Aedui; their territory was near the junction of the Saône and the Rhone. — *quod*, see notes on the *quod*-clauses, immediately preceding.

LINE 18. *Allobrogas*, acc. plur. of the proper noun *Allobrogēs*, -um, m. Note that *Allobrogas* is the Greek acc. plur., with the short vowel *a* in the ultima, instead of the long vowel *ē*, as seen in the Latin form of the acc. plur. *Allobrogēs*. See declension of Greek nouns, A. & G. 64; B. 248; G. 66, and NOTE 4; H. 68. *Allobrogas*

19	posse ? (himself) to be able?	Quod	suā	victōriā	tam	and had been har- assing the Aedui, the Ambarri and the Allobroges?
20	insolenter insolently	glōriārentur they gloried,	quodque	tam	diū so long	As to their boast- ing so insolently of their victory, and as to their wondering that
21	sē themselves	impūnē with impunity	iniūriās wrongs	tulisse to have borne,		

is the direct obj. of *vēxāsset*. As to the Aedui, see l. 20, Chap. III; the Ambarri, l. 12, Chap. XI; the Allobroges, l. 10, Chap. VI. — *vēxāsset*, 3d pers. plur. of *vēxō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1, pluperf. subjunctive for the uncontracted form *vēxāvissent*. See note on *templāsset*, l. 16, above; the subject-nom., of course, is *Helvētīi*; subjunctive for the same reason as *templāsset*; see grammatical references to the latter word. — *memoriam*, acc. sing. of *memoria*, *-ae*, f.; direct obj. of *dēponere*. — *dēponere*, pres. inf. act. of *dēponō*, *-ere*, *-posuī*, *-positum*, 3; complementary inf. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2.

LINE 19. *posse*, pres. inf. of *possum*, *posse potuī* (potis + sum); its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*, i.e. *Caesarem*, to be supplied. Observe that the question is rhetorical, and the form of the indirect discourse is the inf. instead of the subjunctive. Consult A. & G. 338; B. 245, 3, REM. 1; G. 651, REM. 1; H. 523, II, 2. — *Quod*, acc. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it differs from the preceding *quod*s only in not having any noun to explain; it is an adverbial accusative; see A. & G. 333, *a*, B. 123, REM. 21; G. 525, 2; H. 516, II, and NOTE, end. Observe critically the different uses of *quod* in lines 3, 10, 13, 15, 17 and 19. In lines 3 and 10 it is a mere clause-connective and = *because*; in lines 13, 15 and 17 it = *ut*, and = *that*; in l. 19 it is an acc. of specification and = *whereas*. — *suā*, abl. sing. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, *-a*, *-um*; it refers to the *Helvētīi*, but is an attributive of *victōriā*. — *victōriā*, abl. sing. of *victōria*, *-ae*, f.; abl. of cause. See A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 413. A. & G.'s grammar makes this construction after *glōrior* a species of abl. locative; see A. & G. 254, *b*. — *tam*, adv.; it modifies *insolenter*. *Orātiō rēcta* of lines 13-19: *Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci volō, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim templāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxāvistis, memoriam dēponere possum?*

LINE 20. *insolenter*, adv. (in, *negative* + *solēns* = *unwonted*); it modifies *glōriārentur*. — *glōriārentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *glōrior*, *-āri*, *-ātus*, 1; it agrees with *Helvētīi*, to be supplied, as its subject-nom. — *quodque* (*quod* + *que*), adverbial acc., see *quod*, preceding line. — *tam*, adv., an accusative form analogous to adv. *quam*, a particle denoting comparison in degree = *lit. in so far*; *tam* modifies the adv. *diū*. — *diū*, adv. (derived from *diēs*); comparative degree *diūtius*, superl. *diūtissimē*; *diū* modifies *tulisse*.

LINE 21. *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*, the same form in both numbers; *sē* is subject-acc. of *tulisse*. — *impūnē*, adv. (in, *negative* + *poena*, through the adj. *impūnis*, *-e*); it, too, modifies *tulisse*. — *iniūriās*, acc. plur. of the noun *iniūria*, *-ae*, f.; it is the direct object of *tulisse*. — *tulisse*, perf. inf. act. of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. The acc.-clause: *sē impūnē iniūriās tulisse* = *that they had inflicted wrongs with impunity*. *tulisse* here appears to be used in the sense of *intulisse*.

they had committed outrages so long without punishment tended to the same result. For the immortal gods are wont, at times, to grant a somewhat lengthy impunity to such as	admīrārentur, they wondered, (these conceits) to the same thing	eōdem to the same thing	pertinēre. 22 to tend.
	Cōnsuēsse To have been wont	enim for,	deōs the gods
	gravius the more heavily	hominēs men	ex from
	rērum of things	doleant, they may grieve,	quō 23 that
		quōs whom	prō for
		scelere guilt	eōrum 25 their,

LINE 22. **admīrārentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *admīror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1 (ad + mirārī = to wonder at); its subject-nom. is *Helvētīi*, to be supplied; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ārātū obliq̄ua*. Observe that the two immediately preceding *quod*-clauses are noun-clauses, and as such are subject-accusatives of *pertinēre*. — **eōdem**, adv. (old dat. of idem + locō); as an adv. it modifies *pertinēre*. — **pertinēre**, pres. inf. of *pertinēō*, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2; its subject-accusatives are the two immediately preceding *quod*-clauses. The meaning appears to be that both the vanity and presumption of the Helvetians alike show their ignorance of the punishment that awaits them.

LINE 23. **Cōnsuēsse**, contracted perf. act. inf. for *cōnsuēvisse* of the verb *cōnsuēscō*, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 3. For the syncopation and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — **enim**, conj., always postpositive, and denotes merely a subjective reason; whereas *nam* indicates an objective reason. — **deōs**, acc. plur. of *deus*, -ī, m. *deōs* is subject-acc. of the verb *cōnsuēsse*. For the declension of *deus*, which is irregular in the plur., see A. & G. 40, f; B. 24, REM. 3; G. 33, REM. 6; H. 51, 6. With *deus* compare the GK. *theós*, noticing especially that both words begin with a lingual mute. — **immortālēs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *immortālīs*, -e (in, negative + mortālīs); *immortālēs* is an attributive of the noun *deōs*. — **quō**, here a conj., and usually when an adj. of the comparative degree is in a clause; it = *ut eō*; consult A. & G. 317, b; B. 200, (b); G. 545, 2; H. 497, II, 2.

LINE 24. **gravius**, adv. in the comparative degree; positive *graviter*, superl. *gravissimē*. *gravius* modifies *doleant*. — **hominēs**, nom. plur. of the noun *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; it is subject-nom. of *doleant*. Synonyms: *homō* is the generic term denoting *man* or *woman*, and is accordingly of the common gender; whereas *vir* (digammated from *ts*) = a *male person* and, in a pregnant sense, a *man of courage*, a *hero*. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — **commūtātiōne**, abl. of *commūtātiō*, -ōnis, f. (com, intensive + mūtāre); it is the obj. of the prep. *ex*.

LINE 25. **rērum**, gen. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; stem *rē*, with vowel shortened in the gen. and dat. sing. *rērum* is objective gen. limiting *commūtātiōne*. — **doleant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *doleō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; its subject-nom. is *hominēs*; it is subjunctive of purpose after *quō* = *ut eō*. — **quōs**, acc. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *his* in the following clause, but is the direct obj. of *ulciscī*. Observe that the relative clause here, as often, precedes the demonstrative; and consult A. & G. 201, c; B. 129, REM. 1; G. 620; H. 572, II, NOTE. — **prō**, prep. with the abl.; compare GK. *πρός*. — **scelere**, abl. sing. of the noun *scelus*, -eris, n.; abl. after *prō*. Synonyms: *facinus* = any bold, daring crime; *flagitium* = an offense against one's self — *moral pollution*; whereas *scelus* = an offense against

26	ulcīscī	velint,	hīs	secundiōrēs	interdum	they purpose to punish for their guilt, that they may the more severely suffer from a change of fortune. Although these things were so, yet if they would give him hostages, that he
	to punish,	they wish,	to them	more favorable,	sometimes	
27	rēs	et	diūturniōrem	impūnitātem	concēdere.	
	things and	a longer	impunity	to concede.		
28	Cum	ea	ita	sint,	tamen,	sī
	Though these (things) thus are,	yet	if	hostages		
29	ab	eīs	sibi	dentur,	utī	ea,
	by them to himself are given,	that	those (things)	which		
				quae		
						hostages, that he

individuals or society — robbery, murder and sedition. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers., like the English poss. case = *their*; as a gen. it limits *scelere*.

LINE 26. *ulcīscī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *ulcīscor, -ī, ultus*, 3; complementary inf. depending on *velint*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; II. 533, I, 1. — *velint*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the irr. verb *volō, velle, volui*; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in the *orātiō obliqua*. Observe that the primary sequence obtains in the rest of the speech, because, probably, general truths are, for the most part, stated. — *hīs*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hoc*, used substantively; indirect obj. after *concēdere*. — *secundiōrēs*, acc. plur. f. of the comparative adj. *secundior, -us*; positive degree *secundus, -a, -um* (*sequi*, to follow); hence *secundus* = *favorable*, a notion derived from winds following ships to their destination. *secundiōrēs* is an attributive of *rēs*. — *interdum*, adv. (*inter + dum*); it modifies the verb *concēdere*. Note its emphatic position.

LINE 27. *rēs*, acc. plur. of *rēs, rē, f.*; direct obj. of *concēdere*. Observe that the phrase *secundiōrēs rēs* = lit. *more favorable things*. — *diūturniōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative degree of *diūturnus (diū)*; the superl. is not in use. *diūturniōrem* is an attributive of *impūnitātem*. — *impūnitātem*, acc. sing. of the noun *impūnitās, -ātis, f.*; it is connected by the conj. *et* with *rēs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *concēdere*, pres. inf. of *concēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum*, 3 (*con, intensive + cedere*); lit. = *to go from*; then *to go out of the way for one, to submit, yield, grant*. *Orātiō recta* of lines 19-27: *Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. Cōnsueverunt enim dī immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.*

LINE 28. *Cum*, concessive conj., here = *although*; known to be such, because it is followed by the correlative *tamen*. — *ea*, nom. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively, and as a noun the subject-nom. of *sint*. The things referred to are the specifications in the last sentence. — *ita*, adv., modifies *sint*. — *sint*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ea*; it is in the subjunctive after *cum* concessive. Consult A. & G. 326; B. 210; G. 587; H. 515, III. — *tamen* (etymology dubious), conjunctive adv. — *sī* (archaic form *seī*, sibilated from Gk. *εἰ*), conditional conj. — *obsidēs*, nom. plur. of *obses, -idis, m. and f.*; subject-nom. of *dentur*.

LINE 29. *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants); compare Gk. *ἀπό* and English *off*. — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; abl. of the agent after the pass. verb



might feel convinced that they would fulfill their promises; if they would give satisfaction to the Aedui for the wrongs they had inflicted on them	polliceantur, they promise,	factūrōs (they) will do.	intellegat, he may know;	et and	sī if
	Aeduīs to the Aedui	dē for	iniūriīs, wrongs	quās which	ipsis 31 on themselves
	sociisque allies and,	eōrum of them	intulerint, they have brought,	item also	sī 32 if

*dentur*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 96, REM. I, and 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; it is dat. of the indirect obj. after *dentur*; it refers to Caesar. — *dentur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive passive of *dō, dare, dedi, datum*, I (*a* is short before *-re* in pres. inf. act., contrary to rule); pass. parts: *dor, dari, datus*; pres. subjunctive in the protasis after *sī*, for the fut. in direct discourse. — *utī*, telic conj.; the shorter *ut* is more common, though the form *utī* is not rare. — *ea*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively, and as a noun the direct obj. of *factūrōs (esse)*. — *quae*, acc. plur. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *ea* as its antecedent, but it is the direct obj. of *polliceantur*.

LINE 30. *polliceantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the deponent verb *pollicor, -eri, -licitus*, 2 (pote, neuter of *potis*, as an adv. + *liceri*) = lit. *to bid largely*; hence *to offer, promise*. *polliceantur* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to the Helvetii; it is in the subjunctive, because it occurs in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. Synonyms: *polliceri* = *to promise* of one's own free will; hence only used of "free and gracious promises"; whereas *promittere* = *to give forth*, and is the general word for promising, especially of promising that which has been requested. — *factūrōs (esse)*, fut. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*; its subject-acc. is *sē* understood, referring to the Helvetii. — *intellegat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of *intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum*, 3 (inter + *legere*, *to choose between*); hence *intellegere* = *to choose between, to perceive, to know*, etc. This verb is often spelled *intelligō*. *intellegat* is the subjunctive of purpose after *utī*. See A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 544, I; H. 497, II. — *et*, conj., connects the conditional clauses. — *sī*, see note on *sī*, l. 28, above.

LINE 31. *Aeduīs*, dat. plur. of *Aeduī, -ōrum*, m.; dat. after *satisfaciant*, to be supplied from l. 33, below. Consult in reference to this dat. A. & G. 227, *e, 2*; B. 142; G. 346; H. 384, II, 4, NOTE I. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *iniūriīs*, abl. of the noun *iniūria, -ae, f.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *quās*, acc. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers in gender and number to its antecedent *iniūriīs*, but it is the direct obj. of *intulerint*. — *ipsis*, dat. plur. of the intensive pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; it refers to the Aedui; it is the dat. after *in* in *intulerint*. See A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386, and I.

LINE 32. *sociisque* (*sociis* + *que*). *sociūs*, dat. plur. of *socius, -ī*, m.; connected closely with *ipsis* by the enclitic conj. *-que*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; the allusion is to their allies, i.e. the allies of the Aedui; if *suīs* had been used, the reference would have been to the allies of the Helvetii. — *intulerint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive act. of *inferō, inferre, intulī, il(n)lātum*; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to the Helvetii; it is in the subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. — *item*, adv. (from

33	Allobrogibus	satisfaciant,	sēsē	cum	eīs	and their allies; if, too, they would give satisfaction to the Allobroges,
	for the Allobroges	they shall do enough,	himself	with	them	he would make peace with them.
34	pācem	esse	factūrum.	Divicō	respondit:	Divico replied:
	peace	to be about	to make.	Divico	replied:	
35	Ita	Helvētiōs	ā	māiōribus	suīs	Divico replied: The Helvetii have been so
	So	the Helvetii	by	ancestors	their,	

radical *i*, whence is + tem) = lit. *in this manner*; hence *thus, also*; different from *etiam* (et + iam), which adds a notion = *and also*. — *sī*, conditional particle; see note on *sī*, l. 28, above.

LINE 33. *Allobrogibus*, dat. plur. of *Allobrogēs*, -um, m., after *satisfaciant*; see grammatical references to *Aeduis*, l. 31, above. — *satisfaciant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of *satisfacio*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (satis + facere); hence *satisfacere* = lit. *to do enough*. *satisfaciant* is the pres. subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis. This subjunctive is for the more vivid fut. ind. in the *ōrātiō rēcta*. — *sēsē*, acc. sing. of the reduplicated reflexive pron. for the less emphatic *sē*. This reflexive is declined thus: *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; the same form is used in both numbers; whether the pron. is sing. or plur. must be determined from the context. *sēsē* is here the acc. sing., referring to Caesar, and subject-acc. of *esse factūrum* (*factūrum esse*). — *cum*, prep. with the abl.; it is known to be the prep., not merely because there is a possible abl. case after it; so far as the form of the pron. *eīs* goes, it might be the dat.; but because it is seen at a glance that there is no finite verb either in the ind. or subjunctive with which *cum* as a conj. could form a subordinate clause. — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *cum*.

LINE 34. *pācem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pāx, pācis*, f.; direct obj. of *esse factūrum* (*factūrum esse*). — *esse factūrum*, fut. inf. act. of *faciō*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, 3; its subject-acc. is the reduplicated personal pron. *sēsē*. — *Divicō*, -ōnis, m.; subject-nom. of *respondit*. For description of *Divicō*, see l. 9, Chap. XIII. — *respondit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondeō*, -ere, -respondī, -rēpsōnum, 2; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Divicō*. *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 28-34: *Cum haec ita sint, tamen, sī obsides ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī haec, quae pollicemini, factūrōs intellegam, et sī Aeduis dē iniūriis, quas ipsīs sociisque eorum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pācem faciam.*

LINE 35. *Ita*, adv. (from radical *i*, whence is + ta) = *in this way, thus*; correlative of the conj. *utī*, next line, below. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of *Helvētiū, -ōrum*, m.; subject-acc. of *institūtōs esse*. For description of this people, see note on *Helvētiū*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *māiōribus*, in form the abl. plur. of the comparative adj. *māior*; the comparative and superl. are used as substantives, either with or without *nātū* = greater in respect to birth, i.e. *elder, ancestor*. The superl. *māximus* is also thus used. The reader will observe that the positive *māgnus* is derived from a radical *mag*, which is common to *māgnus* and the GK. μέγας. *māiōribus* as a noun is the obj. of the prep. *ā*; it is here, in fact, the abl. of the agent after the pass. verb *institūtōs esse*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *suīs*, abl. plur. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it refers to the Helvetii, but is an attributive of *māiōribus*.

trained by their ancestors, that they were accus- tomed to receive, not to give hos- tages; of this fact the Roman people were wit- nesses. After giv- ing this reply, he withdrew.	institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn 36 to have been instructed, that hostages to receive, not dare cōsuērint; ēius rei populum 37 to give they have been wont; of that thing the people Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō 38 Roman to be witness. This reply datō discessit. 39 having been given, he left.
---	---

LINE 36. *institūtōs esse*, perf. inf. pass. of the act. *instituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum*, 3; its subject-acc. is the noun *Helvētios*. Observe that the participial part of this inf. corresponds in case with the subject-acc. — *utī*, ecbatic conj., the original form; the more common form is *ut*; in use, like the GK. *ὅς*. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *obses, -idis*, m. and f.; the direct obj. of *accipere*. — *accipere*, pres. inf. act. of *accipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum*, 3 (ad + capere); hence *accipere* = lit. *to take to one's self, to receive*. *accipere* is a complementary inf. — *nōn*, negative adv. (*ne* + *oenum* [ūnum], apocopated); *nōn* modifies the inf. *dare*.

LINE 37. *dare*, pres. inf. act. of *dō, dare, dedī, datum*, 1 (short *a* before *-re*, in pres. inf. act. by exception); inf. complementary; supply *eōs* as direct obj. — *cōsuērint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *cōsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum*, 3; subjunctive of result after the conj. *utī*. Consult A. & G. 319, 3, and REM.; B. 201, REM. 1, (a); G. 552; H. 500, II. Observe that *cōsuērint* is syncopated and contracted for *cōsuēverint*. See A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *ēius*, gen. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *rei*. — *rei*, gen. sing. of *rēs, rei*, f.; as a gen. it limits *testem*. — *populum*, acc. sing. of the noun *populus, -i*, m. *populum* is subject-acc. of *esse*. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI; and observe, further, that *gēns* and *nātiō* = *a people* in a physical sense without reference to civilization, *gēns* being more compressive than *nātiō*; whereas *civīlās* = *a people* in a political sense, a society formed by compact, civilized society.

LINE 38. *Rōmānum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *populum*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; its subject-acc. is *populum*. — *testem*, acc. sing. of the noun *testis, -is*, m. and f.; predicate-acc. after *esse*. Observe that the construction from *Diviciō respondit* is that of indirect discourse, in which the main clauses are put in the inf. with subject-acc., while the subordinate clause takes the subjunctive. — *Hōc*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hoc*; it is an attributive of *respōnsō*. — *respōnsō*, abl. sing. of the noun *respōnsū, -i*, n.; it is in the abl. absolute with *datō*, denoting *time when*. Consult A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 172; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2, 3). *Orātiō recta* of lines 35–38: *Ita Helvētii a maiōribus suis instituti sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint; huius rei populus Rōmānus est testis*.

LINE 39. *datō*, perf. pass. participle of the act. verb *dō, dare, dedī, datum*; pass. parts: *dor, dari, datus*. The construction is explained by the remarks on *respōnsō*. — *discessit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *discēdō, -ere, -cēssi, -cessum* (*dis* + *cēdere, to go apart*), 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Diviciō*, as the subject-nom.

1	XV.	Posterō	diē	castra	ex	eō	locō	XV. On the following day the Helvetii moved their camp. Caesar did the same; and sent in advance all the cavalry which he had collected from the entire province and the
		<i>The next</i>	<i>day</i>	<i>the camp</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>place</i>	
2	movent.	Idem	facit	Caesar	equitātumque			
	<i>they move.</i>	<i>The same</i>	<i>does</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>the cavalry and,</i>			
3	omnem	ad	numerus	quattuor	mīlium,			
	<i>all</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>the number</i>	<i>of four</i>	<i>thousands,</i>			
4	quem	ex	omni	prōvinciā	et	Aeduīs		
	<i>which</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>the province</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>the Aedui</i>		

LINE 1. *Posterō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *posterus*, -a, -um (*post*); comparative *posterior*, superl. *postrēmus* or *postumus*; *posterō* is an attributive of the noun *diē*. — *diē*, abl. sing. of *diēs*, *diēi*, m. or f. in the sing., always m. in the plur.; abl. of *time when*. Consult A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *castra*, acc. plur. of noun *castrum*, -i, n. (sometimes, though rare, *castra*, -ae, f.); in the sing. = *fortress*; in the plural = several soldiers' tents or huts collected together, i.e. = a *camp*. *castra* in our text is the direct obj. of *movent*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; *eō* is an attributive of *locō*. — *locō*, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m.; in the plur. *loci* or *loca*; compare note on *loci*, l. 10, Chap. II; *locō* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. The Helvetian camp was on the right bank of the Saône, a little south of Matisco. See Chap. XII, at the beginning, and also consult map.

LINE 2. *movent*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, 2; historical present; supply *Helvetiī* as its subject-nom. — *Idem*, acc. sing. n. of the iterative pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; it is here used substantively; or after it supply the English word *thing*. *idem* is the direct obj. of *facit*. — *facit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. acc. of *faciō*, -ēre, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m. (*caesariē*, some say, i.e. from his dark hair); subject-nom. of *facit*. — *equitātumque* (*equitātum* + *que*). *equitātum*, acc. sing. of *equitātus*, -ūs, m. (compare *equitāre* from *equus*); *equitātum* is the direct obj. of *praemittit*, l. 6, below. The body of cavalry consisted (a) of a permanent force; and (b) of a contingent furnished by the allies of Rome at the opening of the campaign. *equitēs*, the plur. of *eques*, a horseman, is frequently used in the same sense as *equitātus*; see *equitibus* and *equitum*, lines 12 and 13, below; but *equitēs* is often, in classic writers, used to denote the equestrian order — the knights — an order among the Romans, holding a middle rank between senators and plebeians. After 102 B.C. the knights became the administrators of justice.

LINE 3. *omnem*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; it is an attributive of *equitātum*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *numerus*, acc. sing. of the noun *numerus*, -i, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *quattuor*, num. adj., cardinal, indecl., i.e. it is in any case, according to the requirements of the construction; here it is in the gen. plur., modifying *mīlium*. — *mīlium*, gen. plur. of the adj. *mille*, indecl. in the sing.; in the plur., *mīlia*, -um, it is used as a noun. Consult A. & G. 94, e; B. 64, REM. 9; G. 95, REM. 3; H. 178. *mīlium*, as a gen., limits *numerus*. But observe that the phrase *ad numerum quattuor mīlium*, as well as the following relative-clause are adjective-modifiers of *equitātum*.

LINE 4. *quem*, acc. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quat*, *quod*; it refers to *equitātum*, but is the direct obj. of *habēbat*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.; see note on *ex*,

Aedui and their allies to the num- ber of four thou- sand, to see in what direction the enemy were marching. And these forces press-	atque and	eōrum their	sociis allies	coāctum having been collected	habēbat, <sup>5</sup> he had,
	praemittit, he sends forward,	quī who	videant, might see,	quās what	in partēs <sup>6</sup> into parts
	hostēs the enemy	iter a march	faciant. are making.	Quī Who	cupidius <sup>7</sup> too eagerly

l. 1, above. — **omni**, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an *i*-stem, with the abl. regularly ending in -ī; *omni* is an attributive of *prōvinciā*. — **prōvinciā**, abl. sing. of the noun *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — **Aeduīs**, abl. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; connected by the conj. *et* with *prōvinciā*, and in the abl. after the prep. *ex*.

LINE 5. **atque** (ad + que), differs from *et* in that it adds a notion = *and also*. — **eōrum**, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. The allusion is to the allies of the Aedui. — **sociis**, abl. plur. of *socius*, -ī, m. (compare *sequi*, to follow); connected by *atque* with *Aeduīs*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **coāctum**, acc. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle of *cōgō*, -ere, -cōgē, *coāctum*, 3 (cum + agere); *coāctum*, as a participle, agrees with the pron. *quem*; hence *quem . . . coāctum habēbat* = lit. *which having been collected he had*. It is thus seen that the phrase *coāctum habēbat* = *cōgērat*, nearly. Consult A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, I, NOTE; also compare note on *habēre obstrictās*, l. 14, Chap. IX. — **habēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2. *habēbat* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Caesar*.

LINE 6. **praemittit**, 3d pers. sing. historical pres. ind. act. of *praemittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssum, 3; connected by the conj. -que, appended to *equitātum*, with *facit*, and has the same subject-nom., *Caesar*. Observe the force of the *prae* in composition = *in advance*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *equitātum* as its antecedent, a noun which *in idea* is plur.; *quī* here = *ut eī*, and is the subject-nom. of *videant*. — **videant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of *videō*, -ere, -vidī, -vīsum, 2 (digammated from the GK. radical *īd*, as seen in the 2d aorist participle *ιδών*). *videant* is subjunctive of purpose after *quī* = *ut eī*, and *quī videant* = *in order that they might see*. Consult A. & G. 317, 2; B. 233, and 1; G. 630; H. 497, I. — **quās**, acc. plur. f. of the pron. *quī, quae, quod*; used here adjectively, agreeing with the noun *partēs*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. For its meaning with the acc., see note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I. Observe that a monosyllabic prep. is often placed between a noun and its modifier. Consult A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 569, II, 1. — **partēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *pars, partis*, f. *partēs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 7. **hostēs**, nom. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; it is subject-nom. of *faciant*. — **iter**, acc. sing. of the noun *iter, itineris*, n.; *iter* is the direct obj. of *faciant*. — **faciant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of *faciō*, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *hostēs*, and is subjunctive, because the question is *indirect*. Consult A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. — **Quī**, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *equitātum*, l. 2, above, but is the subject-nom. of *committunt*, l. 10, below. Observe that *quī* here introduces an independent sentence, and = *et hī* or *eī*. See A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — **cupidius**, adv., comparative degree of *cupidē*, superl. *cupidissimē*. The compar-

8	novissimum	āgmen	īnsecūtī	aliēnō	locō	ing too eagerly the enemy's rear, joined battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii in an un- favorable place, and a few of our soldiers fell. The Helvetii, elated at the issue of this skirmish, be-
	<i>the newest</i>	<i>line</i>	<i>pursuing</i>	<i>in a strange</i>	<i>place</i>	
9	cum	equitātū	Helvētiōrum	proelium		
	<i>with</i>	<i>the cavalry</i>	<i>of the Helvetii</i>	<i>a battle</i>		
10	committunt;	et	paucī	dē	nostrīs	cadunt.
	<i>join;</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>a few</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>ours</i>	<i>fall.</i>
11	Quō	proeliō	sublātī	Helvētiī,	quod	
	<i>By which</i>	<i>battle</i>	<i>being elated</i>	<i>the Helvetii,</i>	<i>because</i>	

ative degree is here to be rendered *too* or *rather*. Consult A. & G. 93, a; B. 163, REM. 6; G. 297, 2; H. 444, 1.

LINE 8. *novissimum*, acc. of the superl. degree of *novus* (kindred with the GK. *νέος*); it is an attributive of the noun *āgmen*. — *āgmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *āgmen*, -inis, n.; direct obj. of the participle *īnsecūtī*. Observe that *āgmen* (*agere*) = *an army in motion*; whereas *exercitus* = *a disciplined army*, and *aciēs* = *an army in battle array*. Observe also that *novissimum āgmen* = *the newest or nearest part of the army* to a pursuing enemy, i.e. nearest in this case to the Roman cavalry; *novissimum āgmen* therefore = *the rear*. — *īnsecūtī*, nom. plur. m. of the participle *īnsecūtus*, -a, -um of the verb *īnsequor*, -sequi, -secūtus, deponent, 3; it agrees with *quī*, the subj. of the sentence. — *aliēnō*, abl. sing. m. of the adjective pron. *aliēnus*, -a, -um (*alius*) = *lit. another's*; here it = *unfavorable*, opposed to *suō* or *opportūnō*; it is an attributive of *locō*. — *locō*, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, -ī, m.; locative abl. Consult A. & G. 258, f, 1 and 2; B. 176, NOTE 2; G. 385, NOTE 1, middle; H. 425, II, 2.

LINE 9. *cum*, prep.; known to be such both from its position and the nature of the clause in which it stands; *cum* takes the abl. — *equitātū*, abl. of the noun *equitātus*, -ūs, m.; abl. after *cum*; *cum* is thus used with words of contention. See A. & G. 248, b; B. 168; G. 399; II. 419, III, 1, 2). — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of *Helvētiī*, -ōrum, m.; it limits, as a gen., *equitātū*. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētiī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *proelium*, acc. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n. (*prō* or *prae* + *ire*) = *to go forward*; direct obj. of *committunt*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliū*, l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 10. *committunt*, 3d pers. plur. historic pres. ind. act. of *committō*, -ere, -mīsi, -mīssum, 3 (con + mittere) = *lit. to bring together*; transf. *to arrange or commence a battle*. *committunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*, l. 7, above. — *et*, conj.; joins the sentences. — *paucī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *paucus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and subject-nom. of the verb *cadunt*; as an adj. thus compared: comparative *paucior*, superl. *paucissimus*. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *nostrīs*, abl. plur. m. of the poss. adjective pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively; or, if preferred, supply *militibus*. *nostrīs* is in the abl. with prep. *dē*, instead of the partitive construction. Consult A. & G. 216, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2; II. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *cadunt*, 3d pers. plur. historic pres. ind. of *cadō*, -ere, *cecidī*, *cāsum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *paucī*.

LINE 11. *Quō*, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *proelium* as its antecedent, and as an adj. it agrees with *proeliō*. For exposition of the relative at the beginning of a sentence, see grammatical references to *quī*, l. 7, above. — *proeliō*, abl. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *sublātī*. Consult A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; II. 416. — *sublātī*, nom.

cause they had put to route so large a number of horse with five hundred cavalry, began to make a bolder stand, and with their rear-guard to provoke our men to battle. But Caesar re-	quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem 12 with five hundred horsemen so great a multitude
	equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere 13 of horsemen they had put to flight, more boldly to halt
	nōnnunquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō 14 sometimes and with the newest line by battle
	nostrōs lacēssere coepērunt. Caesar suōs 15 ours to exasperate began. Caesar his own

plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *sublātus*, -a, -um of the verb *tollō*, *tollere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*; it agrees with *Helvētīi*. Observe that *tollō* has as its root *tol*, whence *tulī*, compare GK. *τολμάω*, and = to lift up, hence to take heart, and rarely in the perf. pass. participle = *elated*. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and subject-nom. of *coepērunt*, l. 15, below. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *quod*, conj. = *because*.

LINE 12. *quingentis*, abl. plur. m. of the num. adj. *quingenti*, -ae, -a (quinque + centum); it is an attributive of *equitibus*. Observe that hundreds are regularly declined like the plural of *bonus*. — *equitibus*, abl. plur. of *eques*, -itis, m.; abl. of means. See A. & G. 248, 8, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. Compare note on *equitātum*, l. 2, above. — *tantam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *tantus*, -a, -um (tam + tus) = *so much*, as compared with some standard either expressed or understood. *tantam* modifies *multitudinem*. — *multitudinem*, acc. sing. of the noun *multitūdō*, -inis, f. (*multus*); it is the direct obj. of *prōpulerant*.

LINE 13. *equitum*, gen. plur. of *eques*, -itis, m.; it limits *multitudinem*. See note on *equitātum*, l. 2, above. Observe that *eques* is a lingual-mute stem — *equit*; the nom. is formed by adding *s*, thus: *equit* + *s*; the lingual is suppressed, and the vowel preceding the formative *s* is changed to *e*. If the stem of *eques* were *equiti*, i.e. an *i*-stem, the gen. plur. would be *equitum*. — *prōpulerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *prōpellō*, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, 3 (prō + *pellere*, to drive forward); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Helvētīi*. — *audācius*, adv., comparative degree of *audācter*; superl. *audācissimē* (adj. *audax*, bold). *audācius* modifies *subsistere*. — *subsistere*, pres. inf. act. of *subsistō*, -ere, -stīti, 3 (sub + *sistere*) = lit. to stand a little, to halt; but *subsistere* = to remain, to subsist; it has the lit. meaning in our text. *subsistere* is a complementary inf., and depends on *coepērunt*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1.

LINE 14. *nōnnunquam* (nōn + num[n]quam) = lit. *not never*, i.e. *sometimes*; as in English, two negatives in Latin = a positive. See A. & G. 150, and a; B. 117, 10; G. 449, 4; H. 553, I. — *et*, cop. conj.; it here connects *subsistere* and *lacēssere*. — *novissimō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *novissimus*, -a, -um; superl. degree of the positive *novus*; it modifies *āgmine*. — *āgmine*, abl. of *āgmen*, -inis, n.; abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *proeliō*, abl. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; abl. of means. A. & G. 248, c, 1; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. A possible construction of *proeliō* is the locative abl.; see H. 425, II, 1, 2; but even thus the idea of means is dominant.

LINE 15. *nostrōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. adjective pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively; or, in analyzing, supply *militēs*. — *lacēssere*, pres. inf. act. of *lacēssō*, -ere, -īvi (-īi), -itum, 3; complementary inf.; depends on *coepērunt*. — *coepērunt*,

16	<i>ā</i>	<i>proeliō</i>	<i>continēbat</i>	<i>āc</i>	<i>satis</i>	<i>habēbat</i>	strained his men from fighting,
	<i>from</i>	<i>battle</i>	<i>held in check</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>enough</i>	<i>he held (it to be)</i>	thinking it to
17	<i>in</i>	<i>praesentiā</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>rapīnis</i> ,	<i>pābulātiōnibus</i>		be sufficient for
	<i>for</i>	<i>the present</i>	<i>the enemy</i>	<i>from robberies,</i>	<i>foraging</i>		the present to
18	<i>populātiōnibusque</i>	<i>prohibēre.</i>	<i>Ita</i>	<i>diēs</i>			keep the enemy
	<i>devastations</i>	<i>and,</i>	<i>to restrain.</i>	<i>Thus</i>	<i>for days</i>		from rapine, for-
							aging and pil-

3d pers. plur. of the defective preteritive verb *coepti*, *coeptisse*, fut. participle *coeptūrus*, perf. pass. participle *coeptus*. *coeptūrus* agrees with its subject-nom. *Illetrūti*, l. 11, above. As to inflection and use of this verb, see A. & G. 143, *a*; B. 113; G. 175, 5, *a*; II. 297, I. and 1. — **Caesar**, -*aris*, m.; subject-nom. of *continēbat*. As to a possible derivation of *Caesar*, see note, l. 2, above. — **suos**, acc. plur. m. of the poss. adjective pron. *suus*, -*a*, -*um*; used substantively; or *hominis*, or *militis* may be supplied. The later grammarians, however, object to the supposition of an ellipsis. See A. & G. 197, *d*, and NOTE; B. 60, REM.; G. 204, NOTES 1, (*a*), (*b*), and 2; H. 441, 1. But no rigid analysis can be made without such supposition. *suos* is the direct obj. of *continēbat*.

LINE 16. *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — **proeliō**, abl. of *proelium*, -*i*, n.; abl. after the prep. *ā*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I. — **continēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *continēō*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*tentum*, 2 (con + *tenēre*) = lit. *to hold together*. *continēbat* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — **āc**, conj., contracted from *atque*; see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — **satis**, adv. sometimes; sometimes, as here, an indecl. adj.; here it is a predicate-adj.; acc. after *esse*, to be supplied; of which *esse*, *prohibēre* with its modifiers is the subject-acc. — **habēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*itum*, 2; it is connected by the conj. *āc* with *continēbat*, and has the same subject-nom. The reader will bear in mind that *habēre* = *to have*, in the widest sense, and that *to have* in one's mind = *to think*.

LINE 17. **in**, prep. with either the acc. or abl., but with different significations; compare note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **praesentiā**, abl. sing. of the noun *praesentia*, -*ae*, f. (*praesēns*, participial adj. of *praesum*) = lit. *that which is before one*. *praesentiā* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **hostem**, acc. sing. of the noun *hostis*, -*is*, m. and f.; it is the direct obj. of *prohibēre*. Note that the plur. form is oftener used, in Caesar, than the sing. Synonyms: *hostis*, originally = *a stranger*; transf. *a public enemy*; whereas, in contrast, *inimicus* = *a private foe*. — **rapinis**, abl. plur. of the noun *rapīna*, -*ae*, f. (compare *rapere*, to pillage); abl. of separation after *prohibēre*. Consult A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, 2, and NOTE 3, end; H. 414. — **pābulātiōnibus**, abl. plur. of the noun *pābulātiō*, -*ōnis*, f.; in the same construction as *rapinis*, the conj. being omitted.

LINE 18. **populātiōnibusque** (*populātiōnibus* + *que*). *populātiōnibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *populātiō*, -*ōnis*, f.; connected by the enclitic -*que* with *pābulātiōnibus*, and in the same grammatical construction. Note that in a series either no conj. is used, or it is repeated between the words. But the enclitic -*que*, as shown in our text, may be appended to the last word of the series. See A. & G. 208, 3, and 346, *c*; B. 123, REMS. 2 and 6; G. 474, NOTE; II. 554, 6. — **prohibēre**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *prohibēō*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*itum*, 2 (pro + *habēre*); hence *prohibēre* = lit. *to hold in front*, i.e. *to keep in check, restrain*. *prohibēre*, as we have seen, is the subject-acc. of *esse*, to be supplied, of which the adj. *satis* is predicate-acc. — **Ita**, adv. (derived from



laging. Both armies marched for about fifteen days in such a manner, that not more than five or six miles' space intervened between the enemy's rear-guard and our van.	circiter about	quīndecim fifteen	iter a march	fēcērunt, they made,	utī 19 so that
	inter between	novissimum the newest	hostium enemy's	āgmen line	et 20 and
	nostrum our	prīmum first,	nōn not	amplius more than	quīnis five
	sēnis six	mīlibus thousands	passuum of paces	interesset. intervened.	aut 21 or
					22

radical *i*, whence is + suffix *ta*) = lit. *in this manner*. *ita* modifies *fēcērunt*. — *dīs*, acc. plur. of the noun *dīs*, *-ī*, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. *dīs* is the acc. of *extent* of time. See A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379.

LINE 19. *circiter*, prep. and adv.; here an adv., and modifies the num. adj. *quīndecim*. *circiter* is derived from *circus*, whence *circum*. — *quīndecim* (quinque + decem), an indecl. num. adj.; it is an attributive of the noun *dīs*. — *iter*, acc. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n.; direct obj. of *fēcērunt*. — *fēcērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *faciō*, *-ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with the subject-nom. *mīlites*, to be supplied. — *utī*, ecbatic conj., here for the more common and shorter *ut*.

LINE 20. *inter*, prep. with the acc.; derived from *in* + the adverbial suffix *ter*; sometimes, though rarely and poetically, an adv. — *novissimum*, acc. of superl. degree of the positive *novus*; see note on *novissimum*, l. 8, above. *novissimum* modifies *āgmen*. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, *-is*, m. and f.; an *i*-stem; *hostium* limits the noun *āgmen*. For synonyms, see note on *hostem*, l. 17, above. — *āgmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *āgmen*, *-inis*, n.; obj. of the prep. *inter*. For derivation and synonyms, see note on *āgmen*, l. 8, above. — *et*, cop. conj., connecting the phrases.

LINE 21. *nostrum*, acc. sing. n. of the poss. adjective pron. *noster*, *-tra*, *-trum*; it is an attributive of *prīmum*, which latter is here used as a noun. — *prīmum*, in form an acc. sing. n. of the adj. *prīmus*, *-a*, *-um*; in use here it is a noun, connected by the conj. *et* with *āgmen*, and in the same grammatical construction; in other words, *prīmum* is also the obj. of the prep. *inter*; or *āgmen* may be supplied and *prīmum* may be taken as an adjective-modifier of *āgmen* thus understood, and the latter would be the obj. of the prep. *inter*. — *nōn*, negative adv. (*nē* + *oenum* [ūnum], apocopated). *nōn* modifies *interesset*. — *amplius*, nom. n. of the comparative *amplior*, *-us*, used as a subst.; positive *amplius*, superl. *amplissimus*. *amplius* as a noun is here the subject-nom. of *interesset*. — *quīnis*, abl. plur. n. of the distributive num. adj. *quīnī*, *-ae*, *-a*; it is an attributive of *mīlibus*. — *aut*, conj.; it usually excludes an alternative; see note on *aut*, l. 19, Chap. I.

LINE 22. *sēnis*, abl. plur. of the distributive adj. *sēnī*, *-ae*, *-a*; connected by the disjunctive conj. *aut* with *quīnis*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. it, too, is an attributive of the noun *mīlibus*. Observe that the distributives indicate that the same interval was maintained *each* day. — *mīlibus*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *mīlia*, used substantively; abl. after the comparative degree *quam* being omitted. Consult A. & G. 247; B. 163; G. 398; H. 417. — *passuum*, gen. plur. of *passus*, *-us*, m.; partitive after *mīlibus*; consult A. & G. 216, a, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. For the exact literal and the best rendering into English of this construction, see

1	XVI.	Interim	cotidiē	Caesar	Aeduōs	XVI. Mean- while Caesar kept daily de- manding from the Aedui the grain which they had promised in the name of the state. For on ac- count of the cold
		Meantime	daily	Caesar	from the Aedui	
2	frūmentum	quod	essent	pūblicē	pollicitī	
	grain	which	they had	officially	promised	
3	flāgitāre.	Nam	propter	frīgora,		
	to demand (began).	For	on account of the times	of cold,		

note on *passuum*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *interesset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *intersum*, -esse, *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *amplius*, an adj. used as a noun; it is the subjunctive of *result* after the conj. *ut*. Observe (1) the composition of the verb (*inter* + *esse*) = lit. *to be between*; then (a) impersonally it = *it concerns*; (b) *there is a difference*. But observe (2) that in the text the grammatical subject is the colorless adj. *amplius*, used substantively; while the logical subject of *interesset* is the entire complex phrase: *nōn amplius quānis aut sēnis milibus passuum*.

LINE 1. *Interim*, adv. (*inter* + *im* for *eum*) = *interea* (*inter* + *ea*) in signification. — *cotidiē*, adv. (quot + *diē*) = lit. *every day*. These adverbs modify the historical inf. *flāgitāre*, which, in use, is the main verb in the sentence. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the historic inf. *flāgitāre*, which is said by the grammarians to be = *flāgitābat*. — *Aeduōs*, acc. of the person of the noun *Aedui*, -ōrum, m., after *flāgitāre*. As to the Aedui, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III.

LINE 2. *frūmentum*, acc. of the thing of the noun *frūmentum*, -ī, n., after *flāgitāre*, a verb of demanding which takes two accusatives. Consult A. & G. 239, c; B. 151; G. 339; H. 374. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*; it refers to *frūmentum* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of the deponent verb *essent polliciti*. — *pūblicē*, adv. (*pūblicus*, public). As to the formation of this adv. from the adj., see A. & G. 148, a; B. 117, 5; G. 91, 2, (b); H. 304, II, 2, end. Observe the emphatic position of the adv., between the parts of the compound formation of the pluperf. tense. — *essent polliciti* (*polliciti essent*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the deponent *polliceor*, -ēri, -licitus, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Aeduōs*; it is in the subjunctive, because in a *quod*-clause expressing a reason of the speaker's own thoughts under other conditions — informal indirect discourse. See A. & G. 341, d, and REM.; B. 198, (b); G. 539, REM., and 628; H. 528, 1. Synonyms: *promittere* = *to promise*, as the general word, especially in response to a request; *polliceri* = *to promise*, as a free and gracious act.

LINE 3. *flāgitāre*, historical pres. inf. of *flāgitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. For its use in narrating vivid historic events, see A. & G. 275; B. 182; G. 647; H. 536, 1. Probably in such use there is an ellipsis of *coepit* or *coepērunt*. Consult G. 647, NOTE 1. Synonyms: *postulāre* = *to demand*, as a simple request; *poscere* = *to demand* energetically, because one has a consciousness of right; whereas *flāgitāre* (strongest of all verbs of demanding) = *to demand* eagerly and importunately. — *Nam*, conj.; it introduces an objective reason, while *enim* introduces a subjective, and is post-positive. — *propter*, prep. with the acc. — *frīgora*, acc. plur. of *frīgus*, -oris, n. (diagrammated from *πίρος*); it is the obj. of the prep. *propter*. The plur. here = *the times of cold*. See A. & G. 75, 3, c, end; G. 204, NOTE 5.

weather, since Gaul lies toward the north—as we have before said — the standing grain was not only unripe in the fields, but not even a sufficient quantity of for-	quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante 4 because Gaul under the north, as before dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frumenta 5 it has been said, was situated, not only the crops in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē 6 in the fields ripe not were, but not pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia 7 of fodder even a sufficiently great abundance
--	---

LINE 4. *quod*, conj. = *because*; note that the *quod*-clause is explanatory of *frīgora*. — *Gallia*, nom. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; subj. of *posita est*. Caesar is comparing the climate of Gaul with that of Italy. — *sub* (sibilated and apocopated from the Gk. *ὑπό*); prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *septentrionibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *septentriō*, -ōnis, m. (septem + triō); abl. after the prep. *sub*. The phrase gives the idea of the situation of that part of Gaul that seems to be under the stars in the Great Bear constellation. See note on *septentrionēs*, l. 26, Chap. I. — *ut*, adv., and usually such in a parenthetical clause. — *ante*, adv. See lines 21–26, Chap. I.

LINE 5. *dictum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *dīcō*, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, 3; it is here used impersonally; supply *mihi*, as dat. of the agent, and we have the equivalent of the personal construction = *dīxī*. — *posita*, participle as predicate after *est*, forming a species of periphrastic conjugation; it agrees in gender and number with *Gallia*. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Gallia*. — *nōn* (*nē* + *ūnum*), adv., modifies *modo*. But observe that *nōn modo* . . . *sed etiam* are conjunctive adverbial phrases, and that when *nōn modo* . . . *nōn* are followed, as in our text, by *sed nē* . . . *quidem*, this phraseology indicates a rising to a more emphatic negative in the second clause. — *frumenta*, nom. plur. of the noun *frumentum*, -ī, n. (*frūgi* + *mentum*), subj. of the verb *erant*. Observe (a) that *fructus* usually denotes *tree-fruit*, but *frumentum* = *grain*; (b) that *frumenta*, in Caesar's commentaries = *standing grain*, while the sing. *frumentum* = *the grain gathered*; in other words, it = *pābulum*, forage.

LINE 6. *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. On the meaning of *in*, according to the case, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *agrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m.; *agrīs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *mātūra*, nom. plur. n. of the adj. *mātūrus*, -a, -um; comparative *mātūrior*, superl. *mātūriissimus*, less frequently *mātūrimus*. *mātūra* is predicate-adj. after *erant*. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*), modifies the adj. *mātūra*. — *erant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *frumenta*. — *sed*, conj.; a particle of limitation — a stronger adversative than either *at* or *autem*. — *nē*, adv., here modifying *quidem*; sometimes a conj., and the two particles *nē* . . . *quidem* may be taken as conjunctions here, connecting the clauses. Archaic form *neī* (*nī*); the primary Latin negative.

LINE 7. *pābuli*, gen. sing. of the noun *pābulum*, -ī, n.; it, as a gen., limits *cōpia*. — *quidem*, conjunctive adv. Observe that the emphatic word is inserted between *nē* and *quidem*. See A. & G. 345, b; G. 679; H. 569, III. — *satis*, adv., modifying *magna*; comparative *sātius* = *more satisfying*, i.e. *better*. Synonyms: *satis* = *enough*, objectively, so that one needs no more; but *affatim* = *enough*, subjectively, so that

8	suppetēbat;	eō	autem	frūmentō,	quod	age was at hand.
	was in store;	that,	moreover,	grain	which	Moreover, the
9	flūmine	Ararī	nāvibus	subvēxerat,	proptereā	grain which Caesar
	on the river	Arar	by ships	he had conveyed,	for this reason	had brought
10	minus	ūtī	poterat,	quod	iter	by boats on the
	the less (easily)	to use	he was able,	because	the route	river Saône, he
11	ab	Ararī	Helvetiū	āverterant,	ā	could not use,
	from	the Arar	the Helvetii	had turned aside,	from	because the Hel-
						vetii had turned
						their course from
						the river, and

one wishes for no more. Doedl. *Synonyms.* — *māgna*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus*. *māgna* is an attributive of *cōpia*. — *cōpia*, nom. sing. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; subj. of *suppetēbat*. Note that in the sing. *cōpia* = abundance; in the plur., troops.

LINE 8. *suppetēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sup(b)petō*, -ere, -īrī (-iī), -itum, 3, n. (sub + petere); hence *suppetere* = lit. to seek for that which is near. *suppetēbat* agrees with its subject-nom. *cōpia*. — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of the noun *frūmentō*. — *autem*, conj., postpositive; a weak adversative; often simply marks the transition. — *frūmentō*, abl. sing. of *frūmentum*, -ī, n. See note on *frūmenta*, l. 5, above. *frūmentō* is in the abl. after the verb *ūtī*, l. 10, below. Consult A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *frūmentō* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *subvēxerat*. *quod* is known to be a rel. pron. in the acc., because *subvēxerat* is a trans. verb and requires a direct obj.

LINE 9. *flūmine*, abl. sing. of the noun *flūmen*, -inis, n. (*flūere*, to flow); hence *flūmen* = lit. a flowing. *flūmine* is in the abl. of the way by which. See A. & G. 258, g; B. 167, 5, (b); G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3). — *Ararī*, abl. sing. of the noun *Arar* or *Araris*, m., acc. in -im; an appositive. The form *Arare*, abl., sometimes occurs. The Arar is the modern Saône; it rises in the Vosges mountains, and empties into the Rhone. — *nāvibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *nāvis*, -is, f. (GK. *naūs*); abl. of means. A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *subvēxerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *subvehō*, -ere, -vēcī, -vēctum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *proptereā* (propter + eā), adv.; the herald of the following *quod*-clause.

LINE 10. *minus*, adv., comparative of *parum* (not enough), superl. *minimē*; it modifies the verb *ūtī*. *minus* = lit. less, but may be frequently rendered as if it were *non*. — *ūtī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūtus*, 3; inf. complementary, and depends on *poterat*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *poterat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); it agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *quod*, conj., connects the clauses; known to be a conj. not merely because there is no noun immediately preceding as an antecedent, but because *āverterant*, as a plur. trans. verb, has its obj. *iter*; *quod*, accordingly, could neither be the subj. nor obj. — *iter*, acc. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n.; the direct obj. of *āverterant*. For synonyms, see note on *via*, l. 2, Chap. IX.

LINE 11. *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before either vowels or consonants); compare GK. ἀπό, English *off*. — *Ararī*, abl. sing. of *Arar*, -aris, m.; acc. in -im; another form of the abl. is *Arare*; abl. after the prep. *ab*. —

he was unwilling to withdraw from them. The Aedui kept putting him off day after day, saying that the grain was being collected, brought in, and was near	quibus whom	discēdere to leave	nolēbat. he was unwilling.	Diem Day	ex 12 after
	diē day	dūcere to put him off	(began) the Aedui: (the grain)	Aedui: the Aedui:	13
	cōnferri, to be brought together,	comportāri, to be collected,	adesse to be near,	dicere. to say	14

**Helvētii**, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and as such the subject-nom. of *verterant*. For description of this clan, see note on *Helvētii*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *verterant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *vertō*, -ere, *vertū*, *versum*, 3 (ab + vertere); hence *vertere* = lit. to turn away. *verterant* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētii*. — ā, see ab, immediately above.

LINE 12. **quibus**, abl. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; as a rel. it refers to *Helvētii* as its antecedent, but it is the obj. of the prep. *d.* — **discēdere**, pres. inf. of *discō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, 3; complementary, depending on *nolēbat*. — **nolēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui* (nē + volo); it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. Note that, after crossing the Saône, the Helvetii had turned in a westerly direction, in order to cross the Cevenne mountains at their least altitude. Their destination, it will be recalled, was the country of the Santoni. — **Diem**, acc. of the noun *diēs*, -ei, m. or f. in sing., always m. in the plur. *diem* is here acc. of extent of time. Consult A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants).

LINE 13. **diē**, abl. of *diēs*, -ei, after the prep. *ex*, which latter here = *after*. — **dūcere**, historical pres. inf. of *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductum*, 3, for *dūcēbant*. As *dūcere* is a trans. verb, supply *eum*, i.e. *Caesarem*, as direct obj. As to the use of the historic inf., and for grammatical references, see note on *flāgitāre*, l. 3, above. As to its signification, *dūcere* = (a) to lead, in its widest sense; then, of course, (b) to lead a person in regard to his will; then, (c), in reference to time, it = to prolong; and (d), in reference to persons, it = to put off, as in our text. But sometimes (c) it = to lead or control one's own thoughts, to reckon. Compare note on *dūxērunt*, l. 10, Chap. III. — **Aedui**, nom. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and here subject-nom. of the historical inf. *dūcere*. For historical description of the clan, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III.

LINE 14. **cōnferri**, pres. inf. pass. of *cōnféro*, -ferre, *contulī*, *col(n)lātum* (con + *ferō*); supply *frumentum* as subject-acc. — **comportāri**, pres. inf. pass. of *comportō*, -ōre, -āvī, -ātum; *comportāri* is in the same grammatical construction as *cōnferri*; its subject-acc. is the pron. *id*, representing *frumentum*. Note the omission of the conj. between these infinitives (asyndeton). Note also that, as *ferri* is used of what is borne by a servant on his own body, and *portāri* is used in reference to that which is borne on a beast or wagon; so *cōnferri*, in our text, would have reference to the contributions of menial Aeduans to their officials, and *comportāri* would denote the official delivery of the grain to Caesar. Or *comportāri* may be taken as merely expegetical of *cōnferri*. — **adesse**, pres. inf. of the intrans. *ad(as)sum*, -esse, *ad(af) fui*, *ad(af) futurus*. *adesse* is in the same grammatical construction as the two immediately preceding infinitives; i.e. its subject-acc. is the pron. *id*, referring to *frumentum*. Observe that these three infinitives with their subject-accusatives depend on *dūcere*. — **dicere**, historical pres. inf. of *dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3; it

15	Ubi	sē	diūtius	dūcī	at hand. When		
	(began they).	When	himself	too long	to be put off		
16	intellēxit	et	diem	instāre,	quō	diē	too long, and
	he perceived	and	the day	to be near	on which	day	that the day was
17	frumentum	militibus	mētiri	oportēret,			near when he
	(himself) grain	to the soldiers	to measure out	it behooved,			must distribute
18	convocātis	eōrum	principibus,	quōrum			grain to his sol-
	having been summoned	their	chiefs,	of whom			diers, summoning
							the Helvetian
							chiefs, of whom

stands for *dūcēbant*, in ordinary discourse, and agrees with the pron. *eī*, i.e. *Aedui*, to be supplied, as the subject-nom. For grammatical references, see note on *flāgitāre*, l. 3, above.

LINE 15. *Ubi* (quō + bi), adv. = lit. *in which place, where*; sometimes used of time, and = *whenever* or *when*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē*, same form in both numbers; subject-acc. of the verb *dūcī*. — *diūtius*, adv., comparative of *diū* (*diēs*); superl. *diūtissimē*. For the omission of the standard of comparison, see A. & G. 93, a; B. 163, REM. 6; G. 297, 2; H. 444, 1. *diūtius* modifies the verb *dūcī*. — *dūcī*, pres. inf. pass. of *dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum*, 3; it, with its subject-acc., forms a noun-clause which is the direct obj. of *intellēxit*. *dūcī* is known to be the pres. inf. pass. of *dūcor*, and not the dat. of *dux, ducis, duci*, to the novice by noticing that the vowel in the penult in *dux* is short; to the experienced Latinist, by the observation that the construction cannot be satisfactorily analyzed in any other way than by making *dūcī* a pass. inf. But note that *dūcī* here = *to be put off*, and compare *dūcere*, l. 13, above.

LINE 16. *intellēxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *intelligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum*, 3 (inter + *legere*); hence *intelligere* = *to select between, to discriminate, to know*. *intellēxit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *diem*, acc. sing. of the noun *diēs, -ei*, m. and f. in sing., always m. in the plur.; *diem* is subject-acc. of the verb *instāre*. — *instāre*, pres. inf. of *instō, -stāre, -stiti*, fut. participle *-stāturus*, 1 (in + *stāre*); hence *instāre* = lit. *to stand on or near*, i.e. *to press on, be urgent*. — *quō*, abl. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*; as a rel. it refers to *diem*, but it has here an adjective force, and is the attributive of the noun *diē*, repeated from *diem*. As to the repetition of the antecedent in the relative-clause, consult A. & G. 200, a; B. 129, REM. 1, (b); G. 615; H. 445, 8. — *diē*, abl. of time at which, from *diēs, -ei*; see *diem*, immediately above. For grammatical references, see A. & G. 256, I; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 17. *frumentum*, acc. sing. of *frumentum, -i*, n.; direct obj. of the deponent verb *mētiri*, of which verb supply the pron. *sē* as subject-acc. — *militibus*, dat. plur. of the noun *miles, -itis*, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *mētiri*. See A. & G. 225, 3, d; B. 141; G. 345; H. 384, II. — *mētiri*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *mētior, -iri, mēnsus*, postclassic *mētitus*, 4. Note that the infinitive-clause *frumentum (sē) militibus mētiri* is the subject of the so-called impersonal verb *oportēret*. — *oportēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the impersonal verb *oportet, -ēre, -ui*, 2; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in implied *oratiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 342; B. 245, (b); G. 663; H. 529, II, NOTE 1, 1).

LINE 18. *convocātis*, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *convocātus, -a, -um* of the verb *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; abl. absolute with the noun *principibus*. —

he had a large number in the camp — among them Divitiacus and Liscus, the latter the ruling chief, whom the Aedui call Ver- gobretus, who is	māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat — in 19 a great plenty in camp he had — among his Divitiacō et Liscō, quī summō 20 them Divitiacus and Liscus, who of the supreme magistrātūī praeērat, quem Vergobretum 21 body of officers was the leader, whom as Vergobretus
--	--

**ēōrum**, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it limits the noun *prīncipibus*. — **prīncipibus**, abl. plur. of *prīnceps, -cipis*, m. (prīmum + capere); primarily an adj.; here a noun, and in the abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *convocātūs*, denoting *time when*. Consult A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 172; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — **quōrum**, gen. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *prīncipibus* as its antecedent, but, as a gen., it limits *cōpiam*.

LINE 19. **māgnam**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus, -a, -um*; comparative *māior*; superl. degree *māximus*; *māgnam* is an attributive of *cōpiam*. — **cōpiam**, acc. sing. of the noun *cōpia, -ae*, f. (con + ops); here *cōpiam* = *multitudinem*. *cōpiam* is the direct obj. of *habēbat*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For definition of meaning when followed by either the acc. or abl., see note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I. — **castrīs**, abl. plur. of *castrum, -ī*, m.; in the sing. = *a redoubt*; in the plur. = *a camp*. *castrīs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **habēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — **in**, see note on *in*, immediately before *castrīs*, above.

LINE 20. **hīs**, abl. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d person. *hīs* refers to the Aeduans, and is used, because they had just been alluded to. *hīs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*, which here = *among*. — **Divitiacō**, abl. sing. of *Divitiacus, -ī*, m.; abl. absolute with the participle *convocātūs*, to be supplied. Divitiacus was an Aeduan chief, brother of Dumnorix, and a friend of the Roman people. — **et**, cop. conj.; it connects objects of equal importance; *atque* (ad + que), a cop. conj., but adds a notion of greater importance; while *-que* (enclitic) merely appends a notion, and is adjunctive rather than copulative. In our text, *et* couples *Divitiacō* and *Liscō*. — **Liscō**, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Liscus, -ī*, m.; it, too, is in the abl. absolute with *convocātūs*, supplied. Observe that the participle is plur., because it is in the abl. absolute construction with two nouns connected by the conj. *et*. It appears that Liscus was an Aeduan chief magistrate. — **quī**, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to Liscus, but is subject-nom. of *praeērat*. — **summō**, dat. sing. m. of the adj., superl. degree, *summus, -a, -um*; one of the forms of the superl. of the adj. *superus*, comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*; *summō* is an attributive of *magistrātūī*.

LINE 21. **magistrātūī**, dat. sing. of the noun *magistrātus, -ūs*, m.; a contracted form *magistrātūī* is read in some editions. *magistrātūī* is dat. after *prae* in composition in *praeērat*. Consult A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — **praeērat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *praesum, praesse, praefuī* (prae + esse) = lit. *to b: before*; hence *praeesse* = *to be over, to be in command of*. — **quem**, acc. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; its antecedent is *magistrātūī*, and *quem* is the direct obj. of *appellant*; or the clause may be taken as = *sed cum quī summō magistrātūī praeērat, Vergobretum appellant Aedui*. — **Vergobretum**, acc. sing. of *Vergobretus, -ī*, m.; predicate-

22	appellant	Aeduī,	quī	creātur	annuus	et	elected annually,
	address	the Aeduī,	who	is elected	an annual	and	and has the power
23	vītae	necisque	in	suōs	habet	potestātem—	of life and death
	of life	death and,	among	his own	he has	the power—	among his own
24	graviter	eōs	accūsāt,	quod,	cum	neque	people—he cen-
	sharply	them	he rebukes,	because,	when (grain)	neither	sured them se-
							verely for not aid-
							ing him, as grain

acc. For the two accusatives after *appellant*, see A. & G. 239, 1, a; B. 151, (b); G. 340; H. 373. With *Vergobretus* compare the GK. Βεργῶβρετος. The word is Celtic in origin, and said to mean *vir ad iudicium* = a man for trying cases. See Dr. Anthon's note in *loc.* As it evidently denotes a very important man or office, the word is entitled to a capital initial, as the older editions give it.

LINE 22. **appellant**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. of *ap(d)pellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Aeduī*. — *Aeduī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Aeduius*, -a, -um, used substantively; as a noun it is subject-nom. of *appellant*. As to this clan, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *magistrātū*, but is the subject-nom. of *creātur*. — *creātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of the act. verb *creō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; pass. parts: *creor*, *creāri*, *creātus*, 1. — *annuus*, nom. sing. m. of the adj. *annuus*, -a, -um (*annus*, a year); predicate after a copulative verb. Consult A. & G. 176, a, end; B. 128, B; G. 206; H. 360, NOTE 1. Observe that the rigidly literal translation of *quī creātur annuus* is: *who is elected an annual*; and that the adj. here is = the adv. in the English idiom. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the clauses.

LINE 23. *vītae*, gen. sing. of the noun *vīta*, -ae, f. (derived from *vīcta*, perf. participle of *vivō*). *vītae*, as a gen., limits *potestātem*. — *necisque* (*necis* + *que*). *necis*, gen. sing. of the noun *nex*, *necis*, f. (compare GK. νέκος). *necis* is connected by the enclitic conj. -que with *vītae*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *suōs*, acc. plur. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um, used substantively. See A. & G. 190, a; B. 60, REM.; G. 204, NOTE 1, b; H. 441, 1. If one prefer, he may supply *populōs* here. *suōs* as a subst. is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *habet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the verb *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; connected by the conj. *et* with *creātur*, and has the same subject-nom. *quī*. — *potestātem*, acc. sing. of the noun *potestas*, -ātis, f. (*posse*); the direct obj. of *habet*.

LINE 24. *graviter*, adv. (*gravis*); it modifies *accūsāt*. Note that adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives by the addition of -iter to the stem. As *gravis* is an *i*-stem, the adv. is formed thus: *gravi* + *ter*. — *eōs*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to *principibus*, but is the direct obj. of *accūsāt*. — *accūsāt*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *accūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ad + *causa*); hence *accūsāre* = lit. to call one to account, i.e. = ad causam vocāre. *accūsāt* agrees with a subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *quod*, conj.; known to be such, because it is seen to introduce a clause, *quod* . . . *sublevētur*, giving a reason for the statement made in the main proposition. — *cum*, conj., known to be such, because it is seen to introduce a time-clause, *cum* . . . *posset*. — *neque* (*nē* + *que*) = lit. and not; but *neque* . . . *neque* = neither . . . nor.



could neither be bought nor taken from the fields; as the time was critical and the enemy near; es- pecially, as, in- fluenced in great measure, by their	emī <i>to be bought</i>	neque <i>nor</i>	ex <i>from</i>	agris <i>the fields</i>	sūmī 25 <i>to be taken</i>
	posset, <i>was possible,</i>	tam <i>at so</i>	necessāriō <i>necessary</i>	tempore, <i>a time,</i>	tam 26 <i>with so</i>
	propīquis <i>near</i>	hostibus <i>enemies</i>	ab <i>by</i>	eīs <i>them</i>	nōn sublevētur; 27 <i>he not was assisted;</i>
	praesertim <i>especially</i>	cum <i>since</i>	māgnā <i>great</i>	ex <i>from (in)</i>	parte eōrum 28 <i>part by their</i>

LINE 25. *emī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *emō*, -ere, *ēmi*, *ēptum*, 3; complementary inf. depending on *posset*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *neque*, see *neque*, preceding line. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *agris*, abl. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agri*, m.; abl. after the prep. *ex*. — *sūmī*, pres. inf. pass. of *sūmō*, -ere, *sūmsī*, *sūptum*, 3; it is also a complementary inf., depending on *posset*.

LINE 26. *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis + sum); imperf. subjunctive after *cum*, denoting both time and cause. See A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517. *posset* agrees with *frumentum*, to be supplied, as subject-nom. — *tam*, adv. (an accusative-form; compare the correlative form *quam*); it modifies the adj. *necessāriō*. — *necessāriō*, abl. sing. of the adj. *necessārius*, -a, -um (*necesse* [nē + cedere]); *necessāriō* is an attributive of *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. of the noun *tempus*, -oris, n. (GK. *τέμνειν*, to cut); hence *tempus* = a section of duration. *tempore* is the abl. of time at which. Consult A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *tam*, adv.; modifies the adj. *propīquis*.

LINE 27. *propīquis*, abl. plur. of the adj. *propīquus*, -a, -um (*prope*, near); it is a modifier of *hostibus*. — *hostibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f. (originally a stranger; transf. an enemy); abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Another possible construction is the abl. absolute. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants); with *ab* compare GK. *ἀπὸ*, elided *ἀπ'* and *ἀφ*, and English *off*. — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; *eīs* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*, and is the abl. of the agent. A. & O. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *nōn* (nē + oenum or ūnum, apocopated); observe its normal Latin position immediately before the word it modifies. — *sublevētur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive pass. of *sublevo*, -āre, *āvī*, *-ātum*, 1; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar as its subject-nom. *sublevētur* is in the subjunctive mode in the *quod*-clause, because the reason is given on the authority of Caesar the general, rather than on Caesar the historian. Note that Caesar the historian is a little dubious in his statements as to Caesar the general, whose acts military necessity sometimes seemed to control. But consult A. & G. 321; B. 198, (b); G. 541, 663; H. 516, II.

LINE 28. *praesertim*, adv. (prae + serere) = lit. to join before, i.e. the adv. = *foremost, especially*. Observe (a) that *praesertim* is in form like an adverbial acc. statim; it is made by annexing the adverbial ending *tim* to the stem *ser* thus: praeser + tim. Observe (b) that the clause introduced by *praesertim cum* . . . *suscēperit* merely elaborates and gives special emphasis to the preceding *quod* . . . *sublevētur*-clause. — *cum*, conj., causal. — *māgnā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*. *māgnā* modifies the noun *parte*. — *ex*, prep.

29	precibus	adductus	bellum	suscēperit,	prayers he had undertaken the war, even the more bitterly he complained of their desertion.
	prayers	being led	war	he has undertaken,	
30	multō	etiam	gravius,	quod	sit dēstitūtus,
	much	even	more severely,	because	he has been abandoned,
31	queritur.				
	does he complain.				

1	XVII.	Tum	dēmum	Liscus	ōrātiōne	XVII. Then at length Liscus, influenced by
		Then	at length	Liscus	by the oration	

with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before either vowels or consonants). For the position of the monosyllabic prep. between a noun and its modifier, see A. & G. 345, *a*; B. 58. 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 569, II, 1. — *parte*, abl. sing. of the noun *pars*, *partis*, *f.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. Observe that the phrase *māgnā ex parte* = lit. *of or from a great part*, denoting the *source* or *measure* = *in great measure*, according to the English idiom. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *precibus*.

LINE 29. *precibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *prex*, *precis*, *f.*; used in the sing. only in the abl. *precibus* is an abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *adductus*. Consult A. & G. 245, and *b*; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 2; H. 416, NOTE 1. — *adductus*, perf. pass. participle of the verb *adducō*, *-ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*, 3; as a participle it agrees with *Caesar* understood. — *bellum*, acc. sing. of the noun *bellum*, *-ī*, *n.*; it is the direct obj. of *suscēperit*. As to the original form of the word and its derivation, see note on *bellum*, l. 15, Chap. I. — *suscēperit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of *suscipio*, *-ere*, *-cēpti*, *-ceptum*, 3 (sub + *capere*); subjunctive after *cum* causal; see grammatical references to *posset*, l. 26, above.

LINE 30. *multō*, may be taken as adv. modifying *gravius*; or may be taken as abl. of *degree of difference* after the same adv. — *etiam*, adv. (*et* + *iam*), modifies *multō*. — *gravius*, adv., comparative degree of *gravier*, superl. *gravissimē*. Observe that he complains even more severely than he did as indicated by *gravier* *eōs accūsāt*, l. 24, above. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *sit dēstitūtus* (*dēstitūtus* *sil*), 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive pass. of *dēstituō*, *-ere*, *-stitui*, *-stitūtum*, 3 (*dē* + *statuere*); subjunctive, because the reason is given on the authority of Caesar the diplomatist, rather than on that of Caesar the historian. See note on *sublevetur*, l. 27, above, and the grammatical references there given.

LINE 31. *queritur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *quoror*, *-ī*, *questus*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar as the subject-nom. *Ōrātiō recta* of lines 24-31: *Egō graviter vōs accūsō*, *quod*, *cum* *neque emī* *neque ex agrīs sūmī possi*, *tam necessariō tempore*, *tam propinquis hostibus ā vōbīs nōn sublevor*; *praesertim cum māgnā ex parte vestris precibus adductus bellum suscēperim*; *multō etiam gravius*, *quod sum dēstitūtus*, *quoror*.

LINE 1. *Tum*, adv., a correlative particle denoting coincident or sequent time, connected with *cum*, *ubi* and *postquam*; compare GK. *τότε*. — *dēmum*, adv.; enclitically connected with the preceding *tum* to give emphasis to the idea of restriction = *at length*; compare GK. *δηπότε*. — *Liscus*, *-ī*, *m.*, subject-nom. of *prō*

Caesar's speech, disclosed what he had previous- ly concealed. He said there were some whose au- thority with the common people was very great, and who, in a private capacity,	Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, 2 of Caesar led, (that) which before he had concealed, prōpōnit: esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum 3 he sets forth: to be (there are) some, whose auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, 4 influence with the populace most has weight, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī 5 who privately more are able than the very
---	--

*pōnit*; he was the chief magistrate among the *Aedui*. — *ōrātiōne*, abl. sing. of *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.; abl. of cause subjective after *adductus*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. Synonyms: *sermō* = conversation or a conversational speech; whereas *ōrātiō* = the premeditated and prepared speech.

LINE 2. *Caesaris*, gen. sing. of the noun *Caesar*, -aris, m.; as a gen. it limits *ōrātiōne*. — *adductus*, nom. of the perf. pass. participle of the verb *adducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (ad + dūcere); pass.: *addūcor*, -ī, -ductus; as a participle it agrees with the proper noun *Liscus*. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; its antecedent is *id*, to be supplied, which *id* is the direct obj. of *prōpōnit*; but *quod* is the direct obj. of *tacuerat*, which is here used transitively. To refer to an idea, *id quod* or *quae res*, as phrases, are generally used, though *quod* alone sometimes occurs. See A. & G. 200, c, and NOTE; B. 129, REM. 8; G. 614, REM. 2; H. 445, 7. — *anteā*, adv. (ante + ea); it modifies *tacuerat*. — *tacuerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *taceō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Liscus* as its subject-nom.

LINE 3. *prōpōnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *prōpōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positum, 3 (prō + pōnere) = lit. to place or put forward; hence = to display or expose; it agrees with *Liscus* as subject-nom. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*. Observe (a) that *esse* is for *sunt* in the *ōrātiō rēcta*; (b) that the rest of this chapter is in the *ōrātiō obliqua* from the speaker's point of view — *representātiō*; in other words, *prōpōnit* controls the sequence of tenses in the oblique narrative. — *nōnnūllōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. pron. *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um (nōn + nūllus) = some; *nōnnūllī*, plur. = some few; i.e. the two negatives = an indefinite affirmative. Consult A. & G. 150, a; B. 117, 10; G. 449; H. 553, 1. Observe particularly that *esse nōnnūllōs* in indirect discourse = *sunt nōnnūllī* in direct discourse; and that *esse* in indirect, or *sunt* in direct, discourse is a verb of complete predication. — *quōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *nōnnūllōs* as its antecedent, but as a gen. it limits *auctōritās*.

LINE 4. *auctōritās*, -ātis, nom. sing. f.; subj. of the verb *valeat*. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. — *plēbem*, acc. sing. of the noun *plēbs*, *plēbis*, f.; nom. *plēbes* sometimes occurs; *plēbem* is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *plūrimum*, adv., superl. of *multum*; comparative *plūs*; *plūrimum* modifies *valeat*. *plūrimum* might be taken as an adj., a cognate acc.; see A. & G. 238, b; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, and 2; H. 371, II, (2). — *valeat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *valēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; subjunctive, because it is in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, 1, (b); G. 655; H. 524.

LINE 5. *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *nōnnūllōs* as its antecedent, but is the subj. of *possint*. — *prīvātīm*, adv. (from the

6 magistrātūs.	Hōs	sēditiosā	atque	improbā	had more influence than the magistrates themselves; that these men by their seditious and wicked talk were keeping the populace from
magistrates.	These	by	mutinous	and	wicked
7 ōrātiōne	multitūdinem	dēterrēre	nē		
speech	the multitude	to deter (deter)	that not		
8 frūmentum	cōnferant,	quod	dēbeant:		
the grain	they may collect,	which	they ought:		

stem *privā* + the acc. adverbial ending *tim*); this stem is seen in *privātus*, a participle of the verb *privāre*, and the root *priv* is seen in the adj. *privus* = *single, each*. — *plūs*, adv., comparative degree of *multum*; superl. *plūrimum*. But see note on *plūrimum*, l. 4, above. The adverbs *privātum* and *plūs* modify the intrans. or neuter verb *possint*. — *possint*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum, posse, potui* (potis, able + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is in the subjunctive, because it is in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*; but more accurately, because it is in a relative clause after an indefinite or general expression, which characterizes the antecedent. See A. & G. 320, a; B. 234, 1; G. 631, 2; H. 503, 1. — *quam*, conj., connects the clauses. — *ipsi*, nom. plur. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi*, same form as nom. plur.; the distinction can only be determined by considering the context; *ipsi* here adds emphasis to *magistrātūs*; together these words = *the magistrates themselves or the very magistrates*.

LINE 6. *magistrātūs*, nom. plur. of the noun *magistrātus*, -ūs, m.; it is the subject-nom. of *possint* understood. For description of the Roman magistrates, see note on *magistrātūs*, l. 15, Chap. IV. The Gallic magistrates appear to have been a body of officers who were elected annually. — *Hōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*, used substantively, referring to the private parties. *hōs* is subject-acc. of *dēterrēre*. — *sēditiosā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *sēditiosus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *ōrātiōne*. Observe that adjectives in -ōsus denote *fulness*. — *atque* (ad + que), conj.; usually adds a more important notion. — *improbā*, abl. of the adj. *improbus, -a, -um* (in, negative + probus) = *not good*, in a moral point of view; it, too, is an attributive of *ōrātiōne*. *Ōrātiō recta* of lines 3-6: *sunt nōnnulli, quōrum auctoritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātum plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs*.

LINE 7. *ōrātiōne*, abl. sing. of *ōrātiō, -ōnis*, f. (*ōrāre*, to speak); abl. of means. For synonyms, see note on *ōrātiōne*, l. 1, above. — *multitūdinem*, acc. sing. of the noun *multitūdō, -dinis*, f. (*multus*); it is direct obj. of *dēterrēre*. — *dēterrēre*, pres. inf. act. of *dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*, 2. Note that *hōs . . . dēterrēre* is the main clause of indirect discourse = *hī . . . dēterrent*, of direct discourse; compare *esse nōnnullōs*, l. 3, above, and note also that these clauses depend on *prōfōnit*, l. 3, above, or its equivalent *dicit*. — *nē*, adv. and conj., archaic *nēi* for *nī*, primitive negative; compare GK. *μή*; here *nē* is telic after a verb denoting to hinder.

LINE 8. *frūmentum*, acc. sing. of the noun *frūmentum, -i*, n. (*frūgī* + *mentum*); it is the direct obj. of *cōnferant*. — *cōnferant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the verb *cōnferō, -ferre, cōtuli, colligēdum*; it agrees with a pron. as its subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to *multitūdinem*; it is subjunctive of negative purpose after *nē*. Consult A. & G. 331, e, 2, (1); B. 200, REM. 5; G. 548, NOTE I; H. 505, II, 1. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *frūmentum* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *cōnferre*, to be supplied from *cōnferant*; and which is an inf. complementary to *dēbeant*. — *dēbeant*, 3d pers. plur. of the verb *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*, 2; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to

bringing in the grain, as they ought; that it were better, if they could no longer hold the supremacy of Gaul, to submit to the sway of the Gauls than to that of the Romans; and	praestāre, it to be (it is) preferable,	sī iam principātum Galliae 9 if now the leadership of Gaul
	obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam 10 to maintain not they are able, of the Gauls than	
	Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque 11 of the Romans the commands to endure; nor (themselves)	
	dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint 12 to doubt that, if to the Helvetii are superior	

*multitudinem*; it is in the subjunctive, because it is a dependent clause in *orātiō obliqua*. For etymology, see note on *dēbuerint*, l. 11, Chap. XI. There is a variety of readings and punctuation at this point, in our text. Most modern editions construct the text thus after *cōferant*: *quod praestāre debeant: sī iam . . . praeferre, neque dubitāre*. Some editions have a bracketed [*debeant*] after *dubitāre*. The lection of Kraner, which we have given, is to be preferred.

LINE 9. *praestāre*, pres. inf. of *praestō*, -āre, -stīti, -stātum and stitum, 1; second stem irr.; *praestāre* is used impersonally = *melius esse*, it is better; strictly speaking, the inf. *perferre*, l. 11, below, with its modifiers is the subj. of *praestāre*. It will be noted that the inf. construction is the main clause of indirect discourse; that in direct discourse *praestāre* becomes *praestat*. — *sī*, conditional particle; original form *seī*, sibilated from GK. *el*. — *iam*, adv. = *now*, of any event, past, present or future; whereas *nunc* emphasizes the present. *iam* followed by *nōn*, in the text = *no longer*. — *principātum*, acc. sing. of the noun *principātus*, -ūs, m. (primus + capere); direct obj. of *obtinēre*. For synonyms, see note on *imperium*, l. 27, Chap. III. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; it limits *principātum*.

LINE 10. *obtinēre*, pres. inf. of *obtinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, 2 (ob + tenēre); complementary inf., depending on *possint*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I. 2. — *nōn*, negative adv. (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopated); note its normal position; immediately before the word it modifies. — *possint*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis + sum); it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to those included among the *nōnnūllōs*, l. 3, above; subjunctive in the condition after the conj. *sī*; the conclusion is contained in *praestāre*. — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. of *Gallī*, -ōrum, m., limiting as a gen. *imperia*. — *quam*, conj., connecting the phrases. *magis* or *potius* is to be supplied before *quam*.

LINE 11. *Rōmānōrum*, gen. plur. of the noun *Rōmānī*, -ōrum, m.; limits *ea*, i.e. *imperia* understood. — *imperia*, acc. plur. of the noun *imperium*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *perferre*. For synonyms, see note on *imperium*, l. 27, Chap. III. — *perferre*, pres. inf. act. of *perferō*, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (per + ferre) = lit. to bear through; hence = to submit; not to be confounded with *praeferre*. *perferre* is here used as a noun, and is the subject-acc. of *praestāre*, l. 9, above. — *neque*, conjunctive adv. (*nē* + *que*) = lit. and not; as a conj. it connects the sentences, as an adv. it modifies *dubitāre*.

LINE 12. *dubitāre*, pres. inf. of *dubitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (primitive form *dubbō* [duo, two]); hence = to vacillate between two opinions, to be dubious. With *dubitāre* supply the pron. *sē*, acc. plur., as subject-acc.; the reference is to the Gallic patriots. — *quīn* (qui + *nē*) = lit. by which not; after negative clause of doubt or hindrance = *ut*, that or but that. — *sī*, see note on this particle, l. 9, above. — *Helvētiōs*,

13	Rōmānī,	ūnā	cum	reliquā	Galliā	that they did not doubt that, if the Romans should conquer the Helvetii, they would wrest freedom from the Aedui along with the rest of Gaul. By
	the Romans,	together	with	remaining	Gaul	
14	Aeduīs	libertātem	sint	ēreptūrī.	Ab	
	from the Aedui	freedom		they will take.	By	
15	eīsdem	nostra	cōnsilia	quaeque	in	
	the same	our	plans,	what (things) and,	in	

acc. plur. of *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, m.; direct obj. of *superāverint*. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *superāverint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*super*); hence *superāre* = lit. *to be over*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Rōmānī*; subjunctive in the condition after *sī*. Consult A. & G. 304, a, NOTE; B. 204, 2; G. 590, and 594, II; H. 507, II.

LINE 13. *Rōmānī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used substantively; it is the subject-nom. of *superāverint*. — *ūnā*, adv. (*ūnus*) = lit. *at one and the same time*; hence, together with *cum* = *along with*. See note on *ūnā*, l. 17, Chap. V. Note that the adverbial clause *cum reliquā Galliā* modifies *sint ēreptūrī*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *reliquā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *Galliā*. — *Galliā*, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Gallia*, -ae, f.; abl. of accompaniment after the prep. *cum*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392; H. 419, I. For synonyms, see note on *reliquā*, l. 7, Chap. V.

LINE 14. *Aeduīs*, dat. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used substantively; dat. instead of the abl. after *sint ēreptūrī*, a verb of separation. Consult A. & G. 229; B. 143, REM. 3; G. 345, and REM. 1; H. 386, 2. As to the Aeduan clan, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *libertātem*, acc. sing. of the noun *libertās*, -ātis, f. (derived from adj. *liber*, free). *libertātem* is the direct obj. of the verb *sint ēreptūrī* (*ēreptūrī sint*). — *sint ēreptūrī*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive, first periphrastic conjugation of *ēripīō*, -ere, -uī, -reptum, 3 (ē + rapere) = lit. *to snatch away*; subjunctive, because a result-clause after *quīn*, following a clause of doubt. Consult A. & G. 319, d; B. 201, REM. 2; G. 555, 2; H. 505, 1, 1. — *Ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ab* before vowels and consonants, *a* before consonants only). *Orātiō recta* of lines 6-14: *Hī sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudine dēterrent nē frumentum cōferant, quod dēbent: praestat, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitant quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī*.

LINE 15. *eīsdem*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, gen. *ēiusdem*, dat. *eīdem*; abl. of the agent. See A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. The allusion is to the *nōnnūllōs*. Liscus is reporting the sentiments of the Gallic patriots. — *nostra*, acc. plur. of the poss. adjective pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; *nostra* is an attributive of the noun *cōnsilia*. — *cōnsilia*, acc. plur. of the noun *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; *cōnsilia* is subject-acc. of the verb *ēnūntiārī*. Observe that, as Liscus is a friend of the Romans, he regards their plans as his; i.e. Liscus is speaking of the Roman party among the Aeduans. — *quaeque* (*quae* + enclitic *que*). *quae* is nom. plur. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *ea* understood as its antecedent, which is an acc. plur., and as such to be conceived as subject-acc. of *ēnūntiārī* understood; but *quae* is the subject-nom. plur. of the finite verb *gerantur*. Observe how closely the main clause here in the *ōrātiō obliqua* is connected with the relative clause by the enclitic conj. -*que*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.

these persons, said he, our plans and all camp ac- tivities were re- ported to the en- emy; nor could he restrain them. Moreover, as to the fact of his	castrīs the camp	gerantur, are done,	hostibus to the enemy	ēnūntiārī; 16 to be (are) reported;
	hōs these (men)	ā sē by himself	coercērī to be coerced	nōn posse. 17 not to be (are) able.
	Quīn Aye	etiam, indeed,	quod as to the fact that	necessariō by necessity
				rem 18 the matter,

LINE 16. *castrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Note that *castrum* in the sing. = *fort* or *redoubt*; in the plur., *castra* = *camp*. — *gerantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive pass. of the verb *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quae*; it is in the subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in the *oratio obliqua*. — *hostibus*, dat. plur. of *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *ēnūntiārī*. See A. & G. 225, 3, e; B. 140; G. 344; H. 384, I. — *ēnūntiārī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, I; pass. parts: *ēnūntior*, -āvi, -ātus, I. Observe that *nostra cōsilia hostibus ēnūntiārī* is a main clause of indirect discourse, depending on *prōpōnit*, or its equivalent *dicit*, l. 3, above; and that *ēnūntiārī* in direct discourse becomes *ēnūntiātur*.

LINE 17. *hōs*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to *hostibus*, a word just mentioned, and is subject-acc. of *posse*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *sē*, abl. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, same form in both numbers; *sē* refers to *Liscus*, and is in the abl. after the prep. *ab*; abl. of the agent. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *coercērī*, pres. inf. pass. of *coerceō*, -ere, -cui, -citum, 2 (con + arcere); hence = lit. *to enclose completely*, i.e. *to restrain*; *coercērī* is a complementary inf., depending on *posse*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nōn*, negative adv. (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*); it modifies *posse*. — *posse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis, adj. = *able* + *sum*). *posse* agrees with its subject-acc. *hōs*.

LINE 18. *Quīn* (*quī* + *nē*) = lit. *that not*; but frequently, especially with *etiam*, used as a particle of corroboration. When thus used, the phrase *quīn etiam* = *yes indeed* or *nay indeed*. *quīn* in such use is not a conj., but an adv. — *etiam* (*et* + *iam*), conjunctive adv.; usually adds a notion to what has been already expressed. — *quod*, an adverbial acc. of the pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, and = *as to the fact that*; with the subjunctive *ēnūntiārī*, because in indirect discourse. Consult A. & G. 333, a, and 341, d, and REM.; B. 123, REM. 21, and 198, REM. 1; G. 525, 2 and 3; H. 516, and especially the NOTE. — *necessariō*, adv.; really abl. n. of the adj. *necessarius*, -a, -um, used adverbially. — *rem*, acc. sing. of the noun *rēs*, *rē*, f.; the direct obj. of *ēnūntiārī*. The matter referred to is the opposition of the Gallic patriots among the Aeduanus to the Romans, as indicated by their inertia in regard to Caesar's food supply. Some texts read (a) *necessariā rē*; others (b) *necessariam rem*. The literal translation of the *quod*-clause, according to the reading of our text, is: *as to the fact that, having been compelled, he has necessarily reported the matter to Caesar*. If we read (a), above, the literal translation of the *quod*-clause is: *as to the fact that, by a necessary matter constrained, he has reported to Caesar*; supply *rem*, as direct obj., since *ēnūntiārī* is transitive. If we read (b), above, the literal translation of the *quod*-clause is: *as to the fact that, having been compelled, he has reported a necessary matter*. On these different lections we make these criticisms: (a) *necessariā rē coactus ēnūntiārī* can only mean: *constrained by a necessary matter*, i.e. Caesar's lack of food supply,

19	coāctus	Caesarī	ēnūntiārit,	intellegere	having on compulsion disclosed the matter to Caesar he has reported, to know
	having been compelled,	to Caesar	he has reported,	to know	
20	sēsē,	quantō	id	cum	periculō
	himself (he knows),	how great,	that,	with,	peril
21	fēcerit,	et	ob	eam	causam,
	he has done,	and	for	that	reason,
22	potuerit,			tacuisse.	as long as
	he may have been able,	(himself)	to have been silent.		for this reason he had kept silent as long as he could.

he has reported. As *ēnūntiārit* is transitive, an obj. — *rem* — must be supplied; but it is not very probable that Caesar would, even in his haste, use in the same clause different cases of *rēs* in different significations. Besides, *rem* representing the opposition of the Gallic patriots, could be no necessary matter. (b) *necessāriam rem* must be the direct obj. of *ēnūntiārit*, as the accusative construction is not probable after *coāctus*, and not possible, except as an acc. of specification. But he has reported a necessary matter seems to be irrelevant; for Caesar, of course, knew his own lack and needed no telling, and the Gallic patriots' acts were rather the impulse of their wills than of necessity. From the nature of the case, therefore, we are constrained necessarily to keep to the common lection here: *necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarē ēnūntiārit* — the reading of the best texts for centuries. Any idea of tautology arising from this reading vanishes the moment we reflect that *coāctus* = compulsion by an objective force; whereas *necessāriō ēnūntiārit* = a revelation whose impulse is subjective necessity, though it may have been occasioned by objective constraint.

LINE 19. *coāctus*, nom. sing. of the perf. pass. participle *coāctus*, -a, -um of *cōgō*, -ere, *cōgē*, *coāctum*, 3 (con + agere); hence = lit. to bring together. *coāctus* as a participle agrees with *Liscus* understood. — *Caesarī*, dat. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *ēnūntiārit*. — *ēnūnt(c)iārit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *ēnūnt(c)iō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, as subject-nom., referring to *Liscus*; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Observe that *ēnūntiārit* is contracted for *ēnūntiāverit*. For syncopation and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *intellegere*, pres. inf. act. of *intellegō*, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3 (inter + legere); often written *intelligō*.

LINE 20. *sēsē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*, reduplicated *sēsē*; subject-acc. of *intellegere*. Observe that *intellegere sēsē* is the main clause of the indirect discourse, and stands for *intellegō egō* in direct discourse. — *quantō*, abl. of the adj. *quantus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *periculō*. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; direct obj. of *fēcerit*; the allusion is to his report to Caesar. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *periculō*, abl. sing. of the noun *periculum*, -ī, n.; abl. of manner after the prep. *cum*. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Observe that the prep. is not absolutely necessary here, as the noun has a modifier.

LINE 21. *fēcerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with a personal pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Liscus* as the subject-nom.; it is subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *intellegere* and *tacuisse*. — *ob*, prep. with the acc. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *causam*. — *causam*, acc. sing. of the noun *causa*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ob*. — *quam-diū*, adv. (*quam* + *diū*); often written as two words: *quam diū*; as an adv. it modifies *potuerit*.

LINE 22. *potuerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis, able + sum); it agrees with *Liscus*, to be supplied, as its subject-nom.; it is in the



XVIII. Caesar from this speech of Liscus perceived that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was meant; but, as he was unwilling to have these mat-

XVIII.	Caesar	hāc	ōrātiōne	Liscī
	Caesar,	by this	oration	of Liscus
Dumnorigem,	Divitiaci	frātre	dēsīgnārī	
Dumnorix,	Divitiacus's	brother,	to be pointed at,	
sentiēbat;	sed,	quod	plūribus	praesentibus
perceived;	but,	because	very many	being present,

subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in indirect discourse. — *tacuisse*, perf. inf. of *taceō*, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *-itum*, 2; connected by the conj. *et* with *intelligere*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. its subject-acc. is *sēsē*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 14–22: Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris geruntur, hostibus enūntiantur; hī ā mē coērcērī nōn possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus tibi (Caesari) enūntiāvi, intelligēgō egō, quantō id cum periculō fēcī, et ob hanc causam, quam-diū potui, tacui.

LINE 1. *Caesar*, *-aris*, m., subject-nom. of *sentiēbat*. — *hāc*, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it is an attributive of *ōrātiōne*; its use indicates that the reference is to the speech just delivered. A. & G. 102, a; B. 84, 1; G. 305, and 3; H. 450, 1. — *ōrātiōne*, abl. sing. of *ōrātiō*, *-ōnis*, f.; abl. of means after *sentiēbat*. Synonyms: *ōrātiō* = the finished speech — premeditated and prepared; *sermō* = the conversationally delivered speech — a species of extemporaneous harangue. — *Liscī*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Liscus*, *-ī*, m.; as a gen. it limits *ōrātiōne*. *Liscus* was a chief magistrate of the Aedui.

LINE 2. *Dumnorigem*, acc. sing. of *Dumnorix*, *-igis*, m.; subject-acc. of *dēsīgnārī*. *Dumnorix* was a leader of the Gallic patriotic party among the Aedui, while his brother *Divitiacus* remained loyal to the Romans. — *Divitiaci*, gen. sing. of the noun *Divitiacus*, *-ī*, m.; as a gen. it limits *frātre*. — *frātre*, acc. sing. of *frāter*, *-ris*, m. (kindred with Gk. *φράτρα*, which = brotherhood); an appositive. — *dēsīgnārī*, pres. inf. pass. of the act. *dēsīgnō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1; pass. parts: *dēsīgnor*, *-ārī*, *-ātus*, 1 (*dē* + *signāre* [*signum*]); hence = lit. to mark out. The subject-acc. of *dēsīgnārī* is *Dumnorigem*, and the acc. and inf. is an object-clause of *sentiēbat*.

LINE 3. *sentiēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *sentiō*, *-īre*, *sēsī*, *sēsūm*, 4; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. Synonyms: *sentiō* = to know through the feelings; *intellege* = to know through reflection; and *cōgnōscere* = to know through the senses, or by tradition. — *sed*, conj., the strongest of all the adversative particles; *autem* and *at* are much weaker; but *vērūm* = *sed*, nearly. — *quod*, conj. = *because*; introduces a statement of fact. Consult A. & G. 321; B. 198; G. 540; H. 516, 1. — *plūribus*, abl. plur. m. of the comparative adj. *plūs*, *plūris*; declined in the sing. only in the neuter, with the dat. wanting; the plur. declined regularly as an *i*-stem: *plurēs*, *plūra*, gen. *plūrium*, etc. *plūribus*, in our text, is used substantively, and as a subst. it is in the abl. absolute with the adj. *praesentibus*. For declension, see A. & G. 86; B. 72, 7; G. 89, REMS. 2, 3; H. 165, NOTE 1. — *praesentibus*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *praesēns*, *-entis* (participle of *praesum*, *-esse*, *-fui*); in the abl. sing., of persons usually *praesente*; of things, *praesenti*. *praesentibus* is in the abl. absolute construction with *plūribus* used as a noun; the construction as such denotes the time when. Consult A. & G. 255, a; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4.

4	eās	rēs	iactārī	nōlēbat,	celeriter	ters discussed in the presence of a crowd, he speedily dismissed the council, yet detained Liscus. He inquired of him alone about the matters that he had mentioned at the conven-
	these things	to be talked about	he was unwilling,	quickly		
5	concilium	dīmittit,	Liscum	retinet.		
	the council	he breaks up,	Liscus	he keeps back.		
6	Quaerit	ex	sōlō	ea,		
	He (Caesar) inquires from (him) alone	as to those (things)				
7	quae	in	conventū	dixerat.	Dicit	
	which	in	the assembly	he had said.	He (Liscus) speaks	

LINE 4. *eās*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; *eās* is an attributive of the noun *rēs*. — *rēs*, acc. plur. of *rēs, rei*, f.; stem *rē*, shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.; subject-acc. of the inf. *iactārī*. The things alluded to are those that Liscus had disclosed. — *iactārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1 (freq. of *iacere*, to hurl). Observe that frequentative verbs are usually of the first conjugation, whatever may be the conjugation of the verbs from which they are derived. — *nōlēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the irr. verb *nōlō, nolle, nolui* (*nē + volō*); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. Observe, in the formation of the compound, that *v* is suppressed, and then the *ē* and *o* are contracted in *ō*. Thus: *nē + volō* become *nē 'olō = nōlō*. — *celeriter*, adv. (adj. *celer*, swift); adv. formed by adding *-ter* to the adj. stem *celeri*. *celeriter* modifies the verb *dīmittit*.

LINE 5. *concilium*, acc. sing. of the noun *concilium, -i*, n.; the direct obj. of *dīmittit*. This word is not to be confounded with *cōnsilium*, counsel; though it frequently is thus confounded by Latin writers in all eras. *concilium*, by careful writers = an assembly for consultation — a council; whereas *cōnsilium* = the counsel that is taken in such assembly. But, as already intimated, the significations are often confused. — *dīmittit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missum*, 3 (*dis + mittere, to send apart*); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *Liscum*, acc. sing. of *Liscus, -i*, m.; direct obj. of *retinet*. Note the asyndeton here between the clauses, and consult A. & G. 346, c; B. 310, 1, (a); G. 483, NOTE; H. 636, I, 1. — *retinet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *retineō, -ere, -tenui, -tentum*, 2 (*re + tenere, to hold back*); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar.

LINE 6. *Quaerit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *quaerō, -ere, -steti (-it), -itum*, 3 (irr. in 2d stem); it also agrees with *Caesar* understood. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *sōlō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *sōlus, -a, -um*, gen. *sōlius*, dat. *sōli*. *sōlō* is an attributive of *eā*, to be supplied, which refers to *Liscum*. Note that *quaerō* takes the abl. of the person with the prepositions *ab, de* or *ex*, instead of the acc. of the person; it takes besides the acc. of the thing. Consult A. & G. 239, c, NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, REM. 1; H. 374, 2, NOTE 4, and p. 193, FOOTNOTE 1. — *ea*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively — the acc. of the thing after *quaerit*.

LINE 7. *quae*, acc. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *ea* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *dixerat*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *conventū*, abl. sing. of *conventus, -ūs*, m. (*con + venire, to come together*); it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *dixerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *dico, -ere, dixi, dictum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Liscus*. — *Dicit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *dico, 3*; its subject-nom. is *Liscus*, to be supplied.

tion. Liscus now spoke with a freer and bolder spirit. Caesar inquired privately of others about the same matters, and found the truth to be, that it was Dumnorix	liberius <i>more freely</i>	atque <i>and</i>	audācius. <i>more boldly.</i>	Eadem <i>About the same (things)</i>	8
	sēcrētō <i>privately</i>	ab <i>from</i>	aliis <i>others</i>	quaerit; <i>he (Caesar) inquires;</i>	reperit <i>he finds</i>
	esse <i>to be</i>	vēra: <i>true:</i>	Ipsū <i>Himself</i>	esse <i>to be (was)</i>	Dumnorigem, <i>Dumnorix,</i>

LINE 8. *liberius*, adv., comparative degree of positive *liberē* (*liber*, free); the adv. modifies *dicit*, and denotes *rather freely*. For the omission of the standard of comparison, see A. & G. 93, a; B. 163, REM. 6; G. 297, 2; H. 444, 1. — *atque* (ad + *que*), conj. = *and also*. See note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I. — *audācius*, adv., comparative degree of *audācter* (*audax*, bold); superl. *audācissimē*; connected by the conj. *atque* with *liberius*, and modifies *dicit*. — *Eadem*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; used substantively, or supply the English word *things*; direct obj. of *quaerit*.

LINE 9. *sēcrētō*, adv., derived from the participle *sēcrētus*, -a, -um of the verb *secernō*, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 3 (se, inseparable prep. + *cernere*), hence *secernere* = lit. *to put apart, separate*, the participle *sēcrētus* = *separated* — that which is out of the way, retired, secret. For the formation of adverbs from the abl. neuter of adjectives, see A. & G. 148, e; B. 117, 6; G. 91, 2, (c); H. 304, II, 2. *sēcrētō* modifies *quaerit*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ab* before vowels or consonants, *a* before consonants only). — *aliīs*, abl. plur. of the adj. pron. *alius*, -a, -ud; gen. *alius*; dat. *aliī*; *aliīs* is in the abl. after *ab*. Observe that *quaerō* takes the abl. of the person with *ab*, *dē* or *ex*; and also the acc. of the thing. See grammatical references on *sōlō*, l. 6, above. For synonyms, see note on *reliqua*, l. 7, Chap. V. — *quaerit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind.; for parts, see note on *quaerit*, l. 6, above; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *reperit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *reperiō*, -īre, *rep(p)erī*, *reperitum*, 4 (re, intensive + *parere*, to acquire); hence *reperire* = *to acquire again*; i.e. = *to find*.

LINE 10. *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, perf. *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it is used impersonally, or, more accurately, the following speech in *orātiō obliqua* is its subject-acc. We may, however, supply *illa* — referring to what follows — as the subject-acc. — *vēra*, acc. n. plur. of the adj. *verus*, -a, -um; predicate after *esse*. The reader will observe that from this point to, and inclusive of, the word *dēspērāre*, l. 43, below, the discourse is indirect, depending on *reperit* (or its representative *dicit* understood). Let the reader recall that in the *orātiō obliqua* the main clause of a declarative sentence is put in the inf. with subject-acc.; that the tense of the verb of saying introducing this discourse determines the tense of this inf.; and that the tenses of the subjunctive are also thus determined, i.e. if the verb of saying is a primary tense, the sequence is primary; if secondary, the sequence is secondary. — *Ipsū*, acc. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum. *ipsum* as an adj. pron. modifies *Dumnorigem*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*; it is for *est* in direct discourse. — *Dumnorigem*, acc. sing. of *Dumnorix*, -igis, m.; it is subject-acc. of *esse*, of which *cupidum*, l. 12, below, is the predicate-adj.

11	summā	audāciā,	māgnā	apud	plēbem	himself, a man of consummate audacity, and of great influence
		of the greatest	boldness,	of great	among the common people	
12	propter	liberalitātem	grātiā,	cupidum	rērum	because of (his) liberality, favor, desirous of things
13	novārum.	Complūrēs	annōs	portōria		liberality, who was eager for revolution. / For many years he had farmed the
	new.	Very many	years,	the customs		
14	reliquaque	omnia	Aeduōrum	vēctīgālia		
	remaining and,	all	the Aedui's	revenues,		

LINE 11. **summā**, abl. sing. f. of *summus*, -a, -um, superl. degree of the adj. *superus*, *superior*, *supremus* or *summus*; *summā* is an attributive of the noun *audāciā*. — **audāciā**, abl. sing. of *audācia*, -ae, f.; abl. of quality with the adj. *summā*. Consult A. & G. 251, and a; B. 169; G. 400; H. 419, II. The phrase *summā audāciā* is, in fact, an adjective-modifier of *virum*, to be supplied, which latter is in apposition with *Dumnorigem*. — **māgnā**, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus*; *māgnā* is an attributive of *grātiā*, l. 12, below. — **apud**, prep. with the acc. — **plēbem**, acc. sing. of the noun *plēbs*, *plēbis*, f.; rare nom. *plēbes*, -is; *plēbem* is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. For synonyms, consult note on *populi*, l. 17, Chap. III.

LINE 12. **propter** (*prope*, near), prep. with the acc. — **liberalitātem**, acc. sing. of the noun *liberalitās*, -itātis, f. (*liber*, free); it is the obj. of the prep. *propter*, immediately above. — **grātiā**, abl. sing. of the noun *grātia*, -ae, f.; it is an abl. of quality with the adj. *māgnā*. Consult A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; H. 419, II. — **cupidum**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *cupidus*, -a, -um, predicate-adj. after *esse*, l. 10, above. With *cupidus* compare *cupere*, to desire, and the English noun-derivative *cupid*. — **rērum**, gen. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f. (stem *rē*, shortened in gen. and dat.); objective gen. after the adj. *cupidum*. Consult A. & G. 218, a; B. 135, (a); G. 374; H. 399, I, 1.

LINE 13. **novārum**, gen. plur. f. of the adj. *novus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of the noun *rērum*. — **Complūrēs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *complūrēs*, -a, rarely -ia, gen. -ium (con, *intensive*, whose equivalent in this compound = English *very* + *plūrēs*, many); *complūrēs* is an attributive of *annōs*. Observe that this adj. is used only in the plural, and that in some editions the form *complūris* instead of *complūrēs* occurs. — **annōs**, acc. plur. of the noun *annus*, -ī, m.; acc. of extent of time. See A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379. — **portōria**, acc. plur. of noun *portōrium*, -ī, n. (compare *portāre*, to carry); hence the noun *portōrium* = lit. the condition or terms of carrying, i.e. *tax*, *toll*, or, as we say, *tariff*, for the *portōria* were frontier-duties. *portōria* is the direct obj. of *habēre*.

LINE 14. **reliquaque** (*reliqua* + *que*). *reliqua* is acc. n. plur. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *vēctīgālia*. For synonyms, see note on *reliqua*, l. 7, Chap. V. Observe that the enclitic -que connects *portōria* with *vēctīgālia*. — **omnia**, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an *i*-stem. *omnia*, too, modifies *vēctīgālia*, or rather the phrase *reliqua vēctīgālia*. — **Aeduōrum**, gen. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used substantively; as a noun-gen. it limits *vēctīgālia*. — **vēctīgālia**, acc. plur. of the noun *vēctīgālis*, -ālis, n. (*vehere*, to bring); hence *vēctīgālia* = *that which is brought in*; connected by the conj. -que with *portōria*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. direct obj. of *habēre*. The *vēctīgālia* were taxes and rents put on every species of property; and both the *portōria* and *vēctīgālia* were farmed out for collection to the *publicāni*.

imports and all other taxes of the Aedui at a low rate, because when he bid, no one dared to bid in opposition. By these means	parvō at small	pretiō cost	redēmta having been bought up	habēre, 15 to have (he had),
	propterea for this reason	quod because	illō he	licente bidding,
			contrā 16 against (him)	
	licēri to bid	audeat dares	nēmō. no one.	Hīs By these
			rēbus things	et suam 17 both his

LINE 15. *parvō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *parvus*, -a, -um; comparative *minor*, superl. *minimus*. *parvō* is an attributive of *pretiō*. — *pretiō*, abl. sing. of the noun *pretium*, -i, n.; abl. of price, according to the general rule, when it is expressed by a noun. Consult A. & G. 252; B. 167, 4; G. 404; H. 422. — *redēmta*, acc. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle of *redimō*, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum, 3; it agrees with *portōria* and *vēctigālia*. — *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; supply *sē* as subject-acc., referring to Dumnorix. The words, therefore, *redēmta sē habēre* = lit. *having been purchased, he had*. The reader will observe that this form of expression is a periphrase = *redēmisse*, nearly. See A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, 1, NOTE. Compare note on *coactum habēbat*, l. 5, Chap. XV.

LINE 16. *propterea*, adv. (propter + ea); herald of the *quod*-clause immediately following. — *quod*, conj. See note on this particle, l. 9, Chap. I. — *illō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *ille*, -la, -lud; gen. *illius*, dat. *illi*. *illō* points back to *Dumnorigem*, of whom the narrative is a description, but is in the abl. absolute construction with *licente*; *illō* is more emphatic than *eō*, and also indicates that Dumnorix is somewhat remote from the speaker, at least, that he is not present. — *licente*, abl. sing. of the pres. participle *licēs*, -entis of the deponent verb *liceor*, -ēri, *licitus*, 2; observe that deponent verbs have the participles in both voices. *licente* is abl. absolute with *illō*, denoting *time when*. See A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2, 3). — *contrā*, adv. (from an obsolete adjective *conterus* [con], in the abl. f.); might be taken as a prep., if *eum* were supplied.

LINE 17. *licēri*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *liceor* (for principal parts, see note on *licente*, preceding line); complementary inf., depending on *audeat*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *audeat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus*, neuter pass. or semi-deponent verb; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix; it is in the subjunctive mode, because in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *nēmō* (*nē* + *homō*), noun, m. and f., acc. *nēmīnem*; the gen. *nēmīnis*, and the abl. *nēmīne* are not used, except, occasionally, *nēmīne* with the abl. perf. participle; instead of *nēmīnis*, *nullius*, and instead of *nēmīne*, *nullō* are used. Observe the emphatic position of *nēmō*; its normal and unemphatic position would be immediately after *quod*. — *Hīs*, abl. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it is the attributive of the noun *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; abl. of means. A. & G. 248, c, I; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *et*, cop. conj.; *et . . . et* = *both . . . and*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *rem*, but refers to Dumnorix. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 10–17: *Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā, cupidus rerum novarum. Complures annos portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vēctigālia parvō pretiō redēmta habet, propterea quod illō licente contrā licēri audei nēmō*.

18 rem	familiārem	auxisse	et	he had increased
property	personal	to have (he has) increased	and	both his own
19 facultātēs	ad	largiendum	māgnās	and had acquired
resources	for	bribery	great,	large resources
20 comparāsse ;		māgnū	numerus	for bribery. He
to have (he has) acquired ;		a large	number	always supported
21 equitātūs	suō	sūptū	semper	and kept near his
of cavalry	at his own	expense	always	person a large
22 alere	et	circum	sē	number of caval-
to maintain (he maintains)	and	around	himself	ry at his own
				expense; and at
				home not to say,
				but even among

LINE 18. *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; it is the direct obj. of *auxisse*. — *familiārem*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *familiāris*, -e, abl. sing. regularly *familiārī*; *familiārem* modifies *rem*: The phrase *suam rem familiārem* = *his private property*. — *auxisse*, perf. inf. act. of *augeō*, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*, 2; supply the pron. *sē* as subject-acc., referring to *Dumnorix*. With *augeō* compare GK. root *avγ*, as seen in *αἰῶν* and *αὐτάρω*. — *et*, conj., connects *auxisse* and *comparāsse*.

LINE 19. *facultātēs*, acc. plur. of *facultās*, -ātis, f. (*facilis*, archaic form of the adv. *facul*); hence the noun = lit. the capacity of doing anything *easily*; and hence, further, as faculty used brings increase, *facultās*, transf. = *cōpia* or *plenty*, and the plur. *facultātēs* = *riches*. *facultātēs* is the direct obj. of *comparāsse*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *largiendum*, gerund of the verb *largior*, -giri, -gītis, 4, deponent (adj. *largus*, large); acc. of the gerund with *ad*, denoting purpose. See A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III. The phrase *ad largiendum* accordingly = *for giving largesses*. — *māgnās*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative degree *māior*; superl. *māximus*. *māgnās* is the attributive of *facultātēs*.

LINE 20. *comparāsse*, perf. inf. act. of the verb *comparō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; for the uncontracted *comparāvīsse*. For the rules as to syncope and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. *comparāsse* is connected by the conj. *et* with *auxisse*, and has the same subject-acc., namely *sē* understood. The reader remembers that here is another main clause of the indirect discourse, depending on *reperit*, l. 9, above. — *māgnū*, acc. sing. of the adj. *māgnus*; see note on *māgnās*, preceding line; an attributive of *numerus*. — *numerus*, acc. sing. of the noun *numerus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *alere*.

LINE 21. *equitātūs*, gen. sing. of the noun *equitātus*, -ūs, m. (*equitāre* from *equis*); hence = lit. *a riding*; concretely = *cavalry*; *equitātūs* as a gen. limits *numerus*. Observe that the ultima of *equitātus* is short in the nom. and voc., but is long in the other cases. — *suō*, abl. sing. m. of the poss. reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *sūptū*, but refers to *Dumnorix*. — *sūptū*, abl. of the noun *sūptus*, -ūs, m. (compare *sūmere*, to take, expend); abl. of means. — *semper*, adv., modifies *alere*.

LINE 22. *alere*, pres. inf. act. of *alō*, -ēre, *aluī*, *alitum*, 3; supply *sēsē*, referring to *Dumnorix*, l. 10, above, as subject-acc. — *et*, conj., connects *alere* and *habēre*. — *circum*, prep. with the acc. *sē*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; same form in both numbers. *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *circum*; it refers to *Dumnorix*.

the neighboring states he had great influence; and to keep this influence, he had given his mother in marriage to a man of the highest rank and greatest favor in the country of	habēre, to have (he has), not and, apud among posse; to be (he is) able; mātre[m] of (his) mother	neque only finitimās the neighboring atque and in among	solum at home, civitatēs states hūius potentiae power Biturigibus the Bituriges	sed etiam but even largiter largely causā for the sake hominī to a man
--	--	--	--	---

LINE 23. *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2; its subject-acc. is a pron., to be supplied, referring to Dumnorix. — *neque*, conjunctive adv. (*nē* + *que*); here it = *et nōn*. — *solum*, adv.; but with *neque* followed by *sed etiam*, the particles have a conjunctive force. — *domī*, locative of the noun *domus*, -ūs, or loc. *domī*, f. As to this case, see A. & G. 258, d; B. 176; G. 411. 2; II. 426, 2. — *sed*, conjunctive adversative, stronger than *autem* or *at*. — *etiam* (*et* + *iam*), adv.; but with *sed*, in contrast with *nōn solum*, the phrase gives prominence to the second clause. Consult A. & G. 151, a, 154, a, 155, b; B. 123, 3; G. 482. 5; H. 554, 5.

LINE 24. *apud*, prep. with the acc.; with reference to persons = *among*; sometimes *apud aliquem* = *at one's house*. — *finitimās*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *finitimus*, -a, -um (*fīnis*, border); *finitimās* is the attributive of *civitatēs*. — *civitatēs* (*civēs*), acc. plur. of *civitas*, -ātis, f. *civitatēs* is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. — *largiter*, adv. (adj. *largus*, poetic and late Latin). *largiter* modifies *posse*. The adv. has three forms: *largē*, *largiter* and *largitus*. The form *largē* is classic; *largiter* is rare in classic prose; comparative degree *largius*; superl. *largissimē*.

LINE 25. *posse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis + sum); supply here *sē* as the subject-acc. As here *posse* is a verb of complete predication, the clause *sē largiter posse* = lit. *he is abundantly able*, i.e. *he has great influence*. — *atque* (ad + *que*), conj. (*atque* before vowels or consonants, *ac* before consonants only). *atque* = *and also*; though sometimes it has the meaning only of the simple copulative *et* or *-que*. — *hūius*, gen. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; *hūius* is an attributive of *potentiae*. — *potentiae*, gen. sing. of the noun *potentia*, -ae, f. (*potēns*, participle of *possum*). *potentiae* is a gen. limiting *causā*. Synonyms: *potentia* = *power* as a personal quality; *potestās* = *power* in execution and plan of action; *imperium* = *military power*. — *causā*, abl. sing. of the noun *causa*, -ae, f. *causā* is strictly an abl. of cause; but in use = a prepositional substantive usually following the gen. depending on it. Consult A. & G. 245, c; B. 165, REM. 3; G. 373, REM. 1; H. 416, and FOOTNOTE 2. The *oratio obliqua* of lines 17–25: *His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendū magnās comparāvit; māgnū numerum equitātis suō sumptū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter potest.*

LINE 26. *mātre[m]*, acc. sing. of the noun *māter*, -tris, f.; direct obj. of *coll(n)-locāsse*, l. 28, below. Observe that the stem is properly *māter*, in which the *e* is syncope in all the cases except the nom. and voc. sing. Some authorities hold the stem of *māter* to be *mātr*, and of *pater* to be *patr*, yet concede that the stem originally ended in *-ter*. Consult A. & G. 48, c, and FOOTNOTE 4; B. 38, REM. 1; G. 44, 1, middle; II. 77, 2. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *Biturigibus*, abl. plur. of *Bituriges*, -um, m.; *Biturigibus* is the obj. of the prep.

27	illic	nōbilissimō	āc	potentissimō	the Bituriges;
	there	of the highest rank	and	very powerful	that he had
28	collocāsse,		ipsum	EX	himself taken a
	to have (he has) given (in marriage),		himself	from	wife from the
29	Helvētiis	uxōrem	habēre,	sorōrem	Helvetii, and
	the Helvetii	a wife	to have (he has),	a sister	had given his
30	EX	mātre	et	propinquās	half-sister and
	from (his) mother	and	female relations	suās	near relations
					in marriage, in
					other states.

*in.* The Bituriges were a Celtic tribe located near modern Bourges in France. — *hominī*, dat. of the noun *homō*, *-inis*, m. here, as determined by the context. *hominī* is indirect obj. of *col(n)locāsse*. A. & G. 225; B. 141; G. 344; H. 384, II.

LINE 27. *illic*, adv. (*ille* + *ce*); hence = *in that place*. — *nōbilissimō*, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *nōbilissimus*, *-a*, *-um*; positive *nōbilis* (*nōscere*, to know); comparative degree *nōbilior*. *nōbilissimō* is a modifier of the noun *hominī*. — *āc*, conj., contracted from *atque* (*āc* before consonants only, *atque* before both vowels and consonants). *āc* or *atque* usually adds a notion of importance, while *et* connects equally important notions. — *potentissimō*, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *potentissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, superl. degree; positive *potēns* (participle of *possum*); comparative *potentior*. *potentissimō* is connected by the conj. *āc* with *nōbilissimō*, and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. it agrees with *hominī*.

LINE 28. *col(n)locāsse*, perf. inf. act. of *col(n)locō*, *-āre*, *-ārē*, *-atum*, 1 (con, *intensive* + *locāre*); hence = lit. *to place* a person or thing somewhere, i.e. *to establish*, *to give*, etc.; supply *sē* as subject-acc., referring to *Dumnorix*; for a complete analysis, supply also the supine *nūptum*, which is expressed in l. 31, below. Observe that the uncontracted form of the inf. is *collocāvisse*. For the suppression of *v*, and the subsequent contraction of the vowels, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *ipsum*, acc. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, *-sa*, *-sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi*. *ipsum* = *he himself*, and is subject-acc. of *habēre*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants).

LINE 29. *Helvētiis*, abl. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, *-a*, *-um*, used substantively, and is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *uxōrem*, acc. sing. of *uxor*, *-ōris*, f.; direct obj. of *habēre*. Synonyms: *uxor* is the common word = *the married woman* as helpmeet for the man — *man's inferior*. *cōniunx* (*coniungere*), m. and f., sometimes = *the husband*, more frequently = *the wife*, that is the man's equal (compare *cōsors*); whereas *marita* is the poetic and postclassic word for *wife*. — *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-itum*, 2; its subject-acc. is the pron. *ipsum*. — *sorōrem*, acc. sing. of the noun *soror*, *-ōris*, f.; direct obj. of *col(n)locāsse*, line 32, below.

LINE 30. *ex*, prep. with the abl.; see note on *ex*, l. 28, above. — *mātre*, abl. sing. of *māter*, *-tris*, f.; see note on *māterem*, l. 26, above. *mātre* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. *ex mātre* = lit. *from the mother*, i.e. *on the mother's side* — *Dumnorix's* half-sister. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *sorōrem* and *propinquās*. — *propinquās*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *propinquus*, *-a*, *-um* (*prope*), used as a noun; direct obj. of *collocāsse*. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, *-a*, *-um*; it is an attributive of *propinquās*, but refers to *Dumnorix*.



He favored and wished well to the Helvetii on account of this relationship; he hated even on his own account Caesar and the Romans, because by their coming his own	nūptum to veil (themselves)	in in	aliās other	civitatēs 31 states
	collocāsse. to have (he has) contracted.		Favēre To favor (he favors)	et 32 and
	cupere to be (he is) zealous	Helvētiīs for the Helvetii	propter because	eam 33 of this
	affinitātem, affinity,	ōdisse to hate (he hates)	etiam even	suō in his own
				nōmine 34 name

LINE 31. **nūptum**, supine in *-um* of the verb *nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum*. The supine in *-um* usually follows verbs of motion to express the purpose; but in some cases after verbs which do not express motion, as in our text. Consult A. & G. 302; B. 186, (A); G. 435; H. 546, 1. Observe that *nūbere* = lit. *to cover, to veil*, i.e. as a woman's act, to veil herself for her husband; and therefore a complete analysis requires us to supply thus: *sē virō nūptum* — *sē* referring to *sorōrem*, or rather to both *sorōrem* and *propinquās*. The veil alluded to in this expression is the *flammeum* or the flame-colored veil, worn by the bride at the wedding. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. After verbs of motion *in* = *into*; after verbs of rest = *in*, or *on*, or *among*. See *In*, A. & G. 153, 1, 2; B. 120, 1, 2, 3; G. 418, 1, 2; H. 435, 1. Observe that *collocāsse* is not strictly a verb of motion; yet it is followed by *in* with the acc. as if it were such. Probably this usage arose from the formula *in matrimōnium dūcere* — the phraseology used of a man who marries. — **aliās**, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *alius, -ia, -iud*, gen. *alius*, dat. *alii*; the plur. is regular, like that of *bonus*. *aliās* is an attributive of *civitatēs*. Observe that *alius* = *another, other*, of an indefinite number; whereas *alter* = *the one, the other* of two. — **civitatēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *civitas, -ātis*, f. (*civēs*). *civitatēs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: *civitas*, abstractly = the condition of a citizen, hence = *citizenship*. *civitas*, concretely = *the citizens* of a city or cities, united in a district, forming a body-politic — *the state*. *urbs* = *a city*, whose district is coterminous with the dwellings of the citizens; but sometimes by metonymy *civitas* = *urbs*. *rēs-pública* = *the commonwealth* — *the state* conceived to be formed by the concessions of all for the common weal.

LINE 32. **collocāsse**, see note on this word, l. 28, above. — **Favēre**, pres. inf. act. of *faveō, -ere, fāvī, faulem*, 2; supply *sē* as subject-acc., referring to *Dumnorix*. — **et**, cop. conj., connects words and clauses of equal importance. The *ōratiō rēcta* of lines 25-32: *atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hūmō illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāvit, ipse (Dumnorix) ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātē et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāvit*.

LINE 33. **cupere**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *cupiō, -ere, cupiōvī (-iī), cupitum*, 3; connected by *et* with *favere*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. *sē* understood is its subject-acc. — **Helvētiīs**, dat. plur. of *Helvētiū, -ōrum*, m.; dat. after the verbs *favere* and *cupere* — words of favoring. Consult A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346; H. 385, 1. — **propter**, prep. with the acc. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; *eam* is an attributive of *af(d)finiātem*.

LINE 34. **affinitātem**, acc. sing. of *affiniās, -iātis*, f. (ad + *finis*); it is the obj. of the prep. *propter*. Observe that *affiniās* = *affinity* by marriage, not by blood;

35	Caesarem	et	Rōmānōs,	quod	eōrum	power was diminished, and his brother Divitiacus was restored to his old position of popularity and honor. If any disaster
	Caesar	and	the Romans,	because	at their	
36	adventū	potentia	ēius	dēminūta,	et	
	coming	the power	of him	was diminished,	and	
37	Divitiacus	frāter	in	antiquum	locum	
	Divitiacus,	the brother,	to (his)	former	place	

affinity by blood is denoted by *cōsanguinitās*. — *ōdisse*, perf. inf. in form, but pres. in meaning of the preteritive verb *ōdī*, *ōdisse*; supply *sē* or *ipsum*, referring to Dumnorix as the subject-acc. — *etiam* (et + iam), a conjunctive adv. here of restrictive force. — *suō*, abl. sing. n. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees with *nōmine*, but refers to Dumnorix. — *nōmine*, abl. sing. of the noun *nōmen*, -inis, n. (compare *nōscere* and the GK. γινώσκω); it is thus seen that *nōmen* = that by which a person or thing is known. *nōmine* is an abl. of manner. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. The phrase *suō nōmine* = *on his own account*, i.e. *for personal reasons*.

LINE 35. *Caesarem*, acc. of the proper noun *Caesar*, -aris, m.; direct obj. of *ōdisse*. — *et*, conj.; it connects *Caesarem* and *Rōmānōs*. — *Rōmānōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used substantively; connected by *et* with *Caesarem*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *quod*, conj. = *because*; the *quod*-clause gives the reason of Dumnorix's hatred of Caesar and the Romans. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; English poss. case; it refers to Caesar and the Romans; but as a gen. it limits *adventū*.

LINE 36. *adventū*, abl. sing. of the noun *adventus*, -ūs, m. (ad + venīre); abl. of time at which. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171, REM. 3; G. 393; H. 429. — *potentia*, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *dēminūta* (*sit*). Synonyms: *potentia* (*potēns*) = the objective power by which men move men. *potestās* (*possum*) = lawful power that men exercise in courts of law, and under an ethical impulse; compare GK. ἐξουσία; whereas *vīs* (GK. ἰς) = the power that men use both in attacking and in restraining others. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. *ēius* limits *potentia*, but it refers to Dumnorix. — *dēminūta*, supply *sit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. pass. subjunctive of the verb *dēminuō*, -ere, -minui, -minūtum, 3 (dē, intensive + minuere [minus]); *dēminūta sit* agrees with its subject-nom. *potentia*; it is in the subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the subordinate clauses.

LINE 37. *Divitiacus*, -ī, m., in apposition with *frāter*; he was an Aeduan chief, brother of Dumnorix, and a friend of the Romans. — *frāter*, nom. sing. of *frāter*, -tris, m.; subject-nom. of *sit restitūtus* (*restitūtus sit*). The allusion is to Dumnorix; he, too, was an Aeduan of influence, and was a leader, in some sort, of the Gallic patriotic party, who were hostile to the Roman power. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = *to* or *into*. See A. & G. 153, under *In*, 1; B. 120, 3; G. 418, 1; H. 435, 1. — *antiquum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *antiquus*, -a, -um (anti, i.e. ante + cus). *antiquum* is an attributive of *locum*. Synonyms: *vetus* = the old in opposition to the recent, i.e. in opposition to that which has not been long in existence; whereas *antiquus* = the old in opposition to that which has not previously existed. — *locum*, acc. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m. in the sing., m. or n. in the plur.; see note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locum* is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

should happen to the Romans, he indulged the largest hope of obtaining sovereign power through the agency of the Helvetii; while,	grātia	atque	honōris	sit	restitūtus.	Sī	38
	of favor	and	of honor	was	restored.	If	
	quid	accidat	Rōmānīs,	summam	in		39
	anything	should happen	to the Romans,	highest	into,		
	spem	per	Helvētiōs	rēgnī	obtinendī		40
	hope	through	the Helvetii	of the sovereignty	to be gained		

LINE 38. *grātia*, gen. sing. of the noun *grātia*, -ae, f. (*grātus*, favor, both act. and pass.; compare *cārus*, GK. *χάρις*, and English *grace*). — *atque* (ad + que), conj. that adds a more emphatic notion. See note on this particle, l. 10, Chap. I. — *honōris*, gen. sing. of the noun *honor*, -ōris, m.; connected by *atque* with *grātia*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *sit restitūtus* (*restitūtus sit*), 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive pass. of *restituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3 (re + statuerē, to set up again); connected by *et* with *dēminūta* (*sit*), and the subjunctive for the same reason — namely, because in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *Sī*, conditional conj. (archaic form *seī*, sibilated from the GK. *ei*). The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 32–38: *Favet et cupit Helvētiis propter hanc affinitatem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eiūs dēminūta, et Divitiacus frāter in antiquum locum grātia atque honōris est restitūtus.*

LINE 39. *quid*, nom. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quis* (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*). The forms *quis*, *quae*, *quid* are used substantively; *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, adjectively. *quid* is the subject-nom. of *accidat*. — *accidat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of *accidō*, -ere, -idi (ad + cadere); hence *accidere* = lit. to fall to, i.e. to befall, happen; pres. subjunctive in the condition of *sī*. Observe that *sī quid accidat* is used euphemistically for *if defeat shall happen to*. Observe, further, that the pres. infinitives and pres. subjunctives are used when the writer has no intention to express an action as prior to another, because *reperit*, on which the indirect discourse depends, is a present tense. — *Rōmānīs*, dat. plur. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and is the indirect object of *accidat*. — *summam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *summus*, -a, -um, superl. degree of the positive *superus*, comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *summam* is an attributive of the noun *spem*. — *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl., here it takes the acc.; note its position between the modifier and the noun modified, and see A. & G. 345, a, 2; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 2; H. 569, II, 1.

LINE 40. *spem*, acc. sing. of the noun *spēs*, -eī, f. Observe that the final vowel of the stem is short in the gen. and dat. of *spēs*; it is short also in the gen. and dat. of the stems of *fidēs* and *rēs*. *spem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētiūs*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; it is here the acc. of the agent, considered as means, after the prep. *per*. Consult A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, NOTE 1. — *rēgnī*, gen. sing. of the noun *rēgnum*, -ī, n. (*rēx*). *rēgnī* as a gen. limits *spem*. — *obtinendī*, gen. of the gerundive *obtinendus*, -a, -um of the verb *obtinēō*, -ere, -uī, -tentum, 2 (ob + tenēre). *obtinendī* as a gerundive agrees with the noun *rēgnī*. The phrase *rēgnī obtinendī* constitutes what is called the gerundive construction, and as such depends on *spem*. Consult A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, 1; G. 428; H. 544, 1. It may clarify this matter to say that the gerundive is simply the fut. pass. participle, and is the attributive, in the oblique cases, of some noun; while the gerund is a verbal noun in the active voice, and takes a direct obj. Thus *in spem rēgnī obtinendī* = lit. into the

41	venīre ;	imperio	populi	Rōmānī	under the sway of the Roman people, he not only despaired of the sovereignty, but even of maintaining the influence which he at that time had. As to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish
	to come (he comes) ;	under the power	of the people	Roman	
42	nōn modo dē	rēgnō,	sed etiam dē		
	not only of the sovereignty,	but even of			
43	eā, quam habeat,	grātiā	dēspērāre.		
	that, which he has,	popularity,	to despair (he despairs).		
44	Reperiēbat etiam in	quaerendō	Caesar,		
	Ascertained, too, on	inquiring	Caesar,		

hope of the sovereignty to be obtained, which is equivalent to: into the hope of obtaining the sovereignty. For the gerund construction thus: *patriam spes videndī* = the hope of seeing one's fatherland.

LINE 41. *venīre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum*, 4; supply *eum*, referring to *Dumnorigem*, l. 10, above, as subject-acc. of *venīre*. — *imperio*, a lone abl. absolute, denoting both time and cause. If the pres. participle of *esse* were in use, the phraseology would be: *imperio ente populi Rōmānī* = the rule of the Roman people being. With such a participle, the abl. absolute construction would be regular. — *populi*, gen. sing. of the noun *populus, -ī, m.*; as a gen. it limits *imperio*. For synonyms, see l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *populi*. Note that the adj., in this phrase, always follows the noun.

LINE 42. *nōn*, adv. (*nē + ūnum*); it modifies *modo*. — *mōdo*, adv. (*modus*); hence *modo* = lit. *by measure*, i.e. expressing a restriction of the notion = in English only. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *rēgnō*, abl. of the noun *rēgnum, -ī, n. (rēx)*. *rēgnō* is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. Observe that the phrase *dē rēgnō* follows the verb *dēspērāre*, and that the prep. *dē* in the compound is repeated with *rēgnō*. This is the common construction in Caesar, but other writers construct more frequently with the acc. — *sed*, conj.; strongest of the adversatives. — *etiam* (*et + iam*), adv. As adverbs, both *modo* and *etiam* modify *dēspērāre*; but as conjunctive phrases, *nōn modo . . . sed etiam* indicate that prominence is given to the second word or clause. — *dē*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 43. *eā*, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *grātiā*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*; as a rel. it refers to *grātiā*; in grammatical construction it is the direct object of *habeat*. — *habeat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the verb *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Dumnorig*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a dependent clause in *oratio obliqua*. — *grātiā*, abl. sing. of the noun *grātia, -ae, f. (grātus, favor; kindred with cārus, GK. χάρις)*. *grātiā* is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *dēspērāre*, pres. inf. of the verb *dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1 (*dē + spērāre, to be without hope*); supply *eum* as subject-acc. of *dēspērāre*, referring to *Dumnorig*. The *oratio recta* of lines 38-43: *Sī quid accidit Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venit; imperio populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habet, grātiā dēspērāt*.

LINE 44. *Reperiēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *reperiō, -īre, rep(ſ)erī, repertum*, 4 (*re + parere, to procure again*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *etiam* (*et + iam*), adv. = also. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *quaerendō*, abl. of the gerund of the verb *quaerō, -ere, quaesivī (-sī)*,

which had taken place a few days before, Caesar also found on inquiry, that the beginning of that stampede was made by Dumnorix and his	quod <i>in that</i>	proelium <i>a battle</i>	equestre <i>cavalry</i>	adversum <i>unsuccessful</i>	paucis <i>a few,</i>	45
	ante <i>before</i>	diēbus <i>days,</i>	esset <i>had been</i>	factum, <i>fought,</i>	initium <i>the beginning</i>	46
	fugae <i>flight</i>	factum <i>(had been) made</i>	ā <i>by</i>	Dumnorige <i>Dumnorix</i>	atque <i>and</i>	47
					ēius <i>his</i>	

-situm, 3; *quaerendō* as a gerund is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Consult A. & G. 301, (3); B. 184, REM. 4, IV; G. 433; H. 542, IV, (2). — Caesar, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *reperiēbat*. Note how both the subj. and predicate are made emphatic by exchange of positions; the natural Latin order is: *Caesar etiam in quaerendō reperiēbat*.

LINE 45. *quod*, adv.; acc. of the rel. *quī, quae, quod* = *whereas* or *in that*. Consult A. & G. 333, *a*; B. 123, REM. 21; G. 525, 2; H. 516, II, 2, NOTE. But *quod* might be taken as a rel. pron., and *fugae* as = *to proeliū*, and then the following *ordō* might explain the construction: *initium eius proeliū equestre adversū, quod proelium esset factum, factum (esse)*, etc. Compare *quae pars . . . ea*, l. 24, Chap. XI. — *proelium*, nom. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; subject-nom. of *esset factum* (*factum esset*). As to derivation and synonyms, see note on *proeliū*, l. 18, Chap. I. As to the battle, read again Chap. XV. — *equestre*, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *equester*, -tris, -tre (*equus* [equus]). *equestre* is an attributive of *proelium*. — *adversum*, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *adversus*, -a, -um (ad + *versus*, participle of *vertō*); *adversum*, too, is an attributive of *proelium*. — *paucis*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *paucus*, -a, -um. *paucis* modifies *diēbus*.

LINE 46. *ante*, adv. and prep.; here it is an adv. and modifies *esset factum* (*factum esset*). — *diēbus*, abl. plur. of the noun *diēs*, -ē (old form in the gen. *diē*), m. or f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. *diēbus* is the abl. of the degree of difference. Consult A. & G. 250; B. 164, REM. 3; G. 403, NOTE 4, (a); H. 423, and 430, NOTE 3. Note the strictly literal translation of *paucis ante diēbus* — *before by a few days*. — *esset factum* (*factum esset*), 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *fiō, fieri, factus*; used as pass. of *faciō, -ere, feci, factum*, 3; *esset factum* agrees with its subject-nom. *proelium*, l. 45, above; it is in the subjunctive, because it is a subordinate clause in the *ordō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 321, *a*; B. 245, I, (b); G. 525, 3; H. 524. — *initium*, acc. sing. of the nom. *initium*, -ī, n. (in + *ire*). *initium* is subject-acc. of *factum (esse)*. Observe that this inf. clause is the object of, and depends on, *Reperiēbat*, l. 44, above. — *ēius*, gen. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; as a gen. it limits *fugae*.

LINE 47. *fugae*, gen. sing. of the noun *fuga*, -ae, f.; as a gen. it limits *initium*. — *factum* (*esse*), perf. inf. of *fiō, fieri, factus*, 3; its subject-acc. is *initium*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — *Dumnorige*, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Dumnorix*, -igis, m.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*. See A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. See note on *Dumnorigem*, l. 10, above. — *atque* (ad + *que*), conj., used before vowels and consonants, *ac* before consonants only; it usually adds a notion of greater import. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; used substantively; as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. = here *his*; observe that before *fugae*, immediately preceding, it has its proper demonstrative force, and = *that*. Whether used as a dem. or as a personal pron. can only be determined by the connection. *ēius* as a gen. limits *equitibus*.

48	equitibus, — nam equitātūi, quem auxiliō cavalry, — for the cavalry, which for an aid	cavalry; — for Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry, which the Aedui had sent to aid Caesar; — that the rest of the cavalry had been terrified and stampeded by their fright.
49	Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praecerat; to Caesar the Aedui had sent, Dumnorix was over;	
50	— eorum fugā reliquum esse equitatum — by their flight the rest of, to be (were), cavalry,	
51	perterritum. terrified.	

LINE 48. *equitibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *eques*, -itis, m. (*equus*); connected by the conj. *atque* with *Dumnorige*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *nam*, conj. = *for*; expresses an objective reason; *enim*, a subjective. — *equitātūi* (contracted form *equitātū*), dat. of *equitatus*, -ūs, m.; after *prae* in *praecerat*, l. 49, below. See A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — *quem*, acc. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; as a rel. pron. it refers to *equitātūi*, but is the direct obj. of *miserant*. — *auxiliō*, dat. sing. of the noun *auxilium*, -iī, n.; dat. of the end for which.

LINE 49. *Caesari*, dat. sing. of the noun *Caesar*, -aris, m.; dat. of the obj. to which. Observe that *miserant* takes here a direct obj. and two datives, and consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, and REM. 1; G. 356; H. 390, II. — *Aedui*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Aedui*, -a, -um, used substantively; subject-nom. of *miserant*. As to the Aedui, consult note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *miserant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *mittō*, -ere, *misi*, *missum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Aedui*. — *Dumnorix*, -igis, m., subject-nom. of the verb *praecerat*. See note on *Dumnorigem*, l. 10, above. — *praecerat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the neuter or intrans. verb *praesum*, -esse, *fui*, fut. participle *futurus*; *praecerat* agrees with its subject-nom. *Dumnorix*.

LINE 50. *eorum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; here it = *of them* or *their*; as a gen. it limits *fugā*. — *fugā*, abl. sing. of the noun *fuga*, -ae, f. *fugā* is an abl. of cause. See A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416. — *reliquum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; *reliquum* is an attributive of *equitatum*. For synonyms, see note on *reliquus*, l. 7, Chap. V. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurus*; it is here used in the formation of the perf. pass. *esse perterritum* (*perterritum esse*). — *equitatum*, acc. sing. of the noun *equitatus*, -ūs, m. (*equitare*, to ride); hence the noun abstract = *a riding*; but in concrete, *cavalry*. *equites* in the plur. has the same meaning. But after 122 B.C. the *equites* became an order of Roman knights, and as such were farmers of the taxes, and administrators of justice; whereas *equitatus* very rarely designates the equestrian order. *equitatum* is subject-acc. of *esse perterritum* (*perterritum esse*).

LINE 51. *esse perterritum* (*perterritum esse*), perf. pass. inf. of the verb *perterreo*, -ere, -ui, -itum, 2 (per + *terrere*). Observe (a) the intensive force of the prep. *per* in the compound *perterrere* = *to frighten thoroughly*. Observe (b) that the construction from *reperiēbat*, with the exception of the parenthetic clause, is informal *oratio obliqua*; the acc. sentences depending on *reperiēbat*. The direct form would be: *quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus erat factum, initium eius fugae factum est ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus . . . hōrum fugā reliquus est equitatus perterritus*.

XIX.* On being thus informed, since to these suspicions the most incontest- able facts were added; viz., that Dumnorix had led the Helvetii through the coun- try of the Sequa- ni; that he had ordered the mut- ual exchange of	XIX. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum 1 Which things having been learned, when ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, 2 to these imputations most certain things were added, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs 3 that through the territory of the Sequani the Helvetii trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs 4 he had led, that hostages among them
---	---

LINE 1. **Quibus**, abl. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it is an attributive of *rēbus*; at the beginning of a sentence the rel. = *et eīs*. See A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — **rēbus**, abl. plur. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f. (stem *rē* shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.); abl. absolute with *cōgnitis* denoting *time when*. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — **cōgnitis**, abl. sing. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus, -a, -um* of the verb *cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum*, 3 (con + [g]nōscō, GK. γιγνώσκω). *cōgnitis* is in the abl. absolute construction with *rēbus*. — **cum**, conj.; or other forms *quum* and archaic *quū* (*quī*). *cum* here denotes both time and cause.

LINE 2. **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **hās**, acc. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*; *hās* is an attributive of *suspiciōnēs*. — **suspiciōnēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *suspiciō, -ōnis*, f. (*suspiciāri*, to suspect); it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **certissimae**, nom. plur. f. of the adj. *certissimus, -a, -um*, superl. degree; positive *certus*, by metathesis for *crētus*, a participle of the verb *cernō, -ere, crēvi, crētum*; comparative *certior*. *certissimae* is an attributive of the noun *rēs*. — **rēs**, nom. plur. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f.; subj. of the verb *accēderent*. — **accēderent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum*, 4 (ad + cēdere, to approach); hence, as *accēdere* is a neuter verb, it = sometimes to approach a thing with the notion of augmentation; it therefore freq. = to be added, as in our text. *accēderent* is in the subjunctive after *cum* temporal or historical. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2; it agrees with its subject-nom. *rēs*.

LINE 3. **quod**, conj. = *that*; here the function of the connective is merely to introduce the following explanatory *quod*-clauses, which are in apposition with the noun *rēs*. — **per**, prep. with the acc. — **finēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *finis, -is*, m. *finēs* is the obj. of the prep. *per*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — **Sēquanōrum**, gen. plur. of the proper noun *Sequani, -ōrum*; as a gen. it limits *finēs*. For description of this clan, see note on *Aeduo*, l. 20, Chap. III. — **Helvētiōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*, used substantively. *Helvētiōs* is the direct obj. of *trādūxisset*. For description of the Helvetii, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I.

LINE 4. **trādūxisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum*, 3 (trāns + dūcere); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix; it is in the subjunctive mode, because Caesar reports his own thought, as if it were another's. Consult A. & G. 321, and 341, d;

\* The translator thus constructs the following strictly English period: On being thus informed, Caesar thought there was sufficient reason for punishing Dumnorix, or for ordering the Aeduan state to do it, since to these suspicions the most incontestable facts were added: that Dumnorix

5	dandōs	cūrāsset,	quod	ea	omnia	hostages; that
	to be given	he had cared for,	that	these	all (things)	he had done all
6	nōn	modo	iniūssū	suō	et	civitatīs,
	not	only	without leave	his own,	and (that) of the state,	only without Caesar's orders or
7	sed	etiam	īnscientibus	ipsis	fēcisset,	those of the Aeduan state, but
	but	also,	unaware themselves being,	he had done,	even without the	knowledge of the

B. 198, (b); G. 525, 1, and 541; H. 516, II. — **quod**, see *quod* at the beginning of the preceding clause. — **obsidēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *obses*, -*idio*, m. and f.; direct obj. of *cūrāsset*. — **inter**, prep. with the acc. — **eōs**, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eōs* is the obj. of the prep. *inter*.

LINE 5. **dandōs**, gerundive, or fut. pass. participle of the verb *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum* (a short before -*re* in pres. inf. act. by exception). **dandōs** is the factitive obj. after *cūrāsset*. Consult A. & G. 294, d; B. 184, III, (a); G. 430; H. 544, NOTE 2. — **cūrāsset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. for the uncontracted form *cūrāvisset*; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix; subjunctive mode for the same reason as *trādūxisset*, preceding line. — **quod**, a conj. = *that*. See note on *quod*, l. 3, above. — **ea**, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; or supply the English word *things*, and take *ea* as a dem. adj. = *these*. The things referred to were all the things to which Caesar took exception. The things just mentioned in the *quod*-clauses preceding, and in the clauses succeeding, were mere pretexts made to justify Caesar's invading the Gallic clans; his real motive for such invasion was self-glory and the glory of Rome. — **omnia**, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *omnis*, -*e*; *omnia* is an attributive of *ea*, used as a noun.

LINE 6. **nōn**, adv. (*nōn* + *unum*, apocopated); it modifies the adv. *modo*. — **modo**, adv.; as such it modifies *fēcisset*. — **iniūssū**, abl. of the noun *iniūssus*, -*ūs*, m. (*in* + *iustus*); in fact used only in the abl.; see A. & G. 71, b; B. 51; G. 70; H. 134. *iniūssū* is an abl. of manner. — **suō**, abl. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -*a*, -*um*; it is an attributive of *iniūssū*, but it refers to Caesar. — **et**, cop. conj. — **civitatīs**, gen. sing. of the noun *civitas*, -*ātis*, f. (*civēs*); as a gen. it limits *iniūssū*, to be supplied, but it refers to the state of Dumnorix — the Aeduan.

LINE 7. **sed**, conj.; the strongest of the adversatives. — **etiam** (*et* + *iam*), adv.; as such it modifies *fēcisset*. But the reader will reflect, that while *nōn modo* . . . *sed etiam* as phrases can be analyzed; in use they are really connectives with conjunctive force, *sed etiam* giving emphasis to the second clause. Compare *ὁὐ μόνον* . . . *ἀλλὰ καὶ*; or *μηδὲ* . . . *ἀλλὰ καὶ*. — **īnscientibus**, abl. plur. of the adj. *īnsciēns*, -*entis* (*in*, negative + *sciēre*); abl. absolute with *ipsis*. — **ipsis**, abl. plur. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -*sa*, -*sum*, gen. *ipsi*, dat. *ipsis*. *ipsis* is abl. absolute with the adj. *īnscientibus*, but it refers to the Aedui. As to the abl. absolute construction of a noun or pron. with an adj., consult A. & G. 255, a; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4. — **fēcisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, -*ere*, *feci*, *factum*, 3; subjunctive for the same reason as *trādūxisset*, l. 4, above. *fēcisset* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix.

had led the Helvetii through the country of the Sequani; that he had ordered the mutual exchange of hostages; that he had done all these things not only without Caesar's orders, or those of the Aeduan state, but even without the knowledge of the Aedui; and that, in fine, charges of sedition had been made against him by the chief magistrate of the Aedui — even Liscus himself.



Aedui; and that charges of sedition had been made against him by the chief magistrate of the Aedui, Caesar thought there was sufficient reason for punishing Dum-	quod	ā	magistrātū	Aeduōrum	accūsārētur,	8
	that	by	a magistrate	of the Aedui	he was accused,	
	satis	esse	causae	arbitrābātur,	quārē	9
	enough	to be (it is)	of cause	he thought,	wherefore	
	in	eum	aut	ipse	animadverteret	aut 10
	on	him	either	he himself	should animadvert	or

LINE 8. *quod*, see note on this word, l. 3, above. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *magistrātū*, abl. sing. of the noun *magistrātus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. The allusion is to Liscus the Vergobretus. — *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of the proper noun *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; as a gen. it limits *magistrātū*. As to this clan, see note on *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *accūsārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of the act. verb *accūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix; it is in the subjunctive mode for the same reason as *trādūxisset*, l. 4, above. See, as to the accusation, Chapters XVII and XVIII.

LINE 9. *satis*, adv., or adj., or noun, according to the exigencies of the construction; here, with the gen. partitive, it has a substantive force, and is the subject-acc. of *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. or neuter verb *sum*, perf. ind. *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; it is here a verb of complete predication; its subject-acc. is *satis*, used as a noun. — *causae*, gen. sing. of the noun *causa*, -ae, f.; partitive gen.; consult A. & G. 216, 4; B. 134; G. 369; H. 397, 4, and FOOTNOTE 3. — *arbitrābātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the deponent verb *arbitror*, -ārī, -ātus, I; it agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. The reader will observe that *arbitrābātur* is the principal verb in this elaborate complex sentence, and carries the weight, so to speak, of all the clauses. Synonyms: *arbitrārī* (*arbitrē*) = to think in a judicial way — to decide as an arbitrator; and then, generally = to hold as true, to think, like GK. *νομίζειν*. *putāre* = to think as an accountant — to reckon; hence, generally = to suppose, to think. *aestimāre* = to think as a process of exact estimation; whereas *existimāre* = to think as a moral function — to estimate a thing at its true value. — *quārē* (*quā* + *rē*), adv., sometimes written *quā rē*; if thus written, *quā* is abl. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, used adjectively, and *rē* is the abl. sing. of *rēs*, *rēi*, f.; and the phrase *quā rē* is to be taken as an abl. of cause = by which thing, i.e. wherefore.

LINE 10. *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *eum*, acc. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*; it refers to Dumnorix. — *aut*, conj., used to denote that the difference is exclusive. *aut . . . aut* = either . . . or. See note on this particle, as contrasted with *vel*, l. 19, Chap. I. — *ipse*, nom. sing. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; it refers to Caesar; it is expressed for emphasis, and is the subject-nom. of *animadverteret*. — *animadverteret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *animadvertō*, -ere, -it, -sum (animum + *ad* + *vertere*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*; it is in the subjunctive after *quārē* — indirect question. See A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. Observe that *animadvertere* = lit. to turn the mind to; but that, as the attention to a fault usually issued in the punishment of it, this verb, especially with *in* and the acc., came to mean to punish. — *aut*, see the alternate immediately before *ipse*.

11	civitatem	animadvertere	iubēret.	His	norix, or for ordering the Aeduan state to do it. One circumstance was opposed to all these considerations: that he well knew the very great devotion of Dumnorix's brother Divitiacus to the interests of the Roman people,
	the state	to animadvert	he should order.	To these	
12	omnibus	rēbus	ūnum	repūgnābat,	
	all	things,	one (thing)	opposed itself,	
13	quod	Divitiaci	frātris	summum	in
	that	of Divitiacus,	the brother,	the greatest	toward
14	populum	Rōmānum	studium,	summam	
	the people	Roman,	zeal,	the greatest	

LINE 11. *civitatem*, acc. sing. of the noun *civitas*, -atis (*civēs*); subject-acc. of *animadvertere*. — *animadvertere*, pres. inf. of *animadvertō*, I; with subject-acc. depends on *iubēret*. See A. & G. 271, b; B. 194, REM. 2, a; G. 423, NOTE 6; H. 535, II, FOOTNOTE 1. Observe that *iubēre* takes the acc. and inf. instead of *ut* and the subjunctive. — *iubēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *iubeō*, -ere, *iūssī*, *iūssum*, 2; *iubēret* is connected by the alternative conj. *aut* with *animadverteret*, and is in the subjunctive mode for the same reason, viz., an indirect question. — *His*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; it is an attributive of *rēbus*.

LINE 12. *omnibus*, dat. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an *f*-stem; it, too, is an attributive of *rēbus*; strictly, however, *omnibus* modifies the complex idea involved in *his rēbus*. — *rēbus*, dat. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, *f*.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *repūgnābat*. — *ūnum*, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūnī*. *ūnum* is here used substantively — or we may supply *rērum*, -ī, n., i.e. *fact* — and is subject-nom. of *repūgnābat*. — *repūgnābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *repūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I (*re* + *pūgnāre*); hence *repūgnāre* = lit. *to fight back*. *repūgnābat* agrees with its subject-nom. *ūnum*; and with its subj. and indirect obj. = *one fact opposed itself to all these specifications*.

LINE 13. *quod*, conj.; introduces the *quod*-clause *quod . . . cōgnōverat*, which clause is explanatory of *ūnum*, and in apposition with it. — *Divitiaci*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Divitiacus*, -ī, m.; an appositive of *frātris*. — *frātris*, gen. sing. of the noun *frāter*, -tris, m.; as a gen. it limits the noun *studium*. — *summum*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *summus*, -a, -um; positive *superus* (rare), comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *summum* is an attributive of *studium*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.

LINE 14. *populum*, acc. sing. of the noun *populus*, -ī, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that the phrase *in populum Rōmānum* is used instead of the objective gen. after *studium*. Compare *odium in Caesarem* and *odium Caesaris*, and consult A. & G. 217, c; B. 131, REM. 3; G. 363, REM. 1, end; H. 396, III, NOTE 1. But observe that the distinction between objective and subjective is ambiguous in the phrase *odium Caesaris*; while there can be no ambiguity in the phrase *odium in Caesarem*. — *Rōmānum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um (*Roma* + *nus*); *Rōmānum* is an attributive of *populum*. — *studium*, acc. sing. of the noun *studium*, -ī, n. (*studēre*, kindred with GK. *σπουδάζειν*, *to be zealous*). *studium* is a direct obj. of *cōgnōverat*, l. 16, below. — *summam*, acc. sing. of the adj. superl. degree *summus*, -a, -um; see note on *summum*, preceding line; *summam* is an attributive of *voluntātem*.

his very great regard for Caesar, his eminent fidelity, justice and moderation; and he was afraid that by Dumnorix's punishment he might wound the feelings of	in toward	sē himself,	voluntātem, good-will,	ēgregiam distinguished	fidem, 15 fidelity,
	iūstitiam, justice,	temperantiam self-control,	cōgnōverat; he had known;	nam, 16 for,	
	nē lest	ēius by his	supplicio punishment,	Divitiaci Divitiacus's	animum 17 soul

LINE 15. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* here is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that the pron. *sē* refers to Caesar, and compare notes on *in* and *populum*, lines 13 and 14, above. — *voluntātem*, acc. sing. of *voluntās, -tātis*, f. (*volō*); direct obj. of *cōgnōverat*. Observe the omission of the conjunctions between the several direct objects of *cōgnōverat* (asyndeton). Observe that in a series of words there is an entire omission of conjunctions, or they are repeated between the words or phrases. The enclitic *-que*, however, might be appended to the last word of a series. See A. & G. 208, 3, and 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6. — *ēgregiam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *ēgregius, -a, -um* (*ē* + *grex*, i.e. *chosen from the herd*). *ēgregiam* is an attributive of the noun *fidem*. — *fidem*, acc. sing. of the noun *fidēs, fidelē*, f. (stem *fidē* shortened in gen., dat. and acc. sing. *fidem* is a direct obj. of *cōgnōverat*. Note that *fidēs* wants the plural.

LINE 16. *iūstitiam*, acc. sing. of the noun *iūstitia, -ae*, f. (derived from *iūs* through the adj. *iūstus*). *iūstitiam* is a direct obj. of *cōgnōverat*. — *temperantiam*, acc. sing. of the noun *temperantia, -ae*, f. (*temperāns*, compare GK. *σωφροσύνη*). — *cōgnōverat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum*, 3 (con + [g]nōscere, to know); it agrees with the subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. Observe that *cōgnōscere* in the complete tenses is sometimes used peritively. Thus *cōgnōverat*, pluperf. in form = the perfect in sense. Consult A. & G. 279, c; B. 113; G. 241, REM.; H. 297, I, 2. I.it. the pluperf. = *he had learned*, i.e. *he knew*. — *nam*, conj.; used to give a reason for the statement made in the preceding sentence. Observe that *nam* introduces a real objective reason, while *enim*, always postpositive, introduces a subjective one.

LINE 17. *nē*, conj. and adv. (the primitive Latin negative; archaic form *neī, nī*; while *nōn* is derivative). *nē* after a verb of fearing is a conj., and = *that*, because in the expression of a wish to actualize somewhat, the particle depends in the English language on the idea of fearing, and not on that of wishing. We may illustrate the idiom from our text by punctuating thus: *verēbātur; nē Divitiaci animum offenderet* (optative subjunctive) = *he was afraid; would that he might not offend the feelings of Divitiacus*. And this = *he was afraid that he would offend the feelings of Divitiacus*. Consult A. & G. 331, f, and FOOTNOTE; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 2, and NOTE 1; H. 498, III, NOTE 1. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; *ēius* as a gen. limits *supplicio*; it refers to Dumnorix. — *supplicio*, abl. sing. of the noun *supplicium, -i*, n. (*supplex* [sub + plīō]); hence *supplicium* = *the punishment* of a suppliant; of one who bends or kneels to receive the penalty of a crime. *supplicio* is an abl. of means. — *Divitiaci*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Divitiacus, -i*, m.; as a gen. it limits the noun *animum*. — *animum*, acc. sing. of the noun *animus, -i*, m.; it is the direct obj. of *offenderet*. As contrasted with *mēns*, the thinking faculty, the intellect, *animus* = *the sensibility*. For complete definitions of the synonyms, see note on *animus*, I. 2, Chap. X.

18	offenderet,	verēbātur.	Itaque	prius-quam	Divitiacus. Ac-	
	<i>he might displease,</i>	<i>he was afraid.</i>	<i>Therefore,</i>	<i>before that</i>	cordingly, before	
19	quicquam	cōnārētur,	Divitiacum	ad	sē	attempting to ex-
	<i>anything</i>	<i>he attempted,</i>	<i>Divitiacus</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>himself</i>	ercise any disci-
						pline, he ordered
20	vocārī	iubet	et	cotīdiānīs	interpretibus	Divitiacus to be
	<i>to be called,</i>	<i>he orders,</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>the daily</i>	<i>interpreters</i>	summoned to his
						presence; and, dis-
						missing the usual inter-

LINE 18. *offenderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *offendō*, -ere, -fendī, -fensum, 3 (ob + *fendere*, to strike against); *offenderet* agrees with a personal pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar; it is the subjunctive of purpose after *nē*. See A. & G. 331, f; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 1 and 2; H. 498, III. Note that the noun-clause *nē . . . offenderet* is the direct obj. of *verēbātur*. — *verēbātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the deponent verb *vereor*, -ērī, *veritus*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. Synonyms: *verērī* = to fear from man's innate sense of veneration — the venerable naturally inspires awe; *metuere* = to fear — often for a sense of shame or disgrace; while *timēre* = to fear impending evil as the result of reflection or caution. — *Itaque* (ita + *quē*), conj., illative; denotes an inference; when introducing a clause, it generally stands at the beginning. — *prius-quam*, adv. (*prius* + *quam*); freq. written *prius quam*; often the parts are separated by *tmēsis*. The force of the *quam* is not obvious with the word *before* as the meaning of *prius*; but, as an illustration, if we translate *prius* with *sooner*, the force of *quam*, as a particle used in comparison, is readily seen.

LINE 19. *quicquam*, acc. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quisquam*, *quatquam*, *quidquam* or *quicquam*; used substantively, and the direct obj. of the deponent verb *cōnārētur*. Observe that this pron. is compounded of *quis* + *quam*; that the former part of the word is declined like *quis* and *qui*, but have the *quod*-form — adj. — and the *quid*-form — subst. — in the neuter; and that this pron. is used in negative sentences, or in interrogative sentences implying a negative. — *cōnārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent verb *cōnor*, -ārē, *cōnātus*, 1. *cōnārētur* is subjunctive after *prius-quam*, temporal. Consult A. & G. 327; B. 226, REM. 1; G. 577; H. 520, 2. — *Divitiacum*, acc. sing. of the proper noun *Divitiacus*, -ī, m.; subject-acc. of *vocārī*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — the same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*; it refers to Caesar.

LINE 20. *vocārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *vocō*, -āre, -ārī, -ātum, 1; pass. parts: *vocor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; the subject-acc. of *vocārī* is the noun *Divitiacum*. — *iubet*, 3d pers. sing. of the verb *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iūssum*, 2. *iubet* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. Observe that the direct obj. of *iubet* is the inf. noun-clause *Divitiacum ad sē vocārī*. Observe also that from this point to the end of the chapter the construction is affected by *representātiō*, i.e. the verbs in the main clauses are in the historic pres. tense. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects *iubet* and *colloquitur*, l. 24, below. — *cotīdiānīs*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *co(quo)līdiānus*, -a, -um (*co(quo)līdiē* = quot + *diē*); *cotīdiānīs* is a modifier of *interpretibus*. Until recently the orthography of *colīdiānus* was *quotīdiānus*. Who will introduce the fad of spelling *quot*, *col*? — *interpretibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *interpretēs*, -etis, m. and f. (*inter* + *pres*), from *pressus*, apocopated? *interpretibus* is in the abl. absolute construction with the participle *remōtūs*.

preters, he con- versed with him through Caius Valerius Procil- lus, a man of influence in the Gallic province, Caesar's intimate friend, one in whom he had the greatest con- fidence in every	remōtīs being removed,	per through	C. Valerium Procillum, 21 Caius Valerius Procillus,	
	prīncipem a leading man	Galliae of Gaul,	prōvinciae, of the province,	familiārem 22 friend
	suum, his own,	cui for whom	summam the highest,	omnium of all
	fidem confidence	habēbat, he had,	cum with	eō colloquitur; 24 him he confers;

LINE 21. **remōtīs**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *remōtus*, *a*, -um of the verb *removēō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 (re + movēre, to move back); abl. absolute with *interpretibus*. — **per**, prep. with the acc. — **C.**, an abbreviation of *Caius*; acc. sing. of *Caius*, -ī, m., the *praenōmen*. — **Valerium**, acc. sing. of *Valerius*, -ī, the *nōmen* — the name of the *gens*. — **Procillum**, acc. sing. of *Procillus*, -ī, m., the *cōgnōmen* or family name. The three names together may be taken as a complex noun-phrase, the obj. of the preposition *per*, denoting the agent as *means*. Consult A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, NOTE 1. The allusion is to Caius Valerius Procillus, a man of influence in Gaul, whose father had been made a Roman citizen; he was *facile princeps inter parēs*. The *cōgnōmen* is variously written in the MSS. The Greek paraphrast translates *per C. Valerium Procillum*: διὰ τοῦ Γαίου Βαληρίου Προακίλλου.

LINE 22. **prīncipem**, acc. sing. of the noun *prīnceps*, -ipis, m. (primus + capiō); an appositive of *Procillum*. — **Galliae**, gen. sing. of the noun *Gallia*, -ae, f.; as a gen. it limits *prōvinciae*. — **prōvinciae**, gen. sing. of the noun *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; as a gen. this noun limits *prīncipem*. The allusion is, probably, to the Roman province in Gaul, as his father had received Roman citizenship, and the son Caius, as an interpreter, must have had knowledge of the Roman tongue, which, as a resident of Celtica, he could not be supposed to have acquired. — **familiārem**, acc. sing. of the adj. *familiāris*, -re, used substantively here, and as such in apposition with *Procillum*.

LINE 23. **suum**, acc. sing. m. of the substantive and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of the noun *familiārem*, but refers to Caesar. — **cui**, dat. sing. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *Procillum*, but is in the dat. after the phrase *fidem habēbat*, which = *confidēbat*. Consult A. & G. 227, NOTE 2; B. 142; G. 346, and 357; H. 392, I. — **summam**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *summus*, -a, -um; positive *superus* (rare), comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *summam* is an attributive of *fidem*. — **omnium**, gen. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; as a gen. it limits *rērum*. — **rērum**, gen. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; as a gen. it limits *fidem*; gen. objective. See A. & G. 217; B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III.

LINE 24. **fidem**, acc. sing. of the noun *fidēs*, -ei, f. (stem *fidz*, final vowel shortened in gen. and dat. sing.). With *fidēs* compare the Latin verb *fidō* and the GK. *πειθω*, root *πιθ*. *fidem* is the direct obj. of *habēbat*. — **habēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — **cum**, prep. with the abl.; known to be a prep., and not a conj., because it is seen at once that the verb *colloquitur* is connected immediately by *et* (l. 20, above) with *iubet*, and requires no other con-

25	simul	commonefacit,	quae	respect. Caesar
	at the same time	he forcibly reminds (him),	what (things)	at once reminded
26	ipsō	praesente	in conciliō	Gallōrum
	himself	being present,	in the council	of the Gauls
27	dē	Dumnorige	sint dicta, et	ostendit,
	about	Dumnorix	were said, and	he shows
				in the council of the Gauls concerning Dum- norix; and also

nective. — **eō**, abl. sing. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; *cum eō* = *with him*, i.e. Divitiacus. — **col(n)loquitur**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *colloquor, -i, -locūtus*, 3 (con + loqui, *to speak together*). *colloquitur* agrees with a pron. implied in the termination, referring to Caesar as its subject-nom.

LINE 25. **simul**, adv. (kindred with the GK. *σύν* = *together with*). — **commonefacit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum*, 3 (commoneō + faciō) = *remind one forcibly*, hence *warn*; supply *cum* as direct obj. This verb and *ostendit*, l. 27, below, may, like verbs of teaching, take two objects — one of a person, and another of a thing. Observe that compounds of *faciō*, not prepositional, retain the ictus like the simple form. See A. & G. 19, d; G. 15, REM. 2; 11. 18, 2, a). — **quae**, nom. plur. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; used substantively = *what things*; it is the subject-nom. of *sint dicta (dicta sint)*.

LINE 26. **ipsō**, abl. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*; *ipsō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the participle *praesente*; see A. & G. 255, a; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4; *ipsō* refers to Divitiacus. — **praesente**, abl. sing. m. of the pres. participle *praesens, -ntis*; abl. absolute with the pron. *ipsō*. Observe that the participle *praesēns* comes from the verb *praesum, -esse, -fui*; and that the abl. sing., referring to *persons*, usually ends in *-e*, to *things*, in *-i*. Our text conforms to the rule, and *praesente* is abl. absolute with *ipsō*, referring to Divitiacus. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For the meaning of *in* after verbs of motion and of rest, see note on *in* with acc. or abl., l. 1, end, Chap. I. — **conciliō**, abl. sing. of the noun *concilium, -i*, n. (*calāre*, to call); *conciliō* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: *concilium* = *an assembly of distinguished persons for deliberation*; whereas *cōsiliū* = *the counsel taken in such assembly*. But the meanings of the two words are often confused in the MSS. and editions. — **Gallōrum**, gen. plur. of the adj. *Gallus, -a, -um*, used substantively; as a gen. it limits the noun *conciliō*.

LINE 27. **dē**, prep. with the abl.; lit. = *from*; here it = *about*. Observe that the prepositions *ab, dē* and *ex*, all = lit. *from*. But *dē* = *from*, i.e. any fixed point; *ab* = *from*, i.e. the external border; *ex* = *from*, i.e. the interior — from within a place or thing; *dē*, however, transf. to mental operations = *of, about, concerning* — the most common signification of the word; compare the GK. prep.  *περί* . — **Dumnorige**, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Dumnorix, -igis*, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. — **sint dicta (dicta sint)**, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive pass. of the verb *dicō, -ere, -dixi, dictum*, 3; pass. parts: *dicor, dicti, dictus*, 3. *sint dicta* agrees with its subject-nom. *quae*, l. 25, above; subjunctive, because an indirect question puts its verb in the subjunctive. Consult A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; A. 529, I, and 5, 1). — **et**, cop. conj., connects *commonefacit* and *ostendit*. — **ostendit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum*, 3 (ob + tendere, *to stretch towards*). *ostendit* agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar.

disclosed to him what remarks each man had privately made concerning him in Caesar's pres- ence. Caesar begged and ent- reated him not to be offended, if Caesar himself	quae <i>what (things)</i>	sēparātīm <i>separately</i>	quisque <i>each one</i>	dē <i>about</i>	eō 28 <i>him</i>
	apud <i>with</i>	sē <i>himself</i>	dixerit. <i>had spoken.</i>	Petit <i>He begs</i>	atque 29 <i>and also</i>
	hortātur, <i>exhorts,</i>	ut <i>that</i>	sine <i>without</i>	ēius <i>his,</i>	offēnsiōne 30 <i>aversion,</i>
	animī <i>mind's,</i>	vel <i>either</i>	ipse <i>himself</i>	dē <i>about</i>	eō <i>him,</i>
					causā 31 <i>the case</i>

LINE 28. **quae**, acc. plur. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; direct obj. of *dixerit*. — **sēparātīm**, adv. (*sēparāre*, to separate); as an adv. it modifies the verb *dixerit*. — **quisque**, nom. sing. of the indef. pron. *quisque, quaeque, quidque*, declined like the indef. *quis* with *-que* appended, which gives a notion of universality to the word. *quisque* is the subject-nom. of *dixerit*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl.; see note on *dē*, l. 27, above. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eō* is the obj. of the prep. *dē*, and refers to *Dumnorix*; in the Latin *dē eō* here = *dē Dumnorige*.

LINE 29. **apud**, prep. with the acc.; *apud* with names of persons often = *in the presence of*. — **sē**, acc. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *apud*; it refers to Caesar; or in the Latin, here *apud sē* = *apud Caesarem*. — **dixerit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of the verb *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quisque* in number and person; supply *eum* as direct obj.; subjunctive, because an indirect question. We regard the construction in lines 25-29 as informal indirect discourse; the direct: *quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud mē dīxit?* the indirect: *egō ostendō, quae*, etc.; or, as Caesar uses the 3d pers. in regard to himself — *ostendit*. As a voucher for our opinion, compare *quid cōsiliū sit, ostendit*, l. 12, Chap. XXI. The *quae*-clauses, however, might be taken as characteristic subjunctive clauses. — **Petit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *peto, -ere, petī (-iī), -itum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar as the subject-nom. — **atque** (*ad + que*), conj.; usually adds a notion = *and also*. Compare note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 30. **hortātur**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *hortor, -ārī, -ātus*, 1 (radical *hor*, stir, urge; compare Latin *orior*, and GK. *ὀρῶω*); connected by the conj. *atque* with the verb *petit*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **ut**, telic conj.; it connects the main with the subordinate clause. — **sine** (*sē + nē*) = lit. *by itself*; hence *separate, without*; prep. with the abl. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a poss. pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it is an attributive of *animī*. — **offēnsiōne**, abl. sing. of the noun *offēnsiō, -ōnis*, f. (ob + *fendere*, lit. *to strike against*); hence the noun = lit. *a striking against*, i.e. *a stumbling*, and transf. *an offense*. *offēnsiōne* is the obj. of the prep. *sine*.

LINE 31. **animī**, gen. sing. of the noun *animus, -ī*, m.; objective gen., limiting *offēnsiōne*. The allusion is to the feelings of Divitiacus. For synonyms, see note on *animō*, l. 2, Chap. X. — **vel** (imperative of *volō*), alternative conj. *vel . . . vel* = *either . . . or*. For synonyms, see note on *aut* . . . *aut*, l. 19, Chap. I. — **ipse**, intensive pron.; it is expressed for emphasis, refers to Caesar, and is the subject-nom. of the verb *statuat*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl.; see note on *dē*, l. 27, above. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d

32	cōgnitā	statuat,	vel	cīvitātem	should decide the case after examination, or should order the Aeduan state to do it.
	having been examined,	should determine,	or	the state	
33	statuere	iubeat.			
	to determine,	he should order.			

1	XX.	Divitiacus	multis	cum	lacrimis	XX. Divitiacus embracing Caesar began with tears to beseech him not to pro-
		Divitiacus	many	with,	tears	
2	Caesarem	complexus	obsecrāre	coepit,		
	Caesar	having embraced,	to implore	began,		

pers., referring to Dumnorix. *cō* is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *causā*, abl. sing. of the noun *causa*, -ae, f. (sometimes *caussa*; etymology dubious); abl. absolute with *cōgnitā*.

LINE 32. *cōgnitā*, abl. f. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus*, -a, -um of the verb *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, 3 (cum, intensive + [g]nōscere). *cōgnitā* is in the abl. absolute construction with *causā*, denoting time. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — *statuat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of the verb *statuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3 (*status*, standing). *statuat* agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*; it is in the subjunctive mode — purpose after *ut*. See A. & G. 317, 1; B. 200; G. 546; H. 498, I. — *vel*, see note on *vel*, preceding line. — *cīvitātem*, acc. sing. of the noun *cīvītās*, -tātis, f. (*cīvēs*); subject-acc. of *statuere*. Observe that the abstract is put for the concrete — the state for the people of the state.

LINE 33. *statuere*, pres. inf. of the verb *statuō*, 3; see parts given in preceding line; its subject-acc. is *cīvitātem*. Supply *eam*, i.e. *causam*, as direct obj. — *iubeat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of the verb *iubeō*, -ere, iūssī, iūssum, 2; connected by the conj. *vel* with *statuat*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason, viz., purpose after *ut*.

LINE 1. *Divitiacus*, -ī, m.; an Aeduan chieftain; subject-nom. of *coepit*. — *multis*, abl. plur. of the adj. *multus*, comparative *plūs*, superl. *plūrimus*; *multis* is an attributive of *lacrimis*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. As to its position between the noun and its modifier, see A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 2; H. 569, II. — *lacrimis*, abl. plur. of *lacrima*, -ae, f.; abl. of manner with the prep. *cum*. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Observe that the word is sometimes *lacryma* and *lachryma*, and even *lacruma*; compare GK. δάκρυμα.

LINE 2. *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; direct obj. of the deponent participle *complexus*. Note that participles are followed by the same cases as their verbs. — *complexus*, perf. participle of the deponent verb *complector*, -ī, -plexus (com + plectere, GK. πλέκω, lit. to plait together); hence *complexi* = to embrace. *complexus*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *Divitiacus*. — *obsecrāre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *obsecrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ob + sacrāre [ob + sacrum]); hence *obsecrāre* = lit. to ask for God's sake, i.e. to beseech. Observe that *obsecrāre* is a complementary inf. and depends on *coepit*, and also, that it is modified by the adverb-phrase *cum lacrimis*; and further, that it is followed by the acc. of the person *eum* understood, referring to *Caesarem* and the following subjunctive clause *nē quid . . . statueret* as the acc. of the thing. — *coepit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of *coepī*, *coepisse*, fut. participle *coepitūrus*, perf. pass. participle *coepitus*; a defective verb used chiefly in the praeterite tenses. *coepit* agrees with its subject-nom. *Divitiacus*.



nounce too severe a sentence on his brother, saying that he was aware that the charges made by Caesar were true; that no one had more	nē that not	quid anything	gravius too severe	in against (his)	frātre <sup>3</sup> brother
	statueret:		Scīre To know	sē himself	(he knew) <sup>4</sup>
	illa	esse	vēra, true,	nec	quemquam any one
		those (things) to be		not	ex <sup>5</sup> on account of

LINE 3. *nē*, adv., primitive negative particle, archaic form *nei*; sometimes, a conj. = *lest*. — *quid*, acc. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; the direct obj. of *statueret*. Observe that the indef. pron. *quis* is, usually, found in the combinations *sī quis*, *nē quis*, and *num quis*; and that in the older editions they are written together thus: *siquis*, *nēquis*, *namquis*. — *gravius*, acc. sing. n. of the adj., comparative degree *gravior*, -us; positive *gravis*, superl. *gravissimus*. *gravius* is a modifier of the substantive pron. *quid*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. For its meaning with verbs of motion and verbs of rest, see under *In*, A. & G. 153, 1, 2; B. 120, 1, 2, 3; G. 418, 1, 2; H. 435, 1. — *frātre*, acc. sing. of the noun *frāter*, *frātris*, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 4. *statueret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *statuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3; imperf. subjunctive — negative purpose after the particle *nē*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546; H. 498, I. *statueret* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Caesarem*. Observe that if this dependent clause were expressed as an imperative sentence, it would take the perf. subjunctive — hortatory, i.e. *nē statueret* would = *nē statueritis*. See A. & G. 269, a, 1; B. 189, REM. 1, end; G. 263, (b); H. 484, IV, NOTE 1, and 489, 3; informal indirect discourse. But from this point, i.e. from *Scīre* to *verterentur*, l. 22, the discourse is the formal *ōrātiō obliqua*. Before entering upon its grammatical analysis, let us read again A. & G. 336–342; B. 244, 245; G. 650–661; H. 522–530; and then observe that the words *obsecrāre coepit* are equivalent to an historical perf. tense = *dixit*; that the entire speech hangs, so to speak, thereon; that the main clauses of the declaratory sentences are in the inf. with the acc.; and that the sequence of tenses, in the subordinate clauses, is the secondary sequence. — *Scīre*, pres. inf. act. of *sciō*, *scīre*, *scīvī* (-ī), *scītum*, 4; its subject-acc. is the reflexive pron. *sē*. Synonyms: *scīre* = *to know*, in the widest sense; while *vidēre* = knowledge that comes through the organ of sight, and *intellegere*, knowledge as a rational discernment, and *sensire* as a natural discernment, especially through the sensibility, and *cōgnōscere* as an historical discernment — through tradition; *scīre* = *to know* in all these significations. The *ōrātiō recta*: *sciō* *egō*. — *sē*, acc. sing. m. of the pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; subject-acc. of the inf. *scīre*.

LINE 5. *illa*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *ille*, -la, *īud*, gen. *illius*, dat. *illī*. The reference is to the charges made against Dumnorix in the two immediately preceding chapters. This pron. is used to point in either direction, backward or forward; so is *hic* and *is*; but *ille* is more emphatic than *hic* or *is*, in such use, and often refers to an object as somewhat remote. *illa* is subject-acc. of *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; used here in the regular construction with the subject-acc. after a verb of knowing. See A. & G. 272; B. 194; G. 527; H. 535, I, 1, (a); i.e. after *verba sentiendi et declarandi*. But observe that the pres. inf. after an historical tense represents the imperf. tense in English. See A. & G. 288; B. 195, (b); G. 281, I; H. 537. — *vēra*, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *vērū*, -a, -um; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *nec*, conjunctive adv.; used indiscrim-

6	eō	plūs	quam	sē	dolōris	capere,	grief on his brother's account than himself; for though he could accomplish much at home and in other parts of Gaul by his influence, his brother could accomplish very little on ac-
	him	more	than	himself,	of grief	to take,	
7	propterea	quod,	cum	ipse	grātiā		
	for this reason,	because,	though	himself	by (his) influence		
8	plūrimum	domī	atque	in	reliquā		
	very much,	at home	and also	in	the rest		
9	Galliā,	ille	minimum	propter			
	of Gaul,	he	very little	on account of			

inately with *neque* before vowels and consonants; it modifies *quemquam* as an adj. pron. — **quemquam**, acc. sing. m. of the indef. pron. *quisquam*, subst. *quidquam* or *quicquam* (quis + quam). The compound form makes an indefinite relative; this pron. is used in negative clauses. *quemquam* is subject-acc. of *capere*. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before either vowels or consonants).

LINE 6. **eō**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ex*; here *ex eō* = *ex Dumnorige*; the phrase indicates the source or cause of Divitiacus's grief. Some, however, make *ex eō* = *from that fact*, i.e. from the conduct of Dumnorix, taking *eō* as neuter gender. — **plūs**, acc. n. of the comparative adj. *plūs, pluris*; used adverbially; superl. *plūrimum*; as an adv. it modifies *capere*. — **quam**, conj.; with comparatives = *than*. — **sē**, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; it is the subject-acc. of *capere*, to be supplied. — **dolōris**, gen. sing. of the noun *dolor, -ōris*, m.; partitive gen. after *plūs*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 369; H. 397, 3. — **capere**, pres. inf. of the verb *capīō, -ere, cēpī, captum*, 3; its subject-acc. is *quemquam*.

LINE 7. **propterea**, adv. (*propter* + *eā*) = lit. *on account of these things*; the long *ā* in this compound, and the *ā* in other words formed after its analogy are anomalies. See note on this word, l. 9, Chap. I. — **quod**, conj.; originally an acc. of specification of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; used adverbially; but here *quod* is a conj. introducing the clause *quod . . . per sē crēvisset*. — **cum**, concessive conj. = *although*. — **ipse**, intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; *ipse* refers to Divitiacus; is expressed for emphasis; and is subject-nom. of *posset*, to be supplied from the following clause. — **grātiā**, abl. sing. of the noun *grātia, -ae, f.*; abl. of cause. A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416.

LINE 8. **plūrimum**, adverbial acc. of the adj. *plūrimus, -a, -um*; superl. of the comparative *plūs*; it modifies *posset* understood. Consult A. & G. 240, a; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 334, REM. 1; H. 378, 2. — **domī**, locative case of the noun *domus, -ūs, -i*, locative. See A. & G. 258, d; B. 176; G. 411, REM. 2; H. 426, 2. — **atque** (*ad* + *que*), conj.; adds a more emphatic notion. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — **reliquā**, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *reliquus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of the noun *Galliā*. For synonyms, see note on *reliqua*, l. 7, Chap. V.

LINE 9. **Galliā**, abl. sing. of the noun *Gallia, -ae, f.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. The reference is to all Gaul outside of the Aeduan country. — **ille**, nom. sing. of the dem. adj. pron. *ille, -la, -lud*, gen. *illius*, dat. *illī*; it is subject-nom. of the verb *posset*; it refers to Dumnorix, as somewhat removed from the place of interview; if he had been near or present, *hic* would have been used. — **minimum**, adverbial acc. of the adj. *minimus, -a, -um*, superl. degree of *parvus*, comparative *minor*; it modifies *posset*. See grammatical references to *plūrimum*, l. 8, above. — **propter**, prep. with the acc.

count of his youth; yet by his means he had become influen- tial, and was us- ing the resources of power thus acquired for the diminution not to say, but almost for the destruc-	adolēscēntiam (his) youth, crēvisset; he had become powerful; nervīs      nōn power      not grātiam,      sed (his) favor,      but	posset, was able, quibus which solum only paene almost	per through opibus influence ad for, ad for	sē 10 himself ac 11 and minuendam 12 to be lessened perniciem 13 destruction
---	---	---	--	---

LINE 10. **adolēscēntiam**, acc. sing. of the noun *adolēscēntia*, -ae, f. (*adolēscēns*); the obj. of the prep. *propter*. Observe (a) that *grātia*, l. 7, above, denoting subjective cause, is in the abl., while (b) the phrase *propter adolēscēntiam* denotes an objective cause, i.e. that his little influence was a mere incident of his youth; and that (c) *adolēscēntia* denotes the period between that of the *puer* and that of the *iuvenis*, i.e. between 15 and 30 years of age. — **posset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis, able + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *ille*, i.e. *Dumnorix*, in number and pers.; it is in the subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in the *oratio obliqua*. *posset* might better be taken as in the subjunctive after *cum* concessive. See A. & G. 313, d; B. 211; G. 587; H. 515, III. — **per**, prep. with the acc. = like GK. *διὰ*, motion *through* space, transf. = the means, the cause of an action. — **sē**, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi* *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *per*; it refers to *Divitiacus*.

LINE 11. **crēvisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *crēscō*, -ere, *crēvi*, *crētum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Dumnorix*; it is in the subjunctive, because it is in the *quod* (or subordinate) clause in the *oratio obliqua*. — **quibus**, abl. plur. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the ideas contained in the last three clauses, but is used here adjectively, and is an attributive of *opibus*. For the best way of translating a rel. at the beginning of a sentence, see A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — **opibus**, abl. plur. of an assumed theme *ops*, *opis*, f. (kindred with *opus*, compare *ops*, personification — the goddess of riches). *opibus* is in the abl. after the verb *ūteretur*, l. 14, below. Consult A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I. — **ac**, shortened form of *atque* (ad + que). *ac* is used only before consonants. *ac* as a conj. connects *opibus* and *nervīs*.

LINE 12. **nervīs**, abl. plur. of the noun *nervus*, -ī, m.; connected by the conj. *ac* with *opibus*, and in the same grammatical construction. Observe that *nervus*, sing. = a *sinev*; in the plur. = *sinevos* as symbol of strength, i.e. transf. *power*. — **nōn** (*nē* + *oenum* or *ūnum*, apocopated), adv., modifies *solum*. — **solum** (*sōlum*, adj., alone), modifies the gerundive phrase *ad minuendam grātiam*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **minuendam**, acc. sing. f. of the gerundive *minuendus*, -a, -um of the verb *minuo*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 3 (*minus*, less); the gerundive agrees with *grātiam*.

LINE 13. **grātiam**, acc. sing. of the noun *grātia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that the gerundive construction following *ad* here denotes *purpose*; and consult A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 544, 2, NOTE 2. — **sed**, conj., strongest of the adversatives; usually contradicts what immediately precedes. — **paene** (*pēne*), adv. = *almost*; no comparative; superl. *paenissimē* = *utterly*. *paenē* modifies the adverb-phrase *ad perniciem suam*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.

14	suam	ūterētur.	Sēsē	tāmen	et	tion of his — Di-
	his,	he used.	Himself,	yet	both	vitiacus's—influ-
15	amōre	frāternō	et	existimātiōne	vulgī	ence. Still love
	by love	fraternal	and	the opinion	of the people	for his brother
16	commovērī.		Quod	sī	quid	and public opin-
	to be moved (he was moved).		As to which	if	anything	ion affected him
						greatly. Now
						if Caesar should

— **perniciem**, acc. sing. of the noun *perniciēs*, -ēī, f. (per, intensive + necō [nex, death]); hence *perniciēs* = lit. utter destruction. *perniciem* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*.

LINE 14. **suam**, acc. sing. f. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of the noun *perniciem*; *suam* refers to Divitiacus. The reader will note that this noun-phrase, and the gerundive-phrase in the preceding line denote *purpose*. — **ūterētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *ūtor*, -ī, ūsus, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix. *ūterētur* is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. The student will observe that this member of the sentence by the phrase *quibus opibus*, which = *et eis opibus*, is connected with *crēvisset*, and is in the subjunctive for the same reason. See note on *crēvisset*, l. 11, above. — **Sēsē**, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, se, se*, reduplicated; *sēsē* is the subject-acc. of *commovērī*. — **tāmen**, adv., introduces a thought in opposition to concession, expressed or implied. — **et . . . et**, conjunctions = *both . . . and*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 4-14 reads: *Sciō haec esse vērā, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam egō dolōris capī, propterea quod, cum egō ipse grātiā plurimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adolēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur*.

LINE 15. **amōre**, abl. sing. of the noun *amor*, -ōris, m. (*amō*); abl. of cause after the pass. verb *commovērī*. Consult A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416. Synonyms: *amor* = *love* in the most comprehensive sense, inclusive of even the affection of brutes; whereas *caritās*, denoting the impulse of affection arising from esteem and reflection, is used of men only. — **frāternō**, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *frāternus*, -a, -um (*frāter*); it is an attributive of *amōre*. — **et**, see *et* in preceding line. — **existimātiōne**, abl. sing. of the noun *existimātiō*, -ōnis, f.; connected by the conjunction *et* with *amōre*, and in the same grammatical construction. Synonyms: *aestimātiō* (*aestimō*) = the extrinsic value of an object; whereas *existimātiō* (*ex* + *aestimō*) = *an opinion* after estimating the value of an object, i.e. = *an opinion* of an object because of its value. — **vulgī**, gen. sing. of *vu(o)lgus*, -ī, n. (digammated from the GK. *ὄχλος*); as a gen. it limits *existimātiōne*. Observe that *vu(o)lgus*, though usually neuter, is m. in *Verg.* A. 2, 99. Synonyms: *vulgus* = *the crowd, the rabble*; *plēbs* = *the common people* in distinction from the patricians; and *populus* = *the people* in their civil capacity.

LINE 16. **commovērī**, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *commoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2; pass. parts: *commoveor*, -vērī, -mōtus, 2; its subject-acc. is *Sēsē*, l. 14, above. — **Quod**, adverbial acc. n. of the rel. *quī, quae, quod* = lit. *as to which*; but in transitions with *sī* = *now if*, or *but if*, and *if*, according to meaning of context. — **sī**, conditional particle, introducing a protasis. — **quid**, nom. sing. of the indef. pron. *quis, quae, quid*, used substantively, and subject-nom. of *accidisset*.

visit Dumnorix with severe pun- ishment, every one would think that the punish- ment had been inflicted with his consent, inas- much as he was Caesar's intimate friend; and the	eī to him cum since eum him nōn (would think) not	ā from ipse he himself tenēret, held, nōn by his	Caesare Caesar eum that nēmīnem no one suā by his	gravius too severe locum place voluntāte will	accidisset, 17 should happen, amicitiāe apud 18 of friendship with existimātūrum 19 to be about to think factum; 20 (it) to have been done;
--	--	---	--	--	--

LINE 17. *eī*, dat. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *accidisset*. *eī* refers to Dumnorix. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — *Caesare*, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Caesar, -aris*, m.; abl. of the source or agent. The construction is somewhat anomalous: the agent usually follows pass. verbs; but *if anything should happen to him from Caesar* would = *if anything should be done to him by Caesar*. Consult A. & G. 246, and NOTE; B. 96, REM. I, end; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *gravius*, acc. sing. n. of the comparative adj. *gravior, -us*; *gravius* modifies the substantive indef. pron. *quid*, and = *too severely*. Consult A. & G. 93, a; B. 163, REM. 6; G. 297, 2; H. 444, 1. — *accidisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *accidō, -ere, -idi* (ad + cadere); hence *accidere* = lit. *to fall to*, i.e. *to befall*. *accidisset* agrees with *quid* expressed as subject-nom.; it is in the subjunctive after *si* in the protasis for the fut. perf. in direct discourse, i.e. for *acciderit*.

LINE 18. *cum*, conj. causal; here it = *since*. — *ipse*, nom. sing. m. of the emphatic dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi*; it refers to Divitiacus; it is expressed for emphasis, and is the subject-nom. of the verb *tenēret*. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of *locum*. — *locum*, acc. sing. of the noun *locus, -i*, m.; plur. *loci* or *loca*, i.e. m. or n., but with difference of signification; see note on *loci*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locum* is the direct obj. of *tenēret*. — *amicitiāe*, gen. sing. of the noun *amicitia, -ae*, f. (*amicus*); as a gen. it limits *locum*. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. = *among, with, before*; with names of persons it sometimes = *at the house of*.

LINE 19. *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it here refers to Caesar; it is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. — *tenēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *teneō, -ere, -ui, tentum*, 2; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*, expressed; it is a subjunctive after *cum* causal. See A. & G. 326; B. 198, (c); G. 586; H. 517. — *nēmīnem*, acc. sing. of the noun *nēmō, -inis* (*nē + homō*); used only in the nom. and acc.; for the gen. *nūllus* and *nūllō* are used, but *nēmīne* sometimes occurs with a pass. participle. *nēmīnem* is subject-acc. of *existimātūrum (esse)*. — *existimātūrum (esse)*, fut. inf. act. of the verb *existimō, -āre, -avi, -atum*, 1 (ex + aestimō); its subject-acc. is *nēmīnem*.

LINE 20. *nōn*, adv. (*nē + oenum* or *ūnum*); it modifies *factum (esse)*; but *nēmīnem nōn* = a general affirmative, i.e. = *every one*. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *voluntāte*. — *voluntāte*, abl. sing. of the noun *voluntās, -ātis*, f.; abl. of *in accordance with*. See A. & G. 253, and NOTE; B. 162; G. 397; H. 416. For synonyms, see l. 19, Chap. VII. — *factum (esse)*, perf. inf. of *fiō, fieri, factus*, used as the pass. of *faciō, -ere, feci, factum*, 3. Supply *id* as subject-acc. of *factum (esse)*, referring to *quid gravius*, lines 16 and 17, above.

21	quā	ex	rē	futūrum,	utī	tōtius	outcome would be that the affections of all the people of Gaul would be alienated from him. When thus with many words he was tearfully be-
	which	from	thing (it)	to be about to be,	that	of entire	
22	Galliae	animī	ā	sē	āverterentur.		
	Gaul	the affections	from	himself	would be turned.		
23	Haec	cum	plūribus	verbīs	flēns	ā	
	These (things)	when	with very many	words	weeping,	from	

LINE 21. *quā*, abl. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; used here adjectively as an attributive of the noun *rē*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before either vowels or consonants). Observe that *ex* = *from* within a place or thing — from the interior, while *ab* = *from* the external border of any place or thing; and *dē* = *from* any fixed point; but *dē* and *ex* with the abl. instead of the partitive gen. after cardinal numerals = *of*. — *rē*, abl. sing. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f.; *rē* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. The phrase *quā ex rē* refers to the notion of his ordering the punishment of Dumnorix. Observe the position of the monosyllabic prep. between the noun and its modifier; and consult A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; II. 569, II, 1. — *futūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui*; used impersonally; and note that *futūrum* (*esse*), *utī* . . . *āverterentur* form a periphrasis for the fut. pass. in direct discourse. See A. & G. 288, f; B. 195 (b), G. 531, PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE; II. 537, 3. — *utī*, conj., the original form = *ut*; compare GK. *ὡς*. Note that the clause *utī* . . . *āverterentur* is the real subj. of *futūrum* (*esse*). See A. & G. 332, a, 2; B. 201, REM. 1, (c); G. 553, 3; H. 501, I. — *tōtius*, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *iōtus, -a, -um*; gen. *iōtius*, dat. *iōtī*. *tōtius* as a gen. limits *Galliae*.

LINE 22. *Galliae*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Gallia, -ae*, f.; as a gen. it limits *animī*. — *animī*, nom. plur. of the noun *ānimus, -i*, m.; it is subject-nom. of *āverterentur*. For synonyms, see note on *animō*, l. 2, Chap. X. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *sē*, abl. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *ā*. Observe that actual separation after verbs compounded with a prep. requires the repetition of the prep. See A. & G. 243, b; B. 160, REM. 1; G. 390, 1; H. 413. — *āverterentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *āverto, -ere, -verti, -versum*, 3 (*ā* + *vertere*); hence *āvertere* = lit. *to turn from*. *āverterentur* agrees with its subject-nom. *animī*; it is in the subjunctive of result after *utī*. The *oratio recta* of lines 14-22: *Ego tāmen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid ei ā tē gravius acciderit, cum egō ipse hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nemo existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āverterentur.*

LINE 23. *Haec*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*; it refers to the things just mentioned; grammatically it is the direct obj. of *peteret*. — *cum*, conj., temporal. Observe the emphasis put on *haec* by putting it before *cum*. — *plūribus*, abl. of the comparative *plūs, pluris*; positive *multus*, superl. *plūrimus*. *plūribus* is an attributive of *verbīs*. — *verbīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *verbum, -i*, n.; abl. of manner. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; II. 419, III. — *flēns*, nom. sing. of the pres. participle *flēns, flentis* of the verb *flēō, -ere, flēvi, flētum*; the participle as such agrees with the subj. of the verb *peteret*, to be supplied. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants).

seeing Caesar,	Caesare	peteret,	Caesar	ēius	dextram	24
Caesar grasped	Caesar	he sought,	Caesar	his	right hand	
his right hand,						
and cheering him,						
begged him to	prēndit;	cōnsolātus	rogat,	finem	ōrandī	25
make an end of	takes;	consoling (him),	he asks, (that) an end of pleading			
his petition. He						
declared that Di-	faciat;	tantī	ēius apud sē	grātiām		26
vitiacus's influ-	he will make;	of such worth,	his,	with himself,	influence,	

LINE 24. **Caesare**, abl. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *a*. The reader of Latin is aware that verbs of *asking* take a primary and a secondary obj., i.e. the acc. of the person and the acc. of the thing. But *petō* takes the acc. of the thing, and the abl. of the person, as in the text. Consult A. & G. 239, 2. c, and NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, REM. 1; H. 374, 2, NOTE 4. — **peteret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *petō*, -ere, *petivī* (*petiū*), *petitum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Divitiacus; it is in the subjunctive after *cum* temporal or historical. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — **Caesar**, -aris, m., subject-nom. of *prēndit*. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it refers to Divitiacus; as a gen. it limits *dextram*. — **dextram**, acc. sing. of the noun *dextra*, -ae, f.; really the fem. of the adj. *dexter*, -tra, -trum, used substantively; or supply *manum*; *dextram* is the direct obj. of *prēndit*.

LINE 25. **prēndit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *prēndō*, -ere, *prēndī*, *prēnsum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. A longer form *prehendō* is in use from which *prēndō* comes by syncope of the *h*, and the contraction of the vowels into long *ē* (*prae* + *hendō*). — **cōnsolātus**, perf. participle of the deponent verb *cōnsolor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1. The participle is used in an active signification; supply *cum*, i.e. *Divitiacum*, as the direct obj. — **rogat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *rogō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with a personal pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar; historical present. — **finem**, acc. sing. of the noun *fīnēs*, -is, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. *finem* is the direct obj. of *faciat*. — **ōrandī**, gen. of the gerund of the verb *ōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*ōrō ab ōre*, abl. of *ōs*, *ōris*, n.). *ōrandī* as a gen. limits *finem*. Consult A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, 1; G. 428; H. 542, I.

LINE 26. **faciat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Divitiacus; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, to be supplied. Consult A. & G. 331, and 2. REM.; B. 200, REM. 3; G. 546, REM. 2; H. 499, 2. — **tantī**, gen. sing. n. of the adj. *tantus*, -a, -um; used substantively; or *pretiū* may be supplied. *tantī* is predicate gen. of price after *esse*. See A. & G. 252, a; B. 137; G. 380, REM. 1; H. 405. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *grātiām*. — **apud**, prep. with the acc. = *at*, *among*, *with*, *in the presence of*; sometimes with a personal pron. = *at the house of*. — **sē**, acc. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *apud*. — **grātiām**, acc. sing. of the noun *grātia*, -ae, f.; subject-acc. of the verb *esse*. Synonyms: *grātia* (derived from *grātus*, GK. *χάρις*), *favor* both subjective and objective; i.e. *grātia* = *the favor* one feels for another, or *the favor* in which one stands with another; whereas the Latin word *favor* has only a subjective signification; and *benevolentia* (*bene* + *volēns*) has always in it the notion of subjectivity = *love and good-will to another*.

27 esse	ostendit,	utī	et	rei-pūblicae	iniūriam	ence was worth
to be (is),	he shows,	that	both	the republic's	injury	so much to him,
28 et	suum	dolōrem	ēius	voluntātī	āc	that he would con-
and	his own	vexation,	to his	wish	and	done the wrong
29 precibus	condōnet.	Dumnorigem	ad	sē		done to the state
prayers,	he will surrender.	Dumnorix	to	himself		and the affront
30 vocat,	frātre	adhibet;	quae	in	eō	to himself, at his
he calls,	(his) brother	he brings in;	what (things)	in	him	wish and prayer.
						He summoned
						Dumnorix to his
						presence; he
						brought in his
						brother; he dis-

LINE 27. *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*. — *ostendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *ostendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum*, 3 (ob + tendere); hence *ostendere* = lit. *to stretch toward*. *ostendit* agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *utī*, see note on this particle, l. 21, above. — *et . . . et*, conjunctions repeated in coördinate phrases; sometimes called correlatives. — *rei-pūblicae*, gen. of the compound noun *rēs-pūblica*; both parts of the compound are declined; objective gen.; limits *iniūriam*. — *iniūriam*, acc. sing. of the noun *iniūria, -ae, f.* (in, negative + iūs); *iniūriam* is a direct obj. of *condōnet*.

LINE 28. *et*, see *et* immediately preceding. — *suum*, acc. sing. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus, -a, -um*. *suum* is an attributive of *dolōrem*. — *dolōrem*, acc. sing. of the noun *dolor, -ōris, m.*; connected by the conj. *et* with *iniūriam*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *voluntātī*; it refers to Divitiacus. — *voluntātī*, dat. of the noun *voluntās, -ātis, f.* (*volō*); dat. of the indirect obj. of *condōnet*. — *āc*, conj.; see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 29. *precibus*, dat. plur. of an assumed *prex, precis, f.*; but used in the sing. only in the abl. case. *precibus* is connected by the conj. *ac* with *voluntātī*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *condōnet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the verb *condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*, 1 (con + dōnāre); hence *condōnāre* = lit. *to give up*. *condōnet* is the subjunctive of result after *utī*, referring to *tantū*. Observe that the lit. translation is, substantially: Caesar gives up his indignation to the wish and prayers of Divitiacus; which is tantamount to saying that he pardons Dumnorix on account of Divitiacus's wish and prayers. Synonyms: *condōnāre* = *to give up*; then to give up as a debt; hence *to pardon*; whereas *ignoscere* = to pardon an offense by overlooking it. — *Dumnorigem*, acc. sing. of *Dumnorix, -igis, m.*; direct obj. of *vocat*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, se* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*.

LINE 30. *vocat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. Synonyms: *appellāre, nōmenāre, vocāre*; *appellāre* = *to call* — to appeal to for help; *nōmenāre* = *to call* by designating the name; whereas *vocāre* = *to call* — often in the sense of *to summon*, as in the text. — *frātre*, acc. sing. of the noun *frāter, -tris, m.*; direct obj. of *adhibet*. — *adhibet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *adhibeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum*, 2 (ad + habēre); hence *adhibere* = lit. *to have to, i.e. to bring in*. — *quae*, acc. plur. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; used here adjectively,



closed the censurable acts of Dumnorix; he set forth his own discoveries, and the complaints of the citizens; he warned him for the future to avoid every suspicious act; he	reprehendat, <i>he censures,</i>	ostendit; <i>he shows;</i>	quae <i>what (things)</i>	ipse 31 <i>he himself</i>
	intellegat, <i>knows,</i>	quae <i>what (things)</i>	civitās <i>the state</i>	querātur, 32 <i>complaints of,</i>
	prōpōnit; <i>he sets forth;</i>	monet, <i>he warns (him),</i>	ut <i>that</i>	in reliquum 33 <i>for the remaining</i>
	tempus <i>time</i>	omnēs <i>all</i>	suspiciōnēs <i>suspensions</i>	vitet; 34 <i>he should shun;</i>

agreeing with the noun *things* understood; or may be regarded as used substantively; *quae* is the direct obj. of *reprehendat*. — *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl., though with different significations; see note on *in*, l. 1, end, Chap. I; here *in* takes the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eō* is the obj. of the prep. *in*; it refers to Dumnorix.

LINE 31. *reprehendat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *reprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum*, 3 (re + prehendere); see note on *prēndit*, l. 25, above. *reprehendat* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar; subjunctive, because an indirect question. See A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, 1. — *ostendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum*, 3 (ob + tendere); it agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*, to be supplied. Observe that the indirect question-clause, as a noun-clause, is the direct obj. of *ostendit*. — *quae*, acc. plur. n. of the interrogative *quis, quae, quid*; direct obj. of *intellegat*. — *ipse*, nom. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi*; *ipse* is expressed for emphasis = *he himself*, and is subject-nom. of *intellegat*.

LINE 32. *intellegat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the verb *intellego, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*, i.e. *Caesar*, and is in the subjunctive, because an indirect question. — *quae*, acc. plur. of the interrogative *quis, quae, quid*; direct obj. of *querātur*. See note on *quae*, preceding line. — *civitās*, nom. sing. of the noun *civīlās, -ātis, f. (civēs)*; abs. *prō concrētō*; *civīlās*, here = *civēs civīlātis*. *civīlās* is the subject-nom. of *querātur*. — *querātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the deponent verb *queror, -i, questus*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *civīlās*; it is in the subjunctive, because an indirect question.

LINE 33. *prōpōnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the verb *prōpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum*, 3 (prō + pōnere); it agrees with *Caesar*, to be supplied as subject-nom. The reader will observe that Caesar narrates from the 23d line through this chapter from the *representatō* point of view, i.e. the verbs are in the historical pres. tense. The reader will further observe the omission of the copulative conj. (asyndeton) between the two indirect question-clauses that as noun-clauses are direct objects of *prōpōnit*. — *monet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *monēō, -ere, monui, monitum*, 2; historical pres.; it agrees with *Caesar* understood, as subject-nom. — *ut*, telic conj. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. and = *for*. — *reliquum*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *reliquus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *tempus*. For synonyms, see note on *reliqua*, l. 7, Chap. V.

LINE 34. *tempus*, acc. sing. of the noun *tempus, -oris, n.*; *tempus* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. As to the etymology, see note on *tempore*, l. 21, Chap. III. As to the idiomatic expression relative to *tempus*, see A. & G. 259, b; B. 171, REM. 5; G. 418, 1; H. 429, 2. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis, -e, an ī-stem*.

35	praeterita	sē	Divitiacō	frātrī	condōnāre	told him that he
	bygonēs,	himself,	to Divitiacūs	(his) brother	to give up,	would condone
36	dicit.	Dumnorigī	custōdēs	pōnit,	ut,	the past for the
	he says.	For Dumnorix	guards	he places,	that	sake of his brother
37	quae	agat,	quibuscum	loquātur,	scīre	Divitiacūs. He
	what (things) he may do,	whom with,	he may talk,	to know		appointed guards
38	possit.					for Dumnorix
	he may be able.					that he might be
						informed both
						as to his actions
						and companions.

*omnēs* is an attributive of *suspiciōnēs*. — *suspiciōnēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *suspiciō*, -ōnis, f. (*suspiciārī*, to suspect). *suspiciōnēs* is the direct obj. of the verb *vīlet*. — *vīlet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of the verb *vīlō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Dumnorix; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, telic. Consult A. & G. 317, and 331; B. 200, (b), and REM. 2; G. 545 and 546; H. 497, II, and 498, I.

LINE 35. *praeterita*, a participial acc. plur. of the participle *praeteritus*, -a, -um of the verb *praetereō*, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum, 4; used in the neuter plur. as a substantive. *praeterita* is the direct obj. of *condōnāre*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; it refers to Caesar; it is subject-acc. of *condōnāre*. — *Divitiacō*, dat. of the proper noun *Divitiacūs*, -ī, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *condōnāre*; see note on *voluntātī*, l. 28, above. — *frātrī*, dat. of the noun *frāter*, -tris, m.; an appositive of *Divitiacō*. — *condōnāre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *condōnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*; and the entire construction: *praeterita sē . . . condōnāre* is a substantive construction, and as such is the direct obj. of *dicit*.

LINE 36. *dicit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *dīcō*, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, 3; historic pres., and agrees with *Caesar*, to be supplied, as subject-nom. — *Dumnorigī*, dat. of the proper noun *Dumnorix*, -igis, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after the verb *pōnit*. — *custōdēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *custōs*, -ōdis, m. and f.; acc. of the direct obj. after *pōnit*. Consult A. & G. 225; B. 141; G. 345; H. 384, II. — *pōnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positum*, 3; historical pres.; it agrees with *Caesar*, to be supplied, as subject-nom. — *ut*, telic conj.; it introduces the telic clause *scīre possit*.

LINE 37. *quae*, acc. plur. of the interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; it is the direct obj. of the verb *agat*. — *agat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the verb *agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *actum*, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Dumnorigī*; subjunctive, because in an indirect question. — *quibuscum* (*quibus* + *cum*). *quibus* is the abl. plur. of the interrogative *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; it is the obj. of the enclitic *cum*, to which it is appended. As to the enclitic *cum* with pronouns, see A. & G. 99, e; B. 79, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 184, 6. — *loquātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the deponent verb *loquor*, -ī, *locūtus*, 3; it agrees with *Dumnorix*, to be supplied, as its subject-nom.; subjunctive, because in a clause containing an indirect question. — *scīre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *sciō*, -scīre, *scīvī* (-īī), *scītum*, 4; complementary inf. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. As to synonyms, see note on *scīre*, l. 4, above.

LINE 38. *possit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (*potis*, *able* + *sum*); *possit* is subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200, (b); G. 543, 3; H. 497, II.

XXI. On the same day as that of this interview with Divitiacus, Caesar was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain eight miles distant from his own camp; and he

XXI.	Eōdem	diē	ab	explōrātōribus	1
	On the same	day	by	scouts	
	certior	factus	hostēs	sub	monte
	more certain	being made,	the enemy	under	the mountain
	cōnsēdisse	mīlia	passuum	ab	ipsius
	to have encamped,	thousands,	of paces	from	his
	castrīs	octō,	quālis	esset	nātūra
	camp,	eight,	of what sort	was	the nature

LINE 1. **Eōdem**, abl. sing. m. of the iterative dem. pron. *īdem, eadem, idem, gen. eiusdem*; *eōdem* is an attributive of the noun *diē*. — **diē**, abl. sing. of the noun *diēs, diēi*, m. or f. in sing.; always m. in the plur. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — **ab**, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — **explōrātōribus**, abl. plur. of *explōrātor, -ōris*, m.; it is the abl. of the agent after the prep. *ab*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I.

LINE 2. **certior**, nom. sing. of the adj. comparative degree *certior, -us*; positive *certus*, superl. *certissimus*. *certior* is predicate adj. after *factus*. — **factus**, perf. participle of *fiō, fieri, factus*, used as pass. of *faciō, -ere, feci, factum*, 3; as a participle it agrees with Caesar, to be supplied as the subject-nom. of the verb *misit*. For the acc. and inf. following the phrase *certior factus*, as an expression of telling, see A. & G. 336, I, and FOOTNOTE (3); B. 194, 2; G. 527, 2; H. 535, 2. — **hostēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *hostis, -is*, m. and f.; it is the subject-acc. of *cōnsēdisse*. For synonyms, see note on *hostium*, l. 15, Chap. XI. — **sub**, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For the meaning of the prep., see A. & G. 153, *Sub, b*; B. 120, 3; G. 418, 2, (*b*); H. 435, I, *Sub*. — **monte**, abl. sing. of the noun *mōns, montis*, m. *monte* is the object of the prep. *sub*.

LINE 3. **cōnsēdisse**, perf. inf. act. of the verb *cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum*, 3 (con, intensive + *sedere* = lit. *to sit down*). — **mīlia**, acc. plur. of the adj. *mille*, indeclinable in the sing., used substantively in the plur., and regularly declined like an *f*-stem — sometimes written *millia*. *mīlia* is the acc. of extent of space. A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — **passuum**, gen. plur. of the noun *passus, -ūs*, m.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. Consult A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **ab**, prep. with the abl.; see note on *ab*, l. 1, above. — **ipsius**, gen. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*; it refers to Caesar; it is expressed for emphasis; as a gen. it limits *castris*.

LINE 4. **castrīs**, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum, n.*; in the sing. = a fortress; in the plur. = a camp; *castris* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. — **octō**, an indecl. num. adj.; it modifies *mīlia*. Note the phrase *ab ipsius castris* embodied in the phrase *mīlia passuum . . . octō*, by which the entire group of words is made emphatic. — **quālis**, predicate-nom. of the interrogative pron. *quālis, -e (quis)*; predicate after *esset*. — **esset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *nātūra*; it is the subjunctive, because an indirect question. Consult A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. — **nātūra, -ae**, nom. sing. f. (*nāscor*, be born); hence *nātūra* = lit. birth, rare; transf. = nature, the character of a thing or person. *nātūra* is the subject-nom. of *esset*.

5	montis	et	quālis	in	circuitū	sent men to find out what kind of a mountain it was,
	of the mountain	and	of what sort	in	the circuit	
6	ascēnsus	quī	cōgnōscerent,	mīsīt.		and what sort of an ascent there might be in some roundabout way.
	the ascent (those)	who	might ascertain	he sent.		
7	Renūntiātum est	facilem	esse.	Dē		The ascent was reported to him to be easy. He ordered his lieutenant with praetorial powers, Titus Labienus, to
	It was reported	easy	to be.	In the course of		
8	tertiā	vigiliā	T. Labiēnum,	lēgātum		
	the third	watch	Titus Labienus,	the lieutenant		
9	prō	praetōre,	cum	duābus	legiōnibus	
	in the place of	the praetor,	with	two	legions	

LINE 5. **montis**, gen. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m.; as a gen. it limits *nātūra*. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects the clauses. — **quālis**, interrogative pron., predicate after *esset*, to be supplied. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — **circuitū**, abl. sing. of the noun *circuitus*, -ūs, m. (*circum* + *ire*); it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. The phrase *in circuitū* = lit. *in a circuit*, i.e. *all around*, *round about*.

LINE 6. **ascēnsus**, nom. sing. of the noun *ascēnsus*, -ūs, m. (*ad* + *scēdere* = *to ascend*, opposed to *dēscēdere*). *ascēnsus* is the subject-nom. of *esset* understood. — **quī**, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *mīlītēs* understood as its antecedent, but is the subject-nom. of *cōgnōscerent*. The supplied antecedent to the rel. *mīlītēs* is the direct obj. of *mīsīt*. — **cōgnōscerent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is subjunctive mode, because in a clause expressing the purpose of *mīsīt*. Consult A. & G. 317, 2; B. 233, 1; G. 630; H. 497, I. — **mīsīt**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *mītō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *mīssum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar* understood.

LINE 7. **Renūntiātum est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. pass. of *renunt(c)iō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it is used here impersonally; but the real subj. is the infinitive clause *facilem esse* (*ascēnsus*). **est**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*; here used as a part of the compound tense *renūntiātum est*. — **facilem**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *facilis*, -e; an *f*-stem; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — **esse**, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is *ascēnsus*, to be supplied. — **Dē**, prep. with the abl.; here = *in the course of*; see note on *dē*, l. 10, Chap. XII, and on *dē*, l. 27, Chap. XIX.

LINE 8. **tertiā**, abl. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *vigiliā*. — **vigiliā**, abl. sing. of the noun *vigiliā*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *dē*; see note on *vigiliā*, l. 11, Chap. XII. — **T.**, an abbreviation for the praenomen *Titus*. — **Labiēnum**, acc. sing. of *Labiēnus*, -ī, m.; in apposition with *lēgātum*. *Labiēnus* is the *cōgnōmen*; the nōmen was *Attius*; for the person alluded to was Titus Attius Labienus; see note on *Labiēnum*, l. 12, Chap. X. — **lēgātum**, acc. sing. of the noun *lēgātus*, -ī, m. (*lēgere*, to delegate). *lēgātum* is subject-acc. of *ascēdere*, l. 11, below.

LINE 9. **prō**, prep. with the abl. — **praetōre**, abl. sing. of *praetor*, -ōris, m. (*prae* + *itor* [*ire*, to go]); *praetōre* is the obj. of the prep. *prō*. Here the phrase *prō praetōre* = *with the authority of a praetor*. The praetor had as his own right the power to command; the *lēgātus* only was temporarily invested with the power by

ascend during the third watch the highest point of the mountain's ridge, with two legions, and with those as guides who had recon- noitred the road; he stated to him his plan; and,	et	eīs	ducibus,	quī	iter	cōgnōverant,	10
	and	those (as)	guides,	who	the route	had discovered,	
	summum	iugum	montis	ascendere	iubet;	11	
	the highest	ridge	of the mountain	to climb	he orders;		
	quid	suī	cōnsiliī	sit,	ostendit.	Ipse	12
	what	of his own	plan	is,	he shows.	He himself	

his general. Labienus had this power in his own right by special grant. He had authority, accordingly, *in place of*, i.e. as if he were *praetor*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *duābus*, abl. sing. f. of the num. adj. *duo, duae, duo*; *duābus* is an attributive of *legiōnibus*. Note that *ūnus, duo* and *trēs* are the only cardinals up to *centum* that are declinable. — *legiōnibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *legiō, -ōnis* (*legere*, to choose); hence the noun = *a chosen number*. *legiōnibus* is abl. of accompaniment with *cum*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168; G. 392, and REM. 1; H. 419, I.

LINE 10. *et*, cop. conj. — *eīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. = *them*, connected by the conj. *et* with *legiōnibus*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *ducibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *dux, ducis* (compare *ducere*, to lead). *ducibus* is in apposition with *eīs*, used as a pron. *cum eīs ducibus = with them as guides*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *legiōnibus* and *ducibus*, and is the subject-nom. of *cōgnōverant*. — *iter*, acc. sing. of the noun *iter, itineris*, n.; it is the direct obj. of *cōgnōverant*. — *cōgnōverant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of the verb *cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum*, 3 (con + [g]nōscere, compare GK. γιγνώσκω). *cōgnōverant* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*.

LINE 11. *summum*, acc. sing. n. of the superl. degree of the adj. *superus*, comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *summum* is an attributive of *iugum*. — *iugum*, acc. sing. of the noun *iugum, -ī*, n. (*iungere*, to join); hence the noun = lit. a yoke; transf. = *summit*, the phrase *summum iugum = the top of the ridge*. — *montis*, gen. sing. of the noun *mōns, montis*, m. (radical *min*, compare *ēminens*, a projecting); hence *mōns* = lit. a projection, i.e. transf. a towering mass, a mountain. *montis* as a gen. limits *iugum*. — *as(d)cendere*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus*, 3 (ad + scandere); differs from *ēscendere* (ē + scandere) in that the latter = *to ascend from a place, to reach a high object by exertion*. *ascendere* with its subject-acc. *legātum* depends on *iubet*. — *iubet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the verb *iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar; *iubet* is an historical present.

LINE 12. *quid*, nom. sing. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; it is the subject-nom. of the intrans. verb *sit*. — *suī*, gen. sing. n. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it refers to Caesar, but is an attributive of the noun *cōnsiliū*. — *cōnsiliū*, gen. sing. of the noun *cōnsilium, -ī*, n. *cōnsiliū* is predicate-gen. after *sit*. Consult A. & G. 214, c; B. 133; G. 366, and REM. 2; H. 401, and NOTE 2. The student will note that *quid suī cōnsiliū sit = quid suum cōnsilium sit*, nearly. — *sit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because the question is indirect. See A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. Observe that this indirect question as a noun-clause is the direct obj. of *ostendit*. — *ostendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act.

13 <i>dē</i>	<i>quartā</i>	<i>vigiliā</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>itinere,</i>	during the fourth watch, Caesar himself hastened toward the enemy by the same road as they had gone, sending all his cavalry in advance. Publius Considius, who was thought to be very expert in military affairs,
<i>in the course of</i>	<i>the fourth</i>	<i>watch</i>	<i>by the same</i>	<i>route</i>	
14 <i>quō</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>iērant,</i>	<i>ad</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>contendit</i>
<i>by which</i>	<i>the enemy</i>	<i>had gone,</i>	<i>toward</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>he hastens</i>
15 <i>equitātumque</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>ante</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>mittit.</i>	
<i>cavalry</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>he sends.</i>
16 <i>P. Cōnsidius,</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>mīlitāris</i>		
<i>Publius Considius,</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>in regard to science</i>	<i>military</i>		

of the verb *ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum*, 3 (ob + *tendere*). *ostendit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *Ipse*, nom. sing. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; it refers to Caesar; it is expressed for emphasis; and is the subject-nom. of *contendit* and *mittit*, lines 14 and 15, below.

LINE 13. *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *quartā*, abl. sing. of the ordinal *quartus, -a, -um*; it modifies *vigiliā*. — *vigiliā*, abl. sing. of the noun *vigilia, -ae, f.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *dē*. But see note on this phrase, l. 8, above. — *eōdem*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *īdem, eadem, idem*; it is an attributive of the noun *itinere*. — *itinere*, abl. sing. of the noun *iter, itineris, n.*; abl. of the way by which. Consult A. & G. 258, g; B. 167, 5, (b); G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3). For synonyms, see note on *via*, l. 2, Chap. IX.

LINE 14. *quō*, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it is used both relatively and adjectively; it refers to *itinere* as a rel. pron., and is also an attributive of *itinere*, to be supplied, which is in the same grammatical construction as the preceding *itinere: way by which*. — *hostēs*, nom. plur. of the noun *hostis, -is, m. and f.*; it is subject-nom. of the verb *iērant*. Synonyms: *hostis* = a public enemy; *inimicus* = a private foe. — *iērant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *eō, ire, īvī (iī), itum*; syncopated for *iverant*; syncopation without contraction. See A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251, end; G. 131, 2; H. 235, 1. *iērant* agrees with its subject-nom. *hostēs*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. after a verb of motion. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *contendo, -ere, -dī, -tum, 3*; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. As to different significations of this verb, see note on *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 15. *equitātumque* (*equitatum + que*). *equitātum* is acc. sing. of the noun *equitātus, -ūs, m.* (from *equus* through *equitare*). *equitātum* is the direct obj. of the verb *mittit*. *que*, enclitic conj., connects *contendit* and *mittit*. — *omnem*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *omnis, -e, an ī-stem*; declined like *levis* or *mīlis*. *omnem* is an attributive of *equitātem*. — *ante*, adv. or prep.; here prep. with the acc. — *sē*, acc. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; it is the obj. of the prep. *ante*; it refers to Caesar. — *mittit*, 3d pers. sing. historical pres. ind. act. of the verb *mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum, 3*; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar.

LINE 16. *P.*, an abbreviation for *Pūblius, -ī, m.*, a Roman *praenōmen*. — *Cōnsidius, -ī, m.*, subject-nom. of *praemittitur*, l. 19, below. Nothing more is known

and who had had experience in Lucius Sulla's army, and, sub- sequently, in that of Marcus Crassus, was sent ahead with the scouts.	perītissimus <i>most skilled</i>	habēbātur <i>was held</i>	et <i>both</i>	in <i>in</i>	exercitū 17 <i>the army</i>
	L. Sullae <i>of Lucius Sulla</i>	et <i>and</i>	postea <i>afterwards</i>	in <i>in (that)</i>	M. Crassi 18 <i>of Marcus Crassus</i>
	fuerat, <i>had been,</i>	cum <i>with</i>	explōrātōribus <i>the scouts</i>	praemittitur. <i>is sent ahead.</i>	19

of Considius than that he served under Caesar in the first Gallic campaign, 58 B.C.; and that, as here intimated, Caesar supposed that he could be relied on, because of his experience under Sulla and Crassus. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *Cōsidiūs*, but is the subject-nom. of *habēbātur*. — *rei*, objective gen. of the noun *rēs, rei* (stem *rē*, shortened in gen. and dat. sing.); as a gen. it limits the adj. *perītissimus*. Consult A. & G. 218, a; B. 135; G. 374; H. 399, I. — *militāris*, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *militāris, -re (miles)*; it is an attributive of *rei*.

LINE 17. *perītissimus*, nom. sing. m. of the superl. degree of the adj., positive degree *perītus*, comparative *perītior* (radical *perī*, as seen in *experior*); hence *perītus* = lit. *tested*. *perītissimus* is predicate adj. after the pass. verb *habēbātur*. — *habēbātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. pass. of the act. verb *habēō, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2*; pass. parts: *habeor, habēri, habitus*; *habēbātur* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the verbs *habēbātur* and *fuerat*. — *in*, prep. with either acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *exercitū*, abl. sing. of the noun *exercitus, -ūs, m.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III.

LINE 18. *L.*, an abbreviation for *Lūciū*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Lūcius, -ī, m.*; *praenōmen*. — *Sullae*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Sulla, -ae, m.*; *cōgnōmen*; the *nōmen* was *Cornelius*, and the full name *Lūcius Cornelius Sulla*. *Sullae*, as a gen., limits *exercitū*. The allusion is to L. Cornelius Sulla Felix, the Roman dictator, the conqueror of Mithridates, and the celebrated opponent of Marius; a doubtful Roman patriot, who rewarded his friends with confiscated estates, and punished his enemies with death through proscriptions. — *et*, conj., a species of correlate, as we have here *et . . . et*. — *postea* (post + *eā*), adv.; it modifies *fuerat*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. *exercitū*, to be supplied from the preceding phrase. Note how the notions are kept distinct by the repetition of the prep. — *M.*, an abbreviation for *Marci*, gen. of the proper noun *Marcus, -ī, m.*; *praenōmen*. — *Crassi*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Crassus, -ī, m.*; as a gen. it limits *exercitū* understood. Marcus Crassus was a commander in the civil war, 71 B.C., and fought against Spartacus. Spartacus, it will be recalled, was a native of Thrace, a shepherd, a robber-chief, and then a leader of Roman slaves in plots of insurrection in Southern Italy. He was the most distinguished leader of slave insurrections of whom history gives any account.

LINE 19. *fuerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*; connected by the copulatives with the verb *habēbātur*, and has the same subject-nom., viz. the rel. *quī*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *explōrātōribus*, abl. plur. of the noun *explōrātor, -ōris, m.*; abl. of accompaniment. Consult A. & G. 248, a; B. 168; G. 392, and REM. I; II. 419, I. For synonyms, see note on *explōrātōrēs*, l. 7, Chap. XII. — *praemittitur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of the verb *praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3*; pass. parts: *praemittor, -mitti, -missus, 3*; it agrees with *P. Cōsidiūs* as its subject-nom., l. 16, above. Observe that from the 7th line the historical present is the tense of the leading verbs.

1	XXII.	Primā	lūce,	cum	summus	XXII. At day-break, when the summit of the mountain was in the possession of Labienus, and Caesar himself was not more than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp; and, as he aft-
		<i>At the first</i>	<i>light,</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>the top</i>	
2	mōns	ā	Labiēnō	tenērētur,	ipse	
	<i>of the mountain</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>Labienus</i>	<i>was held,</i>	<i>(Caesar) himself</i>	
3	ab	hostium	castrīs	nōn	longius	mille
	<i>from</i>	<i>the enemy's</i>	<i>camp</i>	<i>not</i>	<i>farther than</i>	<i>a thousand</i>
4	et	quīngentis	passibus	abesset,	neque,	ut
	<i>and</i>	<i>five hundred</i>	<i>paces</i>	<i>was distant,</i>	<i>nor,</i>	<i>as</i>

LINE 1. *Primā*, abl. sing. of the adj. *primus*, -a, -um, superl. degree; comparative *prior*. *primā* is an attributive of the noun *lūce*. — *lūce*, abl. sing. of the noun *lūx*, lucis, f.; abl. of *time when*. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; II. 429. — *cum*, conj., temporal. — *summus*, nom. sing. m. of *summus*, -a, -um; one form of the superl. degree of the adj. *superus*, positive; comparative *superior*; superl. *supremus* or *summus*. *summus* is an attributive of *mōns*. Observe that the phrase *summus mōns* = *the top of the mountain*. Consult A. & G. 193; B. 68, REM. 4; G. 291, REM. 2; H. 440, 2, NOTES 1 and 2.

LINE 2. *mōns*, *montis*, m., subject-nom. of *tenērētur*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). — *Labiēnō*, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Labienus*, -i, m.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*. See A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, 1. As to Labienus, see note on *Labienum*, l. 8, Chap. XXI. — *tenērētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. 'pass. of the verb *tencō*, -ēre, -nī, *tentum*, 2; pass. parts: *tencor*, -ēri, *tentus*, 2. *tenērētur* agrees with its subject-nom. *mōns*; it is subjunctive after *cum* temporal. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; II. 521, II. 2. — *ipse*, nom. sing. m. of the intensive pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; it refers to Caesar; it is subject-nom. of *abesset*, l. 4, below.

LINE 3. *ab*, prep. with the abl.; note its repetition after the verb *abesset*. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; as a gen. it limits *castris*. — *castris*, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -i, n.; in the sing. it = *castle*, *fort*; in the plur. it = *camp*. *castris* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *nōn* (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopated), adv.; modifies the adv. *longius*. — *longius*, adv., comparative degree of *longē*, rare form *longiter*; superl. *longissimē*. *longius* modifies *abesset*. — *mille*, indecl. num. adj., in the sing.; in the plur. *miliā* or *millia*; it is regularly declined. *mille* is here, of course, in the abl. plur. case, modifying *passibus*.

LINE 4. *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the adjectives *mille* and *quīngentis*. — *quīngentis*, abl. plur. of the cardinal num. adj. *quīngenti*, -ae, -a; it, too, modifies the noun *passibus*. Observe that the hundreds from *ducenti* to *nōngenti* inclusive are regularly declined like the plur. of *bonus*. — *passibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *passus*, -is, m. *passibus* is the abl. after the comparative *longius*, *quam* (than) being omitted. Consult A. & G. 247; B. 70, 2; G. 398; II. 417. — *abesset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *absum*, -esse, *ab(ā)fuī*, *ab(ā)futūrus* (*ab* + *sum*). *abesset* agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*; it is in the subjunctive, because still under the influence of *cum*. Observe the omission of the cop. conj. between the clauses (asyndeton). A. & G. 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 636, I, 1. — *neque*, conj. and adv.; here it = *et nōn*, and connects the third clause in the series of three subordinate clauses. — *ut*, with the ind., is a relative adv., and = *as*; with the subjunctive it is a conj., and = *that*.



erwards ascer- tained from the captives, neither his own arrival, north of Labie- nus was known, Considius with his horse at full speed rode up to him and said that the mountain of which he desired Labienus to get	postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius 5 afterwards from prisoners he ascertained, either his own
adventus aut Labienī cōgnitus esset, 6 coming or (that) of Labienus known was,	
Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum 7 Considius (his) horse being let go towards him	
accurrit, dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō 8 runs (and) says the mountain, which by Labienus	

LINE 5. *postea*, adv. (post + *eā*); it modifies *comperit*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *captivis*, abl. plur. of the noun *captivus*, -i, m. (*capere*, to capture). *captivis* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *comperit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *comperō*, -ire, *comperi*, -pertum, 4; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *aut*, conj.; *aut . . . aut* = either . . . or; see note on this particle, l. 19, Chap. I. — *ipsius*, gen. sing. of the intensive pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum; it refers to Caesar; it is expressed for emphasis, and limits *adventus*.

LINE 6. *adventus*, nom. sing. of the noun *adventus*, -ūs, m. (ad + *venire*); it is the subject-nom. of *cōgnitus esset*. — *aut*, see note on *aut*, preceding line. — *Labienī*, gen. sing. of *Labienus*, -i, m.; as a gen. it limits *adventus*, to be supplied. — *cōgnitus esset*, 3d pers. sing. of the pluperf. subjunctive pass. of the verb *cōgnoscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum, 3; pass. parts: *cōgnōscor*, *cōgnōscī*, *cōgnitus*. *cōgnitus esset* is connected by the conj. *neque* with the verb *abesset*, and is in the subjunctive for the same reason; *tenērētur*, *abesset* and *cōgnitus esset* are under the influence, so to speak, of *cum* temporal or historical. Observe that the verbs in the subordinate clauses are put in the secondary tenses, because the verb *accurrit* of the main clause is an historical present.

LINE 7. *Cōnsidius*, -i, m.; subject-nom. of the verb *accurrit*. See note on *Pūblius Cōnsidius*, l. 16, Chap. XXI. — *equō*, abl. sing. of the noun *equus*, -i, m.; in the abl. absolute with the participle *admissō*. — *admissō*, abl. sing. m. of the participle *admissus*, -a, -um of the verb *admittō*, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, 3 (ad + *mittere*); hence the phrase *equō admissō* = lit. *the horse being sent forward*, i.e. *being given loose reins to*. But observe that this phrase is less emphatic than *equō concitātō*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; *eum*, i.e. *Caesarem*.

LINE 8. *accurrit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *accurrō*, -ere, *accurrī* (-*currī*), -*cursum*, 3 (ad + *currere*). *accurrit* agrees with the proper noun *Cōnsidius* as its subject-nom. — *dicit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3; connected by *et* understood (asyndeton) with *accurrit*, and in the same grammatical construction. As to the omission of the conj., see A. & G. 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 636, I, 1. — *montem*, acc. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m.; *montem* is the subject-acc. of *tenērī*. — *quem*, acc. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the noun *montem*; it is the subject-acc. of *occupārī*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *Labiēnō*, abl. sing. m. of *Labienus*, -i, m.; abl. of the agent with prep. *ā* after the pass. verb *occupārī*. See A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. As to Labienus, see note on *Labienum*, l. 8, Chap. XXI.

9	occupārī	voluerit,	ab	hostibus	tenērī;	possession was held by the enemy; that he had ascertained this fact from the gleam of the Gallic arms and decorations. Caesar, accordingly, withdrew his troops to the nearest hill, and put them in battle array. La-
	to be seized	he wished,	by	the enemy	to be (is) held;	
10	id	sē	ā	Gallicis	armis	atque
	this (fact)	himself	from	the Gallic	arms	and
11	insignibus	cōgnōvisse.	Caesar	suās	cōpiās	
	ensigns	to have known.	Caesar	his own	troops	
12	in	proximum	collem	subdūcit,	aciem	
	to	the next	hill	draws off,	a battle line	

LINE 9. *occupārī* (ob + capere) = lit. *to seize upon*. — *voluerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of the irr. verb *volō, velle, volūi*; in the subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in informal indirect discourse; or, perhaps better, the relative clause may be considered an *integral part* of the sentence. Consult A. & G. 342; B. 235, REM. 1; G. 629; H. 529, II, NOTE 1, 1). *voluerit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar* as subject-nom. — *ab*, see note on *ā*, preceding line. — *hostibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *hostis, hostis*, m. and f.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ab*. See grammatical references to *Labienō*, preceding line. — *tenērī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *teneō, -ere, -uī, tentum*, 2; pass. parts: *teneor, -ēri, tentus*, 2. The subject-acc. of *tenērī* is *montem*.

LINE 10. *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively; or, one may supply the word *thing*, and still conceive of *id* as having an adj. force; *id* is the direct obj. of *cōgnōvisse*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*. *sē* is subject-acc. of *cōgnōvisse*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl.; see note on *ā*, preceding line. — *Gallicis*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *Gallicus, -a, -um* (*Gallia*); it is an attributive of *armis*. — *armis*, abl. plur. of the noun *arma, -orum*; abl. of cause with the prep. *ā*. Consult A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408, 3, end; H. 416, I, 1. For synonyms, see note on *armis*, l. 13, Chap. IV. — *atque* (ad + que), conj.; connects *armis* and *insignibus*.

LINE 11. *insignibus*, abl. plur. of the adj. *insignis, -e*, used as a noun. *insignibus* is connected by the conj. *atque* with the noun *armis*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *cōgnōvisse*, perf. inf. act. of the verb *cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nūtum*, 3; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. — *Caesar, -aris*, m.; subject-nom. of *subdūcit* and *instruit*. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus, -a, -um*; it is an attributive of *cōpiās*. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur. of the noun *cōpia, -ae*, f. (*cōpia* in the sing. = *abundance*; in the plur. = *resources, troops*). *cōpiās* is the direct obj. of the verb *subdūcit*. The student will observe that lines 8-11 are informal *ōrātiō obliqua*. The *ōrātiō recta* of these lines is as follows: *mōns, quem ā Labienō occupārī voluistī, ab hostibus tenetur; hoc egō ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cōgnōvī*.

LINE 12. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *proximum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *proximus, -a, -um*, superl. degree; comparative *propior, proximius* is the attributive of *collem*. — *collem*, acc. sing. of the noun *collis, -is*, m. *collem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *subdūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb *subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, 3 (sub + dūcere); hence *subdūcere* = lit. *to lead from below*. *subdūcit* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *aciem*, acc. sing. of the noun *aciēs, -ēi, f.*, gen. sometimes *aciī* and *aciē*; compare Latin *acer*, sharp,

bienus, as he had been directed by Caesar not to join battle un- less Caesar's own forces were seen near the enemy's camp, that on all sides at one and the same time an	instruit. Labiēnus, <i>he forms. Labienus,</i> ā Caesare, nē <i>by Caesar, that not</i> ipsius cōpiae <i>his own troops</i> visae essent, ut <i>should be seen, that</i>	ut erat ei praeceptum 13 <i>as was to him ordered</i> proelium committeret nisi 14 <i>battle he should join unless</i> prope hostium castra 15 <i>near the enemy's camp</i> undique ūnō tempore 16 <i>on every side at one time</i>
--	---	--

and GK. *axis*, the edge of a thing; hence, in military language *acer* = a line. *aciem* is the direct obj. of *instruit*. Note the omission of the conj. between the compound predicate *subdūcit* and *instruit*. Synonyms: *aciēs* = an army in battle array; *āgmen* = an army in motion; whereas *exercitus* = a disciplined army.

LINE 13. *instruit*, 3d pers. sing. historical pres. ind. act. of the verb *instruō*, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3 (in + struere, to build on); connected by the omitted *et* with *subdūcit*, and agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *Labiēnus*, -ī, m., subject-nom. of *expectābat* and *abstinēbat*, lines 18 and 19, below. — *ut*, adv. = *as*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; here used in forming the compound tense, pluperf. pass. *erat praeceptum* (*praeceptum erat*). — *ei*, dat. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; *ei* is dat. of the indirect obj. after the pass. *erat praeceptum*. Consult A. & G. 225, *e*; B. 140; G. 344; H. 384, I. — *praeceptum*, nom. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *praeceptus*, -a, -um of the verb *praeceptō*, -ere, -cēpti, -ceptum, 3; it forms with *erat* the pluperf. ind. pass., used impersonally.

LINE 14. *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *Caesare*, abl. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ab*. See A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *nē*, adv., primitive negative particle = *that not*. — *proelium*, acc. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *committeret*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliis*, I. 18, Chap. I. — *committeret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *committō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, 3; subjunctive of negative purpose after *nē*. See A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II. — *nisi* (*nē* + *sī* = lit. *not if*), conj.

LINE 15. *ipsius*, gen. sing. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum; it refers to *Caesar*; as a gen. it limits *cōpiae*. — *cōpiae*, nom. plur. of the noun *cōpia*, -ae, f. (co + ops); in the sing. = *plenty*; in the plur. = *troops*. *cōpiae* is the subject-nom. of *visae essent*. — *prope*, adv., and prep. with the acc.; here a prep. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of *hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f.; as a gen. it limits *castra*. — Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. a stranger; and then an enemy, especially a public enemy; whereas *inimicus* = a private foe. — *castra*, acc. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -ī, n.; in the sing. = a fort; in the plur. = a number of tents or huts located near each other; hence = a camp. *castra* is the obj. of the prep. *prope*.

LINE 16. *visae essent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *videor*, -ērī, *vīsus*, 2; or *visae* = *seen* may be taken as a participial predicate after *essent*. *essent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; or it might be taken as forming a part of the compound tense — pluperf. — *visae essent*; it is in the subjunctive mode after *nisi* in the protasis. Consult A. & G. 315, *a*; B. 204, 2; G. 591, 2, (*b*); H. 507, III; the apodosis is involved in the purpose-

17 in	hostēs	impetus	fieret,	monte	outset might be made against the enemy, after getting possession of the mountain
	against the enemy	an attack	might be made,	the mountain	
18 occupātō		nostrōs	exspectābat		was awaiting our men and holding aloof from battle.
	having been seized	ours	he was waiting for,		
19 proeliōque	abstinēbat.	Multō	dēnique		At length, Caesar, late in the day, learned from scouts that the
	from the battle and,	he was refraining.	Much	at length	
20 diē	per	explōrātōrēs	Caesar		
(being) the day,	through	scouts	Caesar		

clause *nē* . . . *committeret*. Observe that the text from *nē*, l. 14, above, to *essent*, inclusive, l. 16, above, is the logical subj. of *erat praeceptum* (*praeceptum erat*), l. 13, above. — *ut*, telic conj. — *undique* (*unde + que*); hence = lit. *whence-soever*; it modifies *fieret*. — *ūnō*, abl. sing. n. of the num. adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūnī*. *ūnō* is an attributive of *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. sing. of the noun *tempus*, -oris, n.; abl. of *time at which*. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. For etymology of *tempus*, see note on *tempore*, l. 21, Chap. III.

LINE 17. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. For different significations, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *hostēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f. *hostēs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *impetus*, nom. sing. of the noun *impetus*, -ūs, m. (im[n] + *petere*); hence *impetere* = *to rush upon*, and the noun *impetus* = *an attack*. *impetus* is the subject-nom. of the pass. verb *fieret*. — *fieret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus*, used as the pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with the subject-nom. *impetus*; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, this clause expresses the purpose of the order. — *monte*, abl. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m.; abl. absolute with the participle *occupātō*.

LINE 18. *occupātō*, abl. sing. m. of the participle *occupātus*, -a, -um of the verb *occupō*, -āre, *āvī*, -ātum, 1 (ob + *capere* = *to seize upon*). *occupātō* is in the abl. absolute with *monte*. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; supply *mīlītēs*; or it may be taken substantively = *ours*; yet the modified subst. may always be supplied. *nostrōs* is the direct obj. of *exspectābat*. — *exspectābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *exspectō*, -āre, *āvī*, -ātum, 1 (ex + *spectāre* = *to look out for*). *exspectābat* agrees with its subject-nom. *Labiēnus*, expressed in l. 13, above.

LINE 19. *proeliōque* (*proeliō + que*). *proeliō*, abl. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; abl. of *separation* after *abstinēbat*; the simple abl. See A. & G. 243, b; B. 160; and REM. 1; G. 390, 2, NOTE 3; H. 413. *que*, note how closely the enclitic joins *abstinēbat* to *exspectābat*. As to synonyms, see note on *proeliū*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *abstinēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *abstinēō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, 2 (abs + *tenēre* = *to hold from*), connected by the conj. -que with *exspectābat*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Multō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; comparative *plūs*; superl. *plūrimus*. *multō* is an attributive of the noun *diē*. — *dēnique* (*deinde + que*), conjunctive adv.; as a conj. it connects the sentences; as an adv. it modifies *cōgnōvī*.

LINE 20. *diē*, abl. sing. of the noun *diēs*, -ēī, m. or f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur; abl. of *time at which*. See A. & G., 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429; the phrase *multō diē* = *at much day*, like *primā lūce* which = *at first light*, i.e. *at day-*

mountain was in the possession of his friends; that the Helvetii had broken up their camp; and that Cōsidius, panic-stricken, had reported to him as fact a vision of his imagination.

cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī 21  
ascertained both the mountain by his (men) to be (is) held  
et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et 22  
and the Helvetii (their) camp to have moved and  
Cōsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn 23  
Cōsidius by fear greatly terrified what not  
vidisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. 24  
he had seen, for seen, to himself to have reported.

*break.* *diē*, however, might be taken as an abl. absolute with *multō*. The phrase *multō diē* = the day being much, i.e. = late in the day. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *explōrātōres*, acc. plur. of the noun *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *per*, i.e. the agent as means is expressed by *per* with the acc.; see A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. As to derivation and synonyms, see note on *explōrātōres*, l. 7, Chap. XII. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the verb *cōgnōvit*.

LINE 21. *cōgnōvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōgnōscō*, -ere, nōvī, -nitum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *et*, cop. conj.; here *et . . . et* = both . . . and. — *montem*, acc. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m. *montem* is subject-acc. of the verb *tenērī*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *suis*, abl. plur. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um, used substantively; or supply *militibus*. *suis*, conceived to be substantive in use, is the obj. of the prep. *ā*, i.e. an abl. of the agent. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *tenērī*, pres. inf. pass. of the act. *teneō*, -ere, -uī, *tentum*, 2; pass. parts: *teneor*, -ēri, *tentus*, 2.

LINE 22. *et*, see note on *et*, preceding line. — *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a substantive. *Helvētiōs* is subject-acc. of *mōvisse*. — *castra*, acc. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -ī, n.; in the sing. = fort or redoubt; in the plur. = camp. *castra* is the direct obj. of *mōvisse*. — *mōvisse*, perf. inf. act. of the verb *mōvēō*, -ere, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, 2; its subject-acc. is *Helvētiōs*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the infinitive-clauses.

LINE 23. *Cōsidium*, acc. sing. of the proper noun *Cōsidius*, -ī, m. *Cōsidium* is subject-acc. of *renūntiāsse*, l. 24, below. — *timōre*, abl. sing. of the noun *timor*, -ōris, m. *timōre* is abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *perterritum*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. — *perterritum*, acc. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *perterritus*, -a, -um of the verb *perterreō*, -ere, *uī*, -itum, 2. *perterritum* agrees with *Cōsidius* in gender, number and case. Observe the force of *per* in composition — *perterritum* = greatly terrified. As to *Cōsidius*, see note on *P. Cōsidius*, l. 16, Chap. XXI. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *id*, to be supplied; i.e. the thought expressed in lines 10 and 11, above, as its antecedent; but *quod* itself is the direct obj. of *vidisset*. Observe that in such construction *id* is generally expressed, but is sometimes omitted. Consult A. & G. 200, e, and NOTE; B. 129, REM. 8; G. 614, REM. 2; H. 445, 7. — *nōn* (*nē* + *ūnum*, apocopated), adv.; it modifies *vidisset*.

LINE 24. *vidisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *videō*, -ere, *vīdī*, *vīsum*, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Cōsidius*; subjunctive mode, because in informal indirect discourse. — *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *vīsō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle of the verb

- 25 *Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō,*  
*That day, by which, he was accustomed, interval,*
- 26 *hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria*  
*the enemy he follows and thousands of paces three*
- 27 *ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.*  
*from their camp (his) camp he pitches.*

On that day, Caesar followed the enemy at the usual distance, and pitched his camp three miles from their camp.

*videor, vidērī, vīsus*; *vīsō* is used substantively in the abl. n., and is the obj. of the prep. *prō*. *prō vīsō* = lit. *for a seen* (thing). — *sibi*, dat. sing. m. of the reflexive personal pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē*; dat. of the indirect obj. *sibi* = *to himself*, i.e. Caesar. — *renūtiāsse*, perf. inf. act. of the verb *renūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; sometimes written *renūciō*; contracted for *renūtiāvisse*. See A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. Note that the subject-acc. of *renūtiāsse* is *Cōnsidius*, l. 23, above. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 21-24 is as follows: *mōns ā mēis tenētur et Helvētī castra movērunt et Cōnsidius timōre pērtērritus quod nōn vīderat, prō vīsō mīhi renūtiāt (renūtiāvīt).*

LINE 25. *Eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; it is an attributive of the noun *diē*. — *diē*, abl. sing. of the noun *diēs, -ei*, m. or f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. *diē* is abl. of *time at which*. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *quō*, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; used here adjectively and modifies *intervallō*. — *cōnsuērat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of the verb *cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum*, 3 (con + *suēscere*, to become used). *cōnsuērat* agrees with *Caesar* understood, as subject-nom. Observe (a) that this is a species of preteritive verb in which the perf. is as a pres., and the pluperf. as an imperf.; (b) that *cōnsuērat* is contracted for *consuēverat*. Consult A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *intervallō*, abl. sing. of the noun *intervallum, -i*, n. (inter + *vallum*); hence the noun = *the space between two palisades*; transf. = *interval*. *intervallō* is an abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III.

LINE 26. *hostēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *hostis, -is*, m. and f.; it is the direct obj. of the deponent verb *sequitur*. — *sequitur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the deponent verb *sequor, -i, secūtus*, 3 (sibilated from *ἐπομαι*). *sequitur* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar* as subject-nom. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the verbs *sequitur* and *pōnit*. — *mīlia*, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *mille*, indeclinable in the sing.; regularly declined in the plur.; used here as a noun, and in the acc. of extent of space. Consult A. & G. 257, 6; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — *passuum*, gen. plur. of the noun *passus, -ūs*, m.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. Consult A. & G. 216, 2; B. 58, 3, and 134; G. 370; H. 397, 3. — *tria*, acc. plur. n. of the num. adj. *trēs, tria*; it is an attributive of the noun *mīlia*.

LINE 27. *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. = *their* or *of them*; as a gen. it limits *castrīs*. — *castrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum, -i*, n.; in the sing. = *fort*; in the plur. = *camp*. — *castra*, acc. plur. of *castrum, -i*, n.; direct obj. of the verb *pōnit*. — *pōnit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum*, 3; connected by the conj. *et* with *sequitur*, and has the same grammatical construction, i.e. agrees with *Caesar* understood. The first part of the sentence fully expressed is: *Caesar, eō diē, eō intervallō, quō cōnsuērat, hostēs sequitur, etc.*

XXIII. Caesar, on the following day, thought that he ought to be on the lookout for a supply of provisions, as only two days remained until the time when it would be necessary for him to distribute grain to the army; and, as he was

XXIII.	Postridiē	ēius	diēi,	quod 1
	<i>The day after</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>day,</i>	<i>because</i>
omnīnō	bīduum	supererat,	cum 2	
<i>in all</i>	<i>the space of two days</i>	<i>remained,</i>	<i>when</i>	
exercitūi	frūmentum	mētīrī	oportēret, 3	
<i>to the army</i>	<i>corn (for him)</i>	<i>to measure out</i>	<i>it behooved,</i>	
et quod ā	Bibracte,	oppidō	Aeduōrum 4	
<i>and because from</i>	<i>Bibracte,</i>	<i>a town</i>	<i>of the Aedui</i>	
longē	māximō	et	cōpiōsissimō,	nōn 5
<i>by far</i>	<i>the greatest</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>the richest,</i>	<i>not</i>

LINE 1. **Postridiē** (posterī + diē), adv. = lit. *on the day after*. — **ēius**, gen. sing. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; as a gen. it limits *diēi*. — **diēi**, gen. sing. of the noun *diēs, -ēi*, m. or f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. This gen. depends on the noun *diē* contained in the adv. *postridiē*. Consult A. & G. 223, IV, *e*, and NOTE 2; B. 134; G. 372, NOTE 3; H. 398, 5. Observe that the phrase *postridiē diē* = lit. *on the after day of that day* (pleonasm), i.e. *on the next day*. Observe also that, though *postridiē* and *pridiē* are accounted adverbs, they are, in fact, locative ablatives. — **quod**, conj. = *because, or since, or as*.

LINE 2. **omnīnō** (*omnis*), adv. = lit. *in all*. — **bīduum**, nom. sing. of the noun *bīduum, -i*, n. (*bis* + *diēs*). *bīduum* is the subject-nom. of the verb *supererat*. — **supererat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *supersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus* (*super* + *sum*); hence *superesse* = *to be over, to remain*. *supererat* agrees with its subject-nom. *bīduum*. — **cum**, conj. = *when, i.e. here = at the end of which time*.

LINE 3. **exercitūi**, dat. sing. of the noun *exercitus, -ūs*, m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *mētīrī*. — **frūmentum**, acc. sing. of the noun *frūmentum, -i*, n. (contracted from *frugī* + *mentum*). *frūmentum* is the direct obj. of the deponent verb *mētīrī*. — **mētīrī**, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *mētior, -irī, mētens, 4*; its subject-acc. is *eum*, i.e. *Caesarem*, omitted. — **oportēret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *oportet, -ēre, oportuit, 2*; used impersonally, or, strictly, the infinitive-clause *exercitūi frūmentum mētīrī* is the subj. *oportēret* is subjunctive after *cum* temporal. See A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2.

LINE 4. **et**, cop. conj.; connects the *quod*-clauses. — **quod**, see *quod*, I, 1, above. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). — **Bibracte**, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Bibracte, -tis*, n.; abl. after the prep. *ā*. Observe that neuters in *-e* have usually the abl. in *-i*, but names of towns in *-e* have *-e* in the abl. Observe also that Bibracte was the principal town of the Aedui; this town, possibly, developed into the modern Autun. Observe, moreover, that the prep. is required with names of towns to denote *measure of distance*. — **oppidō**, abl. sing. of the noun *oppidum, -i*, n.; an appositive. — **Aeduōrum**, gen. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus, -a, -um*, used substantively; as a gen. it limits *oppidō*.

LINE 5. **longē** (*longus*), an adv., used to strengthen the superl. *māximō*. Consult A. & G. 93, *d*; B. 117, 1; G. 303; H. 444, 3. — **māximō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj., superl. degree *māximus, -a, -um*; positive *māgnus*; comparative *māior*. *māximō* is an attributive of *oppidō*. — **et**, conj.; connects the superlatives, as if of equal importance. — **cōpiōsissimō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. superl. *cōpiōsissimus, -a,*

6	amplius farther than	mīlibus thousands	passuum of paces	octōdecim eighteen	not more than fifteen miles distant from Bibracte, by far the largest and the richest town of the Aedui, he turned his course away from the Helvetii, and marched rapidly toward Bibracte.
7	aberat, he was distant,	reī for the thing,	frūmentāriae frumentary		
8	prōspiciendum it ought to be provided for	existimāvit; he thought;	iter (his) course	ab from	
9	Helvētiīs the Helvetii	āvertit he averted	āc and	Bibracte to Bibracte	īre to go

-um; positive *cōpiōsus* (*cōpia*); comparative *cōpiōsiōr*. *cōpiōsissimō* is connected by the conj. *et* with *māximō*, and is also an attributive of *oppidō*. Observe that adjectives ending in -ōsus denote fulness. — *nōn* (*nē* + *oenum* [*īnum*]), adv., modifies the adv. *amplius*.

LINE 6. *amplius*, adv., comparative degree; positive *amplē* or *ampliter*. *amplius* modifies the verb *aberat*. — *mīlibus*, abl. plur. n. of the indecl. adj. *mille*; declinable in the plur. n., and used as a neuter noun. *mīlibus* is an abl. of comparison after the comparative degree, *quam* (than) being omitted. Consult A. & G. 247; B. 163; G. 398; H. 417. — *passuum*, gen. plur. of the noun *passus*, -ūs, m.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — *octōdecim*, cardinal num. adj.; it is an attributive of *mīlibus*. Observe that the Arabic 18 may be expressed in Latin in three ways: (1) as in our text; (2) by *duodēvigenti*; (3) by the Roman numerals *XVIII*.

LINE 7. *aberat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *absum*, -esse, *abfui* or *āfui*, *ab(ā)futūrus* (ab + sum). *aberat* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *reī*, dat. sing. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f. (stem *rē*, vowel shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.). *reī* is dat. after *prōspiciendum*. Consult A. & G. 227; B. 142, REM. 5; G. 346, 2; H. 385, II, 1. — *frūmentāriae*, dat. sing. f. of the adj. *frūmentārius*, -a, -um (*frūmentum*); it is an attributive of the noun *reī*.

LINE 8. *prōspiciendum*, supply *esse*, 2d periphrastic conjugation, pres. inf. of *prōspiciō*, -ere, *spēxī*, -spectum; used impersonally; note that this verb is both trans. and intrans., and that as an intrans. verb it can only be used impersonally. Consult A. & G. 146, d; B. 142, REM. 1; G. 208, 2; H. 465, 1. Note further that the gerundive thus used denotes necessity. See A. & G. 294; B. 185; G. 251; H. 234. — *existimāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar, as subject-nom. The rigidly literal translation of *reī . . . existimāvit* is: *he thought that it ought to be provided by himself for the thing frumentary*. Of course, *sibi* is to be supplied as dat. of the agent after the gerundive. — *iter*, acc. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n. (*irc*, *itum*); direct obj. of *āvertit*. For synonyms, see l. 2, Chap. IX. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before either vowels or consonants).

LINE 9. *Helvētiīs*, abl. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; it is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētiī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *āvertit*, 3d pers. sing. historical perf. of *āverto*, -ere, -vertī, -versum, 3; supply *Caesar* as subject-nom. — *āc*, abbreviated from *atque* (ad + que); it usually adds a notion with emphasis; *āc* is used before consonants only; *āc* here connects the verbs *āvertit* and *contendit*. — *Bibracte*, acc. sing. of the proper noun *Bibracte*,



This incident was reported to the enemy by fugitives from Lucius Aemilius, a commander of the Gallic horse. The Helvetii, whether	contendit. he hastened.	Ea This	rēs thing	per through	fugitivōs the deserters	10
Aemilius, a commander of the Gallic horse. The Helvetii, whether	L. Aemiliū, of Lucius Aemilius,	decuriōnis a decurion	equitum of the cavalry	Gallōrum, of the Gauls,		11
	hostibus to the enemy	nūntiātur. is reported.	Helvētīi, The Helvetii,	seu whether	quod because	12

-tis, n.; it is the acc. of the *limit of motion* after the verb *īre*. See A. & G. 258, b; B. 174; G. 337; H. 380, II; and consult note on *Bibracte*, l. 3, above. — *īre*, pres. inf. of the verb *cō, īre, īvī (īvī), itum*; complementary, depending on *contendit*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1.

LINE 10. *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the verb *contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum*, 3; it agrees with the noun *Caesar*, to be supplied, as subject-nom.; or, better, connect it with *avertit* by the conj. *et*, and note that it is in the same grammatical construction. For an explanation of the various meanings of this verb, see note on *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. Observe the omission of the conj. (asyndeton) before *iter*, i.e. before a clause coördinate with the preceding, and consult A. & G. 346, c; B. 122, REM. 6; G. 473, REM.; H. 636, I, 1. Observe, further, that, so far as form goes, *avertit* and *contendit* might be in the pres. tense; we infer that they are historical perfects from the doctrine of coördination and connection. As we look to the next sentence which is connected logically, not grammatically, with the preceding clause, *representatiō* fronts us; the verb *nūntiātur* is the historical pres. — *Ea*, nom. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*. *ea* is an attributive of *rēs*. — *rēs*, nom. sing. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f. *rēs* is subject-nom. of the verb *nūntiātur*; it refers to the fact of Caesar's changing his course. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *fugitivōs*, (*fugere*, to flee), acc. plur. of the adj. *fugitivus, -a, -um*, used substantively. *fugitivōs* is the obj. of the prep. *per*, denoting agency as a noun. See A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. *fugitivōs* = not the cavalry, but slaves. See Chap. XXVII.

LINE 11. *L.*, an abbreviation of *Lūciū*, gen. sing. of *Lūcius, -iī, m., praenōmen*. — *Aemiliū*, gen. sing. of the proper noun *Aemilius, -iī, m.*; a distinguished Roman *nōmen*. But in the text, the name of Lucius Aemilius designates a Gallic cavalry officer in charge of a squad of ten men designated as *decuriō*. *L. Aemiliū* as a complex proper noun is a poss. gen. limiting *fugitivōs*. — *decuriōnis*, gen. sing. of the noun *decuriō, -ōnis, m.* (*decem* through *decuria*); an appositive of *L. Aemiliū*. A *decuriō* was originally a commander of a *decuria*: a squad of ten men; but in Caesar's time the *centuriō* commanded the *turma* or troop consisting of thirty-two horsemen. — *equitum*, gen. plur. of the noun *eques, -itis, m.*; as a gen. it limits the noun *decuriōnis*. — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. of the noun *Galli, -ōrum*; as a gen. *Gallōrum* limits *equitum*.

LINE 12. *hostibus*, dat. plur. of the noun *hostis, -is, m. and f.* *hostibus* is the indirect obj. of *nūntiātur*. A. & G. 225, c; B. 140; G. 345, under PASSIVE FORM; H. 384, I. — *nūntiātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of the verb *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; pass. parts: *nūntiōr, -ārī, -atus, 1.* *nūntiātur* agrees with its subject-nom. *rēs*. Observe that *nūntiō* is often spelled *nūncio*. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*; used substantively. *Helvētīi* is subject-nom. of the verb *cōpēruni*, l. 21, below. — *seu or sive* (*sī + ve*), alternative conj.; *seu . . . seu*, or *sive . . . sive* = *whether . . . or*. — *quod*, causal conj.

13	timōre	perterritōs	Rōmānōs	discēdere	ā	they thought that the Romans, struck with panic, were withdraw- ing from them, and this all the more, because the day before, al- though occupy- ing the higher position, they yet did not engage in battle, or for
	by alarm	terrified	the Romans	to withdraw from		
14	sē	existimārent,	eō	magis,	quod	
	themselves	they thought, for this reason	the more, because			
15	prīdiē	superiōribus	locīs	occupātis		
	on the day before	the higher	places having been occupied			
16	proelium	nōn commīsissent,	sive	eō,		
	a battle	they did not join,	or for this reason,			

LINE 13. **timōre**, abl. sing. of the noun *timor*, -ōris, m. *timōre* is an abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *perterritōs*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 2; II. 416, and NOTE 1. Synonyms: *timor* = *fear* that results from cowardice or weakness; whereas *metus* = *fear* that results from caution or reflection. — **perterritōs**, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *perterritus*, -a, -um of the verb *perterreo*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2; as a participle it modifies the noun *Rōmānōs*. — **Rōmānōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used as a substantive. *Rōmānōs* is the subject-acc. of the inf. *discēdere*. — **discēdere**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *discēdo*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (dis + cedere = lit. to go apart). — **ā**, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants).

LINE 14. **sē**, abl. plur. of the reflexive personal pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* (same form in sing. and plur.). *sē* is the obj. of the prep. *ā*; it refers to the subject-nom. of *existimārent*. — **existimārent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Helvētīi*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because the statement is based on Caesar's conjectures. Consult A. & G. 341, d, and REM.; B. 198, (b), and 245, (b); G. 541; H. 516, II, and 528, 1. Observe that when a speaker thus repeats his conjectures, as if they were of doubtful authority, the discourse is practically oblique. — **eō**, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; abl. of cause after *magis*; lit. *eō* = *on account of this* (thing). The *eō* is the herald of the following *quod*-clause. — **magis**, adv., comparative degree; positive *multō* (*multum*); superl. *māximē*. Observe that *magis* is modified by *eō*, and that *eō* is modified by the first *quod*-clause, as a species of appositive — an explanatory modifier. — **quod**, conj. = *because*.

LINE 15. **prīdiē**, adv. (*pris* + *diēs*). *prīdiē* modifies the verb *commīsissent*. — **superiōribus**, abl. plur. of the comparative adj. *superior*, -ōris; positive *superus*; used in plur. as a noun — *superi* = *the gods above*; superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *superiōribus* is an attributive of *locīs*. — **locīs**, abl. plur. of the noun *locus*, -ī, m. in sing.; in the plur. *locī*, m., or *loca*, n. For difference of meaning, see note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locīs* is abl. absolute, with the perf. pass. participle denoting concession. — **occupātis**, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *occupātus*, -a, -um of the verb *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; abl. absolute with *locīs*.

LINE 16. **proelium**, acc. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; it is the direct obj. of the verb *commīsissent*. — **nōn** (*nē* + *oenum* [ūnum], apocopated), adv.; note its normal Latin position — immediately before the word it modifies. — **commīsissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *committo*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (com + mittere = lit. to join together); it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its

this reason, because they were confident that the Romans could be cut off from their supplies, the Helvetii, I say, changing their plan and altering their course, began to	quod	rē	frūmentāriā	interclūdī	posse	17
	because	for the thing	frumentary	to be hindered	to be able	
cōnfidenter,	commūtātō	cōnsiliō	atque	18		
they trusted,	having changed (their)	plan	and			
itinere	conversō	nostrōs	ā	19		
the march	being altered,	our (men)	on the side			

subject-nom., referring to the Romans. *commisissent* is in the subjunctive for the same reason as *existimarent*, l. 14, above. See grammatical references there indicated. — *sive*, see note on *seu*, l. 12, above. — *eō*, abl. sing. n.; abl. of cause — a herald of the following *quod*-clause.

LINE 17. *quod*, conj. = *because*. *quod*, the conj. with causal meaning, is really an adverbial acc. n. of the rel. pron. *qui, quae, quod*, and = *as to what, in that*; it is often, as a conj., preceded by *eō*, or *hōc*, or *propterea*. — *rē*, abl. sing. of the noun *rēs, rei*, f. (stem *rē* shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.); abl. of separation after *interclūdī*. A. & G. 225, d; B. 160; G. 390, 2, NOTE 3; II. 384, II, 2, (2), and FOOTNOTE 1. Of course, the obj. in the act. construction becomes the subj. in the pass., and the abl. of the thing is retained. — *frūmentāriā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *frūmentārius, -a, -um* (*frūmentum*). *frūmentāriā* is an attributive of the noun *rē*. — *interclūdī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *interclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsum*, 3 (inter + claudere, lit. = *to shut between*); hence *interclūdere* = *to cut off, to hinder*. *interclūdī* is a complementary inf., depending on *posse*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; II. 533, I, 2. — *posse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *possum, posse, potui* (potis, able + sum); supply *eōs*, i.e. *Rōmānōs*, as subject-acc.

LINE 18. *cōnfidenter*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus*, neuter pass. or semi-deponent verb; in the subjunctive mode for the same reason as *existimarent*, l. 14, above. See in *loc.* — *commūtātō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *commūtātus, -a, -um* of the verb *commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; pass. parts: *commūtōr, -āri, -ātus*, 1. *commūtātō* is in the abl. absolute with *cōnsiliō*, denoting *manner*. — *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. of the noun *cōnsilium, -i*, n.; abl. absolute with the participle *commūtātō*. Synonyms: *concilium* = *an assembly for consultation*; whereas *cōnsilium* = *the counsel taken in the assembly*. There is often, however, confusion in the use of these words. — *atque* (ad + que), conj.; it usually adds a more emphatic notion, and often = *and also*.

LINE 19. *itinere*, abl. sing. of the noun *iter, itineris*, n. *itinere* is in the abl. absolute construction with the participle *conversō*. For synonyms, see note on *iter*, l. 2, Chap. IX. — *conversō*, perf. pass. participle of the verb *convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum*, 3; abl. absolute with the noun *itinere*. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. Synonyms: *commūtāre* = *to change completely by some motion in any direction*; whereas *convertere* = *to change by turning or wheeling around*. But the words are often, so far as signification is concerned, used interchangeably. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster, -tra, -trum*; used substantively; or supply *miliēs*. *nostrōs* as a substantive is the direct obj. of *insequi ac lacessere*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before either vowels or consonants). *ā* here = *on the side of, on*; compare *ab*, l. 20, Chap. I.

20	novissimō	āgmine	īnsequī	āc	lacēssere	pursue and assail our troops in the rear.
	<i>of the newest</i>	<i>line</i>	<i>to follow on</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>to exasperate</i>	
21	coep̄erunt.					
	<i>they began.</i>					
1	XXIV.	Postquam	id		animum	XXIV. After Caesar noticed this manoeuvre
		<i>After that</i>	<i>this (thing)</i>	<i>(his)</i>	<i>mind</i>	

LINE 20. *novissimō*, abl. sing. n. of the superl. degree *novissimus*, -a, -um; positive *novus*; compare GK. *νέος*. *novissimō* is an attributive of the noun *āgmine*. — *āgmine*, abl. sing. of the noun *āgmen*, -inis, n. (*agere*, to set in motion); hence *āgmen* = a moving body, an army in motion. *āgmine* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. Observe that the phrase *ā novissimō āgmine* = on the newest or last line of an army in motion; hence = on the rear, i.e. on the newest or nearest line to a pursuing enemy. Synonyms: *āgmen* as a military term = a procession of troops in a line; *cohors* usually = the tenth part of a legion, but sometimes by synecdoche is put for an entire army; *cōpiæ* = troops consisting of several cohorts; and *exercitus* = a disciplined army consisting of several legions. — *īnsequī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *īnsequor*, -ī, -cutus, 3 (in + sequī = to follow on, to attack). *īnsequī* is a complementary inf. and depends on *coep̄erunt*. — *āc*, contracted from *atque* (ad + que), conj. See note on *atque*, l. 18, above. *āc* connects the infinitives *īnsequī* and *lacēssere*. — *lacēssere*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *lacēssō*, -ere, -īvī (-īī), -ītum, 3 (*lacere*, to move); a form of intensive verb of the 3d conjugation, but having the perf. and supine of the 4th. *lacēssere* is also a complementary inf. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1.

LINE 21. *coep̄erunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the defective verb *coep̄i*; used only in the perf. and cognate tenses, together with the fut. participle *coep̄tūrus*. Observe that the pass. of this verb is used with a pass. inf. *coep̄erunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*, l. 12, above. Note the periodic form of this long Latin sentence, and observe that the main clause of this sentence is: *Helvētīi nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coep̄erunt*; that this main clause is modified (1) by the *quod* . . . *existimārent*-clause, lines 12–14, above; (2) that a lacuna is to be supplied here thus: *eōque magis id existimārent*; that *magis* modifies *existimārent*, thus supplied; (3) that *magis* is modified by *eō*; and (4) *eō* is modified by the second *quod*-clause — *quod* . . . *commisissent*, lines 14–16, above — as explanatory modifier; and (5) the principal clause is further modified by *eō*, l. 16, above, which itself is modified by the *quod*-clause *quod* . . . *cōfīderent*, lines 17 and 18, above; and (6) the main clause is still further modified by the abl. absolute construction: *commūtātō cōsiliō atque itinere conversō*. And observe, in fine, that these complex and compound modifiers of the predicate of the principal clause of the sentence have an adverbial force.

LINE 1. *Postquam* (post + quam = lit. *later than*) = *after*, sometimes causal = *since*. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; obj. of the prep. *ad* in the compound *advertit*; *id* refers to the Helvetians' attack of Caesar's rear-line. — *animum*, acc. sing. of the noun *animus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *vertit*, a part of the compound *advertit*. For the construction of *id* and *animum* after *advertit*, see A. & G. 239, 2, b; B. 152, REM. 2; G. 331, REM. 1; H. 376. For synonyms, see note on *animō*, l. 2, Chap. X.

of the Helvetii, he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill, and sent his cavalry to withstand the enemy's attack. He himself,	advertit, he turns to,	cōpiās troops	suās his	Caesar Caesar	in to	proximum <sup>2</sup> the next
	collem hill	subdūcit draws off,		equitātumque, cavalry and,		quī <sup>3</sup> who
	sustinēret should sustain	hostium the enemy's	impetum, attack,	mīsit. he sent.		Ipse <sup>4</sup> Himself

LINE 2. *advertit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *advertō*, -ere, -verti, -versum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Caesar*. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur. of the noun *cōpia*, -ae, f. (con + ops); in the sing. = *abundance*; in the plur., *troops*. *cōpiās* is the direct obj. of the verb *subdūcit*. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *cōpiās*, but refers to *Caesar*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the verb *subdūcit*. Observe the order of the words, and how the emphasis is indicated by putting the direct obj. before the subj. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion. For difference of signification, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *proximum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. superl. degree *proximus*, -a, -um; the comparative is *propior*; no positive; stem, however, is seen in the adv. *prope*, near. *proximum* is an attributive of the noun *collem*.

LINE 3. *collem*, acc. sing. of the noun *collis*, -is, m. *collem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe (a) that the abl. sing. of *collis* ends regularly in -e; that the gen. plur. is *collium*; (b) that *collis* (radical seen in *celsus*, participle of *cello*, which = lit. *driven to a high place*) should not be confounded with *mōns*, whose radical is seen in *minārē* and *ēminēre*, and which gives the notion *height* as the essential meaning of the word; although *collis* sometimes = *the larger hill* or *the small mountain*. If *collis* should not be confounded with *mōns*, much less should *mōns* be confounded with *collis*, and rendered *hill* in the English tongue. — *subdūcit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *subdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (sub + dūcere); hence *subdūcere* = *to lead from below*. — *equitātumque* (*equitātum* + *que*). *equitātum*, acc. sing. of the noun *equitātus*, -ūs, m.; it is the direct obj. of the verb *mīsit*. *que*, enclitic conj.; it connects the verbs *subdūcit* and *mīsit*. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *equitātum* as its antecedent, but is the subj.-nom. of *sustinēret*.

LINE 4. *sustinēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *sustineō*, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2 (sub + tenēre); hence *sustinēre* = lit. *to hold up from beneath*. *sustinēret* is in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause expressing *purpose* after *quī* = *is ut*. Consult A. & G. 317, 2; B. 233, 1; G. 630; H. 497, I. Observe that this relative clause expresses the purpose of *mīsit*. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; poss. gen. limiting *impetum*. Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. *a stranger*; then transf. = *a public enemy*; whereas *inimicus* (in, negative + amicus) = *a private foe*. — *impetum*, acc. sing. of the noun *impetus*, -ūs, m. (in + petere, to fall); hence *impetus* = *the falling on one, the attack, the onset*. *impetum* is the direct obj. of *sustinēret*. — *mīsit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *miſiō*, -ere, *mīsi*, *missum*, 3; it is connected by the enclitic -que appended to *equitātum* with the verb *subdūcit*, and has the same subject-nom., namely *Caesar*. Observe the confusion of tenses. *representatiō* gives *advertit* — probably pres. — and *subdūcit*, historical present; while there is a change in the point of view between *subdūcit* and the historical perf. This change in the point of view in the same sentence creates liveliness of expression; but such sudden change of tense sequence is not to be very frequently imitated by the modern writer of Latin prose. — *Ipse*, nom. sing. m. of the

5	interim	in	colle	mediō	triplicem	aciem	meanwhile, marshaled, half way up the hill, a triple line, consisting of the four veteran legions; but he ordered the two legions
	meantime	in	the hill	middle of,	three-fold	line	
6	instrūxit		legiōnum	quattuor	veterānārum,		
	drew up		of the legions	four	veteran,		
7	sed	in	summō	iugō	duās	legiōnēs,	
	but	on	the top	of the ridge	the two	legions,	

intensive pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*; it refers to Caesar; is expressed for emphasis; and is the subject-nom. of the verb *instrūxit*.

LINE 5. *interim*, adv. (inter + im for eum, i.q. *intered*). — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the abl. See note on *in*, I. 1, Chap. I. — *colle*, abl. sing. of *collis*, -is, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. See note on *collem*, I. 3, above. — *mediō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *medius*, -a, -um; *mediō* is an attributive of *colle*; but, in use, is here a species of partitive. Consult A. & G. 193; B. 128, REM. 9; G. 291, REM. 2; H. 440, NOTE 1. Observe that *colle mediō* might be used without the prep. *in*; see A. & G. 258, f, 2; B. 170, REM. 2; G. 388; H. 425, II, 2, NOTE 2. Observe, further, that the phrase *in colle mediō* = lit. *in the middle of the hill*, i.e. half way up the hill. — *triplicem*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *triplex*, -icis (trēs + plicare, *to weave*, compare GK. πλέκω); hence *triplex* = lit. *triple-woven*. — *aciem*, acc. sing. of the noun *aciēs*, -i, f. (compare GK. ἀκίς = *the edge of a thing*); transf. *aciēs* = *the edge of an army, the line of battle*. Usually, each legion was drawn up in three lines. *aciem* is the direct obj. of the verb *instrūxit*.

LINE 6. *instrūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *instruō*, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3 (in + struere, *to build*); hence *instruere* = lit. *to build on*. *instrūxit* agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*. — *legiōnum*, gen. plur. of the noun *legiō*, -ōnis, f. (*legere*, *to choose*); hence *legiō* = lit. *a chosen number, a levy*. The legion, from 3000 to 6000 strong, was the unit of the Roman army organization; it was divided into ten cohorts. For further description, see the article *Legion* in any of the encyclopedias. *legiōnum* is a poss. gen. of material limiting the noun *aciem*. Consult A. & G. 214, e; B. 131, REM. 1; G. 368, REM.; H. 396, V. — *quattuor*, num. adj., cardinal; it is an attributive of the noun *legiōnum*. — *veterānārum*, gen. plur. f. of the adj. *veterānus*, -a, -um (*vetus*, digammated from *ἔτος*). *veterānārum* is also an attributive of *legiōnum*. These veterans were the 7th, 8th, 9th and 10th legions.

LINE 7. *sed*, the strongest of the adversative conjunctions; *at* expresses a mere contrast; and the postpositive *autem* merely adds a different notion without contradiction, and frequently merely designates a transition. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For various meanings, see note on *in*, I. 1, Chap. I. — *summō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *summus*, -a, -um; positive *superus*, comparative *superior*, superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *summō* is an attributive of the noun *iugō*. — *iugō*, abl. sing. of the noun *iugum*, -i, n. (*iungere*, *to join*). *iugō* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that *iugum* = lit. *a yoke*; but that in a transf. sense it means many things; in the text it = the highest ridge of the mountain. Most commonly, as an epithet of a mountain it has reference to breadth or range; whereas *mōns* has reference to height. — *duās*, acc. plur. f. of the numeral adj. *duo*, -ae, -o (compare GK. δύο or δύο). Note that the first three cardinals — *ūnus*, *duo* and *trīs* — are declined; but that the remaining cardinals up to *centum* are indeclinable. *duās* is an attributive of the noun *legiōnēs*. These two legions were the 11th and 12th. See lines 13 and 14, Chap. X. — *legiōnēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *legiō*, -ōnis, f. See note on *legiōnum*, I. 6, above. *legiōnēs* is subject-acc. of *collocārī*, I. 9, below.

which he had lately levied in citerior Gaul and all the auxiliaries to be stationed on the very crest of the ridge, and the entire moun- tain to be cover- ed with men, and	quās <i>which</i>	in <i>in</i>	Galliā <i>Gaul</i>	citeriōre <i>nearer</i>	proximē 8 <i>last</i>
	cōnscrīperat,	et	omnia	auxilia	collocārī, 9
	<i>he had enrolled,</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>the auxiliaries</i>	<i>to be stationed,</i>
	āc	tōtum	montem	hominibus	complērī 10
	<i>and also</i>	<i>the entire</i>	<i>mountain</i>	<i>with men</i>	<i>to be filled</i>

LINE 8. *quās*, acc. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to *legiōnēs* as its antecedent in gender and number, but *quās* is the direct obj. of *cōnscrīperat*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *Galliā*, abl. sing. of the proper noun *Gallia*, -ae, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *citeriōre*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *citerior*, -us, comparative degree; superl. *citimus*; *citeriōre* is an attributive of *Galliā*. Observe that the phrase *in Galliā citeriōre* = *in Galliā Cisalpīnā*, i.e. Gaul on the south side of the Alps — the side nearest to Rome. Ancient Gaul was divided into two parts by the historians: *Gallia ūltior* and *Gallia citerior*. The *ūltior* was Gaul on the west side of the Alps. *Gallia citerior* is often referred to as *Gallia Cispadāna* and *Gallia Transpadāna*, i.e. Gaul south, or Gaul north, of the river Po. — *proximē*, adv. (adj. *proximus*); it modifies the verb *cōnscrīperat*. Note that adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives of the first and second declension by changing the stem-vowel to *-ē*; stem of *proximus* is *proximō*. Singularly, the adv. *proximē*, superl. in form, is itself compared thus: *proximē (proximē)*, comparative *proximius*.

LINE 9. *cōnscrīperat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *cōnscrībō*, -ere, -scrīpt-, -scrīptum, 3 (con + scribere); hence *cōnscrībēre* = *to call together by writing, to summon, to enroll*. *cōnscrīperat* agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *et*, cop. conj.; it here connects the nouns *legiōnēs* and *auxilia*. — *omnia*, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an adj. of the third declension, an *i*-stem, parasyllabic, and of two terminations, declined like *levis* or *mitis*. *omnia* is an attribute of the noun *auxilia*. — *auxilia*, acc. plur. of the noun *auxilium*, -iī, n. (*augēre*, to increase). *auxilia* is connected by *et* with *legiōnēs*, and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. it is subject-acc. of *collocārī*. Observe that *auxilia*, in military usage = *auxiliary troops*, enrolled from the Roman allies, and were light-armed; hence often used in contrast with legionary troops. — *collocārī* or *conlocārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *col(n)locō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; pass. parts: *collocor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1 (con + locāre = lit. *to place together*).

LINE 10. *āc*, conj.; shortened form of *atque*; adds a notion, usually, of more importance; it here connects the infinitive-clauses. — *tōtum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um, gen. *tōtus*, dat. *tōtī*. *tōtum* is an attributive of *montem*. For synonyms, see note on *tōtus*, l. 7, Chap. II. — *montem*, acc. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m. (from radical *min*, as seen in *minārī* and in *ēmīnēre*). See note on *collem*, l. 2, above. *montem* is subject-acc. of *complērī*. — *hominibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *homō*, *hominis*, m. and f. (kindred with *humus*, GK. *χῆμα*, and the Hebrew *adam*); hence *homō* = etymologically, *the earth-born being*; possibly, as the Hebrew *adam* indicates, the ruddy being. *hominibus* is the abl. of means after *complērī*. Consult A. & G. 248, 2; B. 167, 3; G. 405; H. 421, II. — *complērī*, pres. pass. inf. of the verb *compleō*, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, 2; pass. parts: *compleor*, -erī, -plētus, 2; its subject-acc. is *montem*. Observe that the four acc. infinitive-clauses in lines 10-13 depend on the verb *iūssit*, l. 13, below.

11	et	intereā	sarcinās	in	ūnum	locum	meanwhile the soldiers' personal baggage to be collected in a park, and the park to be defended by those men who were stationed in the upper line. The
	and	meantime (soldiers')	packs	into	one	place	
12	cōferri,	et	eum	ab	hīs,	quī	in
	to be brought	and	that (place)	by	those,	who	in
13	superiōre	aciē	cōstiterant,	mūniri	iūssit.		
	the higher	line	had stood,	to be protected	he ordered.		

LINE 11. *et*, conj.; connects the infinitives *complēri* and *cōferri*. — *intereā*, adv. (inter + eā); it modifies the verb *cōferri*. — *sarcinās*, acc. plur. of the noun *sarcina*, -ae, f. (*sarcīre*, to mend); usually in the plur. *sarcinae*, -ārum, f.; *sarcinās* is the subject-acc. of the verb *cōferri*. Synonyms: *sarcinae* = the baggage of the individual soldier; whereas *impedimenta* = the baggage of an army — the baggage-train including the animals. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion, and = *into*. — *ūnum*, acc. sing. m. of the cardinal adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūnūs*, dat. *ūnī*. *ūnum* is an attributive of *locum*. — *locum*, acc. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m.; plur. *locī*, m., or *loca*, n., but with difference of meaning. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II.

LINE 12. *cōferri*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *cōferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -coll(or)on-)lātum; its subject-acc. is *sarcinās*. Observe that this infinitive-clause is connected by *et* with the preceding, and like that depends on *iūssit*, l. 13, below. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the infinitives *cōferri* and *mūniri*, l. 13, below. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; or supply *locum*, which latter is subject-acc. of *mūniri*, l. 13, below. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). This prep. usually = *from*; but after passive verbs with the abl. of the agent it = *by*. — *hīs*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used substantively. *hīs* is here the abl. of the agent with the prep. *ab*, after the passive verb *mūniri*. Consult A. & G. 246; H. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. Observe that the reference in *hīs* is to *legiōnēs*, l. 7, above, i.e. the two new legions. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *hīs* as its antecedent, but is subject-nom. of *cōstiterant*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.

LINE 13. *superiōre*, abl. sing. f. of the adj., comparative degree *superior*, -us; positive *superus*; superl. *suprēmus* or *summus*. *superiōre* is the attributive of the noun *aciē*. — *aciē*, abl. sing. of *aciēs*, -ē, f.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Compare *in superiōre aciē* with *in summō iugō*, l. 7, above. — *cōstiterant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *cōsistō*, -ere, -stīti, -stītum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *mūniri*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb *mūniō*, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -ītum, 4 (*moenia*); hence *mūnīre* = lit. to defend with walls. The subject-acc. of *mūniri* is *eum*, l. 12, above, used as a substantive; or, better, *locum*, to be supplied, with which *eum* as an adj. agrees. — *iūssit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *iubeō*, -ēre, *iūssī*, *iūssum*, 2; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. The critical reader will observe that the text in lines 7-10, above, is different in different copies of Caesar that may come under his notice. Some copies after *veterānārum*, l. 6, above, read: *itā, suprā sē . . . collocāret*: āc tōtum, etc. Others read: *veterānārum, atque suprā eās . . . cōscripserat*; et omnia, etc. Others still after *veterānārum* read: [*itā utī suprā*]; *sed*, etc., precisely like the reading which is given in this edition.



Helvetii follow- ed with all their carts, and park- ed their imped- imenta; and the men themselves, after repelling our cavalry and forming a phal-	Helvētīi <i>The Helvetii</i> secūtī, <i>having followed,</i> locum <i>place</i> aciē, <i>array,</i>	cum <i>with</i> impedimenta <i>(their) heavy baggage</i> contulērunt; <i>brought;</i> rēiectō <i>repulsed</i>	omnibus <i>all</i> ipsī <i>themselves</i> nostrō <i>our</i>	suīs <i>their</i> in <i>into</i> equitātū, <i>cavalry,</i>	carrīs 14 <i>carts</i> ūnum 15 <i>one</i> cōnfertissimā 16 <i>in the closest</i> phalange 17 <i>a phalanx</i>
---	--	--	--	---	--

LINE 14. *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Helvētīi* is subject-nom. of the verb *contulērunt*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. of accompaniment. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an *i*-stem, declined like *levis*; *omnibus* is an attributive of *carrīs*. — *suīs*, abl. plur. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it also is an attributive of the noun *carrīs*; it refers to the subject of the proposition — *Helvētīi*. — *carrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *carrus*, -i, m., or *carrum*, -i, n.; abl. of accompaniment after the prep. *cum*. Consult A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392; H. 419, I. The reference in *carrīs* is to the heavy two-wheeled carts on which the Gallic impedimenta were carried.

LINE 15. *secūtī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle of the deponent verb *sequor*, -i, *secutus*, 3 (sibilated from the GK. stem *ἐπ*, as seen in *ἐπομαι*). *secūtī*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *Helvētīi*. Observe that deponent verbs have the participles in both voices, e.g. *sequēns* = *following*; *secutus* = *having followed*. — *impedimenta*, acc. plur. of the noun *impedimentum*, -i, n. (in + pes, through the verb *impedire* = lit. to entangle the feet); hence *impedimentum* = lit. a hindrance; in Caesar's use of the plur., *impedimenta* = the baggage-train, inclusive of animals. *impedimenta* is the direct obj. of *contulērunt*. — *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion, and = *into*. For signification, compare note on *in*, I. 1, Chap. I. — *ūnum*, acc. sing. m. of the cardinal num. adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um, gen. *ūnūs*, dat. *ūnī*; *ūnum* is an attributive of the noun *locum*.

LINE 16. *locum*, acc. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m.; but see note on *locī*, I. 10, Chap. II. *locum* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Compare in *ūnum locum cōnferrī*, lines 11 and 12, above. — *contulērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōnferō*, -ere, *contuli*, *col(n)lātum* (con + ferre = lit. to bring together). *contulērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*. — *ipsī*, nom. plur. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -a, -um, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*. *ipsī* refers to the *Helvetii*; is expressed for emphasis; and is the subject-nom. of the verb *successērunt*. — *cōnfertissimā*, abl. sing. of the adj., superl. degree *cōnfertissimus*, -a, -um; positive *cōnfertus*, comparative *cōnfertior*. *cōnfertus* is, in fact, a participle of the verb *cōnferciō*, no perf. act., *cōnfertum*, 4 (con + facere, to cram); hence the participle *cōnfertus* = lit. pressed together, i.e. thick, close. *cōnfertissimā* is an attributive of the noun *aciē*.

LINE 17. *aciē*, abl. sing. of the noun *aciēs*, -ē, f. (compare *acer*, sharp, and the GK. *ἀκίς*). *aciē* is an abl. of manner. Consult A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Synonyms: *aciēs* = an army in line of battle; whereas *āgmen* (*agere*) = an army in motion, while *exercitus* = a trained army. — *rēiectō*, abl. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *rēiectus*, -a, -um of the verb *rēiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (re + iacere = lit. to hurl back). *rēiectō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *equitātū*, denoting the time when. — *nostrō*, abl. sing. m. of the poss. adj. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum (*nōs*); it is an attributive of the noun *equitātū*. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. of the

18	factā,	sub	prīmam	nostram	aciem	anx, advanced to our lowest line in closest array.
	having been formed,	close to	first	our	line	
19	successērunt.					
	they advanced.					
1	XXV. Caesar	prīmum	suō,		deinde	XXV. Caesar, having first sent out of sight his own horse, and next the horses of all his aids,
	Caesar	first	his own (horse),		then,	
2	omnium	ex	cōspectū	remōtis	equīs,	
	of all	from	sight	being removed	the horses,	

noun *equitātus*, -ūs, m. (*equus* through the verb *equitō*); it is in the abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *reieciō*. — *phalange*, abl. sing. of the noun *phalanx*, -ngis, f. (GK. *φάλαγξ*, -αγγος). *phalange* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participle *factā*. Observe that the Greek acc. plur. of *phalanx* is *phalangas*, and that *phalanx* = lit. *a line of troops*, originally, but in later usage = *troops in a solid mass*. Probably there was only a very general resemblance between the phalanx of the Greeks and that of the Gauls; from the next chapter, it would seem to be some sort of arrangement for keeping their lines unbroken by means of interlocking their shields, when they met the onsets of the heavily-armed Roman legions.

LINE 18. *factā*, perf. pass. participle, f. of the verb *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus*, used as the pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *fici*, *factum*, 3. *factā* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *phalange*, denoting the time when. Consult A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 1. — *sub*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion, and = *close to*. — *prīmam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj., superl. degree *prīmus*, -a, -um; comparative *prior* (stem seen in the prep. *prae*). *prīmam* is an attributive of the noun *aciem*. As *prīmam*, lit. *the first*, was nearest to the enemy, *prīmam* here = *the lowest*. Compare the phrase *ā novissimō agmine*, lines 19 and 20, Chap. XXIII. — *nostram*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. adj. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum (*nōs*). *nostram* is also an attributive of *aciem*. — *aciem*, acc. sing. of the noun *aciēs*, -iēs, f. (see *aciē*, l. 17, above). *aciem* is the obj. of the prep. *sub*, denoting motion to. Consult A. & G. 152, c; B. 120, 3; G. 418, 2; H. 435, 1.

LINE 19. *successērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the neuter verb *succēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, 3 (sub + *cēdere* = lit. *to go under*). *successērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *ipsi*, l. 16, above. Observe that the prep. *sub* in the phrase *sub . . . aciem* merely repeats and adds some degree of emphasis to *sub* in the compound *sub(c)cessērunt*.

LINE 1. *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the verb *commisit*, l. 5, below. — *prīmum*, adv. (really, an adverbial acc. of the adj. *prīmus*, -a, -um); usually, as here, *prīmum* denotes the first in a series; whereas *prīmō* = *first* in a contrast. — *suō*, abl. sing. m. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it is an attributive of *equō*, to be supplied, which *equō* supplied is in the abl. absolute construction with *remōtō*, to be supplied from the following *remōtis equīs*. As to the abl. absolute, consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, and 2. — *deinde*, adv. (*dē* + *inde*) = lit. *from thence*; it indicates the second of the series.

LINE 2. *omnium*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an *i*-stem; *omnium* is here used substantively; it limits the noun *equīs*; or, if preferred, *equitum* might be supplied. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *cōspectū*, abl. sing. of the noun *cōspectus*, -ūs, m. (*cōspicere*,

in order that, by equalizing the danger of all, he might destroy the hope of flight, cheered his men with hopeful words and engaged in battle. His soldiers, hurling	ut	aequātō	omnium	periculō	spem 3
	that	being made equal,	of all,	the peril,	the hope
	fugae	tolleret,	cohortātus	suōs 4	
	of flight	he might take away,	having encouraged	his (men)	
	proelium	commisit.	Militēs	ē	locō 5
	the battle	he joined.	The soldiers	from	the place

perf. pass. participle *cōspectus* = *gazed at*), hence *cōspectus*, as a noun = *sight*. *cōspectū* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. Synonyms: *adspectus* = *looking at*, act.; whereas *cōspectus* = *the sight of*, *the appearance*, pass. — *remōtis*, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle of the verb *removē*, *-ēre*, *-mōvī*, *-mōtum*, 2; abl. absolute with *equis*. — *equis*, abl. plur. of the noun *equus*, *-ī*, m. (compare Gk. ἵππος). *equis* is in the abl. absolute construction with the participle *remōtis*.

LINE 3. *ut*, telic conj. = *in order that*. — *aequātō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *aequātus*, *-a*, *-um* of the verb *aequō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1 (*aequus*); abl. absolute with *periculō*. — *omnium*, gen. plur. of *omnis*, *-e*, used substantively; it limits the noun *periculō*. See note on *omnium*, l. 2, above. — *periculō*, abl. sing. of the noun *periculum*, *-ī*, n. (contracted *pericūm*; lit. = *trial*; transf. *danger*; for radical, see *experior*). *periculō* is in the abl. absolute construction with *aequātō*. — *spem*, acc. sing. of the noun *spēs*, *-eī*, f. (stem *spē*, vowel shortened in gen. and dat. sing.). *spem* is the direct obj. of the verb *tolleret*.

LINE 4. *fugae*, gen. sing. of the noun *fuga*, *-ae*, f. (Gk. φυγή); *fugae*, as a gen., limits *spem*. — *tolleret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *tollō*, *-ere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*. *tolleret* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar; it is a subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 545; H. 497, II. Caesar's design was to remove all means of flight from his treacherous Gallic cavalry. — *cohortātus*, perf. participle of the verb *cohortor*, *-ārī*, *-ātus*, 1; as a participle it is nom. sing. m., and agrees with *Caesar*, l. 1, above. — *suōs*, acc. plur. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, *-a*, *-um*; it is used here substantively; or *militēs* may be supplied; direct obj. of the participle *cohortātus*; participles take the same cases as their verbs; as *cohortātus* is the participle of a deponent verb, it is transitive; perf. participles of deponent verbs, however, are sometimes used in a pass. sense.

LINE 5. *proelium*, acc. sing. of the noun *proelium*, *-ī*, n.; it is the direct obj. of *commisit*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliū*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *commisit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *committō*, *-ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, 3. *commisit* agrees with its subject-nom. expressed — *Caesar*, l. 1, above. — *Militēs*, nom. plur. of the noun *miles*, *-itis*, m.; subject-nom. of the verb *perfrēgērunt*. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *locō*, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, *-ī*, m. in the sing.; plur. *loci*, m., or *loca*, n. See note on *loci*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locō* is the obj. of the prep. *ē*. Synonyms: *locus* = *space* as a point; whereas *tractus* = *space* as an expansion; while *regiō* (*regere*, to make straight, to mark by a line) = *space* enclosed as if by a line, including the environment.

6	superiōre	pīlis	missis	facile	hostium	their javelins from the higher position, easily made an opening through the enemy's phalanx.
	higher,	the javelins	having been sent,	easily	the enemy's	
7	phalangem	perfrēgērunt.	Eā	disiectā		When this was thrown into confusion, Caesar's men attacked the enemy with
	phalanx	broke through.	This	being hurled apart,		
8	gladiis	dēstrictis	in	eōs	impetum	
	swords	having been drawn,	against	them	an onset	

LINE 6. **superiōre**, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *superior*, -ius, gen. *superiōris*; positive *superus*; superl. degree *suprēmus* or *summus*. *superiōre* is an attributive of *locō*. — **pīlis**, abl. plur. of the noun *pīlum*, -ī, n. *pīlis* is abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *missis*, denoting the means. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — **missis**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle of the verb *mittō*, -ere, *missi*, *missum*, 3; abl. with the noun *pīlis*. Observe that the *pīlum* was a missile weapon about six feet in length; it consisted of a shaft and shank, the former of wood, the latter of iron. The shaft was about four feet long, and the shank about two feet long which was pointed with a triangular-shaped head of steel about nine inches in length. — **facile**, adv. (adj. *facilis*). *facile* is, in fact, an adverbial acc. n. of the adj. *facilis*. Consult A. & G. 148, d; B. 117, 6; G. 91, 1, (c); H. 304, 3, 1). *facile* modifies *perfrēgērunt*. — **hostium**, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; as a gen. it limits *phalangem*. Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. a stranger, and then transf. a public enemy; *inimicus* (in, negative + *amicus*) = a private foe.

LINE 7. **phalangem**, acc. sing. of the noun *phalanx*, -angis, f. (compare the GK. *φάλαγξ*, and the Greek acc. pl. *phalangas* which is common in Latin instead of the regular form *phalangēs*). *phalangem* is the direct obj. of the verb *perfrēgērunt*. In the phalanx order of battle the infantry stood in compact mass with their shields, vertically arranged, protecting them in front; above their heads these shields, to those who were behind the first line, were interlaced and overlapped, and formed a protection against the missiles of the foe. — **perfrēgērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *perfringō*, -ere, *frēgi*, *fractum*, 3 (per + *frangere* = to break through); with *frangere* compare the GK. *φάγνυμι*, the GER. *brechen*, and the English *break*. *perfrēgērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *mīlitēs*, expressed l. 5, above. — **Eā**, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively, referring to *phalangem*; or supply *phalange*; abl. absolute with the pass. participle *disiectā*, denoting time when. — **disiectā**, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *disiectus*, -a, -um of the verb *disiciō*, -ere, -iecti, -iectum, 3 (dis + *iacere* = lit. to hurl apart); the construction is abl. absolute with *eā*.

LINE 8. **gladiis**, abl. plur. of the noun *gladius*, -iī, m.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *dēstrictis*, denoting the manner. Synonyms: *gladius* is the usual, and *ensis* the poetic name for sword; *pugio* = the dagger openly worn; whereas *sica* = the poniard secretly carried. The sword of the Gauls was a long, two-edged, unwieldy affair, carried in a scabbard suspended on the right side, so as not to interfere with the shield side — the left. — **dēstrictis**, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *dēstrictus*, -a, -um; in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *gladiis*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = against. — **eōs**, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eōs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **impetum**, acc. sing. of the noun *impetus*, -ūs, m.; it is the direct obj. of the verb *fēcērunt*.

drawn swords. It greatly impeded the Gauls in fighting that many of their shields were pierced through and fastened together by a single thrust of the javelins; and since the iron point of	fēcērunt. they made.	Gallis As the Gauls,	māgnō for a great,	ad 9 in respect to
	pūgnam the fight,	erat was,	impedimentō, hindrance,	quod plūribus 10 that very many
	eōrum of their	scūtīs shields	ūnō by one	ictū pilōrum 11 stroke of the javelins
	trānsfixīs having been transfixed	et and	colligātīs, bound together,	cum ferrum 12 since the iron

LINE 9. *fēcērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with the subject-nom. *mīliēs* understood. Observe that, instead of using the phrase-form *in eōs impetum fecerunt*, Caesar might with greater conciseness have written: *eōs aggressi sunt*. See *Eōs* . . . *aggressus*, lines 13 and 14, Chap. XII. — *Gallis*, dat. plur. of the adj. *Gallus*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Gallis* is the dat. of the object to which after *erat*. Consult A. & G. 233; B. 147; G. 356; H. 390, I. — *māgnō*, dat. sing. n. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative *māior*; superl. *māximus*. *māgnō* is an attributive of the noun *impedimentō*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.; it is *in respect to*.

LINE 10. *pūgnam*, acc. sing. of the noun *pūgna*, -ae, f. *pūgnam* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. tense, ind. mode of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*; used impersonally, or rather the following *quod*-clause is the subj. — *impedimentō*, dat. of the noun *impedimentum*, -i, n. (in + *pēs* through the verb *impediō*); hence the noun = the condition of *foot-entanglement*, *impediment*, *hindrance*. *impedimentō* is here a dat. of service after the intrans. verb *erat*. Consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, REM. 2; G. 356; H. 390, I. The student will observe that *erat* here takes two datives: *Gallis* and *impedimentō* — the one the object to which, and the other the end for which. — *quod*, conj.; here it = *that*; it introduces the clause *quod* . . . *poterant*, which is the logical subj. of *erat*, immediately preceding. — *plūribus*, abl. plur. n. of the comparative adj. *plūrēs*, -a, gen. *plurium*; the sing. *plūs* is declined only in the neuter; positive *multus*; superl. *plūrimus*. *plūribus* is an attributive of the noun *scūtīs*. For declension of *plūrēs*, see A. & G. 86, and b; B. 72, 7; G. 89, REMS. I, 2, 3; H. 165, NOTE I.

LINE 11. *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *scūtīs*. — *scūtīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *scūtum*, -i, n. (*σκῦτρος* = *tanned hide, leather*). *scūtīs* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participles *trānsfixis* and *colligātīs*, denoting *time when*. Synonyms: *scūtum* = the oblong wooden *shield*, leather-covered; whereas the *clypeus*, or *clipeus*, or *clipeum* was a round brazen *shield*. — *ūnō*, abl. sing. m. of the cardinal num. adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; gen. *ūnius*, dat. *ūnī*. *ūnō* is an attributive of the noun *ictū*. — *ictū*, abl. sing. of the noun *ictus*, -ūs, m. (*icere*, to strike). *ictū* is an abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *pilōrum*, gen. plur. of the noun *pilum*, -i, n. = the heavy *javelin* of the Roman infantry. *pilōrum*, as a gen., limits the noun *ictū*.

LINE 12. *trānsfixīs*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *trānsfixus*, -a, -um of the verb *trānsfigō*, -ere, *fixi*, *fixum*, 3 (*trāns* + *figere* = *lit. to pierce through*). *trānsfixīs* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *scūtīs*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects words and phrases and clauses of equal importance. *et* here connects

13	sē	inflexisset,	neque	ēvellere	neque	the weapon bent itself, the Gauls could neither pull the javelin out, nor, as the left hand was encum- bered with the shield, could they fight with any ease; so that
	itself	had bent,	neither	to pluck it out	nor,	
14	sinistrā	impeditā	satis	commodē		
	the left hand	being impeded,	enough	advantageously		
15	pūgnāre	poterant,	multī	ut	diū	
	to fight	were they able,	many,	so that,	long	

the two participles. — *col(n)ligātis*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *col-ligātus*, -a, -um of the verb *col(n)ligō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I (con + ligāre = lit. to bind together); *colligātis* is connected by the conj. *et* with *transfixis*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *cum*, causal conj. — *ferrum*, nom. sing. of *ferrum*, -i, n. = like GK. *σίδηρος*, anything made of iron. *ferrum* is the subject-nom. of the verb *inflexisset*.

LINE 13. *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī, sibi, sē, sē* — same form in both numbers; it refers to *ferrum*, and = *itself*; it is the direct obj. of the verb *inflexisset*. — *inflexisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *inflexō, -ere, -flexi, -flexum*, 3 (in + flectere = lit. to bend in); it agrees with its subject-nom. *ferrum*; it is in the subjunctive after *cum* causal. Consult A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517. Observe that *cum . . . inflexisset* express the reason why the Gauls could not fight successfully. — *neque* (*nē + que* = lit. and not); but *neque . . . neque* = *neither . . . nor*; in this use, a species of correlative conjunctions. When *neque* = *and not*, it is a conjunctive adv. — *ēvellere*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *ēvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum*, 3 (*ē + vellere* = to pluck out). *ēvellere* is a complementary inf., depending on *poterant*, l. 15, below. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2; supply *eum*, i.e. *ferrum*, as direct obj. of *ēvellere*. — *neque*, see *neque*, immediately preceding.

LINE 14. *sinistrā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *sinister, -tra, -trum*, used substantively; or supply *manū*. *sinistrā*, as a subst., is in the abl. absolute construction with the participle *impeditā*, denoting the cause. See A. & G. 255, d, 2; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2, (3). Observe that the left hand was hampered, because the soldier wore the shield on the left arm, and one soldier's shield was fastened to the shield of another by the heavy Roman javelins that pierced it. — *impeditā*, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *impeditus, -a, -um* of the verb *impediō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum*, 4 (in + pēs) = *with the foot in it*; hence to ensnare, impede. *impeditā* is in the abl. absolute with *sinistrā*, used as a noun. — *satis*, adv., comparative *sartius* = lit. more satisfying, i.e. better. *satis* as an adv. modifies the adv. *commodē*. — *commodē*, adv. (from adj. *commodus* = *advantageous*); it modifies the verb *pūgnāre*.

LINE 15. *pūgnāre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, I; connected by the conj. *neque* with *ēvellere*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. complementary inf., and depends on *poterant*. — *poterant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *possum, posse, potui*; and it agrees with *Galli* understood, as the subject-nom. — *multī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *multus, -a, -um*, used substantively; or supply *mīlitēs*; subject-nom. of the verb *praeoptarent*. Observe its emphatic position; usually the conj. *ut*, in a clause of result, stands at the head of it. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *diū*, adv. (*diēs*), comparative *diūtius*, superl. *diūtissimē*. *diū*, as an adv., modifies *iactātō*.

many, after tossing their arms about for a long time, preferred to throw their shields away, and fight without protection. At length, exhausted with wounds, they began to fall back, and, as there was a moun-	iactātō	brāchiō	praeoptārent	scūtum	16	
	having been tossed about	the arm,	preferred	the shield		
	manū	ēmittere	et	nūdō	corpore	
	from the hand	to throw	and	with the nude	body	
	pūgnāre.	Tandem	vulneribus	dēfessī	et	
	to fight.	At length	by wounds	worn out	both	
	pedem	referre	et,	quod	mōns	suberat
	the foot	to bear back	and,	because	a mountain was near,	

LINE 16. **iactātō**, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *iactātus*, -a, -um of the verb *iactō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (frequentative of *iaciō*, 3). *iactātō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *brāchiō*. — **brāchiō**, abl. sing. of the noun *brāchium*, -ii, n. (compare GK. βραχίον). *brāchium* = lit. *the forearm*, but here it = the entire arm. *brāchiō* is abl. absolute with the participle *iactātō*, denoting *time when*. — **praeoptārent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *praeoptō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (prae + optāre); hence = lit. to wish for one thing before another = *to prefer*. *praeoptārent* is subjunctive of result after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 319; B. 201; G. 552, 1; H. 500, II. — **scūtum**, acc. sing. of the noun *scūtum*, -ī, n.; it is the direct obj. of the verb *ēmittere*. As to derivation and synonyms, see note on *scūtus*, l. 9, above.

LINE 17. **manū**, abl. sing. of the noun *manus*, -ūs, f. by exception; see A. & G. 69; B. 48, REM. 5, EXC. 1; G. 62, EXC.; H. 118, EXC. (1.). *manū* is an abl. of separation after the verb *ēmittere*. Consult A. & G. 243, b; B. 160; G. 390, 2; H. 413. — **ēmittere**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *ēmittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (ē + mittere = lit. *to send out*). *ēmittere* is a complementary inf., depending on *praeoptārent*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, l. 1. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects *ēmittere* and *pūgnāre*. — **nūdō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *nūdus*, -a, -um. *nūdō*, lit. *naked*, is an attributive of the noun *corpore*. — **corpore**, abl. of the noun *corpus*, -oris, n.; abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. The phrase *nūdō corpore* = with the body unprotected by a shield, i.e. without a shield.

LINE 18. **pūgnāre**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *pūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. *pūgnāre* is connected by *et* with *ēmittere*, and is also a complementary inf., depending on *praeoptārent*. Note that *praeoptārent* is transitive, and that the complementary infinitives, with their objects, form object-clauses, which are in the nature of direct objects. Note also the unique and, therefore, emphatic position of *praeoptārent*; its normal position in the sentence would be immediately after *pūgnāre*. — **Tandem**, adv. (tam + dem); hence = lit. *just so far*, i.e. *at length*. *tandem* modifies *coeperunt*, l. 21, below. — **vu(o)lneribus**, abl. plur. of *vu(o)lnus*, -eris, n.; abl. of cause. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. — **dēfessī**, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle *dēfessus*, -a, -um of the deponent *dēfeticor*, -ī, -fessus, 3, agreeing with *Galli* understood — the omitted subject of *coeperunt*, l. 21, below. But note that *dēfessī* is a perf. participle of a deponent verb; it is here used in a passive sense. — **et**, a species of correlative conj. here, followed by another *et* connecting the object-clauses.

LINE 19. **pedem**, acc. sing. of the noun *pēs*, *pedis*, m.; direct obj. of the verb *referre*. — **referre**, pres. inf. act. of the verb *referō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum. Observe

20	<i>circiter</i>	<i>mille</i>	<i>passuum</i>	<i>spatiō,</i>	<i>eō</i>	tain near—about a mile off—they began thither to retreat. When
	<i>about</i>	<i>a thousand</i>	<i>of paces</i>	<i>in respect to space,</i>	<i>thither</i>	the mountain had been reached by the enemy, and our men were approaching it in pursuit, the Boii
21	<i>sē</i>	<i>recipere</i>	<i>coepērunt.</i>	<i>Captō</i>		
	<i>themselves</i>	<i>to betake</i>	<i>they began.</i>	<i>Being reached</i>		
22	<i>monte</i>	<i>et succēdentibus</i>	<i>nostrīs,</i>	<i>Bōiī</i>		
	<i>the mountain and</i>	<i>coming on</i>	<i>our (men), the Boii</i>			

that this inf. with its direct obj. forms an object-clause that depends on *coepērunt*. Observe, further, that *pedem referre* = lit. *to bear the foot back*, i.e. *to retreat*; and = *terga vertere* or *terga dare*, except that *pedem referre* = *to retreat in good order*; whereas *terga vertere* or *terga dare* = generally, *to retreat in confusion*. — *et*, see note on *et*, preceding line; but note that *et* here connects the object-phrases *pedem referre* and *se recipere*. — *quod*, conj., causal (really an adverbial acc. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, and = *as to which*, *in that*, *because*). — *mōns*, nom. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m. (from the root *min*, as seen in *minārī*, *ēminēre*, lit. *a projecting object*). *mōns* is the subject-nom. of the verb *suberat*. — *suberat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *subsum*, -esse, no perf., *futūrus* (sub + sum); hence *subesse* = lit. *to be under*, i.e. *near*, or *at hand*. *suberat* agrees with its subject-nom. *mōns*.

LINE 20. *circiter*, adv. (*circus*, *circum* = *a circular line, in a ring*, compare GK. *κίρκος*). *circiter* modifies the adj. *mille*. — *mille*, an indecl. adj. in the sing.; but sometimes used as a noun in the nom. and acc. sing., e.g. in the phrase *mille passuum*, of the text. *mille* is here an acc. of extent of space. A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — *passuum*, gen. plur. of the noun *passus*, -ūs, m. *passuum* is partitive gen. after *mille*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — *spatiō*, abl. sing. of the noun *spatium*, -iī, n. (compare English *space*). *spatiō* is abl. of specification. Consult A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *eō*, adv. (old dat. of the pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*); supply *locō*, and the phrase *eō locō* = *to that place*, *thither*. *eō* refers to *mōns*. Observe that, as often *place* by metonymy = the persons *at the place*, *eō* may sometimes in English = *on it*, *him* or *them*, as the context may require.

LINE 21. *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* refers to the subj. of the proposition, but *is* is the direct obj. of *recipere*. — *recipere*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (re + cāpere); hence *recipere* = *to take back*; with *sē* = *to take one's self back* — *to retreat*. — *coepērunt*, 3d pers. plur. of the defective verb *coepī*, *coepisse*, fut. participle *coeptūrus*; with the exception of the fut. act. participle used only in the perfect and cognate tenses, act. and pass.; when followed by a pass. inf. the pass. form *coeptus sum* is used instead of *coepī*. *coepērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *Galli*, to be supplied. — *Captō*, abl. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *captus*, -a, -um of the verb *captō*, -ere, -cēpi, *captum*, 3. *captō* here = *occupāō*, and is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *monte*, denoting *time when*. See A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, I, 2, (3).

LINE 22. *monte*, abl. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *captō*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the phrases. — *succēdentibus*, abl. plur. m. of the pres. participle *succēdēns*, -ntis of the verb *succēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (sub + cēdere) = lit. *to go under*. *succēdentibus* is in the abl. absolute



and Tulingi who, with about fifteen thousand men, closed the ene- my's line and served as a rear- guard, attacked, on the unprotect- ed flank, our soldiers while still advancing,	et and	Tulingī, the Tulingi,	quī who with,	hominum of men,	mīlibus thousands	23	
	circiter about	quīndecim fifteen,	āgmen the line of march	hostium of the enemy		24	
	claudēbant closed,	et and	novissimīs to the newest (the rear)	praesidiō for a protection		25	
	erant, were,	ex on	itinere the march	nostrōs ours	ā latere on the flank	apertō open,	26

construction with *nostrīs*, used substantively; or supply *militibus*. — *nostrīs*, abl. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively, and abl. absolute with the pres. participle *succedentibus*, denoting *time when*. See grammatical references to *Caplō*, preceding line. — *Bōiī*, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people, occupying a district lying between the rivers Loire and Allier; some of them settled in Cisalpine Gaul; others migrated to Germany; while others cast in their lot with the Helvetii, and were with them on this migration. *Bōiī* is subject-nom. of the historical inf. *circumvenire*, l. 27, below.

LINE 23. *et*, cop. conj.; it here connects *Bōiī* and *Tulingī*. — *Tulingī*, -orum, m., a German tribe east of the *Rauraci*. *Tulingī* is connected by the conj. *et* with the proper noun *Bōiī*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the *Bōiī et Tulingī*, and is the subj. of the verb *claudēbant*. — *hominum*, gen. plur. of the noun *homō*, -inis, m. or f.; partitive gen. after *mīlibus*. See A & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. For synonyms, see note on *hominēs*, l. 20, Chap. I. — *mīlibus*, abl. plur. of *mīlia*, -ium, plur. of the adj. *mīle*; in the plur. it is used as a nenter noun. *mīlibus* is the abl. of *accompaniment* without the prep. *cum*. Consult A. & G. 248, a, NOTE; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 399; H. 419, III, 1, 1).

LINE 24. *circiter*, adv. (*circus*, *circum*) = *about*; *circiter* modifies the cardinal num. adj. *quīndecim*. — *quīndecim*, num. adj. (quīnque + decem). *quīndecim* is an attributive of *mīlibus*, used as a noun. — *āgmen*, acc. sing. of the noun *āgmen*, -inis, n. (*agere*, to agitate). *āgmen* is the direct obj. of the verb *claudēbant*. For synonyms, see note on *āgmen*, l. 9, Chap. XV. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f.; as a gen. it limits the noun *āgmen*. Synonyms: *hostis* = *a public enemy*; *inimicus* (in + amicus) = *a private foe*.

LINE 25. *claudēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of the verb *claudō*, -ere, *clausi*, *clausum*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the two clauses. — *novissimīs*, dat. plur. n. of the adj. superl. degree *novissimus*, -a, -um; positive *novus*; comparative wanting. *novissimīs* is here used substantively; or we may supply *agminis* = lit. *the newest*, i.e. *latest*, *last*; hence = *the rear*. *novissimīs* is the dat. of the obj. to which after *erant*. — *praesidiō*, dat. of the noun *praesidium*, -iī, n. (*praeses*). *praesidiō* is the dat. of service or dat. *for which* after *erant*. Consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, REM. 2; G. 356; H. 390, I.

LINE 26. *erant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; it is connected by the conj. *et* with the verb *claudēbant*, and has the same subject-nom. *quī*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *itinere*, abl. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n. (*īre*, *itum*); hence = lit. *a going*. *itinere* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. of

27	aggressī	circumvenīre ;	et	id	and tried to surround them. On observing this manoeuvre, the Helvetii, who had retreated to the mountain, began again to draw near and renew
	having attacked,	to surround (them tried);	and	that	
28	cōspicātī	Helvētīi,	quī	in	montem
	having seen,	the Helvetii,	who	to	the mountain
29	sēsē	recēperant,	rūrsus	īnstāre	et
	themselves	had betaken,	again	to press on	and

the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum, used substantively, or supply *mīlītēs*; *nostrōs* is the direct obj. of the deponent participle *ag(d)gressī*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (*ā* before consonants only, *ab* before vowels or consonants). *ā* here = *on*. See note on *ab*, l. 24, Chap. I. — *latere*, abl. sing. of the noun *latus*, -eris, n. *latere* is the obj. of the prep. *ā*. — *apertō*, abl. sing. n. of the participle *aperius*, -a, -um of the verb *aperiō*, -ire, -uī, -pertum, 4 (ab + parere). *aperiō* = lit. to bring forth — to drop as of animals; hence in participle = *uncovered*, *bare*. *apertō* is an attributive of the noun *latere*.

LINE 27. *aggressī*, perf. participle of the deponent verb *ag(d)gredior*, -gredi, *gressus* (ad + gradi) = lit. to take a step toward; hence = to attack. — *circumvenīre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *circumveniō*, -ire, -vērī, -ventum, 4 (circum + veniō) = lit. to come around; hence = to surround; historical inf. having as its subject-nominatives *Bōi* and *Tulingi*, or we may supply *cōndī sunt*. Consult A. & G. 275; B. 182, and REM.; G. 647, and NOTE 1; H. 536, 1. Supply *ēds* as direct obj. of *circumvenīre*, and observe that the historical inf. = *circumvenēbant* — conative imperf. Some texts read here *circumvenēre*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind.; and some texts have not even a comma between *circumvenīre* and *et*; the inf., of course, is made in this construction to depend on *coeperunt*, l. 30, below. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the sentences. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; the direct obj. of the deponent participle *cōspicātī*. *id* refers to the movement of the *Bōi* and the *Tulingi*.

LINE 28. *cōspicātī*, nom. plur. of the perf. participle *cōspiciātus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *cōspicor*, -ārī, -cātus, 1; as a participle it agrees with the noun *Helvētīi* in gender, number and case. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Helvētīi* is the subject-nom. of the verb *coeperunt*, l. 30, below. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the noun *Helvētīi*; it is the subj. of the verb *recēperant*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion. For different significations, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *montem*, acc. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, f. (root in *minārī*, and in *eminēre*); hence lit. it = a projecting body. Observe that the *i* in the root *min* is short by nature. Query: How does the *i* which passes into *o* in the stem *mont* become, in any case, long by nature? *montem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 29. *sēsē*, acc. plur. of the pron. *sē* reduplicated; acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers. *sēsē* is the direct obj. of the verb *recēperant*. — *recēperant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of the verb *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (re + capere); hence = lit. to take back; transf. = to get back. But lit. *sē recipere* = to take one's self back, to withdraw, to go anywhere; in military language, to retreat. *recēperant* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *rūrsus*, adv.; another form *rūrsus* (contracted from *revorsus*, a participle of *revortor*, -ī, -ver[*vor*]-sus, 3); hence *rūrsus* = lit. turned back, i.e. = again, anew. — *īnstāre*, pres. inf.

the battle. The Romans wheeled and advanced to the attack in two divisions: the first and second lines, to oppose the Helvetii who had been previously vanquished and routed;	proelium redintegrāre coepērunt.	Rōmānī 30
	the battle to renew began. The Romans (then)	
	conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt; 31	
	turned about standards in two divisions advanced (bore in);	
	prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs 32	
	the first and second line, that the vanquished	

of the verb *instō*, -stāre, -stiti, fut. participle -stāturus (in + stāre); hence *instāre* = lit. to stand on or near, i.e. to press on, be urgent. *instāre* is here a complementary inf., depending on *coepērunt*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — et, cop. conj.; it connects the infinitives *instāre* and *redintegrāre*.

LINE 30. *proelium*, acc. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n.; it is the direct obj. of the verb *redintegrāre*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *redintegrāre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *redintegrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1 (re[d] + integrāre [in + tangere], through *integer*); hence *integrāre* = lit. to be untouched, i.e. sound; and with *re* = to be whole again; i.e. to recover their courage — to renew the fight. *redintegrāre* is connected by the conj. *et* with the inf. *instāre*, and is in the same grammatical construction; depends on *coepērunt*. — *coepērunt*, 3d pers. plur. of the defective verb *coepi*, which is used only in the perf. and cognate tenses. See note on *coepērunt*, l. 21, above. *coepērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvetiī*, l. 28, above. — *Rōmānī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Rōmānī* is the subject-nom. of the verb *intulērunt*.

LINE 31. *conversa*, acc. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *conversus*, -a, -um of the verb *converto*, -ere, -verti, -versum, 3. *conversa*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *signa*. — *signa*, acc. plur. of the noun *signum*, -ī, n. (sibilated from the GK. εἰκών, an image, a likeness); hence = lit. that by which anything is known; in military language = the sign of a division of an army, a standard. *signa* is the direct obj. of the verb *intulērunt*. Observe the strictly lit. translation of the phrase *conversa signa*; it = the standards having been turned about. — *bipertitō*, adv. (bis + partitus [pars]); hence *bipertitō* = in bipartition, i.e. in two parts, ways, directions. — *intulērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *inferō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum. *intulērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *Rōmānī*. Observe that the lit. translation here of *Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt* = The Romans bore in the standards having been turned about in two parts, i.e. The Romans wheeled about and advanced in two directions. The reader will observe that the rear, or third line, wheeled about and attacked the Boii and Tulingi who were approaching the Roman rear; while the second and third lines engaged the Helvetii who were approaching the Romans from the mountain to which they had retreated. It is interesting to note the technical military phrases in use among the Romans, in which *ferre* and compounds play a part. *signa ferre* = to march; *signa inferre* = to bear the standards into the fray, to advance to the attack; while *signa referre* = to retreat; and *signa cōferre* = to engage in a conflict.

LINE 32. *prīma*, nom. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *primus*, -a, -um; superl. degree *prīmus*; comparative degree *prior*, *prius*. *prīma* is an attributive of the noun *aciēs*. — et, cop. conj.; connects the adjectives *prīma* and *secunda*. — *secunda*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *secundus*, -a, -um. *secundus* is properly a participle of the verb

33	āc	submōtīs	resisteret,	tertia,	ut	the third line, to withstand the shock of the Boii and Tulingi who were then approaching the Romans' unprotected flank.
	and	dislodged	it might resist,	the third,	that	
34	venientēs	sustinēret.				
	(those) coming	it might withstand.				
1	XXVI.	Ita	ancipitī	proeliō	diū	XXVI. Thus this double-fronted battle was
		Thus	in the two-headed	battle	long	

*sequor* = following; hence = next, second, in time or order. *secunda* is connected by *et* with *prīma*, and has the same grammatical construction; it is an attributive of *aciēs*. — *aciēs*, nom. sing. of the noun *aciēs*, -ī, f. (*āks*, the edge of a thing); in military language = the line of battle. *aciēs* is the subject-nom. of *intulit*, to be supplied. As the first and second lines did not wheel, but faced the enemy only, *signa intulit* fills the lacuna here. — *ut*, telic conj. here. — *victīs*, dat. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *victus*, -a, -um of the verb *vincō*, -ere, *vici*, *victum*. *victīs* is used substantively here, and is in the dat. after *resisteret* — a verb of resistance that takes the dat. Consult A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346; II. 385, 1. Of course these participles here used may be regarded as such, and be made to agree with *hostibus*, to be supplied; which latter, in that case, would be datives after *resisteret*.

LINE 33. *āc*, shortened form of *atque* (*ad* + *que*); usually adds a more emphatic notion. — *submōtīs*, dat. plur. of the participle *submōtus*, -a, -um of the verb *submoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (*sub* + *movēre*). *submōtīs* is connected by the conj. *āc* with *victīs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. Observe that these participles are essentially predicative, and are equivalent to a relative and a finite verb. — *resisteret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *resistō*, -ere, -stīti, -stītum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *aciēs*; it is the subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, telic. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II. — *tertia*, nom. sing. f. of the ordinal adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; it is the attributive of *aciēs*, to be supplied; which latter is the subject-nom. of *intulerit*, to be supplied. Indeed, the full lacuna here to be supplied is: *tertia aciēs conversa signa intulerit*, as the *tertia aciēs* only wheeled about. — *ut*, telic conj.

LINE 34. *venientēs*, acc. plur. of the pres. participle *veniēns*, -ntis of the verb *veniō*, -īre, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4; *venientēs* agrees with *eōs*, i.e. *Bōios et Tulingōs*, to be supplied. *eōs* thus supplied is the direct obj. of *sustinēret*. — *sustinēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *sustineō*, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2 (*sub* + *tenēre*); hence = lit. to hold up from beneath, i.e. to sustain; *sustinēret* is the subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, telic. Observe that, as to the position of the parties, the Romans fronted the west; the Helvetii, the east; while the Boii and Tulingi from a northerly direction were approaching the Romans on the right, or unprotected flank; that the Roman forces were drawn up in three parallel lines; that the first and second lines were striving to resist the renewed attack of the Helvetii, who had been previously routed and driven off; and that the third line, by wheeling to the right, were meeting the flank attack of the Boii and Tulingi.

LINE 1. *Ita*, adv. (radical *i*, whence *is* + *ta*); hence = in such a manner; here the adv. = as thus described; and the writer immediately repeats the idea in *ancipitī proeliō*. — *ancipitī*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *anceps*, *ancipitīs*, abl. always ending in

fought long and courageously. When the enemy was unable to en- dure longer the onsets of our soldiers, one par- ty — the Helve- tii — retreated to the mountain, as they had begun;	atque and	ācriter bitterly	pūgnātum est. it was fought.	Diūtius Longer	cum <sup>2</sup> when
sustinēre to sustain	nostrōrum our	impetūs attacks	nōn not	possent, <sup>3</sup> they were able,	
alterī the one	sē, themselves,	ut as	coeperant, they had begun,	in to	montem <sup>4</sup> the mountain

*ī* (a contraction from *ambō* + *caput* = lit. *double-headed*); hence sometimes = *doubtful*, and *double*. *incipiūt* is an attributive of *proeliō*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -ī, n. (*prō* or *prae* + *ire*); *proeliō* is an abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. *proelium* is often written *proelium*. For synonyms, see note on *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *diū* (*diēs*), adv.; comparative *diūtius*.

LINE 2. *atque* (ad + *que*), conj.; adds a notion of greater importance usually; it here connects the adverbs *diū* and *ācriter*. — *ācriter*, adv. (adj. *ācer*, sharp); formed by adding -*ter* to the stem *ācrī*. Observe that there are three adverbs and one adverbial phrase preceding the verb *pūgnātum est*, and modifying it. — *pūgnātum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of the verb *pūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; here *pūgnātum est* is strictly an impersonal verb = *it was fought*; but as it is here a verb of complete predication with *proeliō*, it may be rendered as if *proeliō* were *proelium* — the subject-nom. For synopsis of *pūgnātum est*, as an impersonal verb, see A. & G. 145; B. 114, 115; G. 208, 2; H. 301, 1. — *Diūtius*, adv.; comparative degree of *diū* (*diēs*); superl. degree *diūtissimē*. *diūtius* modifies the verb *sustinēre*. — *cum*, conj., historical. Observe that both *cum* and *diūtius* are made emphatic by exchange of positions.

LINE 3. *sustinēre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *sustineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, 2 (sub + *tenēre*). *sustinēre* is a complementary inf., depending on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nostrōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum, used substantively, or supply *militum*; as a gen. it limits *impetūs*. — *impetūs*, acc. plur. of the noun *impetus*, -ūs, m. *impetūs* is the direct obj. of *sustinēre*. — *nōn* (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopaed), adv.; it modifies *possent*. Observe its natural position immediately before the word it modifies. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (*potis*, *able* + *sum*); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Gallī* or *hostiēs* understood. *possent* is in the subjunctive after *cum*, denoting both time and cause. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2.

LINE 4. *alterī*, nom. plur. m. of the pron. *alter*, -era, -erum, gen. *alterius*, dat. *alterī*; observe that *alterius* has the ictus on the antepenult. *alterī* refers to one division — the Helvetii; it is the subject-nom. of *recēperunt*. As to synonyms, consult note on *alius*, l. 13, Chap. I. *alterī* . . . *alterī*, as in the text = *the one party* . . . *the other party*. — *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers. *sē* refers to the subj. of the proposition, but it is the direct obj. of the verb *recēperunt*. — *ut*, adv. = *as*, and generally when used with the ind. — *coeperant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the defective verb *coeptī*, fut. participle *coeptūrus*; used in the perfect and cognate tenses; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Gallī* or *hostiēs*. — *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.; after a verb of motion it = *into*.

5	recēpērunt,	alterī	ad	impedimenta	et	the other party
	betook,	the other	near	the baggage-train	and	— the Boii and Tulingi — made
6	carrōs	suōs	sē	contulērunt.	Nam	hōc
	carts	their, themselves	collected.	For	in this	towards the baggage and the waggons. For
7	tōtō	proeliō,	cum	ab	hōrā	septimā
	whole	battle,	though	from	hour	the seventh
						o'clock till eve-

For different significations of the prep., see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **montem**, acc. sing. of the noun *mōns*, *montis*, m. (root in *minārī* and *eminēre*); hence *mōns* = a projecting body.

LINE 5. **recēpērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (re + capere); hence = *to take back*; with *sē* = *to withdraw, to retreat*. **recēpērunt** agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Gallī* or *hostēs*. — **alterī**, nom. plur. m. of the adj. pron. *alter*; see note on *alteri*, preceding line. *alterī* here = *Boii et Tulingi*. Observe that, as *alterī* in the preceding line refers to one division of the enemy, *alterī* here denotes the other division. *alterī* here is the subject-nom. of the verb *contulērunt*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **impedimenta**, acc. plur. of the noun *impedimentum*, -i, n. (in + pēs through the verb *impediō*). *impedimenta* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that *impedimenta* = the baggage of an army, including horses and carts; whereas *sarcinae* = personal baggage. — **et**, cop. conj.

LINE 6. **carrōs**, acc. plur. of the noun *carrus*, -i, m.; sometimes the form *carum*, -i, n., occurs; but not in *Caesar*. *carrōs* is connected by the conj. *et* with *impedimenta*, and is in the same grammatical construction. The lexicons teach us that *carrus* is a Gallic word, and denotes a species of four-wheeled waggon. A copy of notes in my possession pictures it as a two-wheeled affair. The lexicons are supposed to be true sources of information. — **suōs**, acc. plur. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it agrees, logically, with both *impedimenta* and *carrōs*, but grammatically only with the latter. — **sē**, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; *sē* is the direct obj. of the verb *contulērunt*. — **contulērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the verb *cōnferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *col(n)lātum*. *contulērunt* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., representing *Gallī* or *hostēs*. Observe the words *sē recēpērunt*, lines 4 and 5, above, and compare them with *sē contulērunt*. Etymologically, *sē recēpērunt* = *they took themselves back*; while *sē contulērunt* = *they brought themselves together*. Practically, however, these forms of expression are identical in meaning, i.e. they = the English *they retreated* in an orderly manner. He uses these modes of expression to indicate that there was no disorder. If *Caesar* had wished to express that idea, he would have written *fūgerunt*. — **Nam**, conj.; introduces the following statement to explain the preceding statements as to the orderly retreat. Observe that *nam* introduces an objective reason; whereas *enim* a subjective. — **hōc**, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; *hōc* is an attributive of the idea involved in the phrase *tōtō proeliō*.

LINE 7. **tōtō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, dat. *tōtī*. *tōtō* is an attributive of the noun *proeliō*. — **proeliō**, abl. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -iī, n. (prae or prō + ire). For derivation and synonyms, see note on *proeliū*, l. 18, Chap. I. *proeliō* is a locative abl. of manner without a prep. See A. & G. 258, f, 2; B. 170, REM. 2; G. 388; II. 425, II, 1, 1), and 2. Observe that the English word *throughout* gives

ning, no one could see the back of an enemy. Till late at night, even up to the baggage, the battle raged, be- cause the enemy	ad to	vesperum evening	pūgnātum sit, it was fought,	āversum 8 turned away
	hostem an enemy	vidēre to see,	nēmō no one	potuit. Ad multam 9 was able. Till much
	noctem night	etiam even	ad to	impedimenta pūgnātum est 10 the baggage-train it was fought,

the idea of *lōtō* in the complex phrase: *hōc lōtō proeliō*; and that the best English for the entire phrase is: *throughout this battle*. — *cum*, concessive conj. = *though* or *although*. Consult A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 587; H. 515, III. Observe that the *time*-notion is involved in *cum* concessive, but it has largely faded out; so also the causal notion; the concessive notion can only be ascertained by considering the construction, and also the *sense*. Sometimes, however, we are aided in our deductions by noticing a *lumen* expressed, as an adversative, in the principal clause. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. (*ab* before vowels or consonants, *ā* before consonants only). — *hōrā*, abl. sing. of the noun *hora*, -ae, f. (GK. ὥρα). *hōrā* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *septimā*, abl. sing. of the ordinal adj. *septimū*, -a, -um (*septem*, compare GK. ἑπτά). *septimā* is an attributive of the noun *hōrā*. Observe that, as the day, among the Romans, was reckoned as twelve hours, from sunrise to sunset, the hours were of varying lengths, according to the season of the year; and that *ab hōrā septimā*, according to our mode of designating time = 1 h. 15 m. o'clock.

LINE 8. *ad*, prep. with the acc.; usually = *to* or *toward*; but here it = *until*. — *vesperum*, acc. sing. of the noun *vesper*, *vesperis* or *vesperi*, m. (compare GK. ἑσπερος); abl. *vespere*, or adverbially *vesperi*. *vesperum*, as an acc., is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *pūgnātum sit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive; a verb of complete predication, used impersonally; see note on *pūgnātum est*, l. 2, above; subjunctive after *cum* concessive; see grammatical references to *cum*, preceding line. — *āversum*, acc. sing. m. of the participle *āversus*, -a, -um of the verb *āvertō*, -ere, -versī, -versum, 3. *āversum* agrees with the noun *hostem*.

LINE 9. *hostem*, acc. sing. of the noun *hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f. *hostem* is the direct obj. of the verb *vidēre*. Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. *a stranger*; transf., *a public enemy*; whereas *inimicus* (in + *amicus*) = *a private enemy*. Observe that *āversum hostem* = lit. *an enemy turned away*, i.e. *in flight*. — *vidēre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *videō*, -ēre, *vādī*, *vīsum*, 2 (digammated from radical *lō*, as seen in the 2d aorist participle *lōvōn*). *vidēre* is a complementary inf., depending on *potuit*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nēmō*, nom. sing. of the noun *nēmō*, *nēmīnis* (nē + *homō*). *nēmō* is subject-nom. of *potuit*. But observe that the gen. *nēmīnis* and the abl. *nēmīnē* are not used; instead, *nūllūs* and *nūllō* are used. — *potuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + *sum*). *potuit* agrees with its subject-nom. *nēmō*. — *Ad*, prep. with the acc.; not *towards* here; that would be expressed by the prep. *sub*; as *sub vesperum* would = *toward evening*; but *ad* here, like *ad* in the phrase *ad vesperum* = *till*. — *multam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; comparative degree *plūs*; superl. degree *plūrimus*. *multam* is an attributive of *noctem*.

LINE 10. *noctem*, acc. sing. of the noun *nox*, *noctis*, f. (compare GK. νύξ, νυκτός). *noctem* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that the phrase *ad multam noctem* = *to* or *till much night*, i.e. *till far in the night*. — *etiam* (et + *iam*), conj. adv.; here with *ad* it = *even up to*. — *impedimenta*, acc. plur. of *impedimentum*, -i, n. (in +

11	propterea	quod	prō	vāllō	carrōs	had placed in front their wag-gons as a rampart; and from them, as a higher position, kept hurling their missiles on our men, as they were coming up; and some
	for this reason	because	for	a rampart	the carts	
12	obiēcerant	et	ē	locō	superiōre	
	they had opposed	and	from	the place	higher	
13	in	nostros	venientes	tēla	coniciēbant,	
	against	our (men)	coming,	weapons	they threw,	

pēs through the verb *impediō*); it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *pūgnātum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of the verb *pūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; pass. parts: *pūgnor*, -ārī, -ātus, I. See note on *pūgnātum est*, l. 2, above.

LINE 11. *propterea* (propter + eā), adv. = lit. *on account of these things*; hence sometimes = *therefore*; the long *ē* in the ultima is anomalous. Here *propterea* = *for this reason*, and is the herald, so to speak, of the following *quod*-clause; it is often better omitted in the translation. — *quod*, here a conj. = *because*; *quod* is really an adverbial acc. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *qui*, *quae*, *quod* = *in respect to what, in that, because*. *quod* is frequently preceded by *hōc* and *ob hanc causam*, as well as by *propterea*. — *prō* (GK. *πρό*), prep. with the abl. — *vāllō*, abl. sing. of the noun *vāllum*, -ī, n. *vāllō* is the obj. of the prep. *prō*. *prō vāllō* = lit. *for a defense*. Primarily *vāllum* = *a palisaded rampart*; hence = *a wall, a rampart*; compare English *wall*. — *carrōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *carrus*, -ī, m. *carrōs* is the direct obj. of the verb *obiēcerant*. See note on *carrōs*, l. 6, above.

LINE 12. *obiēcerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of *obicere*, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (ob + iacere); hence *obicere* = lit. *to throw or set against*. *obiēcerant* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Gallī* or *hostēs* understood. It will be recalled that the term *Gallī* in Caesar often includes the Helvetii and other racially allied nations or clans. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *obiēcerant* and *coniciēbant*, l. 13, below. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *locō*, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, -ī, m.; plur. *locī*, m., and *locā*, n. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locō* is the obj. of the prep. *ē*. — *superiōre*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. comparative degree *superior*, -ius, gen. -ōris; positive *superus*; superl. *supremus* or *summus*. *superiōre* is an attributive of the noun *locō*.

LINE 13. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = *against*. — *nostros*, acc. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -īra, -trum, used substantively; or supply *militēs*. *nostros*, as a subst., is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *venientes*, acc. plur. m. of the participle *veniēns*, -ntis of the verb *veniō*, -īre, *vēnī*, *ventum*, 4; *venientes* agrees with the pron. *nostros* used as a noun, and is an attributive participle denoting the attendant circumstances. Consult A. & G. 292; B. 191, 1; G. 668; H. 549, 4. It will be observed that the participle thus used is the equivalent of a relative clause, and is essentially predicative. — *tēla*, acc. plur. of the noun *tēlum*, -ī, n. *tēla* is the direct obj. of the verb *coniciēbant*. Observe that *tēlum* was a weapon for fighting at a distance; while *arma* = *arms* for defense or close fighting. But *arma* is a broad term denoting weapons of any kind. *arma* is usually derived from GK. *ἀρμα*, *to fit to*, i.e. = *armor*; but transf. it = *implements of war* — *arms*. — *coniciēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of the verb *conicio*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3; connected by *et* with *obiēcerant*, and in the same grammatical construction.



kept thrusting up from below their lances and jave- lins between the waggons and wheels, and thus kept wounding our soldiers. Af- ter fighting a long time, our men gained posses- sion of the ene- my's baggage	et and	nōnnūllī some	inter between	carrōs the carts	rotāsque wheels and,	matarās lances	14
	āc and	trāgulās javelins		subiciēbant, hurled from beneath,		nostrōsque our (men) and,	15
		vulnerābant. they wounded.	Diū For long	cum when	esset it had been fought,	pūgnātum, 16	
		impedimentīs of the baggage-train		castrisque camp and,		nostrī our (men)	17

LINE 14. *et*, cop. conj.; connects the verbs *coniciēbant* and *subiciēbant*, l. 15, below. — *nōnnūllī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um (*nōn* + *nūllus*); hence *nōnnūllus* = *not none*, i.e. *some*; the two negatives = a positive. *nōnnūllī* is used substantively; or *mīlītēs* may be supplied; and is the subject-nom. of the verb *subiciēbant*. — *inter*, prep. with the acc. — *carrōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *carrus*, -ī, m.; but see note on *carrōs*, l. 6, above. *carrōs* is here the obj. of the prep. *inter*. — *rotāsque* (*rotās* + *que*); *rotās* is the acc. plur. of the noun *rota*, -ae, f.; connected closely by the enclitic conj. -*que* with the noun *carrōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. Observe that *rota* = lit. *a wheel*; compare the English *rotary*; sometimes *rota* = *pars prō tōtō* = *a car*. — *matarās*, acc. plur. of the noun *matarā*, -ae, f. (a Celtic word = a species of heavy javelin). *matarās* is a direct obj. of the verb *subiciēbant*.

LINE 15. *āc*, shortened form of the conj. *atque* (*āc* only before consonants in classical Latin); like *atque*, *āc* usually adds a notion of more importance. *āc* in our text connects *matarās* with *trāgulās*. — *trāgulās*, acc. plur. of the noun *trāgula*, -ae, f. (a Celtic word); it is connected by the conj. *āc* with *matarās*, and is also the direct obj. of *subiciēbant*. — *subiciēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of the verb *subiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (sub + *iacere*). *subiciēbant* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Helvētiū et Bōiū et Tulingī*, i.e. *Gallī* used broadly. — *nostrōsque* (*nostrōs* + *que*). *nostrōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum, used substantively; or supply *mīlītēs*; direct obj. of *vulnerābant*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects very closely the verbs *subiciēbant* and *vulnerābant*.

LINE 16. *vulnerābant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the verb *vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*vulnus*, a wound); it agrees with *Gallī* or *hostēs* as subject-nom. Observe that the imperf. tenses in lines 11-16 denote repeated action. See A. & G. 277; B. 95, II; G. 231; H. 469, II. — *Diū* (*diēs*), adv. = lit. *a space of time*; hence intensively, *a long time, long*. *diū*, as an adv., is compared thus: comparative *diūtius*; superl. *diūtissimē*. — *cum*, temporal conj. Note the emphasis that is put on both *cum* and *diū* by exchange of position. *cum*, ordinarily, stands first in introducing a subordinate clause. — *esset pūgnātum* (*pūgnātum esset*). 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive pass., used impersonally, of the verb *pūgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it is in the subjunctive mode after *cum*. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2.

LINE 17. *impedimentīs*, abl. plur. of *impedimentum*, -i, n.; abl. after the verb *potiū sunt*. Consult A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, 1. As to derivation and synonyms, see note on *impedimenta*, l. 5, above. Observe that *potior* sometimes, though rarely, takes the gen.; see *Galliae sēsē potiū* posse spērant, lines 36 and 37,

18	potitī sunt.	Ibi	Orgetorigis	filia	and camp. The
	gained possession.	There	Orgetorix's	daughter	daughter of Or-
19	atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.		Ex eō		getorix and one
	and also one of (his) sons was captured.		After that		of his sons were
20	proeliō circiter milia hominum centum et				captured in this
	battle about thousands of men one hundred and				camp. About one
21	trīgintā superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte				hundred and thir-
	thirty remained, in that and, entire night				ty thousand men
					survived this
					battle, and dur-
					ing the entire

Chap. III. — *castrisque* (*castris* + *que*). *castris* is the abl. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -i, n.; in the sing. = *fort*; in the plur., *camp*. *castris* is closely connected by the enclitic conj. with *impedimentis*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *nostrī*, nom. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum, used substantively; or supply *miliēs*; subject-nom. of the verb *potitī sunt*.

LINE 18. *potitī sunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the deponent verb *potior*, *potiri*, *potitus*, 4. *potitī sunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *nostrī*. — *Ibi* (radical *i*, whence *is* + loc. ending *bi*); hence = lit. *in that place, there*; the place alluded to is the Helvetian camp. — *Orgetorigis*, poss. gen. of the noun *Orgetorix*, -rigis, m.; as a gen. it limits *filia*. *Orgetorix* was a Helvetian chief; see note on *Orgetorix*, l. 2, Chap. II; and read again Chapters III and IV. — *filia*, nom. sing. of the noun *filia*, -ae. *filia* is subject-nom. of the verb *capta est*, to be supplied from the following *captus est*. Observe that by exception the dat. and abl. plur. of *filia* and *dea* ends in -abus. Why? To distinguish between the dat. and abl. plur. of these words and the dat. and abl. plur. of *filius* and *deus*.

LINE 19. *atque* (ad + *que*), conj.; adds a notion of more importance = *and also*. — *ūnus*, cardinal num. adj., gen. *ūnūs*, dat. *ūni*, used substantively, and subject-nom. of the verb *captus est*. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *filiis*, abl. plur. of the noun *filius*, -i, m.; abl. after the prep. *ē*, instead of the gen. partitive. Consult A. & G. 216, *e*; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *captus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of the verb *capio*, -ere, *cēpi*, *captum*, 3. *captus est* in fact belongs to both subjects — *filia* and *filius*, but agrees with the latter; or may be explained, as in the preceding line. — *Ex*, prep. with the abl.; see note on *ē*, l. 12, above. — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*. *eō* is an attributive of the noun *proeliō*.

LINE 20. *proeliō*, abl. sing. of the noun *proelium*, -i, n. (prae or prō + *ire*). *proeliō* is the obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *circiter*, adv. (*circus*, *circum*); it modifies *centum et trīgintā*. — *milia*, nom. plur. of the adj. *mille*. *mille* is indeclinable in the sing., and only used in the nom. and acc. cases; in the plur. *milia*, -ium is declinable throughout, and with partitives it is used substantively. *milia*, in our text, is the subject-nom. of the verb *superfuērunt*. — *hominum*, gen. plur. of the noun *homō*, *hominis*, m. and f.; partitive gen. after *milia*. Consult A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. For synonyms, see note on *hominēs*, l. 20, Chap. II. — *centum*, cardinal num. adj., indecl.; it is an attributive of *milia* which is used as a noun. — *et*, cop. conj.

LINE 21. *trīgintā*, cardinal num. adj., indecl.; connected by the conj. *et* with *centum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *superfuērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the intrans. verb *supersum*, -esse, *fui*, *futurus* (super + *esse*); hence *superesse* = lit. *to be over*, i.e. *to remain, to survive*. *superfuērunt* agrees with its

night after it, they fled incessantly — their march ceasing during no part of the night; and they arrived at the borders of the Lingones on the fourth day;	continenter iērunt; continuously they went;	nūllam partem noctis 22 during no part of the night
	itinere the march	intermissō being intermitted
		in into
		finēs 23 the territory
	Lingonum of the Lingones	diē on day
		quartō the fourth
		pervēnerunt, 24 they came through,

subject-nom. *mīlia*. — *eāque* (*eā* + *que*). *eā* is abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; *eā* is an attributive of the noun *nocte*. Observe how closely the verbs *superfuērunt* and *iērunt* are connected by the enclitic conj. *-que*. — *tōtā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, dat. *tōā*. *tōā* is also an attributive of the noun *nocte*. — *nocte*, abl. sing. of the noun *nox*, *noctis*, f. (compare Gk. *νύξ*, *νυκτός*). *nocte* is an abl. here denoting the *extent of time* — rather anomalous — but the abl. is sometimes thus used. Consult A. & G. 256, b; B. 153, REM. 2; G. 393, REM. 2; H. 379, 1.

LINE 22. *continenter*, adv. (*continēns* [*con* + *tenēre*]); hence *continēns* = a *hanging together*; and the adv. *continenter* = in space or time, *close together, successively* as to space, and, in time, *continuously*. *continenter* modifies the verb *iērunt*. — *iērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (*iī*), *itum*. *iērunt* is connected by the enclitic *-que* with the verb *superfuērunt*, and has the same subject-nom. *mīlia*. Observe that *iērunt* is for the full form *iēvērunt*; the *v* is syncope. See A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235, 1. — *nūllam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *nūllus*, -a, -um, gen. *nūllius*, dat. *nūllī* (*nē* + *ūllus*); hence = lit. *not any*, i.e. *none*, *no*. *nūllam* is an attributive of the noun *partem*. — *partem*, acc. sing. of the noun *pars*, *partis*, f. *partem* is the acc. of time *how long*. See A. & G. 256, and 2; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — *noctis*, gen. sing. of the noun *nox*, *noctis*, f. (compare Gk. *νύξ*, *νυκτός*). *noctis*, as a gen., limits the noun *partem*.

LINE 23. *itinere*, abl. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n. (from the radical *i* as seen in *īre*, *itum*). *itinere* is in the abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *intermissō*, denoting *time*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — *intermissō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *intermissus*, -a, -um of the verb *intermittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3; in the abl. absolute with the noun *itinere*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, m.; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II.

LINE 24. *Lingonum*, gen. plur. of the noun *Lingonēs*, -um, m.; as a gen. it limits the noun *finēs*. The Lingones were a Gallic clan, dwelling in the vicinity of the Vosges mountains — the Haute-Marne department of modern France. — *diē*, abl. sing. of the noun *diēs*, -ī, m. and f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. *diē* is the abl. of time in *which*. Consult A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *quartō*, abl. sing. m. of the ordinal adj. *quartus*, -a, -um. *quartō* is an attributive of the noun *diē*. — *pervēnerunt*, 3d pers. plur. of the verb *pervenio*, -īre, -veni, -ventum, 4 (per + venire). *pervēnerunt* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Helvēti et Bōii et Tulīngi*; or, if preferred, make *hostēs* understood the subject-nom. Observe the force of the prep. *per* in composition. *in finēs Lingonum pervēnerunt* = lit. they came *through* into the territory of the Lingones.

25	cum	et	propter	vulnera	militum	et	since our men, as they delayed their march for
	since	both	because	of the wounds	of the soldiers	and	three days, to
26	propter	sepultūram	occisōrum	nostrī			care for the wound- ed soldiers and
	because	of the burial	of the slain	our (men)			to bury the slain,
27	trīduum	morātī	eōs	sequī			could not pursue them. Caesar
	the space of three days	having delayed,	them	to follow			sent letters by
28	nōn	potuissent.	Caesar	ad	Lingonas		messengers to in- form the Lin-
	not	had been able.	Caesar	to	the Lingones		gones that they
29	litterās	nūntiōsque	mīsit,	nē	eōs	frūmentō	were not to assist the Helvetii with
	letters	messengers and,	sent,	that not	them	with grain	

LINE 25. *cum*, conj., denoting both time and cause. — *et* . . . *et*, a species of correlative conjunctions, repeated between co-ordinate phrases; = *both* . . . *and*. — *propter*, prep. with the acc. — *vulnera*, acc. plur. of the noun *vulnus*, -eris, n. *vulnera* is the obj. of the prep. *propter*. *propter vulnera* = the cause exciting the action, instead of the abl. of cause. Consult A. & G. 245, b; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, 3; H. 416, I, 2). — *militum*, gen. plur. of the noun *miles*, -itis, m.; poss. gen., limiting the noun *vulnera*. — *et*, see note on *et*, immediately preceding.

LINE 26. *propter*, see note on *propter*, preceding line. — *sepultūram*, acc. sing. of the noun *sepultura*, -ae, f. (compare *sepelire*, to bury). *sepultūram* is the obj. of the prep. *propter*. — *occisōrum*, gen. plur. of the participle *occisus*, -a, -um of the verb *occidō*, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, 3 (ab + caedere). *occisōrum* is used substantively = *the slain*; as a gen., used as a noun, it limits the noun *sepultūram*; or we may supply *eōrum*, i.e. *militum*. — *nostrī*, nom. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum, used substantively; or supply *militēs*; subject-nom. of the verb *potuissent*.

LINE 27. *trīduum*, acc. sing. of the noun *trīduum*, -ī, n. (trēs + diēs). *trīduum* is the acc. of extent of space. Consult A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379. — *morātī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle *morātus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *moror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1. *morātī* agrees with *nostrī*, conceived to be used substantively. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a pron. of the 3d person. *eōs* is the direct obj. of the deponent verb *sequī*. — *sequī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *sequor*, -ī, secūtus, 3. *sequī* is a complementary inf., depending on *potuissent*.

LINE 28. *nōn*, adv. (nē + oe[ū]num). Observe its normal Latin position — immediately before the verb it modifies. — *potuissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum). *potuissent* agrees with its subject-nom. *nostrī*, and is in the subjunctive after *cum*, l. 25, above, denoting both time and cause, and especially cause. Consult A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the verb *mīsit*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *Lingonas*, Greek acc. plur. of the proper noun *Lingonēs*, -um, m., instead of the Latin form *Lingonēs*. See A. & G. 63, f; B. 248; G. 65, NOTE 4; H. 68. *Lingonas* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*.

LINE 29. *litterās*, acc. plur. of the noun *littera*, -ae, f. *litterās* is the direct obj. of the verb *mīsit*. Observe that *littera* in the sing. = a letter of the alphabet; in the plur. it = the GK. ἐπιστολή, an epistle as composed of words and letters. Sometimes, however, *litterae*, plur. = letters, i.e. epistles. Whether *litterae* = one epistle or epistles must be determined by the context. — *nūntiōsque* (nūntiōs + que). *nūntiōs*, acc.

grain or with any- thing else; and if they should do so, he would re- gard them in the same light as the Helvetii. He in person began to	nēve nor	aliā with another	rē thing	iuvārent; should they aid;	quī who	sī 30 if,
	iūviscent, should have aided,	sē himself	eōdem in the same	locō, place,	quō 31 in which	
	Helvētiōs, the Helvetii,	habitūrum. to be about to regard (them).			Ipse, 32 He himself,	

plur. of the noun *nūntius*, -ī, m. (sometimes written *nūncius*). *nūnt(c)ius* (novem + tiō or ciō); hence *nūntius* = one who brings news, a messenger; but often, *abstractum pro concretō*, *nūntius* = the message. *nūntiōs* is connected by the enclitic conj. *que* with the noun *litterās*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *misit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *mittō*, -ere, *misi*, *missum*, 3. *misi* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar* expressed. — *nē*, primitive negative; used with the imperative, and the subjunctive used for the imperative. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a pers. pron. of the 3d pers.; it stands for *Helvētiōs*, and is the direct obj. of *iuvārent*. — *frūmentō*, abl. sing. of the noun *frūmentum*, -ī, n. (frugi, from *frux* + *mentum*). *frūmentō* is an abl. of means. A. & G. 248, c, 1; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420.

LINE 30. *nēve* or *neu* (*nē* + *ve*); hence = lit. *or not*; conjunctive adv. Observe that *nēve* or *neu* is used as a continuative after *nē*, and may be rendered either *or*, or *nor*; if *nē* in the preceding line be conceived as throwing its force on both *frūmentō* and *aliā rē*, *nēve* may be translated simply *or*. — *aliā*, abl. sing. of the adj. pron. *alius*, -a, -um, gen. *alius*, dat. *aliū*. *aliā* is an attributive of the noun *rē*. — *rē*, abl. sing. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f. (stem *rē*, but shortened in gen. and dat. sing.). *rē* is an abl. of manner. Consult A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *iuvārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *iuvō*, -āre, *iuvī*, *iūtum*, 1 (perf. stem formed irregularly). *iuvārent* agrees with *Lingonēs*, to be supplied, as subject-nom.; it is in the hortatory subjunctive indirect discourse representing the imperative form in direct discourse, i.e. *nē iuvārent in orātiō obliqua* = *nē iuveritis* — perf. subjunctive — in *orātiō recta*, as *nē* with the 2d pers. of the perf. subjunctive is the regular form in classic prose for expressing prohibition. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to the *Lingones*, but it is the subject-nom. of the verb *iūviscent*. *quī*, at the beginning of the sentence = *et eī*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *sī* (archaic form *sē*, sibilated from the Gk. *eti*); conditional conj.

LINE 31. *iūviscent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *iuvō*, -āre, *iuvī*, *iūtum*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is the pluperf. subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis — *orātiō obliqua*, for *sī iuveritis* — fut. perf. ind. — in *orātiō recta*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers. *sē* is the subject-acc. of the verb *habitūrum* (*esse*); *sē* refers to *Caesar*. — *eōdem*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*. *eōdem* is an attributive of the noun *locō*. — *locō*, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, -ī, m.; *locī*, m., or *loca*, n., in the plur. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locō* is a locative abl. Consult A. & G. 258, f, 1 and 2; B. 170, REM. 3; G. 385, NOTE 1; H. 425, II, 2. Observe that *locus* here = *position*. — *quō*, abl. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *locō*, as its antecedent, and agrees with *locō* understood, which latter is also a locative abl.

LINE 32. *Helvētiōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Helvētiōs* is the direct obj. of *habeat*, to be supplied. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētīi*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *habitūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the verb *habēō*, -ēre,

33	trīduō	intermīssō,	cum	follow them with all his forces after the interval of three days.
	<i>the space of three days</i>	<i>having been let pass,</i>	<i>with</i>	
34	omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.			
	<i>all the troops them to follow began.</i>			
1	XXVII. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā	XXVII. As the Helvetii were in want of every-		
	<i>The Helvetii by the of all things scarcity</i>			

-uī, -itum, 2; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē* expressed; its direct obj. is the pron. *eōs*, i.e. *Lingonas*, to be supplied. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 29–32 reads: *nē eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iūveritis; sī eōs iūveritis, egō vōs eodem locō, quō Helvētīōs, habētō*. Observe that the first clause of the above might be put into the following form: *vel eōs frumentō vel aliā rē nolite iuvāre*. — *Ipse*, nom. sing. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi*; *ipse* is subject-nom. to the verb *coepit*; it is expressed for emphasis.

LINE 33. *trīduō*, abl. sing. of the noun *trīdium*, -ī, n. (trēs + diēs). *trīduō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participle *intermīssō*, denoting *the time*. Consult A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, and 2. — *intermīssō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *intermissus*, -a, -um of the verb *intermittō*, -ere, -mī, -mīssum (inter + mittere). *intermīssō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *trīduō*. Synonyms: *intermittere* (to send between, i.e. to leave off, *intermit*) = to give over for a time; but *omittere* = to leave off altogether. — *cum*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 34. *omnibus*, abl. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e (an *i*-stem; abl. sing. always *omnī*). *omnibus* is an attributive of the noun *cōpiīs*. — *cōpiīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *cōpia*, -ae, f.; in the sing. = *plenty*; in the plur., *troops*. *cōpiīs* is the abl. of accompaniment with the prep. *cum*. Consult A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 399; H. 419, I. Observe that *cum* is not absolutely necessary with words denoting military movements; it is often omitted, in such cases. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eōs*, i.e. *Helvētīōs*, is the direct obj. of *sequī*. — *sequī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *sequor*, -ī, secūtus, 3 (compare GK. *ἕπομαι* [GK. radical *ew*, and Latin *seq.*]). *sequī* is a complementary inf., and depends on *coepit*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *coepit*, 3d pers. sing. of *coepī*, *coepisse*, *coepturus*, *coepit* defective preteritive verb. Consult A. & G. 143, a; B. 113, and REM. 1; G. 175, 5, a; H. 297, and 1. Observe that with pass. infinitives the pass. form *coeptus sum*, etc., is generally used, e.g. *urbis oppugnāri coepit*.

LINE 1. *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and subject-nom. of the verb *miserunt*. — *omnium*, gen. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an *i*-stem. *omnium* is an attributive of *rērum*. — *rērum*, gen. plur. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f. (stem *rē* shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.). *rērum* is an objective gen., limiting the noun *inopiā*. — *inopiā*, abl. sing. of the noun *inopia*, -ae, f. (from *in* + *ōpis* through the adj. *inops*). *inopiā* is an abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *adducti*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1.

thing, they were induced to send ambassadors to Caesar to ascertain the terms of surrender. Now when these envoys had met Caesar on the road, and had cast themselves at his feet, and,	adductī	lēgātōs	dē	dēditionē	ad	eum	2
	having been led	envoys	concerning	surrender	to	him	
	mīserunt.	Quī	cum	eum	in	itinere	3
	sent.	Who,	when	him	on	the road	
	convēnissent	sēque	ad	pedēs	prōiēcissent	4	
	had met themselves	and,	to (his)	feet	had thrown		

LINE 2. **adductī**, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *adductus*, -a, -um of the verb *addūco*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3; *adductī*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *Helvētīi* in gender, number and person. — **lēgātōs**, acc. plur. of the noun *lēgātus*, -ī, m. (*lēgere*, to despatch). *lēgātōs* is the direct obj. of the verb *mīsit*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: *de* = *from*, as if from a fixed point; *ab* = *from*, as if from a mere external point; while *ex* = a going forth *from* the interior of an object. — **dēditionē**, abl. of the noun *deditiō*, -ōnis, f. (*dedere*, to give up). *dēditionē* is the abl. after the prep. *dē*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. after a verb of motion. — **eum**, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a dem. pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*.

LINE 3. **mīserunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *mittō*, -ere, *mīsi*, *missum*, 3. *mīserunt* agrees with *Helvētīi*, expressed as subject-nom. Observe that *mīserunt* has here the construction of a verb of motion, taking the acc. with *ad*; but this verb takes also, in connection with the direct obj., the obj. *to which*, and the end for *which*, in the dat. Compare *equilātūi, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant*, lines 48 and 49, Chap. XVIII. — **Quī**, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; at the beginning of a sentence = *et eī*; here = *Helvētīi*; subject-nom. of the verb *convēnissent*. For the force of the relative, see A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — **cum**, conj., temporal. Observe that *quī* precedes *cum*, because the idea expressed by the relative is the emphatic notion in the writer's mind. — **eum**, acc. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d person. *cum* refers to Caesar, and is the direct obj. of the verb *convēnissent*. — **in**, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl., and = *on*. See on this prep. the grammatical references to *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **itinere**, abl. sing. of the noun *iter*, *itineris*, n. (*īre*, *itum*). *itinere* is here the obj. of the prep. *in*; and the phrase *in itinere* = *on the march*. For synonyms, see note on *iter*, l. 2, Chap. IX.

LINE 4. **convēnissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is in the subjunctive after *cum*, temporal or historical. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — **sēque** (*sē* + *que*). *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; it refers to the subject of the proposition, *quī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*; but it is the direct obj. of the verb *prōiēcissent*. Note how closely the verbs *convēnissent* and *prōiēcissent* are connected by the enclitic -*que*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.; here it = *at*. — **pedēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *pēs*, *pedis*, m. (compare Gk. *ποὺς*, *ποδός*, radical *πῆδ*). *pedēs* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*; of course, *Caesaris*, i.e. *Caesaris*, is to be supplied. — **prōiēcissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *prōiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 (*prō* + *iacere*); hence *prōicere* = lit. *to throw forward*. *prōiēcissent* is very closely connected by the enclitic -*que* with *convēnissent*, and is in the subjunctive mode for the same reason.

5	suppliciterque	locūtī	flentēs	pācem	addressing him humbly, had, in tears, begged for peace; and Caesar, through them, had ordered the Helvetian forces to await his arrival at their present halting-place,
	suppliantly, and (him) having addressed	weeping	peace		
6	petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum				
	had sought, and them in that place, where then				
7	essent, suum adventum expectāre iūssisset,				
	they were, his arrival to wait for he had ordered,				

LINE 5. **suppliciterque** (**suppliciter** + **que**). *suppliciter*, adv. (derived from the adj. *supplex* [sub + plicāre, compare GK. πλέκω]); hence, as *supplex* = lit. *bending the knees* to receive punishment; or *submission* as a *suppliant*, the adv. = *humbly, suppliantly*. *suppliciter*, as an adv., modifies the perf. participle *locūtī*. — **locūtī**, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle *locūtus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *loquor*, -i, -cūtus, 3; *locūtī*, as a participle, agrees with the subj. of the proposition, *quī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*. Supply *eum* as the direct obj. of the participle *locūtī*. — **flentēs**, nom. plur. m. of the pres. participle *flēns*, *flentis* of the verb *flēo*, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*, 2. *flentēs* also agrees with the subj. of the proposition, *quī*, i.e. *Helvētīi*, and denotes the manner of the Helvetians' procedure. Observe that *locūtī*, a perf. participle of a deponent verb, is used here with *flentēs*, a pres. participle, with no appreciable difference, i.e. *locūtī* is used in the sense of a pres. participle. As to distinctions of tense in participles, see A. & G. 290 ff.; B. 98, 3, and 109, 2; G. 113, 128; H. 231, and 550, NOTE 1; it agrees with the subject-nom., i.e. *Helvētīi*; its direct obj. is *sē*, i.e. *Caesarem*, to be supplied. — **pācem**, acc. sing. of the noun *pāx*, *pācis*, f. (from radical *pac*, as seen in *paciscī*, to covenant); here *pāx* = *peace* between parties at variance. *pācem* is the direct obj. of *petissent*.

LINE 6. **petissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive for *petivissent* of the verb *petō*, -ere, -ivī (-it), -itum, 3. As to syncopation and contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. *petissent* is connected by the enclitic -que with *prō-iccissent*, and is still under the influence of *cum*, historical, and so in the subjunctive. — **atque**, conj. (ad + *que*); adds a notion of more importance usually, and = *and also*. Observe that the shortened form *ac* is used only before consonants. — **eōs**, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it is the subject-acc. of *expectāre*; it refers to the entire body of the Helvetii, and not merely to the Helvetian ambassadors. — **in**, prep. either with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. See note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *locō*. — **locō**, abl. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m. in the sing.; in the plur. *locī*, m., or *loca*, n. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locō* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **quō**, abl. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, used here both relatively and adjectively; as a rel. it refers to *locō*; as an adj. it is an attributive of *locō*, to be supplied, which latter is in the abl. locative case; or the prep. *in* might be regarded as understood. — **tum**, adv.; it modifies the verb *essent*.

LINE 7. **essent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; its subject-nom. is *Helvētīi* understood; it is in the subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in informal indirect discourse. But note that this clause is an *essential part* of the sentence, and consult A. & G. 342; B. 245, (b); G. 629; H. 529, II, NOTE 1, i). — **suum**, acc. sing. m. of the reflexive pron. *suius*, -a, -um; it refers to



they obeyed. When Caesar, subsequently, reached the ren- dezvous, he de- manded hos- tages, their arms, and the fugitive slaves belonging to the Romans. While these chat-	pāruērunt. <i>they obeyed.</i>	Eō <i>Thither</i>	postquam <i>after that</i>	Caesar <i>Caesar</i>	pervēnit, 8 <i>arrived,</i>	
	obsidēs, <i>hostages,</i>	arma, <i>arms,</i>	servōs, <i>slaves,</i>	quī <i>who</i>	ad <i>to</i>	eōs 9 <i>them</i>
	perfūgissent, <i>had fled,</i>	poposcit. <i>he demanded.</i>	Dum <i>*While</i>			ea 10 <i>these things</i>

Caesar, but it is an attributive of the noun *adventum*. — *adventum*, acc. sing. of the noun *adventus*, -ūs, m. (ad + venire); *adventum* is the direct obj. of the verb *expectāre*. — *expectāre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *expectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ex + spectāre = lit. to look out); its subject-acc. is the pron. *eōs*, in the preceding line. Observe that *eōs* . . . *expectāre* is the obj. of the verb *iussisset*. — *iussisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussum*, 2; *iussisset* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar; it is connected by the conj. *atque* with the preceding verbs, and is under the influence of *cum*; and hence it is in the subjunctive mode.

LINE 8. *pāruērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *pāreō*, -ēre, *pāruī*, *pāritum*, 2 (*pārāre*, to bring forth, to appear); hence *pārere* = to appear at one's command, to obey. *pāruērunt* agrees with *Helvetiū* understood as its subject-nom. The *oratio recta* of the informal indirect discourse of lines 6 and 7, above, is as follows: *vōs*, in *hōc locō*, *quō nūc estis*, *meum adventum expectāre iubeō*. — *Eō*, adv. (old dat. of the adj. pron. *is*); here = *thither*, i.e. *in eō locō*, l. 6, above. — *postquam* (post + quam), adv.; it usually takes the historical pres. ind.; here it takes the historical perf. — *Caesar*, -āris, m., subject-nom. of *pervēnit*. — *pervēnit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *pervenio*, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 (per + venire = lit. to come through); *pervēnit* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar*.

LINE 9. *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *obses*, -idis, m. and f. (ob + sedere, to sit, to remain); hence the noun = lit. one that remains as a pledge of conditions to be met. — *arma*, -ōrum, or *armūm*, n. (usually derived from *ἄρμα*, to fit to); hence *arma* = lit. things fitted to the body; then transf. arms for warfare both offensive and defensive. *arma* is connected by *et* understood with *obsidēs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *servōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *servus*, -ī, m.; connected by *et* understood with *arma*, and in the same grammatical construction, i.e. direct obj. of *poposcit*. These slaves, of course, belonged to the Romans. Note the omission of the conj. here between these nouns (asyndeton). Consult A. & G. 208, b; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; *quī* refers to the three preceding nouns, but takes the gender of the last; it is the subject-nom. of the verb *perfūgissent*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d person; it is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. *eōs* refers to the *Helvetians*.

LINE 10. *perfūgissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *perfugio*, -ere, -fūgī, 3; it is in the subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in informal indirect discourse. Consult A. & G. 341, and *d*; B. 235 and 245, (b); G. 628;

\* Perspicuous English requires the following arrangement of the clauses: While these chattels were being hunted up . . . , it was ascertained that about six thousand men . . . had, in the first part of the night, left the Helvetian camp, and had gone hastily towards the Rhine and the country of the Germans; and they did so, either because they were greatly alarmed lest, . . . ; or would be wholly unnoticed.

11	conquīruntur	et	cōferuntur,	nocte	tels were being hunted up and brought together, and when the night was passed,
	are being sought	and	being collected,	a night	(it was ascer- tained that) about six thousand men of that canton which was called Verbigenus,
12	intermissā,	circiter	hominum	mīlia	sex
	having passed,	about	of men	thousands	six,
13	ēius	pāgī,	quī	Verbīgēnus	appellātur,
	of that	district,	which	Verbigenus	is called,

H. 528. 1. Observe that Caesar the historian has not the fullest confidence in Caesar the *imperātor*. — **poposcit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *poscō*, -ere, *poposci*, reduplicated, no supine. *poposcit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — **Dum**, conjunctive adv. = *while*, and it usually takes after it the pres. ind. regardless of the law of sequence of tenses. Consult A. & G. 276, e; B. 228, REM. 1; G. 570; H. 467, 4. *dum* is sometimes used as a restrictive particle = *provided*, and then takes the subjunctive. — **ea**, nom. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively, and subject-nom. of the verbs *conquīruntur* and *cōferuntur*; *ea* refers to *obsidēs, arma* and *servōs*, conceived of as chattels; and the pron. is in the neuter gender.

LINE 11. **conquīruntur**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. pass. of the verb *conquīro*, -ere, *quīrivi* (-sit), *quīrsilum*, 3 (con + quīrere = lit. *to search for carefully*). *conquīruntur* agrees with its subject-nom. *ea*. — **et**, cop. conj.; it here connects the verbs *conquīruntur* and *cōferuntur*. — **cōferuntur**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. pass. of the verb *cōferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *coll(n)ātum* (con + ferō); it is connected by the conj. *et* with the verb *conquīruntur*, and has the same subj., namely *ea*. — **nocte**, abl. sing. of the noun *nox, noctis*, f. (GK. νύξ, νυκτός). *nocte* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participle *intermissā*.

LINE 12. **intermissā**, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *intermissus*, -a, -um of the verb *intermittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (inter + mittere) = lit. *to let go between*. *intermissā* is abl. absolute with *nocte*, denoting the time. Consult A. & G. 255, d, 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2, (3). — **circiter** (*circus, circum*), adv.; it modifies the adj. *sex*. — **hominum**, gen. plur. of the noun *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; *hominum*, as a partitive gen., limits *mīlia*. As to this construction, see A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **mīlia**, nom. plur. of *mille*, an indecl. num. adj. in the sing.; in the plur. it is regularly declined, and is used as a neuter noun. See A. & G. 94, e; B. 64, REM. 9; G. 293; II. 178, and NOTE. *mīlia*, as a subst., is the subject-nom. of *contenderunt*, l. 22, below. — **sex**, cardinal num. adj. (GK. ἕξ). *sex* is an attributive of the noun *mīlia*.

LINE 13. **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*; *ēius* is an attributive of the noun *pāgī*. — **pāgī**, gen. sing. of the noun *pāgus*, -i, m.; poss. gen., and limits *hominum*. — **quī**, nom. sing. m. of the rel. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the noun *pāgī*, but is subject-nom. of the verb *appellātur*. — **Verbīgēnus**, -ī, m., proper noun; one of the four Helvetian clans; it is here predicate-noun. Consult A. & G. 176, a; B. 130, 3; G. 206; H. 362, 2, a). — **ap(d)pellātur**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. pass. of the verb *appellō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ad + pellere) = lit. *to drive to*; hence *to go near, to accost, or call, or name*. Synonyms: *appellāre* = *to call, or name one by his title; vocāre* = *to call one by the utterance of his name; sometimes, to summon*; whereas *nōmināre* = *to call one by his name; sometimes = to name, give a name*. But observe, these distinctions are largely etymological; often these words meaning *to call, to name*, are used without any appreciable difference in meaning.

either because they were greatly alarmed, lest, after surrender- ing their arms, they might be tortured; or, led by the hope of safety, they thought that, a- mid so great a number of pris- oners, their own	sive whether	timōre by alarm	perterritī, being terrified,	nē lest, (their) arms	armīs 14
	trāditīs being delivered up	suppliciō with punishment	afficerentur, 15 they would be affected,		
	sive or	spē by the hope	salūtis of safety	inductī, being led,	quod in 16
	tantā so great	multitūdine a multitude	dēditiciōrum of captives	suam their	fugam 17

LINE 14. *sive* (*sī* + *ve*, contracted *seū*); conj. = lit. *or if*; but *sive* . . . *sive* = *whether* . . . *or*; sometimes they = *either* . . . *or*. — *timōre*, abl. of the noun *timor*, -ōris, m.; abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *perterritī*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. Synonyms: *timor* = the fear that results from weakness or cowardice; sometimes, however, it = a rational fear; whereas *metus* = fear as a rational emotion, arising from reflection or caution. — *perterritī*, nom. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *perterritus*, -a, -um of the verb *perterrē*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2. *perterritī*, as a participle, agrees with the pron. *cī*, representing *hominum milia*, l. 12, above. — *nē*, conj. = *lest*; it follows the phrase *timōre perterritī*, as if the phrase were = *veritī*; and, of course, it = *that* or *lest*; if the phrase were followed by *ut* instead of *nē*, the *ut* would = *that not*. Consult A. & G. 331, f; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 2, and NOTE 1; H. 498, III, NOTE 1. — *armīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *arma*, -ōrum, n. See note on *arma*, l. 9, above. *armīs* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participle *trāditīs*, denoting condition. See A. & G. 255, d, 4; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2, (3).

LINE 15. *trāditīs*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *trāditus*, -a, -um of the verb *trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum, 3 (*trāns* + *dare*, lit. *to give over*). *trādō* is sometimes written *trānsdō*. *trāditīs* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *armīs*, denoting condition. See grammatical reference to *armīs*, preceding line. — *suppliciō*, abl. sing. of the noun *supplicium*, -ī, n. (*supplex* [sub + plicō] = *kneeling as a suppliant* or *for punishment*); hence *supplicium* = sometimes *supplication*; oftener, transf. = *punishment*. *suppliciō*, in the text, is an abl. of means. — *afficerentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of the verb *afficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; it agrees with *cī*, referring to *hominum milia*, l. 12, above, as the subject-nom.; it is a clause of purpose after the particle *nē*; hence in the subjunctive mode. Consult A. & G. 331, f; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, NOTE 1.

LINE 16. *sive*, see note on *sive*, l. 14, above. — *spē*, abl. sing. of the noun *spēs*, -eī, f. (stem *spē*, vowel shortened in the gen. and dat. sing.). *spē* is an abl. of cause after the participle *inductī*. — *salūtis*, gen. sing. of the noun *salūs*, -ūtis, f. (*salvus*). *salūtis* limits the noun *spē*. — *inductī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *inductus*, -a, -um of the verb *inducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (*in* + *dūcere* = *to lead on*). *inductī*, as a participle, agrees with *cī*, referring to *hominum milia*, l. 12, above. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl., and = *among* or *amid*.

LINE 17. *tantā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *tantus*, -a, -um; *tantā* is an attributive of *multitūdine*. — *multitūdine*, abl. sing. of the noun *multitūdō*, -dinis, f. (*multus*); it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that *multitūdō*, as derived from *multus* = lit.

18	aut	occultārī	aut	omnīnō	ignorārī	fight would be concealed long enough to enable them to escape, or would be wholly unnoticed, had, in the first part of the night, left the Helvetian camp, and had
	either	to be concealed	or	entirely	to be unobserved	
19	posse	existimārent,	primā	nocte		
	to be possible	they thought,	in the first part	of the night,		
20	ē	castrīs	Helvētiōrum	ēgressī		
	from	the camp	of the Helvetii	having gone forth		

a great number; whereas *numerus*, -i, m., from the same radical as the GK. *νῆμος* (*νέμειν*, to distribute) = lit. anything measured or distributed, i.e. any number. — *dēditiciōrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *dēditicius*, -a, -um (*dēdere*, to give up); hence the adj. in a pass. sense = one given up; as a subst. = one surrendered, i.e. a prisoner; used here substantively; it limits *multitudine*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; *suam* is an attributive of the noun *fugam*. — *fugam*, acc. sing. of the noun *fuga*, -ae, f. *fugam* is the subject-acc. of the verb *posse*.

LINE 18. *aut*, conj. = or (kindred with the postpositive Greek adv. *αὐ* = back, again); but *aut* . . . *aut* = either . . . or. These particles thus used denote that the difference is exclusive; if the difference is neither important nor exclusive, *vel* . . . *vel* are used. — *occultārī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb act. voice *occultō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I (an intensive verb derived from *oc[ul]o*, 3). *occultārī* is a complementary inf., depending on the verb *posse*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *aut*, see note on *aut*, immediately preceding. — *omnīnō* (*omnis*), adv., modifies the verb *ignorārī*. — *ignorārī*, pres. inf. pass. of the verb act. voice *ignōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I (*ignōrus*, like *agnōtus* from *gnōtus*); hence *ignōrāre* = to be ignorant of a thing; in the text *ignorārī* = to be unknown to anybody. *ignorārī* is also a complementary inf., depending on *posse*.

LINE 19. *posse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis, able + sum); its subject-acc. is *fugam*. Observe that the infinitive-clause is the obj. of the verb *existimārent*. — *existimārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *hominum milia*, l. 12, above; *existimārent* is in the subjunctive mode in a *quod*-clause, because the writer suggests doubtfully; the writer is giving a suggestion, not making a statement as absolute fact. See A. & G. 341, d, and REM.; B. 198, (b); G. 541; H. 516, II. — *primā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *primus*, -a, -um, superl. degree; comparative degree is *prior*. *primā* is an attributive of the noun *nocte*. *primā* with *nocte* = the first part. See A. & G. 193; B. 128, REM. 9; G. 291, REM. 2; H. 440, NOTE 2. — *nocte*, abl. sing. of the noun *nox*, *noctis*, f. (*vōx*, *vukrōs*); *nocte* is the abl. of time when. Consult A. & G. 256, I; B. 153, REM. 2; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 20. *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *castrīs*, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum*, -i, n.; in the sing. = fort or castle; in the plur. = camp. *castrīs* is the obj. of the prep. *ē*. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively. *Helvētiōrum* is a poss. gen., limiting the noun *castrīs*. As to the Helvetian clan, see note on *Helvēti*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *ēgressī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle *ēgressus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *ēgredior*, *ēgredi*, *ēgressus*, 3 (*ē* + *gradī* [*gradus*]), hence *ēgredi* = lit. to step out; as a participle, *ēgressī* agrees with the subject-nom. of the verb *contendērunt*.

gone hastily to-  
wards the Rhine  
and the country  
of the Germans.

ad Rhēnum finēque  
toward the Rhine territory and,  
contendērunt.  
hastened.

Germānōrum 21  
of the Germans,

22

XXVIII. When  
Caesar discover-  
ed this move-  
ment, he gave  
orders to those,  
through whose  
territory the fu-  
gitives had gone,

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, 1  
Which when Caesar found out,  
quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs, utī 2  
whose through, territory they had gone, to those, that

LINE 21. *ad*, prep. with the acc.; compare GK. *eis*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of the noun *Rhēnus*, -ī, m. *Rhēnum* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Really, however, *Rhēnum* is in apposition with the noun *flūmen* understood, which is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. The Rhine river is generally the boundary between Gaul and Germany. — *finēque* (*finēs* + *que*); *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, f. *finēs* is very closely connected with *Rhēnum* by the enclitic conj. -*que*, and like *Rhēnum* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that *finēs* in the sing. = *the end*; in the plur. *finēs* = *limits, borders, country*. — *Germānōrum*, gen. plur. of the noun *Germānī*, -ōrum, m. (Γερμανοί). The Germans were a people occupying the territory between the Rhine, the Danube and the Vistula. *Germānōrum*, as a gen., limits the noun *finēs*.

LINE 22. *contendērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *contendō*, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, 3 (con + tendere). *contendērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *mīlia* — adj. used as noun — l. 12, above. For different meanings of this verb, see note on *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 1. *Quod*, acc. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the sally of the Helvetii, as related in the preceding chapter; it is the direct obj. of the verb *resciit*. *quod* at the beginning of a sentence = *et hōc*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *ubi* (*quo*, old dat. of *quī* + *bi*), adv. and conj. = lit. *in which* place; hence *where*; and then transf. = *when*. Observe that temporal clauses with *ubi*, *postquam*, etc., take after them the perf. ind., or the historical present. Consult A. & G. 324; B. 224; G. 551; H. 518. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of the verb *resciit*. — *resciit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *resciscō*, -ere, -scīvī (-ī), -scītum, 3 (re + sc scere); hence, as an inchoative verb = *to find out* a thing, bringing it from concealment into light again; *resciit* agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar* expressed.

LINE 2. *quōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the following dem. pron. *hīs*, used as a subst.; but, as a gen., it limits *finēs*. Observe that, in the Latin arrangement of clauses, the relative clause often stands first. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis*, -is, f. *finēs* is the obj. of the prep. *per*. Observe that *finis* in the sing. = *end, limit*; in the plur., *finēs* = *boundaries, territory*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *ierant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of the verb *eō, ire, ivī (-ī), itum*; *ierant* is syncope for *iverant*. Consult A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *hīs*, dat. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*, used substantively; or rather supply *gentibus*.

3	conquirērent	et	redūcerent,	sī	sibi	to hunt them up and bring them back if they wished in his eyes to be free from suspicion. And he regard- ed those brought back as enemies;
	<i>they should seek out</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>lead back,</i>	<i>if</i>	<i>to himself</i>	
4	pūrgāti	esse	vellent,	imperāvit;		
	<i>free of blame</i>	<i>to be</i>	<i>they wished,</i>	<i>he gave orders;</i>		
5	reductōs		in	hostium		
	<i>those having been brought back</i>		<i>among</i>	<i>the enemy's</i>		

the dat. plur. of *gēns*, -ntis, f.; *hīs* is the dat. after the verb *imperāvit*—a verb of commanding. See A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, 2; H. 385, I. — *utī*, conj., the original form; it = *ut*, that, in order that.

LINE 3. *conquirērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subj. act. of the verb *conquirō*, -ere, -sivī (-īī), -sītum, 3 (con + quarere); hence = lit. *to search for carefully*; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *hīs*; it is subjunctive of purpose after *utī*, i.e. this clause expresses the purpose of *imperāvit*. Supply *ēds*, i.e. *fugitivōs* as direct obj. of *conquirērent* et *redūcerent*. See A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 543, and 3; H. 497, II. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the verbs *conquirērent* and *redūcerent*. — *redūcerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (re + dūcere); hence = lit. *to lead back*. *redūcerent* is connected by the conj. *et* with *conquirērent*, and is, in every respect, in the same grammatical construction. — *sī*, conj., conditional; obsolete form *seī*, sibilated from the Gk. *ei*. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*—same form in both numbers; *sibi* is here the dat. of reference. Consult A. & G. 235, a; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, 4. This is the usual explanation; but I suggest that it is the dat. of the *agent* after the perf. participle *pūrgāti*, used in the adj. sense of *excused* or *pardoned*. Consult A. & G. 232, a; B. 148, REM. 2; G. 354; H. 388, I.

LINE 4. *pūrgāti*, nom. plur., predicate after *esse*, of the participle *pūrgātus*, -a, -um of the verb *pūrgō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I. Observe that the predicate-adj. is regularly in the same case as the subject-nom. of *vellent*.—*esse*, pres. inf. of the verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*; here the copula. — *vellent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the irr. verb *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*. *vellent* agrees with its subject-nom. *eī*, referring to the persons denoted by the pron. *hīs* as a subst., l. 2, above. *vellent* is in the subjunctive, because it is in protasis after *sī*; the apodosis is involved in the compound purpose-clause *utī conquirērent et redūcerent*. — *imperāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *imperō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. The student will observe that the construction is virtual *oratiō obliqua*. What Caesar said, in direct form was: *conquirete et reducite fugitivōs, sī mihi pūrgāti esse vultis*. The English order of the Latin here is: *imperāvit hīs, per quōrum finēs ierant, utī conquirērent*, etc.

LINE 5. *reductōs*, acc. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *reductus*, -a, -um of the verb *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, 3 (re + dūcere). *reductōs* agrees with the pron. *ēds*, to be supplied, which latter is the direct obj. of *habuit*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl., and = *among*. See note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *hostium*, gen. plur. of the noun *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; as a gen. it limits the noun *numerō*. Observe its position between the prep. and *numerō*; *hostium* is thus made emphatic. Synonyms: *hostis* = lit. *a stranger*; as a stranger is an object of suspicion, *hostis* easily passed into the meaning of *enemy*; transf. = *a public enemy*; whereas *inimicus* (*in*, *negative* + *amicus*) = *a private foe*.

but all the rest, after the hostages and arms and des- erters had been delivered up, he allowed to sur- render. He or- dered the Helve- tii, Tulingi and the Latovici to return to the re- spective territo- ries from which they had migrat-	numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, 6 number he held; the rest all, hostages, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem 7 arms, deserters being delivered up into surrender accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovicōs in 8 he received. The Helvetii, Tulingi, Latovici into finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī 9 territories their own, whence they had set out, to return
--	--

LINE 6. **numerō**, abl. sing. of the noun *numerus*, -ī, m. *numerō* is the obj. of the prep. *in* — **habuit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2. Observe that the Latin *habēō*, GER. *haben*, and English *have* are closely related words; they = *to have*, in the widest sense: *to have in hand* = *to possess*; *to have in mind* = *to think, esteem, reckon*. — **reliquōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um, used substantively, and is the direct obj. of the verb *accēpit*. For synonyms, see note on *reliqua*, l. 7, Chap. V. — **omnēs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, an ī-stem; abl. ends in -ī, gen. plur. in -ium. *omnēs* is an attributive of *reliquōs*, used as a noun. — **obsidibus**, abl. plur. of the noun *obses*, -idis, m. and f. (ob + sedere); hence the noun = *one who sits or remains against the fulfillment of some demand*; *obsidibus* is in the abl. absolute construction with the perf. pass. participle *trāditīs*.

LINE 7. **armīs**, abl. plur. of *arma*, -ōrum, n. plur. *armīs* is also abl. absolute with *trāditīs*. — **perfugīs**, abl. plur. of the noun *perfuga*, -ae, f. (per + fugere). *perfugīs* is used here loosely for *fugitivīs*; *perfugīs* is also in the abl. absolute construction with *trāditīs*. Observe the omission of the conj. here between this series of words (asyndeton). See A. & G. 208, b, and 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6. — **trāditīs**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *trāditus*, -a, -um of the verb *trādō*, -ere, *trādidī*, *trāditum*, 3; *trāditīs* is in the abl. absolute with the three preceding nouns. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = *into*. — **dēditionem**, acc. sing. of the noun *dēditio*, -ōnis, f. (*dēdere*, to give up); hence *dēditio* = lit. *a giving up to one, surrender*. *dēditionem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 8. **accēpit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *accipio*, -ere, -cēpī, -cep-tum, 3 (ad + capere); hence *accipere* = lit. *to take to one's self*. *accēpit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — **Helvētiōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively, and as such the subject-acc. of the verb *revertī*, l. 9, below. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — **Tulingōs**, acc. plur. of the proper noun *Tulingi*, -ōrum, m. *Tulingōs* is also subject-acc. of the verb *revertī*. The Tulingi were a German people occupying territory immediately to the east of the Rauraci. — **Latovicōs**, acc. plur. of the proper noun *Latovici*, -ōrum, m. *Latovicōs* is also a subject-acc. of the verb *revertī*. Observe in this series of words the omission of the conj. (asyndeton). The Latovici were also a German clan; they dwelt north of the Tulingi. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.; after a verb of motion it indicates the limit of the motion.

LINE 9. **finēs**, acc. plur. of the noun *fīnis*, -is, m. *finēs* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **suōs**, acc. plur. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um. *suōs* is also

10	iūssit;	et,	quod	omnibus	frūgibus	ed; and, as all
	he ordered;	and,	because,	all	the fruits	the crops were
11	āmīssīs	domī	nihil	erat,	quō	destroyed and
	having been lost,	at home	nothing	was,	by which	there was nothing
12	famem	tolerārent,	Allobrogibus	imperāvit,		ing at home to
	hunger	might be borne,	to the Allobroges	he gave orders,		relieve hunger,
						he commanded
						the Allobroges to

attributive of the noun *finēs*; it refers here not to the subj. of the leading verb, but to the subject-accusatives of the inf. *reverti*. — *unde* (derivation dubious); as to relations of place, it = *whence*; sometimes, apart from place-reference, it denotes the source of men or things. — *erant profecti* (*profecti erant*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of the deponent verb *proficiscor*, *-isci*, *profectus*. *erant profecti* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Helvetiōs, Tulingōs* and *Latovicōs*. — *reverti*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *revertor*, *-i*, *-versus*; its subject-accusatives are *Helvetiōs, Tulingōs, Latovicōs*. Observe that the act. form *revertō, -ere, -verti* is generally used in the perf. tenses, and the deponent form in the imperfect.

LINE 10. *iūssit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum*, 2. *iūssit* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the sentences. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. f. of the adj. *omnis, -e*, an *i*-stem; abl. *omnī*; gen. plur. *omnium*. *omnibus* is an attributive of the noun *frūgibus*. — *frūgibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *frūx, frūgis* (*frux, fructus*); abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *āmīssīs*. Observe that from the derivations *frūges* = *the fruits of the earth* that may be enjoyed, i.e. generally *pod-fruit*; whereas *fructus* = *tree-fruit*; and *frūmentum* = *cereal-fruit* or *grain*.

LINE 11. *āmīssīs*, abl. plur. f. of the perf. pass. participle *āmīssus, -a, -um* of the verb *amittō, -ere, -mīssī, -mīssum*, 3 (*ā + mittere, to send away*). *āmīssīs* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *frūgibus*. — *domī*, gen. sing. of the noun *domus, -i, f.* — called by the recent grammars the locative case. Consult A. & G. 258, d; B. 176; G. 411, REM. 2; H. 426, 2. — *nihil*, an indeclinable neuter noun, used only in the nom. and acc. cases, here it is subject-nom. of the verb *erat*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*. *erat* is here a verb of complete predication, and agrees with its subject-nom. *nihil*. — *quō*, abl. n. of the rel. pron *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the noun *nihil*; really an abl. of means = *by which*; but as this is a result-clause with the subjunctive, the *quō* is taken as = *ut cō*.

LINE 12. *famem*, acc. sing. of the noun *famis, -is, f.* *famem* is the direct obj. of the verb *tolerārent*. — *tolerārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1 (stem strengthened from the radical *tol*, as seen in *tollo*; compare the GK. *τολμάω*). *tolerārent* agrees with the pron. *ei* as subject-nom., referring to the Helvetii, Tulingi and Latovici; it is the subjunctive of result after *quō*, which here = *ut cō*. Consult A. & G. 319, 2; B. 201, (b); G. 631, 2; H. 500, I. — *Allobrogibus*, dat. of the noun *Allobrogēs, -um, m.*; dat. after *imperāvit* — a verb of commanding. See A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, 2; H. 385, I. The Allobroges were a powerful Gallic clan that occupied the territory between the Rhone and the Isere rivers. — *imperāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; its subject-nom. is Caesar, to be supplied.



supply them with a sufficiency of grain; and he ordered the Hel- vetians them- selves to rebuild the towns and villages which they had burned. This order he gave chiefly for these reasons:	ut	eīs	frūmentī	cōpiam	facerent; 13
	that	for them	of grain	an abundance	they should make;
	ipsōs	oppida	vīcōsque,	quōs	incenderant, 14
	themselves	towns	villages and,	which	they had burned,
	restituere	iūssit.	Id	eā	māximē 15
	to rebuild	he ordered.	That	for this,	especially,

LINE 13. *ut*, conj. = lit. *that*; it introduces the purpose-clause, which is often best translated into English by the English inf. — *eīs*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; dat. of *advantage*. See A. & G. 235; B. 145; G. 346; H. 384, II, 4. — *frūmenti*, gen. sing. of the noun *frumentum*, -ī, n. (*frugī* + *mentum*); *frumentī*, as a gen., limits *cōpiam*. — *cōpiam*, acc. sing. of the noun *cōpia*, -ae, f. (*con* + *ops*). *cōpiam* is the direct obj. of *facerent*. — *facerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; it agrees with the pron. *eī* understood as its subject-nom., referring to *Allobrogibus*; it is subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. See A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 546, NOTE 1; H. 497, II.

LINE 14. *ipsōs*, acc. plur. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum, gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsī*. *ipsōs*, i.e. *Helvētiōs*, is subject-acc. of the inf. *restituere*, l. 15, below. — *oppida*, acc. plur. of the noun *oppidum*, -ī, n. *oppidum* (*ops*, *aid* + *dare*, *to give*); hence *oppidum* = lit. *that which gives aid or shelter*, i.e. *a town* — the proper word to designate any other town than Rome; Rome is designated *urbs*. *oppida* is the direct obj. of *restituere*, l. 15, below. — *vīcōsque* (*vīcōs* + *que*). *vīcōs* is the acc. plur. of the noun *vīcus*, -ī, m. (digammated from Gk. *oikos*); hence it = *a row of houses* in town or country. *vīcōs* is very closely connected by the enclitic -*que* with *oppida*, and is in the same grammatical construction. *que*, enclitic conj. — *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *vīcōs*, but is the direct obj. of the verb *incenderant*. — *incenderant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *incendō*, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum, 3 (*in*, *intensive* + *candēre*); hence *incendere* = lit. *to set fire to*. *incenderant* agrees with *Helvētiī* understood as its subject-nom. Synonyms: *incendere* = strictly, *to set on fire*; *ūrere* = *to consume with fire*; and *cremāre* = *to destroy completely by fire, to burn to ashes*.

LINE 15. *restituere*, pres. inf. act. of *restituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3 (*re* + *statuere*); hence = lit. *to set up again*. The subject-acc. of *restituere* is the emphatic pron. *ipsōs*, in the preceding line. The sharp student of Latin will observe that all that precedes *iūssit*, from the semi-colon, is logically the direct obj. of *iūssit*; that in a complete analysis, *ipsōs* . . . *restituere* is the infinitive-clause, *ipsōs* being the subject-acc. of *restituere*, which latter is modified by the direct obj. *oppida vīcōsque*; and the latter nouns are modified by the relative adjective-clause *quos incenderant*. — *iūssit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *iubeō*, -ēre, *iūssī*, *iūssum*, 2. *iūssit* agrees with the noun *Caesar* understood. — *Id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively, and is the direct obj. of the verb *fēcī*. The pron. *id* refers to the order which Caesar gave to the Helvetii to return home. — *eā*, abl. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of *ratiōne*. — *māximē*, adv., superl. degree of the comparative *magis*. *māximē* modifies the verb *fēcī*.

16	rationē	fēcit,	quod	nōluit	eum	locum,	because he did not wish that such a country, as that from which the Helvetii had migrated, should be left unoccupied; and because he feared that, on account of the fertility of the fields, the Germans who dwelt across the Rhine might cross from their
	reason	he did,	because	he was unwilling	that	place,	
17	unde	Helvētīi	discesserant,	vacāre;	nē		
	whence	the Helvetii	had set out,	to be vacant;	lest		
18	propter	bonitātem	agrōrum	Germānī,			
	on account of	the goodness	of the fields,	the Germans,			
19	quī	trāns	Rhēnum	incolunt,	ē	suīs	
	who	across	the Rhine	dwelt,	from	their own	

LINE 16. *rationē*, abl. sing. of the noun *ratio*, -ōnis, f. (*rērī*, to reckon); hence *ratio* = lit. *a reckoning*; transf., *a mode of reckoning*; hence *mode*, *manner*, etc. *rationē* is an abl. of *manner* without the prep. *cum*, as it has a modifier, *ed*. Consult A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *fēcit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3. *fēcit* agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*, to be supplied. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *nōluit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the irr. verb *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlūi* (*nē* + *volō*). *nōluit* agrees with *Caesar* understood, as its subject-nom. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; it is an attributive of the noun *locum*. — *locum*, acc. sing. of the noun *locus*, -i, m.; the plur. m. or n., i.e. *loci* or *loca*; see note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. *locum* is the subject-acc. of the inf. *vacāre*.

LINE 17. *unde*, adv.; see note on this particle, l. 9, above. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; subject-nom. of the verb *discesserant*. — *discesserant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *discēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (*dis* + *cadere*); hence *discēdere* = lit. *to go apart*. *discesserant* agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*, expressed in the text. — *vacāre*, pres. inf. of the neuter or intrans. verb *vacō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; its subject-acc. is *locum*, in the preceding line. Note that the signification of this neuter verb is: *to be vacant*, *to be unoccupied*, *to lie waste*. — *nē*, conj. — the particle to introduce *negative purpose*.

LINE 18. *propter* (*prope*), an adv. sometimes, and sometimes a prep.; here a prep. with the acc. — *bonitātem*, acc. sing. of the noun *bonitās*, -itātis, f. (*bonus*). *bonitātem* is the obj. of the prep. *propter*. — *agrōrum*, gen. plur. of *ager*, *agrī*, m.; as a gen. it limits the noun *bonitātem*. Observe the emphatic position of the phrase *propter bonitātem agrōrum*; this phrase is an adverbial modifier of *trānsirent*, l. 20, below. As to synonyms, *agrī* = *the fields*, *the open country*, in opposition to the town; whereas *finēs* = *land enclosed within borders*. — *Germānī*, -ōrum, m. (Γερμανοί), subject-nom. of the verbs *trānsirent* and *essent*, lines 20 and 22, below. The Germans were the eastern neighbors of the Gauls, occupying the territory between the Rhine, the Danube and the Vistula.

LINE 19. *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, gen. *cuius*, dat. *cui*. *quī* refers to *Germānī*, as its antecedent, but is the subject-nom. of the verb *incolunt*. — *trāns*, prep. with the acc. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of the noun *Rhēnus*, -i, m. *Rhēnum* is the obj. of the prep. *trāns*. This river, in Caesar's time, formed the

borders into those of the Helvetii, and become neighbors to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges. He granted the request of the Aedui to settle the Boii

*finibus in Helvëtiôrum finēs trānsirent et*  
*borders into the Helvetian borders should cross, and*

*finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque*  
*neighbors to the Gallic province to the Allobroges and,*

*essent. Bôïôs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod*  
*should be. The Boii, asking the Aedui, because*

boundary between Gaul and Germany. — *incolunt*, 3d pers. plur. of the verb *incolō, -ere, -colui*, 3 (in + colere); hence = *to live in a place*. *incolunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants). — *suīs*, abl. plur. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus, -a, -um*. *suīs* refers to *Germāni*, the subj. of the subordinate clause *nē . . . Germāni . . . trānsirent*; but *suīs* is an attributive of the noun *finibus*.

LINE 20. *finibus*, abl. plur. of *finis, -is, m.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. after a verb of motion, and = *into*. As to the various significations of this prep., see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *Helvëtiôrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *Helvëtius, -a, -um*, used as a subst.; as such, it limits *finēs*. Note the emphasis that is put on *Helvëtiôrum* by its position — between the prep. and its obj. — *finēs*, acc. plur. of the noun *finis, -is, m.*; it is the obj. of the prep. *in*. As to synonyms, see note on *agrôrum*, l. 18, above. — *trānsirent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *trānsēō, -ire, -īvi (-iī), -itum*, 4 (*trāns* + *ire*, *to go across*). *trānsirent* agrees with its subject-nom. *Germāni*, l. 18, above; it is the subjunctive of negative purpose after the particle *nē*. Consult A. & G. 317; B. 200; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the clauses.

LINE 21. *finitimī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *finitimus, -a, -um* (*finis*), used as a subst. *finitimī* is predicate after *essent*. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. of the noun *Gallia, -ae, f.*; *Galliae*, as a gen., limits the noun *prōvinciae*. — *prōvinciae*, dat. sing. of the noun *prōvincia, -ae, f.*; it is, in fact, a dat. after *finitimī* — an adj. of nearness, though *finitimī* here has a substantive use. As to the syntax, see A. & G. 234, a; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391, I. — *Allobrogibusque* (*Allobrogus* + *que*). *Allobrogibus* is the dat. plur. of the proper noun *Allobrogēs, -um, m.* *Allobrogibus* is connected very closely with the noun *prōvinciae*, and is in the same grammatical construction. *que*, enclitic conj. = *and*.

LINE 22. *essent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*; *essent* is connected by the conj. *et*, l. 20, above, with the verb *trānsirent*, and is in the same grammatical construction, in every respect. — *Bôïôs*, acc. plur. of the proper noun *Bôii, -ôrum, m.* *Bôïôs* is the direct obj. of the verb *col(n)locārent*. Observe that the noun *Bôïôs* is taken out of the clause where it naturally belongs, i.e. in the clause *ut in finibus suīs collocārent*, and is placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis. The Boii were a people of Celtic Gaul, their territory lying between the Loire and Allier rivers. A part of this clan emigrated to Germany, and a part to northern Italy. I take the construction here to be indicated by the following *ordō*: *Aeduīs petentibus, ut in finibus suīs Bôïôs collocārent, quod egregiā virtūte erant cōgniti, concessit*. — *petentibus*, dat. plur. of the pres. participle *petēns, -ntis* of the verb *petō, -ere, -īvi (-iī), -itum*, 3. *petentibus*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *Aeduīs*, and is followed by the pur-

23	ēgregiā	virtūte	erant	cōgnitī,	ut	in	within their own borders, because they had been known to be men of eminent valor.
24	fīnibus	suīs	col(n)locārent,	concessit;	quibus		known to be men of eminent valor.
	borders	their	they might locate,	he granted;	to whom		And the Aedui gave them fields;
25	illī	agrōs	dedērunt	quōsque	postea	in	and, subsequent-
	they	fields	gave	whom and,	afterwards,	into	

pose-clause *ut* . . . *collocārent*. — *Aeduīs*, dat. plur. of the adj. *Aeduius*, -a, -um, used as a noun. *Aeduīs* is the indirect obj. of the — here — intrans. verb *concessit*. — *quod*, conj. = *because*.

LINE 23. *ēgregiā*, abl. f. of the adj. *ēgregius*, -a, -um (*ē* + *grex* = *out of the herd*, i.e. *choice, eminent*). *ēgregiā* is an attributive of the noun *virtūte*. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. of the noun *virtūs*, -ūtis, f. (*vir*, the male, man, hero). *virtūte* is an abl. of quality with the adj. *ēgregiā*. Consult A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; II. 419, II. Observe that the abl. of description here is an essential part of the predicate. — *erant cōgnitī* (*cōgnitī erant*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. pass. of the verb *cōgnosco*, -ere, -nōvī, *cōgnitum*, 3. *erant cōgnitī* (*cōgnitī erant*) agrees with *cī* understood as subject-nom., referring to *Boiōs*. — *ut*, conj. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.

LINE 24. *fīnibus*, abl. of the noun *fīnis*, -is, m.; see note on *fīnēs*, l. 9, above. *fīnibus* is in the abl. case after the prep. *in*. — *suīs*, abl. sing. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; it refers to the Aedui; it is an attributive of *fīnibus*. — *collocārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *col(n)loco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1. *collocārent* agrees with the subject-nom. implied in the ending, referring to the Aedui; it is the subjunctive of purpose after the conj. *ut*, expressing the purpose of *petentibus*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, 1; II. 498, I. — *concessit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of the verb *concedo*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, 3; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Caesar. It will be noticed that *concedere* is both a neuter and an act. verb; or, in other words, it is sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive. We regard it here as intransitive; it is often thus used. Observe also that some critics take *petentibus* as an abl. absolute with the noun *Aeduīs*; that others regard the *ut*-clause as the direct obj. of the verb *concessit*. — *quibus*, dat. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the Boii, but is the indirect obj. of *dedērunt*. Observe that *quibus*, at the beginning of a sentence = *et eis*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; II. 453.

LINE 25. *illī*, nom. plur. of the dem. pron. *ille*, -la, -lud, gen. *illius*, dat. *illī* — same form as nom. plur. *illī*, in the text = *the Aedui*; and its use indicates that, as a clan, they were powerful and also well-known. See A. & G. 100, a, 101, 102, b, f; B. 82, 1, 84, 3, and REMS. 1, 2, 5; G. 104, III, 307, 1, 2; II. 186, III, 450, 4. *illī* is the subject-nom. of *dedērunt*. — *agrōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *ager*, *agrī*, m. *agrōs* is the direct obj. of *dedērunt*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *dedērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *dedo*, -ere, *didī, ditum*, 3 (*dē* + *dare*, to give over). *dedērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *illī* in number and person. — *quōsque* (*quōs* + *que*). *quōs* is the acc. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; it refers to the Boii, but it is the direct obj. of *recēpērunt*, l. 27, below. — *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses. — *postea* (*post* + *eā*), adv.; it modifies *recēpērunt*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.

ly, received them into the same condition of rights and privileges as they had themselves.

parem	iūris	libertātisque	condiciōnem,	26
an equal,	of right	liberty and,	condition	
atque	ipsī	erant,	recēpērunt.	27
as	themselves	were,	they received.	

XXIX. In the camp of the Helvetii, lists written in Greek characters were found

XXIX.	In	castrīs	Helvētiōrum	tabulae	1
	In	the camp	of the Helvetii	tablets	
reperitae sunt	litterīs	Graecīs	cōnfectae	et	2
were found	in letters	Greek	made	and	

LINE 26. **parem**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *par, paris*. *parem* is an attributive of the noun *condic(t)io*. — **iūris**, gen. sing. of the noun *iūs, iūris*, n.; as a gen. *iūris* limits *condiciōnem*. Synonyms: *iūs* = *legal right*; whereas *fās* = *divine right*. — **libertātisque** (*libertātis* + *que*). *libertātis* is the gen. sing. of the noun *libertās, -tātis*, f. (*liber, free*). *que*, enclitic conj.; observe how closely the nouns are joined by the use of *-que*. — **condic(t)ionem**, acc. sing. of the noun *condicio, -ōnis* (derived from *condere* through *condicāre*), hence = *a statement of terms, condition*, etc. *condiciōnem* is the obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 27. **atque** (*ad* + *que*), conj.; it usually = *and* or *and also*; but after words meaning comparison or likeness it = *than* or *as*. Consult A. & G. 156, a, end; B. 217; G. 643, and NOTE 3; H. 459, 2. Here *atque* after the phrase *in parem condiciōnem* = *as*. — **ipsī**, nom. plur. m. of the intensive dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*. *ipsī* refers to the Aedui, but it is subject-nom. of the verb *erant*. — **erant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, futurus*. *erant* agrees with its subject-nom. *ipsī* expressed. — **recēpērunt**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *recipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum*, 3 (*re* + *capere*); hence *recipere* = *lit. to take back*; then transf. it = *to take to one's self, i.e. to receive*. *recēpērunt* is connected by the conj. *-que* very closely with *dedērunt*, and has the same subject-nom., viz. *illī*, referring to the Aedui.

LINE 1. **In**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For difference of signification after verbs of motion and rest, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **castris**, abl. plur. of the noun *castrum, -i*, n.; in the sing. = *a fort*; in the plur. = *a fortified camp*. *castris* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **Helvētiōrum**, gen. plur. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*, used substantively. *Helvētiōrum*, as a gen., limits the noun *castris*. As to the Helvetian clan, see l. 16, Chap. I. — **tabulae**, nom. plur. of the noun *tabula, -ae*, f. *tabulae* is subject-nom. of the pass. verb *reperitae sunt*. With *tabula* compare the French and English word *table*. *tabula*, in the sing. = *lit. a board*; in the plur. = *writing-boards or tablets* spread with wax, on which written letters were made with the *stilus* (sometimes written *stylus*, compare Gk. *στυλος*), usually pointed and made of iron.

LINE 2. **reperitae sunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. pass. of *reperio, -ire, rep[er]i, reperitum*, 4 (*re* + *parere* = *lit. to find again*). *reperitae sunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *tabulae*. The student will observe that this compound tense is made up of the perf. pass. participle and the verb *sunt*; that the participle part of it agrees in gender, number and case with its subject-nom. — **litteris**, abl. plur. of the noun *littera, -ae*, f. (often *lītera*). *litteris* here is in the abl. of *manner*. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Observe that *littera*, in the sing. = *a letter* of the

3	ad	Caesarem	relātae,	quibus	in	tabulis	and brought to Caesar; and in these, an estimate was made in detail as to the number of those that had left home who could bear arms; and
	to	Caesar	brought,	which	on	tablets	
4	nōminātim	ratio	cōnfecta erat,	quī	numerus		
	by name	an estimate	was made,	what	number		
5	domō	exisset	eōrum,	quī	arma	ferre	
	from home	had gone	of those,	who	arms	to bear	

alphabet; in the plur. = either *letters*, or an *epistle* made up of the letters of the alphabet. — *Graecis*, abl. plur. f. of the adj. *Graecus*, -a, -um (ГРΑΙΚΟΣ); *Graecis* is an attributive of the noun *litteris*. Observe that the phrase *litteris Graecis* here = *in Greek letters* — not in the Greek language. The Gauls, even in Caesar's time, had no alphabet of their own; and hence they borrowed the Greek letters from the colonists of Marseilles. — *cōnfectae*, nom. plur. f. of the perf. pass. participle *cōnfectus*, -a, -um of the verb *cōnficio*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (con + facere). *cōnfectae*, as a participle, agrees with the noun *tabulae*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *repertae sunt* with *relatae (sunt)*.

LINE 3. *ad*, prep. with the acc.; used here with a noun after a verb of motion — *after* according to the English way of speaking. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of the proper noun *Caesar*, -aris, m. *Caesarem* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *relātae (sunt)*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. pass. of the verb *referō*, -ferre, *retulī*, *relātum*. *relātae (sunt)* is connected by the conj. *et* with *repertae sunt*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *quibus*, abl. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; used both relatively and adjectively; as a rel. it refers to *tabulae*, l. 1, above; as an adj. it agrees with *tabulis*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. But note its position between the noun and its modifier, and consult A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 569, II, 1. Note also that the noun to which a relative refers is often repeated in a phrase in Latin; but that this noun need not be repeated in the English translation. Note, further, that in such construction as we have here, the rel. phrase would better be translated as a dem. phrase, i.e. instead of *in which letters*, translate *and in these letters*. Consult A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610, REM. 1; H. 453. — *tabulis*, abl. plur. of *tabula*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 4. *nōminātim*, adv. (derived from *nōmināre* [*nōmen* for (g)nōmen from (g)nōscō, compare ГРΩΩ]); hence *nōminātim* = lit. *by name*. This adv. modifies the verb *cōnfecta erat*. — *ratio*, nom. sing. of the noun *ratio*, -ōnis, f. (from *rēs* through *rēi* = *to reckon*). *ratio* is the subject-nom. of *cōnfecta erat*. — *cōnfecta erat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. pass. of the verb *cōnficio*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ratio*. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the interrogative pron. *quis* or *quī*, *quae*, *quid*, here used adjectively, modifying the noun *numerus*. Observe that the interrogative form of the pron. in the nom. m. sing. is either *quis* or *quī*. — *numerus*, nom. sing. of the noun *numerus*, -i, m. *numerus* is the subject-nom. of the verb *exisset*.

LINE 5. *domō*, abl. sing. of the noun *domus*, -ūs, or -ī, f.; the form *domī* is locative. *domō* is here the abl. of *place from which* without a prep. Consult A. & G. 258, 2, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — *exisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. — shortened form for *exivisset* — of *exēdō*, -īre, -ivī (-īī), -itum. *exisset* agrees with the subject-nom. *numerus*; it is in the subjunctive, because it is an indirect question. Consult A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used here as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.;

also separately, as to the number of boys, old men, and women. The aggregate number according to all these lists was	possent, et were able, and	item also	sēparātīm separately	puerī, the boys,	senēs, 6 old men,
	mulierēsque. women and.	Quārum Of which	omnium all	rationū 7 numbers	
	summa erat the sum was,	capitum of heads	Helvētiōrum of the Helvetii	milia 8 thousands	

as a gen. it limits the noun *numerus*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*. *quī* is the subject-nom. of the intrans. verb *possent*. — *arma*, acc. plur. of the noun *arma, -ōrum*, n. plur. *arma* is the direct obj. of the verb *ferre*. Synonyms: *arma* (from GK. ἀρμω, to fit) = lit. *armor fitted to the body*. Hence *arma* = *arms* both offensive and defensive, such as sword, ax and club; whereas *lata* = *arms, missiles* used at a distance. — *ferre*, pres. inf. act. of the irr. verb *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum* (compare GK. φέρω). *ferre* is a complementary inf., depending on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2.

LINE 6. *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum, posse, potuī* (potis, able + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*, and is in the subjunctive, because it is an *indirect question*. See grammatical references to *exisset*, l. 5, above. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the clauses. — *item*, adv. (radical *i*, whence *is* + adverbial ending *tem*), hence = in *that* manner, *so, also*. — *sēparātīm*, adv. (acc. of an assumed nom. in *-tis*; or rather the adv. is from a stem as seen in *sēparātus* from *sēparāre*). But see A. & G. 148, f. 6; B. 117, 7; G. 91, 1; H. 304, I. *sēparātīm*, as an adv., modifies *cōfecta erat*, to be supplied from the preceding. Supply the *lacūna* here thus: *et item sēparātīm ratiō cōfecta erat quī numerus essent puerī, etc.* — *puerī*, nom. plur. of the noun *puer, puerī, m.*; subject-nom. of *essent* understood, of which *quī numerus* is the predicate. This construction is awkward; but about the best that we can suggest. One critic supplies here *perscripti erant* = *were enumerated*, of which *puerī, senēs, mulierēsque* are subject-nominatives. The regular construction would be genitives limiting *numerus* understood. — *senēs*, nom. plur. of the adj. *senex, senis*, used substantively; or one may supply *homīnēs*. *senēs* is connected by *et* understood with *puerī*, and is in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 7. *mulierēsque* (*mulierēs* + *que*). *mulierēs*, nom. plur. of the noun *mulier, mulieris, f.* *que*, enclitic conj.; it connects *mulierēs* with *senēs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. Observe that a Latin sentence, ending in an enclitic *-que*, is not to be imitated. — *Quārum*, gen. plur. of *quī, quae, quod*, used adjectively; as such, it limits the noun *rationū*. Observe that at the beginning of the sentence *quārum* = *et eārum*. See A. & G. 180, f.; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *omnium*, gen. plur. of the adj. *omnis, -e*, an *i*-stem, as seen in this case, and also in the dat. and abl. sing. *omnium* is an attributive of the noun *rationū*. — *ratiōnum*, gen. plur. of the noun *ratiō, -ōnis, f.*; as a gen. it limits the noun *summa*.

LINE 8. *summa*, nom. of the noun *summa, -ae, f.* (derived from the adj. *summus, -a, -um*, i.e. supply *rēs*). *summa* is the subject-nom. of the verb *erat*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum, esse, fui, fut. participle futūrus*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *summa*. — *capitum*, gen. plur. of the noun *caput, -itis, n.* *capitum* is partitive gen. after *milia*. Consult A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. *capitum* = lit. *of heads*, i.e. *of souls*. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. n. of the adj. *Helvētius, -a, -um*. *Helvētiōrum* is an attributive of the noun *capitum*. As to this clan, see note on *Helvētī*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *milia*, nom. plur.

9	ducenta	et	sexāgintā	tria,	Tulingōrum	two hundred and sixty-three thousand souls of the Helvetii, thirty-six thousand of the Tulingi, fourteen thousand of the Latovici, twenty-three thousand of the Raurici, thirty-two thousand of the Boii; of such
	two hundred	and	sixty-	three,	of the Tulingi	
10	milia	trīgintā	sex,	Latovicōrum		
	thousands	thirty-	six,	of the Latovici (thousands)		
11	quattuordecim,	Rauricōrum	vīgintī			
	fourteen,	of the Raurici (thousands)	twenty-			
12	tria,	Boiōrum	trīgintā	duo;	ex	
	three,	of the Boii (thousands)	thirty-	two;	of	

n. of the adj. *mille* = a thousand. *mille* in the sing. is an indecl. num. adj.; in the plur. *milia* or *millia* = thousands, and as a subst. it is declinable throughout; gen. plur. *milium*, dat. and abl. *milibus*. *milia* is predicate-nom. after *erat*.

LINE 9. *ducenta*, nom. plur. n. of the cardinal num. adj. *ducenti*, -ae, -a. *ducenta* is an attributive of *milia*, used as a noun. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects *ducenta* and *sexāgintā*. — *sexāgintā* (sibilated from the GK. ἑξήκοντα); indecl. cardinal num. adj.; connected by the conj. *et* with *ducenta*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *tria*, nom. plur. n. of the decl. num. adj. *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*. *tria* is also an attributive of *milia*. Observe that the entire phrase *milia ducenta et sexāgintā tria* might be expressed thus: *milia CCLXIII*, and is thus expressed in some editions. — *Tulingōrum*, gen. plur. of *Tulingi*, -ōrum, m.; partitive gen. after *milia*. See grammatical references to *capitum* in the preceding line. The Tulingi were a German clan, dwelling east of the Raurici, near the Rhine.

LINE 10. *milia* is here in the same grammatical construction as *milia* in l. 8, above, i.e. predicate-nom. after *erat*. — *trīgintā*, indecl. cardinal num. adj.; an attributive of *milia*. — *sex* (GK. ἕξ), an indecl. num. adj.; also an attributive of the noun *milia*. Observe that the phrase *milia trīgintā sex* is often expressed thus: *milia XXXVI*. — *Latovicōrum*, gen. plur. of the noun *Latovici*, -ōrum, m.; gen. partitive after *milia*, to be supplied, which *milia* is to be disposed of, as to its syntax, like *milia* in lines 8 and 10, above. The common text reads here *Latobri-gōrum* instead of *Latovicōrum*.

LINE 11. *quattuordecim* (quattuor + decem); *quattuordecim* is an attributive of *milia*, used as a substantive, to be supplied. *quattuordecim* is frequently indicated by the Roman letters *XIV*, or by *XIIII*. — *Rauricōrum*, gen. plur. of *Raurici*, -ōrum, m.; it is sometimes spelled *Rauracōrum*; it, as a gen., limits *milia*, to be supplied. The Raurici were a Celtic people on the upper Rhine. — *vīgintī*, indecl. cardinal num. adj.; it is an attributive of *milia* understood.

LINE 12. *tria*, nom. plur. n.; attributive of *milia* understood. The phrase *vīgintī tria* is sometimes indicated by the Roman letters *XXXIII*. — *Boiōrum*, gen. plur. of the proper noun *Boii*, -ōrum, m.; as a gen. it limits *milia*, to be supplied. These people dwelt in central Gaul. A part of the clan migrated to the Hyrcanian forest, Germany; a part to northern Italy. — *trīgintā*, an indecl. cardinal num. adj.; it modifies *milia* understood. — *duo*, decl. cardinal num. adj. As to the declension of *duo*, see note on *tria*, l. 9, above. *duo* is also an attributive of the noun *milia*. The phrase *trīgintā duo* is indicated by the Roman letters *XXXII*. It will be observed that in the various parts of the sentence as



as could bear | his, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia 13  
 arms, there were | those, who arms to bear were able, about thousands  
 about ninety-two, |  
 thousand. The |  
 sum total of |  
 these people was |  
 about three- |  
 hundred and six- |  
 ty-eight thou- |  
 nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt 14  
 ninety- two (were). The sum of all were  
 ad milia trecenta et sexāgintā octō. 15  
 about thousands three hundred and sixty-eight.

analyzed, *mīlia*, used as a noun, is to be supplied; and that in each position, as supplied, it is in the same grammatical construction as the *mīlia* in l. 8, above, i.e. they are predicates after *erat*, of which verb the subject-nom. is *summa*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (*ē* before consonants only, *ex* before vowels or consonants).

LINE 13. *his*, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used substantively; obj. of the prep. *ex*; but the construction is, in fact, partitive after the noun *mīlia* in this line; *ex his*, as a phrase, is used instead of the gen. *hōrum*. Consult A. & G. 216, 4, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; it refers to *his* as its antecedent, but is the subject-nom. of the verb *possent*. — *arma*, acc. plur. of the noun *arma*, *-ōrum*, n. plur. *arma* is the direct obj. of the verb *ferre*. For derivation, see note on *arma*, l. 5, above. — *ferre*, pres. inf. act. of the irr. verb *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*. *ferre* is complementary inf., depending on *possent*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive in a result or characteristic clause. Consult A. & G. 320; B. 201, REM. 1, (a); G. 631; H. 503, I. — *ad*, generally a prep., but here with numerals it = *circiter*, about; as an adv. it modifies the adj. *nōnāgintā*. — *mīlia*, nom. plur.; subj. of *fuērunt*, to be supplied.

LINE 14. *nōnāgintā*, indecl. cardinal num. adj.; it modifies *mīlia*, used as a noun. — *duo*, decl. cardinal num. adj.; see note on *duo*, l. 12, above. *duo* also modifies *mīlia*. The phrase *nōnāgintā duo* is sometimes indicated by the letters *XCII*. — *Summa*, nom. sing. of the noun *summa*, *-ae*, f. *summa* is the subject-nom. of the verb *fuērunt* — the verb in number conforming to the predicate-nom. *mīlia*. As to *summa*, see note on this word, l. 8, above. — *omnium*, gen. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, *-e*, gen. *omnis*, dat. and abl. *omnī* — an *i*-stem. *omnium* is here used substantively, and, as a gen., limits the noun *summa*; or *numerōrum* may be supplied, and then *omnium* would be its attributive, and *numerōrum* would limit *summa*. — *fuērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of the irr. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, fut. participle *futurus*; it agrees with the plur. predicate-nom. *mīlia*, instead of the sing. subject-nom. *summa*; the construction is somewhat anomalous; but see A. & G. 204, b; B. 130, REM. 1; G. 211, REM. 1, EXC. (a); H. 462.

LINE 15. *ad*, usually a prep., but here an adv., and = *circiter*; see note on *ad*, l. 13, above. — *mīlia*, nom. plur. n. of the adj. *mīlia*, *mīlium*, *mīlibus*; see note on *mīlia*, l. 13, above; here *mīlia* is predicate-nom. after *fuērunt*. — *trecenta*, nom. plur. n. of the cardinal num. adj. *trecentī*, *-ae*, *-a*. *trecenta* is an attributive of the noun *mīlia*. (Observe that the hundreds, from *ducentī* to *nōnagenti* (200–900) inclusive, are declined like the plur. of *bonus*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it here connects the numerals *trecenta* and *sexāgintā*. — *sexāgintā* (sibilated from G.K. *ἑξήκοντα*), an indecl. num. adj.; it is connected by *et* with *trecenta*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *octō* (G.K. *ὀκτώ*), an indecl. cardinal num. adj.; connected by *et*

16	Eōrum,	quī	domum	rediērunť,	cēnsū	sand. When a census was taken by Caesar's order, of those that had returned home, the number was found to be one hundred and ten thousand.
	Of those,	who	home	returned,	an enumeration	
17	habitō,	ut	Caesar	imperāverat,		
	having been had,	as	Caesar	had ordered,		
18	reptus est	numerus	mīlium	centum		
	was ascertained	the number	of thousands	a hundred		
19	et decem.					
	and ten.					

understood by *sexāgintā*, and in the same construction. The phrase *trecenta et sexāgintā octō* is often indicated in the classics by the Roman letters *CCCLXVIII*.

LINE 16. *Eōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used substantively; as a gen. it limits *cēnsū*, at the end of this line. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*. *quī* is the subject-nom. of the verb *rediērunť*. — *domum*, acc. sing. of the noun *domus*, -ūs, f.; *domī*, locative gen. *domum* is the locative acc. — end of motion without a prep. after the verb *rediērunť*. Consult A. & G. 258, (b); B. 154, REM. 1; G. 337; H. 380, II, 2, 1. — *rediērunť*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *redeō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum*, 4 (re [red] + ire, to go back). *rediērunť* agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. Observe that *rediērunť* is formed by syncope from the full form *redivērunť*. — *cēnsū*, abl. sing. of the noun *census*, -ūs, m. (*cēnsere*, lit. to weigh). *cēnsū* is in the abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *habitō*.

LINE 17. *habitō*, abl. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *habitus*, -a, -um of the verb *habed, -ere, -uī, -itum*, 2. *habitō* is in the abl. absolute construction with the noun *cēnsū*, denoting time when. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — *ut*, adv. here, and = *as*; and so generally when used with the indicative mode. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., proper noun; subject-nom. of the verb *imperāverat*. — *imperāverat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of the verb *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; it agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar* in number and person.

LINE 18. *reptus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of the verb *reperiō, -ire, rep(p)erī, reperitum*, 4; pass. parts: *reperiō, reperiri, reptus* (re + pariō); hence = lit. to procure or find again. *reptus est* agrees with its subject-nom. *numerus*. — *numerus*, -ī, m. (radical the same as GK. *νῦρος*); hence = that which is distributed, a number. *numerus* is the subject-nom. of the verb *reptus est*. — *mīlium*, gen. plur. of the adj. *mīlia, -ium*, used substantively, and as a gen. of specification, limiting the noun *numerus*. See A. & G. 214, f. B. 127, REM. 8; G. 361; H. 396, VI. — *centum*, indecl. cardinal num. adj.; modifies *mīlia*.

LINE 19. *et*, cop. conj.; it connects *centum* and *decem*. — *decem* (GK. *δέκα*). *decem* is connected by *et* with *centum*, and is in the same grammatical construction. The construction here is somewhat anomalous. *centum* and *decem* might be taken as predicate-adjectives after the pass. verb *reptus est*. Then *mīlium* might be taken as an adnominal gen. after *numerus*; or as the partitive after *centum et decem*. The phrase *centum et decem* is sometimes indicated by the Roman letters *C et X*. According to the account here, the Galli before the battle numbered 368,000; after the battle, 110,000. Hence 368,000 — 110,000 = 258,000 of all the clans perished. But the sum total of the Helvetii, according to the narrative, was 263,000. Hence 263,000 — 110,000 = 153,000 Helvetians perished. Ancient authorities differ as to the number slain or lost. Strabo says 400,000 Gauls perished. Plutarch makes the number 300,000. But Polyænus makes the number of the Helvetii 80,000.

XXX. At the close of the war with the Helvetii, envoys from almost all Gaul, the chiefs of the states came to Caesar to congratulate him. They said that they knew that, though for the Helvetians' ancient wrongs to

XXX.	Bellō	Helvētiōrum	cōfectō 1
	<i>The war</i>	<i>of the Helvetii</i>	<i>being finished,</i>
tōtius	ferē	Galliae	lēgātī, principēs 2
<i>of entire,</i>	<i>almost,</i>	<i>Gaul,</i>	<i>the legates, chiefs</i>
civitatū,	ad	Caesarem	grātulātum 3
<i>of the states,</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>to congratulate (him)</i>
convēnērunt:	Intellegere	sēsē,	tametsī 4
<i>came together:</i>	<i>To know themselves</i>	<i>(they knew),</i>	<i>although</i>
prō veteribus	Helvētiōrum	iniūriis	populī 5
<i>for old</i>	<i>Helvetian</i>	<i>wrongs of (to) the people</i>	

LINE 1. **Bellō**, abl. sing. of *bellum*, -ī, n. *bellō*, abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *cōfectō*, denoting *time when*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; II. 431. Compare also l. 15, Chap. I. — **Helvētiōrum**, gen. plur. of *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; it limits the noun *bellō*. — **cōfectō**, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *cōfectus*, -a, -um of the verb *cōficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3; abl. absolute with *bellō*.

LINE 2. **tōtius**, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, dat. *tōtī*. *tōtius* limits *Galliae*. Compare l. 7, Chap. II. — **ferē**, adv. (*ferō*, compare l. 17, Chap. I); it modifies the adj. *tōtius*. — **Galliae**, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; it limits *lēgātī*. The *Gallia* here meant is *Celtica*. — **lēgātī**, nom. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m. (*lēgere*, to despatch). *lēgātī* is subject-nom. of the verb *convēnērunt*. *lēgātus* = any one with delegated authority. — **principēs**, nom. plur. of the adj. *princeps*, -ipis (primus + capere), used here substantively; connected by *et* omitted with the noun *lēgātī*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 3. **civitatū**, gen. plur. of *civitas*, -ātis (civēs); it limits *principēs*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **Caesarem**, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris; obj. of *ad*, expressing the limit of motion after the verb *convēnērunt*. — **grātulātum**, supine of the deponent verb *grātulor*, -ārī, -ātus (*grātus*). This supine in -um denotes the purpose after *convēnērunt*, a verb of motion. Consult A. & G. 302; B. 186; G. 435; II. 546. After *grātulātum* supply *eum* as its direct object.

LINE 4. **convēnērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *convēniō*, -ire, -vēnī, -ven-tum, 3; it agrees with its subject-nominatives *lēgātī* and *principēs*. — **Intellegere**, pres. inf. act. of *intellegō* (compare l. 6, Chap. X). *Intellegere* here in indirect discourse is for *intellegimus* of direct discourse. Consult A. & G. 336, 1, and espec. 2; B. 245, 1, (a); G. 650; II. 523, 1. — **sēsē**, acc. plur. reduplicated 3d personal pron., for *sē*; acc. plur. of *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* — same form in both numbers; subject-acc. of the inf. *intellegere*. *sēsē* is for *nōs* in direct discourse. — **tametsī** (tamen + etsi), conj. = *lit. yet even if*, i.e. *although*.

LINE 5. **prō**, prep. with the abl. — **veteribus**, abl. plur. of the adj. *vetus*, -eris; attributive of the noun *iniūriis*. — **Helvētiōrum** (*Helvētius*, -a, -um), used substantively; gen. subjective limiting the noun *iniūriis*. — **iniūriis**, abl. plur. of *iniuria*, -ae, f. (in + iūs); obj. of the prep. *prō*. — **populī**, gen. sing. of the noun *populus*, -ī, m.; objective gen. depending on the noun *iniūriis*. Here are two genitives depending on one substantive. For the syntax of *Helvētiōrum*, see A. & G. 214; B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 1; II. 396, I. For syntax of *populī*, see A. & G. 217, (b); B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 2; II. 396, III. For synonyms, see note on *populī*, l. 17, Chap. III.

6	Rōmānī	ab	his	poenās	bellō	the Roman people, he had taken satisfaction from them in war, yet that that event had happened no less to the advantage of the Gauls than to the Roman people; because the Helvetii had left their homes when their affairs were very prosperous
	Roman	from	them	penalties	in war	
7	repetisset,	tamen	eam	rem	nōn	minus
	he had demanded back,	yet	that	thing	not	less
8	ex	ūsū	terrae	Galliae	quam	populī
	for	the use	of the land	Gaul	than	of the people
9	Rōmānī	accidisse;	propterea	quod		
	Roman	to have happened;	for the reason	because		
10	eō	cōnsiliō	flōrentissimīs	rēbus		
	with this	plan,	most flourishing (being)	the affairs,		

LINE 6. **Rōmānī**, gen. sing. m. of *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; attributive of the noun *populī*. Mark the order of the words in this phrase. — **ab**, prep. with the abl. — **his**, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of *ab*; refers to *lēgātī* and *prīncipēs*, l. 2, above. — **poenās**, acc. plur. of *poena*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *repetisset*. — **bellō**, abl. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; see l. 15, Chap. I. *bellō* is an abl. of means. Consult A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 167; G. 401; H. 425, II, 1) and 2).

LINE 7. **repetisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *repetō*, -ere, -petūrī (-iī), -petūtum, 3 (re + petere); hence = lit. to seek again; agrees with Caesar understood; subjunctive after *tametsi*, concessive. See A. & G. 313, c; B. 211, (b); G. 604, 2; H. 515, 2. *repetisset* is both a syncopated and contracted form for *repetivisset*; see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — **tamen**, adv. = yet; used in opposition to the concessive *tametsi*. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); attributive of the noun *rem*. — **rem**, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f. — **nōn**, adv.; modifies the adv. *minus*. — **minus**, adv.; qualifies the phrase *ex ūsū* = the adj. *useful*.

LINE 8. **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **ūsū**, abl. sing. of *usus*, -ūs, m.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. To see the force of *ex* in the phrase *ex ūsū*, supply and translate *eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū* . . . *accidisse* thus: *that this thing happened to be not less of use*. — **terrae**, of *terra*, -ae, f.; objective gen. after *ūsū*. — **Galliae**, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; limits *terrae* as an appositive, and is = the adj. *Gallicae*. — **quam**, conj. *quam* follows *minus*, a comparative; and in such construction = *than*. — **populī**, gen. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; connected by the conj. *quam* with the noun *terrae*, and is in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 9. **Rōmānī**, gen. sing. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; attributive of *populī*. See note on *populī Rōmānī*, lines 5 and 6, above. — **accidisse**, perf. inf. act. (see l. 2, Chap. XIX); its subject-acc. is the noun *rem*, l. 7, above. — **propterea**, adv.; herald of the following *quod*-clause, and is explained by it. — **quod**, conj. = *because*. See note on these particles, l. 9, Chap. I.

LINE 10. **eō**, abl. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); adnominal or attributive of *cōnsiliō*. — **cōnsiliō** (*cōnsilium*, -i, n.); abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. For synonyms, see l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — **flōrentissimīs**, abl. plur. f. *flōrentissimus*, -a, -um, superl. degree; positive *flōrēs*, participle of the verb *flōrē*, -ere, -ui, 2; abl. absolute with *rēbus*, denoting time when. Consult A. & G. 255, a; B. 192, REM. 1; G. 409; H. 431, 4. — **rēbus**, plur. (*rēs*, *rei*, f.); abl. absolute with the adj. *flōrentissimīs*.

with the purpose of bringing war upon all Gaul and of winning the sovereignty; and then to select from the wide domain such a place for a dom- icile as they judg- ed to be the most convenient and fertile in all Gaul,	domōs <i>homes</i>	suās <i>their</i>	Helvētīi <i>the Helvetii</i>	reliquissent, <i>had left,</i>	utī 11 <i>that</i>
	tōtī <i>on entire</i>	Galliae <i>Gaul</i>	bellum <i>war</i>	inferrent 12 <i>they might bring</i>	
	imperioque <i>sovereignty and,</i>	potirentur <i>they might possess</i>	locumque <i>place and,</i>	domiciliō 13 <i>for a home</i>	
	ex <i>from</i>	māgnā <i>the great</i>	cōpiā <i>plenty (of places)</i>	dēligerent, <i>they might choose,</i>	quem 14 <i>which</i>
	ex <i>out</i>	omnī <i>of all</i>	Galliā <i>Gaul</i>	opportūnissimum <i>the most opportune</i>	ac 15 <i>and</i>

LINE 11. **domōs**, acc. plur. of *domus*, -ūs, -ī locative; direct obj. of *reliquissent*. For synonyms, see note on *aedificia*, l. 7, Chap. V. *domus* is partly of the 2d, and partly of the 4th declension. — **suās**, acc. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); attributive of *domōs*. Observe that the possessives oftener than otherwise follow their nouns. — **Helvētīi**, nom. plur. m. of *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used substantively; subject-nom. of *reliquissent*. Observe how emphatic both *Helvētīi* and the phrase *eō cōsiliō* are made by a shift of positions. — **reliquissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive (see l. 1, Chap. IX); agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *oratiō obliqua*. — **utī**, conj.

LINE 12. **tōtī**, dat. sing. f. (see l. 7, Chap. II); attributive of *Galliae*. — **Galliae**, sing. f.; dat. after *in* in the compound verb *inferrent*. Consult A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; II. 386, 1. — **bellum**, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *inferrent*; it is, in fact, the direct obj. of the *ferrent*-part of the compound. — **inferrent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the irr. verb *inferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *il(n)lātum*. *inferrent* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Helvētīi* as subject-nom.; it is the subjunctive of purpose after the particle *utī*.

LINE 13. **imperioque** (*imperio* + *que*). *imperio* is the abl. of *imperium*, -ī, n.; abl. after the verb *potirentur*. See A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, 1. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects very closely the verbs *inferrent* and *potirentur*. Synonyms: *imperium* = military power; whereas *rēgnum* (*regere*, to rule) = royal power. — **potirentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *potior*, -iri, -itius, 4 (*potis*, powerful). *potirentur* is connected by -*que* with *inferrent*, and is in the subjunctive of purpose for the same reason. — **locumque** (*locum* + *que*). *locum* is the acc. sing. (see l. 10, Chap. II); direct obj. of *dēligerent*. — **domiciliō** (*domicilium*, -ī, n.); dat. of purpose after the verb *dēligerent*. Consult A. & G. 233, b; B. 147, REM. 1; G. 356, NOTE 1; II. 390, II.

LINE 14. **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **māgnā**, abl. sing. f. of *māgnus*, -a, -um; attributive of the noun *cōpiā*. — **cōpiā**, abl. sing. (see l. 6, Chap. II); obj. of the prep. *ex*. The phrase here = *ex māgnā locōrum cōpiā*. — **dēligerent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive (see l. 12, Chap. III); connected by -*que* with *potirentur*, and is, in every respect, in the same grammatical construction. — **quem**, acc. sing. m. (*qui*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *locum* as its antecedent, but is subject-acc. of *esse*, to be supplied.

LINE 15. **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **omnī**, abl. sing. f. (*omnis*, -e), an *i*-stem; and hence retains the -*i* in the abl. sing.; attributive of the noun *Galliā*. — **Galliā**, abl. sing.; obj. of *ex*. The phrase *ex omnī Galliā* is an adverbial modifier of the predicate-adjectives *opportūnissimum* and *fructuosissimum*. — **opportūnissimum**,

16	fructuosissimum	iudicassent,	reliquasque	and hold the rest
	the most productive	they had judged,	the remaining and,	of the states as
17	civitātēs	stipendiariās	habērent.	tributaries. They
	states	as stipendiaries	they might hold.	requested to be
18	ut	sibi	concilium	allowed to ap-
	that	to themselves	tōtius Galliae in	point a council of
		a council	of entire Gaul	all Gaul for a
19	diem	certain	indicere idque	certain day by
	a day	certain	to proclaim, this and,	Caesar's special
			with Caesar's	

acc. sing. m. of the superl. degree; positive *opportūnus* (ob + portus); hence *opportūnus* = at the port or harbor, i.e. *seasonable, safe, advantageous*; comparative -ior, superl. -issimus, -a, -um; predicate-adj. after *esse*, to be supplied. — *ac*, conj. (see *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I); connects the adjectives; its function is not, in such use, essentially different from *et*.

LINE 16. *fructuosissimum*, acc. sing. m. of the superl. degree; positive *fructuosus*; comparative *fructuosior* (*fructus*, fruit); connected by *ac* with *opportūnissimum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *iudicassent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *iudicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (iūs + dicō); hence *iudicāre* = lit. to examine judicially; and then transf. from the judicial function, to think. For synonyms, see note on *arbitrābātur*, l. 9, Chap. XIX. *iudicassent* is a syncopated and contracted form for *iudicāvissent*. *v* is syncopated, and then *ā + i* are contracted into *ā*. Consult A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. *iudicassent* agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to the Helvetii; subjunctive, because it stands in a subordinate clause in the *orātiō obliqua*. — *reliquasque* (*reliquas* + *que*). *reliquas*, acc. plur. f. of *reliquus*, -a, -um (*re* + *linquō*); hence *reliquus* = lit. *that which is left behind*. *reliquas* is an attributive of *civitātēs*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects very closely the verbs *dēligerent* and *habērent*.

LINE 17. *civitātēs*, acc. plur. of *civītās*, -ātis, f. (*civēs*); direct obj. of *habērent*. — *stipendiariās*, acc. plur. f. of *stipendiārius*, -a, -um (*stipendium*), used as a substantive-predicate appositive of *civitātēs*. The *stipendiārii* are the vanquished who pay *stipendium* or tribute-money. — *habērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; connected by *que* with *dēligerent*, l. 14, above, and is, therefore, the subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, l. 11, above. The *orātiō recta* of lines 4-17: *Intellegimus nōs, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmāni ab his poenās bellō repetiistī (repetivistī), tamen hanc rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidis; propterea, quod hōc cōsiliō flōrentissimī rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportūnissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicāvērunt, reliquasque civitātēs stipendiariās habērent.* — *Petiērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *petō*, -ere, -īvī, -itum, 3. Syncopated for the full form *petivērunt*; agrees with *lēgātī* understood as subject-nom.

LINE 18. *ut*, telic conj. — *sibi*, dat. plur. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); dat. of the indirect obj. after *licēret*, l. 20, below. — *concilium*, acc. sing.; direct obj. of *indicere*, of which verb *sē* is to be supplied as subject-acc. See l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — *tōtius*, adj., gen. sing. f.; attributive of *Galliae*. — *Galliae*, noun, gen. sing.; limits *concilium*. — *in*, prep.; here it takes the acc.

LINE 19. *diem*, acc. f. of *diēs, diēi*, m. or f. in the sing.; always m. in the plur. (compare l. 5, Chap. IV). *diem* here is the obj. of *in*. — *certain*, acc. sing. f. of

consent. They	voluntâte	facere	licêret;	sēsē	20	
said that they	permission	to do,	it might be lawful;	themselves		
had some business as to which they wished to consult him by the common consent. Their re-	habêre	quâsdam	rēs, quâs	ex	21	
	to have (they have)	certain	things, which	from		
	commūnī	cōnsēnsū	ab eō	petere	vellent.	22
	the common	consent	of him	to ask	they wished.	

*certus*, -a, -um; attributive of *diem*. For an explanation of this phrase, see note on the phrase in *tertiā annuū*, l. 10, Chap. III, and also A. & G. 259, b; B. 120, 3; G. 418, 1; H. 435, I, 2. — *indicare*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *indīcō*, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, 3 (in + dicere); hence *indicere* = lit. to speak into a place, i.e. to speak publicly; here it = to appoint. Observe that the subject-acc. of *indicare* is *sē* understood, and that the subject-acc. is usually omitted when it precedes in the dat. case, as here in *sibi*, the indirect obj. of *licêret*. — *idque* (id + que). *id* is the acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; *id* is the direct obj. of the verb *facere*; it refers to the idea contained in *indicare conciliū*. — *Caesaris*, gen. sing. m. of the proper noun *Caesar*, -aris, m. *Caesaris*, as a gen., limits *voluntâte*.

LINE 20. *voluntâte*, abl. sing. of *voluntās*, -ātis, f.; abl. of in accordance with. Consult A. & G. 253, NOTE; B. 162, REM. 3; G. 397; H. 416. For synonyms, see *voluntâte*, l. 19, Chap. VII. — *facere*, pres. inf. of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; connected by -que with *indicare*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *licêret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the impersonal verb *licet*, *licuit*, *licitum est*; subjunctive of purpose after *ut* telic. This purpose-clause as a noun-clause is the direct obj. of *petiērunt*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, 1; H. 498, I, 1. The *orātiō rēcta* of lines 17–20: *Petimus, ut nobis conciliū tōtiūs Galliae in diem certam indicare hōcque voluntâte tuā liceat*. It will be noted that the *lēgātī* make their requests now in the first person; that in the speech antecedent to *petiērunt*, they have been treating of the Helvetii, and their punishment for former wrongs done to the Roman people; and also of their design in migrating from home. — *sēsē*, for *sē*, reflexive pron., plur.; subject-acc. of the verb *habêre*. *sēsē* is for *nōs* in direct discourse.

LINE 21. *habêre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēō*, -êre, -uī, -itum, 2; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sēsē*. — *quâsdam*, acc. plur. f. of the indefinite pron. *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, adj., or *quiddam*, subst. *quâsdam* is an attributive of the noun *rēs*. — *rēs*, acc. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; direct obj. of *habêre*. — *quâs*, acc. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; refers to *rēs*, but is itself the direct obj. of *petere*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 22. *commūnī*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *commūnis*, -e (con + mūnire, to serve together); hence *commūnis* = common. *commūnī* is the attributive of *cōnsēnsū*. — *cōnsēnsū*, abl. sing. of *cōnsensus*, -ūs, m.; obj. of *ex*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers., referring to Caesar. *eō* is the obj. of *ab*. — *petere*, pres. inf. act. of *petō*, -ere, -iui (-iī), -itum, 3. *petere* is a complementary inf. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. Observe that many verbs of asking take two accusatives — one of the person, another of the thing; but that *petō* usually takes the acc. of the thing, and the abl. of the person with *ā* or *ab*. — *vellent*, 3d pers. plur. of the irr. verb *volō*, *vellē*, *volui*; agrees with *lēgātī* understood; in the subjunctive, because in a dependent relative-clause in *orātiō rēcta* of lines 20–22: *nōs habēmus quâsdam rēs, quâs ex commūnī cōnsēnsū abs eō petere volumus*.

23	Eā	rē	permissā	diem	conciliō	quest was granted, and they appointed a day for a council; and they mutually ratified by an oath that no one should report the proceedings except such as had an order given them by the general council.
	<i>This</i>	<i>thing</i>	<i>being permitted,</i>	<i>a day</i>	<i>for a council</i>	
24	cōstituērunt	et	iūreiūrاندō,	nē	quis	
	<i>they appointed</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>by oath,</i>	<i>that not</i>	<i>any one</i>	
25	ēnūntiāret,	nisi	quibus	commūnī		
	<i>should report,</i>	<i>unless (they)</i>	<i>to whom</i>	<i>in the common</i>		
26	cōnsiliō	mandātum	esset,	inter	sē	sanxērunt.
	<i>council</i>	<i>it had been assigned,</i>	<i>among themselves</i>	<i>decreed.</i>		

LINE 23. **Eā**, abl. sing. (*is, ea, id*); attributive of *rē*. — **rē**, abl. sing. (*rēs, rēi*); abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle denoting *time when*. Consult A. & G. 255, *d*, 1; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431, 2. — **permissā**, abl. sing. f. of the participle *permissus*, -a, -um of the verb *permittere*, -ere, -misi, missum, 3; *permissā* is abl. absolute with the noun *rē*. — **diem** (see l. 19, above), direct obj. of *cōstituērunt*. — **conciliō**, dat. sing. of *concilium*, -i, n.; dat. of purpose after *cōstituērunt*. Consult A. & G. 233, *b*; B. 147, REM. 1; G. 356, NOTE 1; H. 390, II.

LINE 24. **cōstituērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, 3; agrees with the pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *lēgātī* and to *principēs civitātum* mentioned in lines 2 and 3, above. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects *cōstituērunt* and *sanxērunt*, l. 26, below. — **iūreiūrاندō**, abl. of the compound noun *iūrisiūrandum*, *iūrisiūrandi*, n. (*iūs + iūrandum*); dat. *iūrisiūrاندō*; abl. of means. Observe that both parts of this compound noun are declined; but that the gen., dat. and abl. plur. are wanting. Consult A. & G. 77, 6, *a*; B. 45; G. 47, 5; H. 125, 126. — **nē**, neg. particle, conj., and = *that not*. — **quis**, indef. pron. — *quis, quae, quid*; usually found with *sī, nē* and *num*. Sometimes written thus: *siquis, nēquis, numquis*. *quis* is the subject-nom. of the verb *ēnūntiāret*.

LINE 25. **ēnūntiāret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, 1; agrees with *quis*; supply *rem* as direct obj.; it is the subjunctive after the telic particle *nē* — negative purpose. — **nisi** (*nē + sī*), conj. — **quibus**, dat. plur. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to the pron. *eī* understood, and is the indirect obj. of the pass. verb *mandātum esset*. Consult A. & G. 225, *e*; B. 140; G. 345, PASSIVE FORM; H. 384, I. — **commūnī**, abl. sing. n.; attributive of *cōnsiliō*.

LINE 26. **cōnsiliō**, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -i, n.; locative abl. considered as means. See A. & G. 258, *f*, 1, 2; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, *d*. Observe that *cōnsiliō* appears to have the same sense here as *conciliō*, l. 23, above. But see note on *concilium*, l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — **mandātum esset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive pass. of *mandō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; pass. parts: *mandor*, -āvi, *mandātus*. Observe that this pluperf. subjunctive pass. is a compound tense made up of the perf. pass. participle and of the imperf. subjunctive — *esset* — of the verb *esse*; that *mandātum esset* is here used impersonally; and that it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a dependent relative-clause in virtual *orātiō obliqua*. *mandātum esset*, however, might be taken personally by supplying the noun *iūs* = *legal right*, as the subject-nom. *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futurus*; used here in the formation of the pluperf. subjunctive — *mandātum esset*. — **inter**, prep. with the acc. — **sē**, acc. plur.; obj. of *inter*.



XXXI. After this assembly was dismissed, the same chiefs of the states, as had been to Caesar before, returned to him, and requested the favor of confer- ring with him apart, in a secret place, concerning	XXXI. Eō conciliō dimissō, eīdem 1 That council being adjourned, the same				
principēs chiefs	civitātum, of the states,	quī who	ante before	fuerant, had been,	ad 2 to
Caesarem Caesar	revertērunt returned	petiēruntque, asked and,	utī 3 that		
sibi to themselves	sēcrētō secretly	in in	occultō private	dē concerning	suā 4 their,

The phrase *inter sē* denotes a reciprocal relation. See A. & G. 196, f; B. 78, REM. 4; G. 221; H. 448, NOTE. — *saxērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *sancio*, -īre, *sānxi*, *sānctum*, 4; agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to *lēgālī* and *principēs civitātum*, lines 2 and 3, above. From *nē quis* to *mandātum esset* inclusive the discourse is virtual *oratiō obliqua*, depending on *saxērunt*. What was thought, put in the direct form, and filling ellipses was: *Nēmō evāntiābit rem, nisi ei, quibus commūni cōsiliō mandatum fuerit*.

LINE 1. *Eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; attributive of the noun *conciliō*. — *conciliō*, abl. sing. of *concilium*, -iī, n. (some critics form the gen. sing. of nouns in -ium or -ius with one *i*, e.g. *conciliī*; abl. absolute with *dimissō*, denoting the time of the action. The council here referred to is that indicated in the preceding chapter. — *dimissō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *dimissus*, -a, -um of the verb *dimitto*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3; abl. absolute with *conciliō*. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — *eīdem*, nom. plur. m. of the iterative dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; attributive of *principēs*. Observe that other forms of the nom. plur. are *iīdem* and *īdem*.

LINE 2. *principēs*, nom. plur. of the adj. *princeps*, -ipis, used as a subst. *principēs*, as a noun, is the subject-nom. of the verbs *revertērunt* and *petiērunt*. — *civitātum*, gen. plur. of *civilās*, -ātis, f. (*civēs*); limits *principēs*. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; refers to *principēs* as its antecedent, and is the subject-nom. of the verb *fuerant*. — *ante*, adv. and prep.; here an adverb, and = *before*. The sense requires the supplying of the phrase *apud eum*, i.e. *Caesarem*, immediately after the adv. *ante*. — *fuerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. of the neuter or intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; agrees with its subject-nom. *quī* in number and person. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. after a verb of motion.

LINE 3. *Caesarem*, acc. sing.; obj. of *ad*. — *revertērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *revertō*, -ere, -i, neuter (active forms used in the perf., deponent *revertor*, -i, -versus in the imperf. tenses). *revertērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *principēs*. — *petiēruntque* (*petiērunt* + *que*). *petiērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the verb *petō*, -ere, -iui (-iī), -itus. *que*, enclitic conj.; it closely connects *petiērunt* with *revertērunt*, and has the same subject-nom. — *principēs*. — *utī*, telic conj.; *utī* is the original form, though *ut* is, in use, more common.

LINE 4. *sibi*, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* (the same form in both numbers). *sibi* is dat. of the indirect obj. after the verb *liceret*, l. 6, below. — *sēcrētō*, adv. = *privately*, *apart*. *sēcrētō* is, in fact, abl. n. of *sēcrētus*, -a, -um, participle of the verb *sēcerno*, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, 3. — *in*, prep.; here it takes the

5	omniumque of all and,	salūte safety	cum with	eō him	agere to treat	their own safety and the safety of all. When their request was granted, they all, in
6	licēret. it may be permitted.	Eā This	rē thing		impetrātā having been obtained	tears, cast them- selves at Caesar's feet, saying that
7	sēsē themselves	omnēs all	flentēs weeping	Caesari to Caesar	ad at	pedēs the feet
8	prōiēcērunt: they threw (saying):	Nōn Not	minus less	sē themselves	id for that	they strove no less anxiously

abl. — *occultō*, abl. sing. of the participle *occultus*, -a, -um of *occultō*, -ere, -cultū, -cultum, 3. *occultō* is strictly an attributive of *locō* understood, which *locō* is the obj. of the prep. *in*. The phrase *in occultō*, however, may be treated as an adv. Some copies omit the phrase *in occultō*, the editors viewing it as a gloss explanatory of *sēcūrō*; but the phrase is in the MSS. Observe that *sēcūrō* indicates that the chiefs wished to confer with Caesar alone; whereas the phrase *in occultō* denotes that they wished to confer with him without the knowledge of any one. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. = *from* or *concerning*. Compare note on *dē*, l. 27, Chap. XIX. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. of *suus*, -a, -um; attributive of *salūte*, to be supplied from the following *salūte*.

LINE 5. *omniumque* (*omnium* + *que*). *omnium* is the gen. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, used substantively; limits *salūte* expressed. *que*, enclitic conj. *salūte*, abl. sing. of the noun *salūs*, *salūtis*, f. *salūte* is connected by the enclitic -que with *salūte* understood, and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. the obj. of the prep. *dē*. Observe that, with ellipsis supplied, the text is: *dē suā omniumque salūte*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of *cum*; refers to Caesar. — *agere*, pres. inf. act. of *agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *actum*, 3.

LINE 6. *licēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the impersonal verb *licet*, *licuit*, *licitum est*, 2. Observe (1) that, though this verb is styled impersonal, yet, in fact, the phrase *cum eō agere* is its subject; (2) that *licēret* is a subjunctive of purpose after *ut*; or rather (3) the clause *ut* . . . *licēret* expresses the purpose of *reverētur petieruntque*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, 1; H. 498, I. — *Eā*, abl. sing. f.; attributive of *rē*. — *rē*, abl. sing. of the noun *rēs*, *rei*, f.; abl. absolute with *impetrātā*. — *impetrātā*, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *impetrātus*, -a, -um of the verb *impetrō*, -āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, 1 (in, *intensive* + *patrāre*, to procure, especially by request); abl. absolute with the noun *rē*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431.

LINE 7. *sēsē*, see l. 4, Chap. XXX; direct obj. of the verb *prōiēcērunt*. — *omnēs*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, used substantively. — *flentēs*, nom. plur. of the pres. participle *flens*, -ntis of the verb *fleō*, *flere*, *flēvi*, *flatum*, 2; attributive of the subj. (*eī* understood) of the verb *prōiēcērunt*. — *Caesari*, sing.; dat. of reference, instead of the poss. gen. Consult A. & G. 235, a; B. 145; G. 350, 1; H. 384, 4, NOTE 2. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *pedēs*, acc. plur. of *pēs*, *pedis*, m.; obj. of *ad*. Observe that the rigidly literal translation of *Caesari ad pedēs* is: *to Caesar at the feet*.

LINE 8. *prōiēcērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. (compare l. 4, Chap. XXVII); agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as its subject-nom., referring to *principēs*, l. 2, above. The reader will observe that the following *Nōn* . . . *vidērent*, lines 8-14,

that what they said might not be told than that they might attain their wishes; in- asmuch as they saw that if their information were bruited abroad,	contendere to strive	et and	labōrāre, labor, that not,	nē those things	ea, 9
	quae which they had spoken,	dixissent, should be disclosed,	ēnūntiārentur, than that	quam utī	10
	ea, those things,	quae which	vellent, they wished,	impetrārent; they might obtain;	11
	proptereū for this reason	quod, because,	sī if	ēnūntiātum esset, it should have been disclosed,	12

is in the *ōrātiō obliqua* or indirect discourse; and that these clauses depend on the verb *prōiēcērunt*. Perhaps it will clarify the construction to supply *et dixērunt* immediately after *prōiēcērunt*. — **Nōn** (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopated), adv.; it modifies the adv. *minus*. — **minus**, adv., comparative degree of *parum* or *parvū*; superl. *minimē*. *minus* modifies *contendere et labōrāre*. — **sē**, plur.; subject-acc. of *contendere et labōrāre*; refers to *prīncipēs*, l. 2, above. — **id**, sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); cognate acc. after the verb *contendere* and *labōrāre*. See A. & G. 238, b; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, 2; H. 371, I, 2, 2); *id* is the herald, so to speak, of the following purpose-clauses, which are, in fact, appositives to *id*.

LINE 9. *contendere*, pres. inf. act. (see l. 18, Chap. I). — **et**, cop. conj. — **labōrāre**, pres. inf. act. of the finite verb *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I (*labor*). — **nē**, telic conj. = *that not* or *lest*. — **ea**, nom. plur. n. (*is, ea, id*); used substantively (or supply the English word *things*) as the subject-nom. of *ēnūntiārentur*.

LINE 10. **quae**, acc. plur. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; refers to *ea* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *dixissent*. — **dixissent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *dicō*, -ere, *dixī*, *dictum*, 3; in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a dependent clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*; or, better, because *quae dixissent* is a clause of *characteristic*. The *ōrātiō recta* requires the subjunctive mode in such constructions. — **ēnūntiārentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of the active *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *prīncipēs*, l. 2, above; subjunctive of *negative purpose* after *nē*. — **quam**, here = conj. with word of comparison, viz., the adv. *minus*, l. 8, above. — **utī**, see note on this word, l. 3, above.

LINE 11. **ea**, acc. plur. n. (*is, ea, id*); used substantively as the direct obj. of *impetrārent*. — **quae**, acc. plur. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *ea* as its antecedent, but is the direct obj. of *vellent*. — **vellent**, 3d pers. plur. of the imperf. subjunctive of the irr. verb *volō*, *velle*, *volūī*; agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to *prīncipēs*, l. 2, above. As a subjunctive it comes under the general law of a dependent clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*; but, better, because *quae vellent* is a clause of *characteristic*. — **impetrārent**, see l. 7, Chap. IX. Observe that the clause *utī . . . impetrārent*, no less than the clause *nē . . . ēnūntiārentur*, depends on *contendere et labōrāre*.

LINE 12. **proptereā**, adv. (see l. 9, Chap. I). — **quod**, conj. Observe that *quod*, the conj., is really an adverbial acc. n. of the rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*, meaning, usually, *as to what, in that*; and hence = *because*. — **sī**, conditional conj. — **ēnūntiātum esset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive pass. of the act. verb *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, I; *ēnūntiātum esset* is here used impersonally; or *id*, as subj., may be supplied, referring to the idea contained in *quae dixissent*, l. 10, above.

3	summum	in	cruciātum	sē	ventūrōs	they would suffer the severest punishment. Divitiacus the Aeduan spoke for them. He said that there were two factions throughout Gaul; that the Aedui were the leaders of one faction; the Arverni, of the other. After
	<i>extreme</i>	<i>into,</i>	<i>torture</i>	<i>themselves</i>	<i>about to come</i>	
14	vidērent.	Locūtus est	prō	hīs	Divitiacis	
	<i>they saw.</i>	<i>Spoke</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>them</i>	<i>Divitiacis</i>	
15	Aedui:	Galliae	tōtius	factionēs	esse	
	<i>the Aeduan:</i>	<i>Of Gaul</i>	<i>entire,</i>	<i>parties</i>	<i>to be (there are)</i>	
16	duās;	hārum	alterius	principātum	tenēre	
	<i>two;</i>	<i>of these,</i>	<i>of one</i>	<i>the leadership</i>	<i>to hold (hold)</i>	
17	Aeduōs,	alterius	Arvernōs.	Hī	cum	
	<i>the Aedui;</i>	<i>of the other</i>	<i>the Arverni.</i>	<i>These</i>	<i>when</i>	

LINE 13. **summum**, acc. sing. m. (see l. 20, Chap. XVI); attributive of *cruciātum*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. Note its position between the adj. and noun. See A. & G. 345, a; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 2; H. 565, 3. — **cruciātum**, acc. sing. of *cruciātus*, -ūs, m. (from *crux* through *cruciāre*); obj. of *in*. — **sē**, acc. plur.; subject-acc. of *ventūrōs* (*esse*). — **ventūrōs** (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the finite verb *venīre*, *venī*, *ventum*, 4. This infinitive-clause depends on the finite verb *vidērent*.

LINE 14. **vidērent**, 3d pers. plur. of the imperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *visum*, 2; subjunctive mode, because in a dependent *quod*-clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. In this sentence, given in the indirect form, the main verbs are *contendere* and *labōrāre*; all the dependent clauses either directly or indirectly are depending on these verbs. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 8-14: *Nōn minus hōc contendimus et labōramus, nē haec, quae dixerimus, enūntientur, quam uti haec, quae velimus, impetremus, propterea quod, si enūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs esse videmus.* — **Locūtus est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the deponent verb *loquor*, -ī, -cūtus, 3; agrees with *Divitiacis*. — **prō**, prep. with the abl. — **hīs**, abl. plur. m. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of *prō*; *prō his* = *for them*. — **Divitiacis**, -ī, m., subject-nom. of *locūtus est*. Divitiacis was an Aeduan chief, and a friend of the Romans.

LINE 15. **Aedui**, -a, -um, attributive of *Divitiacis*. — **Galliae**, gen. sing., limiting *factionēs*; it is, however, in the predicate, connected with its noun by *esse*. Consult A. & G. 214, c; B. 133; G. 366; H. 401. From *Galliae* to the close of the chapter, the discourse is indirect; the words of Divitiacis — the declarative clauses — are made to take the inf. with subject-acc. construction; the subordinate clauses take the subjunctive mode. — **tōtius**, gen. sing. f.; attributive of *Galliae*. — **factionēs**, acc. plur. of *factiō*, -ōnis, f.; subject-acc. of *esse*. — **esse**, pres. inf.; is here a complete predicate. See A. & G. 172, end; B. 125, 4; G. 205, NOTE; H. 360.

LINE 16. **duās**, acc. plur. f. (*duo*, *duae*, *duo*); attributive of *factionēs*. — **hārum**, gen. plur. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*), used substantively; partitive gen. after *alterius*. — **alterius**, gen. sing. (*alter*, -era, -erum); limits *principātum* (compare l. 13, Chap. II). — **principātum**, acc. sing. of *principātus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *tenēre*. — **tenēre**, pres. inf. act. of *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, *tentum*, 2.

LINE 17. **Aeduōs**, acc. plur., used substantively; subject-acc. of *tenēre*. — **alterius**, gen. sing., limits *principātum* understood. — **Arvernōs**, acc. plur. of *Arverni*, -ōrum, m.; subject-acc. of *tenēre*, to be supplied. The Arverni were a powerful people of Celtic Gaul. — **Hī**, nom. plur. m. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; expressed for emphasis; subject-nom. of *contenderent*. It becomes still more emphatic by its position before the conj. *cum*. — **cum**, conj., temporal.

these factions had been vio- lently struggling with each other for the mastery many years, it came to pass that the Germans, as mercenaries, were called in by the Arverni and the Sequani. At first, about fifteen thousand of these people had cross- ed the Rhine;	<b>tantopere</b> <i>greatly</i>	<b>dē</b> <i>for</i>	<b>potentātū</b> <i>the leadership</i>	<b>inter</b> <i>among</i>	<b>sē</b> 18 <i>themselves</i>
	<b>multōs</b> <i>many</i>	<b>annōs</b> <i>years</i>	<b>contenderent,</b> <i>contended,</i>	<b>factum esse</b> <i>it came to pass</i>	<b>utī</b> 19 <i>that</i>
	<b>ab Arvernīs</b> <i>by the Arverni</i>	<b>Sēquanisque</b> <i>Sequani and,</i>	<b>Germānī</b> <i>the Germans</i>	<b>mercēde</b> 20 <i>for pay</i>	
	<b>arcesserentur.</b> <i>were caused to come.</i>	<b>Hōrum</b> <i>Of these,</i>	<b>primō</b> <i>at first,</i>	<b>circiter</b> 21 <i>about</i>	
	<b>milia</b> <i>thousands</i>	<b>quīndecim</b> <i>fifteen</i>	<b>Rhēnum</b> <i>the Rhine</i>	<b>trānsisse ;</b> 22 <i>to have crossed ;</i>	

LINE 18. **tantopere** (*tantus* + *opus*), adv.; frequently written *tantō opere*, in the abl., and hence = lit. *by so much work*, i.e. adverbially, *so greatly*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. See note on *dē*, l. 27, Chap. XIX. — **potentātū**, abl. of *potentātus*, -ūs, m. (*potēns*, being able); obj. of *dē*. — **inter**, prep. with acc. — **sē**, acc. plur.; obj. of *inter*.

LINE 19. **multōs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *multus*, *plūs*, *plūrimus*; attributive of the noun *annōs*. — **annōs**, acc. plur. of *annus*, -i, m.; acc. of *extent of time*. Consult A. & G. 256, 2; B. 256, 2; G. 336; H. 379. — **contenderent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act.; agrees with its subject-nom. *Hī*; subjunctive mode after *cum* temporal or historic. See A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. For different significations of *contendere*, see l. 18, Chap. I. — **factum esse**, perf. inf. pass. of the verb *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus*, 3; this form of the verb is used as the pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3. *factum esse* is here used impersonally, and = *it came to pass*. The clause *utī . . . arcesserentur* is its subject. — **utī**, conj.

LINE 20. **ab**, prep. with the abl. — **Arvernīs**, abl. plur.; obj. of *ab*, i.e. it is the abl. of the agent after the pass. verb *arcesserentur*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — **Sēquanisque** (*Sēquanis* + *que*). *Sēquanis* is the abl. plur. of *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used as a subst. *que*, enclitic conj.; closely connects *Sēquanis* with *Arvernīs*. — **Germānī**, -ōrum, m.; subject-nom. of the verb *arcesserentur*. — **mercēde**, abl. sing. of the noun *mercēs*, -cēdis, f. (*mercēre*, to merit); abl. of means.

LINE 21. **arcesserentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *arcessō*, -ere, -īvi (-īi), -itum, 3 (ad + *cēdere*); agrees with *Germānī*; it is a subjunctive of *result after utī* ecclatic. Consult A. & G. 332; B. 201; G. 553, 3; H. 501, I, 1. The *oratiō rēcta* of lines 15-21: *Galliae tōtius factiōēs sunt duo; hārum alterius principātum tenent Aedui, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. — Hōrum, gen. plur. m. (hīc, haec, hōc), used substantively; limits milia; partitive construction. Consult A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **primō**, adv. (*primus*); modifies *trānsisse*. *primō* usually = *first* in antithesis; whereas *primū* = *first* in a series. *primō* is really an abl. m. of the adj. *primus*, -a, -um; supply *locō*. — **circiter**, adv. (compare l. 19, Chap. XV); modifies the num. adj. *quīndecim*.*

LINE 22. **milia** (compare l. 25, Chap. II), subject-acc. of *trānsisse*. — **quīndecim** (quīnque + *decem*), cardinal num. adj.; an attributive of *milia*. — **Rhēnum**,

23	posteaquam	agrōs	et	cultum	et	and and these wild and barbarous people had acquired a fondness for the land, civilization and resources of the Gauls, more people were induced to come over; and now there were about one hundred and twenty thousand in Gaul. The
	after that	the fields	and	mode of living	and	
24	cōpiās	Gallōrum	hominēs	ferī	āc	barbarī
	abundance of the Gauls,	men	wild and barbarous			
25	adamāssent,	trāductōs	plūrēs ;	nunc		
	had grown fond of,	were led across	more ;	now		
26	esse	in	Galliā	ad	centum	et
	to be (there were) in	Gaul	about	a hundred	and	
27	vīgintī	mīlium	numerus.	Cum	hīs	
	twenty of thousands,	number.	With these			

acc. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *trānsisse*. But as *trānsisse* is both a trans. and a neuter verb, *Rhēnum* may be taken either as a direct object, or as an acc. depending on the prep. *trāns* in composition. — *trānsisse*, perf. inf. act. (compare l. 19, Chap. V); its subject-acc. is *mīlia*.

LINE 23. *posteaquam*, conjunctive adv. (*postea* + *quam*); modifies *adamāssent*; as a conj. it connects its own clause with the infinitive-clause *trāductōs (esse) plūrēs*. — *agrōs*, acc. plur. of *ager*, *agrī*, m.; direct obj. of *adamāssent*. For synonyms, see note on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the substantives. — *cultum*, acc. sing. m. (compare l. 10, Chap. I); connected by *et* with *agrōs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *et*, conj.; observe its repetition in the series; the usage is repetition or exclusion. See A. & G. 208, 1 and 3, and 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6.

LINE 24. *cōpiās*, acc. plur. (compare l. 6, Chap. II). — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur., used substantively; limits *agrōs* and *cultum* and *cōpiās*. — *hominēs*, nom. plur. (compare l. 20, Chap. II). — *ferī*, nom. plur. m. of *ferus*, -a, -um; modifies *hominēs*. — *āc*, conj. — *barbarī*, nom. plur. of *barbarus*, -a, -um; connected by *ac* with *ferī*.

LINE 25. *adamāssent* (contracted, full form *adamā vissent*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the verb *adamō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (ad, intensive + *amāre* = lit. *to love exceedingly*); agrees with its subject-nom. *hominēs*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ōratiō obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, (b); G. 650; H. 524. — *trāductōs (esse)*, perf. pass. inf. of *trāducō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3; its subject-acc. is the adj. *plūrēs*, used substantively. — *plūrēs*, adj., acc. plur. m. of comparative degree *plūs*, *plūris*; positive *multus*; superl. *plūrimus*. As to the declension of *plūs*, see A. & G. 86; B. 72, 7; G. 89, REMS. 2, 3, and 90, middle; H. 165, NOTE 1. — *nunc*, adv.; modifies *esse*. Observe that *nunc* puts the emphasis on the present; while *iam* = *now*, of any event, either present, past or future.

LINE 26. *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum, esse, fui, futurus*); its subject-acc. is the noun *numerus*. — *in*, prep. with the abl. — *Galliā*, abl. sing. f.; locative abl. with the prep. *in*. Consult A. & G. 258, 4, c, 1; B. 170; G. 385; H. 425, 1. — *ad*, prep. with the acc., ordinarily; but here, in use, it is an adv. = *circiter*, about. — *centum*, cardinal num. adj.; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the numerals.

LINE 27. *vīgintī*, indecl. num. adj.; connected by *et* with *centum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *mīlium*, gen. plur. of *mille*, used as subst.; may

Aedui and their dependants had repeatedly contended in arms with these people; and after the Aedui had been routed, they suffered a great calamity: they lost all their nobles, all their senate, all their cavalry. And crushed by these battles and ca-	Aeduōs the Aedui	eōrumque their and,	clientēs clients	semel once	atque 28 and
	iterum again	armīs in arms	contendisse; to have contended,		māgnam 29 (themselves) a great
	calamitātem calamity,	pulsōs having been driven out,		accēpisse, 30 to have received,	
	omnem all	nōbilitātem, the nobility,	omnem all	senātum, the senate,	omnem 31 all
	equitātum the cavalry	āmīsisse. to have lost.	Quibus By which		proeliis 32 battles

be taken as partitive gen. after *centum et vīginti*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **numerus**, acc. sing. m.; subject-acc. of the neuter verb *esse*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 21–27: *Ilōrum primō circiter milia quindecim Rhēnum transiērunt; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārant (adamāverant), trāducti sunt plūrēs; nunc est in Galliā ad centum et vīginti milium numerus*. — **Cum**, prep. with the abl. — **his**, abl. plur. m., used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *his* = *Germānis*, and is the obj. of *cum*. Observe the position of the phrase, at the beginning of the sentence; its normal Latin position would be immediately before *contendisse*, l. 29, below. Compare *cum Germānis contenderent*, l. 19, Chap. I.

LINE 28. **Aeduōs**, acc. plur. m.; subject-acc. of *contendisse*, l. 29, below. — **eōrumque**; *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers., poss. case; refers to *Aeduōs*, but, as a gen., limits *clientēs*. *que*, enclitic conj. — **clientēs**, acc. plur. of *cliēs, -entis*; connected by *que* with *Aeduōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. The *clientēs* were the small states like the Ambarri, that were in close alliance with the Aedui. — **semel**, num. adv.; modifies *contendisse*. — **atque**, conj.

LINE 29. **iterum**, adv., connected by *atque* with *semel*, and also modifies *contendisse*. Synonyms: *iterum* = *again, a second time*; *rursus* = *again*, i.e. the reverse of something. — **armīs**, abl. plur. (compare l. 13, Chap. IV); abl. of means after *contendisse*. — **contendisse**, perf. inf. act. of *contendō*, 3; its subject-accusatives are *Aeduōs* and *clientēs*. — **māgnam**, acc. sing. f. of *māgnus*, comparative *māior*, superl. *māximus*; attributive of *calamitātem*.

LINE 30. **calamitātem**, acc. sing. of *calamitās, -ātis*, f.; direct obj. of *accēpisse*. — **pulsōs**, acc. plur. of the perf. pass. participle of *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum*, 3; agrees with *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōs*, to be supplied; which *eōs* is subject-acc. of *accēpisse*. — **accēpisse**, perf. inf. act. of the finite verb *accipio, -ere, cēpi, -ceptum*, 3.

LINE 31. **omnem**, acc. sing. f.; attributive of *nōbilitātem*. — **nōbilitātem**, acc. sing. of *nōbilitās, -ātis*, f.; direct obj. of *āmīsisse*. — **omnem**, acc. sing. m.; attributive of *senātum*. — **senātum**, acc. sing. m.; connected by *et* omitted with *nōbilitātem*, and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. it is a direct obj. of *āmīsisse*. — **omnem**, acc. sing. m.; attributive of *equitātum*.

LINE 32. **equitātum**, acc. sing. of *equitātus, -ūs*, m.; connected by *et* omitted with *senātum*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — **āmīsisse**, perf. inf.

33	calamitatibusque			fractōs,	quī	et	lamities, al-
	calamities	and,	(themselves)	being crushed,	who	both	though formerly
34	suā	virtūte	et	populī	Rōmānī	hospitiō	they had been
	by their	valor	and	the people's	Roman	hospitality	the most power-
35	atque	amicitiā	plūrimum	ante	in	Galliā	ful people in
	and	friendship	very much	previously	in	Gaul	Gaul both on ac-
36	potuissent,	coāctōs	esse	Sēquanīs	obsidēs		count of their
	had been able,	to have been forced	to the Sequani	hostages			own valor and
							the hospitality
							and friendship
							of the Roman
							people, they were
							forced to give to
							the Sequani the

act. (see l. 10, Chap. XXVIII). The subject-acc. of *amisisse* is *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōs*, understood. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 27-32: Cum his *Aeduī hōrumque* clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; māgnam calamitatem pulsī acceperunt, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senātum, omnem equitatem amīssērunt. — Quibus, abl. plur. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to the idea contained in armīs contendisse, l. 29, above; but is here used adjectively, and is the attributive of the noun *proeliūs*. Observe that *quibus* at the beginning of a sentence = *et eis*. See A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; II. 453. — *proeliīs*, abl. plur. (For etymology and synonyms, see note on *proeliūs*, l. 18, Chap. I.) *proeliūs* is an abl. of cause after the perf. pass. participle *fractōs*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; II. 416, and NOTE 1.

LINE 33. *calamitatibusque*; *calamitatibus*, abl. plur.; connected by *que* with *proeliīs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. *que*, enclitic conj. — *fractōs*, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *fractus*, -a, -um of the finite verb *frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractum*, 3; agrees with *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōs*, understood. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *eōs*, and is the subject-nom. of *potuissent*, l. 36, below. But note that *quī* here appears to have a concessive force, and = *cum eī*, i.e. = *although they*. Consult A. & G. 320, e; B. 212; G. 634; II. 515, III. — *et*, cop. conj.; followed by another *et*, as in the text, the conjunctions are a species of correlatives = *both . . . and*.

LINE 34. *suā*, abl. sing. f.; attributive of *virtūte*. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. f.; abl. of cause. — *et*, cop. conj. — *populī*, gen. sing. m.; limits *hospitiō atque amicitia*. For synonyms, see note on *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m.; attributive of the noun *populī*. — *hospitiō*, abl. of the noun *hospitium*, -iī, n. (*hospēs*, guest); connected by *et* with *virtūte*, and is in the same gram. construction.

LINE 35. *atque*, conj. — *amicitiā*, abl. sing. f.; connected by *atque* with *hospitiō*; abl. of cause. — *plūrimum*, adverbial acc. (*plūrimus*, -a, -um). — *ante*, adv.; modifying the verb *potuissent*. — *in*, prep. with the abl. — *Galliā*, abl. sing.; obj. of *in*.

LINE 36. *potuissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum, posse, potuī*; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to the Aedui; it is in the subjunctive, because the clause is a subordinate one in the *ōrātiō obliqua*; but, more rigidly exact, because the relative clause expresses concession. Consult A. & G. 320, e; B. 210, end; G. 634; II. 515, III. — *coāctōs* esse, perf. inf. pass. of the finite verb *cōgō, -ere, cōgēī, cōactum*, 3; its subject-acc. is *eōs*, i.e. *Aeduōs*, to be supplied. — *Sēquanīs*, plur.; dat. of the indirect obj. See,



noblest of the state as hos- tages; and com- pelled on oath not to demand hostages in re- turn, nor ask assistance from the Roman peo- ple, nor refuse to	dare	nōbilissimōs	cīvitātis	et	iūreiūrāndō	37
	to give	the noblest	of the state	and	by an oath	
	cīvitātem	obstringere,	sēsē	neque	obsidēs	38
	the state	to bind,	themselves	neither	hostages	
	repetītūrōs	neque	auxilium	ā	populō	39
	about to demand back	nor	aid	from	the people	
	Rōmānō	implōrātūrōs	neque	recūsātūrōs,		40
	Roman	about to implore	nor	about to refuse,		

A. & G. 225; B. 141; G. 345; H. 384, II. As to this clan, see note on *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f. (ob + *sedere*, to sit); predicate-acc. after *dare*. Consult A. & G. 239; B. 151, (b); G. 340; H. 373, 1. The direct obj. of *dare* is *civēs* understood.

LINE 37. *dare*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*, 1; but note that *a* is short by exception before *re* in the pres. inf.; also that *dare* is a complementary inf., depending on *coactōs esse*. — *nōbilissimōs*, acc. plur. m., superl.; attributive of *civēs* understood. — *cīvitātis*, gen. sing. of *cīvītās*, -ātis, f.; limits *civēs* understood. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *dare* and *obstringere*. — *iūreiūrāndō*, abl. sing. of *iūs-iūrāndum*, a compound noun; the two nominatives unite and both are declined. For the declension of *iūs*, *iūris*, n., see A. & G. 67, b, end, 77, 6, a; B. 45; G. 60, n; and for the gender and declension of *iūrāndum*, -i, n., see G. 34; H. 125, 126. Observe that, if the two parts of this word be regarded not as forming a compound, but rather as two distinct words, then *iūs*, *iūris*, n., is a noun of the third declension, and *iūrāndum*, -i, n., is a noun of the second declension; and that the direct cases of *iūrāndum*, -i, n. (i.e. *iūranda*), only occur in the plur. *iūre-iūrāndō* is, in our text, an abl. of means. See A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420.

LINE 38. *cīvitātem*, acc. sing.; direct obj. of *obstringere*. — *obstringere*, pres. inf. act. of the finite verb *obstringō*, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, 3 (ob, intensive + *stringere*, to bind); connected by *et* with *dare*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *sēsē*, personal pron., reduplicated, acc. plur.; subject-acc. of *repetītūrōs* (*esse*). — *neque*, see l. 16, Chap. IV. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur.; direct object of *repetītūrōs* (*esse*). These hostages, so often referred to by Caesar, who were given as pledges for the fulfillment of obligations, and who were released on the fulfillment of the obligations, played an important part in the intercourse of ancient nations.

LINE 39. *repetītūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the finite verb *repetō*, -ere, -fivi (-tū), -itum, 3 (re + *petere* = lit. to fall upon again); this verb with its subject-acc. *sēsē* depends on *obstringere*. — *neque*, see l. 16, Chap. IV. — *auxilium*, -ii, n., acc. sing.; direct obj. of *implōrātūrōs* (*esse*). — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *populō*, abl. sing.; abl. of the person with the prep. *ā*, after a verb of asking. Consult A. & G. 239, c, NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, NOTE 2; H. 374, NOTES 3 and 4. For synonyms, see note on *populī*, l. 17, Chap. III.

LINE 40. *Rōmānō*, abl. sing. m.; attributive of *populō*. — *implōrātūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the finite verb *implōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (in [im], intensive + *plōrāre* = lit. to ask with tears); connected by the conj. *neque* with *repetītūrōs* (*esse*), and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. *sēsē* for its subject-acc. — *neque*, correlate of the *neque* in the preceding line. — *recūsātūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the finite verb *recūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (re + *causa*); hence *recūsāre* = lit. to make a case back, i.e. object, refuse. *recūsātūrōs* (*esse*) is connected by *neque* with *implōrātūrōs* (*esse*), and has the same subject-acc.

41	quōminus	perpetuō	sub	illōrum	diciōne	remain under the dominion and power of the Sequani perpetu- ally. Divitiacus said that he was the only person from the entire Aeduan statethat could not be pre- vailed on to take the oath, and give his children as	
	by which the less	perpetually	under	their	sway		
42	atque	imperio	essent.	Unum	sē	esse	said that he was the only person from the entire Aeduan statethat could not be pre- vailed on to take the oath, and give his children as
	and	command	they would be.	One	himself	to be	
43	ex	omni	civitate	Aeduorum,	quī	addūci	said that he was the only person from the entire Aeduan statethat could not be pre- vailed on to take the oath, and give his children as
	from	every	state	of the Aedui,	who	to be induced	
44	nōn	potuerit,	ut	iūraret	aut	liberōs	said that he was the only person from the entire Aeduan statethat could not be pre- vailed on to take the oath, and give his children as
	not	was able,	that	he would swear	or	children	

LINE 41. *quōminus* (*quō* + *minus*); frequently written *quō minus*; rigidly lit. *quōminus* = *by which the less*. — *perpetuō*, adv. (*perpetuus*, -a, -um); strictly an abl. n. of the adj. used adverbially. Consult A. & G. 148, c; B. 117, 6, end; G. 91, 2; H. 304, II. 2. — *sub*, prep. with the abl. — *illōrum*, gen. plur.; refers to the Sequani, but, as a gen., limits *diciōne*; equivalent to *their* or *of them*. *illōrum* is more emphatic than either *eōrum* or even *hōrum*. — *diciōne*, abl. sing. of *diciō*, -ōnis, f. (more commonly written *ditiō*); derived from the verb *dare*; = lit. *a giving up*; hence transf. = *dominion*, *sway*. *diciōne* is the obj. of *sub*.

LINE 42. *atque*, conj. — *imperio*, abl. sing. n.; connected by *atque* with *diciōne*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *essent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive; agrees with a pron. implied in its ending as subject-nom., referring to the Aedui; it is the subjunctive of *result* after *quōminus* = *ut eō minus*. Consult A. & G. 319, c; B. 200, REM. 5; G. 549; H. 499, 3, NOTE 2. The *orditiō recta* of lines 32-42: Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fracti, qui et sua virtute et populi Rōmāni hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coacti sunt Sēquanis obsidēs dare nobilissimōs civitatis et iureiurandō civitatem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implorātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quōminus perpetuō sub hōrum diciōne atque imperio sint. — *Unum*, acc. sing. m.; predicate-acc. of *esse*. — *sē*, sing. m.; subject-acc. of *esse*; refers to Divitiacus. — *esse*, pres. inf.

LINE 43. *ex*, prep. with the abl. here instead of the partitive gen. after *unum*. See A. & G. 216, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2, end; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *omni*, abl. sing.; attributive of *civitate*. — *civitate*, abl. sing. f.; obj. of *ex*. — *Aeduorum*, gen. plur. of the adj., used substantively; limits *civitate*. — *quī*, nom. sing.; refers to Divitiacus; it is the subject-nom. of *potuerit*. — *addūci*, pres. inf. pass.; complementary inf.; depends on *potuerit*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2.

LINE 44. *nōn*, adv.; modifies *potuerit*. — *potuerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of the intrans. verb *possum*, *posse*, *potui*; it agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive, because in a relative clause of *characteristic*. See A. & G. 320, b; B. 234, 2; G. 631, 1; H. 503, II, 1. — *ut*, telic conj. = *in order that*. — *iūraret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *iūrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (*iūs*); hence *iūrāre* = lit. *to take an oath*; agrees with a pron. as subj., implied in the ending, referring to Divitiacus; is the subjunctive of *purpose* after *ut*. See A. & G. 317, 1; B. 200; G. 545; H. 497, II. — *aut*, alternative conj.; not exclusive, but emphatic. — *liberōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *liberī*, -ōrum, m. See note on *liberī*, I, 9, Chap. XI. *liberōs* is the direct obj. of the verb *daret*.

hostages. For	suōs	obsidēs	daret.	Ob	eam	rem	45
this reason, he	his	as hostages	he would give.	For	this	reason	
had fled from his	sē	ex	civitate	profūgis	et	Rōmam	46
state, and had	himself	from	the state	to have fled	and	to Rome	
come to the senate	ad	senātum	vēnisse	auxilium	postulātum,		47
at Rome to	at	the senate	to have come	aid	to sue for,		
ask for help, because	quod	sōlus	neque	iūreiūrāndō	neque		48
he alone	because (he)	alone	neither	by an oath	nor		
was bound neither	obsidibus	tenerētur.	Sed	pēius			49
by an oath,	by hostages	could be held.	But	a worse (thing)			
nor by hostages.							
But a worse fate							

LINE 45. *suōs*, acc. plur.; refers to Divitiacus; agrees with *liberōs*. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur., m. and f.; predicate-acc. See A. & G. 239, 1; B. 151, (b); G. 340; II. 373, 1. — *daret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the verb *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*, 1; connected with *iūrāret* by *aut*; subjunctive of *purpose*. Observe that *a* is short in *dare*, the pres. inf. act., by exception. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 42–45: *Unus egō sum ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci nōn potuit, ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem*. — *Ob*, prep. with the acc. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. (*is, ea, id*); attributive of *rem*. — *rem*, acc. sing. f.; obj. of *ob*, denoting the exciting cause of the emotion, instead of the abl. of *cause*. Consult A. & G. 245, b; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 3; II. 416, I, 2). Observe that the phrase *quam ob rem* = *ob eam rem*, which latter is the more common.

LINE 46. *sē*, acc. sing.; refers to Divitiacus, and is the subject-acc. of *profūgis*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *civitate*, abl. sing. f.; obj. of *ex*. — *profūgis*, perf. inf. act. of the finite verb *profugio*, *ere*, *fūgi*, *fugitum*, 3 (*prō* + *fugio*). — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *profūgis* with *vēnisse*. — *Rōmam*, acc. sing. of *Rōma*, *-ae*, f.; locative acc.; the name of a town as the end of motion is put in the acc. without a prep. See A. & G. 258, b; B. 154; G. 337; II. 380, II.

LINE 47. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *senātum*, acc. sing. m.; obj. of *ad*. — *vēnisse*, perf. inf. act. of the finite verb *venio*, *-ire*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4; connected by *et* with *profūgis*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *auxilium*, acc. sing. of *auxilium*, *-iī*, n.; the direct object of the supine *postulātum*. Supines are followed by the same cases as their verbs. — *postulātum*, supine of the finite verb *postulo*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, 1 (*poscō*). *postulātum* denotes purpose. Consult A. & G. 302; B. 186, (A); G. 435; II. 546.

LINE 48. *quod*, conj. — *sōlus*, adj., nom. sing. m.; modifies *is*, to be supplied as the subject-nom. of the verb *tenerētur*; the pron., of course, refers to Divitiacus. — *neque*, conjunctive adv. — *iūreiūrāndō*, abl. n.; abl. of *means*. See note on this word, I. 37, above. — *neque*, see above.

LINE 49. *obsidibus*, abl. plur., m. and f.; connected by *neque* with *iūreiūrāndō*, and in the abl. for the same reason, namely *means*. — *tenerētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of the act. verb *tencō*, *-ere*, *-uī*, *tentum*, 2. *tenerētur* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as the subject-nom., referring to Divitiacus; it is in the subjunctive mode, because it is in a subordinate clause in *drātiō obliqua*. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 45–49: *Ob hanc rem egō ex civitate profūgi et Rōmam ad senātum vēni auxilium postulātum, quod egō sōlus neque iūreiūrāndō neque obsidibus tenebar*. — *Sed*, conj.; the strongest of all the adversative particles. Compare with *sed*, *at* and *autem*, and carefully discriminate the different shades of

50	vīctōribus	Sēquanīs	quam	Aeduīs	vīctīs	had befallen the victorious Sequani than the vanquished Aedui,
	to the victors	the Sequani	than	to the Aedui	vanquished	
51	accidisse,	propterea	quod	Ariovistus,		inasmuch as Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had settled in their country, and had seized a third part of the land of the Sequani, which was the best in all Gaul;
	to have happened,	for this reason	because	Ariovistus,		
52	rēx	Germānōrum,	in	eōrum	finibus	
	king	of the Germans,	in	their	borders	
53	cōnsēdisset	tertiamque	partem	agrī		
	had settled,	a third and,	part	of the country		
54	Sēquanī,	quī	esset	optimus	tōtīus	Galliae,
	Sequanian,	which	was	the best	of all	Gaul,

meaning. — *pēius*, acc. sing. n. of the comparative adj. *pēior*, m. and f.; *pēius*, n. *pēius* is an irr. comparative of the positive *malus*, superl. *pessimus*. *pēius* may be taken substantively in the acc. n., and as such is the subject-acc. of the inf. *accidisse*; or the noun *fātum* might be supplied; or *pēius* might be taken as an adv.: positive *male*, comparative *pēius*, superl. *pessimē*; and then *accidisse* must be taken in an impersonal sense. The first explanation is preferred.

LINE 50. *vīctōribus*, dat. plur. of the noun *vīctor*, *ōris*, m.; predicative appositive to *Sēquanīs*. In use here *vīctōribus* = an adj. See A. & G. 188, d; B. 127; G. 325; H. 363, 3, 2). — *Sēquanīs*, adj., dat. plur.; used as a subst.; indirect obj. of *accidisse*. — *quam*, conj.; in comparisons = *than*. — *Aeduīs*, adj., dat. plur., used substantively; connected by *quam* with *Sēquanīs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *vīctīs*, participle (see l. 32, Chap. XXV), agrees with *Aeduīs*; its force is predicative: *Aeduīs vīctīs* = *to the Aedui as vanquished*.

LINE 51. *accidisse*, perf. inf. act. of the neuter or intrans. verb *accidō*, *-ere*, *-cidi*, no supine, 3; its subject-acc. is *pēius*, used as a noun. — *propterea*, adv. — *quod*, conj. — *Ariovistus*, *-ī*, m., subject-nom. of the verb *cōnsēdisset*. *Ariovistus* was a king of the Germans, who, on being invited to come into Gaul by the Gallic chiefs to aid them in settling their disputes, vanquished the Gauls, and ruled them despotically, until he was himself vanquished by the Romans.

LINE 52. *rēx*, nom. sing. of *rēx*, *rēgis*, m. (*regere* = lit. to keep straight). Observe that the stem of *rēx* is *rēg-* a palatal; and that the nom. is formed by adding *s*: thus *rēgs* = *rēx*; in apposition with *Ariovistus*. — *Germānōrum*, gen. plur. m. (see l. 14, Chap. I); limits *rēx*. — *in*, prep. with the abl. with a verb denoting *rest*. See note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. = *their* or *of them*; as a gen. it limits *finibus*. — *finibus*, abl. plur. m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. For synonyms, see *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II.

LINE 53. *cōnsēdisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *cōnsidō*, *-ere*, *-sēdi*, *-sessum*, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *Ariovistus*; it is in the subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *tertiamque* (*tertiam* + *que*). *tertiam*, acc. sing. f. (see l. 3, Chap. I); attributive of *partem*. *que*, enclitic conj.; closely connects *cōnsēdisset* and *occupāvisset*. — *partem*, acc. sing. f.; direct obj. of *occupāvisset*. The part exacted was what is now upper Alsace. — *agrī*, gen. sing. of *ager*, *agrī*, m.; limits *partem*.

LINE 54. *Sēquanī*, gen. sing. m.; attributive of *agrī*. — *quī*, nom. sing. m.; refers to *agrī* as its antecedent; but is the subject-nom. of *esset*. — *esset*, 3d pers.

and now he was ordering them to withdraw from another third- part, because a few months be- fore, twenty-four thousand people, called Harudes,	occupāvisset <i>he had occupied,</i>	et <i>and</i>	nunc <i>now</i>	dē <i>from</i>	alterā <i>another</i>	parte 55 <i>part</i>
	tertiā <i>third</i>	Sēquanōs <i>the Sequani</i>	dēcēdere <i>to withdraw</i>		iubēret, 56 <i>he was ordering,</i>	
	propterea <i>for this reason</i>	quod <i>because</i>	paucis <i>within a few</i>	mēnsibus <i>months</i>	ante 57 <i>before,</i>	
	Harūdum <i>of the Harudes,</i>	mīlia <i>thousands</i>	hominum <i>of men</i>	vīgintī <i>twenty-</i>	quattuor 58 <i>four</i>	

sing. imperf. subjunctive; agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is in the subjunctive mode, because the clause in which it occurs is a dependent relative-clause in the *oratio obliqua*. Consult A. & G. 336, 2; B. 245, (b); G. 650; H. 524. — *optimus*, adj., superl. degree of *bonus*; comparative degree *melior*. *optimus* is the predicate-adj. after *esset*. — *tōtius*, adj., gen. sing. f.; attributive of *Galliae*. For synonyms, see *tōtius*, l. 8, Chap. II. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. f.; partitive gen. after *optimus*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 372; H. 397, 3.

LINE 55. *occupāvisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; connected by *que* with *cōsēdisset*, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *occupāvisset* and *iubēret*, next line. — *nunc*, adv. = *now*, emphatic; whereas *iam* = *now*, unemphatic, having reference to the present, past or future occurrences. — *dē*, prep. with the abl.; for difference between *ab*, *dē* or *ex*, see note on *dē*, l. 27, Chap. XIX. — *alterā*, abl. sing. f. (compare l. 13, Chap. II). — *parte*, abl. sing. f.; obj. of the prep. *dē*.

LINE 56. *tertiā*, abl. sing. f. of *tertius*, -a, -um (*ter*); attrib. of *parte*. — *Sēquanōs*, adj., acc. plur., used substantively; subject-acc. of *dēcēdere*. — *dēcēdere*, pres. inf. act. of the finite verb *dēcēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3 (*dē* + *cedere* = lit. *to go from*). The phrase *dē alterā parte tertiā* follows, logically, the inf. *dēcēdere* with the repetition of the prep. *dē*; the usual construction with Caesar. — *iubēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of the verb *iubeō*, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum, 2; connected by *et*, preceding line, with *occupāvisset*, and hence in the same grammatical construction; but with a change of tense to denote the continuation rather than the completion of the action.

LINE 57. *propterea*, adv.; the herald of the following *quod*-clause. — *quod*, conj. — *paucis*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *paucus*, -a, -um; attributive of *mēnsibus*. — *mēnsibus*, abl. plur. of the noun *mēnsis*, *mēnsis*, m.; abl. of degree of difference after the adv. *ante*. See A. & G. 250; B. 164, and REM. 3; G. 403, and NOTE 4; H. 430. — *ante*, adv. The strictly literal translation of the phrase *paucis mēnsibus ante* is: *before by a few months*. But observe that Caesar might have written: *ante paucos mēnsēs*.

LINE 58. *Harūdum*, gen. plur. of *Harūdēs*, -um, m.; appositive of *hominum*. The Harudes were a German clan, north of the Danube. — *mīlia*, adj., nom. plur.; used as a subst. Consult A. & G. 94, e; B. 64, REMS. 8 and 9; G. 293, and NOTE; H. 178, and NOTE. *mīlia*, as a subst., is the subject-nom. of *vēnissent*. — *hominum*, gen. plur., m. and f.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — *vīgintī*, indecl. num. adj., cardinal; modifies *mīlia*. — *quattuor*, cardinal num. adj.; also modifies *mīlia*. Observe that, if the smaller number precedes, *et* is generally used between them; but if the smaller number follows the larger, the *et* is omitted.

59	ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs	had come to him, for whom a place of settlement was to be provided.
	to him had come, for whom a place and seats	
60	parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs,	The outcome would be that, in a few years, they would all be driven from the land of Gaul, and all the Germans would cross the Rhine. For the Gallic soil is so
	are to be procured. It will be about to be in a few years,	
61	utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur	
	that all from Gaul's boundaries would be driven out	
62	atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent;	
	and all the Germans the Rhine would cross;	
63	neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum	
	neither for to be about to be compared the Gallic (land)	

LINE 59. *ad*, prep. with the acc. = to or towards. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of *ad*. — *vēnissent*, verb, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive; agrees with its subject-nom. *mīlia*; subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *quibus*, dat. plur. (*qui, quae, quod*); refers to *Harūdum* as its antecedent; dat. com., or dat. of advantage. Consult A. & G. 235, and NOTE; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 1, 2). *quibus* here = *ut eis*. — *locus*, nom. sing. m. (see I. 10, Chap. II). *locus* is one of the nominatives of *parārentur*. — *āc*, conj. — *sēdēs*, nom. sing. of the noun *sēdēs, sēdis*, f. (compare *sēdere*, to sit); the other of the nominatives of *parārentur*. *locus āc sēdēs* = a place of abode (hendiadys).

LINE 60. *parārentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of the verb *parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, 1; in the plur., because it has two nouns in the sing. as subjects. Consult A. & G. 205; B. 126, REM. 1; G. 285; H. 463, II. *parārentur* is in the subjunctive of purpose after the rel. pron. *quibus* = *ut eis*. Consult A. & G. 317, 2; B. 233, 1; G. 630; H. 497, I. — *Futūrum esse*, fut. inf.; used impersonally, followed by *utī* and the imperf. subjunctive for the 3d pers. plur. of the fut. ind. in the *ōrātiō recta*. — *paucīs*, abl. plur. m. of *paucus, -a, -um*; attributive of *annīs*. — *annīs*, abl. plur. of *annus, -ī*, m.; abl. of time in which. See A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 61. *utī*, conj. — *omnēs*, nom. plur., used substantively, and the subject-nom. of *pellerentur*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. f.; limits *finibus*. — *finibus*, abl. plur. m.; obj. of *ex*. — *pellerentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum*, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *omnēs*, and is in the subjunctive of result after *utī*. Consult A. & G. 332, 2; B. 201, REM. 1, (c); G. 553, 3; H. 501, I, 1. Observe that the ecclastic clauses *utī . . . pellerentur atque omnēs . . . trānsirent* are, grammatically, the subject of the impersonal *futūrum esse*.

LINE 62. *atque*, conj.; usually adds a more important notion; here connects the verbs *pellerentur* and *trānsirent*. — *omnēs*, nom. plur. m.; attributive of *Germānī*. — *Germānī, -ōrum*, plur. m.; subject-nom. of *trānsirent*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. m.; direct obj. of *trānsirent*. — *trānsirent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive; agrees with *Germānī*; connected by *atque* with *pellerentur*, and is in the subjunctive mode for the same reason.

LINE 63. *neque*, conjunctive adv. — *enim*, a conj. causal, postpositive. *enim* expresses a subjective, *nam* an objective reason. — *cōferendum esse*, pres. inf. 2d pass. periphrastic conjugation of *cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, col(n)lātum*; this conjuga-

superior to that of the Germans, as not to admit of comparison; and the German mode of life is so inferior to that of the Gauls, as not to admit of comparison. But, as to Ariovistus, as soon as he had defeated the forces of the Gauls in battle at Ad- magetobriga, he	cum with	Germānōrum the Germans'	agrō, fields,	neque nor	hanc <sup>64</sup> this
	cōnsuētūdinem custom		vīctūs of living	cum with	illā <sup>65</sup> that
	comparandam.		Ariovistum	autem,	ut <sup>66</sup>
			to be about to be compared.	Ariovistus,	moreover, when
	semel	Gallōrum	cōpiās	proeliō	vīcerit, <sup>67</sup>
	once	the Gauls'	troops	in battle	he has vanquished,
	quod	proelium	factum sit	Admagetobrigae,	<sup>68</sup>
	which	battle	was made	at Admagetobriga,	

tion denotes necessity or duty; the inf. construction is here used, because the discourse is indirect; the subject-acc. of *cōnferendum esse* is *agrum*, to be supplied. — **Gallicum**, acc. sing. m. of *Gallicus*, -a, -um; attributive of *agrum* understood.

LINE 64. **cum**, prep. with the abl. Observe that in the phrase *cum Germānōrum agrō* the same preposition — *cum* — is used as in the compound *cōn(cum)ferendum esse* which the phrase logically follows. — **Germānōrum**, gen. plur. m.; limits *agrō*. — **agrō**, abl. sing. m.; obj. of *cum*. — **neque**, conj. — **hanc**, acc. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); attributive of *cōnsuētūdinem*. *hanc consuetudinem* = the Gallic mode of living. Consult A. & G. 102, a, end; B. 84, 1, and REM. I; G. 305, 2; H. 450, 2, (2).

LINE 65. **cōnsuētūdinem**, acc. sing. of the noun *cōnsuētūdō*, -inis, f. (compare *consuēscere*, to accustom); subject-acc. of *comparandam (esse)*. — **vīctūs**, gen. sing. of the noun *vīctus*, -ūs, m. (*vīvere*, to live); hence *vīctus* = lit. *that on which one lives*. *vīctūs*, as a gen., limits *cōnsuētūdinem*. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. — **illā** (*ille*, -a, -ud); attributive of *cōnsuētūdinem*, to be supplied. *illā* refers to the Germanic modus of living; the usual order in the reference of the pronouns *hic* and *ille* is here reversed. See the grammatical references to *hanc*, preceding line.

LINE 66. **comparandam (esse)**, pres. inf. 2d pass. periphrastic conjugation of *comparō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 (con [cum] + par); hence *comparāre* = lit. *to couple together in pairs*, i.e. *to compare*. *cōnsuētūdinem* is the subject-acc. As to the meaning of the 2d periphrastic conjugation, see A. & G. 109, a, and FOOTNOTE 3; B. 106, II, and 185; G. 251, 1; H. 234. — **Ariovistum**, acc. sing. m.; subject-acc. of *imperāre*, l. 69, below. — **autem**, postpositive conj.; simply marks the transition and = *moreover*. — **ut**, an adv. here = *as* or *when*; modifies the other adv. *semel*.

LINE 67. **semel**, adv. = *once*; and the phrase *ut semel* = *when once*, or *as soon as*. — **Gallōrum**, adj., gen. plur., used substantively; limits *cōpiās*. — **cōpiās**, acc. plur. f.; direct obj. of *vīcerit*. — **proeliō**, abl. sing. m.; abl. of means. — **vīcerit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of *vincō*, -ere, *vici*, *victum*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *Ariovistum*; subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*.

LINE 68. **quod**, nom. sing. n. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*), used both relatively and adjectively; as a rel. pron. it refers to the noun *proeliō* as its antecedent; as an adj. it is an attributive of *proelium*. — **proelium**, nom. sing. n.; subj. of *factum sit*. — **factum sit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *fiō*, *fiēre*, *factus*, used as the pass. of

69	superbē	et	crūdēliter	imperāre,	began to govern
	haughtily	and	cruelly	to command (begins),	haughtily and
70	obsidēs	nōbilissimī	cūiusque	liberōs	cruelly; he demanded as hostages the children
	as hostages,	the noblest,	of each one,	the children	of all the noblest families, and
71	poscere	et	in	eōs omnia exempla	inflicted on them
	to demand (he demands) and	on	them	all	every species of
72	cruciātūsque	ēdere,	sī	qua rēs nōn ad	cruelty if every-
	tortures and,	to inflict,	if	any thing not to	thing was not

*faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *proclium*; subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in the *oratiō obliqua*. — *Admagetobrigae*, locative case of the proper noun *Admagetobriga*, -ae, f. Consult A. & G. 258, e, 2; B. 176; G. 411; H. 425, II. The locality referred to is in doubt; probably a village west of Vesontio, and not far from it.

LINE 69. *superbē*, adv. (*superbus*, adj.); in the formation of the adv., the final vowel of the stem of the adj. — *superbō* — is changed into *ē*. Consult A. & G. 148, a; B. 117, 5; G. 92, 2; H. 304, II, 2, end. — *et*, conj.; couples the adverbs *superbē* and *crūdēliter*. — *crūdēliter*, adv. (derived from the adj. *crūdēlis*, 3d declension). See grammatical references to *superbē*, immediately preceding. — *imperāre*, pres. inf. act. of *imperō*, 1 (see l. 7, Chap. VII). The subject-acc. of *imperāre* is *Ariovistum*, l. 66, above.

LINE 70. *obsidēs*, acc. plur., m. and f.; predicate-acc. appositive of *liberōs*, which latter is the direct obj. of *poscere*. — *nōbilissimī*, gen. sing. m. superl. degree; attributive of *virī*, to be supplied; which noun *virī*, as a gen., limits the noun *liberōs*. — *cūiusque*, gen. sing. of the indef. pron. *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque* or *quodque*; also an attributive of the noun *virī*, to be supplied; or rather it is a modifier of the complex notion contained in *virī nobilissimī*. *quisque* with the superl. = *omnēs* with the positive. Consult A. & G. 93, c; B. 89, 7; G. 318, 2; H. 458, 1. — *liberōs*, acc. plur. of the noun *liberī*, -ōrum, m. (*liber*); hence *liberī* = lit. *the free* members of the household. *liberōs* is the direct obj. of *poscere*.

LINE 71. *poscere*, pres. inf. of *poscō*, no supine, 3; its subject-acc. is the pron. *eum*, referring to *Ariovistum*, l. 66, above. Synonyms: *petere* and *rogāre* are the general words for *asking*; but the former denotes the *object* sought, the latter the *person* to whom application is made. *poscere* indicates an energetic request. — *et*, conj.; connects *poscere* and *ēdere*. — *in*, prep. with acc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. *eōs* is the obj. of *in*. — *omnia*, acc. plur. n.; attributive of *exempla*. — *exempla*, acc. plur. of *exemplum*, -i, n. (derived from *exime*, to take out); hence the noun = that which is selected as a sample; direct obj. of *ēdere*.

LINE 72. *cruciātūsque* (*cruciātūs* + *que*). *cruciātūs*, acc. plur. of *cruciātus*, -ūs, m. *que* connects *cruciātūs* with *exempla*. *omnia exempla cruciātūsque* = lit. *all examples and cruelties*, i.e. *every species of cruelty*; here is an illustration of the figure hendiadys. Consult A. & G. 385, 1; B. 310, 2, (b); G. 698; H. 636, III, 2. — *ēdere*, pres. inf. act. of the finite verb *ēdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum, 3 (*ē* + *dare*, lit. *to give out*); hence transf. *ēdere* = (a) *to publish*; (b) *to cause*; (c) *to inflict*. — *sī*, conditional conj.; original form *sei*. — *qua*, nom. sing. f. (*quis*, *qua*, *quid* or *quod*), adj. Observe that the indef. *quis* is declined like the interrogative *quis*, but has *qua* instead of *quae* except in the nom. plur. f. The indef. pron. is very frequent



done according to his nod or wish. Divitiacus said, moreover, that the man Ariovistus was savage, wrathful, rash; that the Gauls could no longer endure his commands. Unless there were	nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. 73
	<i>the nod or to the wish of him has been done.</i>
	Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, 74
	<i>The man to be (is) barbarous, wrathful,</i>
	temerarium; nōn posse eius 75
	<i>rash; (ourselves) not to be able his</i>
	imperia diūtius sustinere. Nisi si quid 76
	<i>commands longer to endure. Unless something</i>

with the particles *nū*, *num* and *si*. As to the indefinites, see A. & G. 105, *d*; B. 89, 3; G. 315; H. 455, 1. *qua* in the text has an adj. force, and is the attributive of the noun *rēs*. — *rēs*, nom. sing. f.; subj. of *facta sit*. — *nōn*, negative adv.; modifies *facta sit*. It is made emphatic by its position. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 73. *nūtum*, acc. sing. of *nūtus*, -ūs, m. (*nuere*, to nod); obj. of *ad*. — *aut*, alternative conj. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. Observe how the notions are kept distinct by the repetition of the prep. — *voluntātem*, acc. sing. f.; obj. of *ad*. — *eius*, gen. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; limits *voluntātem*; refers to Ariovistus. — *facta sit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *fiō*, *feri*, *factus*; used as the pass. of *faciō*, -ere, *feci*, *factum*, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *rēs*; subjunctive in the protasis after the conditional conj. *si*; the apodosis is in the preceding infinitive-clause. The *drātiō rēcla* of lines 49-73: Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanis quam Aeduīs victīs accidit, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōsedit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquani, qui est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupavit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcedere iubet, propterea quod paucis mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum vīginti quattuor ad eum venērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parantur. Paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germāni Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōsuetūdō victūs cum illā comparanda. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō viciit, quod proelium factum est Admagetobrigae, superbē et crudēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs possit et in hōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque edīt, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem hūius facta sit.

LINE 74. *Hominem*, acc. sing., m. and f.; subject-acc. of *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf.; its function here is simply that of a copula. — *barbarum*, acc. sing. m.; predicate-adj. after *esse*. — *irācundum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *irācundus*, -a, -um (*ira*, *wrath* + *cundus*); predicate-adj. after *esse*; in the same construction as *barbarum*, et being omitted (asyndeton). As to the force of the ending -cundus, see A. & G. 164, *p*; G. 182, 2; H. 333, 1.

LINE 75. *temerarium*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *temerarius*, -a, -um (*temere* through *temerare* + the ending -arius); also predicate-adj. after *esse*, et being omitted. As to the omission of the conj., see A. & G. 208, *b*, 1, and 3, and 346, *c*; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6. — *nōn*, negative adv.; modifies *posse*. — *posse*, pres. inf.; supply as the subject-acc. of *posse nōs* or *Gallōs*. — *eius*, gen. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; limits the noun *imperia*; refers to Ariovistus.

LINE 76. *imperia*, acc. plur. n.; direct obj. of *sustinere*. — *diūtius*, comparative degree of the adv. *diū* (*dies*); superl. *diūtissimē*; modifies *sustinere*. —

77	in	Caesare	populōque	Rōmānō	sit	auxiliī,	some help in Cae-
	in	Caesar	people and,	Roman	is,	of aid,	sar and the Ro-
78	omnibus	Gallis	idem	esse	faciendum,	quod	man people, all
	by all	the Gauls	the same	to be about	to be done,	which	the Gauls must
79	Helvētīi	fēcerint,	ut	domō	ēmigrent,		do the same as
	the Helvetii	have done,	that from home	they might go forth,			the Helvetii had
80	aliud	domicilium,	aliās	sēdēs,	remōtās	ā	done: namely,
	another	domicile,	other	seats,	remote	from	emigrate, seek an-
							other dwelling-
							place, and other
							settlements re-
							mote from the

**sustinēre**, pres. inf. act.; complementary inf., depending on *posse*. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — **Nisi**, conj. — **si**, conj.; *nisi si* = *except if*, i.e. *unless*. — **quid**, nom. sing. n. (*quis, qua, quid*); subject-nom. of *sit*.

LINE 77. **in**, prep. with the abl. Consult A. & G. 152, c; B. 120, 3; G. 418, 1, (b); H. 435, NOTE 1. — **Caesare**, abl. m.; obj. of *in*. — **populōque** (*populō + que*). *populō*, abl. sing. m. *que*, conj.; connects *populō* with *Caesare*, and hence *populō* is also the obj. of the prep. *in*. — **Rōmānō**, abl. sing. m.; attributive of *populō*. — **sit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *sum*; its subject-nom. is the pron. *quid*; subjunctive in the negative condition after *nisi si*. See A. & G. 315, a; B. 204, REM. 1; G. 591, 2, (b), 2, REM. 2; H. 507, 3, NOTE 4. — **auxiliī**, gen. sing. m.; partitive gen. after the indef. pron. *quid*. See A. & G. 216, 3; B. 134; G. 369; H. 397, 3.

LINE 78. **omnibus**, adj., dat. plur.; an attributive of *Gallis*. — **Gallis**, adj., dat. plur.; used substantively; and here the *dat. of the apparent agent after esse faciendum (faciendum esse)*. See A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 215, 2; H. 388. — **idem**, acc. sing. n. of the dem. iterative pron. *idem, eadem, idem*; subject-acc. of *esse faciendum*. — **faciendum esse**, pres. inf. of the 2d pass. periphrastic conjugation of *fīō*. Consult A. & G. 129; B. 106, II; G. 251; H. 234. — **quod**, acc. sing. n.; refers to *idem*, but it is the direct obj. of the verb *fēcerint*.

LINE 79. **Helvētīi**, adj., nom. plur. m., used as a substantive; subject-nom. of *fēcerint*. — **fēcerint**, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive act. of *faciō*; agrees with its subject-nom. *Helvētīi*; subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — **ut**, ecbatic conj.; ordinarily it = the English *that*; but with the following subjunctive may be more elegantly rendered into English by the English inf. mode. — **domō**, locative abl. of the noun *domus, -ūs* or *-ī*, f., after the verb *ēmigrent*. Consult A. & G. 258, I, 2, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — **ēmigrent**, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *ēmigrō*, 1; a neuter or intrans. verb. Observe that the *ē* in the compound is simply intensive; that *ēmigrāre*, to remove or depart from a place, does not differ essentially from *migrāre*. *ēmigrent* is a subjunctive of result after *ut*, but the clause *ut domō ēmigrent* is a noun-clause, and as such is in apposition with *idem* in the preceding line. See A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 1, (b); G. 557; H. 501, III.

LINE 80. **aliud**, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *alius*; attributive of *domicilium*. For declension of *alius*, see A. & G. 83; B. 56, and REM. 1; G. 76, and REM. 4; H. 151. — **domicilium**, acc. sing. of *domicilium, -ī*, n. (l. 13, Chap. XXX); direct obj. of *petant*. — **aliās**, acc. plur. f.; attributive of *sēdēs*. — **sēdēs**, acc. plur. of *sēdēs, -is*, f.; direct obj. of *petant*. Observe the omission of the conj. between the phrases (asyndeton). Synonyms: *sēdēs* = ordinarily a place for sitting; *sedile* = a prepared

Germans, and try whatever fortune might be allotted them. If these statements were reported to Ariovistus, Divitiacus said that he did not doubt that he would inflict the direst punishment on all the hostages that were in his power;	Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque the Germans, they might seek fortune and, whatever accidat, experiantur. Haec sī enūntiāta may happen, they might try. These things if reported Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn to Ariovistus are, (ourselves) not to doubt that dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum from all the hostages, who with him sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. are, the severest penalty he may take.	81 82 83 84 85
--	---	----------------------------

seat of any sort; *sella* = frequently, a magistrate's seat, a chair or throne. — *remōtās*, a participial adj., acc. plur. f.; *remōtus*, -a, -um of the finite verb *removēō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2; as a perf. pass. participle = *having been removed*; as a participial adj. = *remote, distant*; modifies the noun *sēdēs*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 81. *Germānīs*, abl. plur. m.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *petant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive act. of *petō*; connected with *ēmigrent* by the omitted conj., and hence is in the same construction as *ēmigrent*, l. 79, above. — *fortūnamque*; *fortūnam*, acc. sing. f.; direct obj. of *experiantur*. *que* connects *petant* with *experiantur*. — *quaecumque*, nom. sing. f. of the indef. relative pron. *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque*; as a rel. it refers to *fortūnam*; it is the subject-nom. of *accidat*.

LINE 82. *accidat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of *accidō*, -ere, *accidī*, no supine, 3 (ad + cadere = lit. *to fall toward*); subjunctive, because it is in a dependent clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *experiantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of the deponent verb *experior*, -rīrī, -pertus, 4; connected by *que* with *petant*, and thence by an omitted conj. with *ēmigrent*, l. 79, and is in the same grammatical construction. — *Haec*, nom. plur. n. (*hīc, haec, hōc*), used substantively; or supply the English word *things* after it. Observe its emphatic position at the beginning of the sentence. *haec* is the subject-nom. of *enūntiāta sint*. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *enūntiāta sint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive pass. of the verb *enūnt(c)ō*; agrees with its subject-nom. *haec* in number and person, and is in the subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis.

LINE 83. *Ariovistō*, dat. sing. m.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *enūntiāta sint*. Observe its emphatic position between the parts of the verb. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *dubitāre*. — *dubitāre*, see l. 12, Chap. XVII. The subject-acc. of *dubitāre* is the reflexive pron. *sē*, referring to Divitiacus. — *quīn*, conj.; often an adv. (see l. 27, Chap. III).

LINE 84. *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *omnibus*, abl. plur.; attributive of *obsidibus*. — *obsidibus*, abl. plur., m. and f.; obj. of *dē*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m.; refers, as a relative, to *obsidibus*, and is the subject-nom. of the intrins. verb *sint*. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. Consult A. & G. 153; B. 120; G. 416, NOTE 4. — *eum*, dem. pron., acc. sing. m.; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Ariovistus; obj. of *apud*.

LINE 85. *sint*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *sum*; agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; it is in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō*

86	Caesarem	vel	auctōritāte	suā	atque	but that Caesar either by his own influence and that of his army, or by his late victory, or by the name of the Roman people could prevent him from bringing a larger number of Germans across the Rhine, and could
	Caesar	either	by authority	his own	and (that)	
87	exercitūs	vel	recentī	vīctōriā	vel	nōmine
	of the army	or	by the recent	victory	or	by the name
88	populī	Rōmānī	dēterrere	posse,	nē	
	of the people	Roman	to deter	to be able,	that not	
89	māior	multitūdō	Germānōrum	Rhēnum		
	a greater	multitude	of Germans	the Rhine		

*oblīqua*. — *gravissimum*, adj., acc. sing. n. of the superl. *gravissimus*, -a, -um; attributive of *supplicium*. — *supplicium*, acc. sing. of *supplicium*, -ii, n.; direct obj. of *sūmat*. — *sūmat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of the verb *sumō*; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Ariovistus; it is in the subjunctive of result after the conj. *quīn*. Consult A. & G. 332, g, REM.; B. 201, REM. 3; G. 555, 2; H. 504, 3, 2). The reader will observe that the literal translation of *quīn dē omnibus obsidibus . . . supplicium sūmat* is: that he will take a penalty from all the hostages = that he will inflict punishment on, etc.

LINE 86. *Caesarem*, acc. sing. m.; subject-acc. of *posse*, l. 88, below. — *vel*, disjunctive conj. *vel . . . vel* = *either . . . or*. For synonyms, see note on *aut . . . aut*, lines 19 and 20, Chap. I; and also on *vel . . . vel*, lines 14 and 16, Chap. VI. — *auctōritāte*, abl. sing. of the noun *auctōritās*, -ātis, f. (*auctōr* through the verb *augēre*, to increase). *auctōritāte* is an abl. of means. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um. *suā* is an attributive of *auctōritāte*; it refers to Caesar. — *atque* (ad + que), conj. See note on this particle, l. 12, Chap. I. *atque* connects *auctōritāte* expressed with *auctōritāte* understood; or with the pron. *eā* that may represent *auctōritāte*.

LINE 87. *exercitūs*, gen. sing. m.; limits *auctōritāte* understood. For synonyms, see note on *exercitū*, l. 28, Chap. III. — *vel*, see *vel*, preceding line. — *recentī*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *recēns*, -ntis; attributive of *vīctōriā*. Synonyms: *novus* = *new* — that which has not previously existed; while *recēns* = *new*, i.e. that which has not long existed. — *vīctōriā*, abl. sing. f.; abl. of means. — *vel*, see *vel*, preceding line. — *nōmine*, abl. sing. n.; abl. of means.

LINE 88. *populī*, gen. sing. m.; limits the noun *nōmine*. — *Rōmānī*, adj., gen. sing.; attributive of *populī*. — *dēterrere*, pres. inf. of *dēterreo*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2 (*dē* + *terrere* = lit. to frighten away). *dēterrere* is a complementary inf., depending on *posse*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. After *dēterrere* supply *eum*, i.e. *Ariovistum*, as direct obj. — *posse*, pres. inf. act. of the intrans. verb *possum*; its subject-acc. is the proper noun *Caesarem*. — *nē*, conjunctive adv. = *that not*.

LINE 89. *māior*, adj., comparative degree; positive *māgnus*; attributive of *multitūdō*. — *multitūdō*, nom. sing. f.; subject-nom. of *trādūcātur*. — *Germānōrum*, gen. plur. m.; limits *multitūdō*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. m.; acc. after the *trāns* in the compound verb *trādūcātur*. Consult A. & G. 237, d; B. 152, REM. 2; G. 331; H. 372. It should be noted that the acc. after this verb in either voice depends on the prep. *trāns*, and not on the verb as such.

defend all Gaul  
from the outrages  
of Ariovistus.

trādūcātūr, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī 90  
may be led across, Gaul and, all from Ariovistus'  
iniūriā posse dēfendere. 91  
wrong to be able to defend.

XXXII. On  
the delivery of  
this speech by  
Divitiacus, all  
who were pres-  
ent began with

XXXII. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Divitiacō 1  
This speech by Divitiacus  
habitā omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō 2  
having been made all, who were near, with great

LINE 90. trādūcātūr, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive pass. of the act. verb trādūcō; agrees with its subject-nom. multitūdō; it is a subjective of negative purpose after the particle nē. See A. & G. 317; B. 200, (b); G. 548, NOTE 1; H. 497, I. — Galliamque; Galliam, acc. sing. f.; direct obj. of dēfendere. que, enclitic conj. — omnem, acc. sing. f.; attributive of the noun Galliam. — ab, prep. with the abl. — Ariovistī, gen. sing. m.; limits the noun iniūriā.

LINE 91. iniūriā, abl. of iniūria, -ae, f. (in + iūs); obj. of the prep. ab. See A. & G. 152, b; B. 120, 2; G. 417, 1; H. 434. — posse, pres. inf. of the irr. intrans. verb possum; its subject-acc. is eum, i.e. Caesarem. — dēfendere, pres. inf. act. of the finite verb dēfendō, 3; complementary inf., depending on posse. Consult A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. The ōrātiō recta of lines 74-91: *Homō est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius; nōn possumus eius imperia diūtius sustinere. Nisi si quid in tē, Caesare, populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliū, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum, quod Helvētīi fecerunt, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sedēs, remōtās ā Germānis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōs nōn dubitāmus, quin dē omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū, Caesar, vel auctoritāte tuā atque exercitū vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populī Rōmāni dēterrere potes, nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātūr, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere.*

LINE 1. Hāc, abl. sing. f. (hūc, haec, hōc); an attributive of the noun ōrātiōne. — ōrātiōne, abl. sing. of ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle habitā. Consult A. & G. 255, d; B. 172 and 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431, 2. Synonyms: ōrātiō = the premeditated and rhetorically polished speech; whereas sermō = continued conversation — an unartistic and an extempore talk. — ab, prep. with the abl. (l. 5, Chap. I). — Divitiacō, abl. of Divitiacus, -ī, m.; the agent. See A. & G. 246; B. 108, 2, and 166; G. 401; H. 388, 2, and 415, 1. For description of this man, see l. 20, Chap. III.

LINE 2. habitā, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle habitus, -a, -um of the verb habeo, 2; pass. parts: habeor, -ēri, -itus; abl. absolute with ōrātiōne. — omnēs, nom. plur. of the adj. omnis, -e, an ī-stem, abl. omni; used substantively; subject-nom. of the verb coepērunt. — quī, nom. plur. m. (quī, quae, quod). quī refers to omnēs; subject-nom. of the verb aderant. — aderant, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of adsum, adesce, affui; frequently written assum; assimilation. aderant agrees with its subject-nom. quī. — māgnō, abl. sing. m. of the adj. māgnus, -a, -um; an attributive of the noun flētū.

3	<i>flētū</i>	<i>auxilium</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>Caesare</i>	<i>petere</i>	<i>coepērunt.</i>	loud lamentation to ask Caesar for help. Caesar
	<i>weeping</i>	<i>aid</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>to ask</i>	<i>began.</i>	
4	<i>Animadvertit</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ex</i>	<i>omnibus</i>		noticed that the Sequani alone of all made no
	<i>Observes</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>alone</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>all</i>		
5	<i>Sēquanōs</i>	<i>nihil</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>facere,</i>	<i>quās</i>	such outcries as the rest, but sadly with bowed
	<i>the Sequani</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>of those</i>	<i>things</i>	<i>to do,</i>	<i>which</i>	
6	<i>cēterī</i>	<i>facerent,</i>	<i>sed</i>	<i>tristēs,</i>	<i>capite</i>		ed heads kept looking on the
	<i>the others</i>	<i>were doing,</i>	<i>but</i>	<i>sad,</i>	<i>the head</i>		

LINE 3. *flētū*, abl. sing. of *flētus*, -ūs, m. (*flēre*, to weep); an abl. of manner. See A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *auxilium*, acc. sing. of *auxilium*, -iī, n. (*augēre*, to increase); direct obj. of the verb *petere*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. (l. 6, Chap. I). — *Caesare*, abl. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; obj. of the prep. *ā*; the usual construction after *petere*, instead of a second acc. Consult A. & G. 239, c, NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, REM. 1 and NOTE 2; H. 374, 2, NOTE 4. — *petere*, pres. inf. act. of *petō*, -ere, -iī (-iī), -itum, 3; complementary inf., depending on *coepērunt*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *coepērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the defective *coepī*, *coepisse*, fut. participle *coepitūrus*; a preteritive verb. Consult A. & G. 143, a; B. 113; G. 175, 5; H. 297. *coepērunt* agrees with its subject-nom. *omnēs*, above.

LINE 4. *Animadvertit*, 3d pers. sing. of the perf. ind. act. of *animadvertō*, -ere, -verti, -versum, 3 (animus + ad + *vertere* = lit. to turn the mind to); agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*, expressed. The component parts are frequently written separately. See l. 1, Chap. XXIV. — *Caesar*, subject-nom. of the verb preceding it. Observe its emphatic position. — *ūnōs*, acc. plur. m. of the cardinal num. adj. *ūnus* (l. 1, Chap. I); agrees with *Sēquanōs*, and is essentially predicative; and = *sōlōs* here. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. of *omnis*, -e, used substantively; obj. of the prep. *ex*. The construction is equivalent to the partitive gen. (*ūnā ex parte*, lines 10, 11, Chap. II). Consult A. & G. 216, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3.

LINE 5. *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. of *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.; subject-acc. of the inf. *facere* (l. 25, Chap. I). — *nihil*, an indecl. neuter noun, used only in the nom. and acc. cases; direct obj. of *facere*. — *eārum*, gen. plur. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *rērum*. — *rērum*, gen. plur. (*rēs*, *rei*, f.); partitive gen. after *nihil*. See A. & G. 216, a, 1; B. 134; G. 369; H. 397, 1. The allusion here is to their entreaties and tears. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *Sēquanōs*. — *quās*, acc. plur. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*). *quās* refers to *rērum*; is the direct obj. of *facerent*.

LINE 6. *cēterī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *cēterus*, -a, -um; used in the text as a subst.; subject-nom. of *facerent*. Synonyms: *cēteri*, frequently written *caeterī* = *others* in opposition to those first mentioned, compare GK. οἱ ἄλλοι; whereas *alii* = *others* as merely differential from those mentioned; and *reliqui* = *the rest*, the remainder that completes the whole. — *facerent*, 3d pers. plur. imp. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; its subj. is *cēteri*; in the subjunctive, because a clause of characteristic. See A. & G. 320; B. 234, 1; G. 631, 1; H. 503, 1. — *sed*, adversative conj. — stronger than *autem* or *at*. — *tristēs*, acc. plur. of *tristis*, -e, an *i*-stem; abl. *tristī*; agrees with *cōs*, i.e. *Sēquanōs*, the omitted subject-acc. of *intuērī*. Observe that in use here *tristēs* = *tristē*, an adv. Consult A. & G. 191; B. 128, REM. 10; G. 325, 6; H. 443. — *capite*, abl. sing. of *caput*, -itis, n.; abl. absolute with *dēmissō*, denoting manner.

ground. He wondered at this procedure and inquired of them personally as to the cause. The Sequani answered not at all, but silently continued in the same sad mood.	dēmīssō,	terrām	intuērī.	Eius	7		
	<i>being cast down,</i>	<i>the earth</i>	<i>to look on (began).</i>	<i>Of this</i>			
	reī	quae	causa	esset,	mīrātus	ex	8
	<i>thing</i>	<i>what</i>	<i>the cause</i>	<i>was,</i>	<i>wondering</i>	<i>from</i>	
	ipsis	quaesiit.	Nihil	Sēquanī	respondēre,	9	
	<i>themselves</i>	<i>he sought.</i>	<i>Nothing</i>	<i>the Sequani</i>	<i>responded,</i>		
	sed	in	eādem	tristitiā	tacitī	permanēre.	10
	<i>but</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>the same</i>	<i>sadness</i>	<i>silent</i>	<i>they remained.</i>	

LINE 7. *dēmīssō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *dēmīssus*, -a, -um of the verb *dēmīttō*, -ere, -mīsi, -mīsum, 3 (*dē* + *mittere*, lit. *to send down*); abl. absolute with *capite*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. — *terrām*, acc. sing. of *terra*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of the deponent inf. *intuērī*. Synonyms: *terra* = the earth in opposition to the sky; whereas *solum* = the earth as a solid, basilar foundation. — *intuērī*, pres. inf. of the deponent verb *intueor*, -eri, *intuitus*, 2; subject-acc. is *cōs*, i.e. *Helvētiōs* understood. — *Eius*, gen. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of the noun *reī*.

LINE 8. *reī*, gen. sing. (*rēs*, *reī*, f.); limits, as a gen., the noun *causa*. — *quae*, nom. sing. f. of the interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; predicate-nom. after *esset*. — *causa*, nom. sing. of *causa*, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *esset*. — *esset*, 3d pers. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; agrees with its subject-nom. *causa*, and is in the subjunctive, because the question is indirect. See A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. — *mīrātus*, nom. sing. of the perf. participle *mīrātus*, -a, -um of the deponent verb *mīror*, 1; as a participle it agrees with the subject *Caesar*, to be supplied. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. (l. 11, Chap. II).

LINE 9. *ipsis*, abl. plur. (*ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*); obj. of the prep. *ex*; observe that it is here used as an emphatic pron. of the 3d pers.; consult A. & G. 195, g; B. 85, REM. 2; G. 311, 2; H. 448. Observe, too, that *ipsis* is reflexive; that the phrase *ex ipsis* is more emphatic than either *ex eis* or *ex his*; and that *ex sē* here is inadmissible on account of ambiguity. — *quaesiit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *quaerō*, -ere, -sīvī (-iī), -sītum, 3; agrees with the omitted subject-nom. *Caesar*. As to the omission of *v* in the perf. without contraction, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 2; H. 235, I. Observe that *quaerō*, as a verb of asking, takes the abl. of the person with the prepositions *ab*, *dē* or *ex*. See A. & G. 239, 2, c, NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, REM. 1; H. 374, 2, NOTE 4, end. Observe also that the indirect question *quae causa esset* is, as a noun-clause, the acc. of the thing after *quaesiit*. — *Nihil*, indecl. noun, used only in the nom. and acc. cases; direct obj. of the verb *respondēre*. — *Sēquanī*, nom. plur. of the adj. *Sēquānus*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; subject-nom. of the historical inf. *respondēre*. See note on *Sēquanī*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *respondēre*, pres. inf. act. of *respondēō*, -ere, -spōndī, -spōnsum, 2. Observe that the historical inf. in use = the imperf. ind., and has its subj. in the nom. case. Consult A. & G. 275; B. 182; G. 647; H. 536, I.

LINE 10. *sed*, adversative conj.; see l. 6, above. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *eādem*, abl. sing. f. of the iterative dem. pron. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem* (*is* + *dem*); an attributive of the noun *tristitiā*. — *tristitiā*, abl. sing. of *tristitia*, -ae, f. (*tristis*, sad); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *tacitī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *tacitus*, -a, -um of the verb *taceō*, 2; used here as an adj.; it agrees with *eī*, i.e. *Sēquanī*, the omitted subject-nom. of the historical inf. *permanēre*.

11	Cum	ab	hīs	saepius	quaereret	neque	When Caesar had repeatedly inquired the reason, and could elicit no answer from them, Divitiacus the Aeduan, the same speaker as before, replied: The condition of the
	When	from	them	rather often	he sought	not and,	
12	ūllam	omnīnō	vōcem	exprimere	posset,		
	any	at all	voice	to extort	was able,		
13	īdem	Divitiacus	Aedūus	respondit:			
	the same	Divitiacus	the Aeduan	responded:			
14	Hōc	esse	miseriōrem	et	graviōrem		
	In this respect	to be	more miserable	and	more grievous		

Observe that *taciū*, like *tristēs*, l. 6, above, is used adverbially. See grammatical references to *tristēs*. — **permanēre**, pres. inf., historical, of *permanēō*, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, 2 (per + manēre, lit. *to remain through*); its subject-nom. is *cī*, i.e. *Sēquanī*, understood.

LINE 11. **Cum** (collateral forms *quom*, *quum*, *qum* rare), conj. — **ab**, prep. with the abl. — **hīs**, abl. plur. m. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ab*. With *ab hīs* compare *ex ipsīs*, lines 8 and 9, above. — **saepius**, adv., comparative degree of positive *saepe*; superl. degree *saepissimē*. Observe that the comparative degree in the text, and often elsewhere, seems to be used in the sense of the positive. — **quaereret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *quaerō*, -ere, -sīvī (-ī), -sītum, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *Caesar* understood; in the subjunctive mode after *cum* temporal or historical. Consult A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. But note that the *cum*-clause denotes both time and cause. — **neque** (ne + que), a conjunctive adv., and = *and not*. The *que* connects the clauses; the *nē*, as an adv., modifies the adj. *ūllam*.

LINE 12. **ūllam**, acc. sing. f. of *ūllus*, -a, -um; gen. *ūllius*; dat. *ūllī*. Observe that this adj. is used in negative clauses; consult A. & G. 202, *b, c*; B. 56, 4, for decl.; G. 317, 1; H. 457; an attributive of the noun *vocem*. — **omnīnō** (*omnis*, all), adv.; modifies *exprimere*. — **vōcem**, acc. sing. of *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.; direct obj. of *exprimere*. Synonyms: *vōx* = a word with reference to its sound or form; whereas *verbum* = a word with reference to its meaning or use. — **exprimere**, pres. inf. act. of *exprimō*, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, 3 (ex + primere) = lit. *to press out*; hence *to express* or *extort*; complementary inf., depending on *posset*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — **posset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī* (potis, able + sum); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as its subject-nom., referring to *Caesar*; connected by the conj. *neque* with *quaereret*, and in the subjunctive mode for the same reason.

LINE 13. **īdem**, nom. sing. m. of the iterative dem. pron. *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*; an attributive of *Divitiacus*. — **Divitiacus**, nom. sing.; the subject-nom. of *respondit*. — **Aedūus**, nom. sing. m. of the adj. *Aedūus*, -a, -um, used as a noun-appositive. See note on *Aedūō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — **respondit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondēō*, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsū, 2 (re + spondere = *to promise a thing in return*); agrees with subject-nom. *Divitiacus*.

LINE 14. **Hōc**, abl. sing. n. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); gen. *hūius*; dat. *huic*; is an abl. of degree of difference after the comparatives. See A. & G. 250; B. 164; G. 403; H. 423, NOTE 1. *hōc* is the herald of the following *quod*-clause, and might be taken as an abl. of cause. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is



Sequani was more wretched and grievous than that of the rest in this re- spect, because they alone did not even private- ly dare complain, nor ask for help,	fortūnam <i>the fortune</i>	Sēquanōrum <i>of the Sequani</i>	quam <i>than</i>	reliquōrum, 15. <i>of the rest,</i>		
	quod <i>because</i>	sōlī <i>they alone</i>	nē <i>not</i>	in <i>in</i>	occultō <i>secret</i>	quidem 16 <i>even</i>
	querī <i>to complain</i>	neque <i>nor</i>	auxilium <i>assistance</i>	implōrāre <i>implore</i>	audērent ; 17 <i>dared ;</i>	

*fortūnam*. — *miseriōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative *miserior*, -ius; positive *miser*; superl. -issimus. *miseriōrem* is a predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *et*, cop. conj.; it connects the adjectives. — *graviōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative *gravior*, -ius; connected by *et* with *miseriōrem*, and in the same construction; namely, predicate-acc. after *esse*. For the declension of adjectives in the comparative degree, see A. & G. 86; B. 69, 2; G. 89; H. 154, and FOOTNOTE 4.

LINE 15. *fortūnam*, acc. sing. of *fortūna*, -ae, f. (*fors*, chance, from *ferō*); subject-acc. of the intrans. verb *esse*. — *Sēquanōrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used substantively; limits *fortūnam*. As to this clan, see note on *Sequanis*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *quam*, conj.; it connects *fortūnam* expressed with *eam*, i.e. *fortūnam* understood. — *reliquōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um, used substantively; *reliquōrum* as a gen. limits *fortūnam* understood. Dr. Anthon reads here, according to the Oxford MSS., *prae reliquorum*. According to this lection the pron. *eā* is to be supplied; and the English of the phrase would be: *in comparison with that of the rest*. For synonyms, see note on *cē(ae)terī*, l. 6, above.

LINE 16. *quod*, a conj. = *because*. — *sōlī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *sōlus*, -a, -um; gen. *sōlius*; dat. *sōlī*. *sōlī* as nom. plur. agrees with *eī*, i.e. *Sēquani*, the omitted subj. of the verb *audērent*, l. 17, below. For list of adjectives declined like *sōlus*, see A. & G. 83; B. 56, 3, 4; G. 76, 1, 2; H. 151. — *nē*, adv.; modifies *audērent*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *occultō*, abl. sing. participle from the verb *occultō*, -ere, -lui, *occultum*, 3 (ob + *colere* = *to cover up*). Observe that *in occultō* is an adverbial phrase equivalent to an adv.; that it may be analyzed by supplying the noun *locō* as the obj. of the prep. *in*; and that the phrase stands between the particle *nē* and the restrictive particle *quidem*; but observe carefully that the included phrase is, by its position, emphatic. Consult A. & G. 345, b, end; B. 117, 3 (*nē . . . quidem*); G. 679; H. 569, III, 2. — *quidem*, adv., emphasizes the words before it.

LINE 17. *querī*, pres. inf. of the dep. *queror*, -ī, *questus*, 3; complementary inf. here, depending on *audērent*. Observe that *querī*, which = *to complain*, is both trans. and intrans.; that it is sometimes followed by the dat.; sometimes is used with the prepositions *apud*, *cum* and *dē* with their appropriate cases; and is sometimes, as in the text, used absolutely. — *neque* (*nē* + *que*), adv., used as a correlative to *nē . . . quidem*; hence = *nor*. — *auxilium*, acc. sing. of *auxilium*, -ii, n.; direct obj. of the inf. *implōrāre*. — *implōrāre*, pres. inf. of *implōrō*, 1 (in + *plorāre*); hence *implōrāre* = lit. *to call to one*; connected by the conjunctive adv. *neque* with the verb *querī*, and is in the same construction; viz. complementary inf. — *audērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus*, 2; neuter, pass., or semi-deponent; agrees with *Sēquani* understood; in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*.

18	absentisque	Ariovistī	crūdēlitātem,	velut	sī	and shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus when
	absent	and,	Ariovistus'	cruelty,	even as if	
19	cōram	adesset,	horrērent,	proptereā		absent as if he were personally present; because,
	personally	he were present,	they shuddered at,	for this reason		because, to the rest at any rate, an oppor- tunity of flight was given; but
20	quod	reliquīs	tamen	fugae	facultās	the Sequani, who
	because	to the rest	still	flight's	opportunity	
21	darētur,	Sēquanīs	vērō,	quī	intrā	
	was given,	by the Sequani	but,	who	within	

LINE 18. **absentisque** (**absentis** + **que**). **absentis** is the gen. sing. m. of the adj. **absēns**, **absentis**; properly a pres. participle of **abesse**; used, however, as a participle, agreeing with **Ariovistī**. **que**, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses very closely. — **Ariovistī**, gen. sing. (**Ariovistus**, -i, m.); a possessive gen.; limits the noun **crūdēlitātem**. — **crūdēlitātem**, acc. sing. of **crūdēlitās**, -ātis, f. (**crūdēlis**); direct obj. of **horrērent**. — **velut** (**vel** + **ut**), adv. = *just as*; but observe that *vel* in the compound is taken in its complete sense of *or even*. — **sī**, a conditional conj.; and with **velut** = *just as if*.

LINE 19. **cōram**, adv. (derivation dubious, possibly from **ōs**, **ōris**, with the prefix **con**, hence with the face, i.e. *with the person, personally*). **cōram** emphasizes the idea of nearness contained in the prep. **ad** of the compound **adesset**. — **adesset**, 3d pers. sing. of **adsum**, **adesse**, **ad(āf)fuī**; agrees with the subject-nom. **Ariovistus** understood; in the subjunctive after the conj. **sī** in the protasis. Consult A. & G. 304, a; B. 204, 2; G. 590; H. 507, III. Observe that the apodosis is understood. The complete condition and conclusion: *velut facerent, sī cōram adesset*. — **horrērent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of **horreo**, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2; agrees with **Sēquanī** understood; connected by the enclitic **que** appended to **absentis** with **audērent**, and is in the subjunctive for the same reason, i.e. in a subordinate clause in the **oratio obliqua**. — **proptereā** (**propter** + **eā**), adv.; the herald of the following **quod**-clause; compare **hōc**, l. 14, above.

LINE 20. **quod**, conj. = *because*; but see note on **quod**, l. 16, above. — **reliquīs**, dat. plur. of adj. **reliquus**, -a, -um, used substantively; indirect obj. after the pass. **darētur**. Consult A. & G. 225, 3, c; H. 140; G. 345 *Passive Form*; H. 384, I (synonyms, see l. 6, above). — **tamen**, adv.; used to oppose some concession either expressed or implied; here **tamen** = *still, at any rate*. The concession implied here may be expressed thus: *proptereā quod quae cum ita sint, tamen*, etc. = *because, though these things are so, yet*, etc. — **fugae**, gen. sing. of **fuga**, -ae, f. (σκ. φύγη); limits **facultās**. — **facultās**, nom. sing. of **facultās**, -ātis, f. (**facilis** [**facere**]); hence **facultās** = *lit. the capacity of doing anything easily*; it, in the text = *opportunity*; sometimes, transf. **facultās** = **cōpia**. **facultās** is the subject-nom. of **darētur**.

LINE 21. **darētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**, 1; pass. parts: **dor**, **dari**, **datus**; agrees with its subject-nom. **facultās**; in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in **oratio obliqua**. Observe that **a** is short before **re**, pres. inf. act., by exception. — **Sēquanīs**, dat. plur. of the adj. **Sēquanus**, -a, -um, used as a noun; dat. of the *apparent agent* after **essent perferendī** (*perferendī essent*), l. 24, below. Consult A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 215, 2, and 355; H. 388. See note on **Sēquanīs**, l. 25, Chap. I. — **vērō** (**vērū**, true), conj. = *lit. in truth*; but frequently used to mark a transition, and = *but*; not so strong

had received A-  
riovistus within  
their borders, all  
of whose towns  
were in his pow-  
er, must endure  
every species of  
torture.

<i>finēs</i>	<i>suōs</i>	<i>Ariovistum</i>	<i>recēpissent,</i>	22
<i>the territories</i>	<i>their,</i>	<i>Ariovistus</i>	<i>had received,</i>	
<i>quōrum</i>	<i>oppida</i>	<i>omnia</i>	<i>in potestāte</i>	<i>ēius</i>
<i>whose</i>	<i>towns</i>	<i>all,</i>	<i>in the power</i>	<i>of him</i>
<i>essent,</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>cruciātūs</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>perferendī.</i>
<i>were,</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>tortures</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>to be endured.</i>

XXXIII. On  
receiving this in-  
formation, Cae-

XXXIII.	<i>His</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>cōgnitīs</i>	1
	<i>These</i>	<i>things</i>	<i>having been ascertained,</i>	

an adversative as *vērūm*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *Sēquanīs*; but is subject-nom. of *recēpissent*. — *intrā* (contracted from *interā*, supply *parte*). *intrā* is either an adv. or prep.; here it is a prep. with the acc. .

LINE 22. *finēs*, acc. plur. of *finis*, *fīnis*, m.; obj. of the prep. *intrā*. See syn-  
onyms on *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *suōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. and reflexive pron.  
*suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of the noun *finēs*. Observe that *suōs* refers to the noun  
*Sēquanīs*, the logical, though not the grammatical, subj. of the leading proposition.  
Consult A. & G. 196, 2; B. 80, REM. 2; G. 309, 2, and 521, 2; H. 449, 1, 2. —  
*Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of the verb *recēpissent*. As to  
this personage, see note, l. 51, Chap. XXXI. — *recēpissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf.  
subjunctive of *recipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*; in the  
subjunctive mode, because in a dependent clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*.

LINE 23. *quōrum*, gen. plur. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *Sēquanīs*; as a poss.  
gen. it limits *oppida*. — *oppida*, nom. plur. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; subject-nom. of the  
intrans. verb *essent*. — *omnia*, nom. plur. n. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive of  
*oppida*. — *in*, prep. with either the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. For the  
different significations, see note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *potestāte*, abl. sing. of  
*potestās*, -ātis, f. (*posse* [potis + esse, to be able]). For synonyms, see note on *potentiae*,  
l. 25, Chap. XVIII; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. (*is, ea, id*); used as a  
personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it limits *potestāte*; as a pron. it = *his*, i.e. *Ariovistus*'.

LINE 24. *essent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*;  
agrees with its subject-nom. *oppida*; in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate  
clause in the *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *omnēs*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an  
i-stem; abl. sing. *omni*; an attributive of *cruciātūs*. — *cruciātūs*, nom. plur. of  
*cruciātus*, -ūs, m. (from *crux*, a cross, through *cruciāre*); subject-nom. of *essent* *per-*  
*ferendī* (*perferendī essent*). — *essent* *perferendī* (*perferendī essent*), 3d pers. plur.  
imperf. subjunctive, second periphrastic conjugation, of the verb *perfero*, -ferre, -tulī,  
-lātum (per + *fero*). *essent* *perferendī* is connected by the conj. *rēō* with the clause  
ending with *darētur*; in the subjunctive, because the statement is made on the  
authority not of Caesar, but of Divitiacus. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 14-24: *Hōc est*  
*miserior et gravior fortuna Sēquanōrum quam reliquorum, quod solī nē in occultō*  
*quidem queri neque auxilium implorāre audent*; absentsque Ariovisti crudelitatem,  
velut si cōram adsit, horrent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur,  
*Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in*  
*potestāte ēius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt* *perferendī*.

LINE 1. *His*, abl. plur. f. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; gen. *huius*; dat. *huic*;  
an attributive of *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. (*rēs*, *rei*, f.); abl. absolute with the  
perf. pass. participle, denoting *time*. Consult A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410;

2	Caesar	Gallōrum	animōs	verbīs	cōnfirmāvit	Caesar the Gauls' minds with words encouraged,	Caesar comforted the minds of the Gauls by his remarks, and promised to give the matter his attention; saying that he had great hopes that Ario-
3	pollicitusque	est,	sibi	eam	rem	cūrae	promised and, to himself this thing for a care
4	futūram;	māgnam	sē	habēre	spem,	et	about to be; great himself to have hope, both

H. 431, 2. — *cōgnitis*, abl. plur. f. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus*, -a, -um of *cōgnoscō*, -ere, -nōvī, *cōgnitum*, 3 (con[cum] + [g]nōscere); abl. absolute with the noun *rēbus*. Observe that in this construction the participle agrees with the noun in gender, number and case.

LINE 2. *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of *cōnfirmāvit*. — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. of the adj. *Gallus*, -a, -um, used substantively; poss. gen., limiting *animōs*. See note on *Gallī*, l. 4, Chap. I. — *animōs*, acc. plur. of *animus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *cōnfirmāvit*. Synonyms: *animus* = the soul as a psychological and ethical personality; *anima* = the soul as the physiological principle — the principle of animal life, compare Gk. *ψυχή*; whereas *mēns* = the soul as the thinking faculty. *animus*, however, as the most comprehensive term = the soul with all its faculties. — *verbīs*, abl. plur. of *verbum*, -ī, n. (compare Gk. *ῥῆμα* = that which is spoken). Compare also the English *verb* and *word*; an abl. of means. Synonyms: *vocem*, l. 12, Chap. XXXII. — *cōnfirmāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōnfirmō*, 1 (con, intensive + firmāre (*fīrmus*); agrees with subject-nom. *Caesar* expressed.

LINE 3. *pollicitusque* (*pollicitus* + *que*). *pollicitus* is in form the pass. participle of the deponent verb *polliceor*, -ēre, *pollicitus*, 2; in fact, it is a part of the compound formation of the perf. tense *pollicitus est*. *que*, enclitic conj. Synonyms: *polliceantur*, l. 30, Chap. XIV. — *est*, 3d pers. sing. pres. tense of *sum*; part of the form — 3d pers. sing. — perf. tense, deponent verb. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; refers to *Caesar*, and is dat. of the obj. *to which* after *futūram* (*esse*). — *eam*, acc. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of the noun *rem*. — *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; subject-acc. of *futūram* (*esse*); *rem* refers to the hard lot of the Sequani. — *cūrae*, dat. sing. of *cūra*, -ae, f. (*quaerō*); hence *cūra* = the troubling one's self about somewhat; dat. of service after *futūram* (*esse*). The student will observe that *futūram* (*esse*) takes two datives: *sibi* the object *to which*, and *cūrae*, the end *for which*. Consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, and REM. 2; G. 356; H. 390.

LINE 4. *futūram* (*esse*), fut. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is the noun *rem*. Observe that the participial part of the formation of this inf. is declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and that the form *futūram esse* occurs, because the subject-acc. *rem* is feminine. Observe further that verbs of *hope* and *promising* and *undertaking* are generally followed by the fut. inf. — *māgnam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; comparative degree *māior*; superl. *māximus*. *māgnam* is an attributive of the noun *spem*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; *sē* refers to *Caesar*; it is the subject-acc. of the verb *habēre*. — *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of the verb *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; *habēre* is an inf. in indirect discourse; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. The direct discourse would be either *egō habēō* or *Caesar habet*. — *spem*, acc. sing. of *spēs*, *spēi*, f. (stem *spē*, but shortened in the gen. and dat. sing. of *fidēs*, *rēs* and *spēs*; *spem* is the direct obj. of the verb *habēre*. — *et* . . . *et*, here a species of correlative conjunctions = *both* . . . *and*; let them be translated after the perf. pass. participle *adductum*.

vistus, induced by his former kindness and present influence, would desist from wrongdoing. After delivering this speech—the purport of which is only given here—he dismissed the assembly.—And indeed, after these repre-	beneficiō by favor	suō his own	et and	auctōritāte by influence	adductum 5 led
	Ariovistum Ariovistus	finem an end	iniūriis to his wrongs	factūrum. about to make.	Hāc 6 This
	ōrātiōne speech	habitā having been had,	concilium the council	dīmīsīt. he broke up.	Et 7 And
	secundum after	ea these (things)	multae many	rēs things	eum 8 him

LINE 5. **beneficiō**, abl. sing. of *beneficium*, -ī, n. (bene + facere); hence *beneficium* = lit. *well-doing*; an abl. of cause after the participle *adductum*. Consult A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; II. 416, and NOTE 1. — **suō**, abl. sing. n. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of the neuter noun *beneficiō*, but refers to Caesar. — **et**, see note on *et*, preceding line. — **auctōritāte**, abl. sing. of *auctōritās*, -ātis, f. (from the verb *augere*, to increase, through the noun *auctor*); connected by the conj. *et* with the noun *beneficiō*, and is also an abl. of cause. — **adductum**, acc. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *adductus*, -a, -um of *adducō*, -ere, -dūcī, -ductum, 3; agrees with *Ariovistum*.

LINE 6. **Ariovistum**, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-acc. of the inf. *factūrum* (*esse*). — **finem**, acc. sing. of *finis*, -is, m.; direct obj. of the inf. *factūrum* (*esse*). — **iniūriis**, dat. plur. of *iniūria*, -ae, f. (in, negative + iūs); dat. of the indirect object. Consult A. & G. 225; B. 141; G. 345; II. 384, II. — **factūrum** (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *faciō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *Ariovistum*; hence the acc. m. form of the participle is part of this fut. inf. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 4-6: *māgnam ego habeo spem, et beneficiō meō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum esse*. — **Hāc**, abl. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); gen. *hūius*; dat. *huic*; an attributive of the noun *ōrātiōne*.

LINE 7. **ōrātiōne**, abl. sing. of *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.; abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *habītā*. Synonyms: *ōrātiōne*, l. 1, Chap. XXII. — **habītā**, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *habitus*, -a, -um of the finite verb *habeo*, 2; abl. absolute with *ōrātiōne*, denoting *time when*. See A. & G. 255, d. 1; B. 192; G. 409, 410; II. 431. — **concilium**, acc. sing. of *concilium*, -iī, n.; direct obj. of *dīmīsīt*. Synonyms: *concilium*, l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — **dīmīsīt**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *dīmītto*, -ere, -mīssī, -missum, 5 (dis, an inseparable particle + mittere); hence *dīmīttere* = lit. *to send apart*; agrees with *Caesar* understood. — **Et**, conj.; here it connects the sentences. This use of *et*, standing at the head of the sentence, is not very frequent.

LINE 8. **secundum**, prep. with the acc. (from *sequi*, through the gerundive *secundus* in the participial sense of *following*, *second*, *after*). See *secundum*, A. & G. 153; B. 120, 1; G. 416, 24; II. 433. — **ea**, acc. plur. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used substantively; obj. of the prep. *secundum*. Observe that *ea* refers to the arguments of Divitiacus. — **multae**, nom. plur. f. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; *multae* is an attributive of *rēs*. — **rēs**, nom. plur. of *rēs*, *rēi*, f. *rēs* is the subject-nom. of the verb *hortābantur*. The phrase *multae rēs* is explained by the *quod*-clause below. —

9 hortābantur,	quārē	sibi	eam	rem	sentations, many considerations led him to think that he ought to deliberate on these matters carefully, and undertake their adjustment; especially as he saw that the Aedui, who had often been called brothers and kinsmen by the senate,
urged,	why	by himself	this	thing	
10 cōgitandam	et	suscipiendam	putāret;		
to be cogitated	and	to be undertaken	he thought;		
11 imprīmīs,	quod	Aeduōs,	frātrēs		by the senate,
first of all,	because	the Aedui,	brothers		
12 cōnsanguineōsque	saepenumērō	ā	senātū		
kinsmen	and,	oftentimes	by the senate		

*eum*, acc. sing. m. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*), used substantively, i.e. as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; direct obj. of the deponent verb *hortābantur*.

LINE 9. *hortābantur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of the deponent verb *hortor*, 1; agrees with its subject-nom. *rēs*. — *quārē*, adv. (*quā* + *rē*); often written *quā rē*, and = *because of which thing*, i.e. *wherefore*. But *quārē* may be taken as equivalent to *ut* here. — *sibi*, dat. sing. (*sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); dat. of the apparent agent after the gerundives *cōgitandam* and *suscipiendam*. Consult A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 355; H. 388. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *rem*. — *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; subject-acc. of *cōgitandam* (*esse*) and *suscipiendam* (*esse*). The thing referred to is Divitiacus' report of the tyranny of Ariovistus in Gaul.

LINE 10. *cōgitandam* (*esse*), pres. inf. of the second periphrastic conjugation, from *cōgitō*, 1 (*con* + *agitāre*); hence *cōgitāre* = *to pursue* something quickly with the mind. — *et*, cop. conj. (see l. 7, Chap. I). — *suscipiendam* (*esse*), pres. inf. of the pass. periphrastic conjugation, from the act. verb *suscipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (*sub* + *capere*); hence *suscipere* = lit. *to take from beneath*. — *putāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *putō*, 1; agrees with *Caesar* understood; subjunctive, because an *indirect question*; A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I; or, perhaps, better as a purpose-clause after *quārē* = *ut*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546; H. 498, I. Observe that *hortor* is usually followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, or by the acc. with the inf. The construction with *quārē* and the subjunctive is rare.

LINE 11. *imprīmīs*, adv. (*in* + the abl. *primīs*); hence *imprīmīs* = lit. *among the first things*, i.e. *in the first place, especially*; modifies a verb, to be supplied; possibly *putāvit* in *sibi eam rem suscipiendam putāvit*, which must be conceived as filling a lacuna here in the thought. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *Aeduōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Aeduus*, -a, -um, used substantively; subject-acc. of the inf. *tenērē*, l. 14, below. See *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *frātrēs*, acc. plur. of *frāter*, *frātris*, m.; predicate-acc. of the perf. pass. participle *appellātōs*.

LINE 12. *cōnsanguineōsque* (*cōnsanguineōs* + *que*). *cōnsanguineōs* is the acc. plur. of the adj. *cōnsanguineus*, -a, -um (*con* + *sanguineus*); hence the adj. = *with the same blood*. *cōnsanguineōs* is used as a noun, connected closely with the noun *frātrēs* by the enclitic *que*; and in the same grammatical construction. *que*, enclitic conj. — *saepenumērō* (*saepe* + *numērō*), adv.; the word might be written thus: *saepē numerō*; *numērō*, abl. of specification. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. *ā* or *ab* usually = *from*; but before the agent after a pass. verb, *ab* = *by*. Synonyms: *dē*

were held in servitude and kept under the sway of the Germans, and learned that their hostages were with Ariovistus and the Sequani—a condition of things which he thought to be very disgraceful to him-	appellātōs,	in	servitūtē	atque	in 13
	having been called,	in	servitute	and	in
	diciōne	vidēbat	Germānōrum	tenērī,	14
	the sway,	he saw,	of the Germans,	to be held,	
	eōrumque	obsidēs	esse	apud	Ariovistum 15
	of them and,	the hostages	to be	with	Ariovistus
	āc	Sēquanōs	intelligēbat;	quod	in 16
	and	the Sequani	he was aware;	which (thing)	in

l. 27, Chap. XIX. — *senātū*, abl. sing. of *senātus*, -ūs, m. (*senex*, an old man); the obj. of the prep. *ā*. Observe that by the phrase *ā senātū* is meant: by the persons comprising the senate.

LINE 13. *appellātōs*, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *ap(d)pellātus*, -a, -um, from *appellō*, l. Observe that this participle is essentially predicative here in informal indirect discourse, and does not differ essentially from the perf. inf. pass. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *servitūtē*, abl. sing. of *servitūs*, -ūtis, f. (*servus*, a slave); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *atque* (*ad + que*), conj. (l. 10, Chap. I). — *in*, note the repetition of the prepositions; repeated, to keep the notions distinct.

LINE 14. *diciōne*, abl. sing. of *diciō*, -ōnis, f. (often written *ditiō*); derived from *dare*; hence *ditiō* = lit. *a giving up*; obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that the phrase *in diciōne* = lit. *in the authority*; but in the English idiom the phrase = *under the authority* or *sway*. — *vidēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *videō*, -ēre, *vīdī*, *vīsum*, 2; its subject-nom. is *Caesar* understood. Synonyms: *videre* = lit. *to see* with the eyes; sometimes, metaphorically = *to perceive* with the understanding, *to consider*; while *intelligere* (*intelligere*) = *to perceive* with the intellect, rarely by the senses. — *Germānōrum*, gen. plur. of *Germānī*, -ōrum, m.; limits *servitūtē* and *diciōne*. See *Germānīs*, l. 19, Chap. I. — *tenērī*, pres. inf. pass. of *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, *tentum*, 2; subject-acc. is *Aeduōs*, l. 11, above.

LINE 15. *eōrumque* (*eōrum + que*). *eōrum*, gen. plur. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. — English poss. case = *their*; limits *obsidēs*. *que*, enclitic conj. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f.; subject-acc. of the intrans. verb *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is the noun *obsidēs*. Observe that *esse* here is not the copula, but a verb of complete predication = *existed* or *lived*. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. Observe that, when the object of this prep. is a person, *apud* = *with*, or *at the house of*, etc. — *Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *apud*.

LINE 16. *ac*, conj.; see *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *Sēquanus*, -a, -um, used as a subst.; connected by the conj. *ac* with the noun *Ariovistum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *intelligēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *intelle(i)gō*, -ere, -lēxi, -lectum, 3; connected by the enclitic conj. *que* with *vidēbat*, and here the same subject-nom., namely *Caesar*, understood. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. of *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; its antecedent is the idea contained in the preceding accusative-clauses; subject-acc. of the inf. *esse*, l. 18, below. Observe that the relative, when referring to an idea, generally takes *id* before it; but sometimes we find *quod* alone, as in the text. Consult A. & G. 200, *e*, and NOTE; B. 129,

17	<i>tantō</i>	<i>imperio</i>	<i>populī</i>	<i>Rōmānī</i>	<i>turpissimum</i>	self and to the republic, in so great an empire as that of the Roman people. Moreover, he saw that it was perilous to the Roman people for the Germans to become accustomed gradually to cross the Rhine, and for a
	<i>so great</i>	<i>a dominion</i>	<i>of the people</i>	<i>Roman</i>	<i>most disgraceful</i>	
18	<i>sibi</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>rei-pūblīcae</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>arbitrābātur.</i>	
	<i>to himself</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>to the republic</i>	<i>to be</i>	<i>he considered.</i>	
19	<i>Paulātim</i>	<i>autem</i>	<i>Germānōs</i>	<i>cōnsuēscere</i>		
	<i>Little by little</i>	<i>but,</i>	<i>the Germans</i>	<i>to be accustomed</i>		
20	<i>Rhēnum</i>	<i>trānsīre</i>	<i>et</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>Galliā</i>	<i>māgnam</i>
	<i>the Rhine</i>	<i>to cross</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>Gaul</i>	<i>a great</i>

REM. 8; G. 614, 2; H. 445, 7. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.; see *in*, I. I, Chap. I.

LINE 17. *tantō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *tantus*, -a, -um; an attributive of the noun *imperio*. — *imperio*, abl. sing. of *imperium*, -iī, n.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that the complete thought may be thus expressed: *in tantō imperio, quantō in imperio populī Rōmānī*. — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; limits *cō* used substantively or *imperio* understood. Synonyms: I. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of *Rōmānus*, -a, -um (*Rōma*); an attributive of the noun *populī*. — *turpissimum*, acc. sing. n. of *turpissimus*, -a, -um; positive degree *turpis*, comp. -ior, superl. -issimus; predicate-adj. after *esse*.

LINE 18. *sibi*, dat. sing. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); dat. of the obj. to which after the adj. *turpissimum*. Consult A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391, I. — *et*, cop. conj. — *rei-pūblīcae*, dat. sing. of *rēs-pūblica, rei-pūblīcae*; connected by the conj. *et* with the pron. *sibi*, and is in the same grammatical construction. Observe that *rēs-pūblica* is a compound noun in which both parts of it are declined. Some treat *rēs* by itself as a noun of the fifth declension; and the latter part of the word as an adj. — *publicus*, -a, -um — in agreement with the proper case of the noun. See A. & G. 72; B. 49, REM. 6; G. 63; H. 125, 126. But only B. and II. treat the noun as a compound. — *esse*, pres. inf. *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*; its subject-acc. is *quod*, used substantively, I. 16, above. — *arbitrābātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the deponent *arbitror*, I. *arbitrābātur* agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. Synonyms: I. 9, Chap. XIX.

LINE 19. *Paulātim*, adv. (*paulum*, a little). Observe that this adv. is formed by changing *o* of the stem to *a*, and adding the adverbial ending -*tim*, which = the English ending -*ly* or -*like*; hence *paulātim* = *a little-like*, or *little by little*. — *autem*, conj., postpositive; usually adds a different notion without contradiction. — *Germānōs*, acc. plur. of the proper noun *Germānī, -ōrum*, m.; subject-acc. of the inf. *cōnsuēscere*. See *Germānī*, I. 19, Chap. I. — *cōnsuēscere*, pres. inf. act. of *cōnsuēscō, -ere, suēvi, -suetum*, 3 (con [cum], intensive + *suēscere*, to accustom one's self); its subject-acc. is *Germānōs*.

LINE 20. *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of the inf. *trānsīre*; strictly, however, *flūmen* is the direct obj., and *Rhēnum* is an appositive. See *Rhēnum*, I. 15, Chap. I. — *trānsīre*, pres. inf. act. of *trānsēō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum* (*trāns* + *īre* = lit. to go across); complementary inf., depending on *cōnsuēscere*. See A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I. 2. — *et*, cop. conj. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *Galliā*, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.;



large number of them to come in- to Gaul; and he thought that men wild and barbar- ous would not restrain them- selves, after seiz- ing Gaul, from migrating into the province, and thence hastening	eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō 21 <i>of them multitude to come, to the people Roman</i>
	periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs 22 <i>dangerous (to be) he saw; nor on themselves men</i>
	ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat, 23 <i>wild and savage about to put the curb did he think,</i>
	quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, 24 <i>but that, when all Gaul they had seized,</i>

obj. of the prep. *in*. See *Gallia*, l. 1, Chap. I. Observe that the phrase *in Galliam* denotes the end of motion after the verb *venīre*, and that the phrase is an adverb-phrase modifying *venīre*. — *māgnam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of the noun *multitudinem*.

LINE 21. *eōrum*, gen. plur. (*is, ea, id*), used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to the Germans; limits the noun *multitudinem*. — *multitudinem*, acc. sing. of *multitūdō*, -inis, f. (*multus*); subject-acc. of the inf. *venīre*. — *venīre*, pres. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4. Observe that the two accusative and infinitive-clauses — *Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire*, and *in Galliam eōrum multitudinem venīre* — are themselves, as noun-clauses, the compound subject-accusatives of the verb *esse*, to be supplied. — *populō*, dat. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; dat. to which after the adj. *periculōsum*. See A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391, I. See *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānō*, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um (*Rōma*); an attributive of the noun *populō*.

LINE 22. *periculōsum*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *periculōsus*, -a, -um (*periculum*); predicate-adj. after *esse*, to be supplied. Observe that adjectives ending in -*osus* denote *fulness*. — *vidēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *videō*, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, 2; agrees with *Caesar* understood. See note on *vidēbat*, l. 14, above. — *neque* (*nē + que*), conjunctive adv.; English *and not*; but *neque . . . neque*, as correlates = *neither . . . nor*. — *sibi*, dat. plur. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); refers to *hominēs*; in the dat. after the fut. inf. *temperātūrōs (esse)* — a verb signifying here *to command*. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346; H. 385, II, 1. — *hominēs*, acc. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; subject-acc. of the fut. inf. *temperātūrōs (esse)*. See *hominēs*, l. 20, Chap. II.

LINE 23. *ferōs*, acc. plur. m. of adj. *ferus*, -a, -um; limits *hominēs*, but is an essential part of the predicate = *men who are wild*. — *āc*, conj. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *barbarōs*, acc. plur. m. of adj. *barbarus*, -a, -um; connected by *āc* with *ferōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. The *barbari*, GK. *βάρβαροι*, were, originally, those not Hellenes. Even the Romans were so called by others and by themselves in contrast with the Greeks. But from the Augustan age, the Romans applied the epithet to all nations except themselves and the Greeks. — *temperātūrōs (esse)*, fut. inf. act. of *temperō*, 1 (*tempus*); its subject-acc. is *hominēs*. Observe that *temperāre* with the acc. usually = *to rule*; with the dat., *to refrain from*. — *existimābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *existimō*, 1; it agrees with *Caesar* understood. Synonyms: l. 9, Chap. XIX.

LINE 24. *quīn* (*quī + nē*), conj.; after a negative it = *that, but that*. In such constructions the English idiom requires the prep. *from* with the pres. participle. — *cum*, temporal conj. — *omnem*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive

25	ut	ante	Cimbri	Teutonique	fēcissent,	in	into Italy, as the
	as	before	the Cimbri	Teutoni	and, had done,	into	Cimbri and Teu-
26	prōvinciam	exirent	atque	inde	in	fore, especially	
	the province	they would go forth	and	thence	into	as only the Rhone	
27	Ītaliā	contenderent,	praesertim	cum		river separated	
	Italy	they would hasten,	especially	since		the Sequani from	
28	Sēquanōs	ā	prōvinciā	nostrā	Rhodanus	our province; ac-	
	the Sequani	from the province	our,	the Rhone		cordingly, he	
29	divideret ;	quibus	rēbus	quam	mātūrrimē	thought that he	
	separated ;	which	things	as much as	the quickest	ought to be pre-	
						pared to meet	
						these contin-	
						gences as speed-	

time of *Galliam*. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; the direct obj. of *occupāvissent*. — *occupāvissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1; it agrees with *Germānī* understood; in the subjunctive after *cum* temporal. See A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2.

LINE 25. *ut*, conj. or adv.; here, an adv., and = *as*. — *ante*, prep. or adv.; here an adv. — *Cimbri*, -ōrum, m.; the Jutlanders, a German people once inhabiting the Cimbric Chersonese, now Jutland. *Cimbri* is the subject-nom. of *fēcissent*. The Cimbri and Teutoni overran Transalpine Gaul. Marius defeated the Teutoni at Aquae Sextiae (Aix), in Narbonnensis B.C. 102; and the Cimbri and remnants of the Teutoni were utterly routed by Marius, near Verona, B.C. 101. — *Teutonique* (*Teutoni* + *que*). *Teutoni*, -ōrum, m. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects *Teutoni* with *Cimbri*; hence both nouns are in the same construction. — *fēcissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; agrees with *Cimbri Teutonique*; in the subjunctive by attraction. See A. & G. 342; B. 245, (b); G. 663; H. 529, II, 1). — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.

LINE 26. *prōvinciam*, acc. of *prōvincia*, -ae; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *exirent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *exeo*, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum; agrees with the pron. *ei*, i.e. *Germānī*, understood; subjunctive of *result* after *quīn*. See *quīn*, l. 27, Chap. III. — *atque* (ad + *que*), cop. conj. (l. 10, Chap. I). — *inde*, adv. (is + *de* = lit. *from that place*). — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc.

LINE 27. *Ītaliā*, acc. sing. of *Ītalia*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that the prep. is required before names of countries, after a verb of motion. Consult A. & G. 258, 2, and NOTE 2; B. 154, REM. 3; G. 337, REM. 1; H. 380, I. — *contenderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *contendō*, -ere, *contendī*, *contentum*, 3; connected by the conj. *atque* with *exirent*, and in the same grammatical construction. See note on *contendant*, l. 19, Chap. I. — *praesertim*, adv. (*prae* + *serere* = *to join before*; hence = *especially*); modifies *fēcērunt*, or something similar understood. — *cum*, conj.

LINE 28. *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. of *Sēquanī*, -ōrum, m.; direct obj. of *divideret*. See l. 25, Chap. I. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *prōvinciā*, abl. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; after the prep. *ā*. — *nostrā*, abl. sing. f. of the poss. adj. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; an attributive of *prōvinciā*. — *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *divideret*. The meaning is that the Rhone only was a very slight barrier against invasion.

LINE 29. *divideret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dividō*, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum, 3; agrees with *Rhodanus*, and is in the subjunctive after *cum* causal. See

ily as possible. Moreover, Ariovistus himself had put on such haughty airs, and had assumed such arrogance that he seemed to be insufferable.	occurrendum <i>it ought to be hastened to meet,</i>	putābat. <i>he thought.</i>	Ipse 30 <i>Himself,</i>
	autem Ariovistus <i>moreover, Ariovistus</i>	tantōs sibi <i>so great to himself</i>	spīritūs, 31 <i>spirits,</i>
	tantam arrogantiam <i>so great arrogance</i>	sūmpserat, ut <i>had assumed, that</i>	ferendus 32 <i>to be borne</i>
	nōn vidērētur. <i>not seemed.</i>		33

A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517. — *quibus*, dat. plur. f. (*quī, quae, quod*), used adjectively; it modifies *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, dat. plur. of *rēs, rei*, f.; dat. after the compound *occurrendum (esse)*. See A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — *quam*, adv. = *as*. — *mātūrrimē*, adv., superl. degree; positive *mātūrē*; comparative *mātūrius*; another form of superl., *mātūrrissimē*. Observe that *quam* is a correlative to *tam*. The text fully written would be: *quibus rēbus tam mātūre quam mātūrrimē sibi occurrendum esse putābat*.

LINE 30. *occurrendum (esse)*, pres. inf. of the second periphrastic conjugation. The gerundive of *occurrō, -ere, curri*, rarely *cucurri, -cursum*, 3 (ob + *currere* = lit. *to run against*) + *esse*; is used impersonally only in the pass. voice; an intrans. verb; the dat. of the agent is understood. Consult A. & G. 146, d; B. 115, III; G. 208, 2; H. 301, 1. — *putābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *putō*, 1. *putābat* agrees with *Caesar* understood. Synonyms: I. 9, Chap. XIX. — *Ipse*, intensive dem. pron., expressed for emphasis. Consult A. & G. 102, e, and NOTE; B. 85; G. 311; H. 452.

LINE 31. *autem*, postpositive conj.; here it = *moreover*. — *Ariovistus, -i*, m.; subject-nom. of *sūmpserat*. As to this person, see note I. 51, Chap. XXXI. — *tantōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *tantus, -a, -um*; an attributive of the noun *spīritūs*. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *sui*; refers to *Ariovistus*; is the indirect obj. after *sūmpserat*. — *spīritūs*, acc. plur. of *spīritus, -ūs*, m. (*spīrāre*, to breathe); a direct obj. of *sūmpserat*.

LINE 32. *tantam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *tantus, -a, -um*; an attributive of the noun *arrogantiam*. — *arrogantiam*, acc. sing. of *arrogantia, -ae*, f. (from participle *ar(d)rogāns* [ad + *rogāre*] = *asking for something* not belonging to one); connected with *spīritūs* by et understood, and also a direct obj. of *sūmpserat*. — *sūmpserat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sumptum*, 3; agrees with its subject-nom. *Ariovistus* expressed. — *ut*, ecclat. conj. — *ferendus (esse)*, fut. inf. of the second periphrastic conjugation; the gerundive form is the same as the fut. pass. participle of *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum* + *esse*; the fut. inf. is complementary, depending on *vidērētur*.

LINE 33. *nōn*, negative adv.; modifies *ferendus (esse)*. — *vidērētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *videor, vidēri, vīsus*, 2. Observe that the pass. *vidēri* = *to be looked on, regarded* in any way; hence = *seem, appear*, like GK. *δοκεῖν*. This verb in this sense, when used personally, takes often the complementary inf.; when used impersonally, it is followed by the inf. with the acc. *vidērētur* is subjunctive of *result* after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 319, 1, and REM.; B. 201, and REM. I, (a); G. 552; H. 500, II.

1	XXXIV.	Quam-ob-rem	placuit	eī,	ut	XXXIV. Wherefore Caesar was determined to
		<i>What for, thing</i>	<i>it pleased</i>	<i>him,</i>	<i>that</i>	
2	ad	Ariovistum	lēgātōs	mitteret,	quī	ab
	<i>to</i>	<i>Ariovistus</i>	<i>legates</i>	<i>he should send,</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>from</i>
3	eō	postulārent,	utī	aliquem	locum	medium
	<i>him</i>	<i>might demand,</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>some</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>middle</i>
4	utrūsq̄ue	colloquiō	dēligeret;		velle	
	<i>of both</i>	<i>for a colloquy</i>	<i>he should select;</i>		<i>to wish</i>	
5	sēsē	dē	rē	pūblicā	et	summīs
	<i>himself</i>	<i>concerning</i>	<i>welfare</i>	<i>public</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>supreme</i>
						<i>and matters of</i>

LINE 1. **Quam-ob-rem**, adv., lit. *on account of which thing*; frequently written *Quam ob rem* = *wherefore, therefore*, i.e. that Caesar might have some pretext for subjugating Gaul. — **placuit**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *placēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2; impers. — **eī**, dat. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron.; *placuit* is a verb signifying *to please*. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346; H. 385, I. — **ut**, telic conj. = lit. *that*.

LINE 2. **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **Ariovistum**, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. The location of Ariovistus at this juncture was on the Rhine, near the modern Strasburg. — **lēgātōs**, acc. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *mitteret*. — **mitteret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *mittō*, 3; subjunctive of *purpose* after *ut*. Observe that *ut . . . mitteret*, as a noun-clause, is the subj. of *placuit*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); subj. of *postulārent*. — **ab**, prep. with the abl.

LINE 3. **eō**, abl. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a pron. of the 3d person. *eō* is the obj. of the prep. *ab*. For *ab eō* after *postulō*, see A. & G. 239, c, NOTE 1; B. 151, REM. 2; G. 339, REM. 1, and NOTE 2; H. 374, NOTE 4. — **postulārent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *postulō*, 1; agrees with *eī* as subject-nom., referring to *lēgātōs*; subjunctive of *purpose* after the rel. *quī*. — **utī**, original form of *ut*. — **aliquem**, acc. sing. m. of indef. pron. *aliquis*, -qua, -quod, adj., but *aliquis*, -quid, subst.; an attributive of *locum*. — **locum**, acc. sing. of *locus*, m.; direct obj. of *dēligeret*; but see *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. — **medium**, acc. sing. m. of adj. *medius*, -a, -um; it, too, is an attributive of *locum*; but see note on *mediō*, l. 5, Chap. XXIV.

LINE 4. **utrūsq̄ue**, gen. sing. of the pron. *uterque, utraque, utrumque*; partitive gen. after *medium*. A. & G. 216, 3; B. 134, REM. 1; G. 369; H. 397, 3. Observe that *uterque* = *one of two or both*. — **col(n)loquiō**, dat. of *purpose* of *col(n)loquum*, -ī, n. A. & G. 233, b; B. 147, REM. 1; G. 356, NOTE 1; H. 390, II. — **dēligeret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dēligo*, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, 3; subjunctive of *purpose* after *utī*. — **velle**, pres. inf. act. of *volō*, *voluī*, irr. The reader will note that the form of discourse in this sentence is indirect.

LINE 5. **sēsē**, reduplicated for *sē*, acc. sing. of *suī*; and subject-acc. of inf. *velle*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: l. 27, Chap. XIX. — **rē**, abl. f. (*rēs, reī*); obj. of the prep. *dē*. — **pūblicā**, abl. sing. f. of adj. *pūblicus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *rē*. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects *rē* and *rēbus*. — **summīs**, abl. plur. f. of *summus*, -a, -um (see *summō*, l. 20, Chap. XVI); *summīs* modifies *rēbus*.

the greatest im- portance to both. To these ambas- sadors Ariovis- tus replied, say- ing that if he had needed any- thing of Caesar, he would have gone to him; if Caesar needed anything of him, he ought to come to him.	utriusque <i>to both,</i>	rēbus <i>affairs</i>	cum <i>with</i>	eō <i>him</i>	agere. <i>to treat.</i>	Eī <i>To this</i>	6	
	lĕgātīōnī <i>legation</i>	Ariovistus <i>Ariovistus</i>	respondit: <i>responded:</i>	Sī <i>If</i>	quid <i>anything</i>		7	
	ipsī <i>to himself</i>	ā <i>from</i>	Caesare <i>Caesar</i>	opus <i>need</i>	esset, <i>was,</i>	sēsē <i>himself</i>	ad <i>to</i>	8
	eum <i>him</i>	ventūrum <i>to have been about to come;</i>	fuisse; <i>if</i>	sī <i>anything</i>	quid <i>he</i>	ille <i>he</i>	9	
	sē <i>from himself</i>	velit, <i>wishes,</i>	illum <i>him</i>	ad <i>to</i>	sē <i>himself</i>	venīre <i>to come,</i>	10	

LINE 6. *utriusque* (see l. 4, above); here an objective gen., limiting *rēbus*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; connected by *et* with *rē*, and in the same construction. — *cum*, prep. with abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Ariovistus; obj. of prep. *cum*. — *agere*, pres. inf. act. of *agō*, *-ere, ēgī, actum*, 3; complementary of *velle*, l. 4, above. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. The *oratio recta* of lines 4-6: *Vult Caesar dē rē publicā et summis utriusque rēbus ēcum agere*. — *Eī*, dat. of the dem. pron. *is*; modifies *lĕgātīōnī*.

LINE 7. *lĕgātīōnī*, dat. of the indirect obj. of *lĕgātīō*, *-ōnis*, f. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m., subject-nom. of *respondit*. — *respondit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondēō*, 2. — *Sī*, conditional conj. — *quid*, nom. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quis, quae, quid*; used as a subst., and subject-nom. of *esset*; as an adj. it is declined *quī, quae, quod*; the most common combinations of indefinites are *aliquis, siquis*, and *num quis*.

LINE 8. *ipsī*, dat. sing. of *ipse*, *-sa, -sum*; used here as an indirect reflexive pron., referring to Ariovistus. A. & G. 195, *k*, and 196, 2; B. 85, REM. 2; G. 520, 521; H. 452, 5. *ipsī* is dat. of possessor after *esset*. A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *Caesare*, abl. of *Caesar*, *-aris*, m.; obj. of the prep. *ā*. — *opus*, indecl. neuter noun; predicate after *esset*. A. & G. 243, *e*, REM.; B. 167, 2, REM. 1; G. 406; H. 414, NOTE 4, 1). — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum, esse, fuī*; agrees with its subject-nom. *quid*; subjunctive, because in the condition after *sī* — *contrary to fact*. — *sēsē*, reduplicate reflexive pron. for *sē*, referring to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *ventūrum fuisse*. — *ad*, prep. with acc.

LINE 9. *eum*, acc. sing. (*is, ea, id*) as a pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *ventūrum fuisse*, perf. inf. of the first periphrastic conjugation, from *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum*, 4. As to this form of the inf. in the apodosis of indirect discourse, see A. & G. 337, *b*, 2; B. 244, 4, (3); G. 656, 2; H. 527, III. — *sī*, see *sī*, l. 7, above. — *quid*, see *quid*, l. 7, above; direct obj. of *velit*. — *ille*, dem. pron., refers to Caesar; expressed for emphasis; subj. of *velit*.

LINE 10. *sē*, acc. sing. of pron. *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; an acc. of *secondary object* after *velit*, like a verb of *asking*. — *velit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *volō, velle, voluī*; agrees with its subject-nom. *ille* — subjunctive of condition after *sī*. — *illum*, acc. sing. of pron. *ille*; refers to Caesar; subject-acc. of *venīre*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *sē*, acc. of *suī, sibi*; refers to Ariovistus; the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *venīre*, pres. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4.

11	oportēre.	Praetereā	sē	neque	sine	Besides, he nei-
	<i>to be (it is) necessary.</i>	<i>Moreover,</i>	<i>himself</i>	<i>neither</i>	<i>without</i>	ther dared to go
12	exercitū	in	eās	partēs	Galliae	venīre
	<i>an army</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>those</i>	<i>parts</i>	<i>of Gaul</i>	<i>to come,</i>
13	audēre,	quās	Caesar	possidēret,	neque	into those parts
	<i>to dare,</i>	<i>which</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>possessed,</i>	<i>nor</i>	of Gaul, which
14	exercitum	sine	māgnō	commeātū	atque	Caesar occu-
	<i>an army</i>	<i>without</i>	<i>great (money)</i>	<i>supply</i>	<i>and</i>	pied, without an
15	mōlimentō	in	ūnum	locum	contrahere	army, nor could
	<i>difficulty</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>one</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>to bring together</i>	he collect his
16	posse.	Sibi	autem	mīrum		army into one
	<i>(himself) to be able.</i>	<i>To himself</i>	<i>but,</i>	<i>wonderful</i>		place without
						great expense
						and much trouble.
						Moreover, it
						seemed strange

LINE 11. **oportēre**, pres. inf. of impersonal verb *oportet*, -uit; inf., because in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Observe that the clause *illum ad sē venīre* is the real subj. of *oportēre*. — **Praetereā** (praeter + eā), adv. — **sē**, acc. sing. of reflexive pron. *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *audēre*. — **neque** (nē + que, lit. and not); but *neque . . . neque* = *neither . . . nor*. — **sine**, prep. with the abl.

LINE 12. **exercitū**, abl. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; obj. of prep. *sine*. Synonyms, see l. 31, Chap. III. — **in**, prep. with acc. or abl. (*in*, l. 1, Chap. I); here *in* has the acc. — **eās**, acc. plur. f. (*is, ea, id*); an attributive of *partēs*. — **partēs**, acc. plur. of *pars*, -is, f. (*partēs*, l. 1, Chap. I); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **Galliae**, gen. sing. f.; limits *partēs*. See *Galliae*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **venīre**, pres. inf. act. of *venīō*, 4; complementary; depends on *audēre*.

LINE 13. **audēre**, pres. inf. of *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus*, n. — pass. or semi-deponent; inf., because in indirect discourse. — **quās**, acc. plur. f. of rel. *quī*; refers to *partēs*; direct obj. of *possidēret*. — **Caesar**, -aris, m., subject-nom. — **possidēret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possidēō*, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 2 (potis + sedēre = lit. able to sit tight); hence *possidēre* = *to have and to hold*; its subj. is *Caesar*; subjunctive mode, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — **neque**, see *neque*, l. 11, above.

LINE 14. **exercitum**, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *contrahere*, l. 15, below. — **sine**, prep. with the abl. — **māgnō**, abl. sing. of adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; it modifies *commeātū*. — **commeātū**, abl. sing. of *commeātus*, -ūs, m.; obj. of the prep. *sine*. — **atque**, conj. (see l. 10, Chap. I).

LINE 15. **mōlimentō**, abl. sing. of *mōlimentum*, -ī, n.; connected by *atque* with *commeātū*, and in the same construction. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = *into*. See l. 1, Chap. I. — **ūnum**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *ūnus*. See l. 2, Chap. I; it modifies *locum*. — **locum**, acc. sing. of *locus*, -ī, m. See l. 10, Chap. II; obj. of prep. *in*. — **contrahere**, pres. inf. act. of *contraho*, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, 3; complementary inf., depending on *posse*.

LINE 16. **posse**, pres. inf. of *possum*, *potuī*; *posse* for *possum* in direct discourse. Observe that *posse* is connected by *neque* with *audēre*, l. 13, above, and is in the same construction. — **Sibi**, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī* — indirect obj. after *vidērī*. — **autem**, postpositive conj. See l. 22, Chap. II. — **mīrum**, acc. n. of adj. *mīrus*, -a, -um, predicate after *vidērī*.

to him what business either Caesar had, or the Roman people generally had in his part of Gaul, that he had conquered in war.	vidērī, to seem (it seems), what,	quid in suā Galliā, quam 17 in his own Gaul, which	
	bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut 18 by war he had vanquished, either to Caesar or		
	omninō populō Rōmānō negōtīi esset. 19 at all to the people Roman, of business (there) was.		

XXXV. This reply having been reported to Caesar, he sent ambassadors a second time to Ario-

XXXV. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem 1 These replies to Caesar			
relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar 2 having been reported, again to him Caesar			

LINE 17. *vidērī*, pres. inf. pass. *videor*, perf. *vīsus*, 3. The inf. is here used impersonally; really, however, the following indirect question is the subj. — *quid*, nom. sing. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; subject of *esset*, l. 19, below; followed by partitive gen. *negōtīi*, l. 19, below. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. of poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; an attributive of *Galliā*. — *Galliā*, abl. of *Gallia, -ae, f.*; abl. after prep. *in*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*; direct obj. of *vīcisset*.

LINE 18. *bellō*, abl. sing. of *bellum, -i, n.* — *means*. — *vīcisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Ariovistus*, as subject-nom.; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *drātiō obliqua*. — *aut*, alternative conj. See l. 19, Chap. I. — *Caesari*, dat. of *Caesar, -aris, m.*; possessor with *esset*. A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — *aut*, see *aut*, immediately preceding.

LINE 19. *omninō* (*omnis*), adv. — *populō*, dat. sing. of *populus, -i, m.*; connected by *aut* with *Caesari*, and in the same construction. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānō*, dat. sing. m. of adj. *Rōmānus, -a, -um*; an attributive of *populō*. — *negōtīi* (*nec + otium*) = lit. *no leisure*; hence = *business*; gen. sing. of *negōtium, -iī, n.*; partitive gen. after the indef. pron. *quid*, l. 17, above. A. & G. 216, 3; B. 134; G. 369; H. 397, 3. Observe that the partitive gen. is thus freq. separated from the word on which it depends. Observe that nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* freq. form the gen. sing. with one *i*, i.e. *negōtīi* instead of *negōtīi*. — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*; it agrees with a pron. as its subject-nom., referring to *Ariovistus*; subjunctive mode, because the question is *indirect*. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 7–19: *Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, egō ad eum vēnissem*; *sī quid mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet*. *Praeterea egō neque sine exercitū in eas partes Galliae venire audeō, quas Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum*. *Mihi autem mirum vidētur, quid in mēā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesari aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit*.

LINE 1. *His*, abl. plur. n. (*hic, haec, hoc*); an attributive of *respōnsīs*. — *respōnsīs*, abl. plur. of *respōnsum, -i, n.*; abl. absolute with the participle *relātīs*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar, -aris, m.*; obj. of prep. *ad*. A. & G. 152, a; B. 120, 1; G. 416, and 1; H. 433.

LINE 2. *relātīs*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *relātus, -a, -um* of the verb *referō, ferre, tulī, -lātum*; abl. absolute (l. 17, Chap. XXIX). — *iterum*, adv.

3	<i>lĕgātōs</i>	<i>cum</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>mandātīs</i>	<i>mittit:</i>	<i>Quoniam</i>	vistus with this message: Inas-
	<i>legates</i>	<i>with</i>	<i>these</i>	<i>mandates</i>	<i>sends:</i>	<i>Whereas</i>	much as he,
4	<i>tantō</i>	<i>suō</i>	<i>populīque</i>	<i>Rōmānī</i>	<i>beneficiō</i>		though treated
	<i>with so great</i>	<i>his own</i>	<i>people's and,</i>	<i>Roman,</i>	<i>kindness</i>		with so much
5	<i>affectus,</i>	<i>cum</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>cōsulātū</i>	<i>suō</i>	<i>rēx</i>	consideration by
	<i>having been treated,</i>	<i>since</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>consulship</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>king</i>	Caesar and the
6	<i>atque</i>	<i>amicus</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>senātū</i>	<i>appellātus</i>	<i>esset,</i>	Roman people
	<i>and</i>	<i>friend</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>the senate</i>	<i>he called had been,</i>		during his consulship as to
7	<i>hanc</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>populōque</i>	<i>Rōmānō</i>	<i>grātiam</i>		to have been styl-
	<i>this, to himself,</i>	<i>to the people and,</i>	<i>Roman,</i>	<i>return</i>			ed king and
							friend by the
							senate, shows
							such gratitude
							to him and the
							Roman people

(GK. *ἔτερον*) = a second time; whereas *rŭrsum* or *rŭrsus* (*revorsus*) = again. *iterum* qualifies *mittit*. — *ad*, see *ad*, preceding line. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe the emphatic position of the phrase *ad eum* — before the subject. — *Caesar*, -*aris*, m.; subject-nom. of *mittit*.

LINE 3. *lĕgātōs*, acc. plur. of *lĕgātus*, -*i*, m.; direct obj. of *mittit*. — *cum*, prep. with abl. — *hīs*, see note on *his*, l. 1, above. — *mandātīs*, abl. plur. of *mandātum*, -*i*, n. (manus + dare through *mandāre*, to give into one's hands); hence, to order. *mandātīs* is the obj. of the prep. *cum*. A. & G. 152, b; B. 120, 2; G. 417; H. 434. — *mittit*, 3d pers. sing. of *mittere*, 3; historical pres.; it agrees with *Caesar* expressed. Observe that the remainder of this chapter is in *ōrātiō obliqua*. *Caesar's* missive was read, probably, by one of the envoys to Ariovistus. — *Quoniam* (*quom* [*quum*] = cum + iam), conj. = since.

LINE 4. *tantō*, abl. sing. n. of *tantus*, adj.; an attributive of *beneficiō* understood. — *suō*, abl. sing. n. of poss. pron. *suus*; an attributive also of *beneficiō*. — *populīque* (*populi* + *que*). *populi*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -*i*, m.; as gen. it limits *beneficiō*. *que*, enclitic conj., connects *beneficiō* understood with *beneficiō* expressed. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. of adj. *Rōmānus*; limits *populi*. — *beneficiō*, abl. sing. of *beneficium*, -*i*, n. (bene + *facere*); hence = well-doing; abl. of cause after *affectus*. A. & G. 245; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1.

LINE 5. *af(d)ectus*, perf. pass. participle of *afficiō*, -*ere*, *fēcī*, *fectum*, 3. — *cum*, conj., causal. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl. (see *in*, l. 1, Chap. I). — *cōsulātū*, abl. sing. of *consulatus*, -*ūs*, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. *Caesar's* consulship, 59 B.C. — *suō*, abl. sing. m. of the poss. *sum*; it modifies *cōsulātū*; refers to *Caesar*. — *rēx*, *rēgis*, nom. sing. m.; predicate-nom.

LINE 6. *atque*, conj. (l. 10, Chap. I). — *amicus*, -*i*, m. (*amāre*); also predicate-nom. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *senātū*, abl. sing. of *senātus*, -*ūs*, m. (*senex*, old); vol. agent after the prep. *ā*. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *ap(d)ellātus* *esset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *appellō*, 1; subjunctive after *cum* causal. A. & G. 326; B. 223; G. 586; H. 517.

LINE 7. *hanc*, acc. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *grātiam*. — *sibi*, dat. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; indirect obj.; refers to *Caesar*. — *populōque* (*populō* + *que*). *populō*, dat. sing. of *populus*, -*i*, m.; connected by the enclitic *que*



that, on being invited to come to a conference he feels reluctant, and does not think that he ought either to speak or in- quire about mat- ters of common interest, Caesar's demands are these: First, he must not lead	referret, he was making,	ut that,	in to	colloquium a conference	venire 8 to come
	invitātus having been invited		gravārētur he hesitates	neque nor	dē 9 concerning
	commūnī the common	rē interest (it)	dīcendum to be spoken	sibi by himself	et 10 and
	cōgnōscendum to be examined	putāret, did he think,	haec these things	esse, to be (are)	quae 11 which
	ab from	eō him	postulāret: he should demand:	prīmum, first,	nē that not,
				quam 12 any	

with *sibi*, and in the same construction. — **Rōmānō**, dat. sing. of adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populō*. — **grātiam**, acc. sing. of *grātia*, -ae, f.; direct object. (Observe: *grātiam referre* = to show thanks by act; whereas *grātiās agere* = to return thanks by speech; and *grātiam* or *grātiās habere* = to feel grateful.)

LINE 8. **referret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *referō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; subjunctive after *quoniam*, l. 3, above, in indirect discourse. In direct discourse *quoniam* takes the ind., unless the reason is given on another's authority. A. & G. 321; B. 198, (a), (b); G. 540, 541; II. 516, I and II. — **ut**, conj. = *that*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. (see *in*, l. 1, Chap. I). — **col(n)loquium**, acc. sing. of *col(n)loquium*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **venire**, pres. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4; complementary after the participle *invitātus*.

LINE 9. **invitātus**, perf. pass. participle of *invitō*, 1; it agrees with *Ariovistus* understood. — **gravārētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of deponent *gravor*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; subjunctive of *result* after *ut*, referring to *haec* = *tālem*. A. & G. 332, f; B. 201, REM. 1, (a); G. 557; H. 500, II. — **neque** (*nē* + *que*); hence = *and not*. — **dē**, prep. with the abl.

LINE 10. **commūnī**, abl. sing. f. of adj. *commūnis*, -e; an *ī*-stem; abl., as an adj., ends in -ī, but the neuter, as a subst., ends in -e. *commūnī* is an attributive of *rē*. — **rē**, abl. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — **dīcendum** (*esse*), pres. inf. of the second periphrastic conjugation, used impersonally; the gerundive is in form the fut. pass. participle of *dīcō*, 3. — **sibi**, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; apparent agent after the gerundives. A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 355; II. 388. Observe that *sibi* here refers to *Ariovistus*, while in l. 7, above, it refers to *Caesar*, — ambiguity, which would be avoided by reading *ipsī*, dat., in l. 7, above. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects the gerundives.

LINE 11. **cōgnōscendum** (*esse*), same construction as *dīcendum* (*esse*), preceding line; but the gerundive form is from *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, 3. — **putāret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *putō*, 1; connected by *neque* with *gravārētur*, and in subjunctive for same reason. — **haec**, acc. plur. n. of dem. pron. *hic*; *haec* is predicate-acc. after *esse*. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum*, perf. *fuī*; its subject-acc. is the relative-clause *quae* . . . *postulāret*. Observe that this infinitive-clause in direct discourse becomes *haec sunt*, which is the principal clause of the sentence. — **quae**, acc. plur. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, used substantively = *what things*; direct obj. of *postulāret*.

LINE 12. **ab**, prep. with the abl. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ab*. — **postulāret**, 3d pers.

13	multitudinem	hominum	amplius	trāns	further any large	
	<i>multitude</i>	<i>of men</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>across</i>	number of people	
14	Rhēnum	in	Galliam	trādūceret;	deinde	Rhine; second,
	<i>the Rhine</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>Gaul</i>	<i>he should lead;</i>	<i>next,</i>	he must return
15	obsidēs,	quōs	habēret	ab	Aeduīs,	the hostages
	<i>the hostages,</i>	<i>whom</i>	<i>he held</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>the Aedui,</i>	that he held
						from the Aedui,
						and must give
						permission to
16	redderet	Sēquanisque	permitteret,			the Sequani to
	<i>he should return,</i>	<i>to the Sequani and,</i>	<i>he should permit,</i>			restore to the Aedui the hostages

sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *postulō*, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; in the subjunctive, because an *indirect question*. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. Observe that the sequence of tenses is, as if *mittit*, l. 3, above, were *misit*, i.e. *mittit* is an historical present. The *orātiō rēcta* of lines 3-12: Quoniam tantō *meō* populique Rōmāni beneficiō af(d)fectus, cum in cōsulatū *meō* rēx atque amicus ā senātū ap(d)pellātus *sīs*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiā referis, ut in col(n)loquium venīre invitātus *gravēris* neque dē commūnī rē dicendum *tibi* et cōgnōscendum *putēs*, haec *sunt*, quae *abs tē postulō*: — *prīmum*, adv., introduces the first in a series, followed by *deinde*, l. 14, below. *prīmō* usually denotes first in a contrast; but the Latin adj. *prīmus* is freq. used for the English adv. — *nē*, conj. = *that not*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the indef. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, used as an adj., and modifies *multitudinem*.

LINE 13. *multitudinem*, acc. sing. of *multitūdō*, -inis, f.; direct obj. of *trādūceret*. — *hominum*, gen. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; limits *multitudinem*. — *amplius*, adv., comparative degree; positive *ample*, *ampliter*; superl. *amplissimē*. — *trāns*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 14. *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *trāns*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. = *into*. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *trādūceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *trādūcō*, 3; subjunctive for the imperative; or *nē* with the perf. subjunctive *trādūxeris* for the imperative, in direct discourse. A. & G. 339, and NOTE 2; B. 245, 2; G. 652; H. 523, III. — *deinde* (dē + inde = *from thence*), adv.; here it introduces the second of the series, and = *then* or *next*.

LINE 15. *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f.; direct obj. of *redderet*. — *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of rel. *quī*; refers to *obsidēs*, but is the direct obj. of *habēret*. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *habēō*, 2; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *Aeduīs*, abl. plur. of *Aedui*, -ōrum; obj. of the prep. *ab* (l. 20, Chap. III). Another form is *Haedui* (GK. Ἐδουεῖς or Ἀλδουοί).

LINE 16. *redderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *reddō*, -ere, *reddidī*, *redditum*, 3 (re + dare = *to give back*); subjunctive after *ut*, to be supplied. *ut* is freq. omitted, in indirect discourse, after verbs of *commanding*, *demanding*, etc. A. & G. 331, f, REM.; B. 200, REM. 3; G. 546, REM. 2; H. 499, 2. But observe that this construction is for the imperative in direct discourse, and see grammatical references to *trādūceret*, l. 14, above. — *Sēquanisque* (*Sēquanis* + *que*). *Sēquanis*, dat. plur. of *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.; indirect obj. after *permitteret* (l. 25, Chap. I).

that they held; he must not wrongfully har- ass the Aedui, nor bring war upon them or their allies. If Ariovistus should thus act, he would secure	ut, that (those) whom they held, with permission ēius reddere illis his, to return to them it should be allowed; neither Aeduōs iniuriā the Aedui by outrage should he provoke, nor upon them sociisque eōrum allies and, of them bellum inferret. war should he bring. Si id 20 If this	voluntāte 17 licēret; nēve 18 hīs 19
---	---	---

que, enclitic conj. — *permitteret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *permittere*, 3 (per + mittere); its subject-nom. is a personal pron., referring to Ariovistus; connected by *que* with *redderet*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason.

LINE 17. *ut*, conj. (original form *utī*) = *that*. — *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *qui*. *quōs* refers to *eōs* understood; *eōs* is the direct obj. of *reddere*, and *quōs* is the direct obj. of *habērent*. — *illis*, nom. plur. of dem. pron. *ille*, -*la*, -*lud*; refers to *Séquanis*; is expressed for emphasis; used here as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-nom. of *habērent*. — *habērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *habēre*, 2; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *oratiō obliqua*. — *voluntāte*, abl. sing. of *voluntās*, -*dtis*, f.; abl. of *in accordance with*. A. & G. 253, NOTE; B. 162; G. 397; H. 416. Synonyms: l. 19, Chap. VII.

LINE 18. *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron.; refers to Ariovistus. If *suā* had been used, it would have been ambiguous; yet not more so than *sibi*, l. 7, above. The context often determines the reference. — *reddere*, pres. inf. act. of *reddō*, 3 (l. 16, above); complementary inf.; depends on *licēret*. — *illis*, dat. plur. of pron. *ille*, -*la*, -*lud*, used for pron. emphatic of 3d pers.; dat. of the indirect obj. after *licēret*. The personal subj. of the action is often thus expressed with this verb; but it is oftener expressed by subject-acc. and inf. A. & G. 272, a. I, 1; B. 181, REM. 7, and 194, REM. 2, (e); G. 535, 3; H. 536, 2, 3). — *licēret*, 3d pers. sing. of impersonal verb *licet*, -*ere*, *licuit* and *licitum est*, 2; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Observe that this purpose-clause is, grammatically, the direct obj. of *permitteret*. — *nēve* (*nē* + *ve*) = strictly lit. *or not*; in use = *and not, nor*; when repeated = *neither . . . nor*.

LINE 19. *Aeduōs*, acc. plur. of *Aedui*, -*orum*, m.; direct obj. (l. 20, Chap. III). — *iniuriā* (*in* + *iūs*), adv.; strictly an abl. of manner of the noun *iniuria*, -*ae*, f. A. & G. 248, REM.; B. 168, REM. 2; G. 399, NOTE 1; H. 419, III, NOTE 2. — *lacēsseret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *lacēssō*, -*ere*, -*cēssivī*, -*cēssitum*, 3; its subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Ariovistus; subjunctive of negative purpose after *nēve*. Observe that *nēve* is used here as a continuative of *nē*, l. 12, above. We regard these clauses as noun-clauses explanatory of *haec*, l. 11, above. — *nēve*, see *nēve*, preceding line. — *hīs*, dat. plur. of dem. pron. *hic*, used as a personal pron.; dat. after *in* in the compound *inferret*; *hīs* refers to *Aeduōs*.

LINE 20. *sociisque* (*socii* + *que*). *socii* is dat. plur. of *socius*, -*i*, m.; connected with *hīs* by the enclitic *que*, and dat. for same reason. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron.; it limits *socii*. — *bellum*, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -*i*, n.; direct object of *inferret* (see *bellum*, l. 15, Chap. I). — *inferret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *inferō*, -*ferre*, *intulī*, *il(n)lātum*, irr.; subjunctive of negative purpose after *nēve*. The *oratiō rēcta* of lines 12–20: *primum*,

21	ita	fēcisset,	sibi	populōque	Rōmānō	the perpetual friendship of Caesar and the Roman people;
	thus	he should do,	to himself	to the people and,	Roman	but if Caesar should not obtain his request,
22	perpetuam	grātiām	atque	amicitiām	cum	he, since in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso,
	perpetual	favor	and	friendship	with	
23	eō	futūrām;	sī	nōn	impetrāret,	
	him (to be)	about to be;	if	not	he should obtain (his request),	
24	sēsē,	quoniam	M. Messālā,	M. Pīsōne		
	himself,	since	Marcus Messala,	Marcus Piso		

nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūxeris; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēs ab Aeduis, redde Sēquanisque permitte, ut, quōs hī habent, voluntātē tuā, reddere his liceat; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā lacēsse, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum infer. Observe that instead of *nē . . . trādūxeris, nōlī . . . trādūcere* might be used. — *Sī*, conditional conj. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*, used substantively; direct obj. of *fēcisset*; the reference is to what Caesar requires of Ariovistus, as indicated by the clauses following *postulāret*, l. 12, above.

LINE 21. *ita*, adv., referring to Caesar's requirements. — *fēcisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; in the condition after *sī*, for the fut. perf. ind. in direct discourse. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of possessor after *futūrum (esse)*; refers to Caesar. — *populōque* (*populō + que*). *populō*, dat. sing., connected by *que* with *sibi*, and in the same construction. See explanation, l. 7, above. — *Rōmānō*, see note, l. 7, above.

LINE 22. *perpetuam*, acc. sing. f. of adj. *perpetuus*, -a, -um (per + petere = lit. to go through); hence the adj. = *continuing throughout*; an attributive of *grātiām*. — *grātiām*, acc. sing. of *grātia*, -ae, f.; subject-acc. of *futūrām (esse)*. — *atque* (ad + que), conj. (l. 10, Chap. I). — *amicitiām*, acc. sing. of *amicitia*, -ae, f. (*amicus*, through *amāre*); connected with *grātiām* by the conj. *atque*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *cum*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 23. *eō*, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *cum*; refers to Ariovistus. — *futūrām (esse)*, fut. inf. of *sum, esse, fui*. Observe that the participial part of this inf. conforms in gender with its subject-acc.; that *esse*, as in the text, is freq. omitted. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *nōn* (*nē + ūnum*); modifies *impetrāret*. — *impetrāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *impetrō*, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to Caesar; subjunctive in the condition after *sī*.

LINE 24. *sēsē*, reduplicated acc. plur. pron. for *sē*, acc. of *suī*; subject-acc. of *neglēctūrum (esse)*, l. 30, below; it refers to Caesar. But note that, as the sentence is long, the subject-acc. is repeated in *sē*, l. 29, below. — *quoniam*, conj.; see l. 3, above. — *M. Messālā*; *M.*, abbreviation for *Marcō*, abl. of *Marcus*, -ī, m., *praenomen*. The full name is *Marcus Valerius Messālā*; *Valerius* is the name of the gens; *Messālā* is the *cognomen*; he was consul 61 B.C. *Messālā* is abl. of *Messālā*, -ae, m.; abl. absolute with *consulibus*. — *M.* = *Marcō*. — *Pīsōne*, abl. of *Pisō*, -ōnis, m. The full name is *Marcus Papius Pisō Calpurniānus*. *Pisōne* is also abl. absolute with *consulibus*. See notes, lines 2 and 3, Chap. II. Observe the asyndeton between the names. A. & G. 208, b; B. 123, REM. 6; G. 474, NOTE; H. 554, 6.

the senate had decreed that he who had the province of Gaul, in so far as he could do so in consonance with the interests of the republic, should defend the Aedui and the other friends of the Roman	cōnsulibus (being) the consuls,	senātus the senate	cēnsuisset, had decreed	utī, 25 that,
	quicumque whoever	Galliam Gaul	prōvinciam as a province	obtinēret, 26 should obtain,
	quod so far	commodō as with advantage	rei-pūblīcae to the republic (it)	facere 27 to do
	posset, he was able,	Aeduōs the Aedui	cēterōsque the other and,	amicōs friends of the people
			populī 28	

LINE 25. **cōnsulibus**, abl. plur. of *cōsul*, -ulī, m.; abl. absolute; plur., because two nouns are referred to. The consuls were two magistrates, supposed to be of equal authority, elected annually by the Roman people. Messala and Piso were consuls 61 B.C. — **senātus** (*senex*, old man), -ūs, m.; subject-nom. of *cēnsuisset*. As to the origin and powers of the Roman senate, see Smith's *Smaller History of Rome*, pages 12 and 119. — **cēnsuisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *cēnsēō*, -īre, -nī, -sum, 2; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Observe that *quoniam* would, in the *ōrātiō recta*, take the ind., unless the reason were given on another's authority. — **utī**, the original form of the more common *ut* = *that*.

LINE 26. **quicumque** (*quī* + *cumque*), indef. rel. pron.; declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quod* + *cumque*; the suffix = the English *ever*. *quicumque* is subject-nom. of *obtinēret*. — **Galliam**, acc. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *obtinēret*. — **prōvinciam**, acc. sing. of *prōvincia*, -ae, f.; in apposition with *Galliam*. A. & G. 184; B. 127; G. 321; H. 363. — **obtinēret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *obtinēō*, 2; subjunctive by attraction — an integral part of the sentence. Observe that *quicumque* = *is quī*; that *is* is subject-nom. of *dēfenderet*, l. 29, below, and *quī* is the subj. of *obtinēret*; thus it is seen that the clause *quī Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret* is a subordinate clause, and, of course, in *ōrātiō obliqua* takes the subjunctive.

LINE 27. **quod**, an adverbial acc. n. of the rel. *quī*. A. & G. 240, a; B. 123, 5, REM. 21; G. 334, REM. 1; H. 378, 2. The older grammars teach that *propter* or *ad* is understood before *quod*. Observe that *quod* in restrictive clauses = *quantum*. — **commodō**, abl. of *commodum*, -ī, n.; abl. of manner, being modified by the gen. *rei-pūblīcae*; perhaps better, as an abl. of *in accordance with*. — **rei-pūblīcae**, gen. sing. of the compound noun *res-pūblica*, *rei-pūblīcae*, objective gen.; limits *commodō*. — **facere**, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, 3; complementary; supply *id*, explained by the following clause, as direct object.

LINE 28. **posset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*; subjunctive after *quod* in a restrictive clause. A. & G. 320, d; B. 234, REM. 2; G. 627, REM. 1; H. 503, I, NOTE 1. — **Aeduōs**, acc. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; direct obj. of *dēfenderet*. — **cēterōsque** (*cēterōs* + *que*). *cēterōs* is acc. plur. of adj. *cē(a)terus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *amicōs*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the nouns. Synonyms: l. 6, Chap. XXXII. — **amicōs**, acc. plur. of *amicus*, -ī, m.; sometimes an adj.; connected by *que* with *Aeduōs*, and in the same construction. — **populī**, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; limits *amicōs*. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI.

29	Rōmānī	dēfenderet,	sē	Aeduōrum	iniūriās	people — he, I say, would not overlook the wrongs of the Aedui.
	Roman	he should defend,	himself	the Aedui's	wrongs	
30	nōn	neglēctūrum.				
	not (to be)	about to neglect.				
1	XXXVI.	Ad	haec	Ariovistus		XXXVI. To this message Ariovistus replied:
		To	these (things)	Ariovistus		
2	respondit:	Iūs	esse	belli,	ut,	It is the right of war for victors
	responded:	The right	to be (it was)	of war,	that	
3	quī	vīcissent,	eīs,	quōs	vīcissent,	to govern the vanquished as
	(they) who had conquered,	them	whom they had conquered,			

LINE 29. *Rōmānī* (*Rōma*), adj.; limits *populī*. — *dēfenderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dēfendō*, -ere, -endī, -ēsum, 3; its subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive of purpose after *utī*, l. 25, above. — *sē*, repeats *sēsē*, l. 24, above, because of the length of the sentence; *sē* here is merely explanatory of *sēsē*, and in the same construction; viz. subject-acc. of *neglēctūrum* (*esse*). — *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; objective gen.; limits *iniūriās*. — *iniūriās*, acc. plur. of *iniūria*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *neglēctūrum* (*esse*).

LINE 30. *nōn* (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*), adv.; modifies *neglēctūrum* (*esse*). — *neglēctūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *neglegō*, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, 3; sometimes written *negligō* (*nec* + *legere* = lit. *not to pick up*, i.e. *not to heed, neglect*). Observe how the strict periodicity of the sentence is preserved by repeating the pronouns *sēsē*, *sē*; and thus inserting the subordinate clauses within the principal clause. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 20-30: *Si hōc ita fēceris, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amicitia lēcum erit; sī nōn impetrābō, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōnē cōsulibus senātus cēnsuit, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtineat, quod commodō reipublicae facere possit, Aeduōs cēterōsque amicos populī Rōmānī dēfendat, egō Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam.*

LINE 1. *Ad*, prep. with the acc. — *haec*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*; used substantively; obj. of the prep. *ad*. The *haec* = Caesar's *mandata*, preceding chapter. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *respondit*. See l. 51, Chap. XXXI.

LINE 2. *respondit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondē*, -ere, -dī, -spōnsum, 3; its subject-nom. is *Ariovistus*. — *Iūs*, acc. sing. of *iūs*, *iūris*, n.; predicate-acc. after *esse*; the subject-acc. is the following *ut*-clause. — *esse*, pres. inf. of intrans. verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*. Observe that from *iūs* to the close of the chapter the discourse is indirect. — *belli*, gen. sing. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; it limits *iūs*. See l. 15, Chap. I. — *ut*, conj.; introduces the clause *ut . . . imperārent*.

LINE 3. *quī*, nom. plur. of rel. pron. *quī*; it refers to *eī*, the omitted subj. of *imperārent*; *quī* is subject-nom. of *vīcissent*. — *vīcissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subj. of *vīcō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *vīctum*, 3; its subject-nom. is *quī*: subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *drātiō obliqua*. — *eīs*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as personal pron. of the 3d pers.; dat. after *imperārent* — a word of command. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, and REM. 2; H. 385, I. — *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*; it refers to *eīs*; is the direct obj. of *vīcissent*. — *vīcissent*, same construction as *vīcissent*, immediately preceding.

they wished; in this way the Roman people were wont to govern their vanquished — not according to the dictation of another, but according to their own pleasure. If he on his part should not dictate to the Roman people	quem-ad-modum what in, manner	vellent, they wished,	imperārent; 4 might command;
	item likewise	populum the people	Rōmānum Roman (those)
	ad at	alterius another's	praescriptum, direction,
		sed but	ad suum 6 at their own
	arbitrium will	imperāre to command	cōnsuēsse. to be (they are) accustomed.
	ipse himself	populō to the people	Rōmānō Roman
		nōn should not	praescriberet, 8 prescribe,

LINE 4. **quem-ad-modum**, adv. = *as*; observe the parts of the compound, and the lit. meaning = *as to what mode*, i.e. *how, as*. The parts are sometimes written separately: *quem ad modum*; sometimes, *quemadmodum*. — **vellent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *volō, velle, voluī*; its subject-nom. is a pron. understood; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. — **imperārent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *imperō*, 1; its omitted subject-nom. is *ei*; subjunctive of *result* after *ut*. Observe that this clause, as noun, is subject-acc. of *esse*, l. 2, above. A. & G. 332, FOOTNOTE; B. 201, REM. 1, (d); G. 557, REM.; H. 501, 2.

LINE 5. **item** (*i*, whence *is* + *tem*), adv. = lit. in *that way*; hence *so also*. — **populum**, acc. sing. of *populus*, -i, m.; subject-acc. of *cōnsuēsse*, l. 7, below. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI. — **Rōmānum**, acc. sing. m. of adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; attributive of *populum*. — **victis**, dat. plur. of perf. pass. participle *victus*, -a, -um; pass. parts: *vincor, vincī, victus*, 3; *victis* agrees with the pron. *ei*s understood; hence seen to be an essentially predicative participle = to a rel. clause: *those who have been vanquished*: or = a noun: *the vanquished*. Observe that *ei*s supplied is dat. after *imperāre*. See *ei*s, l. 3, above. — **nōn** (*nē* + *ūnum*), adv.; modifies *cōnsuēsse*.

LINE 6. **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **alterius**, gen. sing. of the pron. *alter*, -tera, -terum; limits *praescriptum*. Observe that *alterius* has the ictus on the antepenult, and is generally used for *altius*. — **praescriptum**, acc. sing. of *praescriptum*, -i, n. (*prae* + *scribere*); hence the noun = *the thing written before*, i.e. *a copy*, etc.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **sed**, conj.; strong adversative. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.; the notions are kept distinct by repetition of the prepositions. — **suum**, acc. sing. n. of *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *arbitrium*.

LINE 7. **arbitrium**, acc. sing. n. of *arbitrium*, -i, n. (*arbitr*, a judge); hence = one's subjective *decision or opinion*; whereas *iudicium* (*iudex* [*iūs*]) = judicial opinion derived from objective right. *arbitrium* is the obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **imperāre**, inf. pres. act. of *imperō*, 1; complementary, depending on *cōnsuēsse*. — **cōnsuēsse**, perf. inf. act. of *cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum*, 3; contracted for *cōnsuēvisse* — *v* is syncopated, and then contraction takes place. A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. The subject-acc. is *populum Rōmānum*, l. 5, above. The *oratio recta* of lines 2-7: *Iūs est belli, ut, qui vicerint, ei*s quōs *vicerint*, quem-ad-modum *volunt, imperent*; item *populus Rōmānus* *victis* nōn *ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuevit*. — **Si**, conditional conj.; introduces the protasis.

LINE 8. **ipse**, nom. of the intensive pers. pron. = *he himself*; subject-nom. of *praescriberet*. — **populō**, dat. of *populus*, -i, m.; indirect obj. Synonyms: l. 17,

9	quem-ad-modum	suō	iūre	ūterētur,	ple as to the manner in which they were to exercise their rights, he ought not to be obstructed by the Roman people in the exercise of his rights. Inasmuch as the Aedui had tried the fortunes of war, had met
	what in, manner	their own	right	they should use,	
10	nōn oportēre	sēsē	ā	populō	
	not to be (it is not) necessary	himself	by	the people	
11	Rōmānō in	suō iūre	impediri.	Aeduōs	
	Roman in his own right	to be impeded.	The Aedui		
12	sibi, quoniam	belli	fortūnam	temptāssent	
	to himself, whereas	war's	fortune	they had tried	

Chap. VI. — **Rōmānō**, dat. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populō*. — **nōn**, adv.; modifies the verb. — **praescriberet**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *praescribō*, 3; it agrees with its subject-nom. *ipse*, referring to Ariovistus; subjunctive in the condition after *sī*. A. & G. 304, a; B. 207; G. 590; H. 507.

LINE 9. **quem-ad-modum**, see l. 4, above. — **suō**, abl. sing., poss. adj. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; refers to *populō Rōmānō*, preceding line, and is an attributive of *iūre*. — **iūre**, abl. sing. of *iūs, iūris*, n.; abl. after *ūterētur*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, 1. Observe that *suō* here refers to the subject of the subordinate clause, as does *sibi*, l. 7, Chap. XXXV; while in the following clause, which is the main clause of the sentence, *sēsē* and *suō* refer to Ariovistus. This confusion in the use of the reflexives indicates Caesar's haste. — **ūterētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent *ūtor, -ī, ūsus*, 3; subjunctive, because an indirect question. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, 1.

LINE 10. **nōn**, modifies *oportēre*. — **oportēre**, pres. inf. of *oportet, -ēre, -uit* (*opus*, need), impers. Observe that the inf. is here used, because the discourse is indirect; that the inf. is impersonal, as well as the 3d pers. sing. of any of the finite modes. The real subj. of *oportēre*, however, is the accusative-clause *sēsē . . . impediri*. — **sēsē**, reduplicate of the reflexive pron. *sē*, acc. sing. of *suī*. *sēsē* is subject-acc. of *impediri*. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. See l. 7, Chap. I. — **populō**, abl. of *populus, -i*, m.; abl. of the agent. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, 1.

LINE 11. **Rōmānō**, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populō*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the abl. — **suō**, abl. sing. n. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; modifies *iūre*, but refers to Ariovistus. — **iūre**, abl. sing. of *iūs, iūris*, n.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **impediri**, pres. inf. pass. of *impediō*, 4 (in + *pēs*, the foot in), hence *impedire* = lit. to entangle the feet. Observe that the infinitive-clause *sēsē . . . impediri* is the subj. of *oportēre*. — **Aeduōs**, acc. plur. of *Aedui, -ōrum*, m. (see l. 20, Chap. III); subject-acc. of *esse factōs* (*factōs esse*), l. 14, below.

LINE 12. **sibi**, dat. sing. of *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; indirect obj. of *esse factōs*. — **quoniam** (*quom* [quum], cum + iam), conj. — **belli**, gen. sing. of *bellum, -i*, n.; limits *fortūnam*. — **fortūnam**, acc. sing. of *fortūna, -ae*, f. (*fortis*, chance); direct obj. of *temptāssent*. See l. 19, Chap. XI. — **temptāssent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *temptō*, 1; contracted from *temptāvissent* (see *consuēsse*, l. 7, above); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *oratiō obliqua*. Observe that this verb is frequently written *tentō*, 1.



him in battle, and had been defeated, they had become his tributaries. Caesar was doing him a great wrong, since by his arrival he was making his revenues less val-	et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, 13 and in arms had engaged and had been conquered, stipendiārīos esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem 14 tributaries to have been made. Great, Caesar, iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū 15 wrong to do (is doing) who at his coming vēctīgālīa sibi dēteriōra faceret. 16 revenues to himself worse he was making.
--	--

LINE 13. *et*, cop. conj. (see l. 7, Chap. I). — *armīs*, abl. plur. of *arma*, -ōrum, n. plur.; abl. of the instrument. — *congressī* (essent), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *congrēdiō*, -dī, -gressus, 3, deponent; subject-nom. a pron., referring to *Aeduōs*; connected by *et* with *templāssent*; in the subjunctive for the same reason. Supply *eōs* as direct obj. — *āc*, conj. (see l. 10, Chap. I). — *superātī essent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. pass. subjunctive of *superō*, 1 (*super* = *over*); hence *superāre* = *to be over, to conquer*, etc.; subjunctive for the same reason as *templāssent*. Synonyms: *superāre* = *to win* a position from an opponent; *vincere* = *to drive* an opponent from his position. Dōd.

LINE 14. *stipendiārīos*, acc. plur. of the adj. *stipendiārius*, -a, -um (*stipendium*, tribute); used substantively; predicate-acc. after *esse factōs* (*factōs esse*). — *esse factōs* (*factōs esse*), perf. inf. of *fiō*, *fiērī*, *factus*, 3, used as pass. of *faciō*. Observe that the participial formation is in the acc. plur., because the subject-acc. is *Aeduōs*. The *ōrdiō rēcta* of lines 7-14: *Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō, quem-ad-modum suō iūre ūlātur (ūsūrus sit), nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri. Aeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortunam templāvērunt (templāverunt) et armīs congressī āc superātī sunt, stipendiārīi sunt facti.* — *Māgnam*, acc. sing. of adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *iniūriam*. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-acc. of *facere*. Observe its position — very emphatic.

LINE 15. *iniūriam*, acc. sing. of *iniūria*, -ae, f. (in + iūs); direct obj. of *facere*. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. of *faciō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *Caesarem*. This infinitive-clause is for the main clause in *ōrdiō rēcta*. — *quī*, rel. pron., nom. sing. m.; refers to *Caesarem*; but is subject-nom. of *faceret*; as the clause is causal, *quī* here = *cum is*. — *suō*, abl. sing. m. of the poss. reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *adventū*. — *adventū*, abl. of *adventus*, -ūs, m.; abl. of time at which. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171, REM. 3; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 16. *vēctīgālīa*, acc. plur. of *vēctīgāl*, -ālis, n. (*vectus* from *vehere*, to carry); hence the noun = lit. *that which was carried or paid* to the state. *vēctīgālīa* is subject-acc. of *esse* understood. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of reference. A. & G. 235; B. 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 2). *sibi* designates Ariovistus here; but as it does not refer to the subj. of either the principal or subordinate clause, it is ambiguous; *eī* or *ipsī* would remove the ambiguity. — *dēteriōra*, acc. plur. n. of the comparative adj. *dēterior*, -ius; predicate-acc. after *esse* understood. Observe that the positive of this adj. is wanting. A. & G. 91, d, 1; B. 74, 1; G. 87, REMS. 1 and 7; H. 166. Observe further that the accusative-clause *vēctīgālīa esse dēteriōra* is the direct obj. of *faceret*. — *faceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to *Caesar*; it is subjunctive after *quī* causal. A. & G. 320, e; B. 197; G. 633; H. 517.

17	Aeduīs	sē	obsidēs	redditūrum	nōn	uable. He would not return the hostages to the Aedui, nor would he wrongfully wage war against them or their allies if in that they remained, which had been agreed on, their promises, and pay the tribute annually;
	To the Aedui	himself,	hostages	about to return	not	
18	esse,	neque	eīs	neque	eōrum	sociīs
	to be,	neither	on them	nor	on their	allies,
19	iniuriā	bellum	illātūrum,	sī	in	
	with wrong,	war	(himself) to be about to bring,	if	in	
20	eō	manērent,	quod	convēnisset,		
	that	they remained,	which	had been agreed on,		
21	stipendiumque	quotannis	penderent;	sī		
	the tribute and,	every year	they would pay,	if		

LINE 17. *Aeduīs*, dat. plur. of *Aedui*, -ōrum; indirect obj. after *redditūrum esse* (see l. 20, Chap. III). — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; is subject-acc. of *redditūrum esse*. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f.; direct obj. of *redditūrum esse*. — *redditūrum esse*, fut. inf. act. of *reddō*, -ere, -didī, -itum, 3 (red + dare); its subject-acc. is *sē*. — *nōn*, negative particle; inserted between the component parts of this fut. tense for emphasis.

LINE 18. *neque* (*nē + que*) = *and not*, a conjunctive adv.; but *neque . . . neque* = *neither . . . nor*. — *eīs*, dat. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*; used substantively; indirect obj. of *illātūrum (esse)*. — *neque*, see *neque*, immediately preceding. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers. = lit. of them; as a gen. it limits *sociīs*. — *sociīs*, dat. plur. of *socius*, -i, m.; connected by *neque* with *eīs*, and in dat. for the same reason.

LINE 19. *iniuriā*, adv.; but strictly an abl. of manner. A. & G. 248, REM.; B. 168, (e); G. 399, NOTE 1; H. 419, III, NOTE 2. — *bellum*, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; direct obj. of *il(n)lātūrum (esse)*. — *il(n)lātūrum (esse)*, fut. inf. act. of *inferō*, -ferre, -intulī, *il(n)lātum*, irr.; its subject-acc. is *sē*, l. 17, above. Observe that in the compound forms, especially in the fut. inf. and also in the inf. of the second periphrastic conjugation and in the perf. pass. inf., *esse* is oftener omitted than expressed. — *sī*, conditional conj.; sibilated from Gk. *ei*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here abl.

LINE 20. *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*; used here with the prep. *in* without supplement; but we may supply *locō*. — *manērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *manēō*, -ēre, *manēsi*, *mansum*, 2; the subject-nom. is *eī*, referring to the Aedui; the mode is subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis; the apodosis is in the preceding infinitive-clause. As to fut. condition in indirect discourse, see A. & G. 337, 2. a, 3; B. 245, 4; G. 656; H. 527, II. — *quod*, nom. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*; subj. of *convēnisset*. — *convēnisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *convenīō*, 4 (con + venīre) = lit. to come together; hence in personal and impersonal construction = *what is agreed on*, or *fit*.

LINE 21. *stipendiumque* (*stipendium + que*). *stipendium* is acc. sing. of *stipendium*, -iī, n. (*stips + pendere* = lit. to weigh out a gift); hence the noun = *a tax paid in money*; whereas *vectigal* = *a tax paid in kind*. *stipendium* is direct obj. of *penderent*. — *quotannis* (*quot, every + annus, year*), adv. — *penderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *pendō*, -ere, *pependī*, *pensum*, 3; connected by the enclitic *que* with *manērent*, and in the same grammatical construction both as to subj. and subjunctive. — *sī*, see note on this particle, l. 19, above.

but if they would not do thus, the title "brothers" given them by the Roman people would afford them no aid. As to Caesar's threat that he would not overlook the wrongs of the Aedui, (he would say) that no one had ever fought with A-	id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum	22
	<i>this not they should have done, far for them the fraternal</i>	
	nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.	23
	<i>name of the people Roman to be about to be distant.</i>	
	Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē	24
	<i>As to what himself, Caesar threatened, — himself</i>	
	Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum,	25
	<i>the Aedui's wrongs not to be about to neglect, —</i>	
	nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē	26
	<i>no one himself with, without his own destruction,</i>	

LINE 22. *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*; direct obj. of *fēcissent*. *id* refers to the payment of tribute. — *nōn*, negative particle; modifies *fēcissent*. — *fēcissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; it agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to the Aedui; subjunctive in condition after *sī*. Observe that the pluperf. subjunctive in indirect discourse stands for the fut. perf. ind. in direct. — *longē* (*longus*), adv.; modifies *āfutūrum* (*esse*). — *eis*, abl. plur. of the dem. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; abl. of separation after *āfutūrum* (*esse*). Observe that the compounds of *esse* take the dat., except *abesse* and *posse*. — *frāternum*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *frāternus*, -a, -um (*frāter*); an attributive of *nōmen*.

LINE 23. *nōmen*, acc. sing. of *nōmen*, -inis, n.; subject-acc. of *āfutūrum* (*esse*). — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; limits *nōmen*. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m. of adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populī*. — *āfutūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. of *absum*, *abesse*, *āfui*, *ab(ā)futurus*. The *orātiō recta* of lines 14–23: *Māgnam tū, Caesar, iniūriam facis, quī tuō adventū vēctīgālīa mihi dēteriōra faciās. Aeduis egō obsidēs nōn reddam, neque eis neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum inferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnerunt, stipendiumque quotannis pendunt; sī id nōn fecerint, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit.*

LINE 24. *Quod*, an acc. of specification of the rel. *quī* = *whereas*. A. & G. 333, a; B. 123, REM. 21, and 198; G. 525, 2; 516, NOTE, end. — *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of the indirect obj. after *dēnūntiāret*. Observe that the direct obj. is the sentence: *sē . . . neglēctūrum* (*esse*). — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *dēnūntiāret*. — *dēnūntiāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dēnūntiō* (-ciō), 1 (*dē*, intensive + *nūntiō*); subjunctive, because a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. A. & G. 341, d; B. 198, (b); G. 541; II. 516, II. — *sē*, acc. sing., reflexive pron. *suī*; subject-acc. of *neglēctūrum* (*esse*). Observe the confusion in the reference of this pron. *sibi*, immediately preceding, refers to Ariovistus; whereas *sē* refers to Caesar.

LINE 25. *Aeduōrum*, gen. plur. of *Aedui*, -ōrum, m.; limits *iniūriās* (see l. 20, Chap. III). — *iniūriās*, acc. plur. of *iniūria*, -ae, f. (in + *iūs*); direct obj. of *neglēctūrum* (*esse*). — *nōn*, negative particle — normally placed — immediately before the word modified. — *neglēctūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *negle(i)gō*, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 3 (nec + *legere* = lit. *not to deserve*); its subject-acc. is *sē*.

LINE 26. *nēmīnem*, acc. sing. of *nēmō* (*nē* + *homō*), -inis, m. and f.; subject-acc. of *contendisse*. Observe that *nūllius* and *nūllō* are used instead of *nēmīnis* and

27	contendisse.	Cum	vellet,	congrederētur;	riovistus without his own ruin. He might fight when he pleased;	
	<i>to have contended.</i>	<i>When</i>	<i>he wished,</i>	<i>he might meet (him);</i>		
28	intellēctūrum,		quid	invicti	he would learn what the invincible Germans, who were most thoroughly trained in arms and	
	<i>to be about to learn (he will learn),</i>		<i>what</i>	<i>the unconquerable</i>		
29	Germānī,	exercitātissimī	in	armīs,	quī	who had not lived in a house for fourteen years, could accomplish by their valor.
	<i>Germans,</i>	<i>most practised</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>arms,</i>	<i>who</i>	
30	inter	annōs	quattuordecim	tēctum	nōn	
	<i>during</i>	<i>years</i>	<i>fourteen</i>	<i>a roof</i>	<i>not</i>	
31	subissent,	virtūte	possent.			
	<i>had gone under.</i>	<i>by valor</i>	<i>were able.</i>			

*nēmīne*; but *nēmīne* is sometimes used with a pass. participle. — *sēcum* (*sē* + *cum*). *sē*, abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*. *sē* is obj. of the enclitic prep. *cum*. A. & G. 99, *e*; B. 79, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 184, 6. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. (archaic *sē* or *sēd* [*sē* + *nē* with loss of negative force] = *by itself*, *apart*, *without*). — *suā*, abl. sing.; attributive of *perniciē*. Observe the ambiguity in the use of the pronouns *sē* in *sēcum* and in *suā*; the former refers to Ariovistus, the latter to *nēmīne* *n*. — *perniciē*, abl. sing. of *perniciēs*, *-ē*, *f*.; obj. of the prep. *sine*.

LINE 27. *contendisse*, perf. inf. act. of *contendō*, *-ere*, *-tendī*, *-tentum*, 3; its subject-acc. is *nēmīnem*. — *Cum*, conjunctive adv. — *vellet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō*, *velle*, *volui*, irr.; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to Caesar; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. — *congrederētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of deponent *congrēdiōr*, *-gredī*, *-gressus*, 3; hortatory or optative subjunctive in indirect discourse for the imperative in direct discourse. A. & G. 339; B. 245, 2; G. 652; H. 523, III.

LINE 28. *intellēctūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *intelle(i)gō*, *-ere*, *-lēxī*, *-lectum*, 3; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*, referring to Caesar. — *quid*, acc. of interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; an adverbial acc. after *possent*, l. 28, below. A. & G. 238, *b*; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333, REM. 2; H. 378, 2. This acc. is sometimes termed cognate acc. and sometimes acc. of specification. — *invicti*, nom. plur. of adj. *invictus*, *-a*, *-um* (in + *victus* = lit. *not conquered*); an attributive of *Germānī*.

LINE 29. *Germānī*, nom. plur. of *Germānī*, *-ōrum*, *m*.; subj. of *possent*, l. 31, below. See l. 14, Chap. I. — *exercitātissimī*, nom. plur. of the adj., superl. degree; positive *exercitātus*; comparative *-ātor*; agrees with *Germānī*, but is essentially predicative = *who were most skillful*. Observe that *exercitātus* is properly a perf. pass. participle of *exercitāre*, which = *to exercise*, *train*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here abl. — *armīs*, abl. plur. of *arma*, *-ōrum*, *n*. See l. 13, Chap. IV. — *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; refers to *Germānī*; subject-nom. of *subissent*.

LINE 30. *inter*, prep. with the acc. = lit. *between*; but with expressions of time = *during*. The more common phrase is *per annōs*. — *annōs*, acc. plur. *m*.; obj. of *inter*. — *quattuordecim* (*quattuor*, *four* + *decim*, *ten*), num. adj., attributive of *annōs*; frequently represented by *XIV*. — *tēctum*, acc. sing. of *tēctum*, *-ī*, *n*. (*tegere*, to cover); direct obj. of *subissent*. — *nōn*, negative adv. (*nē* + *unum*).

LINE 31. *subissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *subēō*, *-īre*, *-īrī*, (*-ī*), *-itum*; it agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive, because in a subordinate

XXXVII. At the same time that this message was brought to Caesar, envoys from the Aedui and the Treveri came: the Aedui, to complain that the Harudes, who had been lately brought

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī 1  
*These, at the same time, to Caesar,*  
 mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab 2  
*mandates were brought back, both legates from*  
 Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 3  
*the Aedui and from the Treveri came: The Aedui*  
 questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in 4  
*to complain, because the Harudes, who lately into*

clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. Observe that this verb is used both transitively and intransitively, but in a different sense. See the lexicons. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs*, -tūtis, f. (*vir*); abl. of specification. A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *possent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (potis, able + sum); it agrees with its subject-nom. *Germānī*; subjunctive, because an indirect question; the question is introduced by *quid*. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 24–31: *Quod tū, Caesar, mihi dēnūntiās, iē Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglēctūrum (esse), nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum vīs, congredere; intellegēs, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimi in armīs, quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērent, virtūte possint.*

LINE 1. *Haec*, nom. plur. n. of dem. pron. *hic*; an attributive of *mandāta*. — *eodem*, abl. sing. n. of the iterative pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; an attributive of *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. sing. of *tempus*, -oris, n.; *time at which*. A. & G. 256, I; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *Caesarī*, dat. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; indirect obj.

LINE 2. *mandāta*, nom. plur. of *mandātum*, -ī, n.; subj. of *referēbantur*. — *referēbantur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. pass. of act. *referō*, *ferre*, -tulī, -lātum; pass. *referor*, *ferri*, -lātus; its subject-nom. is *mandāta*. — *et*, cop. conj. = *and*; but *et . . . et* = *both . . . and*. In translating here, and often elsewhere, omit the equivalent of the first *et*. — *lēgātī*, nom. plur. of *lēgātus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *veniēbant*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. See l. 6, Chap. I.

LINE 3. *Aeduīs*, abl. plur. of *Aeduī*, -ōrum, m.; obj. of prep. *ab*. See *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *et*, see *et*, preceding line. — *ā*, prep. with abl.; observe that the notions are kept distinct by the repetition of the prep. — *Trēverīs*, abl. plur. of *Trēverī*, -ōrum, m.; obj. of prep. *ā*. Sometimes *Trēvir*, -īrī, m. sing., is used, and = *one of the Trēverī*. The Treveri were a people of Gallia Belgica, dwelling not far from modern Treves. — *veniēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *veniō*, 4; it agrees with subject-nom. *lēgātī*. The imperf. here is not essentially different in signification from the perf. ind. A. & G. 277, NOTE; B. 95, II.; G. 231; H. 469, I. — *Aeduī*, nom. plur., subj. of *veniēbant*, to be supplied.

LINE 4. *questum*, supine of *queror*, -ī, *questus*, deponent; expresses the *purpose* of the coming. A. & G. 302; B. 186, (A.); G. 435; H. 546. — *quod*, conj. — *Harūdēs*, -um, nom. plur. m., and subj. of *populārentur*. The Harudes were a people of Germany, north of the Danube. Some say from Jutland, i.e. the Chersonēus Cimbrica. — *quī*, nom. plur. of rel. pron. *quī*; subject-nom. of *trānsportātū essent*. — *nūper*, adv. (for *novīper* [novus]); hence = lit. *newly*. — *in*, prep. with acc. or abl.; here it has the acc. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I.

5 Galliam	trānsportātī essent,	finēs	eōrum	over the Rhine into Gaul, were devastating their territories; and they said that they could not, even by giving hostages, procure peace from Ario- vistus. More- over, the Treveri came saying that the people of a hundred Suevian villages had en- camped near the bank of the
Gaul	had been brought,	borders	their,	
6 populārentur;	sēsē	nē	obsidibus	quidem
were laying waste;	themselves	not	hostages	even
7 datīs	pācem	Ariovistī	redimere	
having been given,	the peace	of Ariovistus	to purchase	
8 potuisse;	Trēverī	autem,	pāgōs	
to have been able;	the Treveri,	moreover,	cantons	
9 centum	Suēvōrum	ad	rīpam	Rhēnī
a hundred	of the Suevi	at	the bank	of the Rhine

LINE 5. **Galliam**, acc. sing.; obj. of prep. *in*. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **trānsportātī essent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive pass. of *trānsportō*, 1; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiā obliqua*. — **finēs**, acc. plur. of *fīnis*, -is, m.; direct obj. of the deponent *populārentur*. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. II. — **eōrum**, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *is, ea, id*, used as a pers. pron. of the 3d pers. = English poss. case *their*; refers to the *Aedui*, l. 3, above.

LINE 6. **populārentur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of deponent *populor*, 1; subject-nom. is *Harūdēs*; subjunctive, because the statement is made on another's authority. A. & G. 341, *d*; B. 198, (*b*); G. 628; H. 516, II. — **sēsē**, reduplication of *sē*, acc. plur. of reflexive pron. *suī*; subject-acc. of *potuisse*. — **nē**, conjunctive adv. = *that not*. Observe how the particle is separated from the restrictive *quidem* with the emphatic word between the particles. — **obsidibus**, abl. plur. of *obses*, -idis, m. and f.; abl. absolute with *datīs*. — **quidem**, adv.; with *nē* = *not even*.

LINE 7. **datīs**, perf. pass. participle of *dō*, 1, act.; pass. *dor, darī, datus* (a short before *re*, pres. inf. act. by exception); abl. absolute with *obsidibus*, denoting *condition*. A. & G. 255, *d*, 4; B. 192; G. 410; H. 431. — **pācem**, acc. sing. of *pāx, pācis*, f.; direct obj. of *redimere*. — **Ariovistī**, gen. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; gen. poss., limits *pācem*. — **redimere**, pres. inf. of *redimō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptum*, 3 (red + *emere* = *to buy back*); inf. complementary; depends on *potuisse*.

LINE 8. **potuisse**, perf. inf. of *possum* (potis + sum); subject-acc. is *sēsē*, l. 6, above. What the *Aedui* said, lines 4-8, in direct form was: *Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportātī sunt, finēs nostrōs populāntur; nōs nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere possumus*. — **Trēverī, -ōrum**, m., subj. of *veniēbant*, to be supplied from the preceding. See *Trēverīs*, l. 3, above. The full lacūna is *veniēbant questum*. — **autem**, adversative conj.; postpositive. — **pāgōs**, acc. plur. of *pāgus, -ī, m.*; subject-acc. of *cōnsēdisse*. Observe that the *cantons* are put by metonymy for the *people* of the cantons.

LINE 9. **centum**, num. adj. cardinal; modifies *pāgōs*. — **Suēvōrum**, gen. plur. of *Suēvi, -ōrum*, m.; limits *pāgōs*. The Suevi were a people of central Germany. The name is sometimes written *Suēbī* (GK. Σούβοι). But the paraphrast has Σουέβων, gen. plur. of Σοβένοι. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. = *near* or *at*. A. & G. 258, *c*, NOTE 1; B. 120, 1; G. 386, 2; H. 433, I. — **rīpam**, acc. sing. of *rīpa, -ae*, f.; obj. of prep. *ad*. — **Rhēnī**, gen. sing. of *Rhēnus, -ī, m.*; limits *rīpam*.

Rhine, and were attempting to cross that river; and that the brothers Nasua and Cimerius were their leaders. Now Caesar was greatly alarmed at these reports, and thought that he ought to make haste lest, should this new band of the Suevi	cōnsēdisse, to have encamped,	quī who	Rhēnum the Rhine	trānsīre 10 to cross over	
	cōnārentur; were attempting;	hīs these,	praeēsse to be over,	Nasua and	et 11
	Cimberium Cimberius	frātrēs. brothers.	Quibus By which	rēbus things	Caesar 12
	vehementer exceedingly	commōtus having been moved (it)	mātūrandum to be hastened	sibi 13 by himself	
	exīstimāvit, thought,	nē, lest,	sī if	nova the new	manus band
				Suēvōrum 14 of the Suevi	

LINE 10. *cōnsēdisse*, perf. inf. act. of *cōnsido*, -ere, -sēdī, -sesum, 3 (con + sidere = to sit together); subject-acc. is *pāgōs*. — *quī*, nom. plur. of rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *Suēvōrum*; subject-nom. of *cōnārentur*. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. of *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.; direct obj. of *trānsīre*. — *trānsīre*, pres. inf. act. of *trānsēo*, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itum (trāns + īre); inf. complementary.

LINE 11. *cōnārentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of deponent *cōnor*, 1; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in virtual *oratio obliqua*. — *hīs*, dat. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, used as a pers. pron. of 3d pers.; dat. after *prae* in compound *praeēsse*. A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — *praeēsse*, pres. inf. of *praesum* (*prae* + *sum*) = lit. to be before or over. — *Nasua*, acc. sing. of *Nasua*, -ae, m.; subject-acc. of *praeēsse*. Observe the gender from the signification rather than the form of the word. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the nouns.

LINE 12. *Cimberium*, acc. sing. of *Cimberius*, -ī, m.; also subject-acc. of *praeēsse*. These brothers were chiefs of the Aedui. — *frātrēs*, acc. plur. of *frāter*, -tris, m.; an appositive of two nouns; hence in the plur. A. & G. 184, a; B. 127, REM. 3; G. 321; H. 363. What the Treveri said, lines 8-12, in direct form was: *Pāgī centum Suēvōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdērunt, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnantur*; his *praesunt Nasua et Cimberius* frātrēs. — *Quibus*, abl. plur. of the pron. *quī*; it refers to the preceding statements; but is here used adjectively, and is an attributive of *rēbus*. At the beginning of a sentence it = *hīs*. — *rēbus*, abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rēī*, f.; abl. of cause after *commōtus*. A. & G. 245, and 2, b; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, and NOTE 1. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subj. of *exīstimāvit*.

LINE 13. *vehementer*, adv.; modifies *commōtus*; stronger than either *magnopere* or *graviter*. — *commōtus*, perf. pass. participle of *commoveō*, 2; it agrees with *Caesar* expressed. — *mātūrandum* (*esse*), pres. inf. of second periphrastic conjugation of *mātūrō*, 1; intrans.; hence used impersonally in the pass. voice. A. & G. 146, d; B. 115, III; G. 217; H. 301, 2. — *sibi*, dat. of the personal and reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of the agent after the gerundive, or pass. periphrastic conjugation. A. & G. 232; B. 148; G. 355; H. 388.

LINE 14. *exīstimāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *exīstimō*, 1 (*ex*, intensive + *aestimāre* = to compute thoroughly); it agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*. — *nē*, conj. = that not, or lest. — *sī*, conditional particle; = if. — *nova*, nom. sing. f. of adj. *novus*, -a, -um (GK. *néos*); an attributive of *manus*. — *manus*, -ūs, f. by

15	cum	veteribus	cōpiīs	Ariovistī	sēsē	unite with the old forces of Ariovistus, they
	with	the old	forces	of Ariovistus	itself	
16	cōniūnxisset,	minus	facile	resistī		they might be less easily opposed.
	should have joined,	less	easily	to be resisted		
17	posset.	Itaque	rē	frūmentāriā		Accordingly, after procuring as
	it might be able.	Therefore	the thing	frumentary,		speedily as possible
18	quam	celerrimē	potuit	comparātā		a supply of grain, he hastened by forced
	as much	as most speedily	he was able,	being collected,		marches toward
19	māgnīs	itineribus	ad	Ariovistum	contendit.	Ariovistus.
	with great	marches toward		Ariovistus	he hastened.	

exception. A. & G. 69; B. 48, REM. 4, EXC. 1; G. 62, EXC.; H. 118, EXC. Observe that *manus* = lit. a hand; but transf. in military language = a company of hands — a military corps. — *Suēvōrum*, gen. plur.; limits *manus*. See *Suēvōrum*, l. 9, above.

LINE 15. *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *veteribus*, abl. plur. of the adj. *vetus*, stem *vet-* (from GK. *ἔτος*, digammated); an attributive of *cōpiīs*. — *cōpiīs*, abl. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *cum*. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing. poss. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; it limits *cōpiīs*. — *sēsē*, reduplicated; acc. for *sē*, but more emphatic; acc. of direct obj., referring to *manus*.

LINE 16. *cōniūnxisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *coniungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnxitum, 3 (con + iungere); agrees with *manus* as subject-nom.; subjunctive in the condition after *sī*. — *minus*, adv., comparative degree; irr. positive *parum*; superl. *minimē*; *minus* modifies *facile*. — *facile*, adv.; modifies *resistī posset*. — *resistī*, pres. pass. inf. of *resistō*, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, 3; used impersonally, as are all intransitives in the pass. voice. A. & G. 230; B. 115, III; G. 217; H. 384, 5.

LINE 17. *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*; subjunctive after *nē*, l. 14, above — negative purpose. Observe that when *potest* is followed by the inf. of an impersonal verb, it too is impersonal. Supply *eīs* as dat. of the indirect obj. after *resistī*. But *eī*, i.e. *Ariovistō*, might be supplied; and then the clause = *he might be less easily resisted*. — *Itaque*, adv. (*ita* + *que* = lit. and so). — *rē*, abl. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; abl. absolute with *comparātā*. — *frūmentāriā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *frūmentārius*, -a, -um (*frūmentum*); an attributive of *rē*.

LINE 18. *quam*, adv.; modifies *celerrimē*. — *celerrimē*, adv., superl. degree; positive *celeriter*; comparative *celerius*. — *potuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of *possum*, *posse*. Supply ellipsis thus: *tam celeriter quam celerumē potuit* = *so speedily as most speedily he was able*, i.e. *as speedily as possible*. — *comparātā*, abl. f. of the perf. pass. participle *comparatus*, -a, -um of the verb *comparō*, 1; abl. absolute with *rē*, l. 17, above.

LINE 19. *māgnīs*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *itineribus*. — *itineribus*, abl. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of manner. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *ad*, prep. with the acc., after a verb of motion = *to or toward*. The usual day's-march of Roman soldiers was twenty Roman miles. — *Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. A. & G. 258; B. 154, REM. 3; G. 416, 1; H. 380, I. — *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *contendō*, -ere, -lendī, -lentum, 3; its subject-nom. is *Cæsar* understood. See *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I.



XXXVIII.	XXXVIII.	Cum	trīdūi	viam 1
When Caesar had advanced a three-days' journey, it was reported to him that Ariovistus with all his forces was hastening to seize Vesontio, which was the largest town of the Sequani; and had advanced a three-days' journey from his own borders.		When	a three-days'	march
	prōcessisset,	nūntiātum est	eī,	Ariovistum 2
	he had proceeded,	it was announced	to him,	Ariovistus,
	cum suis	omnibus	cōpiis	ad occupandum 3
	with his	all	forces	for, to be occupied
	Vesontiōnem,	quod est	oppidum	māximum 4
	Vesontio,	which is	town	the greatest
	Sēquanōrum,	contendere,	trīdūique 5	
	of the Sequani,	to be pushing forward,	a three-days' and,	
	viam ā suis	finibus	prōfēcisse. 6	
	march from his own	borders	to have made progress.	

LINE 1. **Cum**, conj., temporal. — **trīdūi**, gen. sing. of *trīdūm*, -ī, n. (trēs + diēs) = lit. of *three days*; it limits *viam*. — **viam**, acc. sing. of *via*, -ae, f.; space over which. A. & G. 257, and NOTE; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. Synonyms: l. 2, Chap. IX.

LINE 2. **prōcessisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *prōcēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, 3; its subj. is Caesar understood; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. — **nūntiātum est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *nūntiō* (-ciō), 1; impersonal; or, better, the following accusative-clauses as noun-clauses are the subject-nominatives. — **eī**, dat. sing. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; indirect obj. — **Ariovistum**, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-acc. of *contendere* and *prōfēcisse*, lines 5 and 6, below.

LINE 3. **cum**, prep., followed by abl. — **suis**, abl. plur. f. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *cōpiis*. — **omnibus**, abl. plur. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; it modifies the phrase *suis cōpiis*. — **cōpiis**, abl. plur. of *cōpia*, -ae, f.; abl. of accompaniment with the prep. *cum*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392, and REM. 1; H. 419, I. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **occupandum**, acc. sing. m. of *occupandus*, -a, -um, gerundive of *occupō*, 1; it agrees with *Vesontiōnem*.

LINE 4. **Vesontiōnem**, acc. sing. of *Vesontiō*, -ōnis, m.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that the gerundive construction with *ad* denotes purpose. A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III. Vesontio was the principal town of the Sequani, the modern Besançon. — **quod**, nom. sing. n. of the rel. *quī*; refers to Vesontio, but is attracted into the gender of *oppidum* — predicate. *quod* is the subject-nom. of *est*. As to this construction, see A. & G. 199; B. 129, REM. 1, (a); G. 616, 2; H. 445, 9. — **est**, 3d pers. sing. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*. — **oppidum**, nom. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; predicate after *est*. — **māximum**, acc. sing. n. of superl. degree of positive *māgnus*, comparative *māior*; an attributive of *oppidum*.

LINE 5. **Sēquanōrum**, gen. plur. of *Sēquani*, -ōrum, m.; limits *oppidum*. See l. 25, Chap. I. — **contendere**, pres. inf. act. of *contendō*, -ere, -dī, -tentum, 3 (l. 19, Chap. I); its subject-acc. is *Ariovistum*. — **trīdūique** (*trīdūi* + *que*). *trīdūi* is gen. of *trīdūm*, -ī, n. (see l. 1, above). *que*, enclitic; connects the clauses.

LINE 6. **viam**, acc. sing. of *via*, -ae (see l. 1, above). — **ā**, prep. with abl. — **suis**, abl. plur. m. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *finibus*; it refers to

7	Id	nē	accideret,	māgnopere	sibi	That this might
	That	lest	should happen,	greatly	by himself	not happen
8	praecavendum	Caesar	existimābat.	Namque		Caesar thought
	(it) to be guarded against	Caesar	thought.	For truly,		that he ought
9	omnium	rērum,	quae	ad	bellum	to be especial-
	of all	things,	which	in respect to	war	ly on guard.
						And the more,
						for there was in
						that town the
10	erant,	summa	erat in	eō	oppidō	greatest abund-
	were,	the greatest	was in	that	town,	ance of every-
						thing useful in
						war; and it was
11	idque	nātūrā	locī	sic	mūniēbātur,	so protected by
	it and,	by nature	of the place	so	fortified was,	the nature of its
					that	

Ariovistus. — *finibus*, abl. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *ā*. Synonyms: l. 20, Chap. I. — *prōfēcisse*, perf. inf. act. of *prōficiō*, 3; connected by *que* with *contendere*, and has the same subject-acc. — *Ariovistum*, l. 2, above. Craner's text reads *prōcessisse*; probably because *prōficere* in the literary sense is rare; *prōfēcisse* is the usual lection.

LINE 7. *Id*, nom. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*; used substantively; subject-nom. of *accideret*; refers to the possibility of Ariovistus' seizing Vesontio. — *nē*, conj. = *that not or lest*. — *accideret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *accidō*, 3 (*ad* + *cadere* = *to fall to*, hence *to happen*); subjunctive of negative *purpose* after *nē*. — *māgnopere*, adv. (*māgnō* + *opere*) = lit. *with great labor*; hence as an adv. = *greatly*; sometimes written: *māgnō opere*. — *sibi*, dat. of reflexive pron. *suī*; agent, referring to Caesar.

LINE 8. *praecavendum* (*esse*), pres. inf. of second periphrastic conjugation of *praecaveō*, 2; used impersonally. Observe that the pass. periphrastic conjugation denotes *necessity* or *duty*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m., subject-nom. of *existimābat*. — *existimābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *existimō*, 1 (*ex* + *aestimāre*) = lit. *to reckon accurately*. — *Namque* (*nam* + *que*), conj.; more emphatic than *nam*; = GK. καὶ γάρ; = *and I say truly for*.

LINE 9. *omnium*, gen. plur. f. of adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive of *rērum*. — *rērum*, gen. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; limits *facultās*, l. 10, below. — *quae*, nom. plur. f. of rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *rērum*; subject-nom. of *erant*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *bellum*, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *ūsui*, dat. sing. of *usus*, -ūs, m.; dat. of service after *erant*. A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, REM. 1, end; G. 356, and NOTE 1; II. 390 NOTE 2.

LINE 10. *erant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*; agrees with the subject-nom. *quae*. — *summa*, nom. sing. f. of adj. *summus*, -a, -um; superl. degree of *superus*, -ior, -prēmum or *summus*; *summa* is an attributive of *facultās*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*; its subject-nom. is *facultās*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. See l. 1, Chap. I. — *eō*, abl. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*; an attributive of *oppidō*. — *oppidō*, abl. sing. of *oppidum*, -i, n.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *facultās*, nom. sing. of *facultās*, -ātis, f.; subj. of *erat*. Observe that *erat* here is a verb of complete predication = *exists*; and also that *facultās* is derived from *facilis*; hence = *facility of resources* — *abundance*.

LINE 11. *idque* (*id* + *que*). *id*, nom. n. of the dem. pron. *is*, used substantively = *oppidum*; subject-nom. of *mūniēbātur*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the sentences.

position as to afford great fa- cilities for pro- tracting the war, because the river Doubs almost encircled the en- tire town as if circumscribed by compasses. The rest of the space, which is not more than sixteen hundred feet, where the	māgnam a great,	ad for,	dūcendum to be protracted	bellum the war	daret 12 it gave
	facultātem, opportunity,	proptereā for this reason,	quod because	flūmen the river	Dūbis 13 Doubs
	ut as	circinō by a pair of compasses		circumductum 14 having been drawn around	
	paene almost	tōtum the whole	oppidum town	cingit; encircles;	reliquum 15 the remaining
	spatium, space,	quod which	est is	nōn not	amplius more,
					pedum 16 of feet

— **nātūrā**, abl. of means of *nātūra*, -ae, f. — **locī**, gen. sing. of *locus*, -ī, m.; limits *nātūrā*. See l. 10, Chap. II. — **sic**, adv., correlative of the following *ut*. — **mūniēbātur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. pass. of *mūniō*, 4. — **ut**, ecbatic conj.

LINE 12. **māgnam**, acc. sing. f. of adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *facultātem*, l. 13, below. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. of the gerundive construction. — **dūcendum**, acc. sing. n. of the gerundive *dūcendus*, -a, -um of the verb *dūcō*, 3; agrees with *bellum*. — **bellum**, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Observe that the phrase *ad dūcendum bellum* = lit. *for the war to be put off*, i.e. *for protracting the war*. Compare *diem dūcere*, lines 12, 13, Chap. XVI. — **daret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dō*, 1; subjunctive of result after *ut*, referring to *sic*.

LINE 13. **facultātem**, acc. sing. of *facultās*, -tātis, f.; direct obj. of *daret*. Observe that this word has here its literal, and not transf. meaning, as in *facultās*, l. 10, above. — **proptereā** (*propter* + *eā*), adv., the herald of the following *quod*-clause. — **quod**, conj. = *because*. See l. 9, Chap. I. — **flūmen**, nom. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; subject-nom. of *cingit*, l. 15, below. — **Dūbis**, nom. sing. of *Dūbis*, -is, m.; an appositive; the modern Doubs.

LINE 14. **ut**, adv. = *as if*; compare GK. *ὥς* with circumstantial participle. — **circinō**, abl. of *circinus*, -ī, m.; abl. of means. — **circumductum**, acc. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle of *circumdō*, 1; agrees with *oppidum*.

LINE 15. **paene**, adv., modifies adj. *tōtum*. — **tōtum**, acc. sing. n. of *tōtus*, gen. *tōtus*; an attributive of *oppidum*. — **oppidum**, acc. sing. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *cingit*. — **cingit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *cingō*, -ere, *cingi*, *cingitum*, 3. — **reliquum**, acc. sing. n. of adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *spatium*. Synonyms: l. 7, Chap. V. Observe that the adj. denotes the *part* of the obj. A. & G. 193; B. 128, REM. 9; G. 291, REM. 2; H. 440, NOTE 2.

LINE 16. **spatium**, acc. of *spatium*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *continet*, l. 18, below. — **quod**, nom. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*; subj. of *est*. — **est**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of *sum*. — **nōn**, negative particle; modifies adj. — **amplius**, adv., comparative degree of *amplē* or *ampliter*. *amplius* is here a species of an appositive. A. & G. 247, c, and NOTE; B. 163, REM. 4; G. 296, REM. 4; H. 417, NOTE 2. — **pedum**, gen. plur. of *pēs*, *pedis*, m.; gen. of *measure*, depending on *spatium*. A. & G. 215, b; B. 132; G. 365, REM. 2; H. 396, 5.

17 mille	sexcentōrum,	quā flūmen	intermittit,	river ceases its circular course,
thousand (and) six-hundred,	where the river	intermits,		a mountain of
18 mōns	continet	māgnā altitūdine,	ita ut	great height oc- cupies, so that
a mountain contains,	of great.	altitude,	so that	the margins of
19 rādicēs	montis	ex utrāque parte	rīpae	the river touch the lower slopes
the roots of the mountain	on	each	side the banks	of the mountain
20 flūminis	contingant.	Hunc	mūrus	on either side. A wall having
of the river	touch.	This (mountain),	a wall	been extended
21 circumdatus	arcem	efficit et cum		around it makes the mountain
having been put around,	a citadel	makes and with		a citadel, and

LINE 17. *mille*, an indecl. adj. in the sing.; it is here the gen. plur. and an attributive of *pedum*. — *sex(s)centōrum*, gen. plur. of *sex(s)centi*, -ae, -a; cardinal num. adj.; modifies *pedum* (note the asyndeton between the numerals). Observe (a) that the rigidly literal translation of *quod . . . sexcentōrum* is: *which is not more of feet thousand six hundred*; (b) that *mille* is an insertion of the later critics. The common reading is *pedum DC*. As the base of the mountain measures about 1600 feet, the later critics write *MDC*. Dr. Anthon supposes, however, that Caesar means here by *foot*, the pace of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet. — *quā*, adv.; or supply *vid*, and the phrase = *in what way, where*. — *flūmen*, nom. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; subj. of *intermittit*. — *intermittit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *intermittō*, 3; the verb is used here intrans., and = *ceases* to flow around the place in a circular course.

LINE 18. *mōns*, *montis*, m.; subj. of *continet*. — *continet*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *contineō*, 2 (con + tenere) = lit. *to hold together*; here = *occupies*, i.e. *fills up*. — *māgnā*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *altitūdine*. — *altitūdine*, abl. sing. of *altitūdō*, -inis, f.; abl. of quality with adj. *māgnā*. A. & G. 251, a; B. 169; G. 400, and REM. 1; H. 419, II, and NOTE. — *ita*, adv., correlative of the conj. *ut*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj.

LINE 19. *rādicēs*, acc. plur. of *rādīx*, -icis, f.; direct obj. of *contingant*. — *montis*, gen. sing. of *mōns*, *montis*, m.; limits *rādicēs*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *utrāque*, abl. sing. f. of the pron. *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*; gen. *utriusque*; dat. *utrique*. *utrumque* is an attributive of *parte*. Observe that *que*, appended to *uter*, gives a notion of universality. Then *uter* = *which of two*; *utrumque* = *either of two* or *both*. — *parte*, abl. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *rīpae*, nom. plur. of *rīpa*, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *contingant*. Observe that some critics take *rādicēs* as subject-nom. of *contingant*, and *rīpae* as dat. after the same verb; others still take *rīpae* as a gen., limiting *parte*, and supply *eam*, i.e. *rīpam* as the direct object.

LINE 20. *flūminis*, gen. sing. of *flūmen*, -inis, n.; limits *rīpae*. — *contingant*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive of *contingo*, -ere, -tigi, -lactum, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *rīpae*; subjunctive of result after *ut*. — *Hunc*, acc. sing. m. of dem. pron. *hic*; an attributive of *montem* understood; which latter is the direct obj. of *efficit*. — *mūrus*, -i, m.; subject-nom. of *efficit*. Synonyms: l. 7, Chap. VIII.

LINE 21. *circumdatus*, perf. pass. participle of *circumdō*, 1; agrees with *mūrus*. — *arcem*, acc. sing. of *arx*, *arcis*, m.; predicate-acc. after *efficit*. A. & G. 239, 1, a;

unites it with the town. Hither Caesar hastened by forced marches day and night; and, having seized the town, stationed a garrison there.

oppidō <i>the town</i>	coniungit. <i>connects.</i>	Hūc <i>Hither</i>	Caesar <i>Caesar</i>	māgnīs 22 <i>by great</i>
nocturnīs <i>nightly</i>	diurnisque <i>daily and,</i>	itineribus <i>marches</i>	contendit, 23 <i>hastens,</i>	
occupātōque <i>having been seized and,</i>	oppidō, <i>the town,</i>	ibi <i>there</i>	praesidium 24 <i>a garrison</i>	
collocat. <i>he establishes.</i>				25

XXXIX. While Caesar was tarrying a few days near Vesontio

XXXIX. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem 1  
*While a few days at Vesontio*

B. 151, (b); G. 340, (b); H. 373, 1. — **efficit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *efficiō*, 3 (ex + *facere* = lit. *to do completely*); agrees with subject-nom. *mūrus*. — **et**, cop. conj. See l. 7, Chap. I. — **cum**, prep., takes the abl.

LINE 22. **oppidō**, abl. sing. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *cum*. Synonyms: *oppidum* = any town except Rome; the latter usually *urbs*; often *oppidum* = a castle, but is not to be confounded with *arx*, GK. ἀκρόπολις, a citadel. — **coniungit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *coniungō*, 3; connected by *et* with *efficit*, and in the same construction. — **Hūc**, adv. (archaic form of *hōc* = lit. *to this place*). — **Caesar**, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *contendit*. — **māgnīs**, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *itineribus*.

LINE 23. **nocturnīs**, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *nocturnus*, -a, -um (*nox*); also an attributive of *itineribus*. — **diurnisque** (*diurnus* + *que*). *diurnis*, abl. plur. of the adj. *diurnus*, -a, -um (*diēs*); connected by *que* with *nocturnīs*, and in the same construction. — **itineribus**, abl. plur. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; abl. of manner. The great or forced marches were more than 20 miles a day. — **contendit**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *contendō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*. See l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 24. **occupātōque** (*occupātō* + *que*). *occupātō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *occupātus*, -a, -um of *occupō*, 1; abl. absolute with *oppidō*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses. — **oppidō**, abl. sing. of *oppidum*, -ī, n.; absolute with *occupātō*. — **ibi**, adv. = *there*, i.e. in the town. — **praesidium**, acc. sing. of *praesidium*, -ī, n. (*praesēs*, a guard); direct obj. of *collocat*.

LINE 25. **col(n)locat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of *col(n)loco*, 1 (*con* + *locāre* = lit. *to place together*); connected by the conj. *que* with *contendit*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 1. **Dum**, conj.; denotes real time — relation of two actions to each other — **paucōs**, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *paucus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *diēs*. — **diēs**, acc. plur. of *diēs*, *diēi*, m.; acc. of duration of time. A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379. Observe that *diēs* is m. and f. in sing., but always m. in the plur. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.; here *ad* = *in the vicinity of*. — **Vesontiōnem**, acc. sing. of *Vesontiō*, -ōnis, f.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Vesontio was the principal town of the Sequani — the site of modern Besançon.

2	rei	frumentariae	commeātusque	causā	for the sake of
	of the thing	frumentary	of (other) supplies and,	for the sake,	securing grain
3	morātur,	ex	percontatiōne	nostrōrum	and other supplies,
	he delays,	from	the inquiry	of our (men)	from the inquiries of our
				words and,	men and the
4	Gallōrum	āc	mercātōrum,	quī	ingenti
	of the Gauls	and	of the traders,	who	of huge
					remarks of the
5	māgnitudine	corporum	Germānōs,	incrēdibili	Germans had
	size	of bodies	the Germans,	of incredible	bodies of ab-
					normal size and
6	virtūte	atque	exercitātiōne	in	armīs
	valor	and	exercise	in	arms
				to be,	esse
					use of arms —

LINE 2. *rei*, gen. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; gen. after *causā*, which latter has here a prepositional force and follows the noun or nouns it governs. — *frumentariae*, gen. sing. of adj. *frumentarius*, -a, -um (*frumentum*, grain); attributive of *rei*. — *commeātusque* (*commeātus* + *que*). *commeātus*, gen. sing. of *commeātus*, -ūs, m.; connected by enclitic *que* with *frumentariae*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *causā*, strictly an abl. of cause of *causa*, -ae, f.; but has here a prepositional force with the gen. preceding. A. & G. 223, *e*, 245, *c*; B. 165, REM. 3; G. 373; H. page 221, FOOTNOTE 2.

LINE 3. *morātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. of deponent *moror*, 1 (*mora*, delay); it agrees with *Caesar* understood. Observe that *dum*, while, regularly, takes the pres. ind., whatever may be the tense in the main clause. A. & G. 276, *e*; B. 228, REM. 1; G. 229, REM.; H. 467, 4. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.; here = *from*, i.e. *in consequence of*. — *percontatiōne*, abl. sing. of *percontatiō*, -ōnis, f.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. Observe that *percontatiō* is often written *percunctatiō*. — *nostrōrum*, gen. plur. m. of *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively; or supply *virōrum*; as a gen. it limits *percontatiōne*. — *vōcibusque* (*vōcibus* + *que*). *vōcibus*, abl. plur. of *vōcis*, f.; connected by the enclitic *que* with *percontatiōne*, and in the same construction.

LINE 4. *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. of *Gallī*, -ōrum, m.; limits *vōcibus*. See I. 4, Chap. I. — *āc*, conj. See I. 10, Chap. I. — *mercātōrum*, gen. plur. of *mercātor*, -ōris, m.; connected by *āc* with *Gallōrum*, and, as a gen., limits *vōcibus*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*; it refers to *Gallōrum āc mercātōrum*; *quī* is subject-nom. of *praedicābant*, I. 7, below. — *ingenti*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *ingēns*, -entis (in + *gēns*); an attributive of *māgnitudine*.

LINE 5. *māgnitudine*, abl. sing. of *māgnitūdō*, -inis, f.; abl. of quality with adj. *ingenti*. A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; H. 419, II. — *corporum*, gen. plur. of *corpus*, -oris, n.; depends on *māgnitudine*. Observe that the usual order of adj., gen., subst., is not here followed. — *Germānōs*, acc. plur. of *Germānī*, -ōrum, m.; subject-acc. of *esse*, I. 6, below. — *incrēdibili*, abl. sing. f. of adj. *incrēdibilis*, -e (in + *crēdibilis*) = *not credible*; an attributive of *virtūte*.

LINE 6. *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs*, -tūtis, f. (*vir*, man); hence = *manliness*; abl. of quality with the adj. *incrēdibili*. — *atque*, conj.; connects the nouns. See I. 10, Chap. I. — *exercitātiōne*, abl. sing. of *exercitatiō*, -ōnis, f.; connected by *atque* with *virtūte*, and abl. for the same reason. Observe that these ablatives of quality are essential parts of the predicate after *esse*. — *in*, prep. with

that they, hav- ing very often met them, could not bear even their looks and the fierceness of their eyes — sud- denly so great alarm seized the entire army as to disturb great- ly the minds and feelings of	praedicābant, — saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs 7 they boasted, — oftentimes themselves with them
	congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem 8 having met not countenance even and sharpness
	oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus 9 of eyes, they said to bear to have been able, — so great
	subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, 10 suddenly, fear all the army seized,
	ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs 11 that not moderately, of all, the minds

the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl., denoting *the being* in a certain state. — **armis**, abl. plur. of *arma*, -ōrum, n.; plur.; obj. of the prep. *in*. See l. 11, Chap. IV. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; infinitive, because in informal indirect discourse; subject-acc. is *Germānōs*, l. 5, above.

LINE 7. **praedicābant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *praedicō*, 1 = lit. *to speak before*. Originally *dicāre* = *dicere*; but in later use *dicāre* = *to consecrate*, and *dicere* = *to speak*; but the compound *praedicāre* = *praedicere*; yet note the difference both as to conjugation and length of vowels in the penults and antepenults. — **saepenumērō**, adv. = *oftentimes*. Often written: *saepe numerō*; in such lection *numerō* is abl. of specification. A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; II. 424. — **sēsē**, reduplicated *sē*; acc. plur.; subject-acc. of *potuisse*, l. 9, below. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. — **hīs**, abl. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *cum*.

LINE 8. **congressōs**, acc. plur. m. of deponent participle *cōngressus*, -a, -um of deponent *congrēdiōr*, -ī, -gressus, 3; agrees with the pron. *sēsē*. — **nē**, adv.; here = *not*. — **vultum**, acc. sing. of *vultus*, -ūs, m.; direct obj. of *ferre*, l. 9, below. — **quidem**, adv.; preceded by *nē*, and encloses the emphatic word. — **atque** (ad + *que*), conj. See l. 10, Chap. I. — **aciem**, acc. sing. of *aciēs*, -ē, f. (kindred with *ācer*, sharp); hence = lit. *the sharp edge*; transf. = *the glance of the eye*. As *straight glances* suggest *straight lines*, *aciēs* by metonymy often = *a line of battle*. Observe that the context is often the criterion by which the meaning of a Latin word is ascertained.

LINE 9. **oculōrum**, gen. plur. of *oculus*, -ī, m.; limits *aciem*. — **dicēbant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *dicō*, 3; connected with *praedicābant*, l. 7, above, by an omitted conj., and is in the same grammatical construction, i.e. agrees with *quī*, l. 4, above, as subject-nom. Observe that the iterative imperf. = *they kept saying*. — **ferre**, pres. inf. act. of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *latum*; complementary inf.; depends on *potuisse*. — **potuisse**, perf. inf. of intrans. verb *possum*, *posse* (potis + *sum*); its subject-acc. is *sēsē*, l. 7, above. — **tantus**, adj.; an attributive of *timor*.

LINE 10. **subitō**, adv. (*subitus* [sub + *ire*, to go under, i.e. *secretly*]; hence adv. = *suddenly*); modifies *occupāvit*. — **timor**, -ōris, f. (*timēre*, to fear); subject-nom. of *occupāvit*. Synonyms: l. 14, Chap. XXVII. — **omnem**, acc. sing. of adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive of *exercitum*. Synonyms: l. 7, Chap. II. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. of *exercitus*, -tūs, m.; direct obj. of *occupāvit*. — **occupāvit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *occupō*, 1 (ob + *capere*, to seize on); agrees with the subject-nom. *timor*.

LINE 11. **ut**, ecbatic conj. — **nōn** (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*), negative particle; if the construction were telic, *nē* would be in place of *ut nōn*. — **mediocriter**, adv.;

12 animōsque	perturbāret.	Hic	primum	all. This alarm first started from the tribunes of the soldiers, and the other commanders who followed Caesar from the city of Rome out of friendship,
feelings and,	it disturbed.	This (fear)	first	
13 ortus est	ā tribūnīs	mīlitum,	praefectīs	
arose	from the tribunes	of the soldiers,	prefects	
14 reliquīsque,	quī	ex urbe	amīctīiae	
remaining and,	who	from the city,	of friendship	

modifies *perturbāret*. Observe that *nōn mediocriter* = lit. *not moderately*, i.e. *greatly*; litotes — expresses a notion by denying the contrary. — *omnium*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e, used substantively; limits both *mentēs* and *animōs*. — *mentēs*, acc. plur. of *mēns*, *mentis*, f.; direct obj. of the verb *perturbāret*. Synonyms: l. 2, Chap. XXXIII.

LINE 12. *animōsque* (*animōs* + *que*). *animōs*, acc. plur. of *animus*, -ī, m.; connected by *que* with *mentēs*, and in the same construction. With *animus* compare *anima*, GK. ψυχή, *the animal spirit*; *animus*, GK. θυμός = *the rational spirit*. *Ipse animus ab anima ductus est*. Cicero. — *perturbāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *perturbō*, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *timor*; subjunctive of result after *ut*, referring to *tantus*. A. & G. 319, 1; B. 201, REM. 1, (a); G. 552, 2 and 3; II. 500, II. This long sentence, commencing with l. 1, and ending with *perturbāret*, may be analyzed as follows: The principal clause is *tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupāvit*; the principal clause is modified by the time-clause *dum . . . morātur*; it is modified by the causal phrases *ex percontātiōne . . . mercātorum*; which latter phrases are modified by the relative, i.e. adjective-clauses *quī . . . praedicābant*, and *quī* understood *saepenumērō . . . dicebant*, with the infinitive-clauses as direct object of these verbs of saying; and, moreover, the principal clause is modified by the *ut . . . perturbāret*, as an adverbial clause of result. As to the omission of the rel. *quī* in the second clause, see II. 453, 2, (2). — *Hic*, nom. sing. m. of the dem. pron.; an attributive of *timor*, to be supplied, which latter is subject-nom. of *ortus est*. — *primum*, adv.; usually = *first* in a series.

LINE 13. *ortus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of deponent *orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus*, 4; agrees with *timor* understood. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. See l. 6, Chap. I. — *tribūnīs*, abl. plur. of *tribūnus*, -ī, m.; abl. of the source after the prep. *ā*. A. & G. 244; B. 120, 2; G. 408, 3; II. 413. Each legion had six tribunes, a species of staff-officers, appointed by the commander from the equestrian order. — *mīlitum*, gen. plur. of *miles*, -itis, m.; limits *tribūnīs*. — *praefectīs*, abl. plur. of *praefectus*, -ī, m.; connected by an enclitic with *tribūnīs*, and abl. for the same reason. The *praefecti* were commanders of the horse, and had duties to perform similar to the *tribūnī* in the infantry. The *praefecti equitum* were largely cavalry officers recruited from the Gauls.

LINE 14. *reliquīsque* (*reliquīs* + *que*). *reliquīs*, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *praefectīs*. *que*, enclitic conj.; here to the second of the two words connected. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to both the tribunes and prefects; subject-nom. of *habēbant*, l. 16, below. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *urbe*, abl. sing. of *urbs*, *urbis*, f.; obj. of the prep. *ex*; refers to Rome. — *amīctīiae*, gen. sing. of *amīctia*, -ae, f.; depends on *causā*. See l. 2, above.



and who had no great experience in military affairs. And each one of these offering a different excuse, which, as he said, made it necessary for him to go, begged to be allowed to withdraw. Some in-	causā	Caesarem	secūti	nōn	māgnum	15	
	for the sake	Caesar	having followed	not	great,		
	in	rē	militārī	ūsum	habēbant;	quōrum	16
	in the thing	military,	use	had;		of whom	
	alius	aliā	causā	il(n)lātā,	quam	17	
	another,	another	reason	being presented,	which		
	sibi	ad	proficiscendum	necessāriam	esse	18	
	to himself	for	setting out	necessary	to be,		
	diceret,	petēbat,	ut	ēius	voluntāte	discēdere	19
	he said,	sought,	that	by his	will	to depart	

LINE 15. *causā*, abl. of *causa*, -ae, f. See l. 2, above. — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; direct obj. of deponent participle *secūti*. — *secūti*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle of the deponent *sequor*, -i, *secūtum*, 3; agrees with the rel. pron. *quī*. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *māgnum*. — *māgnum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *ūsum*.

LINE 16. *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it has the abl. See l. 1, Chap. I. — *rē*, abl. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *militārī*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *militāris*, -re; an *īstem*; *militārī* is an attributive of *rē*. — *ūsum*, acc. sing. of *ūsus*, -ūs, m. (*ūti*, to use); direct obj. of *habēbant*. — *habēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *habēo*, 2; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*, l. 14, above. — *quōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*; partitive after *alius*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 371; H. 397, 3.

LINE 17. *alius*, nom. sing. of the adj. pron. *alius*, -ia, -iud, gen. *alius*, dat. *ali*; subject-nom. of *petēbat*. Observe that *alius* repeated in another case expresses only the second part of the statement, but implies the other part. A. & G. 203, c; B. 56, REM. 2; G. 221, REM. 1; H. 459, 1). — *aliā*, abl. sing. f. of *alius*; an attributive of *causā*. — *causā*, abl. sing. of *causa*, -ae, f.; abl. absolute with *il(n)lātā*. — *il(n)lātā*, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *illātus*, -a, -um of *inferō*, -ferre, -tulī, *illātum*; abl. absolute with *causā*, denoting *circumstance attendant*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *causā*; is subject-acc. of *esse*.

LINE 18. *sibi*, dat. sing. of reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of reference. A. & G. 235; B. 118, 2, and 145; G. 352; H. 384, II, 2). — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *proficiscendum*, acc. of the gerund of the deponent *proficiscor*, 3; acc. of purpose after the prep. *ad*. — *necessāriam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *necessārius*, -a, -um; predicate-adj. after *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; its subject-acc. is *quam*. Observe that the infinitive-clause *quam . . . necessāriam esse* is the direct obj. of *diceret*.

LINE 19. *diceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dicō*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *alius*; subjunctive by proxy instead of the subjunctive of the verb in the clause which depends on *diceret*, i.e. the sentiment of another is expressed by *diceret* with a dependent infinitive-clause instead of the subjunctive of the verb in the clause. The natural Latin form would be: *quae sibi ad proficiscendum necessāria esset*. A. & G. 341, d, and REM.; B. 198, (δ), and REM. 1; G. 628; H. 516, II, 1, NOTE. Observe that the reciprocal relation denoted by *alius aliā causā* is inferred rather than expressed. If another was presenting another reason, the inference is that one was presenting one reason; or which

20	licēret; <i>it might be lawful;</i>	nōnnūllī <i>some</i>	pudōre <i>by shame</i>	adductī, <i>being led,</i>	fluenced by a sense of shame remained, in or- der to escape the suspicion of cowardice. These could neither control their countenances, nor sometimes restrain their tears; but skulk- ing in their tents lamented their own fate,
21	ut <i>in order that,</i>	timōris <i>of alarm</i>	suspiciōnem <i>the suspicion</i>	vitārent, <i>they might shun,</i>	
22	remanēbant. <i>remained.</i>	Hī <i>These</i>	neque <i>neither</i>	vultum <i>the countenance</i>	fingerē <i>to fashion,</i>
23	neque <i>nor</i>	interdum <i>sometimes</i>	lacrimās <i>the tears</i>	tenēre <i>to keep back</i>	poterant; <i>were able;</i>
24	abditī <i>hiding (themselves) in</i>	in <i>in</i>	tabernāculīs <i>tents</i>	aut <i>either</i>	suum <i>their own</i>

is the same: *one was presenting one reason, another another.* — **petēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *petō*, 3; agrees with subject-nom. *alius*, l. 17, above. — **ut**, telic conj. — **ēius**, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron., used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; limits *voluntāte*. — **voluntāte**, abl. sing. of *voluntās*, -*dis*, f.; abl. of specification or cause. Synonyms: l. 19, Chap. VII. — **discēdere**, pres. inf. act. of *discedō*, -*ere*, -*cessi*, -*cessum*, 3; supply *sibi* before the inf., after *licēret*.

LINE 20. **licēret**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of impersonal verb *licet*, 2; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Observe that the clause is the direct obj. of *petēbat*. — **nōnnūllī**, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *nōnnūllus*, -*a*, -*um* (*nōn* + *nūllus*); used substantively, and = *some*; subject-nom. of *remanēbant*. — **pudōre**, abl. sing. of *pudor*, -*oris*, m. (*pudet*, it shames); abl. of subjective cause. — **adductī**, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *adductus* of the verb *adducō*, 3; it agrees with *nōnnūllī*.

LINE 21. **ut**, telic conj. — **timōris**, gen. sing. of *timor*, -*oris*, f.; limits *suspiciōnem*. Synonyms: l. 13, Chap. XXIII. — **suspiciōnem**, acc. sing. of *suspiciō*, -*ōnis*, f.; direct obj. of *vitārent*. — **vitārent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *vitō*, 1; agrees with a pronoun implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to *nōnnūllī*; subjunctive after *ut*, telic. Observe that *vitāre* is used both transitive and intransitive.

LINE 22. **remanēbant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *remanēō*, -*ēre*, -*mānsī*, -*mānsum*, 2 (*re* + *manēre* = *to stay behind*); agrees with its subject-nom. *nōnnūllī*. — **Hī**, nom. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to *nōnnūllī*; subject-nom. of *poterant*. — **neque**, conjunctive adv. = *lit. and not*; but *neque . . . neque* = *neither . . . nor*. — **vultum**, acc. sing. of *vultus*, -*ūs*, m.; direct obj. of *fingerē*. — **fingerē**, pres. inf. act. of *figō*, -*ere*, *finxi*, *factum*, 3; complementary inf., depending on *poterant*.

LINE 23. **neque**, see *neque*, preceding line. — **interdum** (*inter* + *dum*), adv. — **lacrimās**, acc. plur. of *lacrima*, -*ae*, f.; direct obj. of *tenēre*. — **tenēre**, pres. inf. act. of *tenēō*, 2; connected by *neque* with *fingerē*, and hence complementary inf. — **poterant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *possum*, *posse*, *potui*; agrees with subject-nom. *hī*.

LINE 24. **abditī**, nom. plur. of perf. pass. participle *abditus*, -*a*, -*um* of *abdō*, -*dere*, -*didī*, -*ditum*, 3 (*ab* + *dare*) = *lit. to give or put away*; *abditī* agrees with the omitted subj. of *querēbantur*, i.e. with *hī* understood. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — **tabernāculīs**, abl. plur. of *tabernāculum*, -*i*, n. (*taberna*, booth + diminutive ending -*culum*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **aut**, conj. = *or*. **aut . . . aut**

or bewailed the common danger with their intimate friends. Wills, as a general thing, were made throughout the camp. From the talk and alarm of these persons, even those who had much experience in camp-life, the soldiers and centurions	fātum fate	querēbantur they were lamenting,	aut or	cum with	familiāribus friends	25
	suīs their,	commūne the common	perīculum peril	miserābantur. they were bewailing.		26
	Volgō Generally,	tōtis through the whole	castrīs camp	testāmenta wills		27
	obsignābantur. were sealed.	Hōrum By their	vōcibus speeches	ac and	timōre alarm	28
	paulātim little by little	etiam even	eī, those,	quī who	māgnum great	in 29
	castrīs camp	ūsum experience	habēbant, had,	militēs soldiers	centuriōnēs centurions	30

= either . . . or. See l. 19, Chap. I. — **suum**, acc. sing. n. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *fātum*; refers to the subj. of proposition; hence = *their*.

LINE 25. **fātum**, acc. sing. of *fātum*, -ī, n. (*fārī*, to speak); hence *fātum* = that which is spoken — ordained; direct obj. of *querēbantur*. — **querēbantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of deponent *queror*, -ī, *questus*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *nōnnulli*. — **aut**, see *aut*, preceding line. — **cum**, prep. with the abl. — **familiāribus**, abl. plur. m. of the adj. *familiāris*, -e (*familia*, household); freq. used as subst., as here; abl. of accompaniment with the prep. *cum*.

LINE 26. **suīs**, abl. plur. m. of poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; attributive of *familiāribus*. — **commūne**, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *commūnis*, -e; a modifier of *perīculum*. — **perīculum**, acc. sing. of *perīculum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of deponent *miserābantur*. — **miserābantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of deponent *miseror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1; agrees with *hī* understood as subject-nom.

LINE 27. **Volgō**, adv. (digammated from GK. *ὄχλος*); also written *vulgō*; modifies *obsignābantur*. — **tōtis**, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *tōtus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *castrīs*. — **castrīs**, abl. plur. of *castrum*, -ī, n.; abl. of place without prep.; the prep. is omitted when the noun is modified by *tōtus*. A. & G. 258, f, 2; B. 170, REM. 2; G. 388; H. 425, 2. Observe that *castrum* = a fort; *castra* = a camp. — **testāmenta**, nom. plur. n. of *testamentum*, -ī, n.; subject-nom. of *obsignābantur*.

LINE 28. **obsignābantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. pass. of *obsignō*, 1; agrees with the subject-nom. *testāmenta*. — **Hōrum**, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hīc*, used substantively; or supply *hominum*; limits, as a gen., *vōcibus ac timōre*. — **vōcibus**, abl. plur. of *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.; abl. of cause. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. XXXII. — **ac**, conj.; connects the nouns. See l. 10, Chap. I. — **timōre**, abl. sing. of *timor*, -ōris, m.; same construction as *vōcibus*. Synonyms: l. 14, Chap. XXVII.

LINE 29. **paulātim** (*paulum*, a little + *tim*), adv.; modifies *perturbābantur*, l. 32, below. — **etiam** (*et* + *iam*) = even here, and hence an adv. — **eī**, nom. plur. m. of the dem. *is*; used as pron. of the 3d pers. = they or those; subject-nom. of *perturbābantur*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. of rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *eī*, but is subject-nom. of *habēbant*. — **māgnum**, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *ūsum*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.

LINE 30. **castrīs**, abl. plur. of *castrum*, -ī (see l. 27, above); obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe the position of the phrase — between the noun and its modifier. — **ūsum**,

31	que and,	quique who and,	equitatūi the cavalry	praeerant, over were,	and the commanders of cavalry, were greatly disturbed; and such of them as wished to be thought less timid than the camp-followers said that they did not fear the enemy, but the narrowness of the road and the magnitude of the for-
32	perturbabantur. were perturbed.	Quī Who,	sē themselves,	ex his minus of these less	
33	timidōs timid	existimārī to be regarded	volēbant, wished,	nōn not	sē themselves
34	hostem the enemy	verērī, to dread,	sed but	angustiās the narrow passes	itineris of the route
35	et and	māgnitudinem the magnitude	silvārum, of the woods,	quae which	intercēderent intervened

acc. sing. of *ūsus*, *usūs*, m.; direct obj. of *habēbant*. — **habēbant**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *habēō*, 2; agrees with its subject-nom. *quī*. — **militēs**, nom. plur. of *mīles*, *-itis*, m.; in apposition with the pron. *eī*, preceding line. — **centuriōnēque** (*centuriōnēs* + *que*). *centuriōnēs*, nom. plur. of *centuriō*, *-ōnis*, m. *que*, conj.; connects *centuriōnēs* with *militēs*, and is in the same grammatical construction. The centurion was the commander of the sixtieth part of a legion.

LINE 31. **quique** (*quī* + *que*). *quī*, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *eī*, i.e. *decuriōnēs* understood; subject-nom. of *praeerat*. *que* connects the clauses. — **equitatūi**, dat. sing. of *equitātus*, *-ūs*, m.; dat. after *prae* in *praeerant*. — **praeerant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *praesum*, *-esse*, *-fui*; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*.

LINE 32. **perturbabantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. pass. of *perturbō*, 1; agrees with *eī*, l. 29, above. — **Quī**, nom. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *eī* understood, which latter is subject-nom. of *dīcēbant*, l. 39, below; *quī* is subject-nom. of *volēbant*. — **sē**, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; subject-acc. of *existimārī*. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **his**, abl. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. Observe that the phrase *ex his* is used for the partitive gen. *hōrum* after *eī*, the omitted subj. of *dīcēbant*, l. 39, below. A. & G. 216, b, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — **minus**, adv.; comparative of irr. positive *parum*; superl. *minimē*; modifies *timidōs*.

LINE 33. **timidōs**, acc. plur. of the adj. *timidus*, *-a*, *-um* (*timēre*, to fear); predicate-acc. after *existimārī*; cop. verb. Consult A. & G. 176, a and b; B. 130, 3, and REM. 2; G. 205, 206; H. 362, 2, 2), and 373, NOTE 2. — **existimārī**, pres. inf. pass. of act. *existimō*, 1; subject-acc. is *sē*. — **volēbant**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, irr.; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*. — **nōn**, adv.; modifies *verērī*. — **sē**, acc. plur. of *suī*; subject-acc. of *verērī*.

LINE 34. **hostem**, acc. sing. of *hostis*, *-is*, m. and f.; direct obj. of deponent *verērī*. Synonyms: l. 15, Chap. XI. — **verērī**, pres. inf. of deponent *vereor*, *verērī*, *veritus*, 2. Observe that the infinitive-clause *se hostem verērī* is direct obj. of *dīcēbant*, l. 39, below. — **sed**, adversative conj. — **angustiās**, acc. plur. of *angustiae*, *-ārum*, f. — rare in sing.; direct obj. of *timēre*, l. 38, below. — **itineris**, gen. sing. of *iter*, *itineris*, n.; limits *angustiās*. Synonyms: l. 1, Chap. XXXVIII.

LINE 35. **et**, cop. conj.; connects *angustiās* and *māgnitudinem*. — **māgnitudinem**, acc. sing. of *māgnitūdō*, *-inis*, f. (*māgnus*); connected by *et* with *angustiās*,

ests that lay between them and Ariovistus; and that a sup- ply of grain could not be easily furnished. Some even had told Caesar that, when he ordered the camp broken up and the	inter <i>between</i>	ipsōs <i>themselves</i>	atque <i>and</i>	Ariovistum, <i>Ariovistus,</i>	aut <i>or (as to)</i>	36
	rem <i>the thing</i>	frumentāriam, <i>frumentary,</i>	ut <i>that</i>	satis <i>not enough</i>	commodē <i>easily</i>	37
	supportārī <i>to be supplied,</i>	posset, <i>it might be able</i>	(themselves)	timēre <i>to fear</i>		38
	dicēbant. <i>they said.</i>	Nōnnūllī <i>Some</i>	etiam <i>even</i>	Caesari <i>to Caesar</i>	nūntiārant, <i>had declared,</i>	39

and in the same construction. — *silvārum*, gen. plur. of *silva*, -ae, f. (sibilated from GK. ὕλη); limits *māgnitūdinem*. — *quae*, nom. plur. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *silvārum*, and is subject-nom. of *intercēderent*. — *intercēderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *intercēdō*, 3 (inter + *cēdere* = lit. *to go between*); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in virtual *orātio obliqua*.

LINE 36. *inter*, prep. with the acc. Observe that it follows a verb compounded with *inter*, and that the prep. is often thus repeated. — *ipsōs*, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *ipse*, -a, -um; used here as an emphatic indirect reflexive. A. & G. 196, 2, and NOTE; B. 85, REM. 2; G. 311, 2; H. 452, 5; *ipsōs* is the obj. of the prep. *inter*. — *atque* (ad + *que*) = *and* or *and also*. See l. 10, Chap. I. — *Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; connected by *atque* with *ipsōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. Ariovistus was chief of the German clan Suevi. — *aut*, conj. alternative. See l. 19, Chap. I.

LINE 37. *rem*, acc. sing. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; also direct obj. of *timēre*. Observe that the construction is a species styled *antiphrasis* or *prolēpsis* for *ut rēs frumentāria satis commodē supportārī posset*. A. & G. 334, c, and 385, I; B. 310, 3, (c); G. 468; H. 636, IV, 3. — *frumentāriam*, acc. sing. f. of adj. *frumentārius*, -a, -um; attributive of *rem*. — *ut*, telic conj. here = *that not after timēre*, a verb of fearing. — *satis*, adv.; modifies the adv. *commodē*. — *commodē*, adv. (*commodus*, adj. = *advantageous*); modifies *supportārī*; as *ut* = *ut nōn* here, the phrase *ut satis commodē* = lit. *not enough advantageously*, i.e. *not very readily*.

LINE 38. *supportārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *sup(b)portō*, 1 (*sub* + *portāre* = lit. *to carry from beneath*; hence *to convey to*, *to furnish*; complementary inf., depending on *posset*. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui*; subjunctive of *purpose* after *ut*. A. & G. 331, f; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, and NOTE 1. Observe that *ut* equivalent to *ut nōn* is used in this sense only after *metuō*, *paveō*, *timeō*, and especially the deponent *vereor*. — *timēre*, pres. inf. act. of *timeō*, 2; supply subject-acc. *sē*. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. XIV.

LINE 39. *dicēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *dicō*, 3; agrees with pron. *eī* understood, referring to the soldiers, centurions and prefects alluded to above. The *orātiō recta* of lines 33–38: *nōn nōs hostem verēmur, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvārum, quae intercēdunt inter nōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī possit, timēmus*. — *Nōnnūllī* (*nōn* + *nullus*). See l. 20, above; subject-nom. of *nūntiārant*. — *etiam* (*et* + *iam*), a conjunctive adv.; here = *even* or *also*. — *Caesari*, dat. of *Caesar*, -aris, m.; indirect obj. — *nūntiārant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *nūntiō*, 1; for full form *nūntiāverant* (syncopated and contracted); agrees with subject-nom. *nōnnūllī*.

40	cum	castra	movērī	āc	sīgna	standards advanced, the soldiers would not obey; that, on account of their alarm, they would not march.
	when	the camp	to be moved	and	the standards	
41	ferri		iūssisset,	nōn		
	to be borne forward		he should have ordered,	not		
42	fore	dictō	audientēs	mīlitēs		
	to be about to be	to the order	obedient	the soldiers,		
43	neque	propter	timōrem	sīgna		
	nor	because of	alarm	the standards		
44	lātūrōs.					
	to be about to carry forward.					

1	XL.	Haec	cum	animadvertisset,	XL. Having observed this panic, Caesar called
		These (things)	when	he had perceived,	

LINE 40. *cum*, conj., temporal. — *castra*, acc. plur. of *castrum*, -ī, n.; sing. = *castle*; plur. = *camp*; subject-acc. of *movērī*. — *movērī*, pres. inf. pass. of *movere*, 2. — *āc*, conj., shortened form of *atque*. See l. 10, Chap. I. — *sīgna*, acc. plur. of *signum*, -ī, n. (kindred with GK. *εἰκὼν*), *signum* = lit. *a sign*; but in military use = *the sign of a cohort, a standard borne by the signifer*; hence *signa ferre* = *to bear the standards*, i.e. *to break up the camp*. *sīgna* is here subject-acc. of *ferri*.

LINE 41. *ferri*, pres. inf. pass. of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*. See *conversa*, l. 31, Chap. XXV. — *iūssisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *iubeō*, -ēre, -iūssī, -iūssum, 2; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. Observe that the pluperf. subjunctive is for the fut. perf. in *ōrātiō recta*. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *fore audientēs*.

LINE 42. *fore*, fut. inf., archaic for *futūrōs esse* here; and generally *fore* = *futūrus esse*. — *dictō*, dat. sing. of *dictum*, -ī, n.; dat. after *audientēs* — a word of obedience. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, and especially NOTE 5; H. 385, II, and especially 390, NOTE 3. — *audientēs*, acc. plur. of *audiēs*, pres. participle of *audiō*, 4, with the adj. force of *obedient*. Observe that *fore audientēs* (*audientēs fore*) = *audientēs futūrōs esse* — the fut. inf. of *sum* with a predicate-adj. — *mīlitēs*, acc. plur. of *miles*, -itis, m.; subject-acc. of *fore*.

LINE 43. *neque* (*nē + que*) = *and not*, a conj. adv. — *propter*, prep. with acc. — *timōrem*, acc. sing. of *timor*, -ōris, m.; obj. of the prep. *propter*. Observe that the phrase expresses the cause. A. & G. 245, 6; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 3; H. 416, I, 2. Synonyms: l. 15, XXIII. — *sīgna*, acc. plur. of *signum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of *lātūrōs* (*esse*).

LINE 44. *lātūrōs* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *ferō*; see l. 41, above; subject-acc. is *eōs*, i.e. *mīlitēs*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 40-44: *cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferri iūssisset, nōn erunt dictō audientēs mīlitēs, neque propter timōrem sīgna ferent*.

LINE I. *Haec*, acc. plur. n. of the dem. pron. *hic*; direct obj. of *animadvertisset*; refers to the state of things — the panic mentioned in the last chapter. — *cum*, conj. — *animadvertisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *animadvertō*, -ere, -ī, -versum, 3 (*animus + ad + vertere* = lit. *to turn the mind to*); agrees with *Caesar* understood; subjunctive after *cum* historical.

a council; and, summoning to it the centurions of all the classes, he censured them severely: in the first place for thinking that they ought to inquire or consider either in what direction they were being led, or with	convocātō having been called	cōnsiliō a council	omniumque of all and,	ōrdinum 2 the centuries
	ad id to that	cōnsilium council	adhibitīs having been admitted	centuriōnibus, 3 the centurions,
	vehementer exceedingly	eōs them	incūsāvit: he blamed:	prīmum quod, 4 first, because,
	aut quam either what	in partem in direction	aut quō or with what	cōnsiliō 5 purpose
	dūcerentur, they might be led,	sibi by themselves (it)	quaerendum to be sought	aut 6 ought or

LINE 2. *convocātō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *convocātus*, -a, -um of *convocō*, 1; abl. absolute with *cōnsiliō*, denoting *time when*. — *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; absolute with the participle. — *omniumque* (omnium + que). *omnium*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive of *ōrdinum*. See l. 1, Chap. I. *que*, enclitic conj.; closely connects the phrases. — *ōrdinum*, gen. plur. of *ōrdō*, -inis, m.; limits *centuriōnibus*. The *ōrdō* in military language = *centuria* — the century. There were two centuries in each manipule; six in each cohort; and sixty in each legion.

LINE 3. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *id*, acc. sing. n. of the dem. pron. *is*; an attributive of *cōnsilium*. — *cōnsilium*, acc. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. Synonyms: l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — *adhibitīs*, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *adhibitus*, -a, -um of *adhibeo*, 2 (*ad* + *habere*); abl. absolute with *centuriōnibus*. — *centuriōnibus*, abl. plur. of *centuriō*, -ōnis, m. (*centum*, hundred); abl. absolute with *adhibitīs*.

LINE 4. *vehementer* (adj. *vehemēns*, violent), adv. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *is*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; direct obj. of *incūsāvit*. — *incūsāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *incūsō*, 1 (*in* + *causa*). Synonyms: *incūsāre* = *to entangle one in a case* — *to blame him anywhere*; whereas *accūsāre* = *to call one publicly to account*. — *prīmum*, adv. = *the first in a series*. Observe that from *prīmum* to *futūram*, l. 77, below, the form of discourse is indirect. — *quod*, conj., causal.

LINE 5. *aut*, correlative conj. *aut . . . aut* = *either . . . or*. See l. 19, Chap. I. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the interrogative adj. pron. *quis, quae, quid* or *quī, quae, quod*; it modifies *partem*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. Position: l. 16, Chap. I. — *partem*, acc. sing. of *pars, partis*, f.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *aut*, see *aut*, immediately preceding. — *quō*, abl. sing. n. of interrogative adj. pron. *quis* or *quī*; modifies *cōnsiliō*. — *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; abl. of *manner* or *cause*, i.e. *in accordance with*.

LINE 6. *dūcerentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *dūcō*, 3; its subject-nom. is the pron. *eī* understood, referring to the centurions; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*; or better, an *indirect question*; the subjunctive is required here in direct discourse. — *sibi*, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of the agent after the gerundives. — *quaerendum* (esse), pres. inf. of pass. periphrastic conjugation — gerundive form — of *quaerō*, -ere, -sivī, -sītum, 3; used impersonally. — *aut*, see *aut*, preceding line.

7 cōgitandum	putārent.	Ariovistum,	sē	what design. He
to be thought ought,	they supposed.	Ariovistus,	himself	said that Ariovistus in Caesar's consulship
8 cōnsule,	cupidissimē	populī	Rōmānī	had most eagerly sought an alliance with the Roman people; why should any one think that he would so rashly renounce his fidelity? Caesar certainly was convinced
(being) consul,	most eagerly	of the people	Roman	
9 amīcitiā	appetisse;	cūr hunc tam		
the friendship	to have sought to gain;	why him so		
10 temerē	quisquam ab officiō	discessūrum		
unreasonably	any one from duty (to be) about to fall away			
11 iūdicāret?	Sibi	quidem persuādērī,		
should judge?	To himself	certainly to be persuaded,		

LINE 7. *cōgitandum* (esse), pres. inf. of pass. periphrastic conjugation of *cōgitō*, 1 (con [cum] + agitare); hence *cōgitāre* = to agitate something in the mind intensely, i.e. *think, reflect*. *cōgitandum* is used impersonally like *quaerendum*. These gerundive forms denote *necessity or duty*. — *putārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *putō*, 1; subjunctive, because in a *quod*-clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 4-7: (*Vōs incūsō*), primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō *dīcāmini*, *vōbīs* quaerendum aut *cōgitandum putātis*. — *Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-acc. of *appetisse*, l. 9, below. — *sē*, abl. sing. of reflexive pron. *suī*, referring to Caesar; abl. absolute with *cōnsule*, denoting the *time when*. Observe that two nouns or a noun and a pron. may be in the abl. absolute construction. Caesar was consul 59 B.C.; his colleague was M. Calpurnius Bibulus.

LINE 8. *cōnsule*, abl. sing. of *cōnsul*, -ulis, m.; absolute. — *cupidissimē*, adv., superl. of positive *cupidē*, comparative *cupidius*; qualifies *appetisse*. — *populī*, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; limits *amīcitiā*. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. of adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populī*.

LINE 9. *amīcitiā*, acc. sing. of *amīcitiā*, -ae, f.; direct obj. of *appetisse*. — *appetisse*, perf. inf. act. of *ap(d)petō*, 3; for *appetivisse*. — *cūr*, adv. (*quor*, contracted from *quārē*, but some make it from *cui + rē* = *for what reason*). — *hunc*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *discessūrum* (esse); *eum* would be the better form for the pron. in indirect discourse. But Caesar uses the demonstratives for personal pronouns with great freedom. — *tam*, adv.; modifies *temerē*.

LINE 10. *temerē*, adv.; anteclassic form *temeriter*; modifies *discessūrum* (esse). — *quisquam* (quis + quam), indef. pron., used in negative sentences; subject-nom. of *iūdicāret*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *officiō*, abl. sing. of *officium*, -ī, n. (ob + facere = lit. *to do for another*); obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *discessūrum* (esse), pres. inf. act., first periphrastic conjugation, of *discēssō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *hunc*.

LINE 11. *iūdicāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *iūdicō*, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to Ariovistus; in the subjunctive, because a *real* question in indirect discourse. A. & G. 338; B. 245, 3; G. 651; II. 523, II, 1. This might be taken as deliberative subjunctive; in direct discourse, *cūr iūdicet*. A. & G. 268 and 338, a; B. 245, 3, REM. 2, near end; G. 651, REM. 2; H. 484, V, and 523, II, and NOTE. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 7-11: *Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiā appetivit; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicat?* — *Sibi*, dat. sing.; indirect obj. after *persuādērī*; *sibi* refers to Caesar.



that, when his demands were known and the justice of his claims were clearly seen, he (Ariovistus) would neither reject his favor, nor that of the Roman people. But if, impelled by rage and folly, he should bring war upon them,	cōgnitīs being known	suīs his	postulātīs demands	atque and	aequitāte 12 the equity
	condiciōnum of the conditions		perspectā being clearly perceived	eum him	neque 13 neither
	suam his	neque nor	populī the people's	Rōmānī Roman	grātiām 14 favor
	repudiātūrum.		Quod (to be) about to repudiate.	sī As to which	furōre atque 15 if by fury and
	āmentīā madness	impulsus being driven,	bellum war		intulisset, 16 he should have brought on,

— **quidem**, adv.; emphasizes *sibi*. — **persuādēri**, pres. inf. pass. of *persuādēō*, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 (per + suādere = lit. to advise prevailingly); *persuādēri* is here used impersonally; strictly, the following accusative-clause *eum . . . repudiātūrum (esse)* is the subject.

LINE 12. **cōgnitīs**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus*, -a, -um of *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, 3; abl. absolute with *postulātīs*. — **suīs**, abl. plur. n. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *postulātīs*. — **postulātīs**, abl. plur. of *postulārum*, -ī, n.; abl. absolute with participle *cōgnitīs*, denoting time when. — **atque** (ad + que), conj. See l. 10, Chap. I. — **aequitāte**, abl. sing. of *aequitās*, -ātis, f. (*aequus*, equal); abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *perspectā*.

LINE 13. **condiciōnum**, gen. plur. of *condic(t)io*, -ōnis, f.; as gen. limits *aequitāte*. — **perspectā**, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *perspectus*, -a, -um of *perspiciō*, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum, 3; abl. absolute with *aequitāte*. — **eum**, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *repudiātūrum (esse)*; it refers to Ariovistus. — **neque** (nē + que), conj.; *neque . . . neque*, correlates = *neither . . . nor*.

LINE 14. **suam**, acc. sing. f. of the poss. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *grātiām* understood; refers to Caesar. — **neque**, see *neque*, preceding line. — **populī**, gen. sing. of *populus*, -ī, m.; limits *grātiām*. Synonyms: l. 17, Chap. VI. — **Rōmānī**, gen. sing. m. of the adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *populī*. — **grātiām**, acc. sing. of *grātia*, -ae, f. (*grātus*, pleasing); direct obj. of *repudiātūrum (esse)*.

LINE 15. **repudiātūrum (esse)**, pres. inf. of first periphrastic conjugation formed from *repudiō*, 1; its subject-acc. is *eum*, l. 13, above. — **Quod**, strictly an adverbial acc. = *as to which*; but in this position before *sī* it = *and* or *but*. — **sī**, conditional conj. — **furōre**, abl. sing. of *furor*, -ōris, m. (*furere*, to rage; compare Gk. *θῆρις*); abl. of cause after *impulsus*. — **atque** (ad + que), conj.; adds a more emphatic notion.

LINE 16. **āmentīā**, abl. sing. of *amentia*, -ae, f. (*ā* + *mente* = *far from one's mind*); connected by *atque* with *furōre*, and in the same grammatical construction. — **impulsus**, perf. pass. participle of *impellō*, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, 3 (in + *pelere* = lit. to drive on); agrees with the subj. of *intulisset*, i.e. Ariovistus. — **bellum**, acc. sing. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; indirect obj. of *intulisset*; *eis*, as indirect obj., is understood. See l. 15, Chap. I. — **intulisset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *inferō*,

17	quid	tandem	verērentur?	aut	cūr	dē	what, pray, had they to fear? or why should they despair of their own valor or his watchfulness? A trial of that enemy had been made in the memory of our fathers when, on the repulse of the Cimbri and Teutoni by Caius Marius, the
	<i>what</i>	<i>then</i>	<i>should they fear?</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>why</i>	<i>of</i>	
18	suā	virtūte	aut	dē	ipsius	diligentiā	
	<i>their</i>	<i>valor</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>of</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>diligence</i>	
19	dēspērārent?	Factum	ēius	hostis			
	<i>should they despair?</i>	<i>To have been made</i>	<i>of that</i>	<i>enemy</i>			
20	periculum	patrum	nostrorum	memoriā,	cum		
	<i>a trial</i>	<i>in fathers'</i>	<i>our,</i>	<i>memory,</i>	<i>when.</i>		
21	Cimbris	et	Teutonīs	ā	C. Mariō		
	<i>the Cimbri</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>the Teutoni</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>Caius Marius</i>		

*-ferre, -tuli, il(n)lātum, irr.*; subject-nom. is *Ariovistus* understood; subjunctive, because in a conditional clause in indirect discourse for the fut. perf. in direct.

LINE 17. *quid*, acc. sing. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis*; direct obj. of deponent *verērentur*. — *tandem*, adv. (tam + dem) = lit. *just so far*; hence *so long, at length*; in interrogative clauses = *then, pray*. — *verērentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *vereor*, 2; subjunctive, because a *real* question in indirect discourse. For references, see l. 11, above. — *aut*, conj., alternative. See l. 19, Chap. I. — *cūr*, adv. See l. 9, above. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. See l. 27, Chap. XIX.

LINE 18. *suā*, abl. sing. of the poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; an attributive of *virtūte*. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs, -ūtis, f.* (*vir*, man); obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *aut*, see *aut*, preceding line. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *ipsius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *ipse, -sa, -sum*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; it limits *diligentiā*; used also for the indirect reflexive to avoid ambiguity. A. & G. 196, i; B. 85, REM. 2; G. 311, 2; H. 452, 5. Observe that *ipsius* refers to Caesar, and *sua* before *virtūte* refers to the panic-stricken camp-followers. — *diligentiā*, abl. sing. of *diligentia, -ae, f.*; obj. of the prep. *dē*.

LINE 19. *dēspērārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dēspērō*, 1 (*dē* + *spērāre* = lit. *to be without hope*); subjunctive, because a *real* question in indirect discourse. Compare the references to *iūdicāret*, l. 11, above. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 11-19: *Mihi quidem persuādētur, cōgnitis meis postulātis atque aequitate condiciōnum perspectā hunc neque meam neque populi Rōmāni grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque amentia impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem verēmini? aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentia dēspērātis?* — *Factum* (*esse*), perf. inf. of *fio, fieri, factus*, used as pass. of *faciō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *periculum*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*; an attributive of *hostis*. — *hostis*, gen. sing. of *hostis, -is, m. and f.*; as a gen. it limits *periculum*.

LINE 20. *periculum*, acc. sing. of *periculum, -i, n.*; subject-acc. of *factum* (*esse*). — *patrum*, gen. plur. of *pater, patris, m.*; it limits *memoriā*. — *nostrorum*, gen. plur. m. of poss. pron. *noster, -tra, -trum*; an attributive of *patrum*. — *memoriā*, abl. sing. of *memoria, -ae, f.*; abl. of *time*. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171, and REM. 4; G. 393; H. 429. — *cum*, conj., temporal.

LINE 21. *Cimbris*, abl. plur. of *Cimbri, -orum, m.* (σκ. Κίμβροι); abl. absolute with the perf. pass. participle *pulsis*. The Cimbri were a German people inhabiting Holstein, Schleswic and Jutland. The Cimbri and Teutoni invaded northern Italy,

army seemed to deserve no less praise than the commander himself; a trial of the enemy had also been made lately in Italy, in an insurrection of slaves (and though originally without discipline), yet	pulsis having been routed,	nōn not	minōrem less	laudem praise	exercitus 22 the army
	quam than	ipse the very	imperātor commander	meritus to have merited,	vidēbātur; 23 seemed;
	factum a trial	etiam even	nūper recently	in Italiā in Italy	servilī 24 in a servile
	tumultū, tumult,	quōs whom	tamen yet	aliquid in some degree	ūsus 25 the experience

and were defeated by Caius Marius, near Verona, B.C. 101. — *et*, cop. conj. — **Teutonis**, abl. plur. of *Teutonī*, -ōrum, m. (*Teutonēs*, -um); connected by *et* with *Cimbrīs*, and in the same construction. The Teutons were a German people, who inhabited Zealand and the islands at the entrance of the Baltic Sea. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — **C.** = *Caiō*, abl. of *Caius*, -ī, m.; praenomen. — **Mariō**, abl. of *Marius*, -ī, m.; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. *Marius* is a name of Roman gens. Caius Marius was seven times elected consul, was conqueror of Jugurtha, and was a friend of the popular party.

LINE 22. **pulsis**, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *pulsus*, -a, -um of the verb *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*, 3; abl. absolute with *Cimbrīs* et *Teutonīs*. — **nōn**, adv.; modifies the adj. *minōrem*. — **minōrem**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *minor*, -ōris — *parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*. *minōrem* is an attributive of *laudem*. — **laudem**, acc. sing. of *laus*, *laudis*, f.; direct obj. of the deponent *meritus* (*esse*). — **exercitus**, nom. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; subj. of *vidēbātur*. Synonyms: l. 31, Chap. III.

LINE 23. **quam**, here a conj. = *than*. — **ipse**, an intensive pron. = *himself*; in apposition with *imperātor*. A. & G. 195, f; B. 85, REM. 1; G. 311, 1; H. 452, 1. — **imperātor**, -ōris, nom. sing. m.; subject-nom. of *vidēbātur* understood. The text with ellipses supplied is: *nōn minōrem laudem exercitus meritum esse vidēbātur quam ipse imperātor meritum esse vidēbātur*. — **meritus** (*esse*), perf. inf. of deponent *mereor*, -ēri, -itus, 2; complementary inf. — **vidēbātur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *videor*, -ēri, *vīsus*, 2; pass. of *videō*; in the pass. *vidērī* = *to be looked on*, or *regarded* in any way; hence = *to seem*. As *cum* . . . *vidēbātur* is a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*, we should expect *vidērētur* here. But Caesar uses the indicative to emphasize a fact. A. & G. 336 (2. *Subordinate Clauses*), d; B. 245, REM. 2; G. 628, REM. (a); H. 529, II, NOTE 1, 2).

LINE 24. **factum** (*esse*), perf. pass. inf. of *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus* (see *factum*, l. 19, above); supply *ēius hostis periculum* from lines 19 and 20; of which *periculum* is subject-acc. of *factum* (*esse*). — **etiam** (*et* + *iam* = *lit. and now*), adv. — **nūper** (*noviper*, from *novus*); modifies *factum* (*esse*). — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. locative. A. & G. 258, c; B. 170; G. 385; H. 425, I. — **Italiā**, abl.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **servilī**, abl. sing. m. of *servilis*, -e (*servus*, a slave); an *i*-stem; attributive of *tumultū*.

LINE 25. **tumultū**, abl. of *tumultus*, -ūs, m. (*tumēre*, to swell); abl. of time when. For grammatical references, see *memoriā*, l. 20, above. The allusion is to the revolt of the gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73–71. Synonyms: *tumultus* = *civil broils*; *seditiō* = *political commotions*; whereas *bellum* = *an armed contest between nations or states*. — **quōs**, acc. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*; it refers to *servilī* as if it were

26	ac	disciplina,	quam	ā	nōbīs	accēpissent,	the experience and training which they had received from us assisted them somewhat. And from this can be judged how much advantage there is in cour- age; for those whom they had
	and	discipline	which	from	us	they had received,	
27	sublēvārent.	Ex	quō	iūdicārī	posse,		
	assisted.	From	which	to be judged	to be possible,		
28	quantum	habēret	in	sē	bonī	cōnstantia,	
	how much	might have	in	itself, of good,	resolution,		
29	propterea	quod,	quōs	aliquamdiū	inermōs		
	for this reason	because,	whom	for a time	unarmed		

*servōrum* — synesis. A. & G. 199, (b); B. 129, REM. 7; G. 614, 3, (a); H. 445, 5. *quōs* is direct obj. of *sublēvārent*, l. 27, below. — *tamen*, adv. = *yet*; used to express contrast. — *aliquid*, acc. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *aliquis*, *aliquid*; acc. of specification. A. & G. 240, a; B. 150, REM. 2; G. 333; H. 378, 2. — *usus*, -ūs, m.; subject-nom. of *sublēvārent*, l. 27, below.

LINE 26. *ac*, conj.; connects the nouns. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *disciplina*, -ae, f.; connected by *ac* with *usus*, and in the same construction. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to the nearest noun, and understood with *usus*; direct obj. of *accēpissent*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *nōbīs*, abl. plur. of the personal pron. *egō*; obj. of the prep. *ā*. — *accēpissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *accipio*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (ad + capere); agrees with *hostēs* understood as subject-nom.; subjunctive by attraction.

LINE 27. *sublēvārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *sublēvō*, 1; agrees with *usus* and *disciplina* as subject-nominatives; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *orātiō obliqua*. The *orātiō recta* of lines 19-27: Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplina, quam ā nōbīs acciperunt sublēvābant. — *Ex*, prep. with the abl. — *quō*, abl. sing. n. of the rel. pron. *quī*; used substantively; refers to *periculum*, as indicated in the previous sentences; and is also the herald of the following *quod*-clause. At the beginning of a sentence *ex quō* = *et ex hōc*. — *iūdicārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *iudicō*, 1; complementary inf.; depends on *posse*. — *posse*, pres. inf. of the intrans. *possum*, *potuī*; used here impersonally; in strictness, the following clause *quantum habēret* ... *cōnstantia* is the subject.

LINE 28. *quantum*, acc. sing. n. of the interrogative adj. *quantus*, -a, -um; used as a subst.; direct obj. of *habēret*. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *habeo*, 2; its subject-nom. is *cōnstantia*; subjunctive, because an indirect question. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *sē*, abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; obj. of the prep. *in*; it refers to *cōnstantia*. — *bonī*, gen. sing. n. of the adj. *bonus*, -a, -um, used as a noun; partitive gen. after *quantum*. A. & G. 216, 3; B. 134, REM. 1; G. 369; H. 397, 3. Observe that *quantum bonī* = lit. *how much of good*. — *cōnstantia*, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *habēret*. Note the emphasis as indicated by the order of the words.

LINE 29. *propterea* (propter + eā), adv. — *quod*, conj. See l. 9, Chap. I. — *quōs*, acc. plur. of the rel. pron. *quī*; its antecedent is *hōs*, following line. *quōs* is direct obj. of *timuissent*. Observe that the relative clause precedes the antecedent clause — a not unusual arrangement. — *aliquamdiū* (aliquam + diū) = *somewhat*

unreasonably feared for a time when unarmed, subsequently they vanquished when armed and flushed with the pride of victory. In short, these were the same parties with whom the Helvetii often fought not only	sine without	causā reason	timuissent, they had feared,	hōs these	postea 30 afterwards
	armātōs armed	ac and (whilom)	victōrēs victors	superāssent. 31 they had defeated.	
	Dēnique In fine,	hōs these	esse to be	eōsdem the same	quibuscum 32 whom with,
	saepenumero oftentimes	Helvētīi the Helvetii	congressī having met	nōn not	solum 33 only

long, for a while. The parts of the word are sometimes written separately; this adv. modifies *timuissent*. — *inermōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *inermus*, -a, -um (in, negative + arma); the adj. agrees with *quōs*.

LINE 30. *sine*, prep. with the abl. — *causā*, abl. of *causa*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *sine*. — *timuissent*, 3d pers. plur. of *timeō*, -ere, -uī, 2; it agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to the Roman soldiers; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. — *hōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; direct obj. of *superāssent*. *hōs* alludes to the gladiators. — *postea* (post + ea), adv.

LINE 31. *armātōs*, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *armātus*, -a, -um of *armō*; used as an adj. = *armed*; it agrees with *hōs*. — *ac*, conj. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *victōrēs*, acc. plur. of *victor*, -ōris, m. (*vincere*, to conquer); used as an appositive of *hōs*; but in connection with *armātōs* it has an adj. force. A. & G. 188, d; B. 127, REM. 1; G. 325, and REM. 2; H. 363, 2, 2). — *superāssent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *superō*, 1; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to Roman soldiers; subjunctive, because in a *quod*-clause in *orātiō obliqua*. Observe that *superāssent* is the contracted form for *superāvissent*.

LINE 32. *Dēnique* (dein + que = lit. *and then*); here a *time* particle, corresponding with *primum*, l. 4, above. — *hōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *esse*. *hōs* here refers to the Germans under Ariovistus. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, perf. *fuī*. — *eōsdem*, acc. plur. m. of the iterative dem. pron. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *quibuscum* (quibus + cum). *quibus*, abl. plur. of the rel. *quī*; obj. of the enclitic prep. *cum*. Observe that *cum* is thus appended to all the forms of the abl. of the rel. pronoun. Observe the anacoluthon, *quibuscum* follows *congressī*, but *superārent* requires *quōs*.

LINE 33. *saepenumero* (saepe + numero), adv.; sometimes *saepe numero*; in this lection, *numero* is an abl. of respect. — *Helvētīi*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *Helvētius*, -a, -um, used as a noun; subj. of *superārint*, l. 35, below. See l. 16, Chap. I. — *congressī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle *congressus*, -a, -um of *congrederi*, -gredi, -gressus, 3, deponent; agrees with *Helvētīi*; but translate as if *sunt* were expressed with *congressī*. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *solum* (adj. *solus*). Observe (1) that the particles *nōn solum* are used in contrast with *sed etiam* to indicate the passing to something more important; frequently *nōn modō*, *nōn tantum* . . . *verum etiam*, or *sed* alone are thus used; (2) that these particles express by antithesis what two copulatives *et* . . . *et*, *que* . . . *que*, *cum* . . . *tum* express by direct affirmation. — *solum*, adv. (*solus*, only).

34	in	suīs,	sed	etiam	in	illōrum	finibus	in their own bor- ders, but even in the German coun- try, and had usu- ally gained the victory over them;
	<i>in</i>	<i>their own,</i>	<i>but</i>	<i>also</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>their,</i>	<i>territory</i>	
35	plērumque	superārint,	quī	tamen	parēs			and yet they had usually gained the victory over them;
	<i>generally</i>	<i>have conquered,</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>yet</i>	<i>equal</i>			
36	esse	nostrō	exercitui	nōn	potuerint.	Si		and yet they had proved no match for our army. If
	<i>to be</i>	<i>to our</i>	<i>army</i>	<i>not</i>	<i>were able.</i>	<i>If</i>		
37	quōs	adversum	proelium	et	fuga	Gallōrum		for our army. If the unfavorable skirmish and flight of the Gauls
	<i>any,</i>	<i>the adverse</i>	<i>battle</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>flight</i>	<i>of the Gauls</i>		

LINE 34. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *suīs*, abl. plur. m. of the poss. and reflexive pron. *suus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *finibus* understood; refers to *Helvētii*. — *sed etiam*, see note on *nōn solum*, preceding line. — *in*, note the repetition of the prep. by which the notions are kept distinct. — *illōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *ille*, -la, -lud; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; limits *finibus*; refers to the Germans. — *finibus*, abl. plur. of *finis*, -is, m.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. II.

LINE 35. *plērumque* (*plērum* + *que*), adv. (*plērus* [*plūs*] + *que*) = *the greater part*. Observe that *que* is merely intensive. The adv. modifies *superārint*. — *superārint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *superō*, *i* (contracted for *superāvērunt*); agrees with the subject-nom. *Helvētii*; supply *quōs* as direct obj.; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. of the rel. pron. *quī*; refers to *Helvētii*; subject-nom. of *potuerint*. — *tamen*, adv. = *yet*, i.e. here it expresses the antithesis to an implied concession. — *parēs*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *pār*, *paris*; *parēs* is predicate-acc. after *esse*.

LINE 36. *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; complementary inf.; depends on *potuerint*. — *nostrō*, dat. sing. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; an attributive of *exercitui*. — *exercitui*, dat. sing. of *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; dat. after the adj. *parēs*, equal. A. & G. 234, a; B. 144; G. 359, REM. 1; H. 391, I. — *nōn* (*nē* + *ūnum*), adv. — *potuerint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *possum*, *posse*, *potui*; agrees with *Helvētii* understood as subject-nom.; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *orātiō obliqua*. The *orātiō recta* of lines 27-36: *Ex quō iudicārī potest, quantum habeat in se boni cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuerunt, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvērunt (superāvērunt). Dēnique hī sunt idem quibuscum saepenumērō Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque superāvērunt (superāvērunt), quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerant.* — *Sī* (original form *seī*, sibilated from *gk. et*), conditional conj.

LINE 37. *quōs*, acc. plur. of the indef. pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; direct object of *commovēret*. — *adversum*, nom. sing. n. of the adj. *adversus*, -a, -um (ad + *versus*); an attributive of *proelium*. — *proelium*, -ī, n.; subject-nom. of *commovēret*. Synonyms: l. 18, Chap. I. For account of this battle, see Chaps. XV and XIX, end. — *et*, cop. conj. — *fuga*, -ae, f. (GK. *φύγη*); connected by *et* with *proelium*, and in the same construction. We should expect a plur. verb; but the battle and flight are conceived as a single conception. A. & G. 205, b; B. 126, REM. 2; G. 211, REM. 1; H. 463, I. — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *Gallus*, -a, -um, used as a noun; limits *proelium* and *fuga*. Observe that Caesar here makes no distinction between the Helvetii and the other Gallic clans.

had disturbed any, they on investigation might discover that, when the Gauls were wearied with a protracted war, Ariovistus, after keeping himself in camp and in marshes many months, and giving no opportunity of meeting	commovēret, should disturb,	hōs, these,	sī, if	quaererent, they should seek,	reperire 38, to find out,
	posse, to be able,	diūternitāte, by the length	belli, of the war	dēfatigātis 39, having been wearied out	
	Gallis, the Gauls,	Ariovistum, Ariovistus,	cum, when	multōs, for many	mēnsēs 40, months
	castris, in camp,	sē, himself,	ac, and	palūdis, in swamps,	tenuisset, he had held,
	neque 41, nor	suī, of himself	potestātem, an opportunity	fēcisset, had made,	dēspērāntēs 42, (the Gauls) despairing

LINE 38. *commovēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *commoveō*, 2; subjunctive, because in a condition after *sī*. — *hōs*, acc. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; explanatory of indef. pron. *quōs*; but is subject-acc. of *posse*. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *quaererent*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *quaerō*, -ere, -sivī (-iī), -sītum, 3; subjunctive after *sī*, in the condition. — *reperire*, pres. inf. act. of *reperiō*, -ire, re(ϕ)peri, *reperitum*, 4; complementary inf.; depends on *posse*.

LINE 39. *posse*, pres. inf. of *possum*, perf. *potui*; its subject-acc. is the pron. *hōs*. — *diūternitāte*, abl. sing. of *diūternitās*, -ātis, f.; abl. of cause. — *belli*, gen. sing. of *bellum*, -i, n.; limits *diūternitāte*. — *dēfatigātis*, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *dēfatigātus*, -a, -um of *dēfatigō*, 1; abl. absolute with *Gallis*, denoting time when.

LINE 40. *Gallis*, abl. plur. m. of *Gallī*, -ōrum; absolute with *dēfatigātis*. — *Ariovistum*, acc. sing. of *Ariovistus*, -i, m.; subject-acc. of *vīcisse*, l. 45, below. Observe that this accusative-clause depends on *hōs reperire posse*, lines 38 and 39, above. — *cum*, conj. = *when* or *after*. — *multōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; attributive of *mēnsēs*. — *mēnsēs*, acc. plur. of *mēnsis*, -sis, m.; acc. of duration of time. A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379.

LINE 41. *castris*, abl. plur. of *castrum*, -i, n.; in sing. = *fort, castle*; in plur. = *camp*; abl. locative without a prep.; a rigid construction would make this an abl. of means. A. & G. 258, f. 1; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). — *sē*, acc. sing. of reflexive pron. *suī*; refers to *Ariovistus*; direct obj. of *tenuisset*. — *ac*, conj. See l. 10, Chap. I. — *palūdis*, abl. plur. of *palūs*, -ūdis, f.; connected by *ac* with *castris*, and as the same grammatical construction, i.e. abl. locative. — *tenuisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *teneō*, 2; its subject-nom. is a pron., referring to *Ariovistus*; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. — *neque* (*nē + que*), conjunctive adv. = *and not*.

LINE 42. *suī*, gen. sing. m., objective, referring to *Ariovistus*; limits *potestātem*. — *potestātem*, acc. sing. of *potestās*, -ātis, f.; direct obj. of *fēcisset*. — *fēcisset*, 3d pers. sing., pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; connected by *neque* with *tenuisset*, and subjunctive for same reason. The lit. translation of *suī potest. fēcisset* is: *he had not made an opportunity of himself*. Compare this Lat. idiom with English *he had not made a fool of himself*. — *dēspērāntēs*, acc. plur. of pres. participle of *dēspērō*, 1; agrees with *cōs*, i.e. *Gallōs* understood, as direct obj. of deponent participle *adoratum*.

43	iam	dē	pūgnā	et	dīpersōs	subitō	him, had suddenly already attacked him already despairing of a battle and scattered abroad, and had conquered them more by cunning and craft than by valor.
	already	of	a fight	and	scattered,	suddenly	
44	adortum	magis	rationē	et	cōnsiliō		ing of a battle and scattered abroad, and had conquered them more by cunning and craft than by valor.
	having attacked,	more	by planning	and	design		
45	quam	virtūte	vīcisse.	Cui	rationī		Not even Ario- vistus himself ex- pected that an army could be
	than	by valor	to have conquered.	For which	method		
46	contrā	hominēs	barbarōs	atque	imperītōs		
	against	men	barbarous	and	inexperienced		

LINE 43. *iam*, adv. = *already*; often of past or future time; while *nunc* puts the emphasis on the present. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: I. 27, Chap. XIX. — *pūgnā*, abl. sing. of *pūgna*, -ae, f.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. Synonyms: I. 15, Chap. I. — *et*, cop. conj.; couples *dēsperantēs* and *dīpersōs*. — *dīpersōs*, acc. plur. of perf. pass. participle *dīspērgō*, -ere, -spersi, -spersum, 3; agrees with *cōs* or *Gallōs*, to be supplied. — *subitō*, adv. (*subitus* [sub + īre], to come under, i.e. *secretly*); hence adv. = *secretly*; modifies *adortum*.

LINE 44. *adortum*, acc. sing. m. of *adortus*, -a, -um, perf. participle of deponent *adorior*, -iri, -ortus, 4; agrees with *Ariovistum*, I. 40, above. — *magis*, adv., comparative degree; superl. *māximē*; modifies *vīcisse*. — *rationē*, abl. sing. of *ratio*, -ōnis, f. (*rerū*, to reckon); abl. of means. — *et*, cop. conj. — *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. of *cōnsilium*, -ī, n.; connected by *et* with *ratione*, and in the same construction. Observe that here both *ratio* and *cōnsilium* express subjective conceptions, i.e. = *reason* and *judgment*; as compared with *virtūs* (*vir*), they were conceived by Caesar as very inferior means of winning victories.

LINE 45. *quam*, here = *than*, conj. — *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.; abl. of means. — *vīcisse*, perf. inf. act. of *vincō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *vīctum*, 3; its subject-acc. is *Ariovistum*, I. 40, above. The *oratio recta* of lines 36-45: *Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, sī quaerunt, reperire possunt,\* diuternitate bellī defatigātis Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuit neque suī potestātem fecit, Gallōs dēsperantēs iam dē pūgnā et dīpersōs subitō adortum, magis rationē et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse.* — *Cui*, dat. sing. of the rel. pron. *quī*; used here adjectively; an attributive of *rationī*; yet really refers to *ratione*, to be supplied with *hāc*, in the following line. Such incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause is common. A. & G. 200, *b*, especially the last example; B. 129, REM. I, (*a*); G. 616; H. 445, 9. — *rationī*, dat. sing. of *ratio*, -ōnis, f.; dat. poss. with *fuisse*.

LINE 46. *contrā*, adv. and prep.; here a prep. with acc. — *hominēs*, acc. plur. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; obj. of the prep. *contrā*. — *barbarōs*, acc. plur. m. of adj. *barbarus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *hominēs*. — *atque* (ad + que), conj. See *atque*, I. 10, Chap. I. — *imperītōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *imperitus* (in, negative + peritus); an attributive of *hominēs*.

\* The pres. subjunctive (*a*) might be used in both protasis and apodosis; or (*b*) the fut. ind., or (*c*) as it may be conceived to be a general condition, the perf. ind. in protasis and pres. ind. in apodosis. Thus (*a*) *Sī ... commoveat ... hī quaerant ... reperire possint*; or (*b*) *Sī ... commovebit ... hī quaerent ... reperient*; or (*c*) *Sī ... commovit ... reperire possunt*.



captured by this method, for which there might be room in conflicts with barbarous and unskillful men. Those who attributed their fear to a pretense of anxiety as to the grain supply and the narrowness of the road acted presumptuously, since they appeared either to despair of their commander's do-	locus room	fuisset, might have been,	hāc by this,	nē not (Ariovistus)	ipsum himself	47	
	quidem even,	spērāre to hope	nostrōs our	exercitūs armies	capī to be captured,	48	
	posse. to be able.	Quī Who,	suum their	timōrem fear	in to,	reī of the thing	49
	frūmentāriae frumentary	simulatiōnem the pretense		angustiāsque narrowness and,		50	
	itineris of the road,	cōnferrent have attributed, (these)		facere to act	arroganter, arrogantly,	51	
	cum since,	aut either	dē of	officiō the service	imperātōris of the commander,	52	

LINE 47. *locus*, subject-nom. of *fuisset*. See *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. — *fuisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *sum, esse, fui*; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *oratiō obliqua*. — *hāc*, abl. sing. f. (*hīc, haec, hōc*); an attributive of *ratione*, to be supplied; which latter is abl. of means. — *nē*, adv. here = *not*. — *ipsum*, acc. sing. m. (*ipse, -sa, -sum*); refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *spērāre*.

LINE 48. *quidem*, adv., restrictive; emphasizes preceding word. — *spērāre* (*spēs, hope*); pres. inf. of *spērō*, 1. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. m. (*noster, -trā, -trum*); limits *exercitūs*. — *exercitūs, -ūs*, m., acc. plur.; subj. of *posse*. Synonyms: l. 31, Chap. III. — *capī*, pres. inf. pass. of *capio*, 3; complementary, depends on *posse*.

LINE 49. *posse*, pres. inf. (*possum*); subject-acc. is *exercitūs*. — *Quī*, nom. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *cōs*, omitted subject-acc. of *facere*, l. 51, below; and is subject-nom. of *cōnferrent*. — *suum*, acc. sing. (*suus, -a, -um*); agrees with *timōrem*. — *timōrem*, acc. sing. m. (*timor, -ōris*); direct obj. of *cōnferrent*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the acc. — *reī*, gen. sing. f. (*rēs, reī*); limits *simulatiōnem*.

LINE 50. *frūmentāriae*, adj., gen. sing. f.; limits *reī*. See l. 37, Chap. XXXIX; observe the position of the adj., and see A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3. — *simulatiōnem*, acc. sing. f. (*simulā, -tiō, -tiōnis, f.*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *angustiāsque* (*angustiās + que*). *angustiās*, acc. plur. f. (*angustiae, -arum*). *que*, enclitic conj.; connects *angustiās* with *simulatiōnem*, and is in the same construction. See l. 3, Chap. IX.

LINE 51. *itineris*, gen. sing. n. (*iter, itineris*); limits *angustiās*. Synonyms: see *via*, l. 2, Chap. IX. — *cōnferrent*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, col(n)lātum*; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *oratiō obliqua*. — *facere*, pres. inf. of *faciō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *cōs* understood. — *arroganter*, adv. (derived from *ar(d)rogāns* [ad + rogāre] = *to appropriate another's traits*); modifies *facere*.

LINE 52. *cum*, conj., causal. — *aut*, alternative conj. See l. 19, Chap. I. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. See l. 27, Chap. XIX. — *officiō*, abl. n. (*officium, -i*); obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *imperātōris*, gen. sing. m. (*imperātor, -tōris*); limits *officiō*.

53	dēspērāre	aut	praescribere	vidērentur.	ing his duty, or to be dictat- ing to him.
	to despair	or	to prescribe (to him)	they seemed.	The following matters were en- gaging his at- tention: the Se- quani, Leuci and Lingones were to furnish the grain, and the grain was al- ready ripe in the fields; as to the roads, they
54	Haec	sibi	esse cūrae :	frūmentum	
	These (things)	to himself	to be for a care :	the grain	
55	Sēquanōs,	Leucōs,	Lingonēs	subministrāre,	
	the Sequani,	Leuci,	the Lingones	to furnish,	
56	iamque	esse in agrīs	frūmenta	mātūra ;	
	already, and	to be in the fields	the harvests	ripe ;	
57	dē	itinere	ipsōs	brevī tempore	
	concerning	the road	themselves	in a short time	

LINE 53. *dēspērāre*, pres. inf. of *dēspērō*, 1; complementary; depends on *vidērentur*. — *aut*, see *aut*, preceding line. — *praescribere*, pres. inf. act. of *praescribō*, 3; connected by *aut* with *dēspērāre*, and in the same construction; supply *ei* as indirect obj. — *vidērentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. pass. subjunctive of *videor* -*ēri*, -*vīsus*, 2 (see l. 23, above); subjunctive after *cum* causal. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 45-53: Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē Ariovistus ipse quidem spērabat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Qui *vestrum* timōrem in rei frumentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris *cōnferēbātis*, fecistis arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere *vidēremini*.

LINE 54. *Haec*, acc. plur. n. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); used substantively; subject-acc. of *esse*. — *sibi*, dat. of object to which of pron. *suī*; refers to Caesar. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, *fuī*, *futūrus*. — *cūrae*, dat. sing. (*cura*, -*ae*, f.); dat. of the end for which. A. & G. 233; B. 147; G. 356, and REM. 3; H. 390, NOTE 1, i). — *frūmentum*, acc. sing. n. (*frumentum*, -i); direct obj. of *subministrāre*. Observe that the accusative-clauses are appositives of *haec*, immediately preceding. Compare *frūmentum* and *frūmenta*, lines 2 and 5, Chap. XVI.

LINE 55. *Sēquanōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Sēquani*, -*ōrum*); subject-acc. of *subministrāre*. See *Sēquani*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *Leucōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Leuci*, -*ōrum*); same construction as *Sēquanōs*; note asyndeton. The Leuci were a people of Belgic Gaul. — *Lingonēs*, acc. plur. m. (*Lingonēs*, -*um*); same construction as *Leucōs*. The Lingones dwelt near the sources of the Marne, not far from the Vosges Mountains. — *sub(m)ministrāre*, pres. inf. act. (sub + ministrō, 1). Observe that *b* in *sub* is freq. assimilated. A. & G. 11, f; G. 9, 3; H. 34, 3.

LINE 56. *iamque* (*iam* + *que*). *iam* adv. Synonyms: l. 4, Chap. V. *que*, enclitic conj. — *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum*); its subject-acc. is *frūmenta*, immediately below. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the abl. — *agrīs*, abl. plur. m. (*ager*, *agrī*, m.); obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: see *agrum*, l. 12, Chap. II. — *frūmenta*, acc. plur.; subj. of *esse*. See lines 2 and 5, Chap. XVI. — *mātūra*, acc. plur. n. (*mātūrus*, adj.); predicate after *esse*.

LINE 57. *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *itinere*, abl. sing. n. (*iter*); obj. of the prep. *dē*. Synonyms: l. 2, Chap. IX. — *ipsōs*, acc. plur. m. (*ipse*, -*a*, -*um*); subject-acc. of *iudicātūrōs* (*esse*). See A. & G. 102, c; B. 85, REM. 1; G. 311, and 2; H. 452, 1. — *brevī*, adj., abl. sing. n. (*brevis*, -*e*); an attributive of *tempore*. — *tempore*, abl. sing. n. (*tempus*, -*oris*); time in which. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429.

themselves could judge in a short time. As to the report that the soldiers would not obey his orders, and would not march, he was in no respect agitated by that matter. For he knew that, if an army would not obey orders, either	iūdicātūrōs.	Quod	nōn	fore	58		
	(to be) about to judge.	As to the fact that,	not	to be about to be			
	dictō	audientēs	neque	sīgna	59		
	to the command	obedient,	nor	the standards			
	lātūrī	dīcantur,	nihil	sē	eā	60	
	to be about to bear	they are said,	nothing	himself, by that			
	rē	commovērī;	scīre	enim,	quibuscumque	61	
	thing	to be moved;	to know	for,	to whomsoever		
	exercitus	dictō	audiēns	nōn	fuerit,	aut	62
	an army	to command	obedient	not	has been, either		

LINE 58. *iudicātūrōs* (esse), fut. inf. act. of *iudicō*, 1; its subject-acc. is the pron. *ipsōs*. Synonyms: l. 9, Chap. XIX. The *orātiō recta* of lines 54-58: *Haec mihi sunt cūrae: frumentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agris frumenta mātūra; dē itinere (vōs) ipsī brevī tempore iudicābitis.* — *Quod*, acc. of specification of *quī* = *whereas*. See A. & G. 333, *a*; B. 123, REM. 21; G. 525, 2 and 3; II. 516, II, and NOTE. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *unum*); qualifies *fore audientēs*. — *fore*, fut. inf. — rare form for *futūrī esse*.

LINE 59. *dictō*, dat. sing. n. (*dictum*, -ī); after *audientēs*. A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391. — *audientēs*, nom. plur. of pres. participle *audiēns*, -ntis of *audiō*, 4; as predicate after *fore*; yet in agreement with the subject of *dicantur*. — *neque*, conjunctive adv. = *and not*, continues the negation introduced by *nōn*. — *sīgna*, acc. plur. n. (*signum*); direct obj. of *lātūrī* (esse).

LINE 60. *lātūrī* (esse), fut. inf. act. of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*. Observe that the participle part of this inf. is declinable; and is nom. plur. m., agreeing in number and gender with the subject-nom. of the pass. *dicantur*. — *dicantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive pass. of *dīco*, 3. Observe that the personal construction is used here; and consult A. & G. 330, *b*, 1; B. 194, REM. 1, (*a*); G. 528, 1; H. 534, 1, NOTE 1, (*a*). Observe that the sentiments are declared to be the sentiments of another; and that the verb used is in the subjunctive, while the verbs dependent upon it should properly be in that mode. See A. & G. 341, *d*, and REM.; B. 198, REM. 1; G. 525, 2 and 3; II. 516, II, and NOTE. — *nihil*, neuter noun; acc. of specification. A. & G. 238, *b*; B. 150, REM. 3; G. 333, REM. 2, and 442, NOTE 2; H. 378, 2. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subj. of *commovērī*. — *eā*, abl. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *rē*.

LINE 61. *rē*, abl. sing. f. (*rēs*, *reī*); abl. of cause. A. & G. 245, and 2, *b*; B. 165, and REM. 4; G. 408, and NOTE 2; H. 416, NOTE 1. — *commovērī*, pres. inf. pass. of *commoveō*, 2; its subject-acc. is *sē*. — *scīre*, pres. inf. act. of *sciō* *scīre*, *scīvī* (*sciī*), *scītum*, 4; supply *sē* as subject-acc., referring to Caesar. Synonyms: see *scīre*, l. 4, Chap. XX. — *enim*, conj. = subjective cause. — *quibuscumque*, dat. plur. m. (*quicumque*, *quacumque*, *quodcumque*); dat. after the phrase *dictō audientēs* = *obediēns*. A. & G. 227, FOOTNOTE, end; B. 142; G. 346, NOTE 5; H. 385, I.

LINE 62. *exercitus*, -ūs, m.; subject-nom. of *fuerit*. — *dictō*, dat. (*dictum*, -ī, n.); after *audiēns*; and this phrase in sense of *obediēns* takes the dat. after it. A. & G. 234; B. 144; G. 359; H. 391. — *audiēns*, in form a pres. participle, in use an adj.; predicate after *fuerit*. — *nōn*, adv. — *fuerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf.

63 male	rē	gestā	fortūnam	dēfuisse	good-fortune
badly	a thing	being done,	fortune	to have failed (them)	had failed its
64 aut	aliquō	facinore	compertō	avāritiam	commanders as
or	some	crime	being discovered,	covetousness	shown by want
65 esse convictam.		Suam	innocentiam		of success, or
to have been proved (against them).		His own	integrity		avarice had been
66 perpetuā	vītā,	fēlicitātem	Helvētiōrum	bellō	proved against
in an entire	life,	good-fortune	in the Helvetians'	war	them by the dis-
67 esse perspectam.		Itaque	sē,	quod	covery of some
to have been clearly seen.		Therefore	himself,	what	crime. His own
				to	integrity through-
					out life had been
					clearly seen, and
					his good-fortune
					in the Helvetian
					war. According-

subjunctive (*sum, esse, fui*); subjunctive, because in a dependent clause in *oratio obliqua*. — *aut*, alternative conj. Synonyms: lines 19 and 20, Chap. I.

LINE 63. *male*, adv., positive; comparative *pīus*; superl. *pessimē*; modifies *gestā*. — *rē*, abl. sing. f. (*rēs, rei*); absolute with perf. pass. *gestā*, denoting cause. A. & G. 255, d. 2; B. 192; G. 410; II. 431, 2, (3). — *gestā*, abl. sing. f. of perf. pass. *gestus*, -a, -um of *gerō, -ere, -gessi, -gestum*, 3; absolute with the noun *rē*. — *fortūnam*, acc. sing. f. (*fortūna, -ae*); subject-acc. of *dēfuisse*. — *dēfuisse*, perf. inf. of *dēsum* (*dē + sum*).

LINE 64. *aut*, see *aut*, immediately preceding. — *aliquō*, abl. sing. m. (*aliquis, -qua, -quod* or *-quid*); indef. pron.; an attributive of *facinore*. — *facinore*, abl. sing. n. (*facinus, facinoris*); abl. absolute with perf. pass. *compertō*. Synonyms: *facinus* (*facere*) = any bold wicked deed; *flagitium* = a crime against one's self; while *scelus* = an offense against others. — *compertō*, abl. sing. n. of perf. pass. participle *compertus*, -a, -um of *comperiō, -ire, -peri, -pertum*, 4; absolute with *facinore*. — *avāritiam*, acc. sing. f. (*avāritia, -ae*); subject-acc. of *esse convictam* (*convictam esse*).

LINE 65. *esse convictam*, perf. inf. pass. of *convinco, -ere, -vici, -victum*, 3. Observe that Dr. Anthon's text reads *esse coniunctam* = has been fastened; whereas *esse convictam* = has been proved. — *Suam*, acc. sing. f., poss. pron. (*suus*); an attributive of *innocentiam*; refers to Caesar. — *innocentiam*, acc. sing. of *innocentia, -ae*, f.; subject-acc. of *esse perspectam*.

LINE 66. *perpetuā*, abl. sing. f. (adj. *perpetuus*); an attributive of *vītā*. — *vītā*, abl. sing. f. (*vīta, -ae*); duration of time. A. & G. 256, 2, b; B. 153, REM. 2; G. 393, REM. 2; II. 379, 1. — *fēlicitātem*, acc. sing. f. (*fēlicitās, -ātis*); subject-acc. of *esse perspectam*. Note the asyndeton between the accusative-clauses. Synonyms: *fēlicitās* (*fēlix*, happy) = good fortune; *fortūna* (*fors*) = chance fortune. — *Helvētiōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*Helvētīi, -ōrum*); limits *bellō*. See l. 15, Chap. I. — *bellō*, abl. sing. n. (*bellum, -i*); locative; the notion of place is figurative. A. & G. 258, f, 1, end; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1) and 2).

LINE 67. *esse perspectam* (*perspectam esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *perspicio, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum*, 3. The *oratio recta* of lines 58-67: *Quod nō fore dictō audientēs neque signa latūri dicuntur*; — or: *quod (militēs) nōn dictō audient, neque signa ferent, ut dicitur*, — nihil ego hāc rē commoveor; scō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiens nōn fuit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam (eis) dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore

ly, he would do at once what he had purposed to defer to a more distant day:—break up the camp the next night dur- ing the fourth watch, that he might know as soon as possible whether among them a sense of shame and duty,	longiorem <i>a more distant</i>	diem <i>day</i>	collātūrus <i>about to postpone</i>	fuisset, 68 <i>he had been,</i>
	repraesentātūrum <i>(to be) about to do at once,</i>	et <i>and</i>	proximā <i>on the following</i>	nocte 69 <i>night</i>
	dē <i>in the course of</i>	quartā <i>the fourth</i>	vigiliā <i>watch</i>	castra 70 <i>the camp</i>
	mōtūrum, <i>(to be) about to move,</i>	ut <i>that,</i>	quam <i>how</i>	primum intellegere 71 <i>the first to know</i>
	posset, <i>he might be able,</i>	utrum <i>whether</i>	apud <i>with</i>	eōs pudor atque 72 <i>them shame and</i>

compertō avāritiam esse convictam. *Mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, felicitās Helveticūrum bellō est perspecta.* — Itaque (ita + que), conjunctive adv. = *and so.* — eē, acc. sing. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); refers to Caesar; subject-acc. of *repraesentātūrum (esse)*. — quod, rel. pron. acc. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); direct obj. of *collātūrus fuisset*; refers to idea expressed in *sē . . . castra mōtūrum (esse)*; freq. *id* is inserted before *quod*. A. & G. 200, e, and NOTE; B. 129, REM. 8; G. 614, REM. 2; H. 445, 7. — in, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here the acc.

LINE 68. *longiorem*, acc. sing. f. (*longior, -ius*); comparative of adj. *longus*; superl. *-issimus*; an attributive of *diem*. — *diem*, acc. sing. m. and f. (see l. 5, Chap. IV); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *col(n)lātūrus fuisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive, first periphrastic conjugation, formed from *cōnferō, ferre, -tulī, -lātum*; subject-nom. is Caesar understood; in the subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ordīō obliqua*.

LINE 69. *repraesentātūrum (esse)*, fut. inf. act. of *repraesentō*, 1; its subject-acc. is *sē*. — *et*, cop. conj. — *proximā*, abl. sing. f. (*proximus, -a, -um*, superl. of *propior*); an attributive of *nocte*. — *nocte*, abl. sing. f. (*nox, noctis*); *time when*. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 70. *dē*, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: l. 27, Chap. XIX. See also note on *dē*, l. 19, Chap. XII. — *quartā*, abl. sing. f. (*quartus, -a, -um*); ord. adj. — *vigiliā*, abl. sing. f. (*vigilia, -ae*). See l. 11, Chap. XII. *vigiliā* is obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *castra*, acc. plur. n. (*castrum, -ī*); direct obj. of *mōtūrum (esse)*. See l. 12, Chap. XII.

LINE 71. *mōtūrum (esse)*, fut. inf. act. of *moveō*, 2; connected by *et* with *repraesentātūrum*, and in same construction. — *ut*, telic conj. — *quam*, adv.; modifies *primum*. — *primum*, adv. (*primus*); with preceding *quam*, with or without *possum* = *as soon as possible*; the two words are sometimes written *quamprimum*. — *intellegere* (see l. 6, Chap. X); complementary inf., depending on *posset*.

LINE 72. *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *possum*; *purpose after ut*. — *utrum*, adv.; in indirect questions = *whether*; in direct, it is untranslatable; followed by an alternative *an*, as seen in the text. Questions thus introduced express the alternation of a double question; whereas *sive . . . sive* express the alternation by single words or phrases rather than by complete clauses. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. = *at, by, among*, etc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. (*is, ea, id*); as personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *apud*. — *pudor, -oris, m.*; subject-nom. of *valeret*. — *atque*, conj. See l. 10, Chap. I.

73	officium, an duty, or	timor plūs fear more	valēret. prevailed.	Quod As to which	or cowardice was the more influ- ential. But if
74	sī praetereā if beside	nēmō no one	sequātur, should follow,	tamen sē yet himself	no one else would follow him, he would
75	cum sōlā with only	decimā the tenth	legiōne legion	itūrum, (to be) about to go,	yet go with the tenth legion alone, concern-
76	dē concerning	quā nōn which not	dubitāret, did he doubt,	sibique to himself and,	ing which he had no misgiv- ings; and it
77	eam that (legion)	praetōriam a pretorian	cohortem cohort	futūram. (to be) about to be.	should be his body-guard.

LINE 73. *officium*, -i, n.; subject-nom. of *valēret*. — *an*, alternative conj.; see note on *utrum*. — *timor*, -ōris, m.; also subject-nom. of *valēret*. Synonyms: l. 14, Chap. XXVII. — *plūs*, adv., or adverbial acc.; modifies *valēret*. Consult A. & G. 240, a; B. 123, 5, REM. 21; G. 334, REM. 1; H. 378, 2. — *valēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *valeō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2; subjunctive, because an *indirect question*. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 67-73: Itaque *egō*, quod in longiorem diem collāturus fuī, *repraesentābō* et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam primum intellegere possim, *utrum* apud *vōs* pudor atque officium, an timor plūs *valeat*. — *Quod*, for its force, see A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453.

LINE 74. *sī*, conditional conj. — *praetereā* (praeter + eā), adv. — *nēmō*, -inis, m. (nē + homō); used in nom. and acc.; for other cases, *nūllius*, *nūllī* and *nūllō*; subject-nom. of *sequātur*. — *sequātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *sequor*, 3; subject-nom. *nēmō*; subjunctive in condition after *sī*. A. & G. 337, 1; B. 245, 4, (a); G. 590; H. 507, II. Observe that now the point of view of the speaker prevails — *repraesentātiō*. — *tamen*, adv., opposed to concession denoted by *sī*. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subject-acc. of *itūrum* (*esse*).

LINE 75. *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *sōlā*, abl. sing. f. (*solus*, -a, -um); limits *legiōne*. — *decimā*, abl. sing. f. of ord. adj. (*decimus*, -a, -um). — *legiōne*, abl. sing. f. (*legiō*, -ōnis); obj. of the prep. *cum* — abl. of accompaniment. Observe that the Roman legions were called *first*, *second*, etc., up to the tenth, according to the order in which they were levied. — *itūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of -eō, -ire, -ivī (-ivī), -itum; its subject-acc. is pron. *sē*.

LINE 76. *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *quā*, abl. sing. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); used substantively; or supply *legiōne*; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *nōn*, adv. — *dubitāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dubitō*, 1; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — *sibique* (*sibi* + *que*). *sibi*, dat. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); possessor after *futūram* (*esse*). A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. *que*, enclitic conjunction.

LINE 77. *eam*, acc. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *legiōnem* understood; which latter is subject-acc. of *futūrum* (*esse*). — *praetōriam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *praetorius*, -a, -um; an attributive of *cohortem*. — *cohortem*, acc. sing. f. (*cohors*, -hortis); predicate after *futūram* (*esse*). The cohort usually means the tenth part of a legion; but here, as modified by *praetōriam*, it = the general's *body-guard*. — *futūram* (*esse*), fut. inf. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*. Observe that with *futūram* ends the *ōrātiō obliqua* of the chapter. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 73-77: *Quod sī*

Caesar had specially favored this legion, and had put the greatest confidence in it because of its valor.	Huic legiōnī To this legion	Caesar et Caesar both	indulserat 78 had been indulgent
	praecipuē particularly	et and	propter virtutem 79 on account of its valor
	cōfidēbat was wont to trust	māximē. in the highest degree.	80

XLI. After the delivery of this speech, the minds of all were changed in a wonderful manner, and intense eagerness and enthusiasm arose

XLI. Hāc This	ōrātiōne oration	habitā, having been held,	mīrum 1 wonderful
in modum in, measure	conversae changed	sunt omnium were of all	mentēs 2 the minds,
summaque the highest and,	alacritās ardor	et cupiditās and eagerness	bellī 3 of (for) the war

praetereā nēmō sequētur, tamen ego cum solā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiq̄ haec praetōria cohors erit.

LINE 78. **Huic**, dat. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *legiōnī*. — *legiōnī*, dat. sing. f. (*legiō*, *-ōnis*); after *indulserat* — a verb of favoring. A. & G. 227; B. 142; G. 346, and REM. 2; II. 385, II. — **Caesar**, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *indulserat*. — **et** . . . **et** = both . . . and. — *indulserat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *indulgeo*, -ere, -duli, -dultum, 2 (in + dulcis); hence *indulgere* = lit. to be sweet — *complaisant*.

LINE 79. **praecipuē**, adv.; qualifies *indulserat*. — **et**, see *et*, immediately preceding. — **propter**, prep. with the acc. — **virtutem**, acc. sing. f. of *virtus*, -tūtis (*vir*); obj. of the prep. *propter*, expressing objective cause. A. & G. 245, b; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 408, NOTE 3; II. 416, I, 2).

LINE 80. **cōfidēbat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *cōfido*, -ere, -fīsus, 3; connected by *et* with *indulserat*, and in the same construction. — **māximē**, adv.; superl. of *multum* (*multō*, *māgis*); gives prominence to the idea expressed by the verb, and = *especially*.

LINE 1. **Hāc**, abl. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *ōrātiōne*. — **ōrātiōne**, abl. sing. f. (*ōrātiō*, *-ōnis*); absolute with the perf. pass. participle *habitā*. Synonyms: I. I, Chap. XXXII. — **habitā**, abl. sing. f. of *habitus*, -a, -um, perf. pass. participle of *habeō*, 2; absolute with *ōrātiōne*. A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — **mīrum**, acc. sing. m. (adj. *mīrus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *modum*.

LINE 2. **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the acc.; for position, see A. & G. 345, a, 2; B. 58, 2; G. 413, REM. 2; H. 565, 3. — **modum**, acc. sing. m. (*modus*, -i); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **conversae sunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. pass. (*convērtō*, -ere, -tū, -sum, 3); agrees with the subject-nom. *mentēs*. — **omnium**, gen. plur. m. (*omnis*, -ē), used substantively; limits *mentēs*. — **mentēs**, nom. plur. of *mēns*, *mentis*, f.

LINE 3. **summaque** (*summa* + *que*). *summa*, adj., superl. *summus*, -a, -um; comparative *superior*; superl. *supremus* or *summus*; an attributive of *alacritās*. *que*, enclitic conj.; unites the clauses. — **alacritās**, -tātis, f. (*alacer*, brisk); sub-

4	gerendī to be waged	innāta est; sprang up;	princepsque as foremost and,	decima the tenth	for waging the war; and the tenth legion was the first to return thanks to him through the military tribunes for the very high opinion he had expressed concerning it, and affirmed that every member of it was most resolute for prosecuting the war.
5	legiō legion	per through	tribūnōs the tribunes	militum of the soldiers	eī to him
6	grātiās thanks	ēgit, moved,	quod because	dē concerning itself	sē a most excellent
7	iūdicium opinion	fēcisset, he had formed,	sēque themselves and	esse to be	ad for
8	bellum the war	gerendum to be waged	parātissimam most prepared,	cōfirmāvit. he affirmed.	

ject-nom. of *innāta est*. — *et*, cop. conj. — *cupiditās*, -tātis, f. (*cupidus*, desire); connected by *et* with *alacritās*, and in the same construction. — *bellī*, gen. sing. n. (*bellum*, -ī); limits *cupiditās*.

LINE 4. *gerendī*, gen. sing. n. of the gerundive *gerendus*, -a -um of the verb *gerō*, 3; it agrees with the noun *bellī*. Consult A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, 1; G. 428; H. 543. Observe that the phrase is objective gen. — *innāta est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. indicative of deponent *innāscor*, -nāscī, -nātus, 3 (in + nāscī = lit. *to be born into*); agrees with the two nouns conceived as a single whole. A. & G. 205, b; B. 126, REM. 2; G. 285, EXCS. 1 and 2; H. 463, II, 3. Supply after *innāta est*: *in eōrum mentēs*, to complete the meaning. — *princepsque* (*princeps* + *que*). *princeps*, adj. with adverbial force = *primum*. A. & G. 191; B. 128, REM. 10; G. 325, REM. 6; H. 443. See *princeps*, I. 21, Chap. XII. *que*, enclitic conj. — *decima*, nom. sing. f., num. adj. (*decimus*); an attributive of *legiō*.

LINE 5. *legiō*, nom. f.; subj. of *ēgit*. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *tribūnōs*, acc. plur. m. (*tribūnus*, -ī); agent as means after *per*. A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 416, I, 2. See *propter*, I. 39, Chap. XXXIX. — *militum*, gen. plur. m. (*mīles*, -itis); limits *tribūnōs*. — *eī*, dat. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; indirect obj. after *ēgit*.

LINE 6. *grātiās*, acc. plur. f. (*grātia*, -ae); direct obj. of *ēgit*. — *ēgit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *actum*, 3; agrees with subject-nom. *legiō*. Synonyms: I. 6, Chap. XXXV. — *quod*, conj. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *sē*, abl. sing.; obj. of the prep. *dē*; *sē* refers to *legiō*. — *optimum*, acc. sing. n. (*optimus*); superl. of *bonus*; comparative *melior*; an attributive of *iūdicium*.

LINE 7. *iūdicium*, acc. sing. n. (*iūdicium*, -ī); direct obj. — *fēcisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive (*faciō*, 3); agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar* to be supplied; subjunctive, because the statement is made on another's authority. A. & G. 321, 2; B. 197 (b); G. 541; H. 516, II. Besides, the discourse is virtually indirect. — *sēque* (*sē* + *que*). *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subject-acc. of *esse*; refers to *legion*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects *ēgit* and *cōfirmāvit*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 8. *bellum*, acc. sing. n. (*bellum*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *gerendum*, acc. sing. n. of gerundive *gerendus*, -a, -um of the verb *gerō*, 3; agrees with *bellum*; the gerundive phrase expresses purpose. A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III, and 544, NOTE 2. — *parātissimam*, acc. sing. f., superl. adj. *parātis-*



Then the remain- ing legions with the tribunes of the soldiers and the centurions of the first centuries endeavored to apologize to Cae- sar, saying that they had never doubted or fear- ed or thought that decision as to the manage- ment of the war belonged to	Deinde Then	reliquae the remaining	legiōnēs legions	cum with	tribūnīs the tribunes	9
militum of the soldiers	et and	prīmōrum of the first	ordinum classes,	centuriōnibus the centurions		10
ēgērunt, treated	utī that	Caesarī to Caesar	satisfacerent; they might apologize;	sē themselves		11
neque neither	umquam ever	dubitāsse to have doubted	neque nor	timuisse, to have feared		12
neque nor	dē respecting	summā the management	bellī of the war	suum their own		13

*simus*, -a, -um; positive *parātus*; comparative *-tior*; predicate after *esse*; feminine, because *sē*, subject-acc., stands for *legiōnem*. Observe that *parātus* is a participle from *parō*, 1. — *cōfirmāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōfirmō*, 1; connected by *que* with *ēgit*, and has the same subject-nom.

LINE 9. *Deinde* (*dē* + *inde* = lit. *from thence*), adv.; here denotes a continuation of the series, of which *princeps* introduces the first. — *reliquae*, nom. plur. f. (*reliquus*); attributive of *legiōnēs*. Synonyms: l. 6, Chap. XXXII. — *legiōnēs*, nom. plur. f. (*legiō*); subj. of *ēgērunt*, l. 11, below. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *tribūnīs*, abl. of accompaniment after *cum*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168; G. 392; H. 419, l. The text in some editions is: *per tribūnōs et centuriōnēs* = *through the tribunes*, etc.

LINE 10. *militum*, gen. plur. m. (*mīles*, -itis); limits *tribūnīs*. See l. 13, Chap. XXXIX. — *et*, cop. conj. — *prīmōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*prīmus*); an attributive of *ordinum*. — *ordinum*, gen. plur. m. (*ordō*, -inis); limits *centuriōnibus*. — *centuriōnibus*, abl. plur. m. (*centuriō*, -ōnis); connected by *et* with *tribūnīs*, and in the abl. after the prep. *cum*. Observe that *cum . . . prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnibus* = *with . . . the centurions of the first classes or companies*, i.e. with the six centurions of the first cohort. See note on *ordinum*, l. 2, Chap. XL.

LINE 11. *ēgērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. (*ago*, -ere, *ēgi*, actum, 2). — *utī*, conj. = *ut*. — *Caesarī*, dat. sing. after *satisfacerent*; verbs compounded of *bene*, *male* and *satis* take the dat. — *satisfacerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *satisfaciō*, 3; subjunctive of result after *utī*. Observe that this result-clause is the obj. of *ēgērunt*. See A. & G. 332; B. 201, REM. 1 (b); G. 553, 1; H. 501, II, 1. — *sē*, acc. plur. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subject-acc. of *dubitāsse*.

LINE 12. *neque*, conj. See l. 16, Chap. IV. — *um(n)quam* (*unum* + *quam*), adv. — *dubitāsse*, perf. inf. of *dubitō*, 1 (*duo*, compare GER. *zweifeln* from *zwei*); hence *dubitāre* = to vibrate in two directions; in opinion = *to waver*. Observe that *dubitāsse* is syncopated and contracted for *dubitāvisse*. A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *neque*, see *neque* immediately preceding. — *timuisse*, perf. inf. act. of *timeo*, 2.

LINE 13. *neque*, see preceding line. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: l. 27, Chap. XIX. — *summā*, abl. sing. of the noun *summa*, -ae f. (from adj. *summus*); sc. *rēs* = lit. *the highest thing*, i.e. *control, management*. — *bellī*, gen. sing. (*bellum*, -i, n.); limits *summā*. See l. 15, Chap. I. — *suum*, acc. sing. n. of

14	iūdicium,	sed	imperātōris	esse	to them; but
	judgment (to be),	but	of the commander	to be,	thought it be-
15	exīstimāvisse.	Eōrum satisfactiōne	acceptā		longed to the
	to have supposed.	Their apology	having been accepted		commander.
16	et	itinere	exquīsītō	per	Having accepted
	and	the route	having been inquired into	through	their apologies,
17	Divitiacum,	quod ex aliis eī	māximam		and having re-
	Divitiacus,	because of others to (in) him	the greatest		connoitred the
18	fidem habēbat,	ut mīlium	amplius		route through
	faith he had, that, of thousands (of paces)	more than			the agency of
					Divitiacus — be-
					cause of all the
					other Gauls he
					had the greatest
					confidence in
					him — and find-
					ing it to be
					such as to con-

poss. pron. (*suus*, -a, -um); predicate after *esse*; refers to the tribunes as the speakers. Observe that the poss. adj. is used for the genitive of the personal pron.

LINE 14. *iūdicium*, acc. sing. (*iūdicium*, -ī, n.); subject-acc. of *esse*. — *sed*, adversative conj. — *imperātōris*, gen. sing. m. (*imperātor*, -ōris); predicate gen. after *esse*. A. & G. 214, c; B. 133; G. 366; H. 401. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*.

LINE 15. *exīstimāvisse*, perf. inf. act. (*exīstimō*, ī). — *Eōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 11-15: *Nōs neque umquam dubitāvimus neque timuimus, neque dē summā belli nostrum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvimus*. — *satisfactiōne*, abl. sing. of *satisfactiō*, -ōnis, f. (*satis* + *facere* = *to give satisfaction*); hence the noun = *excuse*; abl. absolute with *acceptā*. — *acceptā*, abl. sing. of the perf. pass. participle *acceptus*, -a, -um of *ac(d)cipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; absolute with *satisfactiōne*.

LINE 16. *et*, cop. conj. — *itinere*, abl. sing. n. (*iter*, *itineris*); abl. absolute with *exquīsītō*. Synonyms: see *via*, l. 2, Chap. IX. — *exquīsītō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *exquīsitus*, -a, -um of *exquīrō*, -ere, -īvī, -situm, 3; abl. absolute with *itinere* denoting *time when*. — *per*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 17. *Divitiacum*, obj. of the prep. *per*, denoting agent as means. A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *aliis*, abl. plur. m.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. Observe that *ex aliis* = lit. *of the others*, i.e. *the other Gauls*. Some editions read *ex Gallis*; others *ex aliis Gallis* here. The phrase seems to be a substitute for the partitive construction after the superl. See A. & G. 216, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *eī*, dat. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); as a personal pron.; indirect obj. of *habēbat*. — *māximam*, acc. sing. f. (*māgnus*, *māior*, *māximus*); an attributive of *fidem*.

LINE 18. *fidem*, acc. sing. f. (*fidēs*, -eī); direct obj. of *habēbat*. — *habēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. (*habēō*, 2); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *mīlium*, gen. plur. n. (*mīlia*, -ium); gen. of measure; supply as partitive gen. *passuum*. — *amplius*, adv. = *and more* — a species of appositive. A. & G. 247, c, and NOTE; B. 163, REM. 4; G. 296, REM. 4; H. 417, NOTE 2.

duct the army through an open country by a circuit of more than fifty miles, Caesar, in the fourth watch, as he had said, set the legions in motion. On the seventh day, while still en route, he was informed by scouts that the forces of Ario-	quīnquāgintā fifty,	circuitū by a circuit	locīs in the places	apertīs 19 open
	exercitum the army	dūceret, he might lead,	dē in the course of	quartā 20 the fourth
	vigiliā, watch,	ut dīxerat, as he had said,	profectus est. he set forth.	Septimō 21 On the seventh
	diē, day,	cum iter when the march	nōn intermitteret, not he did stop,	ab 22 by
	explōrātōribus scouts	certior more certain	factus est, he was made,	Ariovistī 23 Ariovistus'

LINE 19. *quīnquāgintā*, indecl. num. adj.; modifies *mīlum* used substantively. — *circuitū*, abl. of *circuitus*, -ūs, m. (circum + ire); abl. of means. — *locīs*, abl. of *locus*, -ī, m. (see *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II); locative abl. A. & G. 258, f. 2; B. 170, REM. 5; G. 385, NOTE 1; H. 425, 2. — *apertīs*, abl. sing. m. of adj. *apertus*, -a, -um (see l. 26, Chap. XXV); an attributive of *locīs*.

LINE 20. *exercitum*, acc. sing. m. (*exercitus*, -ūs); direct obj. Synonyms: l. 31, Chap. III. — *dūceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dūcō*, 3; agrees with a pron. as subject-nom., referring to *itinere*, l. 16, above; subjunctive of result after *ut*. Observe that of this loosely constructed sentence, *profectus est* is the main clause; that *ut . . . dūceret* depends on the participle phrase *itinere exquīsītō*. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *quartā*, ordinal adj., abl. sing. f. (*quartus*); limits *vigiliā*.

LINE 21. *vigiliā*, abl. sing. f.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — See l. 70, Chap. XL. — *ut*, adv. = *as*. — *dīxerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. (*dūcō*, 3). See l. 60, Chap. XL. — *profectus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of *proficiscor*, -ī, *profectus*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — *Septimō*, abl. sing. m. of ordinal num. adj. *septimus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *diē*.

LINE 22. *diē*, abl. sing. of *diēs*, -ī, m. and f. in sing.; m. in plur.; abl. of time when. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *cum*, temporal conj. — *iter*, acc. sing. n. (*iter*, *itineris*); direct obj. of *intermitteret*. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *unum*). — *intermitteret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *intermittō*, 3; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, 2. Observe that *intermitteret* might be here construed as a neuter verb with *iter* as subject-nom.; but the sense favors the syntax given above. — *ab*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 23. *explōrātōribus*, abl. plur. of *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.; abl. of the agent after *ab*. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. Synonyms: l. 7, Chap. XII. — *certior*, comparative degree of *certus* (see l. 11, Chap. VII); predicate adj. after *factus est*. — *factus est*, perf. pass. of *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus*, 3. Observe that *fiō* is used as the pass. of *faciō*; that most compounds with prepositions change short *a* to short *i* in the present-stem; while other compounds retain the short *a*, and have *fiō* in the pass. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing., limiting *cōpiās*.

24 cōpiās ā nostrīs milibus passuum quattuor | vistus were twenty-four miles distant from ours.  
*forces from ours by thousands of paces four*

25 et vīgintī abesse.  
*and twenty to be distant.*

1	XLII. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus	XLII. Ariovistus on learning of Caesar's approach sent envoys to him to say that his former request as to a conference might be granted so far as he was concerned, since Caesar
	<i>Being known Caesar's arrival Ariovistus</i>	
2	lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod antea	
	<i>legates to him sends: (saying) what before</i>	
3	dē colloquiō postulāset, id per	
	<i>concerning a conference he had requested, that through</i>	
4	sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius	
	<i>himself to be done to be allowed, since nearer</i>	

LINE 24. cōpiās, acc. plur. f. (*copia*, -ae); subject-acc. of *abesse*. — ā, prep. with the abl. — nostrīs, abl. plur. m. (*noster*, -tra, -trum); an attributive of *militibus* understood; obj. of the prep. ā. — milibus, abl. plur. of the adj. *mīlis*, -ium, used substantively; abl. of degree of difference. A. & G. 257, b; B. 164, REM. 3; G. 335, REM. 2; H. 379, 2. — passuum, gen. plur. m. (*passus*, -ūs); partitive after *militibus*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — quattuor, cardinal num. adj.; an attributive of *militibus*.

LINE 25. et, conj. — vīgintī, cardinal num. adj.; connected by *et* with *quattuor*, and is in the same construction. — abesse, pres. inf. of *absum*, -esse, *ab(ā)fuī*, *ab(ā)futūrus*; the subject-acc. is *cōpiās*.

LINE 1. Cōgnitō, abl. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus*, from *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, 3; abl. absolute with *adventū*. — Caesaris, gen. sing. (*Caesar*, -aris, m.); limits *adventū*. — adventū, abl. sing. m. (*adventus*, -ūs); absolute with the participle *cōgnitō*. — Ariovistus, -ī, m.; subj. of *mittit*.

LINE 2. lēgātōs, acc. plur. m. (*lēgātus*, -ī); direct obj. of *mittit*. — ad, prep. with the acc. — eum, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); as personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — mittit, 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. act. (*mittō*, 3); historical pres.; hence admits of either primary or secondary sequence. — quod, acc. sing. n. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *id*; is direct obj. of *postulāset*. — antea (ante + ea), adv.

LINE 3. dē, prep. with the abl. — col(n)loquiō, abl. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *dē*. — postulāset, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *postulō*, 1; for *postulāvisset*. A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. In subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. — id, acc. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); subject-acc. of *fieri*. — per, prep. with the acc.

LINE 4. sē, acc. sing. m. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); obj. of the prep. *per*. Observe that the prepositional phrase here denotes cause = lit. *through himself*, i.e. *so far as concerned himself*. — fierī, pres. inf. of *fiō*, 3; used as pass. of *faciō*. — licēre, pres. inf. of the impersonal *licet*, -cuit, -citum est, 2. — quoniam, conj. (*qom* + *iam*) = lit. *when now*. — propius, adv., comparative; superl. *proximē*.

had come nearer, and he thought he might attend it without dan- ger. Caesar did not reject the overture, and thought that A- riovistus was now returning to his senses, because he conceded of his own accord that which to Caesar's request he had previous-	accessisset, he had approached, facere posse to do to be able, condiciōnem the condition sānitātem sanity quod antea which before (to him)	sēque id sine periculō himself and, that without danger existimāre. to think (he thought). Caesar iamque eum Caesar, already and, him reverti arbitrabatur, to return he was thinking petenti dēnegasset, seeking he had denied,	ad 7 to id, 8 that ultrō 9 voluntarily
--	---	---	---

LINE 5. *accessisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *accēdō*, -ere, -essi, -essum, 3 (ad + cedere); its subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive after *quoniam*, causal — reason on another's authority. A. & G. 321, 2; B. 198, 6; G. 541; H. 516, II. — *sēque* (sē + que). *sē*, acc. sing. m. (*suī*); subject-acc. of *existimāre*. *que*, enclitic, connects the infinitive-clause *id . . . licere* with *sē . . . existimāre*. — *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); direct object of *facere*. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. — *periculō*, abl. sing. n. (*periculum*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *sine*.

LINE 6. *facere*, pres. inf. (*faciō*, 3); complementary; depends on *posse*. — *posse*, pres. inf. (*possum*, *potui*); subject-acc. is *sē* understood. — *existimāre*, pres. inf. act. (*existimō*, 1). The *drātiō recta* of lines 2–5: quod antea dē colloquīō postulāvisi, id per mē fieri licet, quoniam propius accessisti, egōque hōc sine periculō facere posse existimō. — *Nōn*, adv. (nē + ūnum, apocopated). — *respuīt*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respuō*, -ere, -puī, 3 (re + spuere = lit. to spit back or out); agrees with *Caesar* expressed. Observe the emphasis by the order of pred., obj., subj.

LINE 7. *condic(t)iōnem*, acc. sing. f. of *condiciō*, -ōnis; direct obj. — *Caesar*, subject-nom. — *iamque* (iam + que), conjunctive adv.; modifies *reverti*. *que*, enclitic; connects the clauses. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); as personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *reverti*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 8. *sānitātem*, acc. sing. f. (*sānitas*, -ātis); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *reverti*, pres. inf. of deponent *revertor*, -ī, -sum, 3; subject-acc. is pron. *eum*. — *arbitrabatur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. (*arbitror*, 1), deponent; agrees with the subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. Synonyms: I. 9, Chap. XIX. — *cum*, conj. — *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); direct obj. of *polliceretur*.

LINE 9. *quod*, acc. sing. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); direct obj. of *dēnegasset*. — *antea* (ante + eā), adv. — *petenti*, dat. sing. m. pres. participle (*petēs*, -ntis) of *petō*, 3; agrees with *eī* understood, dat. sing. (*is, ea, id*), used as a personal pron.; indirect obj. of *dēnegasset*. Observe that the participle with the pron. = to him requesting it, i.e. when he requested it; a circumstantial use of the participle denoting time when. — *dēnegasset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *dēnegō*, 1 (*dē*, intensive + aiō = nē + aiō); subjunctive, because an essential part of the sentence. A. & G. 342; B. 235, REM. 1; G. 629; H. 529, II, NOTE 1, 1). — *ultrō*, adv. (*ulterius*, further) = an action performed in an over-ready manner. Synonyms: see *sponte*, I. 4, Chap. IX.

10	pollicērētur;	māgnamque	in spem	veniēbat,	ly refused; and
	<i>he promised;</i>	<i>great and,</i>	<i>in hope</i>	<i>he was coming</i>	<i>was beginning to</i>
11	prō suis	tantis	populique	Rōmānī	hope that, in view
	<i>for his</i>	<i>so great,</i>	<i>of the people and,</i>	<i>Roman</i>	<i>of his own kind-</i>
12	eum	beneficiis,	cōgnitis	suis	postulātis
	<i>him,</i>	<i>kindnesses,</i>	<i>being known</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>demands</i>
13	fore,	utī	pertinaciā	dēsisteret.	from his obsti-
	<i>it to be about to be</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>from pertinacity</i>	<i>he would desist.</i>	<i>nacy when cogni-</i>
14	Diēs	colloquiō	dictus est	ex eō	nizant of his de-
	<i>The day</i>	<i>for the conference</i>	<i>was appointed</i>	<i>from that</i>	<i>mands. The fifth</i>
					<i>day after this par-</i>
					<i>ley was fixed on</i>

LINE 10. *pollicērētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of deponent *polliceor*, 3; subjunctive after *cum* causal. A. & G. 326; B. 198, (c); G. 586; H. 517. — *māgnamque* (*māgnam* + *que*). *māgnam*, acc. sing. f. (*māgnus*); an attributive of *spem*. *que*, enclitic conj. — *in*, prep. with the acc. and abl.; here it has the acc. See note on *dē*, l. 16, Chap. I. — *spem*, acc. sing. f. (*spēs*, -*ei*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *veniēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. (*veniō*, 4); agrees with the pron. understood, referring to Caesar.

LINE 11. *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *suis*, abl. plur. n. (*suus*, -*a*, -*um*); agrees with *beneficiis* understood; refers to Caesar. — *tantis*, abl. plur. n. (*tantus*, -*a*, -*um*); also agrees with *beneficiis* understood; which latter is the obj. of the prep. *prō*. — *populique* (*populi* + *que*). *populi*, gen. sing.; limits *beneficiis* expressed. Synonyms: see l. 17, Chap. VI. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects *beneficiis* understood with *beneficiis* expressed. — *Rōmānī*, adj., gen. sing.; attributive of *populī*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it has the acc.

LINE 12. *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that *in eum* is a prepositional phrase modifying *beneficiis*, instead of objective gen. — *beneficiis*, abl. plur. n. (*beneficium*, -*i*); connected by the enclitic *que* with *beneficiis* understood, and in the same construction; viz., obj. of the prep. *prō*. — *cōgnitis*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *cōgnitus*, -*a*, -*um* (*cōgnōscō*, 3); abl. absolute with *postulātis*. — *suis* (see l. 11, above); an attributive of *postulātis*. — *postulātis*, abl. plur. n. (*postulātum*); absolute with *cōgnitis*.

LINE 13. *fore*, fut. inf. for *futūrum esse*; used impersonally. — *utī*, the original form of *ut* = *that*. — *pertinaciā*, abl. sing. after the prep. *dē* in *dēsisteret*. A. & G. 243, b; B. 160; G. 390, NOTE 3; H. 413. — *dēsisteret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dēsistō*, -*ere*, -*stīt*, -*stītum*, 3; its subject is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Arivovistus*; subjunctive after *ut* — *result-clause* as subj. A. & G. 332, a, 2; B. 201, REM. I. (c); G. 553, 3; H. 501, I, 1. It will be observed that *fore utī dēsisteret* is a periphrase for *sē dēsistūrum esse*; and also, that in the periphrase the *result-clause* is grammatically the subj. of *fore*. Consult A. & G. 288, f; B. page 291, middle; G. page 334, middle; H. 537, 3.

LINE 14. *Diēs*, -*ei*, m.; subject-nom. of *dictus est*. — *col(n)loquiō*, dat. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -*i*); dat. of purpose. A. & G. 233, a; B. 147; G. 356; H. 384, II, 1, 3). — *dictus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. (*dīcō*, 3). — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *diēs*.

for the conference. Meantime, as the envoys were often passing to and fro between them, Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should bring no infantry to the conference, saying that he was afraid that he might be treacherously ensnared by him; both should be attending by cavalry;	diē day	quīntus. the fifth.	Interim Meanwhile	saepe often	ūltrō hither	citrōque 15 yon and,
	cum when	lēgātī the legates	inter between	eōs them	mitterentur, 16 were sent,	
	Ariovistus Ariovistus	postulāvit demanded	nē that not	quem any	peditem 17 infantry	
	ad colloquīum to the conference	Caesar Caesar	addūceret: should bring:	verērī 18 to fear (he feared)		
	sē, himself	nē that	per through	insidiās ambuscades	ab by	eō 19 him
	circumvenīrētur; he might be circumvented;	uterque each	cum with	equitātū 20 the cavalry		

LINE 15. *diē*, abl. sing.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *quīntus*, ordinal num. adj.; an attributive of *diēs*. — *Interim* (*inter* + *im* for *cum*), adv. = *interēd.* — *saepe*, adv. — *ūltrō*, adv. See l. 9, above. — *citrōque* (*citrō* + *que*). Observe that the phrase *ūltrō citrōque* = lit. *beyond and this side*, i.e. *hither and yon*; *to and fro*.

LINE 16. *cum*, temporal conj. — *lēgātī*, nom. plur. m. (*lēgātus*, -ī); subj. of *mitterentur*. — *inter*, prep. with the acc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *inter*. — *mitterentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *mittō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *lēgātī*; subjunctive after *cum* temporal.

LINE 17. *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *postulāvit*. — *postulāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *postulō*, 1; agrees with the subject-nom. *Ariovistus*. Synonyms: l. 3, Chap. XVI. — *nē*, conjunctive adv.; used with following indef. pron. *quem*. — *quem*, acc. sing. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod* or *quid*); indef. pron., used as adj.; an attributive of *peditem*. — *peditem*, acc. sing. m. of *pedes*, -itis (*pēs*, foot); hence properly *foot-soldiering*; direct obj. of *addūceret*.

LINE 18. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *col(n)loquīum*, acc. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. — *addūceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. (*addūcō*, 3); subjunctive after *nē* — *negative purpose*. A. & G. 317, 1; B. 200, (b); G. 548; H. 498, I. — *verērī*, pres. inf. of *vereor*, -ērī, *veritus*, 3. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. XIV.

LINE 19. *sē*, subject-acc. — *nē*, conj.; after verb of fearing = *that*. Consult A. & G. 331, f; B. 200, REM. 6; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, NOTE 1, and FOOTNOTE 4. — *per*, prep. with the acc., denoting means. — *insidiās*, acc. plur. (*insidiae*, -arum, f. plur.); obj. of the prep. *per*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); as pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; obj. of the prep. *ab* — abl. of the agent. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I.

LINE 20. *circumvenīrētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *circumvenīō*, 4; agrees with a pron. referring to Ariovistus; subjunctive after *nē*. — *uterque*, distributive pron. (*uterque*, -traque, -trumque) = *either of two*, or *both*. A. & G. 202, d; B. 89; G. 108; H. 397, NOTE 2; subject-nom. of *venīret*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. m. (*equitātus*, -ūs); *accompaniment*. A. & G. 248, a; B. 168, REM. 4; G. 392; H. 419, I.

21	veniret;	aliā	ratione	sēsē	nōn	he would not come on other terms. Caesar,
	should come;	in another	manner	himself	not	
22	esse ventūrum.	Caesar,	quod	neque		as he did not wish the conference
	to be about to come.	Caesar,	because	neither		prevented
23	colloquium	interpositā	causā	tollī		by the interposition of any pretext,
	the conference,	being interposed	an excuse,	to be put off		and did not
24	volēbat,	neque	salūtem	suam	Gallōrum	dare commit his own safety to the
	he was wishing,	nor	safety	his	to the Gallic	cavalry of the
25	equitātūi	committēre	audēbat,	commodissimum		Gauls, decided that the best plan
	cavalry	to commit	did he dare,	most advantageous		was, to take all
26	esse	statuit,	omnibus	equīs	Gallīs	the horses from the Gallic caval-
	to be	he determined,	all	horses	from the Gallic	

LINE 21. *veniret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*veniō*, 4); hortatory subjunctive. A. & G. 266, c; B. 189, I, b; G. 263, 3; H. 484, II. Of course, the present subjunctive would be the hortatory form in direct discourse. A. & G. 339, and REM.; B. 245, 2; G. 652; H. 523, III, and FOOTNOTE 4. — *aliā*, abl. sing. f. (*alius*, -a, -ud); an attributive of *ratione*. — *ratione*, abl. sing. f. (*ratio*, -ōnis); means. — *sēsē*, subject-acc. of *esse ventūrum* (*ventūrum esse*). See l. 4, Chap. XXX. — *nōn*, adv.

LINE 22. *esse ventūrum* (*ventūrum esse*), fut. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4; subject-acc. is the pron. *sēsē*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *statuit*, l. 26, below. — *quod*, conj. — *neque*, see l. 16, Chap. IV.

LINE 23. *col(n)loquium*, -ī, acc. sing. n.; subject-acc. of *tollī*. — *interpositā*, abl. f. of the perf. pass. participle *interpositus*, -a, -um of *interpōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, 3; abl. absolute with *causā*, denoting the means. — *causā*, -ae, f.; abl. absolute. — *tollī*, pres. inf. pass. of *tollō*, -ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*; subject-acc. is *colloquium*.

LINE 24. *volēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. (*volō*, *vellē*, *voluī*); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *neque*, see *neque*, l. 22, above. — *salūtem*, acc. sing. f. (*salūs*, -ūtis); direct obj. of *committēre*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *salūtem*. — *Gallōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*Gallī*, -ōrum); limits *equitātūi*. Caesar's cavalry was made up of Gauls whom he distrusted.

LINE 25. *equitātūi*, dat. sing. m. (*equitātus*, -ūs); indirect obj. after *committēre*. — *committēre*, pres. inf. act. (*committō*, 3); complementary. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 1. — *audēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus*, 2; neuter pass. or semi-deponent; the subj. is a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *commodissimum*, acc. sing. n., superl. of the positive *commodus*; predicate-acc. after *esse*.

LINE 26. *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, perf. *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*; used here impersonally; or rather, *impōnere* with its modifiers is subj. of *esse*. — *statuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*statuō*, 3); its subject-nom. is *Caesar*, l. 22, above. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. m. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *equīs*. — *equīs*, abl. plur. m. (*equus*, -ī); abl. absolute with *detrāctis*. — *Gallīs*, dat. plur. m. of the adj. *Gallus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *equitibus*.



ry, and to mount upon them the soldiers of the tenth legion, in which he had the greatest confidence, in order to have as friendly a guard as possible, should there be any need for action. When this was done, one of the soldiers of the tenth	equitibus <i>cavalry</i>	detrāctīs, <i>being taken away,</i>	eō <i>thither</i>	legiōnariōs 27 <i>the legionary</i>	
	mīlitēs <i>soldiers</i>	legiōnis <i>of the legion</i>	decimae, <i>tenth,</i>	cui <i>to (in) which</i>	quam 28 <i>as much as</i>
	māximē <i>the greatest</i>	cōnfidēbat, <i>did he confide,</i>	impōnere, <i>to mount,</i>	ut <i>that</i>	praesidium 29 <i>a guard</i>
	quam <i>as much as</i>	amīcissimum, <i>the most friendly,</i>	sī <i>if,</i>	quid <i>in any respect,</i>	opus 30 <i>need</i>
	factō <i>of action</i>	esset, <i>there were,</i>	habēret. <i>he might have.</i>	Quod <i>Which</i>	cum 31 <i>when</i>

LINE 27. *equitibus*, dat. plur. m. of *eques*, -itis; dat. after the participle *detrāctūs*. See A. & G. 229; B. 143, REM. 3; G. 345, REM. 1; H. 386, 2. Observe that *eques* = both a *horseman*, and later, as serving on horseback, a *knight* — a species of aristocrat next to senators in rank. — *detrāctīs*, perf. pass. participle of *dētrahō*, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, 3; abl. absolute with *equīs*. — *eō*, adv. = lit. *thither*, i.e. *on the horses*; modifies *impōnere*. Observe that a dem. adv. often = a pron. with prep. See A. & G. 207, a; B. 129, REM. 10; G. 611, REM. 1; H. 304, II, 3, NOTE. — *legiōnariōs*, acc. plur. m. (adj. *legiōnarius*, -a, -um); an attributive of *mīlitēs*. Observe that this epithet is used to distinguish the regulars from the *vēlitēs* or skirmishers.

LINE 28. *mīlitēs*, acc. plur. m.; direct obj. of *impōnere*. — *legiōnis*, gen. sing. f. (*legiō*, -ōnis); limits *mīlitēs*. — *decimae*, gen. sing. f., ordinal adj. *decimus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *legiōnis*. — *cui*, dat. sing. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *legiōnis*; is dat. after *cōnfidēbat*. A. & G. 227, c, NOTE; B. 142, and REM. 3; G. 346, REM. 2; H. 385, II. Observe that *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō* usually take the abl.; but here the dat. — *quam*, adv.; it strengthens the superl. See A. & G. 93, b; G. 303; H. 170, 2, (2).

LINE 29. *māximē*, adv., superl. of *magis*; modifies *cōnfīdēbat*. — *cōnfīdēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *cōnfīdō*, -ere, *cōnfīsus*, 3; agrees with a subj. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *impōnere*, pres. inf. act. of *impōnō*, 3 (in + *pōnere* = lit. *to place on*). — *ut*, telic conj. — *praesidium*, acc. sing. n. (*praesidium*, -ī); direct obj. of *habēret*.

LINE 30. *quam*, adv.; see l. 28, above. — *amīcissimum*, acc. sing. n. (adj. *amīcus*); agrees with *praesidium*. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *quid*, acc. sing. n. (*quis*, *quae*, *quid*); indef. pron. used substantively; acc. of specification. A. & G. 240, a; B. 123, 5, REM. 21; G. 334, REM. 1; H. 378, 2. — *opus*, indecl. neuter noun; subj. of *esset*.

LINE 31. *factō*, perf. pass. participle of *fīō*, *fieri*, *factus*, 3; abl. after *opus*. A. & G. 243, e, NOTE; B. 167, 2, REM. 2; G. 437, NOTE 2; H. 414, IV, NOTE 3. — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*sum*); in protasis after *sī*. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *habēō*, 2; *purpose* after *ut*. Observe that in this purpose-clause the apodosis of the conditional clause is contained. — *Quod*, nom. sing. n. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to the idea contained in the previous sentence; is the subject-nom. of *fīeret*. Observe that *quod* = *et id*. See A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *cum*, temporal conj.

32	fieret,	nōn	irridiculē	quīdam	ex	legion	wittily
	was done	not	without humor	a certain one	of	said: Caesar has	done more than
33	mīlitibus	decimae	legiōnis	dixit,	plūs	he promised. He	promised to regard
	the soldiers	of the tenth	legion	said,	more	the tenth	legion as his body-
34	quam	pollicitus esset	Caesarem	facere :		guard; he has en-	rolled the mem-
	than	he had promised	Caesar	to do (was doing):		bers thereof as	knights.
35	pollicitum	sē	in	cohortis	praetōriae		
	to have promised	himself	in	the cohorts	praetorian		
36	locō	decimam	legiōnem	habitūrum,	ad		
	place	the tenth	legion	(to be) about to have, (it) to			
37	equum	rescribere.					
	horse	to transfer (he is transferring it).					

LINE 32. *fieret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*fīō*); agrees with the subj. *quod*; subjunctive after *cum*. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *irridiculē*. — *irridiculē* (in, negative + *ridiculē* = *not unwittily*, i.e. *wittily*), adv., litotes; modifies *dixit*. — *quīdam*, nom. sing. m. indef. pron. (*quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*); subject-nom. of *dixit*. Observe that *quīdam* generally takes the abl. with *ē* or *ex*, instead of the partitive gen. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 33. *mīlitibus*, abl. plur. m. (*mīles*, -*itis*); obj. of the prep. *ex*. See A. & G. 216, c; B. 134, REM. 2; G. 372, REM. 2; H. 397, 3, NOTE 3. — *decimae*, gen. sing. f. (*decimus*, -*a*, -*um*); see l. 28, above. — *legiōnis*, gen. sing. f. (*legiō*); limits *mīlitibus*; see l. 28, above. — *dixit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*dīcō*, 3); agrees with *quīdam*. — *plūs*, adv.; comparative of *multum*; modifies *facere*.

LINE 34. *quam*, conj.; with comparative = *than*; connects *facere* with *pollicitus esset*. — *pollicitus esset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of deponent *polliceor*, -*ērī*, -*licitus*, 2; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in virtual *ōratiō obliqua* — an integral part. See A. & G. 342; B. 245, I, (b); G. 650; H. 529, II, NOTE I, 1). — *Caesarem*, acc. sing. m. (*Caesar*, -*aris*); subject-acc. of *facere*. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. (*faciō*, 3). Observe that some editions read *cī*, i.e. *legiōnī*, between *Caesarem* and *facere*.

LINE 35. *pollicitum* (*esse*), perf. inf. of *polliceor*, 2; its subject-acc. is the pron. *sē*. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*). — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *cohortis*, gen. sing. f. (*cohors*); limits *locō*. — *praetōriae*, gen. sing. f. (adj. *praetorius*, -*a*, -*um*); attributive of *cohortis*. See l. 77, Chap. XL.

LINE 36. *locō*, abl. sing. m. (*locus*, -*i*); obj. of the prep. *in*. See note on *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. Observe also the words that precede the obj. of the prep. here, and consult A. & G. 344, g; B. 43; G. 413, REM. 3, and 678, REM. 4; H. 569, II, 3. — *decimam*, acc. sing. f.; an attributive of *legiōnem*. — *legiōnem*, acc. sing. f. (*legiō*, -*onis*); direct obj. of *habitūrum* (*esse*). — *habitūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. (*habēō*, 2); its subject-acc. is *sē* understood, referring to Caesar. Observe that the phrase *habere in locō* = *to regard as*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 37. *equum*, acc. sing. m. of *equus*, -*i* = *equiēs* by metonymy; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *rescribere*, pres. inf. act. of *rescribō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *sē*, i.e. *Caesarem*, understood; supply *eam*, i.e. *legiōnem*, as direct obj.; and note the omission

XLIII. There was a large plain and in it a plateau of considerable extent. This place was almost equidistant from the camps of Ariovistus and Caesar. To it, as it

XLIII. Plānitīēs	erat	māgna	et	in	1
<i>A plain</i>	<i>there was</i>	<i>great,</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>in</i>	
eā tumulus terrēnus	satis	grandis.	Hic	2	
<i>it a mound of earth</i>	<i>sufficiently</i>	<i>large.</i>	<i>This</i>		
locus aequō	ferē	spatiō	ab	castris	3
<i>place by an equal</i>	<i>almost</i>	<i>space</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>the camp</i>	
Ariovistī	et	Caesaris	aberat.	Eō,	4
<i>of Ariovistus</i>	<i>and</i>	<i>Caesar</i>	<i>was distant.</i>	<i>Thither,</i>	

of the conj. between the clauses (asyndeton). The pleasantry lies in the application of the phrase *ad equum*, i.e. by metonymy *ad equitēs*, now to the cavalry, and now to the Roman knights. *ad equum rescribere* = (a) to transfer to the cavalry — a degradation, as the cavalry were, for the most part, Gauls; (b) to raise to the rank of knights — an aristocratic order. The *dratiō recta* of lines 33–37: *Caesar facit plūs quam pollicitus est: pollicitus est sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum* (esse), *ad equum rescribit* (historical pres.).

LINE 1. *Plānitīēs*, -ēī, f. (*plānus*, flat); subject-nom. of *erat*; sometimes spelled *plāniētēs*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. (*sum, esse, fuī*); here, and often, a verb of complete predication. — *māgna*, nom. sing. f. (*māgnus*, -a, -um): an attributive of *plānitīēs*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *plānitīēs* and *tumulus*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl.

LINE 2. *eā*, abl. sing. f. (*is, ea, id*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; or supply *plānitīē*; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *tumulus*, -ī, m. (*tumēre*, to swell); connected by *et* with *plānitīēs*, and in the same construction. — *terrēnus* (*terra*, earth), adj., nom. sing. m.; an attributive of *tumulus*. — *satis*, adv., comparative *satiūs*; modifies adj. *grandis*. — *grandis*, adj., nom. sing. m. (*grandis*, -e); an *i*-stem; abl. *grandī*; an attributive, also, of *tumulus*. — *Hic*, nom. sing. m. (*hic, haec, hoc*); an attributive of *locus*.

LINE 3. *locus*, nom. sing. m.; subject of *aberat*. See *loci*, l. 10, Chap. II. — *aequō*, adj., abl. sing. n. (*aequus*, -a, -um); modifies *spatiō*. — *ferē*, adv. (*ferō*; hence the adv. = *that brought near, within a little, almost*); modifies the adj. *aequō*; but note its position; usually thus between the noun and the adj. which modifies the noun. — *spatiō*, abl. sing. n. (*spatium*, -ī); *measure or degree of difference*. See A. & G. 257, b; B. 153, REM. 3; G. 403, NOTE 1; H. 379, 2. — *ab*, prep. with abl.; often thus repeated after a compound verb containing the same prep. — *castris*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *ab*. See *castris*, l. 12, Chap. XII.

LINE 4. *Ariovistī*, poss. gen.; limits *castris*. As to Ariovistus, see l. 51, Chap. XXXI. Observe that instead of *Ariovistī et Caesaris*, some editions read the abl. *utrisque*, or the gen. *utriusque*, which = either: *from both camps*, or *from the camp of each*. — *et*, conj.; connects the proper names. — *Caesaris*, gen. sing. m.; connected by *et* with *Ariovistī*, and in the same construction. — *aberat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *absūm, abesse*, *ab(ā)fuī, ab(ā)futūrus*; agrees with *locus* as subject-nom. — *Eō*, adv. (in fact abl. sing. m. of the dem. *is, ea, id*; agreeing with *locō* understood).

5	ut erat dictum,	ad colloquium	vēnērunt.	had been arranged, they came for the conference.
	as it had been appointed,	to the conference	they came.	
6	Legiōnem Caesar,	quam equis	dēvēxerat,	Caesar stationed the legion that he had brought along on horseback two hundred paces from the plateau.
	The legion, Caesar,	which by horses he had conveyed,		
7	passibus ducentis	ab eō tumulō	cōstituit.	The cavalry of Ariovistus also halted at a like distance. Ariovistus demanded that they should confer on horseback, and that
	by paces two hundred	from that mound,	posted.	
8	Item equitēs Ariovistī	parī intervāllō		
	Likewise the cavalry of Ariovistus	at an equal interval		
9	cōstitērunt.	Ariovistus,	ex equis	ut
	halted.	Ariovistus,	from horses	that
10	colloquerentur et praeter sē	dēnōs	ut	
	they should confer and besides themselves	ten each	that	

LINE 5. *ut*, adv. = *as*. — *erat dictum* (*dictum erat*), 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. pass. in form, but *dictum* may be taken as a participle, and *dictum erat* with *ut* = *as it had been fixed*; used impersonally; supply *ab illis*, abl. of the agent. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *col(n)loquium*, acc. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *vēnērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. (*veniō*, 4); agrees with *ei* understood, referring to Ariovistus and Caesar.

LINE 6. *Legiōnem*, acc. sing. f. (*legio*, -ōnis); direct obj. of *cōstituit*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *cōstituit*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. (*quī, quae, quod*); direct obj. of *dēvēxerat*. — *equis*, abl. plur. m. (*equus*, -ī); abl. of means. — *dēvēxerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. of *dēvehō*, -ere, -vēcī, -vēctum, 3 (*dē*, over + *vehere* = lit. to convey over the distance). Some copies read *vēxerat*.

LINE 7. *passibus*, abl. of distance or measure (*passus*, -ūs, m.). A. & G. 257, b; B. 153, REM. 3; G. 403, NOTE 1; H. 379, 2. — *ducentis*, abl. plur. m. (*ducenti*, -ae, -a); an attributive of *passibus*. *passibus ducentis* = at the distance of two hundred paces. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); an attributive of *tumulō*. — *tumulō*, abl. sing. m. (*tumulus*, -ī); place from which with the prep. *ab*. A. & G. 258; B. 173, 2; G. 390, I; H. 427, II. — *cōstituit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar* expressed.

LINE 8. *Item*, adv. (*is*) = after this manner, also; whereas *etiam* (et + iam) denotes the addition of a more important notion. — *equitēs*, nom. plur. m. (*equus*, -itis); subj. of *cōstitērunt*. Synonyms: l. 2, Chap. XV. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing. m.; poss. gen.; limits *equitēs*. — *parī*, abl. sing. n. (adj. *pār, parīs*); liquid stem; but having the form of an *i*-stem in abl. sing. and gen. plur.; an attributive of *intervāllō*. — *intervāllō*, abl. of distance or measure. See grammatical references to *passibus*, l. 7, above (*intervāllum*, -ī, n.).

LINE 9. *cōstitērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, -āre, -stīlī, -stātum, 1, irr. in perf. stem; agrees with subj. *equitēs*. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m., subj. of *postulāvit*, l. 11, below. — *ex*, prep. with the abl. — *equis*, abl. plur. m. (*equus*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *ex*. *ex equis* = lit. from the horses, i.e. on horseback. Of course, in the plur. when written or spoken of more than one rider. — *ut*, telic conj.

LINE 10. *col(n)loquerentur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent *colloquor*, -quī, -catus, 3; purpose after *ut*. Observe that this clause and the next

each party should bring ten attendants to the conference. On coming to the place, Caesar began a speech; he recounted his own kindnesses and those of the senate toward him; he stated that he had been called king and friend by the senate; that pres-	ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi 11 to the conference they should bring, demanded. When
eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis 12 thither it was come, Caesar, at the beginning of (his) speech,	
sua senātūsque in eum beneficia 13 his own the senate's and, to him, kindnesses	
commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā 14 mentioned, in that king he had been called by	
senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera 15 the senate, in that a friend, in that gifts	

are direct objects of *postulāvit*. See A. & G. 331; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, I; H. 498, I. — **et**, cop. conj. — **praeter**, adv. or prep.; here prep. with the acc. — **sē**, acc. plur. (*sui, sibi, sē, sē*); obj. of the prep. *praeter*. — **dēnōs**, acc. plur., distributive num. adj. (*dēni, -ae, -a*); derived from *decem*; = *ten each*; used substantively; direct obj. of *addūcerent*. — **ut**, telic conj.

LINE 11. **ad**, prep. with the acc. as the limit of motion. — **col(n)loquium, -ī**, n.; acc.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **addūcerent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. — **postulāvit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*postulō*, 1); agrees with the subject-nom. *Ariovistus*, l. 9, above. — **Ubi** (*quō + bi*) = lit. *in which place*; compare correlative *ibi*.

LINE 12. **eō**, adv. (see *eō*, l. 4, above). — **ventum est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. impersonal of *venio*, 4; supply *ab eis*, as abl. of the agent; = lit. *it was come by them*, i.e. = *venerunt*. — **Caesar, -aris, m.**; subject-nom. of *commemorāvit*. — **initiō**, abl. sing. n. (*initium, -ī*); time when. A. & G. 256; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — **ōrātiōnis**, gen. sing. f. (*ōrātiō, -ōnis*); limits *initiō*. Synonyms: l. 1, Chap. XVII.

LINE 13. **sua**, acc. plur. n. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *beneficia*. — **senātūsque** (*senātus + que*). **senātus**, gen. sing. m. (*senātus, -ūs*); limits *beneficia*. **que**, enclitic conj. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **eum**, acc. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **beneficia**, acc. plur. n. (*beneficium, -ī*); direct obj. of *commemorāvit*.

LINE 14. **commemorāvit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*commemorō*, 1); agrees with *Caesar* expressed as subject-nom. — **quod**, conj. = *because*. Observe that the following *quod*-clauses are explanatory of *beneficia*, and in apposition with it. — **rēx, régis, m.**; predicate nom. — **appellātus esset**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive pass. (*ap[er]pellō*, 1); agrees with a pron., referring to *Ariovistus*; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in virtual *ōrātiō obliqua*. See A. & G. 341, *d*; B. 198, (*h*), and REM. 1; G. 628; H. 516, II, 1, NOTE. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. See l. 6, Chap. I.

LINE 15. **senātū**, abl. sing. m. (*senātus, -ūs*); abl. of the agent after *ā*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. Observe that by metonymy *senātū* = *senātoribus*. — **quod**, conj. — **amicus**, predicate-nom. after *appellātus esset*, to be supplied. — **quod**, same construction as *quod* preceding. — **mūnera**, nom. plur

16	amplissimē	mīssa;	quam	rem	et	ents had been very generously sent him; that
	most amply	sent (to have been);	which	thing	both	such favors were
17	paucīs	contigisse	et	prō	māgnīs	hominum
	to few	to have happened	and	for	great	men's
18	officiīs	cōnsuēsse	tribuī	docēbat;		usually conferred in return for
	offices	to have been accustomed	to be bestowed,	he showed;		great personal services; and
19	illum,	cum	neque	aditum	neque	causam
	him,	when	neither	access	nor	cause
20	postulandī	iūstam	habēret,	beneficiō	āc	without suffi- cient merit and without just ground for mak- ing a claim, had
	of demanding,	just	he had,	through favor	and	

n. (*mūnus, -eris*); subj. of *mīssa* (*essent*). The reference is to presents suitable for those whom the Roman senate had honored with title of king, such as a golden crown, an ivory staff, etc. See Livy, XXX. 15.

LINE 16. *amplissimē*, adv., superl. degree; positive *amplē*; comparative *amplius*. — *mīssa* (*essent*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive (*mittō*, 3); subjunctive for the same reason as *appellātus esset*. The *ōratiō recta* of lines 13-16: *mea senātusque in tē beneficia commemorō: quod rēx appellātus es ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē mīssa (sunt)*. The reader, of course, is aware that the discourse of Caesar here, which we have changed into the direct, is in the text *informal* indirect discourse. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. (*quī, quae, quod*); used here adjectively as an attributive of *rem*; it refers to the idea in the preceding clause. Observe that *id quod* might have been used. Consult A. & G. 200, *e*; B. 129, REM. 8; G. 614, REM. 2; H. 445, 7. — *rem*, acc. sing. f. (*rēs, rēi*); subject-acc. of *contigisse* and *cōnsuēsse*. — *et . . . et* = lit. *both . . . and*; but suppress the first *et* in the English translation.

LINE 17. *paucīs*, dat. plur. m. (adj. *paucus, -a, -um*); used substantively = *a few*; indirect obj. — *contigisse*, perf. inf. act. of *contingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum*, 3 (con + tangere); *rem* is subject-acc. — *et*, see *et . . . et*, preceding line. — *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *māgnīs*, abl. plur. n. (*māgnus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *officiīs*. — *hominum*, gen. plur. m. and f. (*homō, -inis*); limits *officiīs*.

LINE 18. *officiīs*, abl. plur. n. (*officium, -ī*); obj. of the prep. *prō*. Observe the natural Latin order here: adj., gen., subst. — *cōnsuēsse*, syncope and contracted perf. inf. act. for *cōnsuēvisse*, of *cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum*, 3; subject-acc. is *rem*. — *tribuī*, pres. inf. pass. of *tribuō*, 3 — complementary inf. — *docēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *doceō*, 2; supply *eum* as direct obj.; the acc. and inf. clauses preceding are secondary objects.

LINE 19. *illum*, acc. sing. m. (*ille, -la, -lud*); refers to Ariovistus; more emphatic than *eum*; subject-acc. of *cōsecūtum* (*esse*). — *cum*, concessive conj. = *though*. — *neque . . . neque* = *neither . . . nor*. See I. 16, Chap. IV. — *aditum*, acc. sing. m. (*aditus, -ūs*); direct obj. of *habēret*. — *neque*, see *neque* immediately above. — *causam*, acc. sing. f. (*causa, -ae*); direct obj. of *habēret*; same construction as *aditum*.

LINE 20. *postulandī*, gen. of the gerund (*postulō*, 1); limits *causam*. A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, 1; G. 428; H. 542, I. — *iūstam*, acc. sing. f. of adj. *iūstus, -a, -um*

attained these honors through the kindness and generosity of himself and the senate. He in- formed him also how ancient and just were the reasons for the alliance that ex- isted between the Romans and the Aedui, what de-	liberalitāte liberality	suā his own	ac and	senātūs the senate's,	ea those	praemia 21 rewards,
	cōsecūtum. to have attained.	Docēbat He showed	etiam, also,	quam how	veterēs 22 the ancient	
	quamque how and,	iūstae just	causae causes	necessitudinis 23 of relationship		
	ipsis to themselves	cum with	Aeduīs the Aedui	intercēderent, existed,	quae 24 what	

(iūs); an attributive of *causam*. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*habēō*, 2); subjunctive after *cum* concessive. A. & G. 326, REM.; B. 210; G. 587; H. 515, III. — *beneficiō*, abl. sing. n. (*beneficium*, -ī); *cause*. A. & G. 245; B. 165; G. 408; H. 416. — *ac*, see note on *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 21. *liberalitāte*, abl. sing. of *liberalitās*, -itātis, f. (*liber*, free); connected by *ac* with *beneficiō*, and in the same construction. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *liberalitāte*; refers to Caesar. — *ac*, see *ac*, preceding line. — *senātūs* (*senex*, old man), gen. sing. m. (*senātus*, -ūs); limits *ea*, i.e. *liberalitāte* understood. — *ea*, acc. plur. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *praemia*. — *praemia*, acc. plur. n. (*praemium*, -ī); direct obj. of the deponent *cōsecūtum* (*esse*).

LINE 22. *cōsecūtum* (*esse*), perf. inf. of the deponent *cōsequor*, -quī, -secutus, 3; its subject-acc. is *illum*. The *orātiō recta* of lines 16–22: *quam rem et paucis cōtingere et prō magnis hominum officiis cōsuēscere tribui tē, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēs, beneficiō ac liberalitāte meā ac senātus ea praemia cōsecūtum esse, doceō*. — *Docēbat*, for parts, see l. 18, above. — *etiam* (*et* + *iam*), conjunctive adv.; adds a notion = *even*, *also*. — *quam*, adv. = *how*. — *veterēs*, adj., nom. plur. (*vetus*, -eris); stem *veter*, orig. an *s*-stem; abl. -e or -ī; an attributive of *causae*. Synonyms: see l. 37, Chap. XVIII.

LINE 23. *quamque* (*quam* + *que*). *quam*, adv.; modifies adj. *iūstae*. *que*, enclitic; connects *veterēs* and *iūstae*. — *iūstae*, nom. plur. f. (adj. *iustus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *causae*. — *causae*, nom. plur. f. (*causa*, -ae); subject of *intercēderent*. — *necessitudinis*, gen. sing. f. (*necessitudo*, -inis); limits *causae*. Observe that this word = lit. *necessity*; transf. a *necessary* relation between persons; hence *friendship*, etc.

LINE 24. *ipsis*, dat. plur. m. (*ipse*, -sa, -sum); follows the compound *intercēderent*. A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. Observe that *ipsis* = *Romānis*, and is more emphatic than *eis*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *Aeduīs*, abl. plur. m. (*Aeduī*, -ōrum); obj. of the prep. *cum*. See l. 20, Chap. III. — *intercēderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *intercēdō*, -ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, 3 (*inter* + *cedere* = lit. *to go between*); subjunctive, because an indirect question, introduced by interrogative adv. *quam*. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; H. 529, I. Observe difference of idiom: English = *existed between them and the Aedui*; Lat. *ipsis cum Aeduīs intercēderent* = *existed to them with the Aedui*. — *quae*, nom. plur. n. (*interrogative quis, quae, quid*); used adjectively, modifying *cōsulta*.

25	senātūs senate's	cōnsulta, decrees,	quotiēns how often	quamque how and,	crees of the sen- ate, how often and how honor-
26	honōrifica honorable	in eōs on them	facta essent, had been made,	ut how	omni- able, had been enacted in their interest; how the
27	tempore time	tōtius of entire	Galliae Gaul	principātum the principate	Aedui Aedui from time immemorial had held the ruling position in all
28	tenuissent had held	prius before	etiam even,	quam that,	nostram our
29	amīcitiām friendship	appetissent. they had sought.	Populī Rōmānī Of the people Roman	hanc this	sought our alli- ance. Moreover,

LINE 25. *senātūs*, gen. sing. m. (*senātus*, -ūs); limits *cōnsulta*. — *cōnsulta*, nom. plur. n. (*cōnsultum*, -ī); subject-nom. of *facta essent*. — *quotiēns*, adv. (*quot*, how many); often written *quotiēs*. — *quamque* (*quam* + *que*), see note, l. 23, above; *quam* modifies *honōrifica*.

LINE 26. *honōrifica*, nom. plur. n. (adj. *honōrificus*, -a, -um); predicate-adj. after *facta essent*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc., and = *toward*. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *in*; refers to the Aedui. — *facta essent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *fīō*, *fieri*, *factus*, 3; used as pass. of *faciō*; subjunctive, because the question is *indirect*. See grammatical references to *intercēderent*, l. 24, above. — *ut*, interrogative adv. = *how*. Observe that its meaning can only be determined by the context; we observe that it is used in connection with *quam*, and the inference is drawn at once that *ut* like *quam* introduces an indirect question, and must have a similar meaning. — *omni*, abl. sing. n. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *tempore*.

LINE 27. *tempore*, abl. sing. n. (*tempus*, -oris); *time when*. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — *tōtius*, gen. sing. f. (*tōtus*, -a, -um); modifies *Galliae*. See l. 7, Chap. II. — *Galliae*, gen. sing.; limits *principātum*. — *principātum*, acc. sing. m. (*principātus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *tenuissent*. See l. 21, Chap. III. — *Aedui*, -ōrum, m.; subject-nom. of *tenuissent*.

LINE 28. *tenuissent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive (*teneō*, 2); subjunctive, because in an indirect question. — *prius*, adv. (from adj. *prior*, former). — *etiam*, adv. = *even*; modifies *prius*. — *quam*, conj.; lit. = *than* with comparatives; as a part of the adv. *prius* = *that*; sometimes the two words are written as one: *priusquam*. — *nostram*, acc. sing. f. (*noster*, -tra, -trum); an attributive of *amīcitiām*.

LINE 29. *amīcitiām*, acc. sing. f. of *amīcitiā*, -ae (*amīcus*); direct obj. of *appetissent*. — *appetissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *appetō*, -ere, -īvi (-ī), -ītum, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to the Aedui; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in virtual *oratio obliqua*. The *oratio recta* of lines 22-29: *Dēcēō* (ē) *etiam*, *quam* *veterēs* *quamque* *iūstae* *causae* *necessitudinis* *nōbīs* *cum* *Aeduis* *intercēdant*, *quae* *senātūs* *cōnsulta*, *quotiēns* *quamque* *honōrifica* *in* *hōs* *facta* *sint*, *ut* *omni* *tempore* *tōtius* *Galliae* *principātum* *Aedui* *tenuerint* *prius* *etiam* *quam* *nostram* *amīcitiām* *appetierunt*. — *Populī*, gen. sing. m. (*populus*, -ī); limits *cōnsuetudinem*. — *Rōmānī* (*Rōma*), an attributive of *populī*. — *hanc*, acc. sing. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); predicate after *esse*; herald of the following *ut*-clause.



Caesar informed him that the customs of the Roman people were such that they desired that their allies and friends might not only lose nothing of their own dignity, but might rather be advanced in influence, worthiness and honor. Who then could bear to have them robbed of that which they	esse to be (is)	cōnsuētūdinem, the practice,	ut that	sociōs the allies	atque 30 and
	amicōs friends	nōn not	modo only	suī of their own	nihil dēperdere, 31 nothing to forfeit,
	sed but	grātiā, by grace,	dignitāte, dignity,	honōre (and) honor	auctiōrēs 32 more increased
	velit they (the Roman people) wish		esse; to be;	quod which	vērō ad 33 but to
	amicitiā the friendship	populī of the people	Rōmānī Roman	attulissent, 34 they had brought,	

LINE 30. *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, perf. *fui*, fut. participle *futūrus*. — *cōnsuētūdinem*, acc. sing. f. (*cōnsuētūdō, -inis*); subject-acc. of *esse*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. = *that*; refers to *hunc* = *such*. — *sociōs*, acc. plur. m. (*socius, -ī*); subject-acc. of *dēperdere*. — *atque*, conj. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 31. *amicōs*, acc. plur. of *amicus, -ī*, m.; connected by *atque* with *sociōs*, and in the same construction. — *nōn modo* . . . *sed*, conjunctions, but when thus used a rising to something more important in the second clause is denoted. See Madvig, § 461. — *suī*, gen. sing. n. of the poss. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; used substantively = *of their own property*; limits *nihil*. — *nihil*, acc. sing.; indecl. noun, used only in nom. and acc.; direct obj. of *dēperdere*. — *dēperdere*, pres. inf. act. of *dēperidō*, 3; subject-accusatives are *sociōs* and *amicōs*; but note that the inf. clauses depend on *velit*.

LINE 32. *sed*, adversative conj. — *grātiā*, abl. of specification. A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *dignitāte*, abl. sing. f. of *dignitās, -ātis* (*dignus*, worthy); same construction as *grātiā*. — *honōre*, abl. sing. m. (*honor* or *honos*); same construction as *dignitāte*. Observe the asyndeton. See note on *lēgibus*, l. 5, Chap. I. — *auctiōrēs*, acc. plur. m. of comparative adj. *auctiōr, -ius*; positive *auctus*, participle (*augēre*, to increase); predicate after *esse*.

LINE 33. *velit*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive (*volō, velle, voluī*); agrees with *populus Rōmānus* understood; subjunctive of result after *ut*, l. 30, above. — *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum, esse, fui*); subject-acc. is *eōs*, to be supplied, referring to *sociōs*, etc. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *id*, l. 35, below, but is the direct obj. of *attulissent*. — *vērō*, adversative conj.; weaker than *vērūm* or *sed*, but stronger than *autem*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 34. *amicitiā*, acc. sing. f. of *amicitia, -ae* (*amicus* from *amō*); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *populī Rōmānī*, see l. 29, above. — *attulissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *af(d)ferō, ferre, attulī, allātum*; agrees with *Aedui* understood; subjunctive, because an *integral part* of the sentence; broadly, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō obliqua*.

35	id	eīs	ēripī	quis	patī	posset?	had brought with them at their alliance with the Roman people? Thereupon he made the same demands that he had instructed the envoys to make: he should not bring war upon the Aedui nor upon their allies; he should return the hostages; if he could not send back
	that	from them	to be snatched,	who	to endure	was able?	
36	Postulāvit	deinde	eadem	quae	lēgātīs		
	He demanded	then	the same (things)	which	to the legates		
37	in	mandātīs	dederat:	nē	aut	Aeduīs	
	in	orders	he had given:	not	either	on the Aedui	
38	aut	eōrum	sociīs	bellum	īnferret;	obsidēs	
	or	their	allies	war	he should bring;	hostages	
39	redderet;	sī	nūllam	partem	Germānōrum		
	he should restore;	if	no	part	of the Germans		

LINE 35. *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); subject-acc. of *ēripī*. — *eīs*, dat. plur. m. (*is, ea, id*); used substantively as a personal pron. Consult A. & G. 229; B. 143, REM. 3; G. 345, REM. 1; H. 385, II, 2. Observe that the clause *id eīs ēripī* is the obj. of *patī*; and consult A. & G. 331, c; B. 194, REM. 2, (a); G. 546, REM. 1; H. 535, II. — *quis*, interrogative pron. (*quis, quae, quid*); subject-nom. of *posset*. — *patī*, pres. inf. of the deponent *patior, patī, passus*, 3; complementary; depends on *posset*. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*possum, posse, potui*); agrees with the subject-nom. *quis*; a real question. A. & G. 338; B. 245, 3; G. 651; H. 523, II, 1. Compare note on *iudicāret*, l. 10, Chap. XL.

LINE 36. *Postulāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*postulō*, 1); agrees with *Caesar* understood. Synonyms: l. 3, Chap. XVI. — *deinde* (*dē + inde* = lit. *from thence*), adv.; often used as a sequent to *primum* expressed or understood. — *eadem*, acc. plur. n. (*īdem, eadem, idem*); used substantively; direct obj. of *postulāvit*. — *quae*, acc. plur. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); direct obj. of *dederat*. — *lēgātīs*, dat. plur. m. (*lēgātus, -ī*); indirect obj.

LINE 37. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *mandātīs*, abl. plur. n. (*mandātum, -ī*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *dederat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *dō, dare, dedī, datum*, 1 (a short before *re*, pres. inf.); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar*. — *nē*, adv. — *aut . . . aut* = *either . . . or*. See l. 19, Chap. I. — *Aeduīs*, dat. plur. m. of *Aedui, -ōrum*; after *in* in *īnferret*. See *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III.

LINE 38. *aut*, see *aut*, preceding line. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a personal pron.; limits *sociīs*. — *sociīs*, dat. plur. m. (*socius, -ī*); connected by *aut* with *Aeduīs*, and in the same construction. — *bellum*, acc. sing. n. of *bellum, -ī*; direct obj. of *īnferret*. See note, l. 15, Chap. I. — *īnferret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, īl(n)ātum*; its subject is a pron., referring to *Arriovistus*; subjunctive for imperative in direct discourse. A. & G. 339; B. 245, 2; G. 652; H. 523, III. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. m. (*obses, -idis*); direct obj. of *redderet*.

LINE 39. *redderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum*, 3; subjunctive for imperative in direct discourse. — *sī*, conditional conj.

home any part of the Germans, he, at least, should not per- mit any more to cross the Rhine.	domum home	remittere to send back	posset, he was able,	at at any rate,	nē 40 not
	quōs any	amplius more	Rhēnum the Rhine	trānsire to cross	paterētur. 41 he should allow.

XLIV. Ario- vistus replying briefly to Cae- sar's demands, and boasting much as to his	XLIV. Ario- vistus Ariovistus	ad to	postulāta the demands	Caesaris 1 of Caesar
	pauca a few (things)	respondit; replied;	dē concerning	suīs virtūtibus 2 his own merits

— **nūllam**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *nūllus*, -a, -um (nē + ūllus); an attributive of *partem*. — **partem**, acc. f. (*pars*, -tis); direct obj. of *remittere*. — **Germānōrum**, gen. plur. m. (*Germāni*, -ōrum); limits *partem*. See l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 40. **domum**, acc. sing. (*domus*, -ūs, or -ī, locative); denotes place to which after a verb of motion. A. & G. 258, b; B. 174; G. 337; H. 380, II. 2, i). — **remittere**, pres. inf. act. of *remittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (re + mittere = to send back); complementary inf. — **posset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*possum*); subjunctive in condition after *si*. — **at**, conj.; another form is *ast* = GK. *ἀλλά*; it adds a different but not directly opposite notion like *sed*; it often follows conditional propositions, as in text, in sense of *at least*. — **nē**, see *nē*, l. 37, above.

LINE 41. **quōs**, acc. plur. m., indef. pron. (*quis*, *quae*, *quid*); subject-acc. of *trānsire*. — **amplius**, adv., comparative degree; positive *amplē*; superl. *amplissimē*; modifies *trānsire*. — **Rhēnum**, acc. m. (*Rhēnus*, -ī); direct obj. of *trānsire*. — **trānsire**, pres. inf. act. of *trānsēō*, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, 4. — **paterētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent *patior*, 3; subjunctive in indirect, for imperative in direct discourse. The *oratio recta* of lines 29–41: *Populi Rōmāni haec est cōsuetūdō, ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni attulerunt, id eis ēripī quis pati potest? Postulō deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dedī: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum intuleris (or nōlī inferre); obsidēs redde; si nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possis, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire passus sis (nōlī pati)*. Of course, if *nōlī pati* is read, *nē passus sis* must be deleted; so, too, if *nōlī inferre* is read instead of *nē intuleris*, the latter must be suppressed.

LINE 1. **Ariovistus**, -ī, m.; subj. of *respondit*. See l. 51, Chap. XXXI. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **postulāta**, acc. plur. n. of *postulātum*, -i (*postulare*, to demand); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **Caesaris**, gen. (*Caesar*); limits *postulāta*.

LINE 2. **pauca**, adj., acc. plur. n. (*paucus*, -a, -um) = a few things; direct obj. of *respondit*; elegantly translated as an adv. — **respondit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *respondēō*, -ere, -dī, -dñsum, 2 (re + spondere = lit. to promise in return); hence = to answer. — **dē**, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: see *dē*, l. 27, Chap. XIX. — **suīs**, abl. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); attributive of *virtūtibus*. — **virtūtibus**, abl. plur. f. of *virtūs*, -ūtis (*vir*); obj. of the prep. *dē*.

3 multa	praedicāvit:	Trānsisse	Rhēnum	own merits said:
many (things)	he boasted:	To have crossed	the Rhine	He had crossed
4 sēsē	nōn suā	sponte,	sed	rogātum
himself	not by his own	will,	but	being asked
5 et arcessitum	ā Gallīs;	nōn sine	māgnā	had not left home
and invited	by the Gauls;	not without	great	and relatives
6 spē māgnisque	praemiis	domum	propinquōs-	without a large
hope great and,	rewards	home	relations	hope of rich re-
7 que reliquisse;	sēdēs	habēre	in Galliā	wards; he had
and, to have left;	seats	to have	in Gaul	settlements in
				Gaul granted by
				the Gauls them-

LINE 3. *multa*, acc. plur. n. (*multus, plūs, plūrimus*); used substantively; direct obj. of *praedicāvit*. — *praedicāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*prae + dicō, 1*); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Ariovistus*. The student will beware of confounding *dicō, 1*, with *dicō, 3*. — *Trānsisse*, perf. inf. act. of *trānsēō, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -itum*; subject-acc. is the pron. *sēsē*. Observe that from this point to the close of the chapter *Ariovistus*' speech is given in the indirect form. — *Rhēnum*, acc. sing. m. (*Rhēnus, -ī*); direct obj. of *trānsisse*.

LINE 4. *sēsē*, acc. sing.; refers to *Ariovistus* (see l. 4, Chap. XXX); subj. of *trānsisse*. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *trānsisse*. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *sponte*. — *sponte*, abl. sing. f. of an assumed theme *spōns, spontis, f.*; in accordance with. A. & G. 253, NOTE; B. 162, and REM. 3; G. 397; H. 416. Synonyms: l. 19, Chap. VII. — *sed*, adversative conj. — *rogātum*, acc. sing. m. of pass. participle *rogātus* of verb *rogō, 1*; agrees with the pron. *sēsē*.

LINE 5. *et*, cop. conj.; connects the participles. — *arcessitum*, acc. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle of *arcessō, -ere* or *-īre, -īvi, -itum, 3* or *4*; connected by *et* with *rogātum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *Gallīs*, abl. plur. m. (*Calli, -ōrum*); agent after the prep. *ā*. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *nōn*, negative adv.; modifies *reliquisse*. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. — *māgnā*, abl. sing. of the adj. *māgnus*; an attributive of *spē*.

LINE 6. *spē*, abl. sing. f. (*spēs, -ei*); obj. of the prep. *sine*. — *māgnisque* (*magnis + que*). *māgnis*, abl. plur. n.; an attributive of *praemiis. que*, enclitic conj.; connects the phrases closely. — *praemiis*, connected by *que* with *spē*, and in the same construction. Observe hendiadys for *nōn sine māgnā spē māgnōrum praemiōrum*. See A. & G. 385; B. 310, 2, (b); G. 698; H. 636, III, 2. — *domum*, acc. sing. f. of *domus, -ūs*, or loc. *-ī*; direct obj. of *reliquisse*. — *propinquōsque* (*propinquōs + que*). *propinquōs*, acc. plur. m. (adj. *propinquus*); used as noun; direct obj. of *reliquisse*.

LINE 7. *reliquisse*, perf. inf. act. of *relinquō, -ere, -liquit, -lictum, 3*; supply *sē* as subject-acc., referring to *Ariovistus*. — *sēdēs*, acc. plur. f. (*sēdēs, -is*); direct obj. of *habēre*. — *habēre*, pres. inf. act. of *habēō, 2*; subject-acc. *sē* or *sēsē*, to be supplied. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. See note on *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — *Galliā*, abl.; obj. of the prep. *in*.

selves, and hostages given by their own free-will; he had taken tribute in accordance with the rights of war, which victors were wont to impose on the vanquished. He had not waged war against the Gauls, but the Gauls had waged war	ab by	ipsis themselves	concessās, conceded,	obsidēs hostages	ipsōrum by their own	8
	voluntāte will		datōs; given;	stipendium tribute	capere to take	9
	iūre according to the right		belli, of war,	quod which	victōrēs victors	10
	victis on the vanquished	impōnere to put	cōnsuērint. were wont.	Nōn Not	sēsē himself	11
	Gallis, on the Gauls,	sed but	Gallōs the Gauls	sibi on him	bellum war	12

LINE 8. *ab*, prep. with the abl. See l. 6, Chap. I. — *ipsis*, abl. plur. m. (*ipse*, -*sa*, -*sum*); reflexive pron.; refers to the Gauls; obj. of the prep. *ab*. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. For facts, see l. 40 ff., Chap. XXXI. — *concessās*, acc. plur. f. of perf. pass. participle of *concēdō*, -*ere*, -*cessi*, -*cessum*, 3; agrees with the noun *sēsēs*. On the use of *habēō* with the perf. participle, see A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, I, NOTE. — *obsidēs*, acc. plur. m. and f. (*obses*, -*idis*); in the same construction as *sēsēs*; in other words, supply (*sē*) *habēre* from the preceding clause. — *ipsōrum*, gen. plur. (*ipse*); limits *voluntāte*; refers to the Gauls.

LINE 9. *voluntāte*, abl. (*voluntās*, -*tātis*, f.); in accordance with. Synonyms: l. 4, Chap. IX. — *datōs*, perf. pass. participle (*dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*); agrees with *obsidēs*. — *stipendium*, -*i*, n.; acc. sing.; direct obj. of *capere*. — *capere*, pres. inf. (*capio*, 3); subject-acc. *sē*, to be supplied.

LINE 10. *iūre*, abl. sing. n. (*iūs*, *iūris*); in accordance with. See grammatical references to *sponte*, l. 4, above. — *belli*, gen. sing. n. (*bellum*, -*i*); limits *iūre*. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); direct obj. of *impōnere*. — *victōrēs*, nom. plur. of *victor*, -*ōris*, m. (*vincere*); subj. of *cōnsuērint*.

LINE 11. *victis*, dat. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *victus*, -*a*, -*um* of *vincō*, -*ere*, *vici*, *victum*, 3; used substantively; or supply *viris*; dat. after *in* in *impōnere*. A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386, I. — *impōnere* (*in* + *pōnere*, to place on), pres. inf. act. of *impōnō*, 3; complementary; depends on *cōnsuērint*. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *cōnsuērint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive act. of *cōnsuēscō*, -*ere*, -*suēvi*, -*suētum*, 3; preteritive verb. See A. & G. 279, c; B. 113, REM. 2, end; G. 175, 5, end; H. 297, I, 2; syncopated and contracted from *cōnsuēverint*. A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 3-11: *Trānsiī Rhēnum egō nōn mēd sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque prae-miis domum propinquōsque reliquī; sēsēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capio iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērint.* — *Nōn*, adv.; modifies *intulisse*; made emphatic by standing at the beginning of the sentence. — *sēsē*, acc. sing.; subj. of *intulisse*, to be supplied. See *sēsē*, l. 4, above.

LINE 12. *Gallis*, dat. plur. m. (*Galli*, -*ōrum*); after prep. *in* in *intulisse* understood. See grammatical references to *victis*, preceding line. — *sed*, adversative

13	intulisse;	omnēs	Galliae	cīvitātēs	ad	against him; all
	to have brought;	all,	of Gaul,	the states,	to	the states of
14	sē	oppūgnandum	vēnisse	āc	contrā	Gaul had come
	himself	to be fought against	to have come,	and	opposite to	to assail him, and
15	sē	castra	habuisse;	eās	omnēs	cōpiās
	him	a camp	to have had;	these	all	forces
16	ā	sē	ūnō	proeliō	pulsās	āc
	by	himself	in one	battle	to have been routed	and
17	superātās esse.	Sī	iterum	experiri	velint,	against him
	to have been overcome.	If	again	to try	they wish,	over against him;
						but all these forces
						had been routed and
						vanquished by him
						in a single battle.
						If they wished to try
						again, he was

conj. — Gallōs, acc. plur. m. (Gallī, -ōrum); subject-acc. of *intulisse*. — sibi, dat. sing. (suī, sibi, sē, sē); dat. after *in* in *intulisse*; refers to Ariovistus. — bellum, acc. sing. n. (bellum, -i); direct obj. of *intulisse*.

LINE 13. *intulisse*, perf. inf. act. of *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *il(n)lātum*. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. f. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *cīvitātēs*. See l. 1, Chap. I. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. f. (*Gallia*, -ae); limits *cīvitātēs*. — *cīvitātēs*, acc. plur. f. of *cīvītās*, -ātis (*cīvēs*, citizen); subject-acc. of *vēnisse*. Observe that *cīvitātēs* here, by metonymy = *cīvēs*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 14. *sē*, acc. sing.; obj. of the prep. *ad*; refers to Ariovistus. — *oppūgnandum*, acc. sing. m. of gerundive *oppūgnandus*, -a, -um of *oppūgnō*, 1 (ob + *pūgnare*, to fight against). Observe that this gerundive construction with *ad* denotes purpose. See A. & G. 300; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III, and 544. Observe further the gerundive agrees with the pron. *sē*; and finally, we know this to be the gerundive construction, and not the gerund with a direct obj., because the acc. of the gerund with a preposition does not, as a rule, take the direct obj. — *vēnisse*, perf. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4; subject-acc. is *cīvitātēs*. — *āc*, conj. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *contrā*, adv. and prep.; here a prep. with the acc.

LINE 15. *sē*, acc. sing.; obj. of the prep. *contrā*; refers to Ariovistus. — *castra*, acc. plur. (*castrum*, -i, n.); direct obj. of *habuisse*. See *castris*, l. 12, Chap. XII. — *habuisse*, perf. inf. act. of *habēō*, 2; connected by *āc* with *vēnisse*, and has the same grammatical construction. — *eās*, acc. plur. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *cōpiās*. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. f. (*omnis*, -e); attributive of complex notion involved in *eās cōpiās*. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur. f. of *cōpia*, -ae; subj. of *pulsās* (*esse*) and *superātās* (*esse*). See *cōpiis*, l. 6, Chap. II.

LINE 16. *ā*, prep. with the abl. — *sē*, abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*; refers to Ariovistus. Consult A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *ūnō*, abl. sing. n. (*ūnus*, -a, -um); modifies *proeliō*. See *ūnam*, l. 2, Chap. I. — *proeliō*, abl. of manner (*proelium*, -i, n.). A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. Possibly the allusion is to the battle fought near Admagetobriga. — *pulsās* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*, 3; subject-acc. is *cōpiās*. — *āc*, see *ad*, l. 14, above.

LINE 17. *superātās esse*, perf. inf. pass. of *superō*, 1 (*super*, over); compare GER. *über*, and GK. *ὑπέρ*; hence *superāre* = lit. *to be over*. Observe that the participial forms of this compound inf. in gender and number conform with the gender and number of the subject-acc. *cōpiās*. The *ōrditō rēcta* of lines 11-17: Nōn egō Gallis (*intulī*), sed Gallī mihi bellum *intulērunt*; omnēs Galliae *cīvitātēs* *ad me oppūgnan-*

ready to fight again; if they wished to enjoy peace, it were unjust to refuse to pay the tribute, which they had paid of their own accord up to this time. The friendship of the Roman people ought to be to him an honor and pro-	sē himself	iterum again	parātum prepared	esse to be	dēcertāre; to fight;	sī 18 if
	pāce peace	ūtī to enjoy	velint, they wish,	inīquum unjust	esse to be (it is)	dē 19 concerning
	stīpendiō the tribute	recūsāre, to refuse,	quod what	suā by their own	voluntāte will	20
	ad up to	id that	tempus time	pependerint. they had paid.	Amīcitiā The friendship	21
	populī of the people	Rōmānī Roman	sibi to him	ōrnāmentō for an ornament	et and	22

dum *venērunt* ac *contrā mē castra habuērunt*; *eae* omnes *cōpiae ā mē* unō proeliō *pulsae* ac *superatae sunt*. — *Sī*, conditional conj. — *iterum*, adv.; modifies *experiri*. Synonyms: l. 29, Chap. XXXI. — *experiri*, pres. inf. of deponent *experior*, -*riri*, -*pertus*, 4; complementary; supply *cum* as direct obj.; or the inf. may be taken absolutely. — *velint*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive (*volō, velle, volui*); subjunctive in the protasis after *sī*.

LINE 18. *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); subj. of *parātum esse*. — *iterum*, see *iterum*, preceding line. — *parātum esse*, perf. inf. pass. of *parō*, 1; pass. parts: *paror, -rāri, -rātus*; subject-acc. is *sē*. — *dēcertāre*, pres. inf. act. of *dēcerno*, 1 (*dē + certāre*) = lit. *to fight through*; a neuter verb, often followed by an abl. of manner or means. — *sī*, see *Sī*, l. 17, above.

LINE 19. *pāce*, abl. of *pāx, pācis*, f.; after *ūtī*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, 1. — *ūtī*, pres. inf. of *utor, ūti, ūsus*, deponent, 3; complementary. — *velint*, see *velint*, l. 17, above. — *inīquum*, acc. sing. n. of the adj. *inīquus* (*in + aequus* = lit. *not just*); predicate after *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum, fui, futurus*); used here impersonally; or, strictly, the inf. *recūsare* is subject-acc. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. Synonyms: l. 27, Chap. XIX.

LINE 20. *stīpendiō*, abl. sing. n. (*stīpendium, -ī*); obj. of the prep. *dē*. Observe that this word is contracted from *stīpīpendum* (*stīpem, gift + pendere, to weigh*); hence the noun = lit. *weighed gift*. — *recūsāre*, pres. inf. act. of *recūsō*, 1 (*re + causā*); hence *recūsare* = lit. *to make a case against*, i.e. *refuse*. — *quod*, acc. sing. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *stīpendiō*; direct obj. of *pependerint*. — *suā*, abl. sing. f. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *voluntāte*. — *voluntāte*, abl. sing. f. (*voluntās, -tātis*). See *voluntāte*, l. 9, above.

LINE 21. *ad*, prep. with the acc. = *to or towards*; here = *up to or until*. — *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); an attributive of *tempus*. — *tempus*, acc. sing. n. (*tempus, -oris*); obj. of the prep. *ad*. See *tempore*, l. 21, Chap. III. — *pependerint*, 3d pers. plur. perf. subjunctive of *pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus*, 3; agrees with *Gallī* understood. The *orātiō recta* of lines 17–21: *Sī iterum experiri volunt, egō iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; si pāce ūti volunt, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsare, quod suā voluntāte ad hōc tempus pependerunt*. — *Amīcitiā*, acc. sing. f. of *amīcitiā, -ae* (*amīcus*); subject-acc. of *esse*, l. 23, below.

LINE 22. *populī*, gen. sing. m. (*populus, -ī*); limits *Amīcitiā*. Synonyms: see *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m.; an attributive of *populī*. —

23	praesidiō,	nōn	dētrimentō	esse	oportēre,	tection, not a
	guard,	not	for detriment	to be (it)	ought,	detriment, and
24	idque	sē	eā	spē	petisse.	he had sought it
	that and,	himself	with this	hope	to have sought.	with this expect-
25	Sī	per	populum	Rōmānum	stīpendium	ation. If, through
	If	through	the people	Roman	the tribute	the influence of
26	remittātur	et	dēditiciī	subtrahantur,		the Roman peo-
	should be stopped	and (his)	subjects	were taken away,		ple, the tribute
27	nōn	minus	libenter	sēsē	recūsātūrum	was to be with-
	not	less	gladly	himself (to be)	about to reject	held, and his
						tributaries were
						to be taken from
						him, he would
						renounce the

sibi, dat. of the object to which after *esse*; refers to Ariovistus. — *ōrnāmentō* (*ōrnāmentum*, -ī, n.); dat. of the end for which. Consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147, REM. 2; G. 356; H. 390, I. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the nouns.

LINE 23. *praesidiō*, dat. (*praesidium*, -ī); connected by *et* with *ōrnāmentō*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *nōn*, adv.; qualifies *esse*. — *dētrimentō*, dat. of *detrimentum*, -ī, n. (*dētrī* as seen in *dētritus*, pass. participle of *deterō* + *mentum*); hence the noun = lit. *a wearing out*, i.e. *disaster, damage*, etc.; connected with *praesidiō* by *et* understood, and in the same construction. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*; depends on *oportēre*. — *oportēre*, pres. inf. impersonal (*oportet*, *oportuit*, 2). Observe that *oportēre* stands for *oportet* in *ōrdiō rēcta*; and that *oportēre* is no less impersonal than *oportet*; and that here, strictly, its grammatical subj. is the accusative-clause *Amicitiam . . . esse*.

LINE 24. *idque* (*id* + *que*). *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); dem. pron.; used substantively; direct obj. of *petisse*. Observe that *id* refers to *idea* involved in *Amicitiam populī Rōmānī*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *petisse*. — *eā*, abl. sing. f. (*is*); an attributive of *spē*. — *spē*, abl. sing. f. (*spēs*, -ēī); *manner*. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. — *petisse*, perf. inf. act. *peto*, -ere, -īvī (-īī), -itum, 3; syncopated and contracted for *petivisse*. A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235; subject-acc. is *sē*. Synonyms: I. 71, Chap. XXXI.

LINE 25. *Sī*, conditional conj. — *per*, prep. with the acc. — *populum*, acc. sing. (*populus*, -ī, m.); obj. of the prep. *per*; acc. as *means*; see A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, NOTE 1. Synonyms: I. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānum* (*Rōma*), adj.; an attributive of *populī*. — *stīpendium*, nom. sing. n.; subj. of *remittātur*. See *stīpendium*, I. 9, above.

LINE 26. *remittātur*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive pass. of *remittō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (*re* + *mittere* = lit. *to send back*); subjunctive in the condition after *sī*. — *et*, cop. conj. — *dēditiciī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *dēditic(i)us*, used as substantive; subject-nom. of *subtrahantur*. — *subtrahantur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. subjunctive pass. of *subtrahō*, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, 3 (*sub* + *trahere* = lit. *to draw under*); connected by *et* with *remittātur*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason.

LINE 27. *nōn*, adv.; modifies *minus*. — *minus*, adv., comparative degree; positive *parum*; superl. *minimē*; qualifies *libenter*. — *libenter*, adv. (*libens*); modifies *recūsātūrum* (*esse*). — *sēsē*, reflexive pron., acc. sing.; subj. of *recūsātūrum* (*esse*). See *sēsē*, I. 4, Chap. XXX. — *recūsātūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of



friendship of the Roman people with no less pleasure than he had sought it. As to his leading a great number of Germans into Gaul, he did this with a view of his own defense, not with that of assault-	populī Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetierit. 28 the people's, Roman, friendship than he sought (it).
Quod	multitudinem Germānōrum in 29 As to the fact that a multitude of Germans into
Galliam	trādūcat, id sē suī 30 Gaul he is leading, this himself, of himself
mūniendī,	nōn Galliae impūgnandae 31 defending, not of Gaul to be attacked,

*recūsō*, 1 (see *recūsāre*, l. 20, above); subject-acc. is *sēs*. Observe that the apodosis is involved in this inf. See A. & G. 337, 2, a; B. 245, 4, (a); G. 656, 2; H. 527, II.

LINE 28. **populī Rōmānī**, the phrase as gen. depends on *amicitiam*. As to these words, see note, l. 22, above. — **amicitiam**, acc. sing. f. (*amicitia*, -ae [*amicus*, *amāre*]); direct obj. of *recūsātūrum* (*esse*). — **quam**, conj.; with compounds = *than*; connects the infinitive-clause with *appetierit*. — **appetierit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *appetō*, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -itum, 3 (ad + petere = lit. to seek for); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 21–28: *Amicitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, idque egō eā spē petiī. Si per populī Rōmānī stipendium remittitur et dediticiī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter egō recūsābō populī Rōmānī amicitiam, quam appetiī.*

LINE 29. **Quod**, acc. of specification = *whereas, as to the fact that*. See A. & G. 333, a, and 341, a and d, and REM.; B. 123, REM. 21, and 198, REM. 1; G. 525, 2 and 3; H. 516, II, and especially the NOTE. — **multitudinem**, acc. sing. of *multitūdō*, -inis, f. (*multus*); direct obj. of *trādūcat*. — **Germānōrum**, gen. plur. m. (*Germānī*, -ōrum); limits *multitudinem*. See note on *Germānīs*, l. 14, Chap. I. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it has the acc. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I.

LINE 30. **Galliam**, obj. of the prep. *in*. See *Gallia*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **trādūcat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. of *trādūcō*, 3; agrees with Ariovistus as subject; in subjunctive, because expressing the sentiments of another. See grammatical references to *Quod*, preceding line. Observe that this clause is an adverbial modifier of the predicate of the main clause. — **id**, acc. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used substantively; direct obj. of *facere*; refers to the idea contained in the clause *Quod . . . trādūcat*. — **sē**, acc. sing. of the pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; subject-acc. of *facere*. — **suī**, objective gen. of the reflexive pron. with the gen. of the gerund instead of the direct object.

LINE 31. **mūniendī**, gen. of the gerund of *mūniō*, 4; limits *causā*. Consult A. & G. 298, a and c; B. 184, REM. 4, I, (a); G. 428, REMS. 1 and 2; H. 542, NOTES 1 and 2. Observe that the gerund construction here after *causā* denotes *purpose*. — **nōn**, adv.; modifies *facere*; made emphatic by its position. — **Galliae**, gen. sing., and, with the gerundive, limits *causā*. — **impūgnandae**, gen. of gerundive *impūgnandus*, -a, -um of *impūgnō*, 1 (in + pūgnāre = lit. to fight against); see grammatical references to *mūniendī*.

32	causā	facere;	ēius	reī	testimōnium	ing Gaul. The
	for the sake,*	to do (is doing);	of this	thing	a proof	evidence as to
33	esse	quod nisi rogātus	nōn	vēnerit		this purpose was
	to be (is)	that unless being asked	not	would he come,		that he did not
34	et	quod bellum	nōn	intulerit,	sed	come without an
	and that	war	not	he has brought in,	but	invitation, and
35	dēfenderit.	Sē prius in Galliam	vēnisse			that he had not
	warded off.	Himself sooner into	Gaul	to have come		waged war, but
36	quam	populum Rōmānum.	Numquam	ante		prevented it. He
	than	the people Roman.	Never	before		had come into
						Gaul before the
						Roman people.
						Never before this

LINE 32. *causā*, a prep. here; but strictly a noun — abl. of *cause*. A. & G. 245, c; B. 165, REM. 3, 186, B, NOTE (a); G. 373; H. page 221, FOOTNOTE 2. — *facere*, pres. inf. act. (*faciō*, 3); agrees with its subject-acc. *sē*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *reī*. — *reī*, gen. sing. f. (*rēs*, *reī*); limits *testimōnium*; the allusion is to his purpose of self-defense. — *testimōnium*, acc. sing. n.; predicate after *esse*.

LINE 33. *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*); its subject-acc. are the following *quod*-clauses. — *quod*, conj. = *that*. — *nisi* (*nē* + *si*), conjunctive adv. = lit. *if not*, i.e. *unless*; used with the perf. pass. participle *rogātus* = *rogātus sit*, a protasis, of which the apodosis is *vēnerit*. — *rogātus*, perf. pass. participle of *rogō*, 1. — *nōn*, negative adv.; modifies *vēnerit*. — *vēnerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive (*veniō*, 4); its subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Ariovistus; subjunctive, because the statement is made on authority of another. A. & G. 341, d; B. 198, (b); G. 628; H. 516, II, 1, NOTE.

LINE 34. *et*, cop. conj.; connects the *quod*-clauses. — *quod*, see *quod*, preceding line. — *bellum*, acc. sing. n.; direct obj. of *intulerit*; supply *cīs*, as dat. after *in* in the compound *intulerit*. — *nōn*, adv. — *intulerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of *inferō*, *ferre*, *-tulī*, *il(n)lātum*; subjunctive for the same reason as *vēnerit*. — *sed*, strong adversative conj.

LINE 35. *dēfenderit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive act. of *dēfendō*, *-ere*, *fendī*, *fēnsūm*, 3; supply *bellum* as direct obj.; or *id* referring to *bellum*; subjunctive for the same reason as *intulerit*. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 29-35 is as follows: *Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam egō trādūcō, hōc egō meī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā faciō; huius rei testimōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn venī et quod bellum nōn intulī, sed dēfendī*. The reader will observe that from *Sī iterum* to *dēfenderit* (lines 17-35) the sequence of tenses has been primary. — *Sē*, acc. sing. of reflexive pron. *sui*; subj. of *vēnisse*. — *prius*, adv. (*prior*, *primus*); might be taken as a part of the compound *priusquam* — parts separated (*tmēsis*). — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here after a verb of motion it takes the acc. See note on *in*, I. 1, Chap. I. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. f.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *vēnisse*, perf. inf. act. of *veniō*, 4; its subject-acc. is *sē*.

LINE 36. *quam*, see note on *prius*, preceding line; but it might be taken as a conjunction = *than*; *prius . . . quam* = *sooner . . . than*. — *populum*, acc. sing. m. (*populus*, *-ī*); subj. of *vēnisse*, to be supplied. Synonyms: I. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānum*, acc.; an attributive of *populum*. — *Numquam*, adv. (*nē* + *umquam* [contracted from *unum* + *quam*]) = lit. *not ever*. — *ante*, prep. with the acc.

\* The *of in causa* = *for the sake of* — appears in the last word of l. 30. These gerunds and gerundive phrases are difficult to render literally. The above is the best we can do with them.

time had an army of the Roman people gone be- yond the border of their provin- ce. What did he mean? Why had he come into his possessions? This part of Gaul was his province, as that was ours. As there ought	hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī 37 this time an army of the people Roman
	prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi 38 the province's borders to have gone forth. What for himself
vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs 39 should he wish? Why into his possessions	
venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse 40 should he come? The province his this to be	
Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī 41 Gaul as that ours. As to himself	

LINE 37. *hōc*, acc. sing. n. (*hūc, haec, hōc*); an attributive of *tempus*. — *tempus*, acc. sing. n. (*tempus, -oris*); obj. of the prep. *ante*. See *tempore*, l. 21, Chap. III. — *exercitum*, acc. sing. m. (*exercitus, -ūs*); subject-acc. of *ēgressum (esse)*. Synonyms: l. 28, Chap. III. — *populi Rōmānī*, see note on these words, l. 22, above; the phrase as gen. limits *exercitum*.

LINE 38. *prōvinciae*, gen. sing. f. (*provincia, -ae*); limits *finibus*. The allusion is to the Roman province in the south-eastern part of *omnis Gallia*. — *finibus*, abl. plur. m. (*finis, -is*); abl. of separation after *ēgressum (esse)*. A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, NOTE 3; H. 413. Synonyms: l. 12, Chap. II. — *ēgressum (esse)*, perf. inf. of the deponent *ēgredi, -ī, -gressus*, 3 (*ē + gradi* = lit. to step out; its subject-acc. is *exercitum*). — *Quid*, acc. sing. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis, quae, quid*; direct obj. of *vellet*. — *sibi*, dat. sing. (*suī, sibi, sē, sē*); ethical dat. A. & G. 236; B. 145, REM. 1; G. 351, and NOTE 2; H. 389.

LINE 39. *vellet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō, velle, voluī*; subjunctive, because a *real* question in indirect discourse. A. & G. 338; B. 245, 3; G. 651; H. 523, II. 1. — *Cūr*, adv., contracted from *quāre*, old orthography *quor*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here, after verb of motion, it takes the acc. — *suās*, acc. plur. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus, -a, -um*; an attributive of *possessionēs*, but refers to Ariovistus. — *possessionēs*, acc. plur. f. (*possessio, -ōnis [possidere]*); obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 40. *venīret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *veniō*, 4; subjunctive for the same reason as *vellet*, preceding line. — *Prōvinciam*, acc. sing. f. (*provincia, -ae*); predicate after *esse*. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *Prōvinciam*; refers to Ariovistus. — *hanc*, acc. sing. f. (*hūc, haec, hōc*); an attributive of *Galliam*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*.

LINE 41. *Galliam*, acc. sing. f. (*Gallia, -ae*); subj. of *esse*. See *Gallia*, l. 1, Chap. I. Observe that *hanc Galliam* = the part of Gaul conceived to be near the speaker. — *sicut*, adv. (*sic + ut* = lit. so as). — *illam*, acc. sing. f. (*ille, illa, illud*); gen. *illius*; dat. *illi*; agrees with *Galliam*, to be supplied; and this *Galliam* understood is the subject-acc. of *esse* understood. Observe the contrast indicated by the pronouns *hanc* and *illam*. — *nostram* (i.e. *Rōmānam*), acc. sing. f. (*noster, -tra, -trum*); an attributive of *prōvinciam* understood. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 35-41: *Egō prius in Galliam venī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitus populi Rōmānī prōvinciae finibus ēgressus (est). Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessionēs venis? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra (Rōmāna). Ut, adv. = ac; correlative with sicut. — ipsī, dat. of intensive pron. ipse, -sa, -sum; more emphatic than sibi; dat. of the indirect obj. after concedū.*

42	concedī	nōn	oportēret,	sī	in	nostrōs	to be no concessions to him, in case he made an attack on our territory, so, too, we were unjust, in that we interrupted him in the exercise of his rights. As to his saying that the Aedui had been called "brothers" by the senate, he was not so barbarous, nor so
	to be conceded	not	it ought,	if	on	our	
43	finēs	impetum	faceret,	sic	item	nōs	
	borders	an attack	he should make,	so	also	us	
44	esse	iniquōs,	quod	in	suō	iūre	
	to be (we are)	unjust,	because	in	his	right	
45	sē	interpellārēmus.	Quod	frātrēs	ā		
	himself	we disturbed.	As to the fact that	brothers	by		
46	senātū	Aeduōs	appellātōs	diceret,			
	the senate	the Aedui (to have) been called	(as)	he said,			
47	nōn	sē	tam	barbarum	neque	tam	
	not	himself	so	savage	nor	so	

LINE 42. *concedī*, pres. inf. pass. of *concedō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, 3 (con, intensive + cedere = lit. to go away); complementary inf. — *nōn*, negative particle. — *oportēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the impersonal *oportet*, -ere, -uit, 2; subjunctive in the apodosis. — *sī*, conditional conj., introducing the protasis. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. m. (*noster*, -tra, -trum); an attributive of *finēs*; but in sense = *Rōmānōs*.

LINE 43. *finēs*, acc. plur. m. (*fīnis*, -is); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *impetum*, acc. sing. m. (*impetus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *faceret*. — *faceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, 3; in the protasis after *sī*. — *sic*, adv. (*sī* + ce, apocopated); modifies *item*. — *item*, adv. (i [is] + tem) = lit. in this manner; hence also. — *nōs*, acc. plur. of the pers. pron. *egō*; = *Rōmānōs*; subject-acc. of *esse*.

LINE 44. *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*. — *iniquōs*, acc. plur. m. (adj. *iniquus*, -a, -um [in, un + aequus, just]); predicate adj. after *esse*. — *quod*, conj. = because. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *suō*, abl. sing. n. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *iūre*; but refers to Ariovistus. — *iūre*, abl. sing. n. (*iūs*, *iūris*); obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 45. *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); direct obj. of *interpellārēmus*. — *interpellārēmus*, 1st pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *interpellō*, 1; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 41-45: Ut *mihi* *concedī* *nōn oportet*, *sī* *in* *vestrōs* (i.e. *Rōmānōs*) *finēs* *impetum faciō*, *sic* *item vōs* (*Rōmānī*) *estis iniquī*, *quod* *in* *meō iūre* *mē* *interpellātis*. — *Quod*, conjunctive adv. = in that. — *frātrēs*, acc. plur. m. (*frāter*, -tris); predicate after *appellātōs* (*esse*). — *ā*, prep. with the abl. See *ab*, I. 6, Chap. I.

LINE 46. *senātū*, abl. sing. m. (*senātus*, -ūs); abl. of the agent after the prep. *ā*. A. & G. 246; B. 108, 2, and 166; G. 401; H. 388, 2, and 415, I. — *Aeduōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Aedui*, -ōrum); subject-acc. of *appellātōs* (*esse*). As to the clan, see I. 20, Chap. III. — *ap(d)pellātōs* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *ap(d)pellō*, 1. Synonyms: I. 30, Chap. XX. — *diceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dīcō*, 3; its subj. is Caesar understood; subjunctive, because the statement is made on another's authority. A. & G. 321, and 341, d; B. 198, (θ), REM. 1; G. 628; H. 516, 2, 1, NOTE.

LINE 47. *nōn*, adv.; modifies the adv. *tam*. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subj. of *esse*. — *tam*, adv.; modifies the adj. *barbarum*. — *barbarum*, acc. sing.

inexperienced in affairs as not to know that nei- ther in the last war with the Al- lobroges had the Aedui brought aid to the Ro- mans, nor had they availed themselves of the aid of the Roman people in those contentions which the Aedui	imperitum ignorant	esse to be	rērum, of affairs	ut that	nōn not	sciret, 48 he did know
neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs 49 neither in war, of the Allobroges, last the Aedui						
Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs 50 to the Romans aid to have brought, nor themselves						
in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum 51 in these quarrels which the Aedui himself with						
et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō 52 and with the Sequani had had, the aid						

m. (*barbarus*, -a, -um); predicate after *esse*. — *neque* (nē + que), conjunctive adv. = lit. and not. — *tam*, adv.; modifies the adj. *imperitum*.

LINE 48. *imperitum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *imperitus*, -a, -um (in + peritus); connected by *neque* with *barbarum*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*; its subject-acc. is *sē*. — *rērum*, gen. plur. f. (*rēs*, *reī*); gen. after adj. *imperitum*. A. & G. 218, a; B. 135, (a); G. 374; H. 399, 2. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *sciret*. — *sciret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *sciō*, -ire, *sciūt* (-it), *scitum*, 4; subjunctive of result after *ut*, referring to *tam*. Synonyms: see *scire*, l. 4, Chap. XX.

LINE 49. *neque* . . . *neque* = *neither* . . . *nor*. — *bellō*, abl. n. (*bellum*, -i); time in which. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. The time of this war was B.C. 62. — *Allobrogum*, gen. plur. m. (*Allobrogēs*, -um); limits *bellō*. — *proximō*, abl. sing. n. of adj. *proximas*, -a, -um; superl. degree; comparative *propior*; no positive; an attributive of *bellō*. Observe (1) that *proximus* = *nearest*, *next*; of time = next preceding or following; the precise meaning to be determined by the context; (2) that in English, as an abbreviation, *prox.* points to the following. — *Aeduōs*, acc. plur.; subj. of *tulisse*. See *Aeduōs*, l. 46, above.

LINE 50. *Rōmānīs*, dat. plur. m. (*Rōmānus*, -a, -um, adj.); used as a noun; in-direct obj. after *tulisse*. — *auxilium*, acc. sing. n. (*auxilium*, -i); direct obj. of *tulisse*. — *tulisse*, perf. inf. act. of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; the subject-acc. is *Aeduōs*. — *neque*, correlative of *neque*, preceding line. — *ipsōs*, acc. plur. m. (*ipse*, -a, -um); refers to the Aedui; is the subject-acc. of *ūsōs esse*, l. 53, below.

LINE 51. *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *hīs*, abl. plur. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *contentiōnibus*. — *contentiōnibus*, abl. plur. (*contentiō*, -ōnis); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *quās*, acc. plur. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *contentiōnibus*; direct obj. of *habuissent*. — *Aeduī*, subject-nom. m. of *habuissent*. See *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. III. — *sēcum* (*sē* + *cum*). *sē*, abl. sing. (*sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); obj. of the enclitic prep. *cum*. Consult A. & G. 99, e; B. 79, 2; G. 413, REM. 1; H. 184, 6.

LINE 52. *et*, cop. conj.; connects *sēcum* and *cum Sēquanīs*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *Sēquanīs*, abl. plur. (*Sēquani*, -ōrum); obj. of the prep. *cum*. See *Sēquanīs*, l. 25, Chap. I. — *habuissent*, 3d pers. plur., pluperf. subjunctive of *habēō*, 2; agrees with subject-nom. *Aeduī*; in subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *oratiō obliqua*. — *auxiliō*, abl. sing. n. (*auxilium*, -i); after *ūsōs esse*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I.

53	populī	Rōmānī	ūsōs esse.	Dēbere	had had with himself and the Sequani. He ought to be suspicious, accordingly, that Caesar while pretending friendship, in that he had an army in Gaul, had it there for the sake of crushing him. Now unless he departs, and the army withdraws from
	of the people	Roman	to have used (received).	To have	
54	sē	suspiciārī	simulātā	Caesarem	
	from himself (he ought)	to suspect	being feigned,	Caesar,	
55	amicitiā,	quod exercitum	in Galliā	habeat,	
	the friendship because	an army	in Gaul	he has,	
56	suī	opprimendī	causā	habēre.	Quī
	of himself	to be crushed for the sake,	to have (it).	Who	
57	nisi	dēcēdat	atque exercitum	dēdūcat	ex
	unless departs,	and	the army	withdraws from	

LINE 53. **populī Rōmānī**, see note on these words, l. 22, above; the phrase as such is gen., and limits *auxiliō*. — **ūsōs esse**, perf. inf. of deponent *ūtōr*, *ūtī*, *ūsus*, 3; its subject-acc. is *ipsōs*, l. 50, above. — **Dēbere**, pres. inf. act. of *dēbeō*, *-ēre*, *-ūi*, *-itum*, 2 (*dē* + *habēre*, lit. *to have from one*; hence = *to owe*). Synonyms: *oportet* denotes a moral claim; *dēbere*, the moral obligation of a person to meet the claim.

LINE 54. **sē**, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subject-acc. of *dēbere*. — **suspiciārī**, pres. inf. of *suspīcor*, 1, deponent; complementary. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, 2. — **simulātā**, abl. sing. f. of perf. pass. participle of *simulō*, 1 (*similis*); abl. absolute with *amicitiā*. — **Caesarem**, subject-acc. of *habēre* (*Caesar*, *-aris*, m.).

LINE 55. **amicitiā**, abl. absolute with *simulātā*. See A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409; H. 431. — **quod**, a conj. = *because*. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. m. (*exercitus*, *-ūs*); direct obj. of *habeat*. — **in**, prep.; here with the abl. — **Galliā**, abl. sing. f. (*Gallia*, *-ae*); obj. of the prep. *in*. See l. 1, Chap. I. — **habeat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *habēō*, 2; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*.

LINE 56. **suī**, objective gen. instead of the direct obj. of the gerund. — **opprimendī**, gen. of the gerund of *opprimō*, *-ere*, *-pressī*, *-pressum*, 3. For the gerund construction with *suī*, see grammatical references to *suī* in phrase *suī muniendī*, lines 30 and 31, above; for the gen. construction, limiting *causā*, see *causā*, l. 32, above. — **habēre**, pres. inf. of *habēō*, 2; subject-acc. is *Caesarem*; its direct obj. is *eum*, i.e. *exercitum*, to be supplied. The *ōrātiō recta* of lines 45-56: *Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduī appellātī sunt, ut dīcis,\* nōn egō tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum, ut nōn egō sciam, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānis auxiliū tulisse, neque ipsōs in his contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuerunt, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbeō egō suspiciārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quod exercitum in Galliā habet, meī opprimendi causā habēre. — Quī, rel. pron. m. refers to Caesar; subject-nom. of *dēcēdat*; the relative standing first in a sentence = *et is*. A. & G. 130, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453.*

LINE 57. **nisi**, conj. (*nē* + *sē* = lit. *not if*). — **dēcēdat**, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive act. (*dēcēdō*, 3) — *dis* + *cēdere* = *to go apart*; subjunctive in the condition after *nisi*. — **atque**, conj. See l. 10, Chap. I. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. m.

\* Might take this form: *Quod frātrēs ā Senātū Aeduōs appellatōs dīcas*. See H. 516, II. 1, and NOTE.

from these re- | his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, 58  
 gions, Ariovistus | these regions, himself him not for a friend,  
 will regard him  
 not as a friend,  
 but as an enemy. | sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod 59  
 But if he should | but for an enemy (to be) about to have. As to which (But)  
 kill him, he | sī eum interfecerit, multis sēsē nōnihilibus 60  
 would be doing | if him he should slay, to many, himself, nobles  
 a pleasing thing  
 to many nobles  
 and chiefs of the | principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse 61  
 Roman people; | chiefs and, of the people Roman pleasing to be  
 he had learned this  
 from them | factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per 62  
 through their en- | about to do; that himself from themselves through

(exercitus, -ūs, m.); direct obj. of *dēdūcat*. See l. 31, Chap. III. — *dēdūcat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *dēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, 3; connected by *atque* with *dēcēdat*, and in subjunctive for the same reason. — *ex*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 58. *his*, abl. plur. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *regiōnibus*. — *regiōnibus*, abl. plur. f. (*regiō*, -ōnis); obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *sēsē*, reduplication of *sē*; acc. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; subject-acc. of *habitūrum* (*esse*); refers to Ariovistus. See l. 4, Chap. XXX. — *illum*, acc. sing. m. (*ille*, -la, -lud); direct obj. of *habitūrum* (*esse*); refers to Caesar. — *nōn*, adv. (*nē* + *unum*); modifies *habitūrum* (*esse*). — *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *amicō*, abl. m. (*amicus*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *prō*.

LINE 59. *sed*, strong adversative conj. — *prō*, see *prō*, preceding line; by repetition notions are kept distinct. — *hoste*, abl. sing. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); obj. of the prep. *prō*. — *habitūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *habēō*, 2; subject-acc. is pron. *sēsē*. The *orātiō recta* of lines 56–59: *Et tū nisi dēcēdes, atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, egō tē nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habēbō.* — *Quod*, an adverbial acc. of *quī*, *quae*, *quod* = lit. *as to which*. A. & G. 240, b; B. 123, 5, REM. 21; G. 334, REM. 1; H. 378, 2. But as a transitional word with *sī* = *but if* or *and if*.

LINE 60. *sī*, conditional particle. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; direct obj. of *interfecerit*. — *interfecerit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. subjunctive of *interficiō*, 3 (*inter* + *facere*) = lit. *to make or put between — to interrupt*, i.e. *life*; hence = *to slay*; subjunctive in the protasis after *sī*. — *multis*, abl. plur. m. (adj. *multus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *nōnihilibus* which latter is used as a noun. — *sēsē*, see *sēsē*, l. 58, above. — *nōnihilibus*, dat. plur. of *nōnihilis*, -e; indirect obj.

LINE 61. *principibusque* (*principibus* + *que*). *principibus*, dat. plur. m. of *princeps*, -ipis. *que*, enclitic, connects *principibusque* with *nōnihilibus*; hence in the same construction. — *populi Rōmāni*, see note on the phrase, l. 22, above; as gen., the phrase limits *nōnihilibus principibusque*. — *grātum*, acc. sing. n. (adj. *grātus*, -a, -um); used substantively; direct obj. of *esse factūrum*. — *esse factūrum* (*factūrum esse*), fut. inf. act. of *faciō*, 3; subject-acc. is pron. *sēsē*; the apodosis in indirect discourse of the protasis *sī interfecerit*.

LINE 62. *id*, acc. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); refers to the idea contained in the preceding sentence; direct obj. of *habēre*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *habēre*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *ipsis*, abl. plur. (*ipse*, -sa,

63	eōrum	nūntiōs	compertum	habēre,	quōrum	voys, and he could secure the favor and friend- ship of all of them by Caesar's death. But if he would go away and give over to him the free possession of Gaul, he would reward him richly, and whatever wars he might
	their	messengers	having ascertained,	to have,	of whom	
64	omnium	grātiām	atque	amicitiām	ēius	
	all,	the favor	and	friendship	by his	
65	morte	redimere	posset.	Quod	sī	
	death	to purchase	he was able.	As to which (But)	if	
66	discessisset		et	liberam	possessiōnem	
	he should have withdrawn,		and	the free	possession	
67	Galliae	sibi	trādidisset,	māgnō		
	of Gaul	to himself	should have delivered,	with a great,		

-sum); intensive pron.; refers to the Romans; obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *per*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 63. *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; limits *nūntiōs*. — *nūntiōs*, acc. plur. m. (*nūntius, -i*); obj. of the prep. *per* — agency as means. A. & G. 246, b; B. 166, REM. 1; G. 401; H. 415, I, 1, NOTE 1. — *compertum*, perf. pass. participle of *comperiō, -ire, -perī, -pertum*, 4; agrees with *id*. — *habēre*, perf. inf. act. (*habēō, 2*); subject-acc. is *sē*. Observe that *habēre* with certain perf. pass. participles forms a periphrase about = to the required tense ind. or inf. act. Here the phrase = *comperisse*, nearly. See A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, 1, NOTE. — *quōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to Roman nobles and chiefs; as a gen. it limits *grātiām*.

LINE 64. *omnium*, gen. plur. m. (*omnis, -e*); used substantively; explanatory modifier of *quōrum* — an appositive. Observe that *quōrum* is not a partitive gen. after *omnium*; it = the same number as *omnium*; in our idiom, however, the phrase may be rendered: *all of whom*. See *omnēs*, I. 5, Chap. I. — *grātiām*, acc. sing. f. (*grātia, -ae*); direct obj. of *redimere*. Synonyms: *grātia* = objective favor; whereas *favor* = subjective regard. — *atque*, conj. See I. 10, Chap. I. — *amicitiām*, acc. sing. of *amicitia, -ae, f. (amicus)*; connected by *atque* with *grātiām*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as a personal pron.; limits *morte*; refers to Caesar.

LINE 65. *morte*, abl. sing. f. (*mors, mortis*); means. A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 420. — *redimere*, pres. inf. act. of *redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum*, 3 (*red + ēmere*) = lit. *to buy back*; complementary inf.; depends on *posset*. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*possum, posse, potui*); subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *ōratiō obliqua*. The *ōratiō recta* of lines 59-65: *Quod si ū interficerō, multis egō nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum fēcērō; hōc egō ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēō, quōrum omnium grātiām atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere possum.* — *Quod sī*, see note on these particles, lines 59 and 60, above.

LINE 66. *discessisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum*, 3; subjunctive in the protasis after *sī*. Observe that from this point the sequence is again secondary. — *et*, cop. conj. — *liberam*, adj., acc. sing. f. (*liber, -era, -erum*); an attributive of *possessiōnem*. — *possessiōnem*, acc. sing. f. (*possessio, -ōnis*); direct obj. of *trādidisset*.

LINE 67. *Galliae*, gen. sing. f. (*Gallia, -ae*); limits *possessiōnem*. For description, see I. 1, Chap. I. — *sibi*, dat. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; indirect obj. of



wish to be waged, he would wage them to the finish without any labor or danger on Caesar's part.

sē	illum	praemiō	remunerātūrum	et	68
himself,	him,	reward	to be about to remunerate	and	
quaecumque	bella	gerī	vellet,	sine	69
whatever	wars	to be waged	he wished,	without	
ūllō	ēius	labōre	et	periculō	70
any,	of his,	labor	and	peril,	
cōnfectūrum.					71
(to be) about to accomplish.					

XLV. Caesar replying made many statements

XLV.	Multa	ab	Caesare	in	eam	1
	Many (things)	by	Caesar	to	this	

*trādidisset*; refers to Ariovistus. — *trādidisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *trādō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum, 3 (trāns + dare); connected by *et* with *discessisset*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — *māgnō*, abl. sing. n. (*māgnus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *praemiō*.

LINE 68. *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); subject of *remunerātūrum* (*esse*). — *illum*, acc. sing. m. (*ille*, -la, -lud); refers to Caesar; direct obj. of *remunerātūrum* (*esse*). — *praemiō*, abl. of manner (*praemium*, -ī); has a modifier *māgnō*; otherwise it would require the prep. *cum*. — *remunerātūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of the deponent *remuneror*, -ārī, -ātus, 1. Observe that the fut. infinitives of the deponents are always in the active form. A. & G. 135, c; B. 109, 2; G. 220, NOTE 2; H. 231, 3. — *et*, cop. conj.

LINE 69. *quaecumque*, acc. plur. n. (*quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*); indef. rel. pron.; used here adjectively; an attributive of *bella*. — *bella*, acc. plur. n. (*bellum*, -ī); subject-acc. of *gerī*. — *gerī*, pres. inf. pass. (*gerō*, -ere, *gessī*, *gestum*, 3). — *vellet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*; agrees with Caesar understood; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in *orātiō oblīqua*. — *sine*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 70. *ūllō*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *ūllus*, -la, -lum; an attributive of *labōre*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); refers to Caesar; limits *labōre*. — *labōre*, abl. sing. m. (*labor*, -ōris); obj. of the prep. *sine*. — *et*, cop. conj. — *periculō*, abl. sing. n. (*periculum*, -ī); connected by *et* with *labōre*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 71. *cōnfectūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *cōficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 (con + facere); subject-acc. is *sē*, l. 68, above. Observe that the indef. rel. clause: *quicumque bella gerī vellet* — is the direct obj. of *cōnfectūrum* (*esse*). The *orātiō rēcta* of lines 65-71: *Quod si discesseris, et liberam possessionem Galliae mihi trādidideris, māgnō egō tē praemiō remunerābō et quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōficiam*.

LINE 1. *Multa*, nom. plur. n. (adj. *multus*); used substantively; subject of *dicta sunt*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *Caesare*, abl. (*Caesar*, -aris, m.); obj. of the prep. *ab* — agent. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *eam*, acc. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *sententiam*.

2	<i>sententiam</i>	<i>dicta</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>quārē</i>	<i>negōtiō</i>	with the purpose of explaining why he could not abandon his undertaking. He said that neither his own usage nor that of the Roman people admitted of his leaving most meritorious allies in the lurch; nor did he think that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus rather than to the Roman people
	<i>purport</i>	<i>said</i>	<i>were,</i>	<i>why</i>	<i>from the business</i>	
3	<i>dēsistere</i>	<i>nōn</i>	<i>posset;</i>	<i>neque</i>	<i>suam</i>	<i>neque</i>
	<i>to desist</i>	<i>not</i>	<i>he was able;</i>	<i>neither</i>	<i>his own</i>	<i>nor</i>
4	<i>populī</i>	<i>Rōmānī</i>	<i>cōnsuētūdinem</i>	<i>patī,</i>		
	<i>the people's</i>	<i>Roman</i>	<i>custom</i>	<i>to permit (permitted),</i>		
5	<i>utī</i>	<i>optimē</i>	<i>merentēs</i>	<i>sociōs</i>	<i>dēsereret,</i>	
	<i>that</i>	<i>the best</i>	<i>meriting</i>	<i>allies</i>	<i>he should abandon,</i>	
6	<i>neque</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>iūdicāre</i>	<i>Galliam</i>	<i>potius</i>	<i>esse</i>
	<i>nor</i>	<i>himself</i>	<i>to judge</i>	<i>Gaul</i>	<i>rather</i>	<i>to be</i>
7	<i>Ariovistī</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>populī</i>	<i>Rōmānī.</i>	<i>Bellō</i>	
	<i>Ariovistus'</i>	<i>than</i>	<i>the people's</i>	<i>Roman.</i>	<i>By war</i>	

LINE 2. *sententiam*, acc. sing. f. (*sententia*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *dicta sunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. pass. of *dicō*, 3; its subject-nom. is *multa*, used as a noun. — *quārē* (*quā* + *rē*), adv.; sometimes written *quā rē*. — *negōtiō*, abl. sing. n. (*negōtium*, -i); abl. of separation after *dēsistere*.

LINE 3. *dēsistere*, pres. inf. act. of *dēsistō*, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, 3; complementary; depends on *posset*. — *nōn* (*nē* + *ūnum*), adv. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive, because an indirect question. Observe that the clause *quārē* . . . *posset* is explanatory of, and in apposition with *sententiam*, preceding line. — *neque* (*nē* + *que*), conj. See *neque*, l. 16, Chap. IV. — *suam*, acc. sing. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); refers to Caesar; an attributive of *cōnsuētūdinem* understood. — *neque*, see *neque*, immediately preceding.

LINE 4. *populī*, gen. sing. (*populus*, -i, m.); limits *cōnsuētūdinem*. Synonyms: see *populī*, l. 17, Chap. III. — *Rōmānī*, gen. sing. m.; an attributive of *populī*. — *cōnsuētūdinem*, acc. sing. f. (*cōnsuētūdō*, -inis); subject-acc. of *patī*. — *patī*, pres. inf. of the deponent *patior*, *patī*, *passus*, 3.

LINE 5. *utī*, conj. = *ut*, that. — *optimē*, adv., superl. degree (*bene*, *melius*, *optimē*); modifies *merentēs*. — *merentēs*, acc. plur. m. pres. participle of deponent *mereor*, -eri, -itus, 2; an attributive of *sociōs*. Observe the deponents have the participles of both voices. — *sociōs*, acc. plur. m. (*socius*); direct obj. of *dēsereret*. — *dēsereret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dēserō*, -ere, -uī, -sertum, 3; telic subjunctive after *utī*. Observe that *patī*, regularly, takes the inf. with subject-acc. after it.

LINE 6. *neque*, see *neque*, l. 3, above. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); refers to Caesar; subject-acc. of *iūdicāre*. — *iūdicāre*, pres. inf. act. of *iūdicō*, 1 (compare *iūdex*, judge). — *Galliam*, acc. sing. f. (*Gallia*, -ae); subject-acc. of *esse*. — *potius*, adv.; strictly, an acc. n. of the adj. *potior*, -us, comparative of *potis*. — *esse*, pres. inf. (*sum*, perf. *fuī*, fut. participle *futūrus*).

LINE 7. *Ariovistī*, predicate-gen. of *Ariovistus*, -ī, m. — after *esse*. A. & G. 214, c; B. 133; G. 366; H. 401, 402. — *quam*, conj.; with comparatives = *than*. — *populī Rōmānī*, gen.; the phrase is connected by *quam* with *Ariovistī*, and is

ple. The Arverni and the Ruteni were conquered in war by Quintus Fabius Maximus; but the Roman people had pardoned them, and had not reduced them to a province, nor had they imposed tribute upon them.	superātōs esse	Arvernōs	et	Rutēnōs	ab	8
	to have been conquered	the Arverni	and	the Ruteni	by	
	Q. Fabiō Māximō,	quibus	populus	Rōmānus	9	
	Quintus Fabius Maximus,	whom	the people	Roman		
	ignōvisset,	neque	in	prōvinciam	10	
	had pardoned,	nor	into	a province		
	redēgisset,	neque	stīpendium	imposuisset.	11	
	had they reduced (them),	nor	tribute	had they imposed.		

in the same grammatical construction. See l. 4, above. — *Bellō*, abl. of *bellum*, -ī, n.; means. See *bellum*, l. 15, Chap. I.

LINE 8. *superātōs esse*, perf. inf. pass. of *superō*, 1 (*super*); its subject-accusatives are *Arvernōs* and *Rutēnōs*. — *Arvernōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Arvernī*, -ōrum); a clan living north of the Ruteni. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the nouns. — *Rutēnōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Rutēnī*, -ōrum); connected by *et* with *Arvernōs*, and in the same grammatical construction. The Ruteni were a clan bordering on the province. The clans here mentioned were defeated by the Romans 121 B.C. Ariovistus entered Gaul 71 B.C. — a rather late comer. But Ariovistus says in Chap. XLIV: *Se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Rōmānum*. — *ab*, prep. with the abl.

LINE 9. *Q. Fabiō Māximō*, abl. of the agent after the pres. *ab*. Observe that the person here alluded to was Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus); that *Quīntus* (quīque + tus, orig. the fifth-born) is the *praenōmen*; that *Fabius* is the name of the *gens*, and *Māximus* is the *cōgnōmen*; and that *Allobrogicus* is the *agnōmen*. — *quibus*, dat. plur. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*) after *ignōvisset*; refers to *Arvernōs* and *Rutēnōs*. — *populus*, -ī, m., subject-nom. of *ignōvisset*. — *Rōmānus*, adj.; an attributive of *populus*.

LINE 10. *ignōvisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of *ignōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, 3; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. — *neque*, see *neque*, l. 3, above. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *prōvinciam*, acc. sing. f. (*prōvincia*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 11. *redēgisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *redigō*, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, 3; connected by the conj. *neque* with *ignōvisset*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — *neque*, see *neque*, l. 3, above. — *stīpendium*, acc. sing. n. (*stīpendium*); direct obj. of *imposuisset*. Observe that, as *redēgisset* is trans., it takes *eōs* understood as direct obj.; but that *imposuisset* takes here the direct obj. expressed, and a dat. *eīs* understood, depending on the prep. *in* in the compound *im(n)posuisset*. — *imposuisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *pūsū*, *positum*, 3; connected by the conj. with *ignōvisset*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 3-11: *neque mea neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuetūdō patitur, utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēseram, neque egō iūdicō Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ab Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit, neque in prōvinciam redēgit, neque stīpendium imposuit.*

12	Quod	sī	antīquissimum	quodque	tempus	Moreover, if the remotest antiquity should be regarded, the supremacy of the Roman people in Gaul was most just; if the judicial opinion of the senate should be heeded, Gaul ought to be free; for though the country had been conquered in war, the senate had decreed that its people might make use of their own laws.
	As to which (But) if		most ancient	every	time	
13	spectārī	oportēret,	populī	Rōmānī		
	to be considered	it behooved,	of the people	Roman		
14	iūstissimum	esse in	Galliā	imperium;	sī	
	most just	to be in	Gaul,	the ruling power;	if	
15	iūdicium	senātūs	observārī	oportēret,		
	the judgment	of the senate	to be regarded	it behooved,		
16	liberam	dēbēre	esse	Galliam,	quam	
	free,	to be bound (ought),	to be,	Gaul,	which	
17	bellō	vīctam,	suīs	lēgibus	ūtī	
	by war	having been vanquished,	its own	law	to use	
18		voluisset.				
	(the senate)	had wished.				

LINE 12. *Quod*, strictly, an adverbial acc.; but before *sī*, at the beginning of a sentence = *but* or *and*. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *antīquissimum*, acc. sing. n., adj., superl. of *antīquus*, -ior; an attributive of *tempus*. For Synonyms, see l. 37, Chap. XVIII. — *quodque*, acc. sing. n., indef. pron. (*quisque, quaeque, quidque* or *quodque*); an attributive also of *tempus*. Observe that *quisque* with the superl. = *omnis* with the positive. — *tempus*, acc. sing. n. (*tempus, -oris*); subj. of *spectārī*.

LINE 13. *spectārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *specto*, 1. — *oportēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive (*oportet*); impersonal verb; strictly, the conditional clause is its subj. See l. 11, Chap. XI. — *populī*, gen. sing. m. (*populus, -ī*); limits *imperium*. Synonyms: *populum*, l. 17, Chap. VI. — *Rōmānī*, adj.; an attributive of *populī*.

LINE 14. *iūstissimum*, acc. sing. n. of superl. *iūstissimus, -a, -um*; positive *iūstus (iūs)*; predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*; here the copula. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *Galliā*, abl. sing. f. (*Gallia, -ae*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *imperium*, acc. sing. n. (*imperium, -ī, n.*); subj. of *esse*. — *sī*, conditional conj.

LINE 15. *iūdicium*, acc. sing. n.; subject-acc. of *observārī*. — *senātūs*, gen. sing. m. (*senatus, -ūs*); limits *iūdicium*. — *observārī*, pres. inf. pass. of *observo*, 1. — *oportēret*, see l. 13, above.

LINE 16. *liberam*, acc. sing. f. (*liber, -era, -erum*); predicate-acc. after *esse*. — *dēbēre*, pres. inf. act. of *dēbeo*, 2; its subject-acc. is *Galliam*. Synonyms: l. 5, Chap. IV. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*; complementary of *dēbēre*. — *Galliam*, subject-acc. of *dēbēre*. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *Galliam*; subject-acc. of *ūtī*.

LINE 17. *bellō*, abl. sing. n. (*bellum, -ī*); means. — *vīctam*, acc. sing. f. of perf. pass. participle *vīctus, -a, -um*, from *vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctum*, 3; agrees with the pron. *quam*, and has here a concessive force. — *suīs*, abl. plur. f. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *lēgibus*. — *lēgibus*, abl. plur. f. (*lēx, lēgis*); abl. after *ūtī*. — *ūtī*, pres. inf. of deponent *utor, ūti, ūsus*, 3; subject-acc. is *quam*.

LINE 18. *voluisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive (*volō, velle, voluī*); agrees with *populus Rōmānus* understood; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in

XLVI. While this discussion was going on at the conference, Caesar was informed that the cavalry of Ariovistus were approaching nearer the mound and were hurling stones and javelins at them. Caesar ceased speaking, and

XLVI. Dum haec in colloquiō 1  
While these (things) in the conference  
geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est 2  
are being carried on, to Caesar it was reported  
equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum 3  
the cavalry of Ariovistus nearer to the hill  
accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, 4  
to be approaching and toward ours to be riding  
lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere. 5  
(and) stones weapons and, against ours to be throwing.  
Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad 6  
Caesar of speaking an end makes himself and, to

*ōrātiō obliqua.* The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 12–18: Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, libera debet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam, suis lēgibus ūtī (senātus) voluit.

LINE 1. *Dum*, conj.; here = *while*; and used with the pres. ind. act., whatever the tense of the main clause. See A. & G. 276, *e*; B. 228, REM. 1; G. 229, REM., and 570; H. 467, 4. — *haec*, nom. plur. n. (*hīc, haec, hōc*); subject-nom. of *geruntur*; the reference is to the many things spoken by Caesar in Chap. XLV. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *col(n)loquiō*, abl. (*colloquium, -i, n*); obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 2. *geruntur*, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. pass. of *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *haec*. — *Caesarī*, dat. sing. m. (*Caesar, -aris*); indirect object. — *nūntiātum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. (*nūntiō, i*); impersonal; strictly, the following acc. and inf. clause is the subj.

LINE 3. *equitēs*, acc. plur. m. (*eques, -itis*); subject-acc. of *accēdere*. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing. m. (*Ariovistus, -i*); limits *equitēs*. — *propius* (*prope*, near), adv., comparative degree; here used as prep. — *tumulum* (*tumēre*, to swell); acc. sing. (*tumulus, -i, m.*); obj. of the adv. *propius*, used as prep. Consult A. & G. 234, *e*, 261, *a*, and NOTE; B. 144, REM. 4; G. 359, NOTE 1; H. 391, II, 2.

LINE 4. *accēdere*, pres. inf. act. (*accēdō, 3 [ad + cēdere]*). — *et*, cop. conj. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. (*noster, -tra, -trum* [nōs]), used substantively; or supply *mīlitēs*; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *adequitāre*, pres. inf. act. of *equitō, i* (ad + *equus*); connected by *et* with *accēdere*, and in the same construction.

LINE 5. *lapidēs*, acc. plur. m. (*lapis, -idis*); direct obj. of *cōnicere*. — *tēlaque* (*tēla + que*). *tēla*, acc. plur. n. (*tēlum, -i*). *que*, enclitic conj.; here connects *tēla* with *lapidēs*; hence in the same construction. Observe the omission of *et* between the inf. clauses (asyndeton). — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur.; used substantively; obj. of the prep. *in*; see *nostrōs*, preceding line. — *cōnicere*, pres. inf. act. of *cōnicēō* (con + *iacere*), 3; pres. inf. act.; its subject-acc. is *eōs*, i.e. *equitēs*, understood.

LINE 6. *Caesar, -aris, m.*; subject-nom. of *fēcit*. — *loquendī*, gen. of the gerund (*loquor, -i, -utus*, 3); limits *finem*. — *finem*, acc. sing. m. (*finis, -is*);

7	suōs	recēpit	suisque	imperāvit	nē	withdrew to his friends, giving them orders not to hurl back a single weapon at the enemy. For though he saw that a skirmish with the enemy's cavalry would be without any hazard to his chosen legion, yet he did not think
	his own	he betakes,	to his own and,	he commanded	that not	
8	quod	omnīnō	tēlum	in	hostēs	
	any	at all	weapon	against	the enemy	
9	rēicerent.	Nam etsi	sine	ūllō	periculō	
	they might return.	For although	without	any	peril	
10	legiōnis	dēlectae	cum	equitātū	proelium	
	of (to) the legion	chosen	with	the cavalry	a fight	
11	fore	vidēbat,	tamen	committendum		
	to be about to be	he saw,	yet (it)	to be caused		

direct obj. of *fēcit*. — *fēcit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *faciō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Caesar*. Some editions have *facit* instead of *fēcit*. — *sēque* (*sē + que*). *sē*, acc. sing., reflexive pron. (*sui, sibi, sē, sē*); refers to *Caesar*; direct obj. of *recēpit*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects *fēcit* and *recēpit*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 7. *suōs*, acc. plur., poss. adj. pron. (*suus, -a, -um*); used substantively; or might be taken as an attributive of *amicōs*, to be supplied. — *recēpit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar*. — *suisque* (*suus + que*). *suus*, dat. plur. — indirect obj. (*suus*); used substantively; or supply *militibus*. *que*, enclitic conj.; closely connects the clauses. — *imperāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*imperō, i*); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar*. — *nē*, negative telic conj.

LINE 8. *quod*, acc. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quis* or *quī, quae, quod* or *quid*; used adjectively; an attributive of *tēlum*. — *omnīnō* (*omnis*), adv. = lit. *wholly*; but with a negative, freq. = *not at all*. — *tēlum*, acc. sing. n. (*tēlum, -i*); direct obj. of *rēicerant*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it has the acc. See note on *in*, l. i, Chap. I. — *hostēs*, acc. plur. of *hostis, -is*, m. and f.; obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 9. *rēicerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *rēcero, -ere, -iēcī, -iēcūm*, 3 (*re + iacere, to hurl back*); agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to *Caesar's* soldiers; subjunctive of purpose after *nē*. — *Nam*, conj. = *for*; introduces a confirmation of a preceding statement. — *etsi* (*et + si*) = lit. *and if*; in use, a concessive conj. = *although*. — *sine*, prep. with the abl. — *ūllō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *ūllus*, gen. *ūllius*; an attributive of *periculō*. — *periculō*, abl. sing. n. (*periculum, -i*); obj. of the prep. *sine*.

LINE 10. *legiōnis*, gen. sing. f. (*legiō, -ōnis*); objective gen.; limits *periculō*. Consult A. & G. 217; B. 131, REM. 2; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III. — *dēlectae*, gen. sing. f. of participle *dēlectus, -a, -um* (*dēligō, 3*); an attributive of *legiōnis*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. m. (*equitātus, -ūs*); obj. of the prep. *cum*. — *proelium*, acc. sing. n. (*proelium, -i*); subject-acc. of *fore*. Synonyms: l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 11. *fore*, fut. inf. for *futūrum esse*; fut. inf. of *sum*; a somewhat rare form. — *vidēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *videō, 2*; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *Caesar*; ind. after *etsi*, representing a supposition as a *fact*. Synonyms: l. 14, Chap. XXX. — *tamen*, adv.; complement of the conj. *etsi*; = *yet*. — *committendum* (*esse*), pres. inf. pass. periphrastic conjugation; denoting necessity (*committō, 3*); used impersonally; supply *sibi*, i.e. *Caesari*, as dat. of the agent.

that he ought to so act, that it might be said that, in case the enemy should be routed, they had been treacher- ously circum- vented by him at the confer- ence. After it was generally known to the soldiers with what insolence Ariovistus at the conference had interdicted the Romans from all	nōn (by himself) not	putābat did think	ut, that,	pulsis being routed	hostibus, 12 the enemy,
	dīcī to be said	posset it might be	eōs them	ab by	sē per 13 him through
	fīdem faith (in him)	in at	colloquīō the conference	circumventōs. 14 to have been defrauded.	
	Posteāquam After that	in to	vulgus the mass	mīlitum of the soldiers	ēlātum est, 15 it was reported,
	quā what	arrogantiā arrogance	in at	colloquīō the conference	Ariovistus 16 Ariovistus
	ūsus using,	omnī all	Galliā Gaul	Rōmānīs to the Romans	interdixisset, 17 he had forbidden,

LINE 12. *nōn* (*nē* + *oe[ū]num*, apocopated); modifies *putābat*. — *putābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *putō*, 1; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. Synonyms: l. 9, Chap. XIX. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *pulsis*, abl. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *pulsus*, -a, -um of *pellō*, -ere, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, 3; absolute with *hostibus*. — *hostibus*, abl. of *hostis*, -is, m. and f.; agrees with *pulsis*, i.e. abl. absolute.

LINE 13. *dīcī*, pres. inf. pass. (*dīcō*, 3); pass. parts: *dīcor*, *dīcī*, *dictus*; complementary inf. — *posset*, 3d pers. sing.; used impersonally; subjunctive of result after *ut*. A. & G. 332, 2; B. 201; G. 553, 2; H. 501, I. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron.; refers to the enemy; subject-acc. of *circumventōs* (*esse*). — *ab*, prep. with the abl. — *sē*, abl. sing., reflexive pron. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); refers to Caesar; abl. of the agent after the prep. *ab*. — *per*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 14. *fīdem*, acc. sing. f. (*fīdēs*, -ē); obj. of the prep. *per*; supply *ēius*, i.e. *Caesaris*, as objective gen. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *col(n)loquīō*, abl. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -ī); locative abl. with the prep. *in*. — *circumventōs* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. (*circumveniō*, 4); subject-acc. is *eōs*. Note how frequently *esse* is omitted in the formation in the fut. act., and also in the perf. pass. infinitive.

LINE 15. *Posteāquam* (*postea* + *quam*), adv.; usually takes the ind. — *in*, prep.; here with the acc. — *vulgus*, frequently written *volgus*, -ī, n.; but m. in Verg. A. 2: 99; acc., obj. of the prep. *in*. Note that the phrase *in vulgus* here = *in multitudinem*. — *mīlitum*, gen. plur. m. (*mīles*, *mīlitis*); limits *vulgus*. — *ēlātum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *effērō*, -ferre, *extulī*, *ēlātum* (*ex* + *ferō*, *bring out*); hence *efferre* = *report*. *ēlātum est* is used here impersonally; or, strictly, the following clauses from *quā* to *dirēmisset* are the subject.

LINE 16. *quā*, abl. sing. f. of the interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; used adjectively; an attributive of *arrogantiā*. — *ar(d)rogantiā*, abl. sing. f. (*arrogantia*, -ae); abl. after *ūsus*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I. — *in colloquīō*, see this phrase, l. 14, above. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *interdixisset*.

LINE 17. *ūsus*, perf. participle of deponent *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus*, 3; agrees with *Ariovistus*. Compare this use of *ūsus* with that of the GK. *ἔχω* = English *with*. —

18	impetumque	in	nostrōs	ēius	equitēs	Gaul and his cavalry had made an attack on our his cavalry
19	fēcissent,	eaque	rēs	colloquium	ut	on our men and how this incident had interrupted the conference, a much greater degree of energy and zeal for fighting was infused into the army.
20	dirēmisset,	multō	māior	alacritās	studiumque	
21	pūgnandī	māius	exercitūi	iniectum est.		

omnī, abl. sing. f. (*omnis*, -e); an *i*-stem; abl. in *-ī*; an attributive of *Galliā*. — *Galliā*, abl. (*Gallia*, -ae, f.); separation after *interdixisset*. See A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, 2, and NOTE 2; H. 413. — *Rōmānis*, dat. plur., adj. *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, used substantively; indirect obj. A. & G. 228; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — *interdixisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *interdicō*, 3; agrees with *Ariovistus*; subjunctive, because an *indirect* question.

LINE 18. *impetumque* (*impetum* + *que*). *impetum*, acc. sing. m. (*impetus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *fēcisset*. *que*, enclitic conj., closely connecting the clauses. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. See *in*, l. I, Chap. I. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. (*noster*, -tra, -trum), used substantively; or supply *militēs*; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*), used as a personal pron.; refers to *Ariovistus*; limits *equitēs*. — *equitēs*, nom. plur. of *eques*, -itis, m.; subject-nom. of *fēcissent*.

LINE 19. *fēcissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3; connected by the enclitic conj. *que* with *interdixisset*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — *eaque* (*ea* + *que*). *ea*, nom. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *rēs*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses. — *rēs*, nom. sing. f. (*rēs*, *rei*); subj. of *dirēmisset*. Note that *rēs* = the attack of cavalry. — *col(n)loquium*, acc. sing. n. (*colloquium*, -ī); direct obj. of *dirēmisset*. — *ut*, adv. here = *quam*, how; very emphatic, as shown by its unusual position.

LINE 20. *dirēmisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive of *dirimō*, -ere, *ēmī*, *ēemptum*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *rēs*; subjunctive, because an *indirect* question. — *multō*, abl. of degree of difference of *multus* — after the comparative *māior*; might be taken as an adv. — *māior*, adj., comparative degree (*māgnus*); modifies *alacritās*. — *alacritās*, -ātis, f.; subject-nom. — *studiumque* (*studium* + *que*). *studium*, -ī, nom. sing. n.; subject of *iniectum est*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the subjects.

LINE 21. *pūgnandī*, gen. of the gerund (*pūgnō*, 1); limits *alacritās* and *studium*. Consult A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, I; G. 428; H. 542, I. — *māius*, nom. sing. n., adj., comparative degree; *māior*, m. and f., *māius*, n.; positive *māgnus*; an attributive of *studium*. — *exercitūi*, dat. sing. (*exercitus*, -ūs, m.); indirect obj. after *iniectum est*. Synonyms: see *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — *iniectum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *iniciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3; agrees with the nearer noun *studium* as subject-nom. both in number and in the case of the participial part of the perf. pass.



XLVII. Two days after the incidents alluded to above, Ariovistus sent envoys to Caesar, to say that he wished to treat with him about those matters which they had begun to discuss, but had not finished; and to request him either again to appoint a day for a conference;

XLVII.	Biduō	post	Ariovistus	ad 1
	Two days	after	Ariovistus	to
Caesarem	lēgātōs	mittit:	Velle	sē 2
Caesar	envoys	sends:	To wish	himself
dē	hīs rēbus,	quae inter	eōs	agī 3
about	these things	which between	them	to be treated
coeptae	neque	perfectae essent,	agere	cum 4
began	not and,	had been concluded,	to treat	with
eō;	utī	aut iterum	colloquiō	diem 5
him;	that	either again	for a conference	a day

LINE 1. **Biduō**, abl. sing. of the noun *biduum*, -ī, n. (bis, twice + diēs); distance as degree of difference after the adv. *post*. See A. & G. 250; B. 164, REM. 3; G. 403, NOTE 4, (a), (b); H. 423, and NOTE 2. Hence *biduō post* = lit. AFTER by the space of two days. — *post*, adv.; modifies *mittit*. — **Ariovistus**, -ī, m.; subj. of *mittit*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 2. **Caesarem**, acc. sing. m. (*Caesar*, -aris); obj. of prep. *ad*. — **lēgātōs**, acc. plur. of *lēgātus*, -i, m.; direct obj. of *mittit*. — **mittit**, 3d pers. sing. — historical — of *mittō*, -ere, *missi*, *missum*, 3; agrees with *Ariovistus* as subject-nom. — **Velle**, pres. inf. of *volō*, *velle*, *volui*, irr. Observe that the inf. construction here in the indirect discourse depends on *dixit*, to be supplied, i.e. we may thus conceive it to be understood; but really it depends on the historic pres. *mittit*. — **sē**, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *velle*.

LINE 3. **dē**, prep. with the abl. — **hīs**, abl. plur. f. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); attributive of *rēbus*. — **rēbus**, abl. plur. of *rēs*, *rei*, f.; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — **quae**, nom. plur. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); subj. of *coeptae* (*essent*) and *perfectae essent*. — **inter**, prep. with the acc. — **eōs**, acc. plur. of the dem. pron. *is*; used substantively; obj. of the prep. *inter*. — **agī**, pres. inf. pass. of *agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *actum*, 3; pass. *agor*, *agī*, *actus*; *agī* is complementary inf.

LINE 4. **coeptae** (*essent*), 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive pass. of the defective verb *coepī*, *coepisse*, fut. participle *coepūrus*, pass. participle *coeptus*; agrees with the subj. *quae*; subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; pass., because the pass. is used with pass. infinitives. — **neque** (*nē* + *que*). — **perfectae essent**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive pass. of *perficiō*, 3; connected by *neque* with *coeptae essent*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — **agere**, pres. inf. act. of *agō*, 3; see *agī*, preceding line; complementary inf. of *Velle*, l. 2, above. — **cum**, prep. with the abl.

LINE 5. **eō**, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as personal pron., 3d pers.; refers to Caesar; is the obj. of the prep. *cum*. — **utī**, orig. form; = *ut*; here telic conj. Supply *rogāvit* before this telic clause. — **aut**, alternative conj. = *or*; but *aut* . . . *aut* = *either* . . . *or*. — **iterum**, adv.; modifies *cōstitueret*. — **col(n)loquiō**, dat. of purpose (*colloquium*, -ī, n.). See note, l. 4, Chap. XXXIV. — **diem**, acc. sing. m. or f. (*diēs*, -ī); direct obj. of *cōstitueret*; always m. in plur.

6 cōstitueret,	aut,	sī	id	minus	vellet,	or, if he did not wish to do that,
he would constitute,	or,	if	that	less	he wished,	to send to him
7 ē suis lēgātum aliquem ad sē mitteret.						some one of his friends as his envoy. Caesar
of his, as envoy	some one	to him	he would send.			did not think there was any case for discussion; and the more so, as the day before the Germans could not be restrained
8 Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn						
Of conferring	to Caesar	the reason	looked upon	not		
9 est; et eō magis, quod pridīe ēius						
is; and by this the more, because before-day of this						
10 diēī Germānī retinērī nōn poterant,						
day the Germans to be hindered	not	were able,				

LINE 6. cōstitueret, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of cōstituō, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 331, b; B. 200, REM. 2; G. 546, NOTE 1; H. 498, I. — aut, see aut, preceding line. — sī, conditional conj. — id, acc. sing. n. (*is, ea, id*); used substantively; refers to motive of holding a conference; direct obj. *vellet*; or *facere* may be supplied. — minus, adv. = lit. *less*; transf. = *not, not at all* = an emphatic negative. Observe that the positive *parvū* is rare; that the superl. has two forms: *parvissimē*, and, classic, *minimē*. — vellet, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō, vellē, voluī*; subject-nom. is *Caesar*, to be supplied; subjunctive after *sī* in the protasis.

LINE 7. ē, prep. with the abl. — suis, abl. plur. (*suus, -a, -um*), used substantively; or supply *militibus*; obj. of the prep. *ē*. *ē suis*, the phrase limits *aliquem* instead of partitive gen. — lēgātum, acc. sing. m. (*lēgātus, -i*); in apposition with *aliquem*. — aliquem, acc. sing. m. of the indef. pron. *aliquis, aliquid* — subst.; direct obj. of *mitteret*. — ad, prep. with the acc. — sē, acc. sing. (*sui, sibi, sē, sē*); refers to Ariovistus; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — mitteret, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *mittō*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive, because connected by *aut cōstitueret*, and thus is under the influence of *ut*, i.e. subjunctive of purpose. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 2-7: *Volō egō dē his rēbus, quae inter nōs agī coepit neque perfectae sunt agere tēcum*; *utī aut iterum colloquī diem constitūds, aut, sī hōc minus velīs, ē tuis lēgātum aliquem ad mē mittās*.

LINE 8. Colloquendī, gen. of the gerund of *col(n)loquor, -i, -locūtus, -3*, deponent; as gen. limits *causa*. Observe that deponent verbs have the fut. inf., the participles, gerund and supine of the act. voice. — Caesarī, dat. of *Caesar, -aris, m.*; indirect object. — causa, -ae, f.; subject-nom. of *vīsa est*. — vīsa, nom. sing. f. of the participial part of the perf. pass. ind. *vīsa est*; f., because *causa* is f. The parts of verb are *videor, -ēri, vīsus, 2*. — nōn, adv. (*nē + ūnum*). Observe its position between the parts of a compound tense formation.

LINE 9. est, 3d pers. sing. of *sum*; but part of *vīsa est*; perf. ind. pass.; agrees with *causa*. — et, cop. conj.; connects the clauses. — eō, abl. n.; *cause (is, ea, id)*; herald of the following *quod*-clause. — magis, adv., comparative degree; superl. *māximē*. For complete analysis, supply *haec vīsa est* from the preceding. — quod, conj. = *because*. — pridīe (pri [prior] + diēs), adv. — ēius, gen. sing. (*is, ea, id*); an attributive of *diēī*.

LINE 10. diēī, gen. sing., m. and f. in sing. (*diēs, -ēi*); gen. after the adv. *pridīe*. Observe that *pridīe ēius diēī* = lit. *the day before that day*. — Germānī, -ōrum,

from hurling weapons at our men. He thought that to send one of his Ro- man friends as his envoy would be attended with great risk, and would expose him to savage men. It seemed, accordingly, most suitable to send to him Ca-	quīn <i>but that</i>	in <i>against</i>	nostrōs <i>our (men)</i>	tēla <i>weapons</i>	cōnicerent. 11 <i>they would throw.</i>	
	Lēgātum <i>An envoy</i>	ē <i>of</i>	suīs <i>his (men)</i>	sēsē <i>himself</i>	māgnō <i>great</i>	cum 12 <i>with</i>
	periculō <i>danger</i>	ad <i>to</i>	eum <i>him</i>	mīssūrum <i>(to be) about to send</i>		et 13 <i>and</i>
	hominibus <i>to men</i>	ferīs <i>wild</i>	obiectūrum <i>(to be) about to expose,</i>		existimābat. 14 <i>he thought.</i>	
	Commodissimum <i>Most fitting</i>		vīsum est <i>it seemed</i>	Caiūm <i>Caius</i>	Valerium 15 <i>Valerius</i>	

nom. plur. m.; subj. of *poterant*. — *retinēri*, pres. inf. pass. (*retineō*, 2); complementary; depends on *poterant*. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I, 2. — *nōn*, adv.; modifies *poterant*. — *poterant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *possum* (potis + sum); agrees with *Germāni*.

LINE 11. *quīn* (qui + nē), conj.; after negatives = *lit. that or but that*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. m. of poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *tēla*, acc. plur. n. (*tēlum*, -ī); direct obj. of *cōnicerent*. — *cōnicerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *cōniciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to the Germans; subjunctive of result after *quīn*. Consult A. & G. 319, d; B. 201, REM. 3; G. 554; H. 504, 4.

LINE 12. *Lēgātum*, acc. sing. m. (*lēgātus*, -ī); direct obj. of *mīssūrum* (*esse*), l. 13, below. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. — *suīs*, abl. plur. m. (*suus*, -a, -um); used substantively; or supply *virīs*; obj. of the prep. *ē*. *ē suīs*, the phrase limits *lēgātum*, instead of the gen. — rare construction. — *sēsē*, reduplicate pron. acc. sing. (*suī*); subject-acc. of *mīssūrum* (*esse*). — *māgnō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *periculō*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. Observe its position.

LINE 13. *periculō*, abl. sing. n. of *periculum*, -ī; obj. of the prep. *cum*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *mīssūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *mittō*, 3 (see l. 2, above); subject-acc. is *Lēgātum*, preceding line. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects *mīssūrum* and *obiectūrum*.

LINE 14. *hominibus*, dat. of the indirect obj. of *homō*, *hominis*, m. and f.; the dat. in fact depends on *ob* in the compound *obiectūrum*. — *feris*, dat. plur. m. of *ferus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *hominibus*. — *obiectūrum* (*esse*), fut. inf. act. of *obiēcō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 3; connected by *et* with *mīssūrum*, and in the same grammatical construction. What Caesar thought in direct form in lines 12-14 may thus be expressed: *Lēgātum ē meis egō māgnō cum periculō ad hunc mittam et hominibus feris obiectam*. Observe that these lines, in the text, are *informal* indirect discourse; while lines 2-7 are *formal* indirect discourse. — *existimābat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. (*existimō*, 1); as subject-nom. is a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. Observe that the infinitive-clause in this sentence depends on *existimābat*.

LINE 15. *Commodissimum*, nom. sing. n. — predicate-adj.; superl. of *commodus* (con, intensive + modus = full measure). — *vīsum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *videor*, -ēri, *vīsus*, 2; used impersonally; but, strictly, *mittere*, l. 24, below, is

- 16 Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā  
*Procillus, of Caius Valerius Caburus, the son, of very great*
- 17 virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cūius  
*merit and humanity a young man, whose*
- 18 pater ā Cāiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvītāte  
*father by Caius Valerius Flaccus with citizenship*
- 19 dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et  
*presented was, and on account of (his) fidelity and*

the grammatical subject, and the entire sentence following *vīsum est* is the logical subject. Observe that *vīdērī* is pass. of act. *vīdēre*; and that, in the pass., it = *to be looked upon, or regarded*, in any manner; hence = *to seem*. — *Cāium*, acc. sing. m. (*Cāius*, -ī), *praenōmen*; sometimes in imitation of the GK. written *Gāius* (Γάιος). — *Valerium*, acc. sing. m. (*Valerius*, -ī), *nōmen*.

LINE 16. *Procillum*, acc. sing. m. (*Procillus*, -ī), *cōgnōmen*. These names as a complex proper noun are the direct obj. of *mittere*, l. 24. Observe that, though *Procillus* was a Roman family name, it is, in the text, the name of a Gaul sent by Caesar to Ariovistus. — *C.*, abbreviation for *Cāi*, gen. sing. m. (*Cāius*, -ī). — *Valerī*, gen. sing. m. (*Valerius*, -ī). — *Cabūrī*, gen. sing. m. (*Cabūrus*, -ī). These names form a complex proper noun in the gen., limiting *filium*. Caburus was a Celt who was honored with Roman citizenship. — *filium*, acc. sing. m. (*filius*, -ī); in apposition with *Procillum*. — *summā*, abl. sing. f., *superus*, -ior, *suprēmus* or *summus*; an attributive of *virtūte*.

LINE 17. *virtūte*, abl. sing. of *virtūs*, -ūtis, f. (*vir*, man); abl. of quality. A. & G. 251; B. 169; G. 400; H. 419, II. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the nouns. — *hūmānitāte*, abl. sing. f. — *hūmānitās*, -tātis (*hūmānus* [*homō*]); connected by *et* with *virtūte*, and in the same construction. — *adulēscētem*, acc. sing. of *adulēscēns*, -centis, m. and f.; an appositive of *filium*. Observe that *adulēscēns* = a man or woman from 17 to 40 years old. — *cūius*, gen. sing. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); limits *pater*.

LINE 18. *pater*, nom. sing. m. of *pater*, -tris (GK. πατήρ); subj. of *dōnātus erat*. — *ā*, prep. with the abl.; here the abl. of the agent, and = *by*. — *Cāiō*, abl. sing. m. (*Cāius*, -ī). — *Valeriō*, abl. sing. m. (*Valerius*, -ī). — *Flaccō*, abl. sing. m. (*Flaccus*, -ī). These names as a complex noun are abl. of agent after the prep. *ā*. Note that C. V. Flaccus was governor of Gaul B.C. 83. — *cīvītāte*, abl. sing. of *civitas*, -tātis, f. (*civēs*); means after *dōnātus erat*. Observe that *dōnāre* in the act. admits of (a) the dat. of the person and acc. of the thing; or (b) the acc. of the person and abl. of the thing; and that (c) in the pass. the acc. of the thing becomes the nom., and the abl. of the thing remains. A. & G. 225, d; B. 167; G. 348; H. 384, II. 2).

LINE 19. *dōnātus erat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. pass. of *dōnō*, 1; agrees with the subject-nom. *pater*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the clauses. — *propter*, adv. or prep.; here a prep. with the acc. — *fidem*, acc. sing. f. (*fidēs*, -eī); obj. of the prep. *propter*. — *et*, conj.; connects the phrases.

cause of his knowledge of the Gallic language, which Ariovis- tus from long practice now spoke fluently; also because in his case the Ger- mans had no motive for in- flicting personal injury; — and to send with him Marcus Mettius,	propter on account of (his)	linguae tongue's	Gallicae Gallic	scientiam, 20 knowledge,
	quā which	multā much	iam already	Ariovistus Ariovistus
	cōnsuetūdine habit	ūtēbātur, used,	et and	quod because
	in in	eō him		
	peccandī of doing wrong	Germānīs to the Germans	causa cause	nōn not
			esset, was,	ad 23 to
	eum him	mittere, to send,	et and	Marcum Mēttium, Marcus Mettius,
				quī 24 who

LINE 20. **propter**, see *propter*, preceding line. Observe the repetition of the prepositions, thus keeping the notions distinct. — **linguae**, gen. sing. f. (*lingua*, -ae); limits *scientiam*. Observe that, as the tongue is the principal organ of speech, *lingua*, by metonymy, often = *language*. — **Gallicae**, gen. sing. f. of the adj. *Gallicus*, -a, -um (*Gallia*); an attributive of *linguae*. — **scientiam**, acc. sing. of *scientia*, -ae, f. (*scire*); obj. of the prep. *propter*.

LINE 21. **quā**, abl. sing. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *linguae*, but is an attributive of *linguā*, to be supplied; abl. after *ūtēbātur*. — **multā**, abl. sing. f. (*multus*, -a, -um); also a modifier of the understood *linguā*; but would better be translated as an adv., i.e. *fluently*. — **iam**, adv. = *now*, of the pres., past, or fut.; whereas *nunc* emphasizes the present. — **Ariovistus**, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *ūtēbātur*. — **longinquā**, abl. sing. f. of *longinquus*, -a, -um (*longus*, long); an attributive of *cōnsuetūdine*.

LINE 22. **cōnsuetūdine**, abl. sing. f. (*cōnsuetūdō*, -inis); *manner*. — **ūtēbātur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of the deponent *ūtōr*, -ī, *ūtus*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Ariovistus* expressed. — **et**, conj.; correlative to *et* . . . *et*, l. 19, above. — **quod**, conj. = *because*. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here the abl. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *in*; refers to *C. V. Procillum*, lines 15 and 16, above.

LINE 23. **peccandī**, gen. of the gerund of *peccō*, 1; limits *causa*. — **Germānīs**, dat. plur. m. (*Germānī*, -ōrum); possessor after *esset*. A. & G. 231; B. 146; G. 349; H. 387. — **causa**, -ae, f., subject-nom. of *esset*. — **nōn**, negative particle; modifies *esset*. — **esset**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*; agrees with *causa*; is subjunctive, because the clause is informal indirect discourse. Caesar as historian quotes Caesar the diplomat. See A. & G. 341, *d*, REM.; B. 198, (*b*); G. 628; H. 528, 1. — **ad**, prep. with the acc.

LINE 24. **eum**, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *ad*; refers to *Ariovistus*. — **mittere**, pres. inf. act. of *mittō*, 3; grammatically, the subject-nom. of *vīsum est*, l. 15, above. — **et**, conj.; connects *mittere* expressed with *mittere* understood. — **Marcum**, acc. sing. m. of *Marcus*, -ī. — **Mēttium**, acc. sing. m. of *Mēttium*, -ī. *M. Mēttium* is direct obj. of *mittere* understood. This name is sometimes printed *M. Mētius*. Observe that the complete lacuna is: *commodissimum vīsum est M. Mēttium ad eum mittere*. — **quī**, nom. sing. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *Mēttium*; but is subj. of *ūtēbātur*.

25	hospitiō the hospitality	Ariovistī of Ariovistus	ūtēbātur. enjoyed.	His To them	who was a guest- friend of Ario- vistus. Caesar
26	mandāvit, he gave orders	ut, quae that what (things)	diceret said	Ariovistus, Ariovistus,	directed them to ascertain what
27	cōgnōscerent they should learn	et ad sē and to him	referrent. should report.	Quōs Whom	Ariovistus said, and report to him. Now when
28	cum apud when before	sē in him in	castris the camp	Ariovistus Ariovistus	Ariovistus saw them in his camp before him, he
29	cōnspexisset, had seen,	exercitū army	suō his	praesente, being present,	shouted in the presence of his army: Why were
30	conclāmāvit: he cried aloud:	Quid Why	ad sē to him	venirent? should they come?	they come to him? was it then

LINE 25. *hospitiō*, abl. sing. n. of *hospitium*, -ī (*hospēs*, m. and f. = *host* or *guest*); abl. after *ūtēbātur*. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing. m. of *Ariovistus*, -ī; limits *hospitiō*. — *ūtēbātur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *ūtōr*, 3, deponent; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*. — *His*, dat. plur. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*), used substantively; indirect obj. of *mandāvit*; refers to C. V. Procillus and M. Mettius.

LINE 26. *mandāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *mandō*, 1 (*manus* + *dō*); agrees with *Caesar* understood as subject-nom. — *ut*, telic conj. — *quae*, acc. plur. n. of the interrogative pron. *quis*, *quae*, *quid*; direct obj. of *diceret*. — *diceret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dico*, 3; agrees with *Ariovistus* expressed; subjunctive, because an indirect question; and *ea* might be supplied, and *quae* taken as a rel., and the subjunctive explained as *characteristic*. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subj. of *diceret*.

LINE 27. *cōgnōscerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *cōgnōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, 3; agrees with the pron. *ei* as subject-nom., referring to C. V. Procillus and M. Mettius; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*. — *et*, conj.; connects the clauses. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); obj. of the prep. *ad*; refers to Caesar. — *referrent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *referō*, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; connected by the conj. *et* with *cōgnōscerent*, and in the subjunctive for the same reason. — *Quōs*, acc. plur. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to Procillus and Mettius; direct obj. of *cōnspexisset*.

LINE 28. *cum*, conj. temporal or historical. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. = *before*, *with*, *in the presence of*, *at the house of*. — *sē*, acc. sing. of *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; obj. of the prep. *apud*. — *in*, prep. — *castris*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m., subject-nom.

LINE 29. *cōnspexisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of *cōnspectō*, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Ariovistus*; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. — *exercitū*, abl. sing. m. (*exercitus*, -ūs); absolute with the participle *praesente*. Synonyms: I. 31, Chap. III. — *suō*, abl. sing. m. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *exercitū*. — *praesente*, abl. sing. m. (*praesēns*, -entis); pres. participle of *praesum*, used as an adj.; absolute with *exercitū*, denoting attendant circumstance. Observe that the form *praesente* is generally used of persons; *praesentū*, of things.

LINE 30. *conclāmāvit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *conclāmō*, 1 (*con*, intensive + *clāmō* = *shout aloud*); agrees with a pron. as subj., referring to Ariovistus. —

to act as spies? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs 31  
 As they tried or of spying for the sake? (Them) attempting  
 to speak, he interrupted them, and threw them dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcit. 32  
 into chains. to speak he prohibited and into chains threw.

XLVIII. The same day as that on which the incidents narrated above occurred, Ariovistus moved forward his camp and halted, at

XLVIII. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit 1  
 On the same day the camp he moved forward,  
 et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris 2  
 and by thousands of paces six from Caesar's

**Quid**, adverbial acc. (*quis, quae, quid*) = *as to what? why?* — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **sē**, acc. sing. of *suī*; refers to Ariovistus; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — **venīrent**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *veniō*, 4; a real question in indirect discourse is usually in the subjunctive. A. & G. 338; B. 245, 3; G. 651; H. 523, II, 1.

LINE 31. **an**, conjunctive particle; usually introduces the second of a double question; in a single question, *an* often indicates indignation or surprise = *then*. — **speculandī**, gerund of deponent *speculor*, 1; limits *causā*. A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, I, (a); G. 428, REM. 2; H. 542, 1. — **causā**, abl. of *causa*, -ae, f. — an abl. of cause with prepositional force = *for the sake of*. — **Cōnantēs**, acc. plur. of the pres. participle of *cōnor*, 1; agrees with *eōs* understood.

LINE 32. **dīcere**, pres. inf. act. of *dīcō*, 3. — **prohibuit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *prōhibeō*, 2; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Ariovistus. — **et**, cop. conj.; connects the verbs. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the acc. See *in*, I, 1, Chap. I. — **catēnās**, acc. plur. f. (*catēna*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **cōniēcit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōniciō*, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, 3; connected by *et* with *prohibuit*, and in the same grammatical construction. The *drātiō rēcta* of lines 30 and 31: *Quid ad mē venītis?* an *speculandī causā (venītis)?* Observe that the full purport of the last interrogative may be thus given: *utrum pācificandī an speculandī causā venītis?*

LINE 1. **Eōdem**, abl. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *īdem, eadem, idem*; an attributive of *diē*. — **diē**, abl. sing. of *diēs*, -ei, m. and f. in sing.; always m. in plur.; *time when*. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429. — **castra**, acc. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); direct obj. of *prōmōvit*. See *castrīs*, I, 12, Chap. XII. — **prōmōvit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *prōmoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2; agrees with Ariovistus understood.

LINE 2. **et**, cop. conj.; connects the clauses. — **milibus**, abl. plur. of the adj. *mīlia*, used as substantive; sing. *mille*, indecl.; abl. of degree of difference. A. & G. 257, b; B. 153, REM. 3; G. 403, NOTE 1; H. 423, NOTE 2. — **passuum**, gen. plur. m. (*passus*, -ūs); participle after *milibus*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **sex**, card. num. adj. (GK. ξξ); an attributive of *milibus*. — **ā** (*ab*), prep. with the abl. — **Caesaris**, poss. gen. (*Caesar*, -aris, m.); limits *castrīs*.

3	castrīs	sub	monte	cōnsēdit.	Postrīdiē	the foot of a mountain, six miles from Caesar's camp. The next day, he led his troops past Caesar's camp, and encamped two miles beyond him. He did this with a view of cutting off Caesar from grain and other supplies that were being brought up from the country of
	camp	under	a mountain	he encamped.	The day after	
4	ēius	diēi	praeter	castra	Caesaris	suās
	that	day	beyond	the camp	of Caesar	his own
5	cōpiās	trādūxit	et	milibus	passuum	
	forces	he led across,	and	by thousands	of paces	
6	duōbus	ūltrā	eum	castra	fēcit,	eō
	two,	beyond	him	a camp	he made,	with this
7	cōnsiliō,	utī	frūmentō	commeātūque,	quī	
	design,	that	from grain	supplies and,	which	

LINE 3. *castrīs*, abl. plur.; obj. of the prep. *sub*. See *castra*, l. 1, above. — *sub*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here it takes the abl. — *monte*, abl. sing. m. (*mōns, montis*); obj. of the prep. *sub*. The *mōns* referred to is the Vosges. — *cōnsēdit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum*, 3 (con + *sidere* = lit. to sit together); connected by *et* with *prōmōvit*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *Postrīdiē* (*postem + diēs*), adv.

LINE 4. *ēius*, gen. sing. (*is, ea, id*); an attributive of *diēi*. — *diēi*, gen. sing. of *dies, -ei*, m. and f. in sing.; always m. in plur.; gen. after the adverb *postrīdiē*. See l. 1, Chap. XXIII. — *praeter*, prep. with the acc. — *castra*, acc. plur.; obj. of *praeter*. See *castra*, l. 1, above. — *Caesaris*, poss. gen.; limits *castra*. — *suās*, acc. plur. f., poss. pron. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *cōpiās*.

LINE 5. *cōpiās*, acc. plur. f. (*cōpia, -ae*); direct obj. of *trādūxit*. See *cōpiās*, l. 6, Chap. II. — *trādūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *trādūcō*, 3 (*trāns + dūcō*); agrees with *Ariovistus* understood. — *et*, conj.; connects the clauses. — *milibus*, see *milibus*, l. 2, above. — *passuum*, see note on this word, l. 2, above.

LINE 6. *duōbus*, abl. plur. n. of card. num. adj. *duo, duae, duo*; an attributive of *milibus*. For declension of *duo*, see A. & G. 94, *b*; B. 64, REM. 2; G. 95; II. 175. — *ūltrā*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is, ea, id*); used as personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *ūltrā*. — *castra*, acc. plur.; direct obj. of *fēcit*. — *fēcit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum*, 3; agrees with a pronoun understood, referring to *Ariovistus*. — *eō*, sing. n. of *is*; an attributive of *cōnsiliō*.

LINE 7. *cōnsiliō*, abl. sing. n. (*cōnsilium, -i*); *manner*. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; II. 419, III. Synonyms: l. 5, Chap. XVIII. — *utī*, orig. form of conj. *ut*. — *frūmentō*, abl. sing. n. of *frūmentum, -i*; abl. of separation after *interclūderet*. Consult A. & G. 243, *a*; B. 160; G. 390, 2, NOTE 3; II. 414, l. — *commeātūque* (*commeātū + que*). *commeātū*, abl. sing. of *commeātus, -ūs*, m.; connected by *que* with *frūmentō*, and in the same construction. *que*, enclitic conj. — *quī*, nom. sing. m., rel. pron.; agrees with the nearest noun as antecedent; it is the subj. of *supportārētur*.



the Sequani and the Aedui. From this day for five successive days, Caesar led out his troops in front of his camp, and kept them drawn up in battle array, that, if Ariovistus desired to fight, he might have an opportunity. Ariovistus, during all this time, kept	ex	Sēquanīs	et	Aeduīs	supportārētur,	8	
	from	the Sequani	and	the Aedui	were being furnished,		
	Caesarem	interclūderet.	Ex	eō	diē	diēs	9
	Caesar	he might hinder.	From	that	day	days	
	continuōs	quīque	Caesar	prō	castrīs		10
	continuous	five	Caesar	before	the camp		
	suās	cōpiās	prōdūxit	et	aciem	instrūctam	11
	his own	troops	led out,	and	the line	drawn up	
	habuit,	ut,	sī	vellet	Ariovistus	proeliō	12
	he held,	that,	if	wished	Ariovistus	in battle	
	contendere,	eī	potestās	nōn	deēssset.		13
	to contend,	to him	an opportunity	not	might be lacking.		

LINE 8. *ex* (ē), prep. with the abl. — *Sēquanīs*, abl. plur. (*Sēquanī*, -ōrum); obj. of the prep. *ex*. See l. 25, Chap. I. — *et*, cop. conj. — *Aeduīs*, abl. plur. m. (*Aeduī*, -ōrum); connected by *et* with *Sēquanīs*, and in the same construction. See *Aeduō*, l. 20, Chap. I. — *supportārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *supportō*, 1 (sub + portāre = lit. to bring up from below); agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive by attraction.

LINE 9. *Caesarem*, acc. sing. m. (*Caesar*, -aris); direct obj. of *interclūderet*. — *interclūderet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *interclūdō*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Ariovistus; subjunctive of purpose after *ut*, l. 7, above. Observe that this telic clause explains the phrase *eō cōsiliō*, and is in apposition with it. — *Ex* (ē), prep. with the abl. — *eō*, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *diē*. — *diē*, abl. sing. m. of *diēs*; obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *diēs*, acc. plur. m.; extent of time. A. & G. 256, 2; B. 153; G. 336; H. 379.

LINE 10. *continuōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *continuus*, -a, -um (con + tenēre = lit. to hold together); hence the adj. = *uninterrupted, continuous*; an attributive of *diēs*. — *quīque*, indecl. num. adj.; an attributive of *diēs*. — *Caesar*, subject-nom. — *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *castrīs*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *prō*. See l. 12, Chap. XII.

LINE 11. *suās*, acc. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *cōpiās*, referring to Caesar. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur. f. (*cōpia*, -ae); direct obj. of *prōdūxit*. See *cōpiis*, l. 6, Chap. II. — *prōdūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *prōducō*, -ere, -dūxī, ductum, 3; agrees with *Caesar* expressed. — *et*, cop. conj.; couples the clauses. — *aciem*, acc. sing. f. (*aciēs*, -iēs); direct obj. of *habuit*. See *aciem*, l. 12, Chap. XXII. — *instrūctam*, acc. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle of *instruō*, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, 3; agrees with *aciem*, but with *habuit* = *instrūxit*, nearly. See A. & G. 292, c; B. 191, 3, (d); G. 238; H. 388, 1, NOTE.

LINE 12. *habuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *habēō*, 2, — *ut*, telic conj. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *vellet*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*; subjunctive in the protasis after *sī*. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *vellet*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. n. (*proelium*, -ī); means. For synonyms, see *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I.

LINE 13. *contendere*, pres. inf. act. of *contendō*, 3; complementary; depends on *vellet*. See *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. — *eī*, dat. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a

14	Ariovistus	hīs	omnibus	diēbus	exercitum	his army in camp, but engaged daily in cavalry skirmishes. The species of fight in which the Germans had trained themselves was this: There were six thousand cavalry, and the same number of very
	Ariovistus	in these	all	days	(his) army	
15	castris	continuit;	equestrī	proeliō	cotidiē	
	within the camp	held;	in cavalry	skirmish	daily	
16	contendit.	Genus	hōc	erat	pūgnae,	
	he contended.	The kind,	this	was	of fight,	in which
17	sē	Germānī	exercuerant.		Equitum	
	themselves	the Germans	had trained.		Of horsemen	
18	mīlia	erant	sex;	totidem	numerō	
	thousands (there) were	six;	the same	in number		

pers. pron.; indirect obj. — *potestās*, nom. sing. f.; subject-acc. of *deisset*. For synonyms, see *potentia*, l. 25, Chap. XVIII. — *nōn*, negative adv. — *deisset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *dēsum*, *deesse*, *dēfui*; agrees with *potestās* as subject; subjunctive after *ut*, preceding line, — *purpose*. Observe (a) that this telic clause is also the apodosis; and (b) that *dē* in *dēsum* is shortened as to its vowel in the infinitive by the law: a vowel before another vowel is short.

LINE 14. *Ariovistus*, subject-nom. of *continuit*. — *hīs*, abl. plur. m. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); an attributive of *diēbus*. — *omnibus*, abl. plur. m. (*omnis*, -e); modifies the phrase *hīs omnibus*. — *diēbus*, abl. plur. m. (*diēs*, -ē); *duration of time*. See A. & G. 256, 2, b; B. 153, REM. 2; G. 393, REM. 4; H. 379, 1. — *exercitum*, acc. sing. m. (*exercitus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *continuit*. For synonyms, see *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III.

LINE 15. *castris*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); place in which, without a prep. See A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 170, REM. 4; G. 389; H. 425, II. 1, 1. — *continuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *contineō*, -ere, -uī, -tentum, 2; agrees with *Ariovistus* expressed. — *equestrī*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *equester*, -tris, -tre (*equus*); an attributive of *proeliō*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. n. (*proelium*, -ī); *manner*. For synonyms, see l. 18, Chap. I. — *cotidiē*, adv. (quot + diēs).

LINE 16. *contendit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *contendō*, -ere, -lendī, -tentum, 3; connected by *et* understood, at the beginning of the clause, with *continuit*, and agrees with *Ariovistus* expressed. See *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. Observe that the connection of this verb with *continuit* determines the tense. So far as forms go, it might be pres. ind. — *Genus*, nom. sing. n. (*genus*, *generis*); subj. of *erat*. — *hōc*, nom. sing. n. (*hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*); predicate. *hōc* points to the following. — *pūgnae*, gen. sing. f. (*pugna*, -ae); limits *Genus*. For synonyms, see l. 18, Chap. I. — *quō*, abl. sing. n. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *Genus*; agrees with *generō*, to be supplied from *Genus*; abl. of *manner*.

LINE 17. *sē*, acc. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; direct obj. of *exercuerant*. — *Germānī*, nom. plur.; subject. — *exercuerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. act. of *exerceō*, -ere, -uī, -itum, 2; agrees with *Germānī*. — *Equitum*, gen. plur. of *eques*, -itis, m.; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2.

LINE 18. *mīlia*, nom. plur. n. (*mille*); indecl. in sing.; subj. of *erant*. See *milibus*, l. 2, above. — *erant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*; here a verb of complete predication. — *sex* (sibilated from GK. ξξ), card. num. adj.; an attributive of *mīlia*. — *totidem*, adv. (tot + idem). — *numerō*, abl. sing. m. (*numerus*, -ī); abl. of *specification*.

fleet and very brave foot-sol- diers; whom from the whole num- ber, each caval- ryman had select- ed one foot-sol- dier for his own protection. In company with them they were wont to engage in battles; the cavalrymen re- treated to them; if anything was rather difficult,	peditēs foot-soldiers	vēlōcissimī most swift	ac and	fortissimī; most brave;	quōs 19 whom	
	ex from	omnī all	cōpiā the supply	singulī individuals,	singulōs individuals	suae 20 their own
	salūtis safety	causā for the sake of,	dēlēgerant; had chosen;*	cum with	hīs them	in 21 in
	proeliīs battles	versābantur. they were engaged.	Ad To	eōs them, themselves,	sē 22	
	equitēs the horsemen	recipiēbant; retreated;	hī, they,	sī if	quid anything	erat 23 was

LINE 19. *peditēs*, nom. plur. m. of *pedes*, -itis (*pēs*): subject-nom. of *erant*, to be supplied. — *vēlōcissimī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *vēlōcissimus*, -a, -um; superl. of positive *vēlōx*, -ōcis; comparative *vēlōcior*; agrees with *peditēs*. — *ac*, conj. See *atque*, l. 10, Chap. I. — *fortissimī*, adj., superl. degree, nom. plur. m.; positive *fortis*; comparative *fortior*; connected by *ac* with *vēlōcissimī*, and in the same construction. — *quōs*, acc. plur. m. of rel. pron. *quī, quae, quod*; refers to *peditēs*; it is the direct obj. of *dēlēgerant*.

LINE 20. *ex* (*ē*), prep. with the abl. — *omnī*, abl. sing. f. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *cōpiā*. — *cōpiā*, abl. sing. f. (*copia*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *singulī*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *singulus*, -a, -um; most commonly in the plur.; used substantively; subject-nom. of *dēlēgerant*. — *singulōs*, acc. plur. m., in agreement with *quōs*. — *suae*, gen. sing. f. of the reflexive pron. *suus*; an attributive of *salūtis*.

LINE 21. *salūtis*, gen. sing. of *salūs*, -ūtis, f.; gen. after *causā*. — *causā*, abl. of *causa*, -ae, f.; abl. of *cause*; here it has a prepositional force and governs the gen. Consult A. & G. 223, e; B. 165, REM. 4; G. 373; H. 416, and FOOTNOTE 2. — *dēlēgerant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *dēlēgō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3 (*dē* + *legere* = lit. to choose from); agrees with the subject-nom. *singulī*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *hīs*, abl. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*; used as a personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *cum*. — *in*, prep.; here with the abl.

LINE 22. *proeliīs*, abl. plur. n. (*proelium*, -ī); obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: l. 18, Chap. I. — *versābantur*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *versor*, 1, middle voice = to busy oneself with; hence to be engaged; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to the cavalry. — *versō* (*verto*), act. voice = turn, or wheel about. — *Ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eōs*, acc. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as personal pron., referring to the infantry; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *sē*, acc. plur. of *suī*; direct reflexive; direct obj. of *recipiēbant*.

LINE 23. *equitēs*, nom. plur. m. (*eques*, -itis); subj. of *recipiēbant*. — *recipiēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of *recipiō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *equitēs*. — *hī*, nom. plur. m. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.;

\* *quōs* . . . *singulī singulōs* . . . *dēlēgerant*, more freely = *whom they had selected individually, every man, one*.

24	dūrius,	concurrēbant;	sī	quī,	graviōre	they ran to help
	too hard,	ran up;	if	any one,	a severer	them; if any
25	vulnere	acceptō,		equō	dēciderat,	one on receiving
	wound	having been received,		from a horse	should fall,	a rather severe
26	circumsistēbant;	sī	quō	erat	longius	wound fell from
	they stood around (him);	if	anywhere	it was	farther	his horse, they
27	prōdeundum aut	celerius	recipiendum,	tanta		rallied around
	to be advanced	or	more speedily	to be retreated,	so great	him; if they
28	erat	hōrum	exercitātiōne	celeritās,	ut	must advance
	was,	of these	from training,	the celerity	that,	to any point
						somewhat distant,
						or retreat
						rather swiftly,
						so great, from
						practice, was

refers to *peditēs*; expressed for emphasis; subject-nom. of *concurrēbant*. — *sī*, conditional conj. (sibilated from GK. *ei*). — *quid*, nom. sing. n. of the indef. pron. *quis, quae, quid*; subj. of *erat*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. (*sum, esse, fui*); agrees with the subject-nom. *quid*; ind. — simple condition, nothing implied.

LINE 24. *dūrius*, nom. sing. n. of comparative adj. *durior, -ius*; positive *dūrus*; superl. *dūrissimus*. Observe that the adj. is predicate, and that it = *rather difficult*. See A. & G. 93, a; B. 163, REM. 6; G. 297, 2; H. 444, 1. — *concurrēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *concurrō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *hī*. — *sī*, conditional conj. — *quī*, nom. sing. m. of the indef. pron. *quis or quī, quae, quid*; subject-nom. of *dēciderat*. Observe that the usual form of the indef. pron. used as noun is *quis*; but here *quī* as substantive is used. See A. & G. 104, a, NOTE; B. 89, 4; G. 107, NOTE 1; H. 454, 1. — *graviōre*, abl. sing. n. of the comparative adj. *gravior, -ius*; positive *gravis*; an attributive of *vulnere*. See l. 3, Chap. XX.

LINE 25. *vulnere*, abl. sing. of *vulnus, -eris*, n.; sometimes written *volnus*; abl. absolute with *acceptō*. — *acceptō*, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *acceptus, -a, -um* of *accipio*, 3; absolute with *vulnere*. — *equō*, abl. sing. m. (*equus, -ī*); abl. after *dē* in *dēciderat*. — *dēciderat*, 3d pers. sing. pres. subjunctive of *dēcidō, -ere, -cidi*, 3 (*dē* + *cadere*, to fall).

LINE 26. *circumsistēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *circumsistō, -ere, -steti*, 3 (*circum* + *sistō*); agrees with *hī* understood as subject-nom.; supply *eum* as direct obj. — *sī*, see *sī*, l. 24, above. — *quō*, adv. = *to any place*. — *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*; used impersonally with the gerundive. — *longius*, adv., comparative degree; positive *longē*; superl. *longissimē*. See grammatical references to *dūrius*, l. 24, above.

LINE 27. *prōdeundum*, nom. sing. n. of the gerundive *prōdeundus, -a, -um* of *prōdeō, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itum*; supply *sibi*; plur. as dat. of the agent. Observe (a) that *prō* with *eō* retains an original *d* between the parts of the compound; (b) that verbs of the fourth conjugation freq. have the gerund and gerundive ending *-undum* and *-undus* instead of *-endum* and *-endus*. — *aut*, conj. = *or*. Synonyms: l. 16, Chap. VI. — *celerius*, adv., comparative degree; positive *celeriter* (*celer*, swift); superl. *celerimē*; see grammatical references to *dūrius*, l. 24, above. — *recipiendum*, gerundive (*recipio*, 3); connected by *aut* with *prōdeundum*, and in the same construction. — *tanta*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *tantus, -a, -um*; an attributive of *celeritās*.

LINE 28. *erat*, see *erat*, l. 26, above; but note that here *erat* is a verb of complete predication. — *hōrum*, gen. plur. of the dem. pron. *hic, haec, hōc*; used as a

their swiftness | iubis equorum sublevātī cursum 29  
 that, clinging to | by the manes of the horses being supported, (their) speed  
 the horses' |  
 manes, they kept |  
 up with them at |  
 full speed. | adaequarent. 30  
 they equalled.

XLIX. When | XLIX. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre. 1  
 Caesar perceived | When him in the camp himself to hold  
 that Ariovistus |  
 kept himself |  
 in camp, that | Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū 2  
 Caesar himself | Caesar perceived, that not longer from supplies  
 might not be |  
 kept too long | prohibērētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō 3  
 from supplies, | he might be kept, beyond that place which in, place

personal pron.; limits *celeritās*. — *exercitātiōne*, abl. sing. f. of *exercitātiō*, -ōnis; abl. of cause. — *celeritās*, -tātis (*celer*, swift), nom. sing. f.; subj. of *erat*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj.; refers to the adj. *tanla*.

LINE 29. *iubis*, abl. plur. of *iuba*, -ae, f.; abl. of means. — *equorum*, gen. plur. m. (*equus*, -ī); limits *iubis*. — *sublevātī*, nom. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *sublevātus*, -a, -um of *tollō*, -ere, *sustulī*, *sublātum*; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *pediēs*. — *cursum*, acc. sing. of *cursus*, -ūs, m. (*currō*, run); direct obj. of *adaequarent*.

LINE 30. *adaequarent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *adaequō*, 1; agrees with *pediēs* understood as subject-nom.; subjunctive of result after *ut*. Consult A. & G. 319, 1, and REM.; B. 201, (b), and REM. 1, (a); G. 552; H. 500, II. Observe that *adaequāre* (ad + *aequō* [*aequus*, GK. *εἰκός*] = *to make equal*); that, in use it is both trans. and intrans.; that it is sometimes followed by *cum*, and sometimes takes the dat. Compare the text with *his oppidi moenibus adaequātis*, Chap. XII, middle, Book 3.

LINE 1. *Ubi* (quō + *bi*), adv. = (a) *where*; (b) transf. of time = *when*. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron.; refers to Ariovistus; subject-acc. of *tenēre*. — *castris*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); locative abl. See A. & G. 258, f, 1; B. 176, REM. 2, NOTE 1; G. 389; H. 425, II, 1, 1). — *sē*, acc. sing. (*suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*); direct obj. of *tenēre*. — *tenēre*, pres. inf. act. of *teneō*, 2.

LINE 2. *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *intellēxit*. — *intellēxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *intellegō*, -ere, *lēxī*, *lēctum*, 3; agrees with *Caesar*. See I. 6, Chap. X. — *nē*, conjunctive adv. = *that not*. — *diūtius*, adv., comparative degree of the adv. *diū* (*dies*); superl. *diūtissimē*. — *commeātū*, abl. m. of *commēdus*, -ūs; separation. A. & G. 243; B. 160; G. 390, 2, NOTE 3; H. 414.

LINE 3. *prohibērētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *prohibeō*, 2; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar; subjunctive of purpose after *nē*. — *ūltrā*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *locum*. — *locum*, acc. sing. m. of *locus*, -ī. See *locī*, I. 10, Chap. II. — *quō*, abl. sing. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); an attributive of *locō*. — *in*, prep., here with the abl.; observe its position. — *locō*, abl.; obj. of the prep. *in*. Observe that such redundancy is common in Caesar.

4	Germānī the Germans	cōnsēderant, had encamped,	circiter about	passūs paces	he chose a suitable place for a camp beyond the place at which the Germans had halted, and rather more than half a mile from them, and marched to it with his army drawn up in three lines. He ordered the first and second lines to remain under arms and the third line to
5	sexcentōs six-hundred	ab eīs, from them,	castrīs for a camp	idōneum a convenient	place
6	dēlēgit he selected	aciēque line and,	triplicī three-fold	īnstrūctā having been arranged	to
7	eum that	locum place	vēnit. he came.	Prīmam et secundam The first and second	
8	aciem line	in in	armīs arms	esse, to be,	tertiam castra the third the camp

LINE 4. *Germānī*, -ōrum, m.; subject-nom. of *cōnsēderant*. — *cōnsēderant*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *cōnsidō*, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, 3; agrees with *Germānī*. — *circiter*, adv. and prep.; here a prep. with the acc. — *passūs*, acc. plur. m. (*passus*, -ūs); obj. of the prep. *circiter*.

LINE 5. *sexcentōs*, acc. plur. of the card. num. adj. *sexcentī*, -ae, -a (sex + centum); an attributive of *passūs*. Observe that 600 Roman paces =  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a Roman mile; or a little more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile. — *ab* (*ā*), prep. with the abl. — *eīs*, abl. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron.; obj. of the prep. *ab*. — *castrīs*, dat. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); dat. of purpose. See A. & G. 233, b; B. 147; G. 356; H. 384, II, 1, 3). *castrīs* might be taken as dat. for which after the adj. *idōneum*. — *idōneum*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *idōneus*, -a, -um; agrees with *locum*. — *locum*, acc. sing. m. of *locus*, -ī. See *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II.

LINE 6. *dēlēgit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 3; agrees with a pron., referring to Caesar. — *aciēque* (*aciē* + *que*). *aciē*, abl. sing. f. (*aciēs*, -ēī); abl. absolute with *īnstrūctā*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses. — *triplicī*, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *triplex*, -icis (trēs + plicō); an attributive of *aciē*. See l. 5, Chap. XXIV. The three lines consisted of the *hastātī*, the *prīncipēs*, and the *triarii*. — *īnstrūctā*, abl. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle *īnstrūctus*, -a, -um of *īnstruō*, 3; absolute with the noun *aciē*. — *ad*, prep. with the acc.

LINE 7. *eum*, acc. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *locum*. — *locum*, see *locum*, l. 5, above; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *vēnit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *veniō*, 4; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — *Prīmam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *primus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *aciem*. — *et*, cop. conj. — *secundam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *secundus*, -a, -um; also an attributive of *aciem*. Observe that *secundus*, as a participle of *sequor*, 3 = lit. following, i.e. the next, the second.

LINE 8. *aciem*, acc. sing. of *aciēs*, -ēī, f.; subject-acc. of *esse*. See *aciem*, l. 12, Chap. XXII. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the abl. — *armīs*, abl. plur. n. (*arma*, -ōrum); obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: l. 13, Chap. IV. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*. — *tertiam*, acc. sing. f. of the ord. num. adj. *tertius*, -a, -um (ter, thrice); agrees with *aciem* understood; which latter is subject-acc. of *mūnīre* — *castra*, acc. plur.; direct obj. of *mūnīre*.

fortify the camp. This place, as we have said, was rather more than half a mile distant from the enemy. To the same place Ario- vistus sent about sixteen thousand light-armed troops with all his cavalry, to terrify our men and keep them from fortifying the camp. Nev-	mūnīre to fortify	iūssit. he ordered.	Hic This	locus place	ab from	hoste the enemy	9
	circiter about	passūs paces	sexcentōs, six-hundred,	utī as	dictum est, has been said,		10
	aberat. was distant.	Eō Thither	circiter about	hominum of men	numerō n number		11
	sēdecim sixteen	mīlia thousands	expedita light-armed	cum with	omni all	equitātū the cavalry	12
	Ariovistus Ariovistus	mīsīt, sent,	quae which	cōpiae forces	nostrōs ours		13
	perterrērent should terrify	et and	mūnitiōne from fortifying	prohibērent. should prohibit.			14

LINE 9. *mūnīre*, pres. inf. act. of *mūniō*, 4. — *iūssit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *iubeō*, -ēre, *iūssi*, *iūssum*, 2; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — *Hic*, dem. pron.; an attributive of *locus*. — *locus*, nom. sing.; subj. of *aberat*. — *ab* (*ā*), prep. with the abl. Observe that this phrase *ab hoste* follows *aberat*, the prep. being repeated. — *hoste*, abl. sing. m. (*hostis*, -is); obj. of the prep. *ab*. Synonyms: see *hostium*, l. 15, Chap. XI.

LINE 10. *circiter*, adv.; see *circiter*, l. 4, above. — *passūs*, acc. plur.; obj. of *circiter*. See *passūs*, l. 4, above. — *sex(s)centōs*, see l. 5, above. — *utī*, adv.; here = *as*. — *dictum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *dīcō*, 3; used impersonally; but supply *ā nobīs*, as abl. of the agent. See l. 5, above.

LINE 11. *aberat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *absum*, *abesse*, *ab(ā)fuī*, *ab(ā)futūrus*; agrees with the subject-nom. *locus*. — *Eō*, adv. (*is*). — *circiter*, an adv. here; modifies the adj. *sēdecim*. — *hominum*, i.e. *pedītum*; partitive gen. after *mīlia*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2 — *numerō*, abl. sing. m. (*numerus*, -i); specification.

LINE 12. *sēdecim* (sex + decem); also written *sexdecim*; sometimes separately *decem* et *sex*; modifies *mīlia*. — *mīlia*, acc. plur.; direct obj. of *mīsīt*. See *mīlia*, l. 25, Chap. II. — *expedita*, acc. plur. of the participle *expeditus*, -a, -um from *expediō*, 4 (ex + pēs); agrees with *mīlia*, used as a noun. The student will observe that *hominum mīlia expedita* = *hominum mīlia expeditōrum*. — *cum*, prep. with the abl. — *omni*, abl. sing. m. of the adj. *omnis*, -e; an attributive of *equitātū*. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. m. (*equitātus*, -ūs); obj. of the prep. *cum*.

LINE 13. *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *mīsīt*. — *mīsīt*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *mittō*, 3. — *quae*, nom. plur. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); used adjectively; an attributive of *cōpiae*. — *cōpiae*, nom. plur. f. (*cōpia*, -ae); subject-nom. of the two following verbs. — *nostrōs*, acc. plur. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; used substantively; or supply *militēs*; direct object.

LINE 14. *perterrērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *perterreō*, 2 (per, intensive + terreō); subjunctive of purpose after *quae cōpiae* = *ut eae cōpiae*. Consult A. & G. 317, 2, and NOTE; B. 200, (b), and 233, 1; G. 630; H. 497, 1. — *et*, cop. conj. — *mūnitiōne*, abl. f. (*mūnitiō*, -ōnis); separation. See grammatical references to *commēdi*, l. 2, above. — *prohibērent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive act. of *prohibeō*, 2; connected by *et* with *perterrērent*, and in the same grammatical construction.

15	Nihilō In nothing	sēcious the less	Caesar, Caesar,	ut as	ante before	ertheless Caesar, as he had pre- viously planned,
16	cōstituerat, he had determined,	duās two	aciēs the enemy	hostem to drive off,	prōpulsāre, the enemy, the	third line to finish the work.
17	tertiam the third	opus the work	perficere to complete	iūssit. he ordered.		When the camp had been forti- fied, Caesar left
18	Mūnītis Having been fortified	castris, the camp,	duās two,	ibi there,	legiōnēs legions	in it two legions and some of the auxiliaries, but
19	reliquit he left	et and	partem part	auxiliōrum, of the auxiliaries,	quattuor the four	led back to the larger camp the other four le- gions.
20	reliquās remaining into	in castra camp	māiōra the greater	redūxit. he led back.		

LINE 15. *Nihilō*, abl. of *nihilum*, -ī, n.; abl. of specification; might be taken as adv. — *sēcious*, adv.; comparative degree; positive *secus*; = *less*; with *nihilō* = *none the less, nevertheless*. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subj. of *iūssit*, l. 17, below. — *ut*, adv. = *as*. — *ante*, an adv. here; oftener a prep.

LINE 16. *cōstituerat*, 3d pers. pluperf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar. — *duās*, acc. plur., num. adj. (*duo, duae, duo*); an attributive of *aciēs*. — *aciēs*, acc. plur.; subject-acc. of *prōpulsāre*. See *aciem*, l. 8, above. — *hostem*, acc. sing. (*hostis, -is*); direct obj. of *prōpulsāre*. See *hoste*, l. 9, above. — *prōpulsāre*, pres. inf. act. of *prōpulsō*, 1.

LINE 17. *tertiam*, acc. sing. f. of the ord. num. adj. *tertius, -a, -um*; an attributive of *aciem*, to be supplied; which latter is subject-acc. of *perficere*. — *opus*, acc. sing. n. (*opus, -eris*); direct obj. of *perficere*. — *perficere*, pres. inf. act. of *perficiō*, 3 (per + faciō). — *iūssit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *iubeō*, 2; agrees with *Caesar* expressed.

LINE 18. *Mūnītis*, abl. plur. perf. pass. participle *mūnītus, -a, -um* of *mūniō*, 4; abl. absolute with *castris*; the phrase denotes *time when*. — *castris*, see note on *castris*, l. 12, Chap. XII. — *duās*, acc. plur. f.; agrees with *legiōnēs*. See *duās*, l. 16, above. — *ibi*, adv. — *legiōnēs*, acc. plur. f. (*legiō, -ōnis*); direct obj. of *reliquit*.

LINE 19. *reliquit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *relinquō, -ere, -tūqū, -lictum*, 3. — *et*, cop. conj. — *partem*, acc. sing. of *pars, partis*, f.; connected by *et* with *legiōnēs*, and in the same construction. — *auxiliōrum*, gen. plur. of *auxilium, -i*, n.; limits *partem*. Observe that in the plur. — *abstractum prō concrēto* — *auxilium* = *auxiliary troops*, i.e. troops sent by foreign nations to serve in the Roman armies. — *quattuor*, card. num. adj., indecl.; an attributive of *legiōnēs*, to be supplied.

LINE 20. *reliquās*, acc. plur. of the adj. *reliquus, -a, -um*; also an attributive of *legiōnēs* understood. — *in*, prep.; hence with the acc. after verb of motion = *into*. — *castra*, acc. plur. n. (*castrum, -i*); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *māiōra*, acc. plur. n. of the comparative adj. *māior, -ius*; for declension of *māior*, see A. & G. 86; B. 69, 2; G. 89; H. 154. — *redūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *redūcō*, 3; connected by *et* understood at the beginning of the clause with *reliquit*, and in the same grammatical construction. As to this asyndeton, see A. & G. 208, b, 346, c; B. 123, REM. 6, 310, 1, (a); G. 473, REM., 474, NOTE, and 492; H. 636, I, 1.



L. The next day, Caesar, according to his custom, led out his troops from both camps, and advancing a little from the larger camp, drew up his line in battle array, and gave to the enemy an opportunity of fighting. When he saw that they would not even	L. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar 1 On the following day by practice his own Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit 2 from camps both forces his he led out, paulumque ā māiōribus castris prōgressus 3 a little and, from the larger camp having advanced aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī 4 the line of battle he drew up, to the enemy of fighting potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem 5 an opportunity he made. When not then even eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter merīdiem 6 them to come forth he perceived, about midday
---	---

LINE 1. **Proximō**, abl. sing. m. of *proximus*, -a, -um; superl. of comparative *propior* (*prope*, near); no positive; an attributive of *diē*. — **diē**, abl. sing. m. of *dies*, -ei; time when. — **institūtō**, abl. sing. of *institutum*, -i, n. (in + *statuere*, to set up, establish); abl. of in accordance with. A. & G. 245; B. 162; G. 397; H. 416. But see also A. & G. 253, and NOTE; and note that A. & G., B., and G. make the construction an abl. of specification. — **suō**, abl. sing. n. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *institūtō*. — **Caesar**, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *ēdūxit*.

LINE 2. **ē** (*ex*), prep. with the abl. — **castris**, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -i); obj. of the prep. *ē*. See *castris*, l. 12, Chap. XII. — **utrisque**, abl. plur. of the adjective pron. *uterque*, *utroque*, *utrumque* = which of two, each, both; an attributive of *castris*. The larger camp had capacity for the six legions and the auxiliaries; the smaller for the two legions mentioned in the preceding chapter. — **cōpiās**, acc. plur. f. (*cōpia*, -ae); direct obj. of *ēdūxit*. See *cōpiis*, l. 6, Chap. II. — **suās**, see note on *suās*, l. 11, Chap. XI.VIII. — **ēdūxit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *ēdūcō*, 3; agrees with *Caesar* expressed.

LINE 3. **paulumque** (*paulum* + *que*). *paulum* may be taken here as subst., acc. of extent of space; or as an adv. *que*, enclitic conj. — **ā** (*ab*), prep. with the abl. — **māiōribus**, abl. plur. n. of the adj. comparative degree *māior*, *māius*; positive *māgnus*; superl. *māximus*; an attributive of *castris*. Observe that some texts omit *castris*. — **castris**, see *castris*, l. 12, Chap. XII. — **prōgressus**, perf. participle of the deponent *progredior*, -i, -essus; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *Caesar*.

LINE 4. **aciem**, acc. sing. f. of *aciēs*, -ei; direct obj. of *instrūxit*. See l. 12, Chap. XXII. — **instrūxit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *instruō*, 3; connected by *que* with *ēdūxit*; and in the same grammatical construction. See *instruit*, l. 13, Chap. XXII. — **hostibus**, dat. plur. (*hostis*, -is, m. and f.); indirect object. — **pūgnandī**, gerund of *pūgnō*, 1; limits *potestātem*. Consult A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, I, (a); G. 428; H. 542, I.

LINE 5. **potestātem**, acc. sing. of *potestās*, -ātis, f.; direct obj. of *fēcit*. Synonyms: l. 25, Chap. XVIII. — **fēcit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *faciō*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *Caesar*. — **Ubi** (*quō* + *bi*), adv.; of place = where; transf. of time = when. — **nē**, adv.; modifies *quidem*. — **tum**, adv. = then; modifies *prōdire*. Observe that *quidem* emphasizes *tum*. — **quidem** adv. See *quidem*, l. 7, Chap. XVI.

LINE 6. **eōs**, acc. plur. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *prōdire*. *eōs* refers to the forces of Ariovistus. — **prōdire**, pres. inf.

7	exercitum	in	castra	redūxit.	Tum	dēmum	then come out,
	(his) army	into	camp	he led back.	Then	at length	he led his army
8	Ariovistus	partem	suārum	cōpiārum,	quae		back into camp
	Ariovistus	a part	of his	forces,	which		about noon. Finally, Ariovistus
9	castra	minōra	oppūgnāret	mīsit.	Acriter		sent some of his
	camp	the less	should attack,	he sent.	Sharply		troops to attack
10	utrimque	ūsque	ad	vesperum	pūgnātum	est.	the smaller
	on both sides	even	to (till)	evening	it was fought.		camp. Even till
11	Sōlis	occāsū	suās	cōpiās	Ariovistus		evening, the battle
	At the sun's	setting	his	forces	Ariovistus		raged fiercely
12	multis	et	illātis	et	acceptis		on both sides.
	many	both	being inflicted	and	being received		At sunset, Ariovistus led his
							troops back to
							their camp, after
							receiving and

act. of *prōdeō*, 4. See note on *prōdeundum*, l. 27, Chap. XLVIII. Observe that the infinitive-clause is the direct obj. of *intellēxit*. — *intellēxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *intelligō*, 3; agrees with Caesar understood. See note on *intelligēbat*, l. 6, Chap. X. — *circiter*, adv. and prep.; here prep. with the acc. — *meridiem*, acc. sing. of *merīdiēs*, -ēī, m. (medius + diēs); obj. of the prep. *circiter*.

LINE 7. *exercitum*, acc. sing. m.; direct obj. of *redūxit*. See *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III. — *in*, prep. with the abl. or acc.; here the acc., and = *into* with a verb of motion. — *castra*, see note on *castra*, l. 20, Chap. XLIX. — *redūxit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *redūcō*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. See l. 3, Chap. XXVIII. — *Tum*, see this particle, l. 5, above. — *dēmum*, adv.; lengthened form of *dem*, as seen in *idem* (i + dem); compare GK. δή.

LINE 8. *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *mīsit*. — *partem*, acc. sing. f. (*pars*, *partis*); direct obj. of *mīsit*. — *suārum*, gen. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *cōpiārum*. — *cōpiārum*, gen. plur.; limits *partem*. See *cōpiās*, l. 2, above. — *quae*, nom. sing. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *partem*; subject-nom. of *oppūgnāret*.

LINE 9. *castra*, acc. plur.; direct obj. of *oppūgnāret*. See *castris*, l. 2, above. — *minōra*, acc. plur. n. of comparative adj. *minor*; positive *parvus*; superl. *minimus*; an attributive of *castra*. See note on *castris*, l. 2, above. — *oppūgnāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *oppūgnō*, 1; subjunctive after *quae* = *ut ea* — an adjective purpose-clause. Consult A. & G. 317, 2, and NOTE; B. 200, (b); G. 630; H. 497, I. — *mīsit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. (*mittō*, 3); agrees with Ariovistus expressed. — *Acriter*, adv. (*acer*, sharp); modifies *pūgnātum est*.

LINE 10. *utrimque*, adv. (*utroque* = each of two, both); modifies *pūgnātum est*. — *ūsque*, adv. (*ubi*, when). — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *vesperum*, acc. sing. of *vesper*, -erī, m.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. See l. 8, Chap. XXVI. — *pūgnātum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *pūgnō*, 1; used impersonally. See l. 2, Chap. XXVI.

LINE 11. *Sōlis*, gen. sing. m. of *sōl*; limits *occāsū*. See *sōlem*, l. 29, Chap. I. — *occāsū*, abl. sing. m. of *occāsus*, -ūs; abl. of time at which. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *cōpiās*. — *cōpiās*, acc. plur.; direct obj. of *redūxit*. See l. 6, Chap. II. — *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *redūxit*.

LINE 12. *multis*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *multus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *verberibus*. — *et*, cop. conj. *et . . . et* = both . . . and; but omit the first *et* in trans

inflicting many wounds. When Caesar inquired of his prisoners why Ariovistus did not decide the issue by a battle, he found the reason to be this: it was the custom among the Germans for their matrons to declare by lots and vaticinations whether or not it would be expedient to en-	vulneribus wounds	in into	castra camp	redūxit. led back.	Cum When	ex 13 from
	captivīs the captives	quaereret sought	Caesar, Caesar,	quam-ob-rem 14 what for thing		
	Ariovistus Ariovistus	proeliō by battle	nōn not	dēcertāret, did fight out,	hanc 15 this	
	reperiēbat he ascertained	causam, the cause,	quod that	apud among	Germānōs 16 the Germans	
	ea this	cōnsuetūdō the custom	esset, was,	ut that	mātrēs 17 the mistresses	
	familiae of the family	eōrum of them	sortibus by lots	et and	vāticinātiōnibus 18 by soothsayings	

lating here. — *il(n)lātis*, perf. pass. participle of *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *il(n)lātum*; abl. absolute with *vulneribus*. — *et*, see *et*, immediately preceding. — *acceptis*, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *acceptus*, -a, -um of *accipio*, 3; connected by *et* with *illātis*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 13. *vul(vol)neribus*, abl. plur. n. of *vulnus*, -eris; absolute with the participles. — *in*, prep.; here with the acc. — *castra*, acc. plur.; obj. of the prep. *in*. See *castra*, l. 7, above. — *redūxit*, see l. 7, above. — *Cum*, temporal conj. — *ex* (ē), prep. with the abl.

LINE 14. *captivīs*, abl. plur. of *captivus*, -ī, m. (*capere*, to take); obj. of the prep. *ex*. — *quaereret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *quaerō*, 3; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. — *Caesar*, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *quaereret*. Observe the emphatic position. The unemphatic position would be immediately after *cum*. — *quam-ob-rem*, interrogative adv.; often written *quam ob rem*; but see l. 1, Chap. XXXIV.

LINE 15. *Ariovistus*, -ī, m.; subject-nom. of *dēcertāret*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. n. (*proelium*, -ī); means. — *nōn*, negative particle; in its normal Latin position. — *dēcertāret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *dēcero*, 1; subjunctive — indirect question. — *hanc*, acc. sing. f. (*hūc*, *haec*, *hōc*); prep. after *esse* understood.

LINE 16. *reperiēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *reperiō*, 4; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — *causam*, acc. sing. f. (*causa*, -ae); subject-acc. of *esse* understood. — *quod*, conj.; introducing a clause explanatory of the herald *hanc*. — *apud*, prep. with the acc. — *Germānōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Germānī*, -ōrum); obj. of the prep. *apud*.

LINE 17. *ea*, nom. sing. f.; predicate-nom. after *esset*. — *cōnsuetūdō*, -inis, f.; subject-nom. of *esset*. — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*. — *ut*, ecbatic conj. — *mātrēs*, nom. plur. of *māter*, -tris, f.; compare GK. μήτηρ; subj. of *dēclārarent*.

LINE 18. *familiae*, gen. sing. of *familia*, -ae, f.; limits *mātrēs*. — *eōrum*, gen. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; limits *familiae*. Observe that *familia* after *māter* and *pater* sometimes forms its gen. in -ās; that some

19	dēclārārent,	utrum	proelium	committī	ex	gage in battle; and they thus declared: It is not the divine will that the Germans should conquer, if they should engage in battle before the new moon.
	declared,	whether	a battle	to be engaged in,	of	
20	ūsū	esset	necne;	eās	ita	dicere:
	advantage	it was	or not;	these	thus	to say (these
21	nōn	esse	fās	Germānōs	superāre,	
	thus said):	not	to be divine law	the Germans	to conquer,	
22	sī	ante	novam	lūnam	proeliō	
	if	before	the new	moon	in battle	
23	contendissent.					
	they should have contended.					

editors write the two words, even in the plur., as a compound, thus: *mātrēsfamiliae*. — *sortibus*, abl. plur. of *sors*, *sortis*, f.; *means*. Consult A. & G. 248, c; B. 167; G. 401; H. 418. — *et*, cop. conj. — *vāticinātiōnibus*, abl. plur. of *vāticinātiō*, *-ōnis*, f. (*vātēs*, a prophet, through *vāticinor*); *abl. of means*.

LINE 19. *dēclārārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *dēclārō*, 1; agrees with *mātrēs*; subjunctive of result after *ut*. — *utrum* (*uter*), conj.; followed by *an* or *necne* in alternatives; in questions both direct and indirect; but it is untranslatable in direct questions. Consult A. & G. 211, and *d*; B. 241 and 242, OBS. (1); G. 458, 460; II. 353, ff. — *proelium*, acc. sing. n. (*proelium*, *-i*); subject-acc. of *committī*. Synonyms: I. 18, Chap. I. — *committī*, pres. inf. pass. of *committō*, 3. — *ex* (*ē*), prep. with the abl.

LINE 20. *ūsū*, abl. sing. m. (*ūsus*, *-ūs*); obj. of the prep. *ex*; the phrase is adjectival here, and = *advantageous*; and, moreover, it has the force of a predicate-adj. after *esset*. See *ex ūsū*, I. 8, Chap. XXX. — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*; used impersonally; in fact, however, *proelium committī* as noun-phrase is the subj.; subjunctive, because an indirect question. A. & G. 334; B. 242; G. 467; II. 529, I. — *necne* (*nec* + *ne*) = *or not*; alternative of *utrum*. — *eās*, acc. plur. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-acc. of *dicere*. — *ita*, adv. — *dicere*, pres. inf. act. of *dicō*, 3; subject-acc. is the pron. *eās*.

LINE 21. *nōn*, negative adv. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*. — *fās*, an indecl. neuter noun, but in use here it is subject-acc. of *esse*. *fās* = *divine law*, in contrast with *iūs* which = *human law*. — *Germānōs*, acc. plur. m. (*Germāni*, *-ōrum*); subject-acc. of *superāre*. — *superāre*, pres. inf. act. of *superō*, 1 (*super*, over).

LINE 22. *sī*, conditional conj. — *ante*, prep. with the acc. — *novam*, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *novus*, *-a*, *-um*; an attributive of *lūnam*. — *lūnam*, acc. sing. f. of *lūna*, *-ae* (*lucēre*, to give light); obj. of the prep. *ante*. — *proeliō*, abl. sing. n. (*proelium*, *-i*); *means*.

LINE 23. *contendissent*, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. subjunctive of *contendō*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to the Germans; subjunctive in the condition after *sī*. The *ōrātiō rēcta* of lines 20-23: *Nōs ita dicimus: nōn est fās (vōs) Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contenderitis*.

LI. The following day, Caesar left what seemed to be a sufficient guard for both camps; but marshalled before the smaller camp in sight of the enemy, all the auxiliaries, that he might use them to keep up appearances, inasmuch as he was less powerful in the number of	LI. Postridiē The day after	ēius that	diēi day	Caesar 1 Caesar
	praesidium a garrison	utrīque for both	castrīs, camps,	quod satis esse 2 which enough to be
	vīsum est, seemed,	reliquit, left,	omnēs all	ālārīōs 3 the allied troops on the wings
	in cōspectū in sight	hostium of the enemy	prō castrīs before the camp	minōribus 4 smaller
	cōstituit, he stationed,	quod minus because less	multitūdine in the multitude	mīlitum 5 of soldiers
	legiōnārīōrum legionary	prō in comparison with	hostium the enemy's	numerō 6 number

LINE 1. *Postridiē ēius diēi*, see this phrase explained, l. 1, Chap. XXIII. — *Caesar, -aris, m.*; subject-nom. of *reliquit*, l. 3, below.

LINE 2. *praesidium*, acc. sing. n. (*praesidium, -i*); direct obj. of *reliquit*. — *utrīque castrīs*, see explanation, l. 2, Chap. L. *castrīs* is a dat. of reference or advantage. See A. & G. 235; B. 118. 2; G. 356; H. 384, II, 1, 2). — *quod*, nom. sing. n. (*quī, quae, quod*); refers to *praesidium*; subject-nom. of *vīsum est*. Observe that *quod* might be taken here as = *quantum*; and the clause made an adverbial modifier of *reliquit*, instead of an adjectival modifier of *praesidium*. — *satis*, adj.; predicate-nom. after *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*.

LINE 3. *vīsum est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of *videor, -ēri, vīsum*, 2; pass. of *videō*; and as such = *seem*, or *seem best*; agrees with the subj. *quod*. — *reliquit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *relinquō, -ere, -tīquī, -lictum*, 3; agrees with *Caesar* expressed as nom. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *omnis, -e*; an attributive of *ālārīōs*. — *ālārīōs*, acc. plur. of the adj. *ālārius, -a, -um*; used as a noun; direct obj. of *cōstituit*. Note that the adj. = *belonging to the wings (ālā)*; as the allies held the wings, the plur. = *the auxiliaries*. Note also the omission of the conjunctions before the clauses (asyndeton).

LINE 4. *in*, prep.; here with the abl. — *cōspectū*, abl. of *cōspectus, -ūs, m.*; obj. of the prep. *in*. Synonyms: see l. 9, Chap. XI. — *hostium*, gen. plur. (*hostis, -is, m. and f.*); limits *cōspectū*. Synonyms: l. 15, Chap. XI. — *prō*, prep. with the abl. — *castrīs*, abl. plur.; obj. of the prep. *prō*. See l. 12, Chap. XII. — *minōribus*, abl. plur. n. of the comparative adj. *minor*; an attributive of *castrīs*. See *castrīs*, l. 2, Chap. L.

LINE 5. *cōstituit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō, 3*; connected by a conj. understood with *reliquit*, and in the same construction. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *minus*, adv.; modifies *valebat*. — *multitūdine*, abl. of *specificatio* of *multitūdō, -inis, f. (multus)*. Consult A. & G. 253; B. 162; G. 397; H. 424. — *mīlitum*, gen. plur. m. of *mīles, -itis*; limits *multitūdine*.

LINE 6. *legiōnārīōrum*, gen. plur. m. of the adj. *legiōnārius, -a, -um*; an attributive of *mīlitum*. — *prō*, prep. with the abl.; here *in comparison with*. — *hostium*, see *hostium*, l. 4, above; limits *numerō*. — *numerō*, abl. sing. m. (*numerus, -i*); obj. of the prep. *prō*.

7	valēbat,	ut	ad	speciem	ālāriīs	legionary sol-
	he was strong,	that	for	show	the allies on the wings	diers than the
8	ūterētur;	ipse,	triplici	instrūctā		enemy; while
	he might use;	he himself in a threefold	having been drawn up			personally, after
9	aciē,	usque	ad	castra	hostium	accessit.
	line,	even	to	the camp	of the enemy	approached.
10	Tum	dēmum	necessāriō	Germānī	suās	camp. Then at
	Then	at length	necessarily	the Germans	their	last, the Ger-
11	cōpiās	castrīs	ēdūxērunt	generātimque		mans of neces-
	forces	from the camp	led out	tribe by tribe and,		sity led out their
12	cōstituērunt	paribus	intervāllīs,	Harūdēs,		troops from their
	they arranged	at equal	intervals,	the Harudes,		camp, and station-
						ed the Haru-

LINE 7. *valēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *valeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, intrans. — *ut*, telic conj. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *speciem*, acc. sing. of *speciēs*, -ēī, f. (*specere*, to see); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *ālāriīs*, abl. plur. of the adj. *ālārius*, -a, -um, used as noun; obj. of *ūterētur*. A. & G. 249; B. 167, 1; G. 407; H. 421, I.

LINE 8. *ūterētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of the deponent *utor*, -ī, *ūsus*, 3; subjunctive of *purpose* after *ut*. — *ipse*, intensive pron.; refers to Caesar; subject-nom. of *accessit*. — *triplici instrūctā aciē*, see the phrase explained, l. 6, Chap. XLIX; and observe that the abl. absolute denotes *time when*.

LINE 9. *usque* (ubi + que), adv. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *castra*, obj. of the prep. *ad*. See l. 12, Chap. XII. — *hostium*, see *hostium*, l. 6, above; it here limits *castra*. — *accessit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *accēdō*, 3 (ad + *cēdere*, to go to); agrees with a pron., referring to Caesar.

LINE 10. *Tum dēmum*, see note on these particles, l. 7, Chap. L. — *necessāriō*, adv. (adj. *necessarius*). Observe that the Germans were not intrenched; hence they were compelled at length to come out and fight. — *Germānī, -ōrum*, m.; subj. of *ēdūxērunt*. — *suās*, acc. plur. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *cōpiās*.

LINE 11. *cōpiās*, acc. plur. (*cōpia*, -ae); direct obj. — *castrīs*, abl. plur. n. (*castrum*, -ī); abl. after the compound *ēdūxērunt*. Consult A. & G. 243, a; B. 160; G. 390, and 2; H. 413. But observe that Caesar oftener repeats the prep. after *ēdūcere*. — *ēdūxērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *ēdūcō*, 3; agrees with *Germānī*. — *generātimque* (*generātīm* + *que*). *generātīm* (*gēns*, race); adv. = *by clans* or *by tribes*. *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the clauses.

LINE 12. *cōstituērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *cōstituō*, 3; connected by *que* with *ēdūxērunt*, and in the same construction. — *paribus*, abl. plur. n. of the adj. *par*, *paris*; an attributive of *intervāllīs*. — *intervāllīs*, abl. plur. of *intervāllum*, -ī, n.; abl. of *manner*. A. & G. 248; B. 168; G. 399; H. 419, III. See l. 25, Chap. XXII. — *Harūdēs*, acc. plur. (*Harūdēs*, -um); direct obj. of *cōstituērunt*; and so the following nouns to, and inclusive of, *Suēvōs*. These clans in origin were all Germans.

mani, the Tri- boces, the Van- giones, the Ne- metes, the Sedu- sii, the Suevi, clan by clan, at equal distances, and surrounded their entire army with their wag- ons and carts, that no hope in flight might re- main. On these they placed their women who, in tears, with out- stretched hands, as their men	Marcommanōs, the Marcommani,	Tribocēs, the Triboces,	Vangionēs, the Vangiones,	Nemētēs, the Nemetes,	13
	Sedūsīōs, the Sedusii,	Suēvōs, the Suevi,	all and,	omnemque aciem the line	suam 14 their own
	rēdis with chariots	et and	carrīs wagons	circumdedērunt, they surrounded,	nē 15 that not
	qua any	spēs hope	in in	fugā flight	relinquerētur. might be left. Eō 16 Thither
	mulierēs the women	imposuērunt, they placed,	quae who	in into	proelium 17 battle
		proficiscentēs (the soldiers) going forth,	passīs being stretched out	manibus 18 the hands,	

LINE 13. **Marcommanōs**, acc. plur. (*Marcommani*, -ōrum). — **Tribocēs**, acc. plur. of *Tribocēs*, -um, m. (-ī, -ōrum). — **Vangionēs**, -um, m. — **Nemētēs**, -um, m.; the Greek paraphrast reads *Nῆμῆτας*.

LINE 14. **Sedūsīōs**, acc. plur. (*Sedusii*, -ōrum); the Greek paraphrast is *Σηδοῦσσιος*; hence we have marked the antepenult long. — **Suēvōs**, acc. plur. (*Suevi*, -ōrum); written in some copies *Suēvos*, acc. plur. of *Suēvi* (GK. *Σὺνῆβοι* or *Σὺνῆβοι*). But the paraphrast is *Σουεῖους*. — **omnemque** (omnem + que). *omnem*, acc. sing. f. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *aciem*. — **aciem**, acc. sing. f. (*aciēs*, -ē); direct obj. — **suam**, acc. sing. f. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *aciem*.

LINE 15. **rēdis** (*rhēdis*), abl. sing. of *rēda*, -ae, f.; means. The *rhēda* was a four-wheeled carriage. — **et**, cop. conj. — **carrīs**, abl. plur.; connected by *et* with *rēdis*, and in the same construction. See *carrōrum*, l. 4, Chap. III. — **circumdedērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *circumdō*, 1 (circum + dō); connected by *que* with *constituērunt*, and in the same construction. — **nē**, adv.; introduces the negative purpose.

LINE 16. **qua**, nom. sing. f. of the indef. pron. *quis* or *quī*, *quae* or *qua*, *quid* or *quod*; an attributive of *spēs*. — **spēs**, -ēī, f.; subject-nom. — **in**, prep., here with the abl. — **fugā**, abl. sing. f. (*fuga*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **relinquerētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *relinquō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *spēs*. — **Eō**, adv. (*is*) = lit. *thither*; but here it = *in eis*, i.e. on the wagons and carts.

LINE 17. **mulierēs**, acc. plur. of *mulier*, -eris, f.; direct object. Observe that *mulier*, as if *mollier*, is derived from *mollitēs* (*mollis*, tender). — **imposuērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *impōnō*; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to the Germans. — **quae**, nom. plur. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *mulierēs*, but is subject-nom. of *implōrābant*. — **in**, prep., here with the acc. — **proelium**, acc. sing.; obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 18. **proficiscentēs**, acc. plur. of the pres. participle of the deponent verb *proficiscor*, 3; agrees with *eōs* understood, the direct obj. of *implōrābant*. — **passīs**, perf. pass. participle of *paudō*, -ere, *paudī*, *passum*, 3; abl. absolute with *manibus*. Observe that, so far as the form is concerned, the participle might be that of *pator*,

19	<i>flentēs</i> weeping	<i>implōrābant,</i> they besought,	<i>nē</i> that not	<i>sē</i> themselves	<i>in</i> into	were going forth to battle, im- plored them not to deliver them over into slavery to the Romans.
20	<i>servitūtem</i> slavery	<i>Rōmānīs</i> to the Romans	<i>trāderent.</i> they might be delivered.			

1	LII. Caesar	singulīs	legiōnibus	singulōs	LII. Caesar
	Caesar	over single	legions	single	placed in com-
2	lēgātōs	et	quaestōrem	praefēcit,	utī eōs
	lieutenants	and	a quaestor	placed,	that them
3	testēs	suae	quisque	virtūtis	habēret;
	as witnesses	of his,	each one,	valor,	might have;
					one might have
					them as witness-
					es of his valor;

*-ī, passus, 3*; but the meaning does not meet the sense required by the context. Dr. Anthon reads *crinibus* instead of *manibus*, giving a good sense — *with disheveled hair* — but a reading without sufficient MS.-authority. — *manibus*, abl. plur. of *manus*, -ūs, f.; absolute with the perf. pass. participle.

LINE 19. *flentēs*, nom. plur. f. of the pres. participle *flēns* of *fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, 2*; agrees with the rel. pron. *quae*. — *implōrābant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *implōrō, 1*; agrees with the subject-nom. *quae*. — *nē*, adv. — *sē*, acc. plur. of *suī*; direct obj. of *trāderent*; refers to the women. — *in*, prep., here with the acc.

LINE 20. *servitūtem*, acc. sing. of *servitūs, -ūtis, f. (servus)*; direct obj. of the prep. *in*. — *Rōmānīs*, dat. plur. of *Rōmānī, -ōrum, m.*; indirect object. — *trāderent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *trādō, 3 (trāns + dō)*; subjunctive of purpose after *nē*. Consult A. & G. 331; B. 200, (*b*), and REM. 2; G. 546, and 2; H. 498, I.

LINE 1. *Caesar, -aris, m.*; subject-nom. of *praefēcit*. — *singulīs*, dat. plur. f. of the distributive num. adj. *singulī, -ae, -a* (sing. is ante and post classic); an attributive of *legiōnibus*. — *legiōnibus*, dat. plur. of *legiō, -ōnis, f.*; dat. after *prae* in the compound *praefēcit*. Consult A. & G. 228, and NOTE, end; B. 143; G. 347, and 3; H. 386, and 1. A Roman legion of soldiers consisted of ten cohorts. See any encyclopedia. — *singulōs*, acc. plur.; an attributive of *lēgātōs*.

LINE 2. *lēgātōs*, acc. plur. of *lēgātus, -ī, m.*; direct obj. of *praefēcit*. See preceding grammatical references. — *et*, cop. conj. — *quaestōrem*, acc. sing. of *quaestor, -ōris, m.*; connected by *et* with *lēgātōs*, and in the same construction. *quaestor* usually = a Roman *magistrate* in charge of the finances; here a paymaster of Caesar's forces, but in an emergency appointed to act as *lēgātus*. — *praefēcit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *praeficiō, 3 (prae + facere)*; agrees with the subject *Caesar* expressed. — *utī*, telic conj. — *eōs*, acc. plur. of *is, ea, id*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; here = *lēgātōs et quaestōrem*; direct obj. of *habēret*.

LINE 3. *testēs*, acc. plur. (*testis, -is, m. and f.*); appositive with *eōs*. — *suae*, gen. sing. f. (*suus, -a, -um*); an attributive of *virtūtis*. — *quisque*, indef. pron., universal (*quisque, quaeque, quidque*); subj. of *habēret*. — *virtūtis*, gen. sing. of *virtūs, -ūtis, f. (vir)*; limits *testēs*. — *habēret*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive act. of *habēo, 2*; agrees with *quisque*; subjunctive of purpose after *utī*.



while he personally began the battle from his right wing, as he had observed that the division of the enemy opposite to it was the weakest. Accordingly, our troops, on the signal being given, attacked the enemy fiercely; but the ene-	ipse <i>he himself</i>	ā <i>from</i>	dextrō <i>the right</i>	cornū, <i>wing,</i>	quod <i>because</i>	eam 4 <i>that</i>
	partem <i>part</i>	minimē <i>least</i>	fīrmam <i>strong</i>	hostium <i>of the enemy</i>	esse 5 <i>to be,</i>	
	animadverterat, <i>he had perceived,</i>	proelium <i>the battle</i>	commisit. <i>began.</i>	Ita 6 <i>Thus</i>		
	nostrī <i>our men</i>	ācritē <i>spiritedly</i>	in <i>against</i>	hostēs <i>the enemy,</i>	signō 7 <i>the signal</i>	
	datō <i>being given,</i>	impetum <i>an attack</i>	fēcērunt, <i>made</i>	itaque <i>so and,</i>	hostēs 8 <i>the enemy</i>	

LINE 4. **ipse**, intensive pron. (*ipse*, -sa, -sum); refers to Caesar; is subject-nom. of *commisit*. — **ā**, prep. with the abl. See note on *ā*, l. 7, Chap. I. — **dextrō**, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *dexter*, -tra, -trum, or -tera, -terum; an attributive of *cornū*. — **cornū**, abl. sing. of *cornū*, -ūs, n.; obj. of the prep. *ā*. Observe that *cornū* = lit. *a horn*; that, in imitation of the GK. *κέρας*, the side of an army in form of a horn, or as a symbol of strength in the bullock, is denoted by *cornū*; but that the proper Roman figure to indicate the notion is derived from the *wing* (*āla*) of the bird of prey; and that the figure *wing* of an army has come down to us as the fittest survival. — **quod**, conj. = *because*. — **eam**, acc. sing. f. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; an attributive of *partem*.

LINE 5. **partem**, acc. sing. of *pars*, *partis*, f.; subject-acc. of *esse*. Observe that the phrase *eam partem* designates the left wing of the Germans. — **minimē**, adv., superl. degree; comparative *minus*; modifies the adj. *fīrmam*. — **fīrmam**, acc. sing. f. (*fīrmus*, -a, -um); predicate-adj. after *esse*. — **hostium**, gen plur. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); partitive after *fīrmam*. See A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **esse**, pres. inf. of *sum*; subject-acc. is *partem*.

LINE 6. **animadverterat**, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *animadverto*; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. See l. 10, Chap. XIX. — **proelium**, acc. sing. n. (*proelium*, -i); direct obj. of *commisit*. See *proeliis*, l. 18, Chap. I. — **commisit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *committō*, -ere, -misi, -missum, 3 (com + mittere = to send together); hence = to bring together, to join. — **Ita**, adv.

LINE 7. **nostrī**, nom. plur. m. of the poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum (*nūs*); used substantively; subj. of *fēcērunt*. — **ācritē**, adv. (*ācer*, sharp). See *ācritē*, l. 2, Chap. XXVI. — **in**, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here with the acc. See *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **hostēs**, acc. plur. (*hostis*, -is); obj. of the prep. *in*. — **signō**, abl. sing. of *signum*, -i, n.; absolute with *datō*.

LINE 8. **datō**, perf. pass. participle of *dō*, 1; absolute construction with *signō*, denoting *time when*. A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. Observe that *signum* is a word of wide meaning, only to be determined by the context; that the signal for battle was usually given by the trumpet. Compare *signum tubā dandum*, Chap. XX, Book 2. — **impetum**, acc. sing. m. (*impetus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *fēcērunt*. — **fēcērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *faciō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *nostrī*. — **itaque** (*ita* + *que*) = *et ita*. Observe that *ita* is the correlative of the following conj. *ut*. — **hostēs**, nom. plur. (*hostis*, -is); subj. of *fēcērunt*.

9	repente	celeriterque	prōcurrērunt,	ut	spatium	my ran forward so unexpectedly and swiftly, that no time was given for hurling javelins at them. Throwing aside the javelins, our men fought the battle hand to hand with swords. But the Germans, speedily forming a phalanx, according to their custom received the swords' onsets.
	suddenly	quickly and,	ran forward	that	room	
10	pīla	in	hostēs	cōniciendī	nōn	
	the javelins	against	the enemy	of (for) hurling	not	
11	darētur.	Rēiectīs	pīlis,	comminus		
	was given.	Having thrown away	the javelins,	hand to hand		
12	gladiīs	pūgnātum est.	At	Germānī	celeriter	
	with swords	it was fought.	But	the Germans	quickly,	
13	ex	cōnsuetūdine	suā	phalange	factā	
	according to	custom	their	a phalanx	being made,	
14	impetūs	gladiōrem	excēpērunt.	Repertī	sunt	
	the attacks	of the swords	received.	Were found	swords' onsets.	

LINE 9. **repente**, adv. (adj. *repēns*, sudden, etymology dubious). — **celeriterque** (*celeriter* + *que*). *celeriter*, adv. (*celer*, swift). *que*, enclitic conj.; connects the adverbs. — **prōcurrērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *prōcurrō*, -ere, -curri, -cursum, 3 (prō + curro) agrees with *hostēs*. — **ut**, ebativ conj. — **spatium**, nom. sing. n.; subj. of *darētur*; a broad word, applicable to either *space* or *time*.

LINE 10. **pīla**, acc. plur. of *pīlum*, -ī, n.; direct obj. of the gerund *cōniciendī*. See *pīlis*, l. 6, Chap. XXV. — **in**, prep., here with the acc., and = *against*. — **hostēs**, acc. plur.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **cōniciendī**, gen. of the gerund of *cōniciō*, -ere, -ici, -iectum, 3 (con + iacere) as gen. it limits *spatium*. A. & G. 298; B. 184, REM. 4, I, (a); G. 428; H. 542, I. — **nōn**, negative particle; in its normal position, immediately before the verb.

LINE 11. **darētur**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *dō*, 1; agrees with its subj. *spatium*: subjunctive of *result* after *ut*, referring to *ita*. — **Rēiectīs**, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *rēiectus*, -a, -um of *rēiciō*, 3; absolute with *pīlis*. — **pīlis**, abl. plur. n. (*pīlum*, -ī); absolute with the perf. pass. participle; the phrase denotes *time when*. See *pīla*, preceding line. — **comminus**, adv. (com + manus) = lit. *with hands*, i.e. *hand to hand* contest; opposite to *ēminus*, away from the hand, i.e. *not hand to hand*.

LINE 12. **gladiīs**, abl. plur. of *gladius*, -ī, m.; abl. of *means*. Synonyms: see *gladiūs*, l. 8, Chap. XXV. — **pūgnātum est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *pūgnō*, 1; here a verb of complete predication. See l. 2, Chap. XXVI. — **At**, conj.; expresses a contrast. — **Germānī**, -ōrum, m.; subject-nom. of *excēpērunt*. — **celeriter**, adv.; see l. 9, above.

LINE 13. **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **cōnsuetūdine**, abl. of *cōnsuetūdō*, -inis, f.; obj. of the prep *ex*. — **suā**, abl. sing. (*suus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *cōnsuetūdine*. — **phalange**, abl. sing. of *phalanx*, -ngis, f. (GK. φάλαγξ); absolute with *factā*. The German phalanx appears to have been in the form of the Roman *testūdō* or covered column. — **factā**, perf. pass. participle of *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus*, 3; abl. absolute with *phalange*, denoting the *time when*.

LINE 14. **impetūs**, acc. plur. m. (*impetus*, -ūs); direct obj. of *excēpērunt*. — **gladiōrum**, gen. plur. of *gladius*, -ī, m.; limits, as a gen., *impetūs*. — **excēpērunt**,

Very many of our soldiers were found, who leaped upon the phalanxes and tore away the shields with their hands and inflicted wounds from above. Al- though the ene- my's line on the left wing was routed and put to flight, the	complūrēs nostri militēs, quī in phalangas very many our soldiers, who on the phalanxes	15
	īnsilirent et scūta manibus revellerent leaped and the shields with (their) hands pulled away	16
	et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum and from above wounded (the enemy). Though	17
	hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa the enemy's line on the left wing routed	18
	atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō and into flight turned was, on the right	19

3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *excipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3 (ex + capere) = lit. to take out; then, to take somewhat from some position to one's self; hence, to receive. — *Repertī sunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. pass. of *reperiō*, -ire, *rep(p)erī*, *repertum*, 4; agrees with the subject-nom. *militēs*.

LINE 15. *complūrēs*, nom. plur. m. of the adj. *complūrēs*, -a (con + plus, more); an attributive of *militēs*. — *nostri*, nom. plur. m. of the poss. personal pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; also an attributive of *militēs*. — *militēs*, nom. plur. m. (*mīles*, -itīs); subj. of *repertī sunt*. Observe that we have cases in agreement instead of the partitive gen., i.e. the construction of the text instead of *complūrēs nostrūm militum*. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *militēs*; is subject-nom. of *īnsilirent*. — *in*, prep. with the acc. or abl.; here repeated after a compound containing it. — *phalangas*, Greek acc. plur. f. of *phalanx*, -ngis; obj. of the prep. *in*. Consult A. & G. 64; B. 248; G. 66, NOTE 4; H. 68, and I, (1). Observe that the vowel of the Greek acc. plur. -as is short, while the Latin ending -ēs is long. See note on *phalangem*, I. 7, Chap. XXV.

LINE 16. *īnsilirent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *īnsiliō*, -ire, -uī, 4 (in + salīō); agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*; subjunctive of characteristic — a relative clause after an indefinite expression. See A. & G. 320, a, NOTE; B. 201, REM. I, (e); G. 631, and 2; H. 503, I. — *et*, cop. conj. — *scūta*, acc. plur. n. (*scūtum*, -ī); direct object. Synonyms: see *scūtis*, I. 11, Chap. XXV. — *manibus*, abl. plur. f. (*manus*, -ūs); means. — *revellerent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *revellō*, -ere, -velli, -vul(vol)sum, 3 (re + vellō); connected by *et* with *īnsilirent*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 17. *et*, conj. — *dēsuper*, adv. (dē + super). — *vulnerārent*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. subjunctive of *vulnerō*, 1 (*vulnus*); sometimes written *volnerō*; connected by *et* with the immediately preceding verb, and in the same construction. Supply *hostēs* as direct obj. — *Cum*, concessive conj. = *though*.

LINE 18. *hostium*, gen. plur. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); limits *aciēs*. — *aciēs*, nom. sing. f.; subj. of *pulsa* (*esset*). — *ā* (*ab*), prep. with the abl. — *sinistrō*, abl. sing. n. of the adj. *sinister*, -tra, -trum; comparative *sinisterior*; superl. *sinistimus*; an attributive of *cornū*. — *cornū*, abl. sing. n.; see *cornū*, I. 4, above; obj. of the prep. *ā*. — *pulsa*, nom. sing. f. of the participle *pulsus*, -a, -um of *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*, 3; predicate after *esset*, to be supplied.

LINE 19. *atque*, conj. (ad + que) = *and also*. — *in*, prep., here with the acc. — *fugam*, acc. sing. f. (*fuga*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *conversa*, nom. sing.

20	cornū	vehementer	multitūdine	suōrum	enemy pressed
	wing	vigorously	with the multitude	of their (men)	our line furiously
21	nostram	aciem	premēbant.	Id cum	wing with their
	our	line	they pressed.	This when	vast numbers.
22	animadvertisset	Pūblius	Crassus	adulēscēns,	On observing
	had noticed	Publius	Crassus,	a young man,	this, Publius
23	quī	equitātūī	praeērat,	quod	Crassus, a young
	who	the cavalry	was over,	because	man, who was in
				more disengaged	command of the
24	erat	quam eī,	quī inter	aciem	versābantur,
	was he than	those	who amid	the battle	were occupied,
					who were in the
					midst of the

f. of the participle *conversus*, -a, -um of *convertō*, 3; predicate after *esset*. — *esset*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive of *sum*, *esse*, *fui*; agrees with the subject-nom. *aciēs*; subjunctive after *cum* concessive. A. & G. 326; B. 210; G. 587; H. 515, III. — *ā dextrō cornū*, see the phrase explained, l. 4, above. The reference is to Caesar's right wing.

LINE 20. *vehementer*, adv. (*vehemēns*, furious). — *multitūdine*, abl. of *multitūdō*, -inis, f. (*multus*); means. — *suōrum*, gen. plur. of the poss. adj. pron. *suus*, -a, -um; used substantively; or supply *militum*; limits *multitūdine*.

LINE 21. *nostram*, acc. sing. f. (*noster*, -tra, -trum); an attributive of *aciem*. — *aciem*, acc. sing. of *aciēs*, -ēī, f.; direct obj. See l. 12, Chap. XXII. — *premēbant*, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. act. of *premō*, 3; agrees with *hostēs* understood. — *Id*, acc. sing. n. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); direct obj.; refers to the Germans' onset on Caesar's right wing. — *cum*, conj., temporal.

LINE 22. *animadvertisset*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. subjunctive act. of *animadvertō*, -ere, -tū, -sum, 3 (see l. 6, above); subjunctive after *cum*, temporal or historical. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — *Pūblius*, *praenōmen*; abbreviated P. — *Crassus*, -ī, m., the *cognōmen* or family name of the *gens Licinia*. Observe that *Publius Crassus* as a complex proper noun is in apposition with *adulēscēns*. — *adulēscēns*, -ntis, subst.; subj. of *animadvertisset*. Observe that the *adu(o)lēscēns*, m. and f. = a young person between fifteen and forty years of age. The Crassus of the text is thus designated to distinguish him from his father M. Licinius Crassus, the triumvir.

LINE 23. *quī*, nom. sing. m.; subj. of *praeērat*. — *equitātūī*, dat. sing. m. (*equitātus*, -ūs); dat. after *prae* in the compound — in *praeērat*. See grammatical references to *legiōnibus*, l. 1, above. Some copies have here *equitātūī*, an archaic form of the dat. — *praeērat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *praesum*, -esse, -fui; agrees with the subject-nom. *quī*. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *expeditior*, comparative degree of the participle *expeditus* of *expediō*, 4 (ex + pēs); predicate-adj. after *erat*. See *expeditus*, l. 9, Chap. VI. Observe that Crassus was *more disengaged*, because he was a cavalry officer, and was not engaged in the infantry charge.

LINE 24. *erat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. of *sum*; agrees with a pron., referring to Crassus. — *quam*, conj. — *eī*, nom. plur. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; subject-nom. of *erant* understood. — *quī*, nom. plur. m. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); subj. of *versābantur*. — *inter*, adv. or prep.; here prep. with the acc.

fight, sent the third line to aid our men who were in distress.

tertiam	aciem	labōrantibus	nostris	subsidiō	25
the third	line,	to the struggling	ours,	for assistance,	
mīsit.					26
he sent.					

LIII. In this way, the battle was re-established, and all the enemy fled, and they did not cease to flee until they reached the Rhine river, a-

LIII.	Ita	proelium	restitūtum est	atque	1
	Thus	the battle	restored was,	and	
omnēs	hostēs	terga	vertērunt	neque	2
all	the enemy (their)	backs	turned,	not and,	
prius	fugere	dēstitērunt,	quam	ad	flūmen
before	to flee	they stopped	that	to	the river

— **aciem**, acc. sing. f. (*aciēs*, -ēī); obj. of the prep. *inter*. Observe that *inter aciem* here = *inter pūgnam*. — **versābantur**, 3d pers. plur. imperf. ind. of middle form *versor*, -āri, -atus, 1; agrees with the subj. *quī*. But see *versō*, Andrew's Lex. II.

LINE 25. **tertiam**, acc. sing. f. of the ord. num. adj. *tertius*, -a, -um; an attributive of *aciem*. — **aciem**, acc. sing. f. (*aciēs*, -ēī); direct obj. of *mīsit*. Observe that the third line constituted the military reserve. — **labōrantibus**, dat. plur. m. of the pres. participle *labōrāns*, -ntis of *labōrō*, 1 (*labor*); dat. of the object to which. Observe that this participle is attributive, modifying *militibus* understood; that *nostris* has a similar function, i.e. modifies *militibus* understood; and that the rigidly literal translation is: *to our toiling soldiers*. Such construction is best rendered by a relative and finite verb. — **nostris**, dat. plur. m. of the poss. adj. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum. — **subsidiō**, dat. sing. of *subsidiū*, -i, n.; dat. of the end for which — predicative. Consult A. & G. 233, a; B. 147; G. 356; H. 390, II.

LINE 26. **mīsit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *mīlō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *mīssum*, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending as subject-nom., referring to Crassus.

LINE 1. **Ita** (radical *i*, whence *is* + *ta*), adv. = *thus*, i.e. because the hard-pressed were reinforced. — **proelium**, nom. sing. n.; subject of *restitūtum est*. — **restitūtum est**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *restituō*, 3 (*re* + *statuere*, to set up again). — **atque** (*ad* + *que*), conj. See I. 10, Chap. I.

LINE 2. **omnēs**, nom. plur. m. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *hostēs*. — **hostēs**, nom. plur. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); subj. of *vertērunt*. — **terga**, acc. plur. n. (*tergum*, -ī); direct obj. — **vertērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *vertō*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *hostēs*. — **neque** (*nē* + *que*), conjunctive adv.; here = *et nōn*.

LINE 3. **prius**, adv. (adj. *prior*, former); separated from the following *quam* by *tmēsis*. A. & G. 385; B. 310, 4, (d); G. 726; H. 636, V, 3. — **fugere**, pres. inf. act. of *fugiō*, 3; complementary; depends on *dēstitērunt*. — **dēstitērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *dēssistō*, -ere, -stīlī, -stītum, 3; connected by *neque* with *vertērunt*, and in the same construction. — **quam**, conj. = *than*. As part of *priusquam*, its force will appear if we translate the former part of the compound *sooner*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. — **flūmen**, acc. sing. n. (*flūmen*, -inis); obj. of the prep. *ad*.

4	Rhēnum	mīlia	passuum	ex	eō	locō	circiter	bout five miles from the place of conflict. At the river, a very few, relying on their strength, either tried to swim across, or lighting on some skiffs found safety. Among them was Ariovistus, who, having
	<i>Rhine</i>	<i>thousands</i>	<i>of paces</i>	<i>from that</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>about</i>		
5	quīnque	pervēnērunt.	Ibi	perpaucī	aut			
	<i>five</i>	<i>they arrived.</i>	<i>There</i>	<i>very few</i>	<i>either</i>			
6	vīribus	cōnfisī	trānāre	contendērunt,	aut			
	<i>on strength</i>	<i>relying</i>	<i>to swim over</i>	<i>they hastened,</i>	<i>or</i>			
7	lintribus	inventis	sibi	salūtem				
	<i>boats</i>	<i>having lighted on</i>	<i>for themselves</i>	<i>safety</i>				
8	repperērunt.	In	hīs	fuit	Ariovistus,	quī		
	<i>they found.</i>	<i>Among them</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>Ariovistus,</i>	<i>who,</i>			

LINE 4. **Rhēnum**, acc. sing. m. (*Rhēnus*, -ī); an appositive. — **mīlia**, acc. plur. — *extent of space*. A. & G. 257; B. 153; G. 335; H. 379. — **passuum**, gen. plur. m. (*passus*, -ūs); partitive after *mīlia*. A. & G. 216, 2; B. 134; G. 370; H. 397, 2. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **eō**, abl. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *locō*. — **locō**, abl. of *locus*, -ī, m.; obj. of the prep. *ex*. See *locī*, l. 10, Chap. II. — **circiter**, adv.; modifies *quīnque*.

LINE 5. **quīnque**, card. num. adj.; an attributive of *mīlia*. There is MS-authority for the reading *quīnquāginā*. But the Greek paraphrase reads: *τετραράκοντα στάδια* — 24,000 Greek feet. *quīnque* is, therefore, the better lection. — **pervēnērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *pervenīō*, 4; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to the enemy. — **Ibi**, adv. (radical *i*, whence *is* + *bi*) = lit. in *that place*. — **perpaucī**, -ae, -a (per, *intensive* + *paucus*); used substantively; subj. of *contendērunt*. — **aut** . . . **aut**, see *aut*, l. 19, Chap. I.

LINE 6. **vīribus**, dat. or abl. plur. of *vīs*, *vīs*, f.; plur. *vīrēs*, gen. *vīrium*; depends on *cōnfisī*; might be taken as dat. of indirect obj., or abl. *locative*, in a figurative sense. A. & G. 254, *b*; B. 142, REM. 3; G. 346, REM. 2, and NOTE 2, and 401, NOTE 6; H. 425, II. 1, 1), NOTE. — **cōnfisī**, nom. plur. m. of the perf. participle of *cōnfidō*, -ere, -fīsus, 3; neuter pass. or semi-deponent; as a participle it agrees with *perpaucī*, used as a noun. — **trānāre**, pres. inf. act. of *trānō* (*trānsnō*), 1 (*trāns* + *nō*); complementary inf. — **contendērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *contendō*, 3; agrees with the subj. *perpaucī*. See *contendunt*, l. 18, Chap. I. — **aut**, see *aut*, preceding line.

LINE 7. **lintribus**, abl. plur. of *linter*, *lintris*, m. and f. — generally f.; absolute with *inventis*. — **inventis**, abl. plur. of the perf. pass. participle *inventus*, -a, -um of *invenīō*, 4; absolute with *lintribus*, denoting *time when*. — **sibi**, dat. plur. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; dat. of *reference* or *advantage*. — **salūtem**, acc. sing. f. (*salūs*, -utis); direct object.

LINE 8. **repperērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *reperiō*, -īre, *reperi* or *reperi*, *reperitum*, 4; connected by the conj. *aut* with *contendērunt*, and has the same subj. — **In**, prep., here with the abl., and = *among*; but see *in*, l. 1, Chap. I. — **hīs**, abl. plur. m. of the dem. pron. *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*; used as a personal pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **fuit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, fut. participle *futūrus*; agrees with the subject-nom. *Ariovistus*. — **Ariovistus**, -ī, m.; king of the Germans; died, soon after this battle, in Germany, either from wounds or chagrin at his defeat. See Chap. XXIX, Book 5. — **quī**, rel. pron.; refers to *Ariovistus*; subj. of *profūgit*.

found a skiff tied to the bank, escaped in it; our men pursued with cavalry all the rest, and slew them. (Ario- vistus had two wives, one a Suevan by na- tion, whom he had brought with him from home; the other a Nori- can, a sister of	nāviculam a canoe	dēligātā being fastened	ad to	ripam the bank	nactus 9 having found,
	eā with this	profūgit; he escaped;	reliquōs the rest	omnēs all	equitātū 10 with cavalry
	cōnsecūtī having pursued	nostrī our men	interfēcērunt. 11 put to death.	Two	Duae 11
	fuērunt were	Ariovistī Ariovistus'	uxōrēs, wives,	ūna one	Suēva 12 a Suevan
	nātiōne, in nation,	quam whom	domō from home	sēcum himself with,	dūxerat, 13 he had led,

LINE 9. *nāviculam*, acc. sing. of *nāvicula*, -ae, f. (*nāvīs*); diminutive = a canoe, or skiff; direct obj. of the deponent participle *nactus*. — *dēligātā*, acc. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle of *dēligō*, 1; agrees with *nāviculam*, but is essentially predicative = which was fastened. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *ripam*, acc. sing. f. (*ripa*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *nactus*, perf. participle of the deponent *nāviscor*, -ī, *nactus* or *nactus*, 3; agrees with the subj. of the relative clause.

LINE 10. *eā*, abl. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers., referring to *nāviculum*; or supply *nāviculā*; abl. of means. — *profūgit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *profugio*, -ere, *fūgit*, 3; agrees with the subj. *quī*. — *reliquōs*, acc. plur. m. of the adj. *reliquus*, -a, -um; used substantively; direct obj. of *cōnsecūtī*. — *omnēs*, acc. plur. m. (*omnis*, -e); an attributive of *reliquōs*. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. m. (*equitatus*, -ūs); accompaniment without *cum*, which is sometimes omitted.

LINE 11. *cōnsecūtī*, nom. plur. m. of the deponent participle *cōnsecūtus*, -a, -um of *cōsequor*, -ūī, -cūtus, 3; agrees with the subj. *nostrī*. — *nostrī*, nom. plur. m. of the personal poss. pron. *noster*, -tra, -trum; subj. of *interfēcērunt*. — *interfēcērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of *interficiō*, 3; agrees with *nostrī* as subject; supply *eōs*, i.e. *reliquōs*, as direct object. — *Duae*, nom. plur. of the num. adj. *duo*, *duae*, *duo*; compare GK. *δύο*. For declension, see A. & G. 94, b; B. 64, REM. 2; G. 73, REM., and 95; H. 175. *duae* is an attributive of *uxōrēs*.

LINE 12. *fuērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. of *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*; agrees with the subject-nom. *uxōrēs*. — *Ariovistī*, gen. sing. (*Ariovistus*, -ī); predicate-gen. A. & G. 214, c, d; B. 133; G. 366; H. 401, 402. — *uxōrēs*, nom. plur. of *uxor*, -ōris, f.; subject-nom. of *fuērunt*. — *ūna*, nom. sing. f. (*ūnus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *uxor*, to be supplied; which latter is subject of *fuit* understood. — *Suēva*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *Suēvus*, -a, -um; predicate after *fuit* understood.

LINE 13. *nātiōne*, abl. of specification (*nātiō*, -ōnis, f.). Synonyms: both *gēns* and *nātiō* = race, nation; but sometimes the one is used in a more restricted sense than the other; sometimes they are used as precisely similar in meaning. — *quam*, acc. sing. f. of the rel. pron. *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; refers to *uxor* understood, and is the direct object of *dūxerat*. — *domō*, abl. of place from which without a prep. A. & G. 258, 2, a; B. 175; G. 390, 2; H. 412, II, 1. — *sēcum* (*sē* + *cum*). *sē*, abl. of the reflexive pron. *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē*; obj. of the enclitic prep. *cum*. — *dūxerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *dūcō*, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductum*, 3; supply in *mātrīmonium*, and see l. 12, Chap. IX; agrees with a pronoun understood, referring to Ariovistus.

14	altera	Nōrica,	rēgis	Vocciōnis	soror,	quam	king Voccio, whom, as she had been sent into Gaul by her brother, Ariovis- tus had married there. Both per- ished in this flight. Ariovis- tus had two daughters: one of these was slain; the other was captured. Caius Valerius Procillus, as he was dragged by the guards in the flight, bound
	another	a Norican,	king	Voccio's	sister,	whom	
15	in	Galliā	dūxerat	ā	frātre	missam;	
	in	Gaul	he had led	by	brother	having been sent;	
16	utraeque	in	eā	fugā	periērunt.	Duae	
	both	in	this	flight	perished.	Two	
17	filiae,		hārum	altera	occīsa,	altera	
	daughters (were his),	of these	one (was)	slain,	the other		
18	capta est.	Cāius	Valerius	Procillus,	cum ā		
	captured was.	Caius	Valerius	Procillus,	when by		
19	cūstōdibus	in	fugā	trīnis	catēnis		
	the keepers	in	the flight	with a triple	chain		

LINE 14. *altera*, nom. sing. f. of *alter*, -*tera*, -*terum* = here *secunda*; an attributive of *uxor*, to be supplied. — *Nōrica*, nom. sing. f. of the adj. *Nōricus*, -*a*, -*um*; predicate after *fuit* understood. — *rēgis*, gen. sing. m. (*rēx*, *rēgis*); limits *soror*. — *Vocciōnis*, gen. sing. m. (*Vocciō*, -*ōnis*); an appositive. — *soror*, nom. sing. f. (*soror*, -*ōris*); an appositive with *altera uxor*. — *quam*, f., rel. pron. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); refers to *soror*; but is the direct obj. of *dūxerat*.

LINE 15. *in*, prep., here with the abl. — *Galliā*, abl.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *dūxerat*, see *dūxerat*, l. 13. — *ā* (*ab*), prep. with the abl. — *frātre*, abl. sing. of *frāter*, *frātris*, m.; obj. of the prep. *ā*; abl. of the agent after *missam*. — *missam*, acc. sing. f. of the perf. pass. participle of *mittō*, 3; agrees in gender, number and case with *quam*.

LINE 16. *utraeque*, nom. plur. f. of the adj. pron. *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*; subj. of *periērunt*. — *in*, prep. with the abl. — *eā*, abl. sing. f. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); an attributive of *fugā*. — *fugā*, abl.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *periērunt*, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *percō*, -*ire*, -*ivī* (-*ii*), -*itum*; agrees with *utraeque*. For syncope, see A. & G. 128, 2; B. 251; G. 131, 1; H. 235. — *Duae*, nom. plur. f. (*duo*, *duae*, *duo*); an attributive of *filiae*.

LINE 17. *filiae*, nom. plur. f. of *fīlia*, -*ae*; subj. of *fuērunt*, to be supplied; supply also *Ariovisti* as prepositional gen. — *hārum*, gen. plur. f. (*hic*, *haec*, *hōc*); used substantively; partitive after *altera*; refers to the daughters; some regard *hārum* as referring to the wives, and put the comma after *hārum* instead of *filiae*; *hārum* might then be the predicate-gen. — *altera*, nom. sing. f. (*alter*, -*tera*, -*terum*); subj. of *occīsa* (*est*). — *occīsa* (*est*), 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *occidō*, 3. See l. 21, Chap. VII. — *altera*, observe the reciprocal use of the pronouns: *the one*, *the other*; subj. of *capta est*.

LINE 18. *capta est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *capiō*, 3. — *Cāius*, -*i*, m.; *praenōmen*. — *Valerius*, *nōmen*. — *Procillus*, *cōgnōmen*. *Cāius Valerius Procillus*, as a complex proper noun, is subject-nom. of *incidiū*, l. 22, below. See l. 14, Chap. XLVII. — *cum*, conj., temporal. — *ā* (*ab*), prep. with the abl.

LINE 19. *cūstōdibus*, abl. plur. of *cūstōs*, -*ōdis*, m. and f.; obj. of the prep. *ā*; abl. of the agent. A. & G. 246; B. 166; G. 401; H. 415, I. — *in*, prep., here with



with a triple chain, fell in with Caesar him- self who was pursuing the enemy with caval- ry. And this incident indeed afforded Caesar no less pleasure than the victory itself; because he saw the most worthy man in	vinctus <i>being bound</i>	traheretur, <i>he was being dragged,</i>	in <i>on</i>	ipsum 20 <i>the very</i>
	Caesarem	hostēs <i>the enemy,</i>	equitātū <i>with cavalry</i>	persequentem 21 <i>pursuing,</i>
	incidit. <i>fell.</i>	Quae <i>Which</i>	quidem <i>indeed</i>	rēs <i>thing</i>
	Caesari <i>to Caesar</i>	nōn 22 <i>not</i>		
	minōrem <i>less</i>	quam <i>than</i>	ipsa <i>the very</i>	victōria <i>victory</i>
	voluptātem 23 <i>pleasure</i>			
	attulit, <i>brought,</i>	quod <i>because</i>	hominem <i>a man</i>	honestissimum 24 <i>the most respected</i>

the abl. — *fugā*, abl. sing.; obj. of the prep. *in*. — *trīnis*, abl. plur. f. of the distributive num. adj. *trīnī*, -ae, -a; an attributive of *catēnis*. — *catēnis*, abl. plur. of *catēna*, -ae, f.; abl. of manner; observe that *catēnis*, though plur. in form, is sing. in meaning; hence the distributive *trīnīs* rather than *tribus*; compare *bīna castra* = *two camps*.

LINE 20. *vinctus*, nom. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle from *vinciō*, -īre, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, 4; as a participle it agrees with a pron. understood, the subject-nom. of *traheretur*. — *traheretur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *traho*, -ere, *traxi*, *tractum*, 3; agrees with a pron. understood, referring to *Procillus*; subjunctive after *cum* temporal. A. & G. 325; B. 222; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2. — *in*, prep. with the acc. — *ipsum*, acc. sing. m. of the intensive pron. *ipse*, -sa, -sum; belongs to *Caesarem*, and adds emphasis.

LINE 21. *Caesarem*, acc. sing. m. (*Caesar*, -aris); obj. of the prep. *in*. — *hostēs*, acc. plur. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); direct obj. of the participle *persequentem*. — *equitātū*, abl. sing. after *cum* omitted. See l. 10, above. — *persequentem*, acc. sing. m. of the pres. participle *persequēns*, -ntis of *persequor*, 3, deponent; deponents have the participles of both voices; as a participle it agrees with *Caesarem*.

LINE 22. *incidit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *incidō*, -ere, -cidī (in + *cadere*, to fall); not to be confounded with *incidō* (in + *caedere*, to cut); agrees with the subject-nom. *C. V. Procillus*. — *Quae*, nom. sing. f. (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*); used adjectively; an attributive of *rēs*. But see A. & G. 180, f; B. 129, REM. 9; G. 610; H. 453. — *quidem*, adv.; usually puts emphasis on the word before it; here its proper place is after *rēs*; but is attracted to *quae*, because the initial consonants are cognate; similar words in Latin like to be near each other. — *rēs*, nom. sing. f. (*rēs*, *rē*); subj. of *attulit*. — *Caesari*, dat. m. (*Caesar*, -aris); dat. of the indirect obj. after *at(d)tulit*. A. & G. 228, and NOTE 1; B. 143; G. 347; H. 386. — *nōn*, negative particle; modifies the adj. *minōrem*.

LINE 23. *minōrem*, acc. sing. f. of the comparative adj. *minor*, -ōris; an attributive of *voluptātem*; positive *parvus*; superl. *minimus*. — *quam*, conj. = *than*. — *ipsa*, nom. sing. f. (*ipse*, -sa, -sum); belongs to *victōria*. — *victōria*, nom. sing. f.; subj. of *attulit* understood. — *voluptātem*, acc. sing. of *voluptās*, -tātis, f. (*volō* through *volupe*); direct object.

LINE 24. *at(d)tulit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *at(d)ferō*, -ferre, *attulī*, *allātum*; agrees with the subject-nom. *rēs*. — *quod*, conj. = *because*. — *hominem*,

25	prōvinciae	Galliae,	suum	familiārem	et	the province of Gaul, his own friend and guest,
	of the province	of Gaul,	his own	familiar friend	and	
26	hospitem,	ēreptum	ē	manibus	hostium	snatched from the hands of the enemy, and restored to him;
	guest,	having been rescued from	the hands of the enemy,			
27	sibi	restitūtum	vidēbat;	neque	ēius	and that fortune had not, by his destruction, diminished aught from his great pleasure and joy.
	to himself	to have been restored	he saw;	not and,	by his	
28	calamitatē	dē tantā	voluptatē	et	grātulatiōne	Procillus said
	ruin	from so great	pleasure and		rejoicing	
29	quidquam	fortūna	dēminuerat.	Is	sē	
	anything	fortune	had lessened.	He,	himself	

acc. sing. of *homō*, -inis, m. and f.; subject-acc. of *restitūtum* (*esse*), l. 27, below. — *honestissimum*, acc. sing. m. of the superlative degree; positive *honestus*; comparative *honestior*; an attributive of *hominem*.

LINE 25. *prōvinciae*, gen. sing. f. (*prōvincia*, -ae); limits *hominem*. — *Galliae*, gen. sing. of *Gallia*, -ae, f.; limits *prōvinciae*. — *suum*, acc. sing. m.; refers to Caesar; an attributive of *familiārem*, used as noun. — *familiārem*, acc. sing. m. of the adj. *familiāris*, -e, used as subst.; an appositive with *hominem*. — *et*, cop. conj.

LINE 26. *hospitem*, acc. sing. m. or f. of *hospēs*, -itis; connected by *et* with *familiārem*, and in the same construction. — *ēreptum*, acc. sing. m. of the perf. pass. participle *ēreptus*, -a, -um of the verb *ēripio*, 3; as a participle it agrees with *hominem*. — *ē*, prep. with the abl. — *manibus*, abl. plur. of *manus*, -ūs, f.; obj. of the prep. *ē*. — *hostium*, gen. plur. m. and f. (*hostis*, -is); limits *manibus*.

LINE 27. *sibi*, dat. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; refers to Caesar; indirect obj. of *restitūtum*. — *restitūtum* (*esse*), perf. inf. pass. of *restituō*, 3; its subject-acc. is *hominem*, l. 24, above. Observe that the infinitive-clause is the direct object of *vidēbat*. — *vidēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *videō*, 2; observe that the clause *quod . . . vidēbat* is explanatory of, and in apposition with, *rēs*, l. 22, above. — *neque* (*nē* + *que*) = *et nōn*; containing the negative. — *ēius*, gen. sing. m. (*is*, *ea*, *id*); used as personal pron. of the 3d pers.; as a gen. it limits *calamitatē*.

LINE 28. *calamitatē*, abl. sing. of *calamitās*, -tātis, f.; abl. of means, or instrument. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *tantā*, abl. sing. f. (adj. *tantus*, -a, -um); an attributive of *voluptatē*. — *voluptatē*, abl. sing. f. (*voluptās*, -tātis); obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *et*, cop. conj.; connects the words as of equal importance. — *grātulatiōne*, abl. sing. f. of *grātulatiō*, -ōnis, f. (*grātus* through *gratulor*); connected by *et* with *voluptatē*, and in the same grammatical construction.

LINE 29. *quid(c)quam*, acc. sing. n. of *quisquam*, *quaequam*, *quidquam*; indef. pron.; used chiefly in negative sentences; direct obj. of *dēminuerat*. — *fortūna*, nom. sing. f.; subj. of *dēminuerat*. — *dēminuerat*, 3d pers. sing. pluperf. ind. act. of *dēminuō*, 3 (*dē*, intensive + *minuere*, to lessen); agrees with the subj. *fortūna*. — *Is*, dem. pron., used as a personal pron.; expressed for emphasis; refers to Procillus; subj. of *dicebat*. — *sē*, abl. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; abl. absolute with the adj. *praesente*, denoting and attendant circumstance; refers to Procillus; in the abl. absolute contrary to the rule that the pron. must denote a different person from that in the leading clause.

that the lots had been consulted thrice in his own presence, whether he should be immediately put to death with fire, or be re- served for an- other time; that by the favor of the lots he was saved. Marcus Mettius was also found and re- stored to Caesar.	praesente being present,	dē with respect to himself	sē thrice	ter by the lots	sortibus 30
	cōnsultum to have been consulted	dīcēbat, said,	utrum whether	īgnī with fire	statim 31
	necārētur, he should be put to death	an or	in to	aliud another	tempus 32
	reservārētur; he should be reserved;	sortium by the lots'	beneficiō kindness	sē himself	esse 33
	incolumem. unharméd.	Item Also	Marcus Marcus	Mēttius Mēttius	reperitus 34 (was) found
	et and	ad to	eum him	reductus est. brought back.	35

LINE 30. *praesente*, abl. sing. m. of the participle *praesēns*, -ntis; really a pres. participle of *praesum*; absolute with *sē*. — *dē*, prep. with the abl. — *sē*, abl. sing.; refers to Procillus; obj. of the prep. *dē*. — *ter*, adv., numeral. — *sortibus*, abl. plur. of *sors*, *sortis*, f.; means.

LINE 31. *cōnsultum* (esse), perf. inf. pass. of *cōsulō*, -ere, -uī, *cōnsultum*, 3; used impersonally; supply *ab illīs* as abl. of the agent. — *dīcēbat*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *dīcō*, 3; agrees with the pron. *Is* expressed. — *utrum*, conj.; introduces an indirect question. — *īgnī*, abl. sing. of *ignis*, -is, m.; means. — *statim*, adv. (*stāre*, to stand); hence adv. = as one stands — immediately, at once.

LINE 32. *necārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *necō*, 1 (*nex*, death); agrees with a pron. as subj., referring to Procillus; subjunctive, because an indirect question. — *an*, conj.; correlate of *utrum*. — *in*, prep., here with the acc. — *aliud*, acc. sing. n. (*alius*, -a, -ud); an attributive of *tempus*. — *tempus*, acc. sing. n.; obj. of the prep. *in*.

LINE 33. *reservārētur*, 3d pers. sing. imperf. subjunctive pass. of *reservō*, 1; connected by *an* with *necārētur*, and in the same grammatical construction. — *sortium*, gen. plur. (*sors*, *sortis*); limits *beneficiō*. — *beneficiō*, abl. sing. n. (*beneficium*, -ī); cause. — *sē*, acc. sing. of the reflexive pron. *suī*; subject-acc. of *esse*. — *esse*, pres. inf. of *sum*, *fuī*, *futūrus*.

LINE 34. *incolumem*, acc. sing. of the adj. *incolumis*, -e; predicate after *esse*. What Procillus said in direct form, was: *Mē praesente dē mē ter sortibus cōnsultum est, utrum īgnī statim necārer, an in aliud tempus reservārer; sortium beneficiō egō sum incolumis.* — *Item*, adv. — *Marcus Mēttius*, subject-nom. See Chap. XLVII. — *reperitus* (est), 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *reperiō*, -īre, *rep(p)erī*, *reperitum*, 4.

LINE 35. *et*, cop. conj. — *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *eum*, acc. sing. m. of the dem. pron. *is*, *ea*, *id*; used as a pers. pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *reductus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. pass. of *redūcō*, -ere, *redūxī*, *ductum*, 3; agrees with the subject-nom. *Marcus Mēttius*.

1	LIV.	Hōc <i>This</i>	proeliō <i>battle</i>	trāns <i>across</i>	Rhēnum <i>the Rhine</i>	LIV. When this battle was reported across the Rhine, the Suevi, who had come to the river's banks, be- gan to return home; and the Ubii, who dwell next to the Rhine, followed them, and slew a large number of them while panic-stricken.
2	nūntiātō <i>having been announced</i>	Suēvī, <i>the Suevi,</i>	quī <i>who</i>	ad <i>near</i>	rīpās <i>the banks</i>	
3	Rhēni <i>of the Rhine</i>	vēnerant, <i>had come,</i>	domum <i>home</i>	revertī <i>to return</i>	coepērunt; <i>began;</i>	
4	quōs <i>whom</i>	Ubīi, <i>the Ubii,</i>	quī <i>who</i>	proximī <i>next</i>	Rhēnum <i>to the Rhine</i>	incolunt, <i>dwell,</i>
5	perterritōs <i>thoroughly terrified,</i>	insecūtī <i>having pursued,</i>	māgnam <i>a great,</i>	ex <i>of</i>	hīs <i>them,</i>	

LINE 1. **Hōc**, abl. sing. n. (*hic, haec, hoc*); an attributive of *proeliō*. — **proeliō**, abl. sing. n. of *proelium*, -ī; abl. absolute with *nūntiātō*, denoting *time when*. A. & G. 255; B. 192; G. 409, 410; H. 431. Synonyms: see *proeliūs*, l. 18, Chap. I. The battle referred to is the rout of the Germans mentioned in the preceding chapter. — **trāns**, prep. with the acc. — **Rhēnum**, acc. sing. m. (*Rhēnus*, -ī); an appositive with *flūmen* understood; which latter is the direct obj. of *trāns*.

LINE 2. **nūntiātō**, abl. sing. n. of the perf. pass. participle *nūntiātus*, -a, -um of the verb *nūntiō* (*nūntius*); abl. absolute with the noun *proeliō*. — **Suēvī** (GK. Σούηβοι), nom. plur. m.; subj. of *coepērunt*. — **quī**, nom. plur. m. (*quī, quae, quod*); subj. of *vēnerant*. — **ad**, prep. with the acc. = *to, near, in the vicinity of*. — **rīpās**, acc. plur. f. of *rīpā*, -ae; obj. of the prep. *ad*.

LINE 3. **Rhēni**, gen. sing. m. (*Rhenis*, -ī); limits *rīpās*. — **vēnerant**, 3d pers. plur. pluperf. ind. act. of *veniō*, 4; agrees with the subj. *quī*. — **domum**, acc. sing. f. of *domus*, -ūs; locative *domī*; the limit of motion. A. & G. 258, 2. b; B. 154, REM. 1; G. 337; H. 380, II, 2, 1). — **revertī**, pres. inf. of *revertor*, -ī, -sus, deponent; complementary inf. A. & G. 271; B. 181; G. 423; H. 533, I. 1. — **coepērunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of the preteritive verb *coepī*, *coepisse*, *coeptus*, with pass. inf. in the same sense as act.; agrees with the subject-nom. *Suēvī*.

LINE 4. **quōs**, acc. plur. of *quī*; refers to the Suevi, but is the direct obj. of the deponent participle *insecūtī*. — **Ubīi**, -ōrum, nom. plur. m.; subj. of *occiderunt*. These were a German clan on the east of the Rhine. — **quī**, nom. plur. m.; subj. of *incolunt*. — **proximī**, nom. plur. of the adj. *proximus*, -a, -um; superl.; comparative *propior*; no positive; agrees with the pron. *quī* in gender and number. — **Rhēnum**, acc. sing. m.; obj. of the adj. *proximī*, as if it were a prep. A. & G. 234, e; B. 144, REM. 4; G. 359, NOTE 1; H. 391, II, 2. — **incolunt**, 3d pers. plur. pres. ind. act. (*incolō*, 3).

LINE 5. **perterritōs**, acc. plur. m. of the perf. pass. participle *perterritus*, -a, -um of *perterreo*, 2; agrees with the rel. pron. *quōs* in gender, number, and case. — **insecūtī**, nom. plur. m. of the participle *insecūtus*, -a, -um of *insequor*, -ī, -cūtus, deponent; agrees with *Ubīi* in gender, number and case. — **māgnam**, acc. sing. f. of the adj. *māgnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *numerus*. — **ex**, prep. with the abl. — **hīs**, abl. plur. (*hic, haec, hoc*); used as a pron. of the 3d pers.; obj. of the prep. *ex*.

Caesar, having finished two very important wars in a single campaign, led his army into winter-quarters among the Sequani, a little earlier than the season of the year required; he put Labienus in command of the winter-quarters; while he in person set out	numerum occiderunt. <i>number</i> <i>slew.</i>	Caesar, ūnā aestate <i>Caesar, in one summer</i>	6
	duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius <i>two of the greatest wars having been finished, sooner</i>		7
	paulo quam tempus anni postulabat, in <i>by a little than the time of the year demanded, into</i>		8
	hiberna in Sequanos exercitum <i>winter-quarters among the Sequani the army</i>		9
	deduxit; hibernis Labienum <i>withdrew; over the winter-quarters Labienus</i>		10

LINE 6. **numerum**, acc. sing. m. (*numerus*, -ī); direct obj. of *occiderunt*. — **occiderunt**, 3d pers. plur. perf. ind. act. of *occidō*, -ere, -idī, -cisum, 3 (ob + caedō); agrees with the subject *Ubi*. — **Caesar**, -aris, m.; subject-nom. of *deduxit*, l. 10, below. — **ūnā**, abl. sing. f. of the adj. *ūnus*, -a, -um; an attributive of *aestate*. — **aestate**, abl. sing. f. of *aestas*, -lātis (from *aeuvum* through *aeuītās*); abl. of time at which. A. & G. 256, 1; B. 171; G. 393; H. 429.

LINE 7. **duobus**, abl. plur. n. of the num. adj. *duo*, *duae*, *duo*; an attributive of *bellis*. — **maximis**, abl. plur. n. of *maximus*, -a, -um; superl. of the adj. *magnus*; comparative *maior*; also modifies *bellis*. — **bellis**, abl. plur. n. (*bellum*, -ī); absolute with *confectis*. — **confectis**, abl. plur. n. of the perf. pass. participle *confectus*, -a, -um of *conficō*, 3; absolute with the noun *bellis*. — **maturius**, adv., comparative degree; positive *mātūrē*; superl. *mātūrissimē* or *mātūrrimē*.

LINE 8. **paulo**, adv.; might be taken as an abl. of degree of difference. — **quam**, conj. = *than*. — **tempus**, nom. sing. n.; subj. of *postulabat*. — **anni**, gen. sing. m. (*annus*, -ī); limits *tempus*. — **postulabat**, 3d pers. sing. imperf. ind. act. of *postulō*, 1; agrees with *tempus*. Synonyms: see *poscere*, l. 71, Chap. XXXI. — **in**, prep., here with the acc.

LINE 9. **hiberna**, acc. plur. n. of the adj. *hibernus*, -a, -um; used as a noun; or supply *castra*; obj. of the prep. *in*. — **in**, prep., here also with the acc. — **Sequanos**, acc. plur. of *Sequani*, -ōrum; obj. of the prep. *in*, which here = *among*. Observe that the people are here put for the country. — **exercitum**, acc. sing. m. (*exercitus*, -iis); direct obj. of *deduxit*. Synonyms: *exercitū*, l. 31, Chap. III.

LINE 10. **deduxit**, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *deducō*, 3 (*dē* + *dūcō*); agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — **hibernis**, dat. plur. n. (*hiberna*); dat. after *prae* in the compound *praeposuit*. — **Labienum**, acc. sing. m. (*Labienus*, -ī); direct obj. of *praeposuit*. The allusion is to Titus Attius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant.

11	praeposuit;	ipse	in	citeriōrem	Galliam	for Hither Gaul
	he placed;	he himself,	into	citerior	Gaul	to hold the pro-
						consular courts.
12	ad	conventūs	agendōs	profectus est.		
	to	the assizes	to be held,	set forth.		

LINE 11. *praeposuit*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. act. of *praepōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positum*, 3 (prae + pōnere, to put before); agrees with a pron. understood, referring to Caesar. — *ipse*, intensive pron.; refers to Caesar, and is the subj. of *profectus est*. — *in*, prep., here with the acc. after a verb of motion. — *citeriōrem*, acc. sing. of the adj. *citerior*, -ius; superl. *citimus*; positive wanting; an attributive of *Galliam*. — *Galliam*, acc. sing. f. (*Gallia*, -ae); obj. of the prep. *in*. The Gaul referred to is Cisalpina, lying on the south side of the Alps.

LINE 12. *ad*, prep. with the acc. — *conventūs*, acc. plur. m. of *conventus*, -ūs (con + venire); hence the noun = *coming together*; obj. of the prep. *ad*. — *agendōs*, acc. plur. m. of the gerundive *agendus* -a, -um of *ago*, -ere, *ēgī*, *actum*; agrees with *conventūs*, and the construction denotes the purpose of *profectus est*. A. & G. 300, and NOTE; B. 184, REM. 4, III; G. 432; H. 542, III, FOOTNOTE 5. These conventions or proconsular courts were within Caesar's jurisdiction as pro-consul. — *profectus est*, 3d pers. sing. perf. ind. of the deponent *proficiscor*, -ī, -fectus, 3; agrees with a pron. implied in the ending, referring to Caesar.

**Handy Literal Translations.** Cloth, *pocket*. 50 cents per vol.  
 Eighty-seven volumes, viz.: (See also "Tutorial Translations.")

Cæsar's Gallic War. *The Seven Books.*  
 Cæsar's Civil War.  
 Catullus.  
 Cicero's Brutus.  
 Cicero's Defence of Roscius.  
 Cicero De Officiis.  
 Cicero On Old Age and Friendship.  
 Cicero On Oratory.  
 Cicero On The Nature of the Gods.  
 Cicero's Orations. *Four vs. Catiline; and others. Enlarged edition.*  
 Cicero's Select Letters.  
 Cicero's Tusculan Disputations.  
 Cornelius Nepos, *complete*.  
 Eutropius.  
 Horace, *complete*.  
 Juvenal's Satires, *complete*.  
 Livy, Books I and II.  
 Livy, Books XXI and XXII.  
 Lucretius, *in preparation*.  
 Ovid's Metamorphoses, *complete in 2 volumes*.  
 Phædrus' Fables.  
 Plautus' Captivi, and Mostellaria.  
 Plautus' Pseudolus, and Miles Gloriosus.  
 Plautus' Trinummus, and Menæchmi.  
 Pliny's Select Letters, *complete in 2 volumes*.  
 Quintilian, Books X and XII.  
 Roman Life in Latin Prose and Verse.  
 Sallust's Catiline, and The Jugurthine War.  
 Seneca On Benefits.  
 Tacitus' Annals. *The 1st Six Books.*  
 Tacitus' Germany and Agricola.  
 Tacitus On Oratory.  
 Terence: Andria, Adelphi, and Phormio  
 Terence: Heautontimorumenos.  
 Virgil's Æneid, *the 1st Six Books*.  
 Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics.  
 Viri Romæ.

Æschines Against Ctesiphon.  
 Æschylus' Prometheus Bound; Seven Against Thebes.  
 Æschylus' Agamemnon.  
 Aristophanes' Clouds.  
 Aristophanes' Birds, and Frogs.  
 Demosthenes On the Crown.  
 Demosthenes' Olynthiacs and Philippics.  
 Euripides' Alcestris, and Electra.  
 Euripides' Bacchantes, and Hercules Furens.  
 Euripides' Hecuba, and Andromache.  
 Euripides' Iphigenia In Aulis, In Tauris.  
 Euripides' Medea.  
 Herodotus, Books VI and VII.  
 Herodotus, Book VIII.  
 Homer's Iliad, *the 1st Six Books*.  
 Homer's Odyssey, *the 1st Twelve Books*.  
 Isocrates' Panegyric, *in preparation*.  
 Lucian's Select Dialogues, *2 volumes*.  
 Lysias' Orations. *The only Translation extant.*  
*Handy Literal Translations, continued next page.*

### Handy Literal Translations (Continued.)

Plato's Apology, Crito, and Phædo.  
Plato's Gorgias.  
Plato's Laches (*paper*).  
Plato's Protagoras, and Euthyphron.  
Plato's Republic.  
Sophocles' Œdipus Tyrannus, Electra, and Antigone.  
Sophocles' Œdipus Coloneus.  
Thucydides, *complete in 2 volumes*.  
Xenophon's Anabasis, *the 1st Four Books*.  
Xenophon's Cyropædia, *complete in 2 volumes*.  
Xenophon's Hellenica, and Symposium (The Banquet).  
Xenophon's Memorabilia, *complete*.

Freytag's Die Journalisten (*paper*).  
Goethe's Egmont.  
Goethe's Faust.  
Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.  
Goethe's Iphigenia In Tauris.  
Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm.  
Lessing's Nathan the Wise.  
Lessing's Emilia Galotti.  
Schiller's Ballads.  
Schiller's Der Neffe als Onkel.  
Schiller's Maid of Orleans.  
Schiller's Maria Stuart.  
Schiller's Wallenstein's Death.  
Schiller's William Tell.  
Corneille's The Cid.  
Feuillet's Romance of a Poor Young Man.  
Racine's Athalie.

### Interlinear Translations. Classic Series. Cloth. \$1.50 per vol.

Cæsar.  
Cicero's Orations, *Enlarged Edition*.  
Cicero On Old Age and Friendship.  
Cornelius Nepos.  
Horace, *complete*.  
Livy, Books XXI and XXII.  
Ovid's Metamorphoses, *complete*.  
Sallust's Catiline, and Jugurthine War.  
Virgil's Æneid, *First Six Books, Revised*.  
Virgil's Æneid, *complete, the Twelve Books*.  
Virgil's Eclogues, Georgics, and Last Six Books Æneid.  
Xenophon's Anabasis.  
Xenophon's Memorabilia.  
Homer's Iliad. *First Six Books, Revised*.  
Demosthenes On the Crown.  
New Testament, *Without Notes*.

**Completely Parsed Caesar, Book I.** Each page bears *interlinear* translation, *literal* translation, parsing, grammatical references. *All at a glance without turning a leaf.* \$1.50.

**New Testament, with Notes, and Lexicon.** *Interlinear Greek-English, with King James Version in the margins.* New edition, with finely discriminating presentation of the Synonyms of the Greek Testament. Cloth, \$4.00; half-leath., \$5.00; Divinity Circuit, \$6.00.

**Old Testament, Vol. I.** Genesis and Exodus. *Interlinear Hebrew-English, with Notes; King James Version and Revised Version in the margins; and with the Hebrew alphabet and Tables of the Hebrew verb.* Cloth, \$4.00; half-leath., \$5.00; Divinity Circuit, \$6.00.



**Tutorial Literal Translations, 41 vols. (See Tutorial Texts.)**

- Cicero Ad Atticum, Book IV., *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.  
Cicero De Finibus, Bk. I., Bk. II., *with Test Papers*, each 50 cents.  
Cicero's Philippic, II., 50 cents.  
Cicero Pro Balbo, 50 cents.  
Cicero Pro Cluentio, 50 cents.  
Cicero Pro Plancio, 50 cents.  
Livy, Book III., Book V., Book VI., Book IX., each 50 cents.  
Ovid's Fasti, Books III.-IV., 50 cents.  
Ovid's Heroides, 1-2-3-5-7-12, 50 cents.  
Ovid's Tristia, Book I., Book III., each 50 cents.  
Tacitus' History, Book I., 50 cents.  
Tacitus' History, Book III., *with Test Papers*, 60 cents.  
Vergil's Æneid, Books VII., VIII., IX., X., XI., XII., each 50 cts.  
Vergil's Æneid, Books VII.-X, 50 cents.  
Æschylus' Eumenides, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.  
Æschylus' Persae, 50 cents.  
Andocides De Mysteriis, \$1.00.  
Aristophanes' Vespae, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.  
Demosthenes' Adversus Leptinem, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.  
Demosthenes' Androtrion, 50 cents.  
Demosthenes' Meidias, 75 cents.  
Euripides' Heraclidæ, 50 cents.  
Euripides' Hippolytus, 50 cents.  
Herodotus, Book III., 50 cents.  
Homer's Iliad, Book XXIV, 50 cents.  
Homer's Odyssey, Books IX.-XIV., *with Test Papers*, 60 cents.  
Homer's Odyssey, Book XVII, 50 cents.  
Sophocles' Ajax, *with Test Papers*, 50 cents.  
Sophocles' Philoctetes, 50 cents.  
Xenophon's Anabasis, Book VII., 50 cents.  
Xenophon's Oeconomicus, 50 cents.  
"Teachers' Editions" also contain *Test Papers* (below).

**Tutorial Latin, and Greek Texts, Teachers' Editions, etc.**

A most helpful feature of the TEACHERS' EDITIONS is that, besides the Text, the Notes, and the Translation, they contain also sets of Test Papers facilitating examinations, and Vocabularies with the correct inflections and renderings of all words occurring in the text that because of peculiar significance or difficult construction, suggest special guidance. Moreover, the Test Papers and the Vocabularies are interleaved.

- Æschylus' Persae, Text and Notes, Price, 75 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, \$1.00.  
Æschylus' Prometheus Vincit, Text and Notes, Price, 60 cents.  
See "Handy Literal Translation," 50 cents.  
Æschylus' Septem Contra Thebas, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
See "Handy Literal Translation," 50 cents.  
Aristophanes' Ranæ, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
See "Handy Literal Translation," 50 cents.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book I., Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, 70 cents.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book II., Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, 70 cents.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book III., Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, 70 cents.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book IV., Text and Notes, 70 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, \$1.20.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book V., Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, 70 cents.  
Cæsar's Gallic War, Book VI., Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
Same, Teachers' Edition, *with Translation*, 70 cents.

# **Tutorial Classic Texts and Teachers' Editions—(Continued.)**

- Cæsar's Gallic War, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.00.*  
 Cicero Ad Atticum, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Literal Translation, with Test Papers, 50 cents.*  
 Cicero de Amicitia, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, with Test Papers, and the Vocabularies, 60 cents.*  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero De Finibus, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 80 cents.*  
 Cicero De Finibus, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Literal Translation, with Test Papers, 50 cents.*  
 Cicero De Officiis, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Cicero De Senectute, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero In Catilinam **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero Pro Archia, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero Pro Balbo, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero Pro Cluentio, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Cicero Pro Marcello, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*  
 Cicero Pro Milone, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Cicero Pro Plancio, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
 Cornelius Nepos, Text and Notes, 25 cents.  
*See Handy Literal Translation, 50 cts.; Interlinear, \$1.50.*  
 Demosthenes' Androtion, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*Literal Translation, 50 cents.*  
 Demosthenes' Meidias, Text and Notes, \$1.30.  
*Literal Translation, 75 cents.*  
 Euripides' Alcestis, Text and Notes, 70 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.00.*  
 Euripides' Andromache, Text and Notes, 70 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.00.*  
 Euripides' Bacchæ, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Euripides' Hecuba, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Euripides' Hippolytus, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.20.*  
 Herodotus, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.40.*  
 Herodotus, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, \$1.00.*  
 Herodotus, **Book VIII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*See, "Handy Literal Translation," 50 cents.*  
 Homer's Iliad, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
 Homer's Iliad, **Book XXIV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
 Homer's Odyssey, **Books IX.-X.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
 Homer's Odyssey, **Books XI.-XII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
 Homer's Odyssey, **Books XIII.-XIV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Literal Trans., Books IX.-XIV., with Test Papers, 60 cents.*  
 Homer's Odyssey, **Book XVII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
 Horace's Epodes, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation," 50 cts.; "Interlinear," \$1.50.*  
 Horace's Odes, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation, 70 cents.*

## Tutorial Classic Texts and Teachers' Editions—(Continued.)

- Horace's Odes, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Horace's Odes, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Horace's Odes, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Horace's Odes, **Books I., II., III., IV.**, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*See "Handy Translation,"* 50 cents. *"Interlinear,"* \$1.50.
- Horace's Satires, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*See "Handy Translation,"* 50 cents; *"Interlinear,"* \$1.50.
- Horace's Epistles, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.20.
- Juvenal's Satires, **I., III., IV.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.
- Juvenal's Satires, **VIII., X., XIII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.
- Juvenal's Satires, **XI., XIII., XIV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.
- Livy, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Livy, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Livy, **Book V.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Livy, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Livy, **Book IX.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.20.
- Livy, **Book XXI.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Livy, **Book XXII.**, Chapters 1 to 51, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Ovid's Fasti, **Books III., IV.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.00.
- Ovid's Heroides, **Books I., V., XII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Literal Translation of same*, 50 cents.
- Ovid's Heroides, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 12, Text and Notes, 70 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.20.
- Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XIII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Ovid's Metamorphoses, **Book XIV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Ovid's Tristia, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Ovid's Tristia, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Plato's Laches, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.20.
- Plato's Apology, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.
- Plato's Phaedo, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.
- Sallust's Catiline, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 90 cents.
- Sophocles' Ajax, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Literal Translation, with Test Papers*, 50 cents.
- Sophocles' Antigone, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, 70 cents.
- Sophocles' Electra, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation*, \$1.20.

## Tutorial Classic Texts and Teachers' Editions—(Continued.)

- Tacitus' Annals, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
 Tacitus' Annals, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Tacitus' Histories, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* \$1.00.  
 Terence's Adelphi, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Thucydides, **Book I.**, Notes and Test Papers only, 40 cents  
 Thucydides, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 60 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Vergil's Eclogues, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* \$1.20.  
 Vergil's Georgics, **Books I., II.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* \$1.20.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
*See "Handy" Translation,* 50 cents; "Interlinear," \$1.50.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book II.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Literal Translation,* 50 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book V.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book VIII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book IX.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book X.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Literal Translation, Books IX-X,* 50 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book XI.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Literal Translation,* 50 cents.  
 Vergil's Aeneid, **Book XII.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Literal Translation,* 50 cents.  
 Xenophon's Anabasis, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 40 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* 70 cents.  
 Xenophon's Anabasis, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Xenophon's Cyropaedia, **Book I.**, Text and Notes, 75 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Xenophon's Hellenica, **Book III.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* \$1.00.  
 Xenophon's Hellenica, **Book IV.**, Text and Notes, 80 cents.  
*See "Handy Literal Translation,"* 50 cents.  
 Xenophon's Oeconomicus, Text and Notes, \$1.00.  
*Same, Teachers' Edition, with Translation,* \$1.40.

## UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES.

Latin and Greek Texts. See above.

Latin and Greek Grammars and Readers.

Latin Grammar, The Tutorial, 80 cents.

*Exercises to same,* 40 cents. *Key to Exercises,* 70 cents.

Latin Comp. and Syntax, *with Vocabularies,* 60 cts. *Key,* 60 cts.

Preceptors' Latin Course, 70 cents. *Key to same,* 70 cents.

*In the First Greek Lessons the author has drawn largely from the Bible for illustrative sentences, so that after going through the Lessons the student will have little difficulty in reading the New Testament in the Greek.*

## Brooks' Classics

**Historia Sacra, with 1st Latin Lessons.** Revised, *with Vocabulary.* Price 50 cents. This justly popular volume, besides the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ, the Notes, and the Lexicon, contains 100 pages of elementary Latin Lessons so arranged as to form a practical course in Latin for the beginner, making it practicable for the teacher, without recourse to any other book, to carry the pupil quickly and in easy steps, over the ground preparatory to a profitable reading of the Epitome Historiæ Sacræ. Price 50 cents.

**First Lessons in Greek, with Lexicon.** Revised Edition. Prepared on the same plan as the author's First Latin Lessons. Tables giving derivations of the parts of speech. Tables showing the formation of the tenses. Price 50 cents.

**Virgil's Æneid, with Lexicon.** Illustrated and revised Edition. Notes, Critical, Historical and Mythological. Metrical Index and Map, and numerous engravings of Antique Statues, Arms, Gems, Coins and Medals. Also Questions for Examinations. Price reduced to \$1.50.

SAYS DR. SHELTON MACKENZIE:—"It is the most beautiful edition of Virgil's Æneid yet published. As an illustrated school book it has never been even approached."

**Ovid's Metamorphoses, with Lexicon.** Illustrated and Revised Edition. Expurgated and adapted for Mixed Classes. Elucidated by an Analysis and Explanation of each Table. With English Notes, Historical, Mythological and Critical, and Questions for Examinations. Price reduced to \$1.50.

SAYS DR. NEWELL:—"It bears the impress alike of the accurate scholar and the experienced teacher. He has added a body of explanatory notes, which for fullness, variety and appropriateness, will compare with any similar work, and gain by the comparison."

---

Hinds & Noble, Publishers

4 Cooper Institute

New York City

# Idioms of Caesar

## Cicero's Idioms

Complete, with English equivalents. Alphabetically arranged for ready reference, or for serial memorizing \* \* \* \* \*

EACH—Price 25 cents—PAPER

By JOACHIM C. MUELLER

PROF. OF LATIN, CALVIN COLLEGE, CLEVELAND, OHIO

The two pamphlets cover, respectively, the GALLIC WAR, and the 4 ORATIONS *vs.* CATILINE; and besides the Latin idioms done into correct English, each pamphlet also contains an English-Latin index to help the pupil put English idioms into classical Latin.

These handy books are published in the belief that nothing in the study of the Latin is harder for the average beginner than to render the idioms accurately and well.

The suggestion offered by the compiler of these exceedingly convenient lists, is that the teacher assign say ten idioms for each recitation, and that the pupils memorize them and also form sentences illustrating the idioms—developing a surprising facility in sensing the drift of the text.

This plan has been so successfully employed by the compiler in his own classes beginning Latin, for whom these lists were prepared, that he has in preparation similar lists of the idioms of other classic Latin writers.

### HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers of

Completely Parsed Caesar, BOOK 1, \$1.50  
Shortest Road to Caesar. For beginners. 75 cents  
Interlinear Translation of Caesar, \$1.50  
Literal Translation Caesar, 50 cents

4-5-6-12-13-14 Cooper Institute, New York City  
*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

# College Girls' Three-minute Readings

\$1.00—CLOTH, 500 PAGES, WITH INDEX—\$1.00

Here is a volume for American girls by American women—an ideal long in demand, now realized for the first time. In this book patriotism is the keynote dominating a series of new, fresh, *speakeable* selections, pathetic, humorous, descriptive, oratorical; running, in fact, the gamut of the emotions. A book for the American girl and the American young woman in the college, the high school, the academy, and *the home*.

This new book is new in every sense of the word, but particularly in voicing the golden thoughts of scores of the *living* representative women of America—women educators, women philanthropists, women reformers.

Here is a *partial* list of the contributors:

Mrs. A. Giddings Park	"Susan Coolidge"
Eva Lovett Cameron ( <i>Brooklyn Eagle</i> )	Agnes E. Mitchell
Edith M. Thomas	Rev. Anna H. Shaw
Emma Lazarus	Margaret Junkin Preston
Adelaide Procter	Amelia Barr
Celia Thaxter	Norah Perry
Christina Rossetti	Alice Cary
Anna Robertson Lindsay	Adeline Whitney
J. Ellen Foster	Emily Warren
Margaret E. Sangster	Lucy Larcom
Clara Barton	Ella Wheeler Wilcox
Frances E. Willard	Harriet Beecher Stowe
Kate Douglas Wiggin	Mary Mapes Dodge
Isabel A. Mallon ( <i>Ladies' Home Journal</i> )	"Gail Hamilton"

and there are many others.

A brief note, happily worded, conveying information not to be found elsewhere, regarding the author or the occasion, accompanies most of the selections.

Teachers will find selections appropriate to Memorial Day, Arbor Day, Washington's Birthday, and all other patriotic occasions. And from the pages of this book speak the voices of many of our presidents, from Washington to McKinley.

*Besides a perspicuous list of contents, the volume contains a complete general index by titles and authors; and also a separate index of authors, thus enabling one who remembers only the title to find readily the author, or who recalls only the author to find just as readily all of her selections.*

Like the companion volume, *College Men's Declamations*, this work contains many "pieces" suitable both for girls and boys, and the two books may well stand side by side upon the shelf of every student and every teacher, ever ready with some selection that is sure to please, and exactly suited to the speaker and to the occasion.

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City

# College Men's 3-minute Declamations

\$1.00—CLOTH, 381 PAGES, WITH INDEX—\$1.00

Here at last is a volume containing just what college students have been calling for time out of mind, but never could find—something besides the old selections, which, though once inspiring, now fail to thrill the audience, because declaimed to death! **Live topics presented by live men! Full of vitality for prize speaking.**

Such is the matter with which this volume abounds. To mention a few names—each speaking in his well-known style and characteristic vein:

Chauncey M. Depew  
Abram S. Hewitt  
Carl Schurz  
William E. Gladstone  
Edward J. Phelps  
Benjamin Harrison  
Grover Cleveland  
General Horace Porter  
Doctor Storrs

President Eliot (*Harvard*)  
George Parsons Lathrop  
Bishop Potter  
Sir Charles Russell  
President Carter (*Williams*)  
T. De Witt Talmage  
Ex-Pres. White (*Cornell*)  
Rev. Newman Smyth  
Emilio Castelar

Here, too, sound the familiar voices of George William Curtis, Lowell, Blaine, Phillips Brooks, Beecher, Garfield, Disraeli, Bryant, Grady, and Choate. Poets also:—Longfellow, Holmes, Tennyson, Byron, Whittier, Schiller, Shelley, Hood, and others.

More than a hundred other authors besides! We have not space to enumerate. But the selections from them are all just the thing. And all the selections are brief.

*In addition to a perspicuous list of contents, the volume contains a complete general index by titles and authors; and also a separate index of authors, thus enabling one who remembers only the title to find readily the author, or who recalls only the author to find just as readily all of his selections.*

Another invaluable feature:—Preceding each selection are given, so far as ascertainable, the vocation, the residence, and the dates of birth and death of the author; and the occasion to which we owe the oration, or address, or poem.

Like the companion volume, *College Girls' Readings*, this work contains many "pieces" suitable both for girls and boys, and the two books may well stand side by side upon the shelf of every student and every teacher ever ready with some selection that is sure to please, and exactly suited to the speaker and to the occasion.

HINDS & NOBLE

4-5-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*



# You don't like to be worsted In an Argument

Do you? Whenever and wherever thinking men assemble, almost every topic of conversation discovers differences of opinion precipitating argument and discussion. In your own school—are there not pupils who are ambitious to become expert fencers in argument? Have you a debating society looking for new ideas newly put? Is there a lyceum that needs enlivening? a lodge where dullness needs to be replaced by bright discussion on a variety of up-to-date topics? Would your club have a livelier go if your meetings had more sparkle? And your own home circle!—will it be the brighter for clever conversation on the many subjects that are in the public mind? Then you need “PROS AND CONS,” a book that we have just published, that is full of the very material—new, practical, up-to-date—for accomplishing any or all of these objects.

The book begins with instructions for organizing a society, giving a sample set of by-laws and a constitution, and the rules governing debate. In a concise and succinct style twenty-one important and live subjects are fully treated, each one by several speakers, affirmative and negative, the final speakers summing up the arguments for their respective sides. These topics are:

Single Gold Standard	Expensive Social Entertainment
Annexation of Cuba	Hypocrite vs. Liar
Punishment vs. Reward	Government and Telegraphs
Penny Postage	Opportunities for Financial Success
High License	Immigration
Government Ownership of Railroads	Department Stores
Hawaiian Annexation	Greenbacks
Woman Suffrage	Taxation
Navigation vs. Railroads	Direct Vote vs. Elec'l College
Nicaragua Canal	Postal Savings
Protective Tariff	

After this thorough drilling in actual debate the author presents a skeleton argument for each one of a series of questions—both sides, for and against—enabling the disputant to find a basis for his argument on which he may enlarge at will. Here we have such questions as

Government Control of Mines  
Trusts and Monopolies  
Municipal Ownership of Franchises  
Modern System of Education  
National Banks  
Bimetallism vs. Protection, etc.

By these easy stages the debater reaches a level where he may stand alone, and, while cutting loose from the set models of the earlier chapters of the book, may yet follow the *form* of the preceding debates, choosing his *subject* from a well-selected list of 250 questions of human interest.

*In addition to the numerous set debates, and following the debates-in-outline, the author has interspersed a variety of separate orations and essays, illustrating the salutatory, the valedictory, and the form of address for other special occasions.*

---

## PROS AND CONS

By A. H. CRAIG, author of "The Common-school Question and Answer Book," now in its 182d thousand.

---

CLOTH—\$1.50 Postpaid—472 PAGES

---

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

45-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City

*Schoolbooks of all publishers at one store*

**Character Building.** Inspiring suggestions. \$1.00.

**Mistakes of Teachers** corrected by common sense (the famous *Preston Papers*). Solves difficulties not explained in text-books which daily perplex the conscientious teacher. \$1.00.

**Best Methods of Teaching in Country Schools** (Lind's), \$1.25.

**Page's Theory and Practice of Teaching.** *With Questions and Answers.* Paper, 50 cts. Cloth, \$1.00.

**Psychology Simplified for Teachers.** Gordy's well-known "New Psychology." Familiar talks to teachers and parents on how to observe the child-mind, and on the value of child-study in the successful teaching and rearing of the young. *With Questions on each Lesson.* \$1.25. *Twenty-sixth thousand!*

**The Perceptualist.** Hamilton's Mental Science, rev. ed. \$2.

**Smith's New Class Register.** The best of record books. 50 cts.

**Likes and Opposites.** Synonyms and their Opposites. 50 cts.

**Letter Writing.** New handy rules for correct correspondence. 75c.

**Punctuation.** Hinds & Noble's new Manual. Paper, 25 cts.

**New Speller.** Hinds & Noble's new graded lists of 5000 words which one *must* know how to spell. 25 cts.

**Craig's COMMON SCHOOL Questions with Answers.** \$1.50.

**Henry's HIGH SCHOOL Questions with Answers.** \$1.50.

**Sherrill's New Normal Questions with Answers.** \$1.50.

**Quizzism and its Key** (Southwick). \$1.00.

**Moritz' 1000 Questions.** For the Entrance Examinations to the New York High Schools, the New York Normal College, the College of the City of New York, St. Francis Xavier's College, West Point, Annapolis, and the Civil Service. 30 cents.

**Answers to same.** 50 cents.

**Recent Entrance Examination Questions.** For the New York Normal College, the College of the City of New York, St. Francis Xavier's College, Columbia College, the High Schools, Regents' Exam's, West Point, Annapolis, and the Civil Service. 30 cents.

**Answers to same.** 50 cents.

**How to Prepare for a Civil Service Examination,** with recent *Examination Questions and the Answers.* 560 pages. \$2.00. Abridged Edition, *without questions and answers*, 50 cents.

**How to Become Quick at Figures.** Enlarged Edition. \$1.00.

**Bad English.** Humiliating "Breaks" corrected. 30 cts.

**Composition Writing Made Easy.** *Very successful.* Five Grades, viz.: A, B, C, D, E. 20 cts. each. *All five for 75 cts.*

**1000 Composition Subjects.** 25 cents.

**U. S. Constitution in German, French, and English,** *parallel columns*, with explanatory marginal Notes. Cloth, 50c.; paper, 25c.

**Bookkeeping Blanks** at 30 cts. per set. Five Blank-Books to the set. Adapted for use with any text-book—Elementary, Practical, or Common School. *Used everywhere.*—Price, 30 cts. per set.

**Object Lesson Cards** (Oliver and Boyd). 48 Cards, 13 x 20 inches. \$28.00.

**Lessons on Morals** (Dewey) 75 cents. *In preparation.*

**Lessons on Manners** (Dewey) 75 cents. *In preparation.*

**Commencement Parts.** "Efforts" for all occasions. Oration, addresses, valedictories, salutations, class poems, class mottoes, after-dinner speeches, flag days, national holidays, class-day exercises. *Models* for every possible occasion in high-school and college career, every one of the "efforts" being what some fellow has *stood on his feet* and actually delivered on a similar occasion—not what the compiler *would* say if he should happen to be called on for an ivy song or a response to a toast, or what not; but what the fellow himself, when his turn came, *did say!* \$1.50.



**New Dialogues and Plays.** Life-like episodes from popular authors like Stevenson, Crawford, Mark Twain, Dickens, Scott, in the form of simple plays, with every detail explained as to dress, make-up, utensils, furniture, etc., for school-room or parlor. \$1.50.

**College Men's 3-Minute Declamations.**

Up-to-date selections from live men like Chauncey Depew, Hewitt, Gladstone, Cleveland, President Eliot (Harvard) and Carter (Williams) and others. New material with vitality in it for prize speaking. *Very popular.* \$1.00.

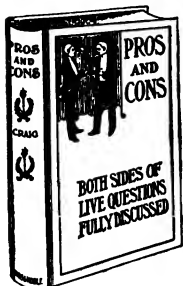
**College Maids' 3-Minute Readings.** Up-to-date recitations from living men and women. On the plan of the popular College Men's Declamations, and on the same high plane. \$1.00.

**Pieces for Prize Speaking Contests.** \$1.00. *Nearly ready.*

**Acme Declamation Book.** *Single pieces and dialogues.* For boys and girls of all ages; all occasions. Paper, 30 cts.; cloth, 50 cts.

**Handy Pieces to Speak.** *Single pieces and dialogues.* Primary, 20 cts.; Intermediate, 20 cts.; Advanced, 20 cts. *All three for 50 cts.*

**Pros and Cons.** Complete debates of the affirmative and negative of the stirring questions of the day. *A decided hit.* This is another book invaluable not only to high-school and college students, but also to every other person who aspires to converse engagingly on the topics of the day. Our foreign policy, the currency, the tariff, immigration, high license, woman suffrage, penny postage, transportation, trusts, department stores, municipal ownership of franchises, government control of telegraph. *Both sides* of these and many other questions completely debated. Directions for organizing and conducting a debating society, with *by-laws* and *parliamentary rules.* \$1.50.



**New Parliamentary Manual.** By H. C. Davis, compiler of "Commencement Parts." 75 cents. *Nearly Ready.*

**Ten Weeks Course in Elocution** (Normal Reader). With numerous and varied selections for illustration and practice. \$1.25.

# Shortest Road to Cæsar

By E. T. Jeffers

*Principal of York Collegiate Institute, York, Pa.*

The "Shortest Road to Cæsar" does not offer itself as an easy road. Those who love ease will reach neither Cæsar nor excellence. The student is here shown how he may reach Cæsar "itinerare magno."

The volume consists of two parts: The first, a beginner's Latin book; the last, the text and vocabulary of the second book of Cæsar's Gallic War.

*The plan includes the following special points:*

(1) The size of the book is reduced by referring to the grammar for rules and forms, instead of reproducing them.

(2) A small number of words is used, only about three hundred.

(3) The words are, with few exceptions, those found in the first six chapters of the second book of Cæsar.

(4) The phrases and sentences are largely from the same chapters.

(5) Only the leading rules of syntax are required or illustrated.

(6) In the vocabularies, generally, but one meaning is given to each Latin word.

*The advantages discovered after a year's experiment are:*

(1) In general, a saving of time without loss of thoroughness of preparation for reading.

(2) The student is not confused by finding in the grammar a paradigm or a form of rule different from what he learned in his beginner's book.

(3) He learns no word for which he does not find use in his first attempts at reading.

(4) By frequent use of the same set of words and idioms, he forms the habit of giving instantly the English equivalent of a Latin word or phrase.

(5) The last part is added to supply all the student needs for the study of the language for one year.

(6) The memory is not overtaxed in the effort to retain many meanings for each word, and the judgment is trained in modifying the given meaning to adapt it to new connections.

*The book is particularly suited to High Schools and Preparatory Schools. Price, 75 cents.*

HINDS & NOBLE, Publishers

4-5-6-12-13-14 Cooper Institute

New York City